



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

**A** 407157

12/2/20

G

122

J 72

1908





**A PHYSICAL,  
HISTORICAL, POLITICAL, & DESCRIPTIVE  
GEOGRAPHY**



*THE LONDON GEOGRAPHICAL SERIES.*

---

A PHYSICAL,  
HISTORICAL, POLITICAL, & DESCRIPTIVE  
GEOGRAPHY

By <sup>1</sup>KEITH JOHNSTON, F.R.G.S.

LEADER OF THE ROYAL GEOGRAPHICAL SOCIETY'S EAST AFRICAN EXPEDITION, 1878

MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS

*SIXTH EDITION*

REVISED BY A. H. KEANE, LL.D., F.R.G.S.

LONDON: EDWARD STANFORD

12, 13, & 14, LONG ACRE, W.C.

1908

NU

.

.

!

.

# CONTENTS

---

	PAGE
I. INTRODUCTORY CHAPTER . . . . .	1
Explanation of "direction" and "distance"—The compass— The cardinal points—Boxing the compass—The mariner's compass—The sun's apparent path across the sky—The pole star—The "pace"—Natural scale—Mapping—Plan drawing —Surveying—Construction of sections—Exercises in map drawing.	
II. SKETCH OF HISTORICAL GEOGRAPHY . . . . .	19
1. From 1000 to 450 B.C. . . . .	20
2. „ 450 to 325 B.C. . . . .	22
3. „ 325 B.C. to 300 A.D. . . . .	23
4. „ 300 to 500 A.D. . . . .	26
5. „ 500 to 800 A.D. . . . .	28
6. „ 800 to 1000 A.D. . . . .	30
7. „ 1000 to 1300 A.D. . . . .	33
8. „ 1300 to 1500 A.D. . . . .	39
9. „ 1500 to 1600 A.D. . . . .	45
10. „ 1600 to 1700 A.D. . . . .	57
11. „ 1700 to 1800 A.D. . . . .	65
12. „ 1800 to 1908 A.D. . . . .	74
III. PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY . . . . .	101
1. Form and Dimensions of the Earth . . . . .	101
Proof of the sphericity of the earth—The visible horizon— Measurement of an arc by Eratosthenes of Alexandria— Calculation of the earth's diameter—Modern triangulation operations—Parallels of latitude—Meridians of longitude —Projections of the sphere—Orthographic, Stereographic, Globular—Mercator's chart.	
2. Proper Movements of the Earth . . . . .	112
Rotation on an imaginary axis—Revolution round the sun —Evidence of daily rotation—Evidence of annual revolu- tion—The ecliptic—Temperature—The zones.	

44

# CONTENTS

	Page
I. INTRODUCTORY CHAPTER . . . . .	1
Explanation of "direction" and "distance" The compass	
The cardinal points Boxing the compass The mariner's compass—The sun's apparent path across the sky The pole star—The "pace" - Natural scale Mapping Plan drawing—Surveying—Construction of sections Exercises in map drawing.	
II. SKETCH OF HISTORICAL GEOGRAPHY . . . . .	19
1. From 1000 to 450 B.C. . . . .	20
2. " 450 to 325 B.C. . . . .	22
3. " 325 B.C. to 300 A.D. . . . .	23
4. " 300 to 500 A.D. . . . .	26
5. " 500 to 800 A.D. . . . .	28
6. " 800 to 1000 A.D. . . . .	30
7. " 1000 to 1300 A.D. . . . .	33
8. " 1300 to 1500 A.D. . . . .	39
9. " 1500 to 1600 A.D. . . . .	43
10. " 1600 to 1700 A.D. . . . .	57
11. " 1700 to 1800 A.D. . . . .	65
12. " 1800 to 1908 A.D. . . . .	74
III. PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY . . . . .	101
1. Form and Dimensions of the Earth . . . . .	101
Proof of the sphericity of the earth The visible horizon	
Measurement of an arc by Eratosthenes of Alexandria	
Calculation of the earth's diameter Modern triangulation operations—Parallels of latitude Meridians of longitude—Projections of the sphere—Orthographic, Stereographic, Globular—Mercator's chart.	
2. Proper Movements of the Earth . . . . .	112
Rotation on an imaginary axis—Revolution round the sun	
—Evidence of daily rotation—Evidence of annual revolution—The ecliptic—Temperature—The zones.	



	PAGE
3. Distribution of Land and Sea . . . . .	122
Area of land and water—Form of the land masses—Elevation of the land—Depth of the sea—Distribution of mountains and plains.	
4. Causes which determine Climate . . . . .	130
Decrease of temperature with elevation—Temperature of sea and land compared—Temperature of atmosphere—Explanation of land and sea breezes—Periodical winds—Monsoons—Trade winds—Oceanic circulation, caused by difference of temperature, and by density. Ocean currents—The Gulf stream, the Japan current, Mozambique current, Peruvian current, South Atlantic current, Australian current, Antarctic drift, East Greenland current. Evaporation—Periodical rains, distribution of moisture by the winds, influence of mountain ranges, deserts. Distribution of vegetable and animal life—Effects of climate on the distribution of man.	
5. Peoples of the World: Natural, Religious, and Political Systems	146
Total population of the world. Races: Aryan family, Mongolian, Hamite, Semite, Negro, Bantu, Hottentot, Eskimo, Papuan, and Negrito. Religions: Polytheism, Monotheism. Numbers of the followers of the chief religions. Growth of political organisation. Tribal divisions: Patriarchate, empire, kingdom, monarchy, despotism, oligarchy, democracy, republic, state, colony. Boundaries: Natural frontiers, artificial frontiers.	

## EUROPE.

General Description, Extent, Relief, Hydrography, Climate, Products, Races, Education, Religion, Government . . . . .	155
I. THE TEUTONIC STATES.	
1. THE BRITISH ISLES . . . . .	167
2. SCANDINAVIA . . . . .	182
3. DENMARK . . . . .	188
FARÖE ISLANDS AND ICELAND . . . . .	191
4. GERMAN EMPIRE . . . . .	193
NORTH GERMANY—Prussia . . . . .	196
Saxony . . . . .	197
Smaller States and Hanse Towns . . . . .	198

# CONTENTS.

vii

	PAGE
SOUTH GERMANY—Bavaria . . . . .	199
Württemberg . . . . .	200
Baden . . . . .	200
5. AUSTRIA AND HUNGARY . . . . .	201
CIS-LEITHAN AUSTRIA . . . . .	205
THE KINGDOM OF HUNGARY . . . . .	208
6. SWITZERLAND . . . . .	208
7. HOLLAND OR THE NETHERLANDS . . . . .	212
LUXEMBURG . . . . .	215
8. BELGIUM . . . . .	215

## II. THE ROMANIC STATES.

1. FRANCE . . . . .	218
PYRENÆAN OR IBERIAN PENINSULA . . . . .	224
2. SPAIN . . . . .	228
3. PORTUGAL . . . . .	231
4. ITALY . . . . .	232
5. GREECE . . . . .	239
6. ROMANIA . . . . .	243

## III. THE SLAVONIC STATES.

BALKAN PENINSULA . . . . .	245
1. SERVIA . . . . .	250
2. MONTENEGRO . . . . .	250
3. BOSNIA AND HERZEGOVINA . . . . .	251
EUROPEAN TURKEY—	
4. BULGARIA AND EASTERN ROUMELIA . . . . .	252
5. TURKEY PROPER . . . . .	253
6. EUROPEAN RUSSIA . . . . .	255

## ASIA.

General Description, Lowlands, Highlands, Hydrography, Climate, Products, Peoples, Religion . . . . .	261
RUSSIAN ASIA—	
THE CAUCASUS . . . . .	277

	PAGE
SIBERIA . . . . .	279
RUSSIAN CENTRAL ASIA . . . . .	282
CHINESE ASIA—	
CHINESE EMPIRE . . . . .	283
CHINA PROPER . . . . .	284
MANCHURIA . . . . .	291
MONGOLIA . . . . .	293
ZUNGARIA . . . . .	295
EASTERN TURKESTAN . . . . .	296
TIBET . . . . .	297
KOREA . . . . .	299
JAPAN—	
JAPAN PROPER . . . . .	302
YEZO . . . . .	305
KURILE ISLANDS . . . . .	306
LIU-KIU AND BONIN ISLANDS AND FORMOSA . . . . .	306
INDIAN ASIA—	
INDIA . . . . .	307
CEYLON . . . . .	320
LACCADIVE ISLANDS, MALDIVE ISLANDS . . . . .	322
FARTHER INDIA—	
LOWER BURMA . . . . .	323
UPPER BURMA . . . . .	324
SIAM . . . . .	325
FRENCH INDO-CHINA : ANNAM . . . . .	327
LOWER COCHIN CHINA . . . . .	328
CAMBODIA . . . . .	329
MALAY PENINSULA . . . . .	329
BRITISH STRAITS SETTLEMENTS . . . . .	330
EAST INDIA ISLANDS . . . . .	330
SUMATRA . . . . .	332
JAVA . . . . .	333

# CONTENTS.

ix

	PAGE
BORNEO . . . . .	333
CELEBES . . . . .	335
LESSER SUNDA ISLANDS . . . . .	335
MOLUCCAS . . . . .	336
PHILIPPINE ISLANDS . . . . .	336
SULU ISLANDS . . . . .	337
MOHAMMEDAN ASIA—	
BALUCHISTAN . . . . .	337
AFGHANISTAN . . . . .	338
AFGHAN TURKESTAN . . . . .	341
WESTERN TURKESTAN (Khiva, Bokhara, and Merv) . . . . .	342
PERSIA . . . . .	344
ASIATIC TURKEY . . . . .	347
ARABIA . . . . .	356

# AFRICA.

Contour, Relief, Rivers, Climate, Products, Peoples, Religion, Govern- ment . . . . .	360
THE BARBARY STATES . . . . .	368
MOROCCO . . . . .	370
ALGERIA . . . . .	371
TUNISIA . . . . .	373
TRIPOLI . . . . .	374
SAHARA (The Desert) . . . . .	375
EGYPT . . . . .	377
NUBIA and the UPPER NILE (Anglo-Egyptian Condominium) . . . . .	380
ABYSSINIA . . . . .	382
SUDAN . . . . .	384
SENEGAMBIA and WEST SUDAN . . . . .	385
LIBERIA . . . . .	386
UPPER GUINEA and the GOLD COAST . . . . .	387
INLAND COUNTRIES of the SUDAN (Futa-Jallon, Bambarra, Massina, Gando, Sokoto, Bornu, Baghirmi, Wadai) . . . . .	388
LOWER GUINEA . . . . .	389
PORTUGUESE WEST AFRICA . . . . .	390



G

122

J 72

1908



**A PHYSICAL,  
HISTORICAL, POLITICAL, & DESCRIPTIVE  
GEOGRAPHY**





# GEOGRAPHY :

## PHYSICAL AND DESCRIPTIVE.

---

### I. INTRODUCTORY CHAPTER.

#### DIRECTION AND DISTANCE.

1. THE first and most important question that Geography<sup>1</sup> has to answer is *where*? In order to answer this—to describe where any place or object is—it is necessary to understand what is meant by *direction* and *distance*.

If we go out into the open fields, the sky above appears like a vast dome that reaches down to the earth on all sides, forming a great circle in the centre of which we are standing. This circle, where earth and sky seem to meet, being the limit or boundary of what we can see, is called the horizon.<sup>2</sup>

Every morning the sun seems to rise near the same part of the horizon circle, and to climb slowly up into the arch of the sky during the day, descending again gradually till it disappears in the evening at a point opposite to that at which it was first seen.

If we watch this apparent movement of the sun across the sky from day to day, we shall soon notice that the sun appears in the same direction from us, or over the same house, or hill, or church, or wood, every day at noon, or when it is highest. The best way to convince ourselves of this will be to mark out on the ground, or on the floor of the room, the line of shadow thrown by any upright object—a post or a straight tree trunk, the corner of the house wall

<sup>1</sup> From Greek *gē* the earth, and *grapho* to write or describe.

<sup>2</sup> From Greek *orizo* to bound or limit.

or the side of the window—when the sun is highest, or when the shadow is shortest, and to watch the return of the shadow to this line at each midday.

2. That end of this midday or meridian<sup>1</sup> line that we have drawn, which points towards the sun at noon,<sup>2</sup> marks the direction called *south*; and the opposite end, towards which the shadow points at noon, shows the direction named the *north*.<sup>3</sup> That side of the house, or other object, which faces the sun and is lighted up by it at noon, is thus called the *south side*; the opposite one, which is in shade at twelve o'clock in the day, is the *north side*. Notice some prominent object, a tree, or spire, or hill, that lies north or south from where you are.

3. The point on the horizon circle near which the sun rises in the morning, midway between north and south on that side, is named the *east*; the opposite direction, that near which the sun sets in the evening, is called the *west*; the side of the house which faces the morning sun is thus the *east side*; that which looks towards

the sun setting the *west side*. We may mark out these directions by drawing a line at right angles across our north and south line.

4. The four directions thus laid down—north, south, east, and west—are named the *cardinal points of the compass*, and give the foundation of all geographical descriptions.



Fig. 1.

Midway between these cardinal points, secondary direction points are drawn, and are named from those between which they lie—*north-east*, between north and east; *south-east*, between south and east; *south-west*, between south and west; and *north-west*, between north and



Fig. 2.

<sup>1</sup> From Lat. *meridies*, midday

<sup>2</sup> In the northern hemisphere.

<sup>3</sup> To mark the meridian line with greater accuracy, set up a straight stick on a level piece of ground. Three or four hours before noon measure the length of its shadow on the ground with a piece of string, and from the bottom of the post as a centre describe a circle with this distance as radius. Observe where the end of the shadow touches this circle again in the afternoon, then the line joining the middle point between these two on the circle, and the bottom of the post, gives the line of the meridian.

west, as in this diagram ; and these should be marked between the cardinal points you have drawn on the ground.

5. The spaces between these secondary points are further divided and subdivided. The direction midway between north and north-east takes the names of these two directions, and becomes *north-north-east*; between north and north-north-east comes the point called *north by east*, and between north-north-east and north-east that named *north-east by north*, and so on. There are thus eight recognised *points* in each quarter of the circle, or thirty-two points in all. One of the first duties that a young sailor has to learn is that of "boxing the compass," or telling off these thirty-two points in order thus:—

NORTH.	SOUTH.
North by east.	South by west.
<u>North-north-east.</u>	South-south-west.
North-east by north.	South-west by south.
<i>North-east.</i>	<i>South-west.</i>
North-east by east.	South-west by west.
<u>East-north-east.</u>	West-south-west.
<u>East by north.</u>	West by south.
EAST.	WEST.
East by south.	West by north.
East-south-east.	West-north-west.
South-east by east.	North-west by west.
<i>South-east.</i>	<i>North-west.</i>
South-east by south.	North-west by north.
South-south-east.	North-north-west.
South by east.	North by west.
	NORTH.

And backward from north round by west to south and east.

6. As the whole circle is divided into 360 *degrees*,<sup>1</sup> each *quadrant* of the circle, or the arc between the cardinal points, between north and east for instance, comprises 90 degrees of the circle, and 90 degrees thus represents a right angle. Each degree is also subdivided into 60 *minutes*; and as there are eight minor spaces in each quadrant, the angle between two points is equal to  $11\frac{1}{4}$  degrees or eleven degrees fifteen minutes; marked thus,  $11^{\circ} 15'$ .

7. The compass that we have been drawing upon the ground from observation of the sun's position at noon must not be confused with the instrument called the *mariner's compass*, which is a divided card borne upon a magnetised needle that points towards the magnetic pole of the earth. This magnetic pole does not correspond to the true north of the earth, and is ever gradually changing its position, so that the mariner's compass is subject to an error called

<sup>1</sup> In the division most commonly employed, called the *sexagesimal scale*.

the *variation*. To find out the amount of this variation in the instrument, it would be necessary to mark out a true compass from observation of the sun, as we have been doing. The mariner's compass is thus an untrue guide unless its error is exactly known and allowed for, but we shall have no occasion to use it, or, indeed, any instrument or appliance other than we can readily make for ourselves.

8. If you have been watching the return of the shadow of the post or corner-wall from which you first got the direction of south to the same position every day at noon, you will have begun to notice that the length of the shadow has been gradually changing from day to day or from week to week. If you began to observe it in winter or spring, it will have become perceptibly shorter as summer came on; or if in summer, longer and longer through autumn towards winter. In other words, the sun's path across the sky will seem to have risen to form a higher arch towards summer, and to have sunk gradually to a lower and flatter one as winter approached.

You will have observed also, in watching the sunrise and sunset, that the places where the sun first appears in the morning and sinks beneath the horizon-circle in the evening, do not correspond<sup>1</sup> with the east and west points of the compass that we have drawn on the ground, except towards the end of March and September. They are a considerable distance to the north of these points in summer, when the arch of the sun's path is highest and longest, and a corresponding distance to the south of them in winter, when its path is lowest and shortest. As the changes of the *seasons* of the year, the causes of which we shall afterwards have to understand, depend upon these changes in the height of the apparent path of the sun, it is very important to become acquainted with them for ourselves by actual observation.

9. Perhaps the most convincing way to do this will be to make an outline sketch of that part of the horizon-circle which lies towards the sunrising or sunsetting, or both, from where you are living, and to mark upon this, each time that a clear sunrise or sunset is noticed, the position where the sun appears or disappears.

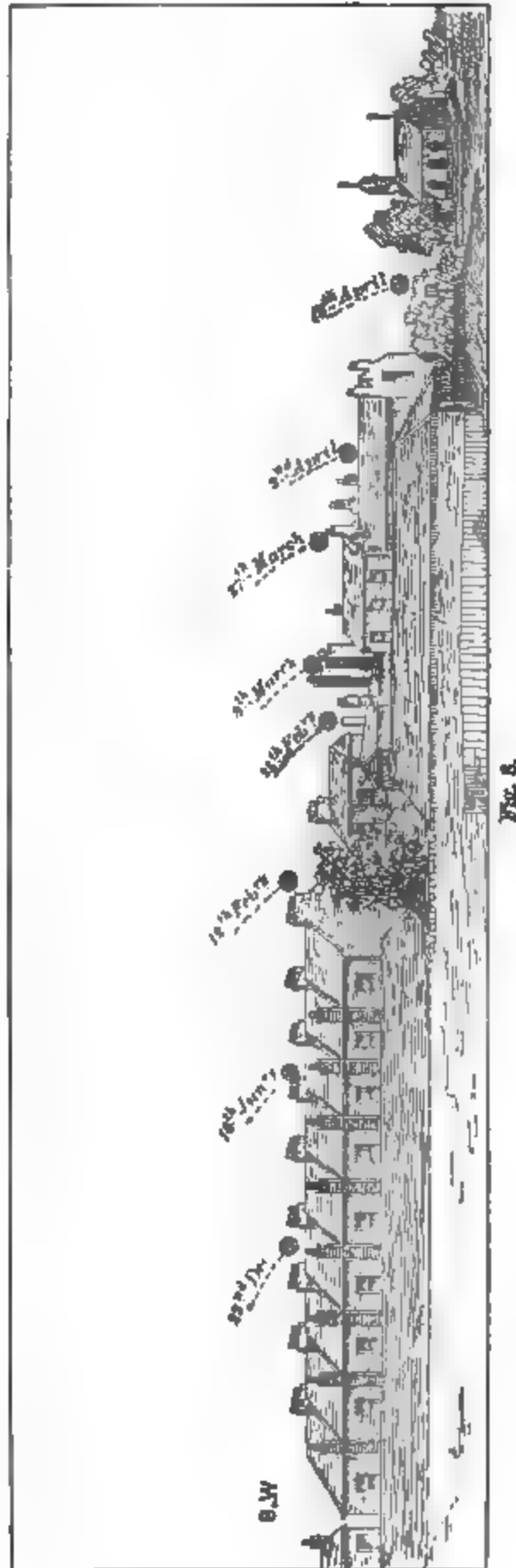
The accompanying sketch, upon which the positions of the sun at setting, from winter on towards summer, have been marked at various dates, will show what is meant.

10. If we go out and observe the heavens from night to night, we shall soon notice that though the different groups of stars (or

<sup>1</sup> Here in the British Isles. To an inhabitant of London the sun rises and sets due west and east on the 20th of March and again on the 23d of September, when day and night are of equal length.

constellations as they are called) exhibit always the same form and appearance, they change position from hour to hour, moving across the sky just as the sun does, but with this difference, that some of them are visible at all hours of every clear night, or do not set beneath the horizon, while others rise and set like the sun. If, for example, we watch the well-known group of stars commonly called from its shape the "Plough" or "Charles's wain" or "waggon," which the Romans called "Septem Triones," the seven ploughing oxen, we may see it in such a position as that marked (a) in the diagram on the following page; and if we look again some hours later it will have moved round to some position such as (b) or (c), or an intermediate one.<sup>1</sup> This constellation never sets beneath the horizon here in Britain, but, in the south of England, you will notice it just touching on the northern horizon, when it is at the lowest part of the circle through which it seems to pass in the sky. Others, such as the three bright stars of "Orion's belt," or the cluster of the "Pleiades," if you watch them, rise in the east and set on the western horizon like the sun,

<sup>1</sup> The celestial "waggon" thus goes backward.



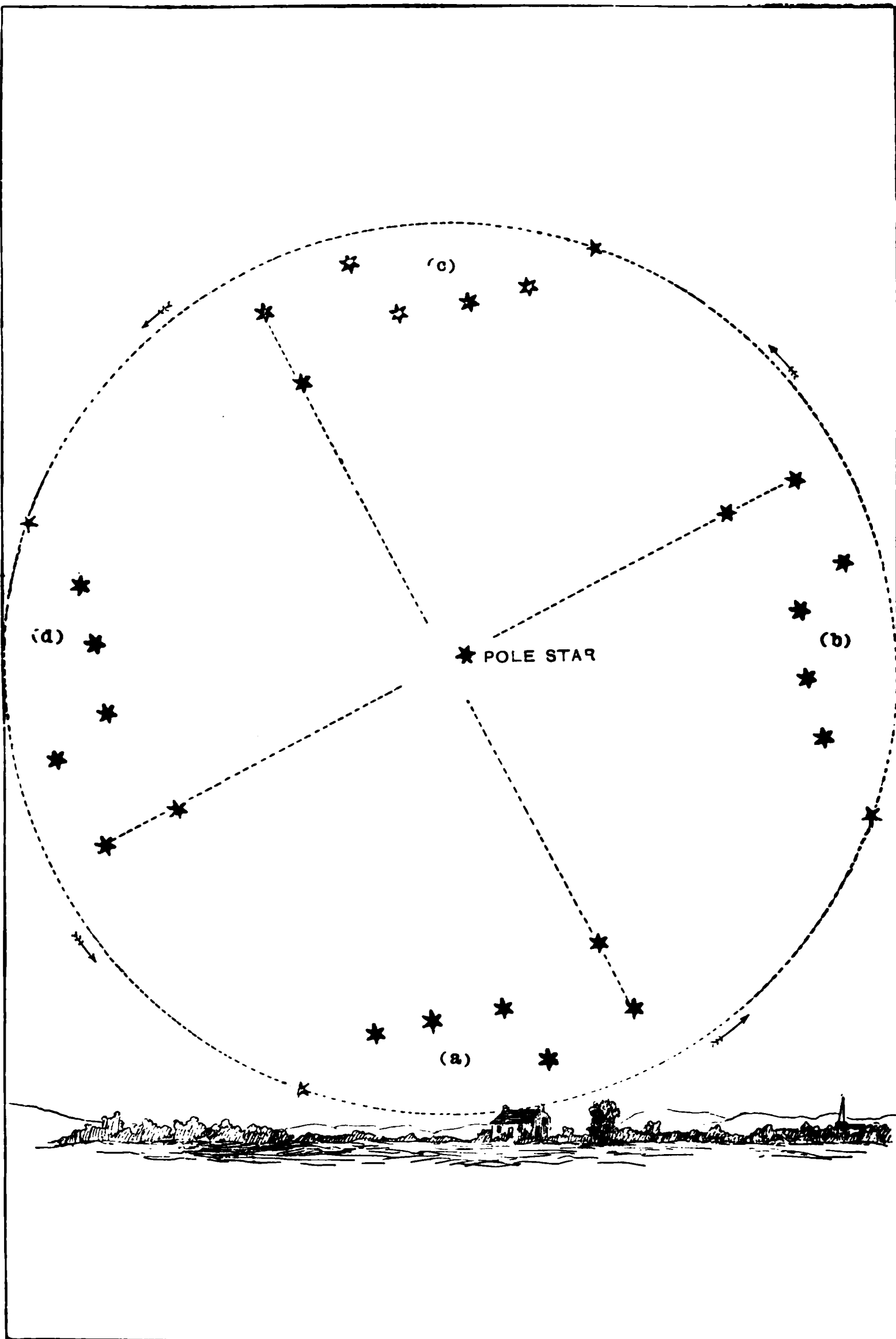


Fig. 4.

but the height of the arch they form in passing across the sky, unlike that of the sun, remains always the same.

11. Nearly at the centre of the circle which the Plough and the other stars seem to form in their course in the northern sky, is a star which remains always close to the same position, or immediately beside the centre or pole round which all the other stars seem to revolve. This is hence called the *Pole Star*, or the "North Star." Two of the brightest of the stars of the "Plough" or the "Wain"—the two which form the back of the imagined waggon or the face of the plough—are very nearly in line with this central star, and are called the *pointers*, because they point to it. If an imaginary line be drawn through these two stars, and produced onward till the extended part is nearly five times the length of the apparent distance between the pointers, as in the diagram, its extremity will fall close to the Pole star. There is no other star equally bright in its vicinity, so that it cannot readily be mistaken.

12. Being thus able to find the position of the Pole star, we are in possession of another means of determining the cardinal points of the compass at any place.<sup>1</sup> If overnight, out in the field or the garden, we set up two sticks so that a line joining them points in the direction of the Pole star, we shall find that they also point by day, in the opposite direction, to the sun at noon, or that they stand in the meridian line, north and south.

13. If, besides the *direction* of one point from another, we know the distance between the two, it becomes possible to define their relative position, and to represent this accurately on paper on a reduced scale. The most convenient measure of distance that we have is that of the pace<sup>2</sup> in walking, the distance between the heel of one foot and that of the other. In the army and among disciplined men the pace becomes of constant length, and is  $2\frac{1}{2}$  feet (30 inches) for ordinary marching, or about 2100 paces go to an English statute mile of 1760 yards. (Find out for yourself what is the average length of your pace in ordinary walking.)

14. Suppose now, for example, that there is a flagstaff in front of the doorway, and that the shadow of the post points directly to the door at noon, and that we find the distance from door to flagstaff to be 20 paces, we can say then that the staff is 20 paces *south* of the doorway, and the relative positions of the two objects are at once defined. In representing these relative positions on paper it is usual to assume that the top side of the paper is the northern, the bottom the southern, as the compass has been drawn (p. 4), the

<sup>1</sup> In the northern hemisphere.

<sup>2</sup> Lat. *passus*. The Roman pace, however, was the interval between one heel-mark and the next mark of the same heel, and was equivalent to 4·8 English feet.



right being the eastern and the left the western side. Then, taking any convenient distance to represent 20 paces, say 20 tenths of an inch, the places of the staff and the doorway would be laid down as in Fig. 5.

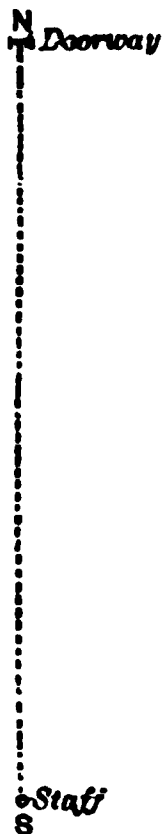


Fig. 5.

Or suppose that, from the place where we have drawn the compass on the ground, a tree, the corner of a wall, or any noticeable object, lies in the direction midway between the north and east points, and that it requires 15 paces to reach it, we would say that it stood 15 paces *north-east*, and its relative position would be represented on paper, to the same scale we used before, as in Fig. 6.

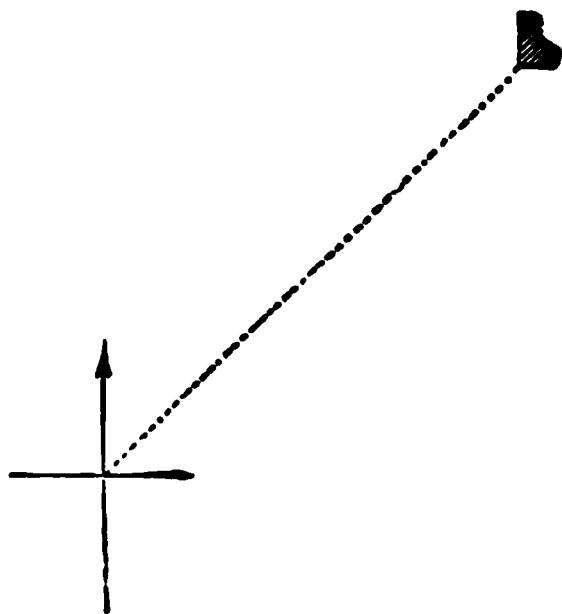


Fig. 6.

15. The reduced scale referred to above is a smaller distance chosen at will to represent the true or natural distance in *plotting* or laying down a representation of the relative position of two objects on paper. The true scale in the first of the above examples is one of paces, but to represent even a small number of these truly on paper would require an enormous sheet, and accordingly we have chosen a reduced scale, making one-tenth of an inch represent a pace. This reduced scale is said to be one three-hundredth ( $\frac{1}{300}$ ) of the natural scale; or any distance represented by it on paper must be multiplied by 300 to give the true length it represents, for we have found the pace to be 30 inches long, and have taken  $\frac{1}{30}$  of an inch to represent a pace.

### MAPPING.

16. We can now find roughly the direction and distance of any object, hence we are in a position to begin to make a ground-plan or map, which is just a representation in miniature of a part of the earth's surface.<sup>1</sup> We can find, for instance, from the points of the compass that we have drawn, or by making another, what are the directions of the walls of the room or of the fences of the garden or field, and by pacing along these we can get a sufficiently accurate measurement of their length.

<sup>1</sup> The African explorer Schweinfurth, after his instruments had been lost in the burning of his hut, made a survey of a large district of the Upper Nile by counting his paces and observing by the sun the direction of his marches.

Suppose, for example, that in the schoolroom the line of shadow thrown by the upright sash of the window at noon falls across the floor in the direction from the left corner of the window side of the room to the opposite corner, and we find on pacing it that the room is 10 paces square. We can tell then that its walls lie parallel to or in the same direction as the secondary points of the compass; that one with the window in it and the back wall run from north-west to south-east, and the two side walls from north-east to south-west. The *plan* of the room, drawn to the scale that we have used before, would then be as we have shown here, the dotted line representing the direction of the line of shadow at noon, and the stronger lines the walls.

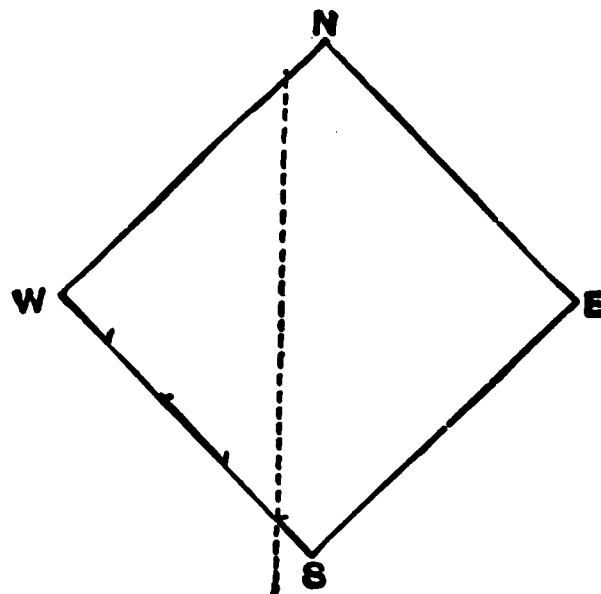


Fig. 7.

17. Or we may go out into the garden or the field, and make a plan of its outline in the same way. Suppose that, after marking out the compass in the middle of the field by means of the shadow at noon, or by the Pole star at night, we find that the fence which

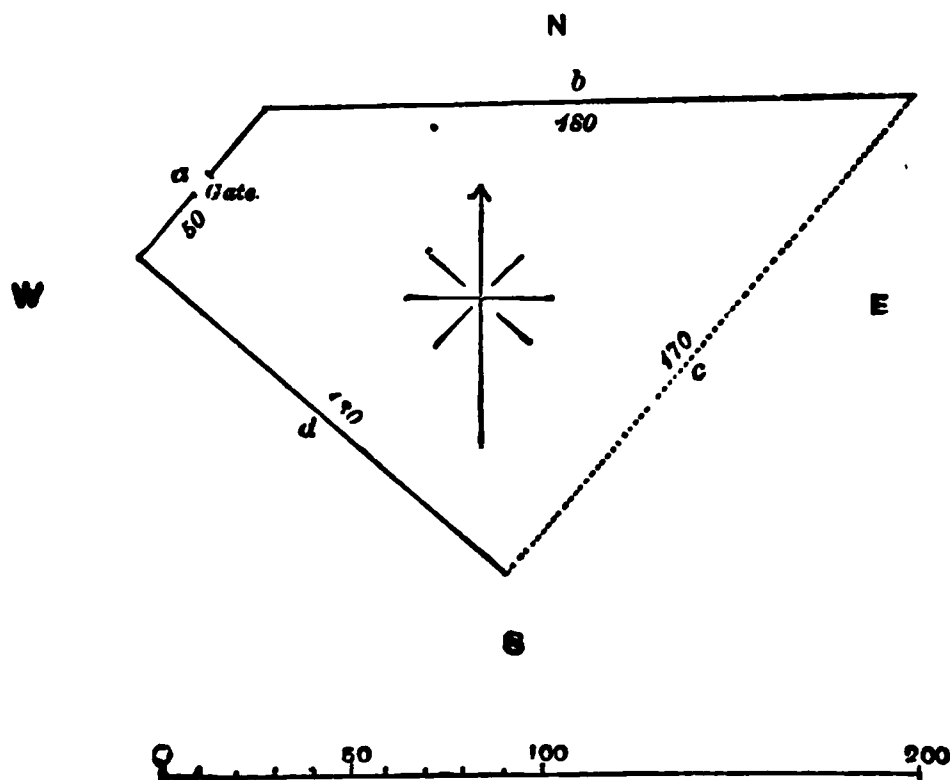


Fig. 8.

contains the entrance gate measures 50 paces, and that it lies in the direction north-east to south-west, we may draw it on paper, using a scale of an inch to represent 100 paces,<sup>1</sup> as shown by the line (a) Fig. 8. Next, pacing along the north wall, we find it to be 180 paces long, and that it lies as nearly as possible

east and west; its plan is then shown by the line (b). The third

<sup>1</sup> A larger scale should be used in practice. This reduced scale would be represented by the fraction  $\frac{1}{3000}$ , for in this case the hundredth part of an inch represents a pace of 30 inches long.

or south-east hedge proves, let us suppose, to have the same direction as the fence which has the gate in it, and is 170 paces long ; its plan will be the line (c) ; the fourth side lies south-east to north-west, and measures 130 paces, and is thus shown by the line (d) on the sketch.

18. Here then we have made a plan or map of the field, and have drawn it in its true geographical directions. The whole number of paces round its sides is 530, or about a quarter of a mile, on the supposition that each pace represents about  $2\frac{1}{2}$  feet. If now you note carefully what time it takes you to walk round its boundaries, you will gain another means of estimating any longer distance ; that is, by observing the *time* required to walk a quarter of a mile, or better, a whole mile, or four times round the field.

19. Knowing how to find for yourself the cardinal points of the compass on any clear day or night, and being in possession of two measures of distance (your pace, and the time it takes you to walk a mile), you are now in a position to begin to learn the geography of your own neighbourhood. What directions do the roads take from your house, and what villages or towns do you come to in following them ? What streams or rivers are there near you, in what directions do they flow, and where do they go to ? What lakes or canals ? What kind of country is it ? Are there any hills or mountains ? Is it wooded, or grassy, or under corn ? Are there any historical monuments in your neighbourhood, and what events do they recall ?

20. For example, let us take the neighbourhood of Battle in Sussex, where, on the 14th of October 1066, the Normans under William the Conqueror finally overthrew the Saxon dynasty in England, and where William, to commemorate his victory, founded a splendid abbey, the high altar of which was fixed on the spot where the standard of Harold fell.

From the grammar school above the town, beside the cross-roads, or better, from the height called Caldbec<sup>1</sup> Hill immediately behind it, where the windmill stands, and where the Watch Oak<sup>2</sup> stood, we have a fine view of all the country round, and away south over the undulating ridges and hollows, fields, meadows, and woods to the south, towards Eastbourne and the heights which run out to the white chalk cliffs of Beachy Head, enclosing Pevensey Bay, where the Normans landed and burnt their ships to prevent retreat. Watching the sun at noon from this height, it is seen nearly over Catsfield windmill, which stands prominently on one of the nearer

<sup>1</sup> Popularly "Callback Hill," a corruption of Caldbec, or Cold Brook, the name of a stream which flows from its slope.

<sup>2</sup> The name Watch Oak is probably derived from the times when beacons were erected upon eminences commanding views of the coast, in order to raise the country in case of invasion. — *Walcott*.

ridges between us and the sea. The south line then runs from Caldbec Hill a little to the left of Catsfield Mill, or, in technical language, the *bearing* of the mill from where we stand is south by west. Having fixed this main cardinal point, and having marked the compass out on the ground, we find that Black Horse Mill, which rises high and clear near the top of the ridge beyond the town and the abbey, is almost exactly in the direction of the south-east point. Here then we have three prominent objects, the directions of which from one another we know, to serve as a basis for our map. Before leaving the hill we may notice that the main street of the town descending the ridge into the valley, and the road towards Hastings continuing it up the opposite ascent, have nearly the same general direction as the line joining this point with Black Horse Mill, or that they run from north-west to south-east. This may serve for one day's work.

21. Another day, starting from the cross roads immediately under Caldbec Hill, we know that the south line runs close by Catsfield Mill, which we can see from this, and we can thus mark out a compass at once. Facing round with our backs to the south, we now note that the London road runs straight away in the opposite direction, and if we follow it a short way over the ridge we find it descending into the valley beyond, and climbing a farther ridge beyond, always in the same due north line.

Coming back to the cross roads it may be next observed that the Lewes road past the Drill Hall and on towards the "Union," runs along the top of the ridge neither due west nor south-west, but between these two directions, or west-south-west; and that the road down into the main street of Battle follows exactly the direction of the south-east point. On coming home we may begin our map by marking down these roads in their proper directions, as in Fig. 9.

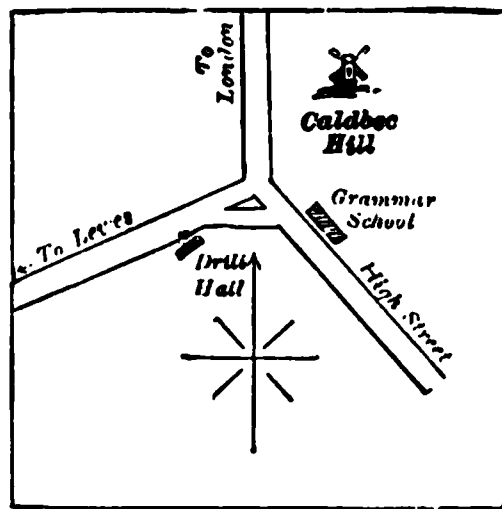


Fig. 9.

22. On another occasion, coming back to the cross roads, the measurement of the high road through Battle may be made. Starting with our backs to the finger-post pointing to the London and Lewes roads, and walking down the High Street, we note that 500 paces bring us to where Mount Street runs off to the left; from that, 350 paces more down through the main street, past the "George" in the same south-east direction, bring us to the open space called the Bull Ring, opposite the great towered gateway of the abbey. From

this point the road bends a little more to the east between the high wall of the abbey enclosure and St. Mary's churchyard, for a distance also of 350 paces; then it turns a little more to the right, or to the south-south-east, for 310 paces, down the hill to the toll-gate, where the road to the powder-mills runs off to the right; 200 paces more, south-east again, passing the road on the left which leads to the railway station, bring us to the bridge over the railway; and for 400 paces more we ascend the ridge in the same direction. Next there is a bend more to the east for 250 paces, then an east-south-east stretch of 750 paces up the hill, and 300 paces more, south-east again, bring us opposite the Black Horse Mill on the left of the road. From this height we can look back to Caldbec Hill and the ridge on which the town stands, down which we have come, remarking also the steep descent on each side of where we are now standing, down through Bodehurst<sup>1</sup> wood to the valley in which Sedlescomb lies on the right, and to the hollow between us and

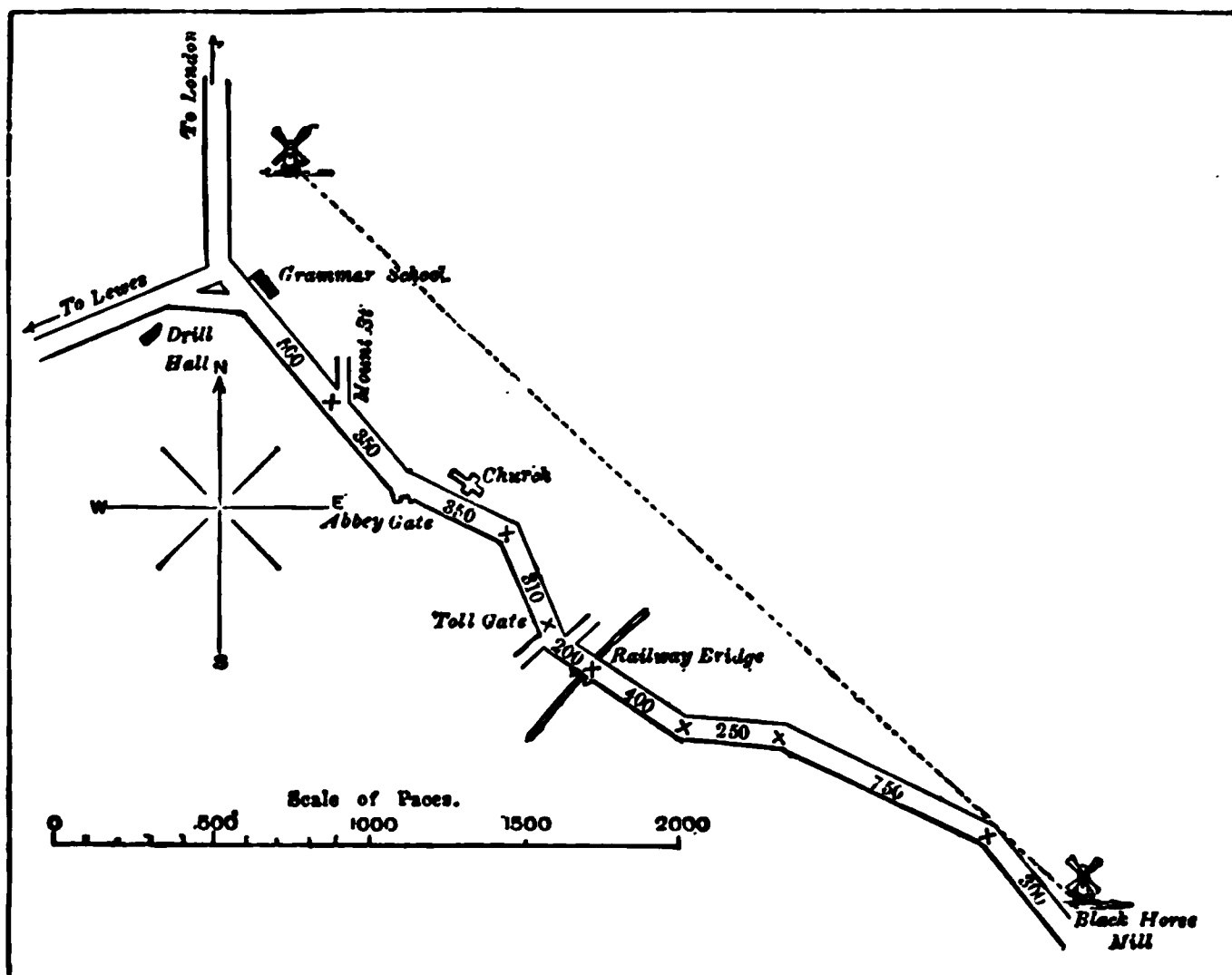


Fig. 10.

Telham<sup>2</sup> Hill on the left. We may also note that from this point Catsfield Mill is to our left, and that a line pointing towards it forms a right angle with the direction of Caldbec Hill. Catsfield

<sup>1</sup> Popularly Bathurst; Bodehurst = "the house in the thicker part of the wood."

<sup>2</sup> Tell = a round hill, and ham = a home.

Mill thus bears south-west from Black Horse Mill. This bearing, with that from the cross roads, will enable us to fix its position. Having noted down all the changes of direction, and the distances from point to point along the road (reckoned in paces), it will not be difficult to make a map of the road on paper at home, as shown (Fig. 10). Here, for convenience, a scale of about 1000 paces to an inch ( $\frac{1}{32000}$ ) has been adopted, but a much larger scale should be used in practice.

23. We have now made sure of the central line of our map, and it will be easy to extend it in any direction. Suppose we next follow the side road which we noticed branching off from the turnpike gate, nearly at right angles to the main highway, or south-west from it (see Fig. 11). We find that it goes straight in this direction for about 1600 paces along the slope of the Abbey Park, which rises up to the old dormitory buildings on the right, and we note the little stream which runs (also to south-west) nearly parallel with it in the hollow on the left. At the end of the long straight piece the road turns to the left or south for another 400 paces, to where it crosses the road which runs east and west up Telham Hill on the left, and up Camp Hill, through the hop-field on its steep slope, on the right towards Ninfield. At these cross roads we may notice that Caldbec Hill and the Catsfield windmill stand in almost exactly opposite directions from one another, and we know already that these two points are nearly north and south of one another, so that these cross roads are very nearly due south of Caldbec Hill or of the cross roads on the ridge near the Grammar School. This will test the accuracy of our measurements when we come to mark the road on our map; as it is a smaller road than the main highway, it should be shown by a narrower double line.

24. Another day we may add the pathway which leaves the main road at the wicket beside the Abbey gateway, leading south-west, south-south-west, and then south-south-east, round the height of the Abbey Park, to join the road to the powder-mills. In this walk the stream in the deep hollow on the right, formed between the height of the Abbey Park and the high ridge along the top of which the Lewes road extends, will be noticed, as well as the lake which receives it at the base of Camp Hill. We may afterwards go along the powder-mills road to mark the place where the stream from this lake, passing beneath the bridge on the Ninfield road, joins the other little south-west flowing stream that we formerly noted running alongside the road from the turnpike. This is called in geographical language the *confluence* of the streams. Their *right* and *left* banks are those which rise on the right hand and on the left as we look in the direction in which the stream is flowing.

After the confluence the united streams form another lake, and thence, by the old powder-mills (now made into hop-kilns) on the left bank, run away south and south-east.

25. For another walk we may take the east road up Telham Hill, and add this to our map. On the way up the slope, at about 1000 paces from the cross roads, we come to the bridge over the very deep cutting which has been made to let the railway pass, and notice that the line at this point lies nearly north and south, or at right angles to the road. Knowing the position of this bridge, we shall be able to draw on our map the line of railway between it and the bridge on the main highway, using a sign that will distinguish the railway from an ordinary road. As we climb higher up the ridge we have a distinct view across the hollow which separates us from the opposite height on which the Abbey stands, and of the ridges on each side of it. From this point also we can form the best idea of the battle-field. It was on the rounded slope now crowned by the Abbey, and on the ridge beneath Caldbec Hill, that Harold's Saxon Camp was pitched, guarding the only road to London.<sup>1</sup> On reaching the end of the road up Telham Hill we find ourselves on the main road to Hastings, and returning by this way towards Battle we may note that the Telham Hill or Ninfield road branches off just 900 paces above, or south-east of, the Black Horse Mill.

26. Another day we may add Mount<sup>2</sup> Street to the map, noting how it runs north along the side of the ridge, and then bends north-east away to Whatlington. Going up again from this to the wind-mill on Caldbec Hill, let us look this time more particularly at the

<sup>1</sup> The Normans (about 60,000 men) coming up from the coast at Pevensey, are believed to have first unfurled their flag at Standard Hill, near Ninfield, a few miles to the south-west of us, and to have marched thence, perhaps along the very line of the road on which we are standing, to take up their positions here on Camp Hill and along the slope of Telham Hill, or Hechelands, opposite the Saxon camp. Their ships had been burned behind them, so "that their only hope might lie in their courage and resolution, their only safety in victory." . . . "When the Normans had given the signal of battle the first encounter began with a flight of arrows from both armies for some time; then, setting foot to foot, they fought man to man, and maintained the battle a long while. But when the English, with admirable courage and bravery, had received their fiercest onset, the Norman horse furiously charged them with full career. When neither of these could break the army, they (the Normans), as they had before agreed, retreated, but kept their ranks in good order. The English, thinking they fled, broke their ranks, and without keeping any order, pressed hard upon the enemy; but they, rallying their forces, charged afresh on every side with the thickest of them, and, encompassing them round, repulsed them with a mighty slaughter. Yet the English, having gotten the higher ground, stood out for a long time, till Harold himself was shot through with an arrow, and fell down dead. Then they presently turned their backs and betook themselves every man to flight."

"The Norman, proud and haughty with this victory, in memory of the battle erected an abbey . . . in that place where Harold, after many wounds, died amongst the thickest of his enemies, that it might be, as it were, the eternal monument of the Norman victory. About this abbey there grew up afterwards a town of the same name."—(Camden's *Britannia*.)

<sup>2</sup> Originally Montjoye, probably a memorial of the spot whither William rode in triumph at the conclusion of the battle, and of a mound of stones raised to commemorate it.—*Walcott*.

*relief* or rise and fall of the ground with which we have now become familiar. Evidently this, and the top of the ridge along which the Hastings road passes beyond the Black Horse Mill, are the highest parts of the ground. Between these heights, the ridge on which the town stands runs down to meet that up which the Hastings road ascends beyond the railway. To right and left of the town ridge are deep rounded hollows. That on the right we have already remarked from the Lewes road, and from the pathway round the Abbey Park; the other descends immediately from Mount Street, and if we go down to the churchyard we can have a full view of it from behind the church. From this hollow the stream named the Caldbec runs away to the north-east, and we know that the stream passing the powder-mills flows south from the opposite hollow. The main street of Battle thus forms the *water-parting* of the streams of the district. When rain falls over it the rills which run down on one side of the highway go to join the powder-mills stream, and if we followed this down we should find it reaching the sea close to St. Leonard's. The rain which falls on the opposite side of the street is drained off into the hollow from which the Caldbec flows to join other streamlets in forming the river that reaches the Channel near Winchelsea.

27. Having gained a clear idea of the form of the ground in repeated walks, we may now begin to mark out the relief of the district on our map, using what are termed *hachures*, or short lines placed in the direction of the slope, and made stronger and placed closer together where the slope is steeper and higher, as shown in the sketch. This done, the map may be completed by marking in the blocks of houses along the roads, and by writing the names of the more prominent objects opposite to each.

28. If we wished to represent the rise and fall of the ground along any particular line in a more distinct way than can be done by mapping, we should have recourse to what is called a *section* on that line. Take the line of road between the Grammar School and Black Horse Mill for example. We have noticed in going over it that the road descends evenly down the High Street to the space in front of the Abbey gate, that from the Bull Ring on past St. Mary's Church it is nearly level, and that it descends from there more rapidly to the toll-gate. Here again there is a more level piece, after which the road begins to ascend again over the railway bridge, and up the undulating ridge towards the Black Horse Mill. Looking back from this point, it is evident that we are upon higher ground than that on which the Grammar School stands. Without careful measurements by means of an instrument called a *level* or levelling telescope, we cannot find out very accurately the differences



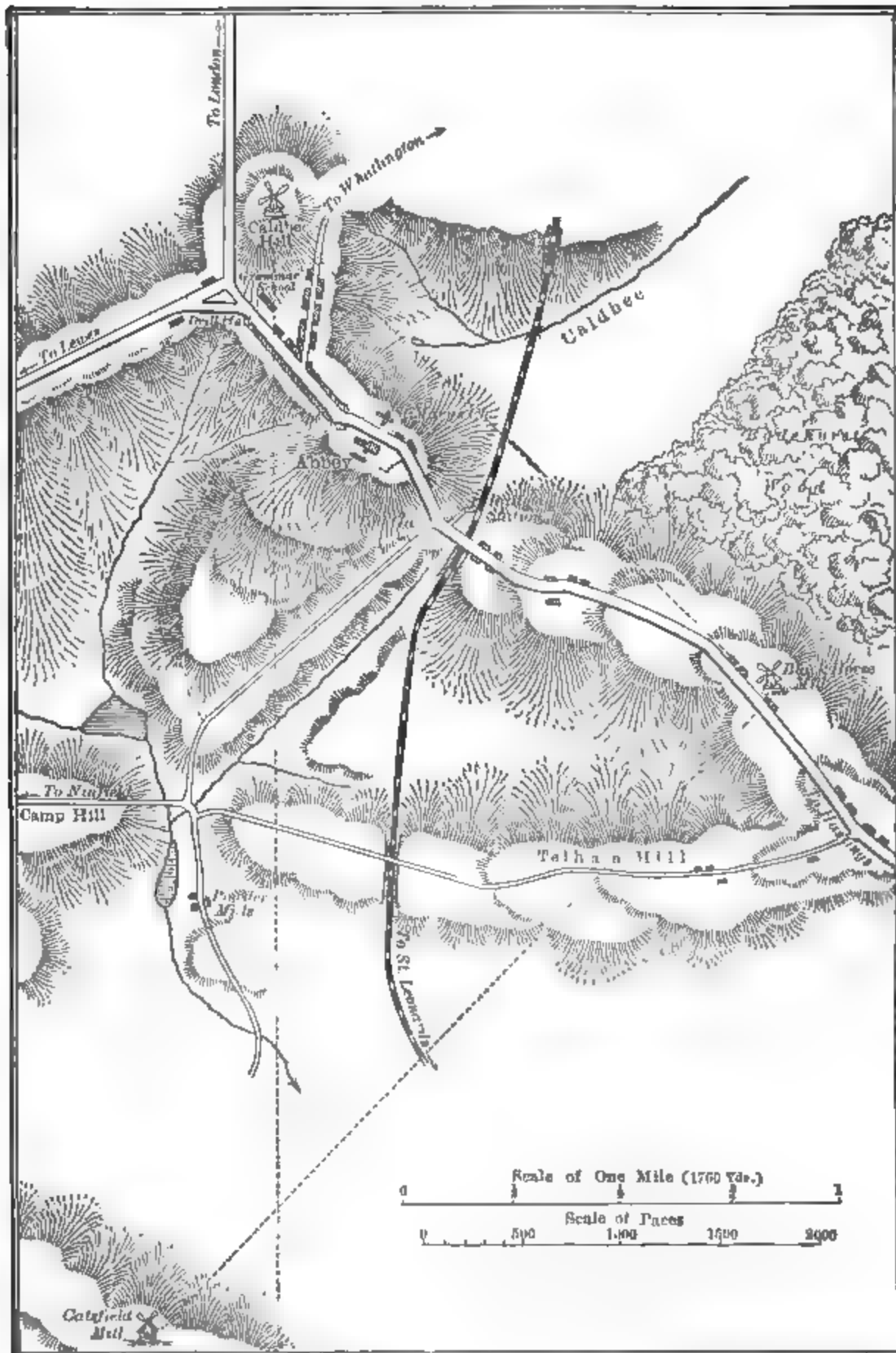


Fig. 11.

of height of each point along the road ; but we can get a very good general idea of the form of the ground without this. The part of the road before the railway bridge was reached was evidently the *lowest* ground that we passed over, for the road ascended on each side of it, and we may assume that the cross roads near the Grammar School are about 150 feet, and the road at the Black Horse Mill about 200 feet above this point. To represent a section of the road between these points, then, we may draw a horizontal line of the same length as their distance on our map (3400 paces of the scale), and suppose this line to represent the lowest level, or the level of the road at the toll-gate (upper section, Fig. 12). The left and right ends of this line will then represent the horizontal distance between the cross roads and the base of Black Horse Mill ; and distances along it of 850, 350, 310, and 200 paces, measured from the left end, will show the horizontal distances<sup>1</sup> of the Bull Ring, the level past the church, the toll-gate, and the railway bridge. We then measure off a distance of 150 feet (or 60 paces of the scale), and mark this distance upward vertically from the left end of the line we have drawn, to represent the level of the cross roads. Next a distance of 200 feet (or 80 paces of the scale), marked up from the right end of the line, will show the height of the road at the Black Horse Mill above the lowest part. Between these highest levels and the lowest midway we can now draw an evenly-sloping line to above that point on the horizontal line which indicates the distance of the Bull Ring, to represent the uniform descent of the High Street ; then a level part to show the flat road past St. Mary's church ; and then a slope again down to touch the horizontal line at the lowest level near the railway ; and from that an undulating line sloping upward to represent the rise of the Hastings road to the Black Horse Mill, as shown below. Here then we have an imaginary view of the profile

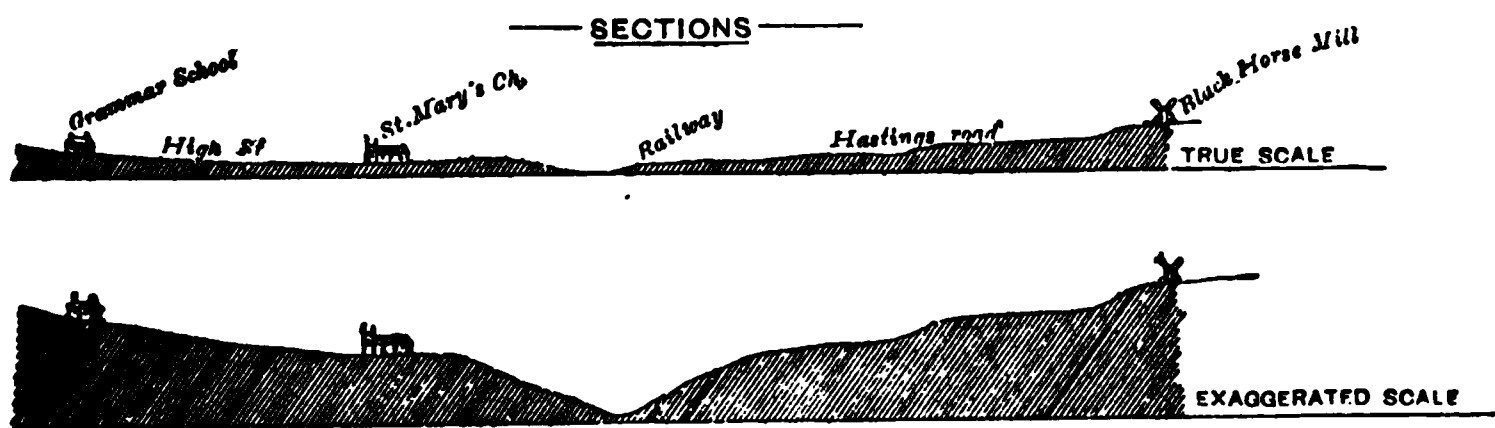


Fig. 12.

of the road as it would appear if we had cut down the ground all

<sup>1</sup> The horizontal distances are strictly somewhat less than those measured along the sloping ground ; but for our present purpose this difference may be disregarded.

along it on one side to the level of the lowest part of it. This is called a *section to a true scale*, for we have used the same scale in representing the horizontal and the vertical heights. In most cases where sections are drawn, however, a larger scale is used to represent the vertical heights than is employed to show the horizontal distance, for by so doing each smaller rise and fall of the ground is brought out more distinctly. The lower section, Fig. 12, in which the vertical distances have been exaggerated four times, the horizontal scale remaining the same, will make this evident. It is important to bear this in mind in looking at any section that one may meet with in books or maps, and to inquire first of all what relation the vertical scale bears to the horizontal one: if these are the same, we have a true profile; if they are different, then this difference must be clearly understood to prevent erroneous impressions.

29. For practice in mapping, the following examples may be worked out on the slate or on paper, using a scale of about four inches to represent 1000 paces; but the practical mapping of a part of your own neighbourhood, in the manner above shown, should in no case be neglected.

1. At a point which we shall call (*a*) on a road which runs due east and west, or at right angles to the direction of the sun at noon, a church spire is noticed bearing due north from us, and a hill top south-east. Walking eastward along the road for 1000 paces, it is noticed that the church spire now bears north-west, and going on another 500 paces, the direction of the hill is at right angles to the road, or due south. What are the distances of the church and of the hill from the point (*a*)?

2. Draw a rough map from the following notes:—<sup>1</sup>

Ship anchored opposite a small bay. Rowed on shore to west point of bay, and ascended knoll at end of low line of hills which extends along the coast towards north-west. Call the knoll (*a*). From it ship distant 6000 yards bearing south-east. The opposite headland of bay (call it *e*) bears exactly east. From knoll look to north and east across a valley with small stream, and hills beyond, on which note two peaks; one (call it *c*) bears due north, other (call it *d*) bears north-north-east. Head of bay bears north-east. Walked along hills from (*a*), moving north-west, and at 3000 yards observed peak (*d*) bearing north-east. On the left the coast was distant 1000 yards. Went on in same direction (north-west), 3000 yards more, and came to point (*b*) on the line of hills extending from (*a*); (*b*) is top of cliff rising abruptly from sea. Beyond it coast-line goes off, bearing west-north-west. At (*b*) observed bearing to peak (*c*) north-east. From (*b*) turned to right, and walked due east 4250 yards, when I found myself with knoll (*a*) bearing due south, and peak (*c*) due north. Going on 1000 yards more, crossed the stream, which came down from the north-west, and flowed off into the sea on the bearing of the ship, which we saw about five miles off (8800 yards). Going on in the same direction 2000 yards more, peak (*d*) was seen to bear due north. Another

---

<sup>1</sup> From one of the examination papers for the prize medal of the Royal Geographical Society.

1250 yards brought us to head of bay ; the ship now bearing nearly due south, and the east headland of the bay (*e*) bearing south-east. The whole distance from (*b*) to the head of the bay had been 8500 yards. The bay from this point curved slightly round on either side to the headlands (*a*) and (*e*). This line of hills on which were peaks (*c*) and (*d*) ran round and ended in the headland (*e*).

3. Draw a section of the ground from the following data, to a true and an exaggerated vertical scale :—

Leaving the house, walked up a path which leads up by a steep slope to the top of a hill ; descended the opposite undulating slope to a bridge over a stream in the bottom of a wide valley ; ascended an opposite gentle and uniform slope to the top of a vertical cliff overlooking the sea. The horizontal distance from the house to the top of the hill was 750 paces, from the hill-top to the bridge 1400 paces, and from the bridge to the top of the cliff 1800 paces. The house is 200 feet, the hill 480, the bridge over stream 50, and the cliff 250 feet above the sea-level.

## II. SKETCH OF HISTORICAL GEOGRAPHY.

### 1. 1000–450 B.C.

In exactly the same way as you have been gathering information about your own home country, all the knowledge that we yet possess about the surface of the world we live in has been gradually gained. The geographers of ancient times, beginning with the district in which they lived, little by little extended the circle of their knowledge both by their own journeys and by studying the accounts given by travellers and voyagers outward from that known centre, learning from them what directions they had taken, whether towards the sunrising or sunsetting, the north or the south ; and the times and distances between one point and another of the route ; and by laying down these itineraries on their maps.

Little by little the clouds of ignorance were thus rolled backwards, till knowledge spreading westward joined that which had grown out eastward round the globe. Though in our own day the unknown has been chased into the most inaccessible corners of the earth, the same process of extending knowledge is in progress, and geographers of the present day are ever gathering accounts of new journeys past the borders of the unknown regions, each of which contributes a little towards the removal of the darkness which still hangs over these “ends of the earth.”

We shall perhaps gain the best idea of the gradual expansion of knowledge if we go back nearly to the earliest times of which we have any definite historical accounts, and from that as a starting-

point, picture to ourselves the world as known to the more civilised nations, at intervals up to the present time.

The little maps which have been designed to accompany these chapters exhibit the known world at twelve such periods; an appearance of cloud covers the skirts of each, leaving unveiled only those lands and seas which were the scene of the recorded events of history, and this lifts or rolls back as the limits of knowledge gradually extend. Each is on the same scale, and on each the different States and Empires of the period are marked out as far as the scale will admit, so that they combine at a glance the geography and history of the ages to which they refer, and from one to another the rise and fall of the great kingdoms of the world may be traced.

### 1. ABOUT 1000-450 B.C.

1. In the earliest times of which we have any records, the more civilised nations of the world were those inhabiting the shores of the Mediterranean Sea, and there accordingly the great events of ancient history have their scenes. The commerce, and along with that the geographical knowledge, of the Egyptians, the Phœnicians and Carthaginians, the Greeks and Romans, all centred and spread outward from the deep bays and harbours of that inland sea.

The Phœnicians especially, the old inhabitants of the fertile country which slopes down from Mount Lebanon to the eastern coast of the Mediterranean, where *Sidon* and *Tyre* were great seaports, were the sailors and traders of early times. Within the space of three centuries (from about B.C. 1300 to 1000) they explored all the islands and shores of the Mediterranean, and covered these with their forts, factories, and cities, while their ships ploughed the sea in all directions. They colonised Cyprus, and, after mastering the rich islands of the Ægean, sailed farther west to Sicily and Sardinia, founding also the city of Carthage, destined to be the centre of an opulent and powerful state on the North African coast, which grew in greatness as the golden age of the mother country of Phœnicia began to wane. From Sardinia and the Balearic Isles these indefatigable explorers pushed farther on through the narrow Strait of Gibraltar into the wide Atlantic, building the town of Gades (the present Cadiz) on the south-west of Spain in a country which gave them fabulous wealth of silver, iron, and lead; boldly venturing northward across the stormy Bay of Biscay, they reached the tin-yielding coasts of Cornwall, and loaded their ships with cargoes of that metal at the Scilly Isles. Sailing southward also from the gates of the Mediterranean, they discovered the islands we now know as the Canaries, obtaining from their shores the shell-fish which yielded the costly Tyrian purple. It was in this direction also that *Hanno*, the Carthaginian, led a famous expedition, consisting, it is said, of 60 ships, with 30,000 men and women on board of them, to extend discovery along the African coasts and to found Phœnician towns and colonies. In this voyage Hanno went south perhaps as far as our present colony of Sierra Leone. Himilco, commanding another fleet, starting from Gades, coasted Spain and Gaul, and reached Great Britain, which he calls *Alfionn* (Albion) and *Ierne*, a sacred island of the west, the modern Ireland.

While some of their navigators were thus exploring the coasts of the Mediterranean and the Atlantic, others seem to have found their way out by

THE KNOWN WORLD - ABOUT B.C. 450.



London: Edward Stanford, 12, 13 & 14, Long Acre, W.C.

44

the narrow Red Sea to the Indies, and the overland caravans carrying their manufactures appear to have made them acquainted with all the lands eastward of Syria and Palestine.

2. One of the oldest descriptions of the world that has been preserved to our times is that of the Greek historian, traveller, and geographer, Herodotus, who lived about 450 (484-405 years before Christ, at the time when Greek art was at its zenith. With Athens and Greece for a centre, he describes the countries immediately surrounding the Mediterranean, and shows that knowledge had then spread out north and eastward to the regions beyond the Black Sea and the Caspian, to Persia and the confines of India and the Arabian Sea. Yet, strange to say, the name of Rome, which at that time was a flourishing city, is not mentioned once, and of the Phœnician and Carthaginian discoveries outside the Pillars of Hercules he had but an imperfect idea. He was minutely acquainted, however, with Greece, the *Ægean* islands, and Asia Minor; he travelled also to Phœnicia, through Egypt as far as the Cataracts of the Nile, to Arabia and Mesopotamia, and saw the Euphrate and Tigris, and the cities of *Babylon* and *Ecbatana*. Africa is described by him as being surrounded by the sea, except where it borders on Asia.

3. In the century previous to that in which he lived, the Persians under Cyrus had established a mighty empire which extended beyond the present area of Persia to the Indies on the east, and westward over Asia Minor and Syria. The ancient empires of Assyria and Babylonia also fell under the dominion of Cyrus, and his successors extended the Persian Empire to Phœnicia, Cyprus, and Egypt. Thrace and Macedonia were also added to the empire, but the attempts to subdue Greece, made only a year or two before the birth of Herodotus, were completely failed. Three successive invasions of Greece ended disastrously for Persia: in the first the invading fleet was shipwrecked off *Mount Aulæ*; the second was pushed back at *Marathon*; and the third, under Xerxes, was repulsed at the pass of *Thermopyla*, at *Salamis*, and at *Platæa*.

4. At the period of our first little chart, then, the decadence of the great Persian Empire had already begun. Greece was becoming a strong power, and had flourishing colonies all round the Mediterranean and Black Sea, at *Syracuse* in Sicily, on the southern shore of Italy, at *Massilia* (the present Marseilles), on the coast of Spain, at *Cyrene* in North Africa, at Cyprus, at *Byzantium* (Constantinople), on the Thracian coast, at *Tenedos* (Kadiköy near the Cimmerian Bosphorus), in the Tauric Chersonese (Crimea), and at many points between these.

Carthage had already risen from its condition of a colony to that of a great independent state, which held all the North African coast west of Cyrenaica, the rich country of *Taressus* (Bætyl, Almatree), and the gate of the Mediterranean between. The Carthaginians had come in contact with the Greeks in Sicily, and in their first trial of strength the Carthaginian army under Hamilcar had been defeated. Rome had been founded for perhaps 300 years. Already the Romans had taken the lead in Italy, and the Republic was in constant warfare with its neighbours on all sides—the southern Etruscans, the Volscians, and the *Æoli*.

Thus the great events of this period were clustered round the Mediterranean shores. As yet the unknown peoples of the west and north beyond these were vaguely called the *Hyperboreans* by the Greeks, "the dwellers beyond the north wind;" and eastward beyond Persia and the Indies Herodotus could only mark "unknown deserts" on his map.



## 2. 450-325 B.C.

1. With the defeats that resulted in the attempts to subdue Greece, the decadence of the great Persian Empire may be said to have begun, and it now became a prey to internal conflicts. One of the most memorable of these was the revolt and expedition of the younger Cyrus against his brother the emperor Artaxerxes, which led to the battle of *Cunaxa* (401 B.C.), near Babylon, in which Cyrus was slain, and from which Xenophon made his adventurous retreat at the head of the ten thousand Greek mercenaries who had joined the expedition of Cyrus. Civil wars had also broken out between the States of Greece, and soon after the date of the battle of *Cunaxa* the Spartans gained the ascendancy over the Athenian State, which had been the ruling one at the period of the Persian invasions. These troubles gave occasion for the interference of Macedonia, a State which lay to the north of Thessaly, on the outskirts of the Greek nations, and which had recovered its independence of the Persians after the battle of *Platea*.

2. Under Philip II. Macedonia grew in prosperity and power; he subdued the southern Greek States, was appointed general of all the Greek forces against Persia, and was preparing for an invasion of that country when he was assassinated (B.C. 336). His son, Alexander, not yet twenty years of age, then ascended the throne, and took up the command of the forces levied against Persia. After putting down several revolts at home with a strong hand, he crossed the Hellespont<sup>1</sup> (334 B.C.) with 30,000 foot and 5000 horse, attacked and defeated the Persians at the river Granicus (*Koja Chai*). To this succeeded a victorious march through Asia Minor to the defiles of the Cilician mountains, in which Darius III. had stationed his army. At *Issus*, a seaport at the head of the gulf of Iskenderun (from Iskender = Alexander), the famous battle was fought, in which the treasures as well as the family of Darius fell into the hands of the conqueror, the king himself fleeing to the Euphrates. The whole country eastward now lay open before him, and he turned south towards Phœnicia and Syria, occupying Damascus, and conquering Tyre. Advancing to Egypt, he was welcomed there as a deliverer from the Persian yoke, and founded *Alexandria* in the Nile Delta (331 B.C.), which became one of the greatest cities of ancient times.

3. In Africa Alexander advanced as far through the Libyan desert as the oasis in which dwelt the oracle of Jupiter Ammon (Siwah), and returning thence eastward, went against Darius, who had collected a new army in the plain of Mesopotamia. The decisive battle near *Arbela*, a small town east of Mosul, opened the way to Babylon and Susa, and to *Persepolis*, the capital of Persia, which was entered in triumph. Thence Alexander pursued Bessus, a satrap of Bactriana (the modern Balkh), through Iran or Persia proper, across the Oxus to Sogdiana (Bokhara), and penetrated to the farthest known limits of Asia, defeating the Scythian barbarians (probably the ancestors of the later *Turks*) on the banks of the Jaxartes.

4. Two years later, Alexander proceeded to the conquest of India, then known only by name to Europeans. He crossed the river Indus near the modern *Attock*, and marched through the land now known as the Panjab, Turning at the Hyphasis (the modern Satlej), he caused a fleet to be built, in which he sent one division of his army down the stream, another section following the banks of the river, and fighting its way through successive Indian hosts. Having at length reached the ocean, he ordered one division to sail to the Persian Gulf, while he led another back through the fearful deserts of

---

<sup>1</sup> Dardanelles.

ABOUT A.C. 325



Location: Edward Street, 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 138, 139, 140, 141, 142, 143, 144, 145, 146, 147, 148, 149, 150, 151, 152, 153, 154, 155, 156, 157, 158, 159, 160, 161, 162, 163, 164, 165, 166, 167, 168, 169, 170, 171, 172, 173, 174, 175, 176, 177, 178, 179, 180, 181, 182, 183, 184, 185, 186, 187, 188, 189, 190, 191, 192, 193, 194, 195, 196, 197, 198, 199, 200, 201, 202, 203, 204, 205, 206, 207, 208, 209, 210, 211, 212, 213, 214, 215, 216, 217, 218, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 224, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229, 230, 231, 232, 233, 234, 235, 236, 237, 238, 239, 240, 241, 242, 243, 244, 245, 246, 247, 248, 249, 250, 251, 252, 253, 254, 255, 256, 257, 258, 259, 260, 261, 262, 263, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 288, 289, 290, 291, 292, 293, 294, 295, 296, 297, 298, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 306, 307, 308, 309, 310, 311, 312, 313, 314, 315, 316, 317, 318, 319, 320, 321, 322, 323, 324, 325, 326, 327, 328, 329, 330, 331, 332, 333, 334, 335, 336, 337, 338, 339, 340, 341, 342, 343, 344, 345, 346, 347, 348, 349, 350, 351, 352, 353, 354, 355, 356, 357, 358, 359, 360, 361, 362, 363, 364, 365, 366, 367, 368, 369, 370, 371, 372, 373, 374, 375, 376, 377, 378, 379, 380, 381, 382, 383, 384, 385, 386, 387, 388, 389, 390, 391, 392, 393, 394, 395, 396, 397, 398, 399, 400, 401, 402, 403, 404, 405, 406, 407, 408, 409, 410, 411, 412, 413, 414, 415, 416, 417, 418, 419, 420, 421, 422, 423, 424, 425, 426, 427, 428, 429, 430, 431, 432, 433, 434, 435, 436, 437, 438, 439, 440, 441, 442, 443, 444, 445, 446, 447, 448, 449, 450, 451, 452, 453, 454, 455, 456, 457, 458, 459, 460, 461, 462, 463, 464, 465, 466, 467, 468, 469, 470, 471, 472, 473, 474, 475, 476, 477, 478, 479, 480, 481, 482, 483, 484, 485, 486, 487, 488, 489, 490, 491, 492, 493, 494, 495, 496, 497, 498, 499, 500, 501, 502, 503, 504, 505, 506, 507, 508, 509, 510, 511, 512, 513, 514, 515, 516, 517, 518, 519, 520, 521, 522, 523, 524, 525, 526, 527, 528, 529, 530, 531, 532, 533, 534, 535, 536, 537, 538, 539, 540, 541, 542, 543, 544, 545, 546, 547, 548, 549, 550, 551, 552, 553, 554, 555, 556, 557, 558, 559, 560, 561, 562, 563, 564, 565, 566, 567, 568, 569, 570, 571, 572, 573, 574, 575, 576, 577, 578, 579, 580, 581, 582, 583, 584, 585, 586, 587, 588, 589, 590, 591, 592, 593, 594, 595, 596, 597, 598, 599, 600, 601, 602, 603, 604, 605, 606, 607, 608, 609, 610, 611, 612, 613, 614, 615, 616, 617, 618, 619, 620, 621, 622, 623, 624, 625, 626, 627, 628, 629, 630, 631, 632, 633, 634, 635, 636, 637, 638, 639, 640, 641, 642, 643, 644, 645, 646, 647, 648, 649, 650, 651, 652, 653, 654, 655, 656, 657, 658, 659, 660, 661, 662, 663, 664, 665, 666, 667, 668, 669, 670, 671, 672, 673, 674, 675, 676, 677, 678, 679, 680, 681, 682, 683, 684, 685, 686, 687, 688, 689, 690, 691, 692, 693, 694, 695, 696, 697, 698, 699, 700, 701, 702, 703, 704, 705, 706, 707, 708, 709, 710, 711, 712, 713, 714, 715, 716, 717, 718, 719, 720, 721, 722, 723, 724, 725, 726, 727, 728, 729, 730, 731, 732, 733, 734, 735, 736, 737, 738, 739, 740, 741, 742, 743, 744, 745, 746, 747, 748, 749, 750, 751, 752, 753, 754, 755, 756, 757, 758, 759, 760, 761, 762, 763, 764, 765, 766, 767, 768, 769, 770, 771, 772, 773, 774, 775, 776, 777, 778, 779, 780, 781, 782, 783, 784, 785, 786, 787, 788, 789, 790, 791, 792, 793, 794, 795, 796, 797, 798, 799, 800, 801, 802, 803, 804, 805, 806, 807, 808, 809, 810, 811, 812, 813, 814, 815, 816, 817, 818, 819, 820, 821, 822, 823, 824, 825, 826, 827, 828, 829, 830, 831, 832, 833, 834, 835, 836, 837, 838, 839, 840, 841, 842, 843, 844, 845, 846, 847, 848, 849, 850, 851, 852, 853, 854, 855, 856, 857, 858, 859, 860, 861, 862, 863, 864, 865, 866, 867, 868, 869, 870, 871, 872, 873, 874, 875, 876, 877, 878, 879, 880, 881, 882, 883, 884, 885, 886, 887, 888, 889, 890, 891, 892, 893, 894, 895, 896, 897, 898, 899, 900, 901, 902, 903, 904, 905, 906, 907, 908, 909, 910, 911, 912, 913, 914, 915, 916, 917, 918, 919, 920, 921, 922, 923, 924, 925, 926, 927, 928, 929, 930, 931, 932, 933, 934, 935, 936, 937, 938, 939, 940, 941, 942, 943, 944, 945, 946, 947, 948, 949, 950, 951, 952, 953, 954, 955, 956, 957, 958, 959, 960, 961, 962, 963, 964, 965, 966, 967, 968, 969, 970, 971, 972, 973, 974, 975, 976, 977, 978, 979, 980, 981, 982, 983, 984, 985, 986, 987, 988, 989, 990, 991, 992, 993, 994, 995, 996, 997, 998, 999, 1000

44

2

Gedrosia (the modern Baluchistan), where a great part of his force perished for want of food and water, and was buried in the sands. A third division came back through Arachosia and Drangiana (the modern Afghanistan), but only a fourth part of the army that had set out with him arrived again in Persia.

5. The second of our little maps represents the short-lived Macedonian empire of Alexander, at the date of his return to Persia, when his power was at its height, and when ambassadors from all parts of the then known world—from Libya, Italy, Carthage, and Scythia, from the Celts (of Gaul or France), and the Iberians of the Spanish peninsula—came to his court to secure his favour. To his victorious career the world owed a vast increase of geographical knowledge; all eastern Asia had been unveiled, and the road to India, with its boundless wealth, was disclosed to Europeans.

Westward also, about Alexander's time, the geography of the Greeks was greatly extended by Pytheas, a bold navigator of the Greek colony of Massilia (Marseilles), who, from Gadeira (Cadiz), coasted Iberia and the country of the Celts (France), and reached Britain. He followed the southern and eastern shores of the islands, and, after six days' sail from the Orcades (Orkney Islands), discovered Thule, a land of fogs in the north, which has been variously identified as the Shetland Islands, the Norwegian coast, or even Iceland. Pytheas also appears to have sailed round Jutland into the Baltic, proving the existence of sea to the north of Europe, which Herodotus doubted.

In Italy the Romans were continuing their struggles with the neighbouring nations. The whole of southern Etruria had yielded to their supremacy, and was kept in check by Roman garrisons; while towards the south, at this time, a terrible conflict was in progress with the heroic Samnite highlanders. Of Sicily the Carthaginians held the western, the Greek colonists the eastern half, a brief lull having taken place in the fierce wars which had been waging between these powers for the possession of the island, during which the prosperity of the great fortified city and seaport of Syracuse was rapidly reviving.

### 3. 325 B.C.—300 A.D.

1. After the death of Alexander the Great, the vast Macedonian Empire that he had raised was divided among those of the generals of his armies who had been most eminent under his rule; but for twenty years afterwards incessant wars prevailed, culminating in the battle of *Ipsus* in Phrygia (B.C. 301). Four of these generals became pre-eminent, and each formed for himself an independent kingdom. Ptolemy held Egypt, Libya, and northern Syria, and soon after added Judæa to his possessions; Cassander ruled in Greece and Macedonia proper; Lysimachus, in Thrace and western Asia Minor; and Seleucus brought under his power all the remaining portions of the former Macedonian Empire, from Asia Minor to the Indus. The last-named ruler even extended his expeditions beyond the limit reached by Alexander, and advanced into India as far as the Ganges (301 B.C.)

2. While these events were in progress in the lands east of the Mediterranean, the Romans in Italy had been carrying on a sanguinary war with the Samnite highlanders. The heroism of these mountaineers was unavailing against the military genius of the Romans, who, shortly after the date of the first partition of Alexander's empire, were extending their power over the whole southern peninsula of Italy. Here the Romans next came in contact with the Greek colonists, and the Tarentines,<sup>1</sup> in the name of their fellow-countrymen in

---

<sup>1</sup> Tarentum (Taranto), see map of Italy.

along it on one side to the level of the lowest part of it. This is called a *section to a true scale*, for we have used the same scale in representing the horizontal and the vertical heights. In most cases where sections are drawn, however, a larger scale is used to represent the vertical heights than is employed to show the horizontal distance, for by so doing each smaller rise and fall of the ground is brought out more distinctly. The lower section, Fig. 12, in which the vertical distances have been exaggerated four times, the horizontal scale remaining the same, will make this evident. It is important to bear this in mind in looking at any section that one may meet with in books or maps, and to inquire first of all what relation the vertical scale bears to the horizontal one: if these are the same, we have a true profile; if they are different, then this difference must be clearly understood to prevent erroneous impressions.

29. For practice in mapping, the following examples may be worked out on the slate or on paper, using a scale of about four inches to represent 1000 paces; but the practical mapping of a part of your own neighbourhood, in the manner above shown, should in no case be neglected.

1. At a point which we shall call (*a*) on a road which runs due east and west, or at right angles to the direction of the sun at noon, a church spire is noticed bearing due north from us, and a hill top south-east. Walking eastward along the road for 1000 paces, it is noticed that the church spire now bears north-west, and going on another 500 paces, the direction of the hill is at right angles to the road, or due south. What are the distances of the church and of the hill from the point (*a*)?

2. Draw a rough map from the following notes:—<sup>1</sup>

Ship anchored opposite a small bay. Rowed on shore to west point of bay, and ascended knoll at end of low line of hills which extends along the coast towards north-west. Call the knoll (*a*). From it ship distant 6000 yards bearing south-east. The opposite headland of bay (call it *e*) bears exactly east. From knoll look to north and east across a valley with small stream, and hills beyond, on which note two peaks; one (call it *c*) bears due north, other (call it *d*) bears north-north-east. Head of bay bears north-east. Walked along hills from (*a*), moving north-west, and at 3000 yards observed peak (*d*) bearing north-east. On the left the coast was distant 1000 yards. Went on in same direction (north-west), 3000 yards more, and came to point (*b*) on the line of hills extending from (*a*); (*b*) is top of cliff rising abruptly from sea. Beyond it coast-line goes off, bearing west-north-west. At (*b*) observed bearing to peak (*c*) north-east. From (*b*) turned to right, and walked due east 4250 yards, when I found myself with knoll (*a*) bearing due south, and peak (*c*) due north. Going on 1000 yards more, crossed the stream, which came down from the north-west, and flowed off into the sea on the bearing of the ship, which we saw about five miles off (8800 yards). Going on in the same direction 2000 yards more, peak (*d*) was seen to bear due north. Another

---

<sup>1</sup> From one of the examination papers for the prize medal of the Royal Geographical Society.

1250 yards brought us to head of bay ; the ship now bearing nearly due south, and the east headland of the bay (*e*) bearing south-east. The whole distance from (*b*) to the head of the bay had been 8500 yards. The bay from this point curved slightly round on either side to the headlands (*a*) and (*e*). This line of hills on which were peaks (*c*) and (*d*) ran round and ended in the headland (*e*).

3. Draw a section of the ground from the following data, to a true and an exaggerated vertical scale :—

Leaving the house, walked up a path which leads up by a steep slope to the top of a hill ; descended the opposite undulating slope to a bridge over a stream in the bottom of a wide valley ; ascended an opposite gentle and uniform slope to the top of a vertical cliff overlooking the sea. The horizontal distance from the house to the top of the hill was 750 paces, from the hill-top to the bridge 1400 paces, and from the bridge to the top of the cliff 1800 paces. The house is 200 feet, the hill 480, the bridge over stream 50, and the cliff 250 feet above the sea-level.

## II. SKETCH OF HISTORICAL GEOGRAPHY.

### 1. 1000–450 B.C.

In exactly the same way as you have been gathering information about your own home country, all the knowledge that we yet possess about the surface of the world we live in has been gradually gained. The geographers of ancient times, beginning with the district in which they lived, little by little extended the circle of their knowledge both by their own journeys and by studying the accounts given by travellers and voyagers outward from that known centre, learning from them what directions they had taken, whether towards the sunrising or sunsetting, the north or the south ; and the times and distances between one point and another of the route ; and by laying down these itineraries on their maps.

Little by little the clouds of ignorance were thus rolled backwards, till knowledge spreading westward joined that which had grown out eastward round the globe. Though in our own day the unknown has been chased into the most inaccessible corners of the earth, the same process of extending knowledge is in progress, and geographers of the present day are ever gathering accounts of new journeys past the borders of the unknown regions, each of which contributes a little towards the removal of the darkness which still hangs over these “ends of the earth.”

We shall perhaps gain the best idea of the gradual expansion of knowledge if we go back nearly to the earliest times of which we have any definite historical accounts, and from that as a starting-

point, picture to ourselves the world as known to the more civilised nations, at intervals up to the present time.

The little maps which have been designed to accompany these chapters exhibit the known world at twelve such periods; an appearance of cloud covers the skirts of each, leaving unveiled only those lands and seas which were the scene of the recorded events of history, and this lifts or rolls back as the limits of knowledge gradually extend. Each is on the same scale, and on each the different States and Empires of the period are marked out as far as the scale will admit, so that they combine at a glance the geography and history of the ages to which they refer, and from one to another the rise and fall of the great kingdoms of the world may be traced.

### 1. ABOUT 1000-450 B.C.

1. In the earliest times of which we have any records, the more civilised nations of the world were those inhabiting the shores of the Mediterranean Sea, and there accordingly the great events of ancient history have their scenes. The commerce, and along with that the geographical knowledge, of the Egyptians, the Phœnicians and Carthaginians, the Greeks and Romans, all centred and spread outward from the deep bays and harbours of that inland sea.

The Phœnicians especially, the old inhabitants of the fertile country which slopes down from Mount Lebanon to the eastern coast of the Mediterranean, where *Sidon* and *Tyre* were great seaports, were the sailors and traders of early times. Within the space of three centuries (from about B.C. 1300 to 1000) they explored all the islands and shores of the Mediterranean, and covered these with their forts, factories, and cities, while their ships ploughed the sea in all directions. They colonised Cyprus, and, after mastering the rich islands of the *Ægean*, sailed farther west to Sicily and Sardinia, founding also the city of Carthage, destined to be the centre of an opulent and powerful state on the North African coast, which grew in greatness as the golden age of the mother country of Phœnicia began to wane. From Sardinia and the Balearic Isles these indefatigable explorers pushed farther on through the narrow Strait of Gibraltar into the wide Atlantic, building the town of Gades (the present Cadiz) on the south-west of Spain in a country which gave them fabulous wealth of silver, iron, and lead; boldly venturing northward across the stormy Bay of Biscay, they reached the tin-yielding coasts of Cornwall, and loaded their ships with cargoes of that metal at the Scilly Isles. Sailing southward also from the gates of the Mediterranean, they discovered the islands we now know as the Canaries, obtaining from their shores the shell-fish which yielded the costly Tyrian purple. It was in this direction also that *Hanno*, the Carthaginian, led a famous expedition, consisting, it is said, of 60 ships, with 30,000 men and women on board of them, to extend discovery along the African coasts and to found Phœnician towns and colonies. In this voyage Hanno went south perhaps as far as our present colony of Sierra Leone. Himilco, commanding another fleet, starting from Gades, coasted Spain and Gaul, and reached Great Britain, which he calls *Alfionn* (Albion) and *Ierne*, a sacred island of the west, the modern Ireland.

While some of their navigators were thus exploring the coasts of the Mediterranean and the Atlantic, others seem to have found their way out by

THE KNOWN WORLD - ABOUT B.C. 450.



London Edward Stanford, 12, 13 & 14, Long Acre, W.C.



44

ABOUT B.C. 325



London Edward Stanford, 12, 13 & 14, Long Acre, W C

## 2. 450-325 B.C.

1. With the defeats that resulted in the attempts to subdue Greece, the decadence of the great Persian Empire may be said to have begun, and it now became a prey to internal conflicts. One of the most memorable of these was the revolt and expedition of the younger Cyrus against his brother the emperor Artaxerxes, which led to the battle of *Cunaxa* (401 B.C.), near Babylon, in which Cyrus was slain, and from which Xenophon made his adventurous retreat at the head of the ten thousand Greek mercenaries who had joined the expedition of Cyrus. Civil wars had also broken out between the States of Greece, and soon after the date of the battle of *Cunaxa* the Spartans gained the ascendancy over the Athenian State, which had been the ruling one at the period of the Persian invasions. These troubles gave occasion for the interference of Macedonia, a State which lay to the north of Thessaly, on the outskirts of the Greek nations, and which had recovered its independence of the Persians after the battle of *Platea*.

2. Under Philip II. Macedonia grew in prosperity and power; he subdued the southern Greek States, was appointed general of all the Greek forces against Persia, and was preparing for an invasion of that country when he was assassinated (B.C. 336). His son, Alexander, not yet twenty years of age, then ascended the throne, and took up the command of the forces levied against Persia. After putting down several revolts at home with a strong hand, he crossed the Hellespont<sup>1</sup> (334 B.C.) with 30,000 foot and 5000 horse, attacked and defeated the Persians at the river Granicus (*Koja Chai*). To this succeeded a victorious march through Asia Minor to the defiles of the Cilician mountains, in which Darius III. had stationed his army. At *Issus*, a seaport at the head of the gulf of Iskenderun (from Iskender = Alexander), the famous battle was fought, in which the treasures as well as the family of Darius fell into the hands of the conqueror, the king himself fleeing to the Euphrates. The whole country eastward now lay open before him, and he turned south towards Phœnicia and Syria, occupying Damascus, and conquering Tyre. Advancing to Egypt, he was welcomed there as a deliverer from the Persian yoke, and founded *Alexandria* in the Nile Delta (331 B.C.), which became one of the greatest cities of ancient times.

3. In Africa Alexander advanced as far through the Libyan desert as the oasis in which dwelt the oracle of Jupiter Ammon (Siwah), and returning thence eastward, went against Darius, who had collected a new army in the plain of Mesopotamia. The decisive battle near *Arbela*, a small town east of Mosul, opened the way to Babylon and Susa, and to *Persepolis*, the capital of Persia, which was entered in triumph. Thence Alexander pursued Bessus, a satrap of Bactriana (the modern Balkh), through Iran or Persia proper, across the Oxus to Sogdiana (Bokhara), and penetrated to the farthest known limits of Asia, defeating the Scythian barbarians (probably the ancestors of the later *Turks*) on the banks of the Jaxartes.

4. Two years later, Alexander proceeded to the conquest of India, then known only by name to Europeans. He crossed the river Indus near the modern *Attock*, and marched through the land now known as the Panjab, Turning at the Hyphasis (the modern Satlej), he caused a fleet to be built, in which he sent one division of his army down the stream, another section following the banks of the river, and fighting its way through successive Indian hosts. Having at length reached the ocean, he ordered one division to sail to the Persian Gulf, while he led another back through the fearful deserts of

---

<sup>1</sup> Dardanelles.

ABOUT B.C. 325



London: Edward Stanford, 12, 13 & 14, Long Acre, W.C.

2

44

Gedrosia (the modern Baluchistan), where a great part of his force perished for want of food and water, and was buried in the sands. A third division came back through Arachosia and Drangiana (the modern Afghanistan), but only a fourth part of the army that had set out with him arrived again in Persia.

5. The second of our little maps represents the short-lived Macedonian empire of Alexander, at the date of his return to Persia, when his power was at its height, and when ambassadors from all parts of the then known world—from Libya, Italy, Carthage, and Scythia, from the Celts (of Gaul or France), and the Iberians of the Spanish peninsula—came to his court to secure his favour. To his victorious career the world owed a vast increase of geographical knowledge; all eastern Asia had been unveiled, and the road to India, with its boundless wealth, was disclosed to Europeans.

Westward also, about Alexander's time, the geography of the Greeks was greatly extended by Pytheas, a bold navigator of the Greek colony of Massilia (Marseilles), who, from Gadeira (Cadiz), coasted Iberia and the country of the Celts (France), and reached Britain. He followed the southern and eastern shores of the islands, and, after six days' sail from the Orcades (Orkney Islands), discovered Thule, a land of fogs in the north, which has been variously identified as the Shetland Islands, the Norwegian coast, or even Iceland. Pytheas also appears to have sailed round Jutland into the Baltic, proving the existence of sea to the north of Europe, which Herodotus doubted.

In Italy the Romans were continuing their struggles with the neighbouring nations. The whole of southern Etruria had yielded to their supremacy, and was kept in check by Roman garrisons; while towards the south, at this time, a terrible conflict was in progress with the heroic Samnite highlanders. Of Sicily the Carthaginians held the western, the Greek colonists the eastern half, a brief lull having taken place in the fierce wars which had been waging between these powers for the possession of the island, during which the prosperity of the great fortified city and seaport of Syracuse was rapidly reviving.

### 3. 325 B.C.—300 A.D.

1. After the death of Alexander the Great, the vast Macedonian Empire that he had raised was divided among those of the generals of his armies who had been most eminent under his rule; but for twenty years afterwards incessant wars prevailed, culminating in the battle of *Ipsus* in Phrygia (B.C. 301). Four of these generals became pre-eminent, and each formed for himself an independent kingdom. Ptolemy held Egypt, Libya, and northern Syria, and soon after added Judæa to his possessions; Cassander ruled in Greece and Macedonia proper; Lysimachus, in Thrace and western Asia Minor; and Seleucus brought under his power all the remaining portions of the former Macedonian Empire, from Asia Minor to the Indus. The last-named ruler even extended his expeditions beyond the limit reached by Alexander, and advanced into India as far as the Ganges (301 B.C.)

2. While these events were in progress in the lands east of the Mediterranean, the Romans in Italy had been carrying on a sanguinary war with the Samnite highlanders. The heroism of these mountaineers was unavailing against the military genius of the Romans, who, shortly after the date of the first partition of Alexander's empire, were extending their power over the whole southern peninsula of Italy. Here the Romans next came in contact with the Greek colonists, and the Tarentines,<sup>1</sup> in the name of their fellow-countrymen in

---

<sup>1</sup> Tarentum (Taranto), see map of Italy.

south Italy, invited Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, the country on the opposite side of the Adriatic Sea, to command their troops against the enemy. The strange appearance and gigantic size of the elephants brought by Pyrrhus, in imitation of the Indian kings in battle, gained a temporary success for him against the Romans; but soon after he gave up the contest and passed over into Sicily, to aid the Greeks there against the Carthaginians (B.C. 278). All southern Italy acknowledged the supremacy of Rome, and distant nations began to learn that a new power had risen in the world, Ptolemy of Egypt sending an embassy to conclude treaties with the Republic.

3. Now followed the terrible contests between Rome and Carthage, which, in the three *Punic*<sup>1</sup> wars, lasted for more than a century. The first of these (264-241 B.C.) was waged merely for the possession of Sicily, and during it the Roman navy was created, which, notwithstanding terrible disasters, finally wrested from Carthage the sovereignty of the seas. At the end of this first Punic war the Carthaginians had lost their hold on Sicily and Sardinia, which were transformed into Roman provinces.

4. About the middle of the third century the Carthaginian influence was much extended in Iberia (Spain), and a large extent of territory was brought under subjection. Hamilcar founded the city of *Barcelona*, and his son-in-law Hasdrubal that of *New Carthage* (Cartagena), and concluded a treaty with Rome, whereby it was stipulated that he should not advance beyond the Iberus (Ebro). Hannibal, the son of Hamilcar, succeeded him in the peninsula, and by attacking and destroying *Saguntum* (Murviedro), a city which had been founded by the Greeks, and which had become celebrated for its commerce and wealth, violated the treaty and gave cause for a declaration of war by the Romans (218 B.C.)

5. A series of wars with the Gauls now extended Roman power over northern Italy, and its influence began to be felt on the eastern shores of the Adriatic. The second Punic war (218-201 B.C.), the great events of which were the crossing of the Alps by Hannibal (most probably by the pass now known as the Little St. Bernard), the defeat of the Romans at Lake Trasimene, and at *Cannæ*, resulted in the final overthrow of the great Carthaginian leader at *Zama*,<sup>2</sup> when terms of peace were imposed by the conqueror which reduced Carthage almost to the condition of a tributary state. The Spanish possessions of Carthage, like the Sicilian, now passed to the Romans, who formed out of them the province of Hispania Citerior, the north and eastern, and Ulterior, the south and western, or most distant from Rome.

6. An alliance formed by the Macedonians with Hannibal after the battle of Cannæ gave cause for the hostile advance of the Romans in their direction also, and the three Macedonian and Greek wars which succeeded led to the establishment of the Roman protectorate over the whole of Greece, and the dismemberment of the Macedonian possessions in Europe and Asia Minor.

7. Although the Carthaginians had been compelled to accept abject terms of peace, their resources had not been utterly destroyed, and Carthage again became sufficiently powerful to excite the jealousy of the Romans, and to draw their armies towards it. After a siege of three years, Carthage was stormed, burned, and razed to the ground, and the once mighty Carthaginian empire vanished for ever from the earth (B.C. 146).

8. Under the six Ptolemies who succeeded to Alexander's great general of that name on the throne of Egypt up to the date of the fall of Carthage, Alexandria had become the seat of the intellectual cultivation that had resided in Greece, as well as the centre of the world's commerce. It was in the famous

---

<sup>1</sup> Or Phœnician, in allusion to the descent of the Carthaginians

<sup>2</sup> 130 miles south-west of Carthage.





44

school of Alexandria that Euclid taught mathematics, about three hundred years before Christ. Hither also Eratosthenes of Cyrene, one of the most eminent of ancient astronomers, was called by Ptolemy Euergetes to superintend the great royal library. The name of *Eratosthenes* (276-194 B.C.) will ever be remembered in geography, as it was he who first attempted to discover the magnitude of the earth by the measurement of an arc of the meridian, the same process that is employed at the present day.

9. The next great extension of Roman power was in Asia Minor, where Attalus, one of the successors of Alexander's general Lysimachus, bequeathed to Rome the protectorate of Pergamus, which was formed into the province of Asia. Then followed the conquest of Transalpine Gaul, named the Province ("Provence") to distinguish it from the rest of the country. North of the mountains the Romans first came in hostile contact with the Cimbri and Teutones, in the valleys of Noricum (Tyrol) and at *Aquæ-Sextia* (Aix, in the Alps of Dauphiny). In Africa the overthrow of King Jugurtha of Numidia (Algeria) and of King Juba in Mauritania (Morocco) added these regions also to the list of Roman provinces.

10. Now the strength of the Roman arms was turned towards Asia, in the three fierce wars with Mithridates of Pontus and his ally Tigranes of Armenia, against whom they were finally successful, establishing Roman authority over all Asia Minor. The last defeat of Mithridates on the Euphrates, in 66 B.C., was followed by a brilliant career of success. Syria, Phœnicia, and Palestine were reduced to a state of dependence; and to the horror of the Jews the holy city of *Jerusalem* was taken by storm and its walls razed to the ground (63 B.C.)

11. Not long after this, Julius Cæsar began his splendid campaigns in Gaul, conquering the whole of that region for Rome, driving the German tribes towards the Rhine, and invading Albion, to which he gave the name Britannia (55 B.C.) In the civil war which followed the assassination of Cæsar, Marcus Antonius, the ruler of the Eastern Roman world, was aided against his rival Octavianus (afterwards Emperor Augustus) by Queen Cleopatra of Egypt, but was defeated in the naval battle of Actium,<sup>1</sup> and his death and that of Cleopatra soon following, Egypt became henceforth a Roman province. Augustus gathered up into his own hands all civil and military power, and the Roman Empire began (29 B.C.) At the beginning of the Christian era the Roman Empire had spread out nearly to its greatest limits. In Europe the lines of the Rhine and the Danube marked its northern boundary; all Asia Minor and Syria had been subjected, and the whole of North Africa, from Egypt to the Atlantic, acknowledged Roman authority.

12. From this time onward to the date of our third little map (representing the Empire in the time of Constantine) the chief military events were the final conquest of Britain as far north as the Firths of Forth and Clyde by Agricola, and its formation into a prefecture of Gaul, governed by a vice-regent resident at *Eboracum* (York); the conquest of Dacia, the country north of the lower Danube; the victorious invasion of Armenia and Parthia; and the subjugation of all the Nile valley as far as Nubia by Trajan.

Under Constantine the Great two great changes took place—the introduction of Christianity as the religion of the State, and the transference of the seat of government from Rome to Byzantium (A.D. 330), which was re-named after the Emperor, Constantinople.

13. *Persia* at this time, under the Sassanian dynasty, attained a height of prosperity and power such as it had never before reached, and against it even the veteran Roman legions could gain no lasting laurels.

---

<sup>1</sup> At the entrance to the Gulf of Arta.

14. In China authentic history begins with the Chow dynasty (1122-255 B.C.) when Confucius and Mincius flourished (600 B.C.). In the next (Tsin) dynasty Shih Hwang Ti (221-209 B.C.) reduced the independent petty States, and built the Great Wall as a protection against the barbarous Hiong-non (Huns) or Tatars of the north. Shortly after the beginning of the Christian era the Chinese seem to have begun intercourse with the Parthians and to have known the Roman Empire as Ta-tsin; and about the time of Constantine's establishment of his new capital the Chinese Emperor's court was fixed at Nanking, the southern capital.

15. The increase of geographical knowledge during the period in which Rome was spreading out its power in all directions could not fail to be very considerable. Already in the latter part of the first century B.C. a general survey of the Roman Empire had been begun by the collection and arrangement of the *itineraries* of the roads to places in the empire. One of these (called the Peutingerian table after the antiquary who found a copy of it in a monastery in Bavaria in the fifteenth century) traces the main roads of all the region stretching from Britain to the mouth of the Ganges in India. *Strabo* of Pontus was one of the great geographers of this period, and he wrote an account of Europe and Africa, and of Asia, in which his knowledge extended as far as China. But it was from *Claudius Ptolemy*, the celebrated astronomer and geographer, who lived in the learned city of Alexandria about 150 A.D., that geography received the greatest advancement in ancient times—one which made itself felt even down to the fifteenth century. He constructed a series of twenty-six maps, with a general map of the world, in illustration of his eight books of universal geography. His information extended from Thule (Shetland) in the north to the Niger and the Nile lakes in Africa, and eastward to the obscurely known region of China and the island of Taprobane (Ceylon).

#### 4. 300-500 A.D.

1. Fully half a century before the civil discords of the Roman Empire had been temporarily abated by the genius of Constantine, the whole of Europe beyond the Roman frontier, the almost unknown north, had begun to ferment and to pour forth wave after wave of barbarian hordes. Against these the Roman Empire, distracted by discords, could not prevail.

2. The *Goths*, a people of Germanic origin, had already once broken through the Roman province of Dacia,<sup>1</sup> crossing the Black Sea had ravaged the northern shores of Asia Minor, and had advanced as far as Greece, pillaging and burning the famous cities of Athens, Corinth, and Argos. The *Vandals*, who are first known as the inhabitants of the Bohemian mountains, hence called Vandalici Montes, burst like a flood into Gaul, and after ravaging that region, swept south through the passes of the Pyrenees into Spain, and finally settled in the south of that country, to which they gave the name Vandalitia, the modern Andalucia. The *Franks*, or freemen, a confederation of the tribes inhabiting the borders of the lower Rhine, made incessant incursions through the low countries into Gaul, where they finally overthrew the Roman dominion.

3. In the reign of Constantine, the Goths had been obliged to sue for peace with the Romans, but not long after his death they once more engaged the legions in a three years' war. The Goths now began to be distinguished as the Ostrogoths, or Goths of the east, the branch which inhabited the shores of the Black Sea; and the Visigoths, or Goths of the west, extending along the Danube.

---

<sup>1</sup> Transylvania, Walachia, and Moldavia.

ABOUT AD 500



Location of the British Isles in AD 500

4

4. The *Huns*, a people of Asiatic origin, the eastern (Mongol) branch of the Scythians, now appear on the scene. They invaded Europe through the country of the Alani, a pastoral people living on the great steppes between the Volga and the Don; having conquered them and incorporated the survivors, they advanced into the country of the Visigoths and drove these people across the Danube into Moesia (modern Bulgaria), occupying the country they had abandoned; afterwards they also crossed the Danube, as the allies of the Goths against the Romans.

5. Under Alaric, the Visigoths invaded Italy, sacked Rome, and ravaged the peninsula. Subsequently, under the successors of Alaric, they withdrew into southern Gaul and crossed the mountains into Spain, beginning a series of struggles there with the Vandals and the Romans. The fatal rivalries of the Roman governors of Spain and Africa now led to the passage of a relentless horde of the Vandals across the Strait of Gibraltar, and to the devastation and ruin of all the region between the shores of the Atlantic and Cyrene, to the loss of Carthage, and the dissolution of the Roman Empire in Africa. Thence the Vandals spread over Sardinia, Corsica, and Sicily; they invaded Italy also, and plundered Rome for fourteen days, mutilating and defacing the works of art in the city.

6. After his conquests in the region of the Danube, Attila, king of the Huns, turned his course of invasion westward, and being joined by the Ostrogoths, penetrated into Gaul, and was defeated there by the united Romans and Visigoths in a sanguinary battle near the site of the present city of *Châlons-sur-Marne*. A year later, however, he recovered strength, and invaded Italy, devastating its northern plains and driving their inhabitants to seek refuge in those marshy lagoon islands on which Venezia, afterwards the great city of Venice, was founded. Rome itself was saved by the mediation of Pope Leo, only to be plundered three years later by the Vandals, whose progress we have already traced. After the death of Attila, Odoacer, who had been his ambassador at the court of Constantinople, put himself at the head of the barbarians who had flocked into Italy, and finally crushed the Roman power throughout the peninsula. He in turn, however, was overthrown by Theodoric, king of the Ostrogoths, who now became master of Italy.

7. The contests with the northern invaders in Gaul had withdrawn thither the greater part of the Roman troops quartered in Britain, and the few remaining were taken across to the Continent in the beginning of the fifth century. The Britons, left defenceless, and harassed by the Picts and Scots, invited the Jutes, the Germanic inhabitants of the opposite shores of the North Sea, to their aid, and they, having repelled the invaders, began the conquest of the island for themselves, and established their kingdom in Kent. They were soon followed by the Saxons, who took up the southern and central portions of the country, where the names Essex (East Saxons), Middlesex, Sussex, still in use, and Wessex, extending from Surrey to the peninsula of Cornwall, recall their divisions of the land. Cornwall itself remained in the hands of its Celtic inhabitants.

8. Thus, at the period represented in the fourth map, the great Roman Empire had shrunk down to the limits of the Eastern Roman (also called the Byzantine or Greek) Empire, and was restricted to the countries which lie round the eastern end of the Mediterranean. The Vandals had established their rule along north Africa; the Visigoths ruled in Spain; the Ostrogothic monarchy of Theodoric the Great extended over Italy, France, and all the countries round the Alps as far as the middle Danube; the Franks, under Clovis, had possession of the whole of Gaul between the Loire and Somme; Persia, still under the energetic Sassanian dynasty, not only maintained its

integrity as an empire, but had begun to repel the Roman power in Asia and had added part of Armenia.

##### 5. 500–800 A.D.

1. At the period represented in the last map we have seen that the Persians in the east were successfully opposing the Byzantine Empire, and extending their dominion in Asia. Westward, however, the arms of the Byzantine Empire were triumphant, the reign of the Emperor Justinian being rendered famous by the expedition of his great general Belisarius to Africa, where, after a campaign of two years, he completely overthrew the Vandals and led their king captive to Constantinople. In a second war, Belisarius wrested all southern Italy from the Ostrogoths, pursuing them northward to Rome and Ravenna, and thus beginning the re-conquest of the peninsula, which was completed by his successor the imperial general Narses, after which the Ostrogoths disappear as a distinct nation.

2. At this time, under Khosru, the greatest of the great monarchs of the Sassanian dynasty, the Persian Empire stretched from the Red Sea to the Indus, and from Arabia far into Central Asia. Mesopotamia, Syria, Palestine, Egypt, and Asia Minor, were one after another wrested from the Byzantine Empire: Jerusalem was stormed and plundered, and a similar fate befell Alexandria. The victorious Persians had even reached to Chalcedon, opposite Constantinople, when the fortune of war turned, and the Byzantine Emperor Heraclius began a magnificent revenge.

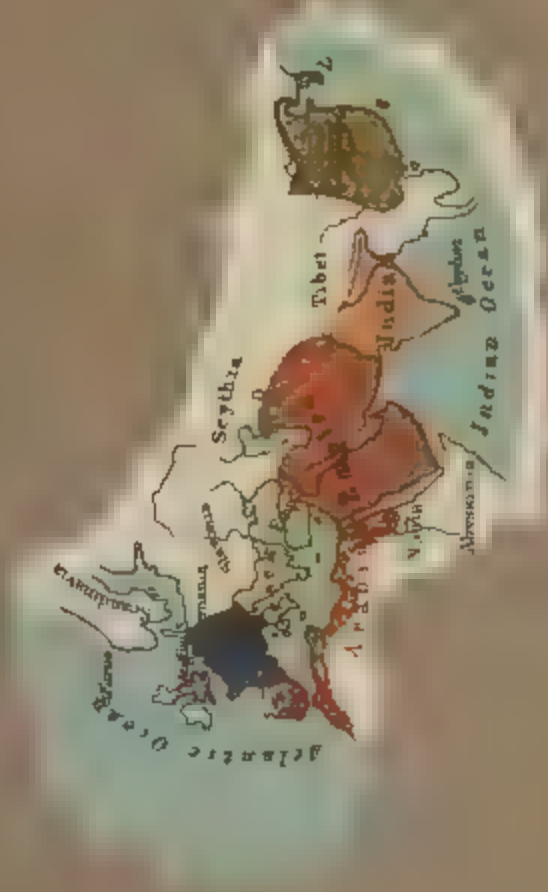
3. Having organised a Greek and barbarian army, Heraclius landed and encamped on the famous plain of Issus in Cilicia, and having completely routed the Persian army sent against him, forced his way through the Taurus into Pontus, crossed Armenia, made allies of the barbarians north of the Caucasus, and with their aid attacked Media, and penetrated to *Ispahan*, inflicting repeated defeats on the Persians in the heart of their country, and giving the death-blow to the Sassanian dynasty.

4. At the height of the fame of Heraclius, however, a new and terrible power arose in the south. During all the changes of empire in the countries east of the Mediterranean the tribes of Arabia had maintained a brave independence; neither the Babylonian nor Assyrian kings, neither Egyptians nor Persians, could reduce them to subjection; and even though the Romans under Trajan had penetrated far into the country, only the northern chieftains were made tributary to the empire. The Himyarites of Yemen, the district bordering on the Red Sea, had stoutly repelled an expedition in the time of Augustus. They carried on commerce across the Indian Ocean with Persia and Syria, and had planted many colonies on the opposite African coasts. The tribes of Yemen dwelt in towns, and cultivated the soil, but the most of the Arabs were nomadic as now, and they retained their ancient pagan nature worship. About 600 A.D. Christianity penetrated into the peninsula, where Judaism had been introduced by emigrants after the destruction of Jerusalem, and a religious ferment began to move the minds of the thoughtful. It was soon after this time that Mohammed, who was born at *Mecca* in 570, received his first divine communication in the solitudes of Mount Hirâ, near Mecca, and began to inveigh against the superstition of his time. Persecuted, and unable to find a hearing in his own city, he took refuge in *Medina*,<sup>1</sup> and at once assumed the position of judge and ruler of the most powerful of the Arab tribes. He now went to war in the name of God against the enemies of Islam,

---

<sup>1</sup> The *Hijrah*, or flight of Mohammed to Medina (622 A.D.) gives the starting-point of the Moslem chronology.

ABOUT A0800



J. M. H. Long, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, 75, 76, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99, 100, 101, 102, 103, 104, 105, 106, 107, 108, 109, 110, 111, 112, 113, 114, 115, 116, 117, 118, 119, 120, 121, 122, 123, 124, 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 138, 139, 140, 141, 142, 143, 144, 145, 146, 147, 148, 149, 150, 151, 152, 153, 154, 155, 156, 157, 158, 159, 160, 161, 162, 163, 164, 165, 166, 167, 168, 169, 170, 171, 172, 173, 174, 175, 176, 177, 178, 179, 180, 181, 182, 183, 184, 185, 186, 187, 188, 189, 190, 191, 192, 193, 194, 195, 196, 197, 198, 199, 200, 201, 202, 203, 204, 205, 206, 207, 208, 209, 210, 211, 212, 213, 214, 215, 216, 217, 218, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 224, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229, 230, 231, 232, 233, 234, 235, 236, 237, 238, 239, 240, 241, 242, 243, 244, 245, 246, 247, 248, 249, 250, 251, 252, 253, 254, 255, 256, 257, 258, 259, 260, 261, 262, 263, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 288, 289, 290, 291, 292, 293, 294, 295, 296, 297, 298, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 306, 307, 308, 309, 310, 311, 312, 313, 314, 315, 316, 317, 318, 319, 320, 321, 322, 323, 324, 325, 326, 327, 328, 329, 330, 331, 332, 333, 334, 335, 336, 337, 338, 339, 340, 341, 342, 343, 344, 345, 346, 347, 348, 349, 350, 351, 352, 353, 354, 355, 356, 357, 358, 359, 360, 361, 362, 363, 364, 365, 366, 367, 368, 369, 370, 371, 372, 373, 374, 375, 376, 377, 378, 379, 380, 381, 382, 383, 384, 385, 386, 387, 388, 389, 390, 391, 392, 393, 394, 395, 396, 397, 398, 399, 400, 401, 402, 403, 404, 405, 406, 407, 408, 409, 410, 411, 412, 413, 414, 415, 416, 417, 418, 419, 420, 421, 422, 423, 424, 425, 426, 427, 428, 429, 430, 431, 432, 433, 434, 435, 436, 437, 438, 439, 440, 441, 442, 443, 444, 445, 446, 447, 448, 449, 450, 451, 452, 453, 454, 455, 456, 457, 458, 459, 460, 461, 462, 463, 464, 465, 466, 467, 468, 469, 470, 471, 472, 473, 474, 475, 476, 477, 478, 479, 480, 481, 482, 483, 484, 485, 486, 487, 488, 489, 490, 491, 492, 493, 494, 495, 496, 497, 498, 499, 500, 501, 502, 503, 504, 505, 506, 507, 508, 509, 510, 511, 512, 513, 514, 515, 516, 517, 518, 519, 520, 521, 522, 523, 524, 525, 526, 527, 528, 529, 530, 531, 532, 533, 534, 535, 536, 537, 538, 539, 540, 541, 542, 543, 544, 545, 546, 547, 548, 549, 550, 551, 552, 553, 554, 555, 556, 557, 558, 559, 560, 561, 562, 563, 564, 565, 566, 567, 568, 569, 570, 571, 572, 573, 574, 575, 576, 577, 578, 579, 580, 581, 582, 583, 584, 585, 586, 587, 588, 589, 590, 591, 592, 593, 594, 595, 596, 597, 598, 599, 600, 601, 602, 603, 604, 605, 606, 607, 608, 609, 610, 611, 612, 613, 614, 615, 616, 617, 618, 619, 620, 621, 622, 623, 624, 625, 626, 627, 628, 629, 630, 631, 632, 633, 634, 635, 636, 637, 638, 639, 640, 641, 642, 643, 644, 645, 646, 647, 648, 649, 650, 651, 652, 653, 654, 655, 656, 657, 658, 659, 660, 661, 662, 663, 664, 665, 666, 667, 668, 669, 670, 671, 672, 673, 674, 675, 676, 677, 678, 679, 680, 681, 682, 683, 684, 685, 686, 687, 688, 689, 690, 691, 692, 693, 694, 695, 696, 697, 698, 699, 700, 701, 702, 703, 704, 705, 706, 707, 708, 709, 710, 711, 712, 713, 714, 715, 716, 717, 718, 719, 720, 721, 722, 723, 724, 725, 726, 727, 728, 729, 730, 731, 732, 733, 734, 735, 736, 737, 738, 739, 740, 741, 742, 743, 744, 745, 746, 747, 748, 749, 750, 751, 752, 753, 754, 755, 756, 757, 758, 759, 760, 761, 762, 763, 764, 765, 766, 767, 768, 769, 770, 771, 772, 773, 774, 775, 776, 777, 778, 779, 780, 781, 782, 783, 784, 785, 786, 787, 788, 789, 790, 791, 792, 793, 794, 795, 796, 797, 798, 799, 800, 801, 802, 803, 804, 805, 806, 807, 808, 809, 810, 811, 812, 813, 814, 815, 816, 817, 818, 819, 820, 821, 822, 823, 824, 825, 826, 827, 828, 829, 830, 831, 832, 833, 834, 835, 836, 837, 838, 839, 840, 841, 842, 843, 844, 845, 846, 847, 848, 849, 850, 851, 852, 853,



44

and gained a victory over the Meccans at *Bedr*, after which they concluded a peace with him. He now sent his missionaries abroad over Arabia, and they carried his doctrine into Persia, to the court of Heraclius, to Abyssinia, and to Egypt. The King of Persia received his messenger with scorn, and had him executed; this led to the first war with the Moslems, in which the latter were defeated.

5. The power of the new religion was, however, secured in Arabia, and shortly before his death Mohammed had made extensive preparations for expeditions against Syria and the Byzantines. Abu-Bekr, the first "*Calif*" or "Successor" of Mohammed, carried war into Babylonia, and after several victories over the troops of Heraclius completed the conquest of Syria. Omar, the second Calif, pushed the war of conquest with increased vigour; Jerusalem fell into his hands, and he caused the mosque which bears his name to be built over the site of the temple of Solomon. He next invaded Persia, and subdued the whole of that region. Amru, one of his generals, such was the prestige of the Arabs, took possession of Egypt for the Calif without opposition, and Barca and Tripoli were also subdued.

6. At the time of Omar's death (644) the Saracens<sup>1</sup> had overrun in the short space of ten years all the lands between Armenia and Khiva in Asia, and the Syrtes in North Africa. In the time of Othman, the Mohammedan power was extended westward over Mauretania or Morocco, and the Byzantine possessions were restricted to the neighbourhood of New Carthage. The seat of the Caliphate was now removed from Medina to *Damascus* in Syria; Asia Minor was ravaged, and ineffectual siege was laid to Constantinople. Before the beginning of the eighth century Carthage had been taken, and the Byzantine dominion in Africa annihilated. The Caliphate now rose to the zenith of its prosperity, and the conquest of Turkestan in central Asia was rapidly followed by the invasion of Spain at the opposite extremity of the Arab Empire. The Moors,<sup>2</sup> as the Arabo-Berbers are called in Spanish history, under Tarik, crossed the straits from Ceuta, and effected a landing at *Algeciras*, near Gibraltar. Roderick, the last king of the Visigoths, met the invader at *Xerez de la Frontera* (711). Nine days of battle ensued, and in a single combat with Tarik, the Gothic king was slain; the victory was decisive for the Moslems, and it gave them the mastery over nearly the whole of Spain (except the mountainous country of Asturias in the north), as well as the outlying province of Septimania (Languedoc, in southern France).

7. We may now turn to glance at the movements which were taking place in northern Europe during this rapid spread of the Mohammedan Empire in the south. Events in Italy have been already traced up to the defeat of the Visigoths, after which the country was placed under the rule of an Exarch or delegate of the Byzantine Emperor, who had his capital at *Ravenna*. The first of these delegates had only held the country for fifteen years when the Lombards,<sup>3</sup> a Germanic people originally from the lower Elbe, poured over the Alps from Pannonia (Lower Austria), bringing with them numbers of other German tribes, and conquered all north and central Italy. Here in the course of time these barbarians became assimilated with the peoples they had subjected, and exchanged their German for the Latin tongue.

8. The first or Merovingian (from Merwig, a chief of the fifth century)

<sup>1</sup> Probably from *Sharkeyn*, "eastern people," as opposed to *Maghrîbé*, "western people," as the inhabitants of Morocco are called.

<sup>2</sup> From *Mauhart*, "westerns," first applied by the Carthaginians to the Atlas aborigines west of Carthage, and later to the mixed Arabo-Berber peoples of the same region.

<sup>3</sup> *Lombardi*, referring either to their long beards or to their battle-axes (*barte*).

dynasty of the Frankish kings, to which Clovis belonged, gave place to the Carolingian, in which Charles, surnamed Martel, was one of the most prominent rulers. His reign was marked by wars with the surrounding tribes of the Saxons and Alemanni, but especially by the stop which he put to the victorious advance of the Saracens northward from Spain, whose power had filled all Christendom with alarm. He defeated them in a great battle fought between *Poitiers* and *Tours* in 732.

His son Pepin le Bref, taking advantage of the disputes which arose about the succession to the Lombard throne, invaded Italy. It was left to his son Charlemagne, however, who crossed the Alps from Geneva with two armies, by the Great St. Bernard and Mont Cenis passes, to complete the overthrow of the Lombard kingdom, which had lasted for two centuries. This monarch also completed the subjection of the Saxons in the northern border of his kingdom, driving them to the Elbe, and from the Moors in the south he wrested and added to his dominion all the country from the Pyrenees to the Ebro, his empire extending also on the side of Germany as far as Pannonia, where he had subdued the Avari.

9. We left Britain at the end of the last period when the Jutes and Saxons had established themselves in the south and centre of the present England. Soon after this the Angles, a third Germanic tribe from the country east of the Elbe, made a succession of descents on the coasts of Suffolk and Norfolk, as well as in Scotland between the Tweed and Forth. Eventually these last comers obtained possession of all the portions of eastern England that had not fallen to the Saxons, and the union of their different bands with the conquered native Celts took the form of seven kingdoms, the Anglo-Saxon Heptarchy, a group of states which rose and fell as one or other of them became more powerful. These were Kent, Essex and Middlesex, Sussex, Wessex, already referred to; besides Northumbria, including the present Northumberland and all Scotland south of the Forth; East Anglia (Norfolk, Suffolk, and Cambridge), and Mercia, which embraced the central portions of England.

10. To sum up the leading features of the period of the world's history sketched in the fifth of the little maps:—The Arabian Empire had spread itself out to Central Asia and to Spain, and had already passed the zenith of its greatness. The dynasty of the Ommiades of Damascus had given place to that of the Abassides in the east, though a branch from it had set up an independent Califate at *Cordova*, in Spain. The Abbaside Harun-al-Rashid, whose praises are sung by eastern poets, had his capital at *Bagdad*, on the Tigris, a city which had been founded by his predecessor in 762. Charlemagne had consolidated and extended the Frank Empire, received the ambassadors sent from the court of Bagdad to salute him, and had been crowned by the Pope at Rome. Irene, the barbarous mother of the Byzantine Emperor Constantine VI., had conceived the bold plan of uniting the east and west of Europe in one great empire, by marrying the Frank Emperor, a scheme which was frustrated by her overthrow and her banishment to the Isle of Lesbos in the *Ægean* Sea (802).

#### 6. 800-1000 A.D.

1. After the accession of the Abbaside dynasty in the Arabian Empire, *Bagdad*, as we have noticed, became the capital of the Califate, and the province of Khorassan, in Persia, began to be considered the nucleus of the empire. Though Islamism continued to spread, the rule of the Califs began to be merely nominal. Already during Harun-al-Rashid's reign, independent kingdoms had been formed in Fez (the city of *Fez* was founded 808) and

ABOLY AD OOO



London Edward Stanford 11 13 & 14 Long Acce W C



Tunis, and soon all the western African territories were lost to the Califate. Large numbers of Turks from the region between the Caspian and the central mountains of Asia were called in to be employed in military service. Acquiring power, the Turks rose against their masters, and for a time Turkish kings reigned in Khorassan. Several transitory dynasties succeeded, pre-eminent among which was that of the Ghiznevites, who at the height of their power ruled an empire extending from the Tigris to the Ganges, and from the Jaxartes on the north to the Indian Ocean, the central seat of power being the natural fortress of *Ghazni*.

2. A Turkish governor of Egypt declared himself independent in 868. A century later the Fatimides, a sect of Mohammedans, whose leader claimed descent from Fatima, the daughter of the Prophet, after overthrowing the rulers of Tunis, conquered Egypt and Syria, and founding *Cairo* (970), set up a new Califate there; so that at this time there were three—one in Bagdad, another in Cairo, and a third at Cordova in Spain. *Algiers* (Al-Jezireh, "the island") had been founded by an Arabian prince twenty-five years previously.

3. In Spain, as we have seen, the inhabitants of the northern mountain country had not been entirely subdued in the Moorish conquest of the rest of the peninsula. Asturias and Galicia formed an independent Christian kingdom, and about the middle of the ninth century the brave and hardy Vascones or Basques of Navarre also regained their independence, and aided in the constant warfare that was maintained against the Moors along the north of the peninsula. Though the "Spanish March," as the country between the Pyrenees and the Ebro was named, had been retaken from the successors of Charlemagne by the Moors, the Christian mountaineers recovered a large portion of this district. Latterly another Christian kingdom added its strength to Asturias and Navarre; it was that of Castile, which, from its central position in the peninsula, was destined to play a most prominent part in the future history of Spain.

4. With the death of Charlemagne the great fabric of the Frankish Empire that he had reared crumbled rapidly into fragments. Repeated divisions and subdivisions of the empire among his successors weakened and distracted it, and brought on internal wars, while foreign assailants threatened it on every side. The Normans, or Northmen, from Denmark and Scandinavia, poured in and infested the country as far as Paris, and permanently held the territory known afterwards as Normandy; the Spanish March was lost again to the Moors on the south; on the east the German princes arrogated to themselves the right of electing their own sovereigns; and shortly after the beginning of the tenth century, Conrad I., a duke or count of Franconia, reigned as king of *Germany*. The conquests of his successor Otho over the Danes, the Slavs, and Hungarians, extended the boundary of the German Empire north to the Elbe and south into Lombardy, where he was soon after acknowledged successor of Charlemagne in Italy, and crowned Emperor of the West at Rome.

5. The Hungarians, or Magyars, as they call themselves, with whom the first emperors of Germany had to contend, were a people of Asiatic origin, who, in the year 889, forming a body of fully 40,000 families, left their homes in the neighbourhood of the Caspian Sea and made a great exodus to the westward, fighting their way to the central basin of the Danube, and the countries which bordered Pannonia on the north-east. Spreading out in all directions, they extended their conquests from the Carpathian mountains down to Servia, and from the Transylvanian Alps to the Alps of Styria on the west, founding that realm on the great central plain of the Danube basin which has outlived the storms of nearly a thousand years.

6. The history of the Byzantine or Greek Empire, as it was now called, was chiefly characterised by wars with the Arabian powers in the south, to whom

Crete and Sicily were lost, and by the inroads of the Bulgarians, a people of Finnish origin, who having conquered the Moesians, established themselves in the country south of the lower Danube.

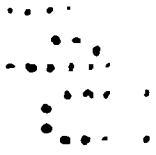
7. Towards the close of the tenth century, the *Russians* begin to emerge from obscurity. Among the enemies of the Greek Empire were the eastern Slavs or Slavonians (the ancestral Russians), part of a group of nations living in eastern Europe, about the sources of the Dnieper and Don rivers, known to the ancient writers as the Sarmatians, who had their chief settlements at *Novgorod* and *Kief*. Harassed by warlike neighbours, they sent ambassadors, about 862, to the chiefs of the Varangians, or Northmen, beyond the seas, inviting them to their aid. In response came the Scandinavian chief Rurick, at the head of his armed bands, who, from Novgorod first, and then from Kief as capital, extended the embryo empire, till it came in hostile contact with the Greek kingdom on the south.

8. Another branch of the Slavonic family also begins to take its place as a political power in Europe about this time. The tribes of the Polani dwelt between the rivers Oder and Vistula, and gradually acquired the ascendancy over their kindred neighbouring tribes. About the middle of the tenth century their ruler became a convert to Christianity, and under his son Boleslas I., surnamed "the Great," gave unity to the kingdom of Poland, and sustained a successful war with the Germans on the west. *Cracow*, afterwards the capital, was founded by a Polish prince, Krak, in 700.

9. In Britain, soon after the period represented in the last sketch, the independent states of the Anglo-Saxon Heptarchy were united by Egbert, king of Wessex (827) into the one kingdom of England. To the dynasty thus founded belonged Alfred the Great, whose exertions in repelling the incessant incursions of the Danes, his defeat of their army at *Edrington* in Wiltshire, his victories at sea with England's first fleet, and the wise and energetic rule which make his memory dear to all generations of Englishmen, scarcely need be here recalled.

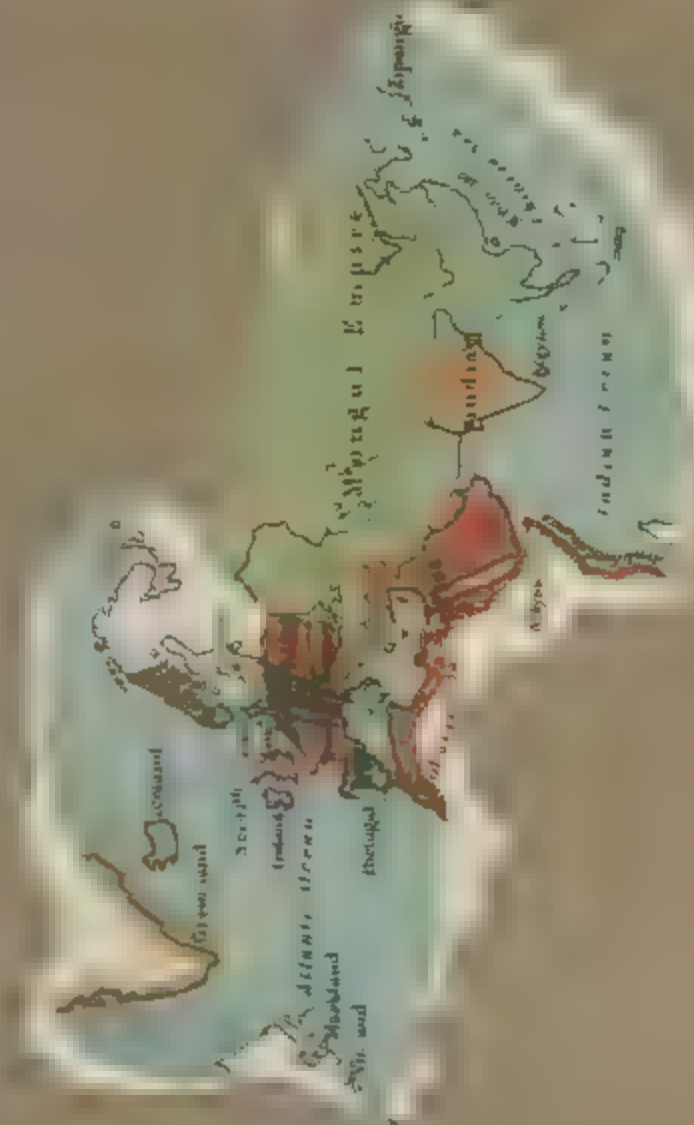
10. During this time Denmark and Scandinavia were known only by the hordes of freebooters who sallied out thence, making raids on England, the Frankish Empire, and Germany, and taking the lead even in Russia. The result of these expeditions was the introduction, towards the close of the tenth century, of Christianity into the Scandinavian countries, and from this time their mythical stories, contained in the heroic "sagas" or "eddas," give place to real history.

11. From the time of Ptolemy onward till this period, geographical knowledge had rested at nearly the same limits, but now the maritime expeditions of these hardy Northmen were destined to give it a far wider range. Already two northern seamen, named Wolfstan and Othere, had excited interest at King Alfred's court by the story of their voyages through the Baltic to Witland (Prussia) and Estland (Esthonia), and round the North Cape of Europe, in pursuit of the Hval-ros (walrus or whale-horse), to the White Sea. But their discoveries did not end here. The Farøe islands (Faar-oer = sheep islands), with their convenient harbours, became one of their strongholds; about 867 one of these chieftains, Naddodr by name, driven westward by storms, sighted the mountains of an unknown shore, to which he gave the name of Snowland, the island afterwards known as Iceland. But long before this, in 795, Irish monks had discovered Iceland, and spent a summer there. Some seven years later the Norwegians took permanent possession of Iceland, settling about Reykiavik, the present capital of the island. The Icelanders kept up their character of enterprising sailors, and already, about 876, one of them named Gunbiörn came upon an extensive country, to which, from its great cloak of ice reaching down between the black head-





ABOUT AD 300



London Bidwell Stanford 12.13 & 14 Long Acre W.C.

lands in white glacier arms to the sea, he gave the very apt name of *Hvidsærk* ("white shirt"), a name which was unfortunately changed to the inappropriate one of Greenland by Erik the Red, another Iclander who founded (985) the two colonies of the Ostre and Westre Bygd (east and west bays) on its shores.

12. The great achievement of the Greenland colonists, however, was the discovery of the American continent nearly five centuries before Columbus. In 986 Bjarne sailed for Greenland, and, being driven out of his course by northerly winds, discovered an island, which he circumnavigated. About the year 994 an expedition under Leif, son of Erik the Red, set sail for this new country. The regions discovered were named Helluland (Slateland), supposed to be Labrador; Markland, or Woodland, probably Southern Labrador; and Vinland, a country named from the wild vine growing there, which some identify with Newfoundland, whilst others transfer it to the coast, opposite an island to which the Pilgrim Fathers gave the name of Martha's Vineyard.

13. Thus, at the period shown in the sixth map, the great Arabian Empire had broken up into a number of separate Mohammedan states, extending from Persia to Spain, and already the central Asiatic Turks had begun to overrule the power of the Califs in the east; the Greek Empire had lost still more of its reduced territory, and was harassed on the south by the Saracens, and on the north by the Slavonic peoples of central Europe, now forming themselves into separate kingdoms, such as Russia and Poland. Germany had also risen to an independent place, while Charlemagne's great Frank Empire had shrunk to a far smaller area, and was overrun by the Northmen. In Spain, the Christian kingdoms of the northern mountaineers held their own, and were extending their power gradually southward against the Moors; England was now one kingdom, and the hardy Scandinavian seamen had pushed back the clouds of ignorance over the vast region of the north Atlantic, and had reached the shores of the great western continent.

#### 7. ABOUT 1000-1300 A.D.

1. We have now reached the central stage of the period known as the Middle Ages, which separate the ancient or classic times from the modern. Europe, as we have seen, was fast emerging from the state of barbarism, and the nations of modern times were gradually forming and developing themselves. The Christian Church was striving to extend its bounds in northern Europe, and the Papacy had been rising to great temporal power and influence. Superstition and religious enthusiasm prevailed very extensively, and were manifested in magnificent ecclesiastical buildings and pilgrimages. This zeal rose to its height in Europe when the barbarous Seljuk Turks overran Palestine and destroyed the Holy Sepulchre of Jerusalem, and brought about the great religious wars between the Christian nations of the west and the Mohammedans of the East, known as the Crusades (1096-1270).

Before touching upon the chief events of these wars and their effects on the civilisation of Europe, it will be well to glance at the movements which were taking place in each State of the known world at this time.

2. At the end of the last period we left Persia under the rule of the Ghiznevites. This dynasty had reigned for little more than half a century before the *Seljuk Turks* began to migrate into the fertile province of Khorassan. These were an offshoot of a number of Asiatic tribes who in 744 had overwhelmed the "empire of Kiptchak," as the region north-east of the Caspian was called. Their name they took from their leader, who had held the country about Bokhara. After some conflicts with the Ghiznevites they occupied northern Khorassan; then Balkh and Kharesm (Khiva) fell

before them, and advancing southward through Persia they took *Karman* and *Fars*. Arrived at Bagdad, the Calif there (whose temporal power was now all but gone, though he was still recognised as the spiritual chief of the Moslems) acknowledged the Turkish leader, and in 1060 the conquest of Persia was complete. Later, Melek Shah, the most powerful of the succeeding Seljuk rulers, added Arabia, Asia Minor, and Armenia, besides Syria, Palestine, and the countries beyond the Oxus, to the Seljuk Empire, which at the height of its greatness stretched from the *Ægean* Sea to India and Tartary.

3. Egypt at this time was in the hands of the now effeminate Fati-mide dynasty, and so remained till the latter part of the twelfth century, when the famous Salah-ed-din, or Saladin, son of the Seljuk governor of Tek-rit, on the Tigris, established himself as Sultan of Syria and Egypt.

4. Algeria was governed by Arabian princes up to the middle of the twelfth century; Morocco had been formed into a separate state shortly after the beginning of the eleventh century, and the city of that name was founded in 1072. Both of these states were, however, destined to fall before the Moham-medan sect named the *Almohades* or Unitarians, founded by a native of the Atlas region, to whom Arabs and Berbers flocked. From being a religious body the Almohades became a political power, which mastered all north Africa from Morocco to Tunis, and also extended conquest into Mohammedan Spain as far as the Ebro and Tagus.

5. In the north of the Spanish Peninsula, soon after the foundation of the kingdom of Castile, another Christian state, that of Aragon, was formed in the basin of the Ebro. These now, with Navarre, waged war with the common enemy, the Moors.

6. Portugal, the ancient Lusitania, from the Minho to the Tagus, had fallen under the sway of Castile, and in 1095 Henry of Burgundy governed it as a dependent fief of that kingdom; but after a great victory over the Moors at *Ourique*, in Alemtejo, his son Alfonso I. was proclaimed king of Portugal by his soldiers.

In 1212 a great and decisive battle was fought by the combined forces of Castile, Navarre, Aragon, and Portugal, against the Moors, on the plains of *Tolosa*, which effectually broke the Almohade power in Spain. The Mohammedan kingdom of Granada, founded shortly after this, was speedily compelled to acknowledge the supremacy of Castile, and henceforward all danger from the Moslems was at an end.

7. When Hugh Capet ascended the Frankish throne towards the close of the tenth century, and first made *Paris* the capital, the greater part of the land was held by independent lords, and the authority of the kings extended little beyond Paris and Orleans. Louis VI., surnamed the Good (1108-1137), re-extended the royal power over the kingdom, and carried on war with England and Germany. In the latter part of the thirteenth century Navarre was added to the Frankish kingdom.

8. We have noticed in a former paragraph that in the ruinous time which followed the breaking up of the empire of Charlemagne, the Northmen had invaded northern France, and had subsequently planted themselves firmly in the country which from them took the name of Normandy. Rolf, or Rollo, the leader of this northern expedition, was the ancestor of the Dukes of Nor-mandy, who were to play such an important part in English history.

9. The successors of Alfred the Great on the English throne were in constant conflict with the Danes and the Welsh mountaineers, till a more formidable invasion by the former drove Ethelred the Unready to Normandy, and England passed for twenty-eight years under the rule of the Danish kings Sweyn and Canute. With Edward the Confessor, son of Ethelred, the Saxon power was again restored in England (1042), notable events in his reign being

the successful wars with the Welsh and Northumbrians, the advance of an English army into Scotland against Macbeth, and the building of Westminster Abbey.

10. Harold, the son of the powerful Earl Goodwin of Kent, was raised to the throne on Edward's death, but William, Duke of Normandy, to whom Edward had made a promise of the English crown, asserted his right by an invasion of England (1066). Landing at *Pevensey*, on the Sussex coast, with 60,000 men, he advanced as far as *Hastings*. Harold met the invader on the heath, where the village of Battle now stands; in the fight Harold was slain and William "the Conqueror" became king, transferring the crown of England from the Saxon to the Norman line. Twenty years, however, were required to complete the conquest, for the Saxons maintained an unequal resistance, retiring to the forests, and as outlaws became the heroes of popular legends like that of Robin Hood. The Normans in turn became absorbed in the stronger Saxon element; even their language disappeared, leaving only its traces.

11. The Scots and Picts had gradually coalesced into one people under King Kenneth (843), who established his capital at *Forteviot*, in Strathearn, formerly the centre of the Pictish kingdom. Under Malcolm Canmore, who ruled at the time of the Norman Conquest, and his successors, the country enjoyed comparative quiet; but towards the end of the thirteenth century the great struggle with England began in which the heroic names of Wallace and Bruce are prominent—a contest which terminated in securing the independence of Scotland on the field of *Bannockburn*.

12. Norway was brought for a short time under the sway of the Danish conqueror Knut, or Canute the Great, but thenceforward continued to be governed by native kings. Sweden first emerges as an independent kingdom in the beginning of the twelfth century, when Gothland was united with it, and soon after we find its Christian kings subjugating and converting the pagan Finns and adding their land to the kingdom.

13. Germany during this period was troubled by the dissensions of the two great rival parties in the empire, who are best known, in the Italian form of their names, as the Ghibbelines and Guelphs—the one formed of the supporters of imperial authority, the other opposed to it, and representing the church and municipal rights. These parties took their names from the rival dukes of Franconia and Saxony, whose war-cries were the family names of Waiblingen and Welf (Wolf), corrupted into the forms above given by the Italians, in whose country their conflicts found their chief scene.

14. Poland at this time was mainly occupied in wars with the pagan Prussians, who, for fear of losing their freedom, resisted every effort at conversion; and it was not until the *Teutonic knights* had been invited by Poland to aid in their subjugation that the Christian faith was established in Prussia. The knights in turn, however, became formidable enemies of Poland, and gained for themselves the countries of Prussia, Livonia, and Courland.

15. Russia had meanwhile fallen from its condition as a united realm, and was held by a number of petty princes, whose quarrels kept it in a state of anarchy and weakness.

16. The Greek Empire in the earlier part of this period was harassed on all sides—by the Arabs, the Seljuk Turks, and the northern barbarians; and in Italy the Normans had reduced Byzantine territory to the district of Otranto. The twelve sons of a knight of Normandy named Tancred de Hauteville, whose estates were insufficient to support such a numerous family, sailed to seek their fortune in the Italian wars. One of them, with a small band of followers, gained possession of Apulia; another brother, named Roger, conquered the island of Sicily. The son of this knight, Roger II., ultimately

obtained possession of all his uncle's territories on the mainland, and thus was formed the kingdom of the Two Sicilies.

17. We have already referred to the lagoon islands of the Adriatic coast, which gave a refuge to the eastern inhabitants from the devastating wars of the north Italian plains, and to the gradual rise of the settlement of Venezia or *Venice*. The first form of government of the island state was republican; which, by and by, gave way to a magistracy in which a duke or "doge" was invested with undivided authority (697). Keeping up a close alliance with Constantinople, the naval importance and commerce of the little state increased year by year. It was after the eleventh century had begun, however, that the commercial relations of Venice gradually extended east and west, to the Black Sea, and all the Mediterranean coastlands. The territorial possessions of Venice were also enlarged by the conquest of Dalmatia, Istria, and Croatia.

In central Italy the temporal power and possessions of the Pope of Rome had been spreading till they reached thence to Bologna, Ravenna, and Ancona.

18. In 1073 the great Pope Gregory had received a supplication for aid from the Greek Emperor against the Turks, to which he cordially responded, and thus the grand idea of a Christian expedition against the Saracens was first entertained. His successor Urban revived the design, and after a council held at Clermont in France in 1095, the expedition was resolved upon. Thousands upon thousands, from the remotest corners of Europe, hurried to engage in the holy war, and, each wearing as a badge the sign of the cross, gave the name "crusade" to the movement. First one, then a second great army, led by Peter the Hermit, set out across Hungary and Bulgaria for Constantinople; a third and a fourth horde followed, though it was not till later that the real Crusaders, the nobility and yeomanry of Europe, set forth. In this way not fewer than 600,000 men gathered at Constantinople, whence they crossed to Asia Minor, into Mesopotamia and Syria, besieging and taking *Antioch*; two years afterwards, the remnant of this great army delivered *Jerusalem* from the hands of the infidel, and Godfrey de Bouillon was elected king of Palestine (1099).

19. Forty years later, a second crusade, consisting of two vast armies from France and Germany, proved a total failure. Now Saladin, the Seljuk sultan of Egypt, invaded Palestine, and, compelling Jerusalem to capitulate, gave the death-blow to the Christian kingdom. This led to a third crusade, uniting the strength of Germany, France, and England, in which the important city of *Acre* was besieged and taken (1191), though no further conclusion was reached than that of a treaty granting liberty to the people of the west to make free pilgrimages to the Holy Sepulchre.

20. The Crusaders had now changed their object from a religious to a secular one; the fourth expedition (1202-1204), in which the Franks and the Venetians joined, advancing on Constantinople, took that city, and having mastered the provinces, divided the whole into four parts—Baldwin, Count of Flanders, being made emperor, and the Venetians receiving the coast-lands of the Adriatic and Ægean. A fifth crusade, led by Frederick of Germany (1228), terminated in the cession of Palestine to that emperor; a sixth was called forth by the irruption of a new race of Turks into Syria, but Louis of France (IX.), who led it, was utterly defeated; he himself was captured, and only obtained his release on paying a heavy ransom to the Sultan of Egypt. Still a seventh crusade was begun by Louis (1270), and carried on after his death by Prince Edward of England, but nothing of importance resulted, save that the Templars and other military knights retained, for a few years longer, possession of Acre and some other towns.

21. By bringing the civilisation of the east and west into contact, and removing the prejudices of ignorance, relations of advantage, if not of sympathy, were

opened up between those different regions ; commerce between east and west received a great impulse, and other great social changes were brought about.

22. While the wars with the Saracens were occupying all minds in Europe, vast changes of dominion were brewing in Asia. Towards the middle of the twelfth century, a Mongol chief named Yesukai Bahâdur ruled over some thirty or forty clans who dwelt between the river Amur and the great wall of China, far on the east of Asia. On his death, his son Temujin, only thirteen years of age, assumed his place, but the clans, refusing to acknowledge him, chose another chief, and compelled the rightful heir to retire to *Karakorum*, and place himself there under the protection of the monarch of *Keraeit*. In the service of this king, Temujin distinguished himself greatly in conflicts with neighbouring tribes, and obtained the king's daughter in marriage. The king of *Karakorum*, becoming jealous of his growing influence, ordered Temujin to be assassinated, but he escaped to his own country at the head of a considerable following. Raising an army there, he marched against his father-in-law, whom he vanquished (1203), seized upon the dominions of *Karakorum*, and after a short time made himself master of east Mongolia. Assuming now the name of Genghiz Khan (= Khan or Khans), he turned his forces south towards China, conquered the northern Chinese region of *Khatai*, scaled the great wall, and after a long series of campaigns captured *Pekin* in 1215. The victorious Mongols now pressed westward into *Turkestan*, the vast region stretching between Lake Lob and the Sea of Aral, and reached the *Jihûn* (Oxus) on the borders of *Kharesm* or *Khiva*. Seven hundred thousand of his cavalry burst into *Khiva* in 1219 ; *Samarkand*, *Bokhara*, and all the chief cities of the land, were taken ; next his hordes overran Persia, driving out the last of the Seljuk kings ; they crossed the Caucasus into Russia and routed the Russians in a great battle near the Sea of Azov ; after destroying *Riazan*, *Moscow*, and the other settlements, they carried victory into Poland and Hungary. Nor were these Mongols less successful in the east, for the whole of southern Asia, and India as far as the *Satlej*, was laid waste before them.

23. The sons and grandsons of Genghiz Khan still further extended the huge empire. One of the latter, named Kublai Khan, availing himself of an invitation from a king of the Sung dynasty in China to aid him against the Manchu Tatars, entered China (1260) with a great army and drove out the Manchus ; but afterwards overthrew the Sung dynasty and conquered all southern China, extending his dominion as far as the Strait of Malacca. The court of Kublai Khan, the magnificence of which is described by Marco Polo, was attended by learned men from India, Persia, and even from Europe ; and his rule was a most beneficent one. During it the noble work of the Grand Canal of China was completed, connecting *Tientsin*, the port of *Pekin*, with *Hang-chau* on the lower course of the great river Yangtze, a distance as great as from Land's End to the Shetland Isles. Even still, a grain fleet, with great quantities of rice for the supply of the capital, passes every year from the south by this route, avoiding the storms and pirates of the coast.

24. Thus before the middle of the thirteenth century the vast Mongol Empire had stretched out from China to Poland and Hungary, over all Asia except India and Asia Minor—an empire which far surpassed in extent any that had yet been known on the surface of the globe ; and yet one which was so thoroughly organised under strict laws, that it was said one might travel from end to end of it without danger.

25. Among the great changes of power brought about by the Mongol invasion was that of the removal of the Oguzian Turks, who retreated before it from the steppes east of the Caspian to the mountains of Armenia. Othman or Osman, a chief of the tribe, on the destruction of the Seljuk power, obtained possession of Bithynia, and grew so strong as to be able to attack the Asiatic



portion of the sinking Byzantine empire with success, founding there (1299) the subsequently great empire of the Ottoman or Osmanli Turks, as they are named from him.

26. In the course of his conquest Genghiz Khan had carried off multitudes of western Asiatics as slaves. Twelve thousand of these, mostly Turks and Circassians, were bought by the Sultan of Egypt (a successor of Saladin), who formed them into a body of troops. From being servants these well-armed slaves rose to be masters in Egypt, and placed one of their own number in the sultanate (1254), thus founding the Mameluke (or slave) dynasty in Egypt, which lasted for nearly three centuries, bringing the country again into great prosperity and power.

27. Thus about the year 1300, at the period represented in the seventh little chart, the relic of the once great Arabian Empire had been restricted to its original seat, and to the western region of North Africa, all else having fallen into the hands of the Turks. The Calif of Bagdad had taken refuge under the protection of the Mamelukes of Egypt, retaining his spiritual power only; the Ommiade califate in Spain had long fallen; the Moham-medan princes now held the kingdom of Granada only, as vassals to the Christian court of Castile; Navarre, on the north, had become an appanage of the crown of France, to which Normandy and Poitou had been annexed.

The English under Edward I. had incorporated Wales after ten years' contest, and Scotland was fighting for independence, led by Wallace and Bruce; Anglo-Norman adventurers (Fitzgeralds, Butlers, and others) had established themselves among the native clans of Ireland. Denmark, Sweden, and Norway were separate states, and the Norse colonies across the Atlantic had reached the most flourishing period of their commerce, the old literature of historical *sagas* or tales and poems being zealously cultivated. In central Europe, Poland and Hungary had been brought to the verge of ruin by the Mongol invasions, which had swept away for the time the divided principalities of Russia. In the south, the old Greek Empire was fast sinking, and assaults on it by the Turks had begun.

28. During the earlier part of the period that we have been considering there lived and travelled a man who may be called the great geographer of the middle ages, as Ptolemy was of ancient times. This was the Arabian Edrisi, a man of noble birth, born at *Ceuta*, in north Africa, in 1099. He studied at Cordova, then the great centre of commerce and the seat of learning of the western califate, and afterwards he travelled to Constantinople and Asia Minor, Egypt and Morocco, through Spain, and to the coasts of France and England, finally settling with King Roger of Sicily, there to put into shape the materials which this enlightened ruler had been gathering for fifteen years from travellers to all parts of the known world—itineraries, measurements, and observations of all kinds. Here Edrisi drew on a great globe of silver, and described in a book, all that was then known of the earth, from the "Sea of Darkness" west of the Spanish peninsula to the "Sea of Pitchy Darkness," which was believed to lie east of Asia. He divided the known world, like Ptolemy, into seven belts of climate, from the hottest in the south to the coldest in the far north.

29. Later, as we have seen, the crusades brought the western and eastern nations into close contact, and could not fail to extend the geographical knowledge of both sides of the civilised world. Then the terrible march of the Mongols over Asia and eastern Europe drew all eyes in that direction, and ambassadors and conciliatory embassies were sent from all the western powers to the court of the great Khan. John de Plano Carpini, a Franciscan monk of Naples, was the Pope's envoy to the new potentate, and he brought back from the Mongol court a striking narrative of his adventures in the

2000

1

2

3



London Edward Stanford, 23 & 24, Long Acce W.

rigorous climate of central Asia, describing also the great plains east of the Caspian strewn with the bones and skulls of the victims of the devastating warfare that had just passed over them, and giving for the first time to Europeans a true account of the Tatars and their manner of living. William de Rubruquis, also a Minorite friar, was sent into Asia by Louis of France (1253-54), and he too reached the court of the Khan at Karakorum after crossing the great deserts, which he compared to an ocean for extent.

30. Among those who were at this time attracted towards the newly-known lands of Asia were two merchants of far-reaching Venice, Nicolo and Matteo Polo, who carried their trading venture past the Euxine and the Volga, round the Caspian to Bokhara, where, meeting with some ambassadors going southwards to the court of Kublai Khan, they accompanied them to *Kemenfu*, the summer residence of the ruler. They were well received, and returned to Europe as envoys to the Pope, bearing a request for 100 Europeans well versed in arts and sciences to instruct the Mongols. Finding it impossible to fulfil their mission, they returned in 1271, taking with them Marco, the son of Nicolo Polo, who commended himself to the Khan by his skill and learning, and was made his envoy to several of the other Asiatic rulers, to China, Assam, Tibet, Bengal, and Pegu. In this service Marco Polo gained the material for his book, which is the chief source of information regarding the state of Asia at the close of the thirteenth century. Having thus passed seventeen years in travelling through kingdoms which no European had ever before seen, from the high table-lands of central Asia to the great rivers and teeming population of the lowlands of China, he obtained permission to join the escort of a Mongol princess travelling to the west of Persia. He accordingly set out from China (1291), and was the first European to sail on the China sea, and to pass through what we now know as the Strait of Malacca to the Indian Ocean. He came to Teheran in Persia; hearing, on arrival there, that Kublai Khan was dead, he returned to Venice (1295), bringing much wealth and many strange objects from the unknown regions he had visited. To Marco Polo is due not only the opening up to accurate knowledge of the vast region of the central Asiatic continent, but also the disclosure of the chief of the great islands which lie beyond it. Before his journey the existence of Japan, which he called Zipangu, had not even been suspected, any more than that of the archipelago to the south-east of Asia. His book, as might be expected, created an immense interest in the learned world of the west, and was of inestimable value in stimulating geographical research, as we shall afterwards see.

31. But whilst Venice opened up new paths to commerce towards the east, Genoa, which found herself excluded from these profitable pastures through the jealousy of her countrymen, looked westward, and sought to open up a new road to India by sailing through the Strait of Gibraltar and round the southern extremity of Africa. It was Genoese who first, in modern times, ventured upon the Atlantic; it was they who discovered the Canaries, Madeira, and the Azores, and who first felt their way along the west coast of Africa. Tedisio Doria and the brothers Vivaldi, who left Genoa in three small vessels, in 1291, had no other object than the discovery of an ocean highway to India, and we have good reason to believe that at least one of their vessels sailed to the Senegal, if not beyond it.

## 8. 1300-1500.

1. The death of the emperor Kublai Khan was the signal for great changes of empire in Asia. In China the power of the Tatar ruler, who had grown effeminate under the unaccustomed luxuries of a more civilised state, was overthrown by a revolt of the Chinese, and the Ming or bright dynasty arose.

China was again united under its own sovereign at the court of Nanking, and Chinese supremacy was recognised in the surrounding countries of Corea, Manchuria, and Mongolia on the north, and perhaps also by the Grand Lama of Tibet.

2. A second great conqueror-hero now appeared in western Asia. This was Timur-leng, so called from his lameness (vulg. Tamerlane), a descendant of the family of Genghiz Khan, and a chief of the division of his great empire, known as *Jagatai*, or Turkistan north of the Amu river, who had reunited some of its independent sections under his sway. Ambitious of restoring this kingdom to its former power and extent, he first reduced the rebellious prince of Herat, and afterwards invading Seistan and Mazanderan, in Persia, subdued all the districts east of the Euphrates from *Tiflis* to *Shiraz*.

3. While engaged in this southern campaign his unprotected northern territories were invaded by the Khan of Kiptchak. Hastening home, Timur speedily drove out the invaders, and pursued them westward, almost annihilating the Kiptchak army in a great battle on the Bielaya (a tributary of the Kama) in 1391. Still advancing westward, he now passed through the gates of *Derbend*, and thence northward by the Volga as far as Moscow, leaving death and desolation in his track. A few years later he turned his conquering army towards India, and going by the Khaibar Pass descended into the plains, fought a great battle before *Delhi* and took that city, advancing afterwards beyond it to the Ganges. Returning with immense spoils, he expended these in adorning his capital of *Samarkand*.

4. A year later Timur made a new expedition to the south-west, attacking and overthrowing the Egyptian Empire in Syria, capturing the towns of *Aleppo*, *Baalbek*, and *Damascus*. He next attacked the Turkish possessions in Asia Minor, and completely routed the Sultan Bayazét near *Angora*, and captured his person. On his return homeward Timur conquered Georgia, and by way of *Merv* and *Balkh* again reached Samarkand. A great invasion of China was next projected by the conqueror, and had actively begun, when he died of a fever caught on the banks of the Jihûn (1405).

5. While Timur was beginning his conquests in Asia, the Ottoman Turks had gained a footing in Europe by taking *Gallipoli*, and the Greek Empire was reduced to the districts round Constantinople. The power of Servia was annihilated on the bloody field of Kosovo-polye ("plain of blackbirds"), to the west of Prishtina (1389), and the decisive victory over the Hungarians, won seven years later at Nicopoli, opened Central Europe to the inroads of the Turks. The great defeat of the Sultan by Timur in Asia gave Constantinople a respite for fifty years. Recovering from this defeat, the Turks now mastered Macedonia and Greece. Constantinople was stormed in 1453, and with it fell the last relic of the empire of the Romans. Before the close of the fifteenth century the Turkish Empire in Europe had been extended over all the Balkan Peninsula, and included, besides this, the northern shores of the Black Sea, with Dalmatia, and Otranto in Italy.

6. During this period Hungary recovered from the wounds inflicted by the Mongol invaders, and became a firmly established State: at the head of it was Matthias Corvinus, the greatest of Hungarian kings, who raised the cavalry force known as the Hussars (*Huszar*=the twentieth, from *husz*=20, since one man in each village was enrolled out of every twenty), and with their aid the independence of Hungary was maintained against the advancing Turks.

7. Towards the middle of the fourteenth century, when the fierce energy of the Mongols was declining, the principalities of Russia began to shake off the yoke to which they had been subjected, and to strive among themselves for the supremacy; the princes of *Moscow* and *Tver* were the strongest, the former ultimately becoming the chief. The first great step towards liberation was

gained in a victory over the Mongol Khan on the banks of the Don (1380), before Timur's invasion. It is, however, to Ivan III. (1462-1505), surnamed the Great, that the Russian Empire owes its true foundation; under his skilful guidance the petty principalities were united into one, and their strength turned against the Mongol khanates of the south and east (Kazan, Astrakhan, Krim Tartary, and dismembered Kiptchak), and against the Lithuanians of the north-west. He married Zoë, the daughter of the Byzantine Emperor, and thus paved the way for the introduction of European civilisation. He also introduced the two-headed Byzantine eagle as the Russian arms, an emblem in connection with which certain pretensions are still remembered.

8. In the earlier part of this period Poland was engaged in repelling the attack of the Teutonic knights, who had been engaged in a crusade for enforcing Christianity on the people of the southern shores of the Baltic, and had thereby acquired possession of Prussia, Livonia, and Courland, but who were finally overthrown. Subsequently the Polish crown passed to Jagello, a grand-duke of Lithuania, the founder of the illustrious dynasty of the Jagellons, and for the first time Lithuania was united to Poland.

9. In Germany the house of Hapsburg had been rising into power, and afterwards held the throne of the German Empire almost uninterruptedly.

The period is marked chiefly by the intrigues of the popes, the Roman Church having gradually merged its spiritual aspect into a widespread machinery of external government. This spiritual decay was naturally followed by those corruptions and abuses which began to be denounced by such men as the Bohemian reformer and martyr John Huss, whose followers subsequently took such terrible revenge in the insurrections known as the Hussite wars.

10. This time is also memorable as that of the contest for independence carried on by the Swiss mountaineers against the Austrian power, and the formation of the Confederation of the Cantons, which successfully established its independence in many battles, from that of *Morgarten* (1315) to that of *Morat* (1476).

11. In France a great part of the fourteenth century was disturbed by the constant wars with Edward III. of England, who laid claim to the French throne in right of his mother; now were fought the battle of *Crecy* (1346), where the Black Prince gained his crest, and that of *Poitiers* (1356), in which King Jean was taken prisoner—victories which cut down the flower of the French nobility. After a pause during the minority of Richard II. the war was renewed; Henry V. won the great victory of *Agincourt* (1415); but fourteen years later, when the English had advanced to *Orleans*, a reaction came; Joan of Arc inspired courage into the hearts of the besieged, and became the dread of the previously triumphant English. Not many years later the English lost all their acquisitions with the exception of the town of *Calais*, for the disastrous civil contests, known as the Wars of the Roses, had broken out in England and divided its strength.

12. In the northern countries, after many feuds and changes of territory, Denmark, Sweden, and Norway were first united as one by the treaty of *Calmar* (1397), under Margaret of Denmark. Iceland passed with Norway under the new sovereign; but all communication with the Greenland colonies appears to have ceased soon after this date, and they seem to have been completely forgotten for more than three centuries; the fearful pestilence which had ravaged northern Europe reached them about the beginning of the fifteenth century, sweeping off the greater part of the colonists, and leaving the rest a prey to the attacks of the Eskimo, or Skrellings as they were named by the Norwegians. The very site of the colonies was lost till quite recently.

13. We come now to the Spanish Peninsula, where great events were in progress, and where that spirit of adventure and discovery was being fostered

which was to add a new hemisphere to the known world. When we last glanced at the changes of power in Spain, the Mohammedan Moors had been restricted to the vassal kingdom of Granada, in the south of the Peninsula, whence they were carrying on a chivalrous warfare with the kings of Castile. The kingdom of Aragon was rapidly spreading outward; the Balearic Isles, Sicily, and Sardinia, were added to it before the beginning of the fourteenth century, and soon afterwards all Naples and southern Italy were brought under its dominion. With the marriage of Ferdinand of Aragon with Isabella queen of Castile (1469) began the consolidation of Spain into one great empire. Granada was conquered, and all those of the Moors who refused to adopt Christianity were expelled from the Peninsula (1492). Twenty years later the kingdom of Navarre, in the north, was seized upon by Ferdinand, so that about the close of the fifteenth century Spain was one united kingdom from the Pyrenees to Gibraltar.

14. Portugal meanwhile had maintained its independence, and was steadily rising to the highest place as the greatest maritime power in Europe. Already in 1415 the Portuguese, taking the aggressive against the Moors, captured from them the town of *Ceuta*, on the African coast, and established themselves there. Prince Henry, son of King John I., distinguished himself greatly in this conquest, and on his return took up his residence at *Sagres*, close to Cape St. Vincent. His mariners, in their sea-fights with the Moors, had sailed into parts of the ocean long believed to be inaccessible, and Prince Henry's ambition for discovery had been awakened. Forming an observatory at *Sagres*, he gathered there the sons of the nobility of Portugal, and had them trained in the sciences necessary for navigation. Rumours of the gold-yielding coasts of Guinea had been gathered from the Moors, and the thoughts of adventurers were turned thither.

15. The voyagers sent out southward doubled Cape Bojador, on the African coast, in 1433; and in 1441 Cape Blanco was reached. In the following year Nuno Tristão sighted Cape Veri, whose luxuriant vegetation for ever silenced those who looked upon the equatorial regions as an uninhabitable waste scorched up by the heat of the sun. In 1455 the Venetian *Ca da Mosto*, on his return from a visit to the Senegal and Gambia, discovered the Cape Verde Islands, which were immediately taken possession of by the Portuguese. The last expedition which sailed under the auspices of Prince Henry was commanded by Pedro de Cintra, 1462, who discovered Sierra Leone.

Thus before Prince Henry's death the coast was known as far as Sierra Leone, and the work he had set on foot was eagerly taken up by others. The *coast*, which was named from the grain of the *Meleguetta* pepper, was next explored, and Fernando Po reached the island which now bears his name, though he called it *Ilha Formosa*, the beautiful Isle. Each new voyager surpassed his predecessor. João de Santarém and Pedro d'Escobar were the first to cross the equator, in 1471. Diego Cam, in 1482, found the mouth of the large river now known as the Congo, and there set up the pillar to mark his discovery, from which the river itself for a long time was known as the *Rio do Padrão*. Sailing still farther south, he explored the coast nearly to the southern tropic. Forty-eight years afterwards came Bartholomew Diaz, who passed in 1488 the point of the Cape named *Das Voltas*, near the Orange River: whence driven back by storms he regained the coast at Algoa Bay, and thence sailed on to the point now called St. Croix. He had thus rounded the Cape, the southern extremity of Africa, and from the violent weather which he experienced it was named *Cabo Formoso* (the Cape of Storms), a name afterwards changed by King John I. of Portugal to the more auspicious one of *Cabo da Boa Esperança*, the Cape of Good Hope.

16. The Portuguese began to meditate at times that of a rich and

magnificent kingdom the sovereign and priest of which came to be known in the west as "Prester John;" but the locality of this kingdom was undefined, and it was sometimes supposed to be in Asia, sometimes in Africa. The reports concerning it had, however, made a profound impression in Europe, and led the adventurous Portuguese to search for it in Africa. In this quest *Abyssinia* was visited by Pedro de Covilham, an emissary of King John of Portugal, a few years after the southern cape of Africa was discovered, and thus close relations were begun with this part of Africa which lasted for several centuries. But, before entering Abyssinia, the Portuguese emissary had visited Ormuz, Goa, and Malabar, and, crossing the Indian Ocean, he had landed on the Sofala coast, rich in mines of gold and silver, and identified by some as the land of Ophir to which Solomon sent his ships. It was then Europeans first heard of the powerful kingdom of the *Monomotapa*, to the south of the Zambesi.

17. Lisbon at this time had become the centre of all that was speculative and adventurous in maritime discovery. Here there lived an Italian of Genoa, named Colon (Columbus), who while employed in the construction of charts and maps, conceived the idea of sailing *westward* to the Indies of Marco Polo. Toscanelli, the great Florentine astronomer, had sanctioned such a project in a letter written in 1474; and Columbus was confirmed in his views by the discovery, on the Azores, of pieces of carved wood, and even of a boat containing the bodies of men whose features differed from those of Africans or Europeans, and who had evidently been drifted ashore from some distant country in the west. He ultimately found the means of laying his scheme before King John. The Portuguese sovereign having decided against the venture, Columbus, disappointed but not despairing, turned to England and then to Spain, and after eight years of hoping at length was put in command of three small vessels, only one of which was decked. With these he set sail from the bar of *Saltes*, near *Palos* on the Rio Tinto, in August 1492. After a month spent in refitting at the Canaries he ventured out into the unknown seas, and, disregarding the fears and disaffection of his crew, bore steadily westward.

On the 11th of October, says Columbus in his diary, "the sailors of the caravel *Pinta* saw a reed and a stick; and they picked up another small bit of carved wood, and also a piece of cane, some other fragments of land vegetation, and a small board. At these indications they drew in their breath and were all full of gladness. At ten o'clock at night the admiral, while standing on the quarter deck, saw a light, although it was so indistinct that he could not say with certainty that it was land; but he called to Pero Gutierrez, the king's groom of the chambers, and told him there was land in sight, and desired him to look out, and so he did, and saw it." At two o'clock after midnight, the land appeared at two leagues' distance. They struck all sail and lay to until Friday the 12th of October, when they went on shore in an armed barge and took possession in the name of the king and queen of Spain; the island was called *Guanahani* in the Indian language, but Columbus gave it the name San Salvador. This islet was either *Watling* or *Samana Cay* in the Lucaya or Bahama group. Continuing westward, Columbus discovered *Cuba* and *Hayti* or San Domingo, and on the latter, which he called Hispaniola, he left a small colony and set sail again for Spain, where he was now received with joy and admiration.

18. In the belief that the western side of Asia had been reached, the new lands were collectively named the West Indies. In September of next year Columbus set sail again for the west from Cadiz with seventeen ships and a strong force, and on this voyage added the *Caribee Islands* and *Jamaica* to his discoveries. In a third voyage, in 1498, he steered more to the south, and found the island of *Trinidad*, and the mouth of the *Orinoco* river, landing in the Gulf of Paria.



The success of Columbus had naturally inflamed many with the passion for discovery; among those who first set out on the path he had opened up to the west, was Amerigo Vespucci, a naval astronomer of Florence, who sailed with Admiral Ojeda from Cadiz in 1499, and with him explored the coast from Trinidad westward, discovering the lake of Maracaybo; they gave the name *Venezuela* (little Venice) to a village built on piles at the entrance to the lake which reminded them of Venice, a name which afterwards spread to the whole country. It was Amerigo who first proclaimed the fact that the newly-discovered countries had no connection with Asia, but formed a "New World," which geographers, soon after the publication of his narrative, named "America." Next year, Pinzon, a companion of Columbus, sailed south, discovering the mouth of the Amazon, and doubling the promontory called Cape San Roque.

19. Meanwhile the Portuguese had been vigorously following up their African expeditions, and had made a discovery only second to that of the new continent in the west. On the return of Bartholomew Diaz from the Cape of Storms, King John chose Vasco da Gama, an intrepid mariner of high birth, to search for a southern passage to India. With four vessels, and provided with letters to all potentates that might be met with, among others to the mythical "Prester John," the little fleet left Lisbon in July 1497, and reached the inlet we now know as Table Bay, near the Cape of Good Hope, in November of that year. A mutiny of his crew had to be suppressed before he could sail round the south of Africa. On Christmas day the land which was thence named "*Natal*" was seen, and presently the known coasts of Mozambique came in view. Reaching the Arab port of *Melindé*, north of Zanzibar, an Indian pilot was taken on board, under whose guidance the Indian Ocean was safely crossed to the port of *Calicut* in India. The Arab merchants here, fearing interference with their commerce, incited the Hindus against the Portuguese, and Gama had to fight his way out of the port.

20. Soon after he had again cast anchor in the Tagus the Portuguese king resolved to follow up the discovery of the new route by sending out a strong force to establish settlements in India; and a fleet of thirteen vessels under Pedro Cabral set sail in march 1500. To avoid the calms of the equatorial latitudes in the Atlantic, Cabral took a course too far to the west, and falling into the southerly current was borne to the shores of South America near the harbour now known as *Porto Seguro*. Landing here, he took possession of the new land in the name of the king of Portugal, and sent back two of his vessels to announce his discovery of the "*Terra da Santa Cruz*," the country now called Brazil. Afterwards passing round the Cape to Mozambique and India, and making the force of the Portuguese arms felt at Calicut, he was permitted to found a factory there, after concluding a treaty with the native ruler.

21. The ardour of the English also had been roused by Columbus' great discovery, and Henry VII. gave to Giovanni Cabot, a Venetian sailor resident in Bristol, the command of a squadron of five vessels for a voyage of discovery across the Atlantic. Cabot the elder was accompanied in this voyage by his sons Ludovico and Sebastian (born at Bristol), and in June 1497 they sighted the coast of America, at the Helluland of the old Norwegian voyagers, giving the re-discovered country the name of *Newfoundland*. Three years later these shores were visited by the Portuguese navigator Cortereal, who found the mouth of the St. Lawrence, and the wild and precipitous shores to the north of it, on which he bestowed the name *Terra Labarador* = "cultivable land," a name quite as inapt as that of Greenland.

22. The immediate result of the discoveries of Marco Polo was the establishment of more intimate relations with eastern Asia. The Mongol sovereigns of China encouraged Christian missionaries, foremost amongst whom were Juan





ABOUT A.D. 1800



London: Edward Stanford, 12, 13 & 14, Long Acre, W.C.

de Montecorvino, Friar Odorico of Pordenone, and Marignola. Italian merchants, including Pegoletti of Florence and Nicolò Conti, the first European to cross the Dekkan (1424), penetrated to India and into Turkestan; and Clavijo, the ambassador of King Henry of Castile, partook of the rude hospitality of Timur Leng at Samarkand. Nor must we omit here Sir John Mandeville's wonderful account of travels, which enjoyed a popularity quite unprecedented.

23. To recapitulate the chief features and conditions of the known world, at the time represented in the eighth little chart:—In the far east China had recovered its independence under the Ming dynasty, and its supremacy was acknowledged over Mongolia and eastern Turkestan, though the states of Tonquin and Cochin China, in the southern peninsula beyond India, had assumed a political independence. Western Asia, as we have seen, had been reconquered by Timur of the country of Jagatai, or western Turkestan, whose successors maintained his empire till near the end of the fifteenth century, when it was again subdivided, all eastern Persia falling to the Usbegs of Kiptchak, who had raised the Khanate of Khiva to power; while a new dynasty, formed by the union of a number of tribes, had sprung up in western Persia, making *Azerbijan* its chief seat. The Ottoman Turks had extended their European territory to its widest limit over the ruins of the Greek Empire, and their farther advance had been sternly checked by the Hussars of Hungary. Russia had become a united kingdom under Ivan the Great, and had acquired from its union the power to throw off the Tatar yoke.

24. In western Europe, the Swiss mountaineers had secured their independence. France was recovering from the calamities inflicted on it by the English, who had all but lost their hold on the land. In the south the reaction of Christendom against Mohammedanism had begun. The Christian kingdoms of Spain and Portugal had driven back the Moors across the Straits into Africa, and had consolidated their strength over the whole Peninsula. The Moors in turn had settled themselves along the north African coast, and had begun that course of piracy which was first instituted as a retaliation against the Christian persecution, but which afterwards sank to a barbarous profession.

25. Morocco at this time had been formed into a monarchy, and enjoyed great prosperity. In the south it touched upon a great empire which had risen in Negroland. This was the kingdom of *Songhay*, the rulers of which had embraced Mohammedanism in the eleventh century, and which, under Haj Mohammed A'Skia, who came into power in the end of the fifteenth century, extended its dominion across the whole region about the great bend of the Niger, to the confines of Morocco on the north, and on the west almost to the shores of the Atlantic. More towards the centre of the continent, round the basin we now know as that of Lake Chad, another great Mohammedan empire, that of Bornu, had also arisen, and reached its height of greatness about the close of the fifteenth century.

26. Portugal and Spain, as we have seen, had given birth to the boldest navigators the world had ever known; the terrors of the unknown "Sea of Darkness" in the west had been overcome. The wealth of a new hemisphere had been laid open to adventure and conquest. Africa had been circumnavigated, and the way to the wealth of India had been found. Spain had already laid hold of the islands of the West Indies; and Portugal had established the first European settlements on the shores of India.

## 9. 1500–1600.

Within the last eight years of the fifteenth century, as we have seen, the circle of darkness which had so long hung round the Old

World was driven back on all sides, and geographical knowledge expanded from its former contracted limits with a great leap, such as it can never again take in the history of the world. The spirit of Henry the Navigator had entered into the heart of all the maritime nations of Europe, the race for the discovery and conquest of new worlds had begun, and every year, almost every day, brought tidings to the Old World of fresh wonders from the New.

1. Before turning to follow the progress of events beyond the seas, it may be well to glance, as formerly, at the leading events and changes of power which were progressing meantime in the old world.

In China—still under the Ming dynasty (1368-1644)—there is no great change to notice, but in the western half of the Asiatic continent power is now rapidly changing hands.

The Mohammedan dynasty of Ismail, leading the sect called Shias or Shiites, followers of Ali, had acquired command, as we have before noticed, in western Persia, and soon the central provinces of Khorassan and Balkh were taken from the Uzbeks. On the western frontier their territories were now attacked by the mighty Sultan Selim of Turkey, whose troops, inflamed by religious animosity, massacred the Sectaries at *Calderoon*, but after their retirement, Ismail pressed westward and conquered Georgia. To this ruler is ascribed not only the restoration of the Persian state to its prosperity, but the establishment of the particular form of the Mohammedan faith which the majority of Persians still hold.

2. About this time another Asiatic conqueror, a great-grandson of Timur, appeared in the country east of Persia. This was Baber, the founder of the Mogul or Mongol Empire, which had its centre at Delhi in northern India. Having mastered the provinces of Kashgar, Kunduz, Kandahar, and Kabul, he crossed the Indus into Hindustan, and after defeating the native princes in a great battle at *Paniput*, near Delhi (1526), he captured that city and *Agra*. Afterwards he established the powerful empire which lasted till the beginning of the nineteenth century.

3. North of Persia, the country between the Caspian and the borders of Mongolia was in the hands of the dominant Uzbek Turks in the states of Khiva, Bokhara, and Kokan.

In the south-west of Asia, the Ottoman Empire was being raised to its extreme height of power. Sultan Selim ascended the throne in 1512. Urged by a devouring appetite for conquest, he declared war against the Sectaries in Persia, and marching eastward at the head of 250,000 men, overran Diarbekr, Kurdistan, and Armenia; then, turning southwards through Syria, he defeated the Mameluke Sultan of Egypt, and entered Cairo unopposed. Here the last descendant of the Abbaside Calif invested him as the chief of all Islam and the representative of Mohammed. Now the chief Arabian tribes, and the holy cities of Medina and Mecca, also recognised the supremacy of the Ottoman ruler. The reign of Selim was marked by the construction of the arsenal at *Pera* beside Constantinople, and the foundation of the Turkish navy, which was soon to command the Mediterranean. His successor, Solyman "The Magnificent," carried on the course of conquest; he exterminated the Egyptian Mamelukes, and concluded treaties with Persia. In Europe his arms were turned against Hungary; Belgrad was captured, and his resistless march was continued to Buda and Pest, in the heart of the country; some years later even Vienna (1529) was besieged by his invading hosts.

4. The progress of the Turks in this direction was checked by the Imperial army of Charles V. of Germany, but ultimately they gained complete posses-

sion of Hungary. An alliance between the Turks and the French, by which the commerce of the Levant was opened to the flag of the latter nation only, bore fruit in the ravages of the coasts of Italy by the united fleets. The Turks became supreme in the eastern Mediterranean, and Tripoli fell into their hands.

5. During the reign of Selim II. (1570), the first collision of the Turks with the Russians was brought about in the following manner :—The project of uniting the Black Sea and the Caspian by a canal between the Don and the Volga had been conceived, but the programme required the possession of Astrakhan. The attack made on the city by the Turks brought down the interference of the Russians, and the projected canal scheme was blighted. At this time Ivan IV., “The Terrible,” reigned in Russia, and his arms were everywhere successful, against the Lithuanians in the north-west and the Tatar Khanates of the south-east. He captured the strong city of Kazan in the middle of the century, annexing the state of which it was capital to his empire, and Astrakhan soon afterwards followed the same fate.

6. It was during his reign that the Cossack Vassili Yermak, an absconded criminal, at the head of a band of wild followers, forced his way eastward into Asia, and extended his conquests as far as the river Irtysh, taking the town of *Sibir* (the site of which was near the present town of Tobolsk) from which the whole land of Siberia was to receive its name. Before the end of the century Russian dominion had here been consolidated.

7. Early in the sixteenth century Sweden emancipated itself from union with Denmark, and Gustavus Ericson, afterwards known as Vasa of romantic story, during forty years of noble effort, raised the country from its turbulence and barbarism to the condition of a prosperous and civilised realm ; a condition destined, however, only to fall again in the stormy reigns of his immediate successors, which were marked by internal disorders and disastrous wars with Denmark, Poland, and Russia. When Sweden elected a king of its own, the crown of Denmark and Norway passed to Frederick, Duke of Schleswig and Holstein, and these duchies were united to the State.

8. Germany at the commencement of this period was in a state of great agitation concerning the doctrines proclaimed by Luther, and the great movement of the Reformation had begun, by which the church of the greater part of north-western Europe became separated from that of Rome. On the death of Ferdinand of Spain, his grandson Charles rose to the throne of that country, taking with him to the Peninsula many followers from Flanders, where he had been born and educated. Three years later he was also elected German Emperor. As Charles V. of Germany, one of his first acts was an endeavour to restore tranquillity by summoning the princes and statesmen of the land to the town of *Worms*, where Luther confronted the assembly, and made the famous declaration of his principles (1521).

9. We have already referred to Charles’s successful opposition to the advance of the Turks in Austria. Between France and Germany a long struggle was in progress during his reign, in which his armies eventually drove the French from the greater part of their conquests in Italy, defeating them at *Pavia* (1525), and taking the French king prisoner. Another great act of his reign was an expedition undertaken against the pirate Barbarossa, who had established himself in Tunis, and whose ships did great injury to the commerce of Spain. After Charles’s abdication (1556), during the latter half of the century, Germany was a prey to internal dissensions of opposite religious factions, which each in turn invited the aid of foreign powers to contribute to the growing anarchy.

10. The defeat of the French at Pavia, and the capture of King Francis, threw that nation into great disorder, upon which followed the persecutions of

the Huguenots,<sup>1</sup> as the Protestants or followers of the Reformation in France were called, culminating in the frightful massacre of St. Bartholomew's Day (1572) in Paris, and leading the country into the successive religious wars which continued till the end of the sixteenth century, when the famous Edict of *Nantes* established the rights of the Protestants (1598).

11. In England the struggle of the court with the Pope of Rome and the advance of the Protestant doctrines marked the earlier half of the sixteenth century; then, in the reign of Mary (1553-58), the reaction brought back Papal supremacy, till the atrocities of the persecutors of the Reformers, and the cruel martyrdoms of Smithfield, once and for ever turned the popular mind from the Church of Rome. Then followed the long and happy reign of Elizabeth, towards the end of which patriotism overcame religious differences, and Protestant and Catholic alike fought to repel the great Armada. This was a huge fleet, with the aid of which Philip of Spain had resolved to strike a decisive blow at the Protestant interest by conquering England, which Pope Sixtus had made over to him. On the death of Elizabeth the crowns of England and Scotland were for the first time united (1603).

12. We have already referred to the accession of Charles to the Spanish throne. As head of the house of Burgundy he also inherited and united the Netherlands under his sceptre; and, through the encouragement he gave to commerce and navigation, that country attained to great prosperity, and *Amsterdam* rose to be its great port. In Spain itself the very events which had raised the empire to magnificence may be said to have laid the seeds of its decline; for all its most active spirits had set out in search of the *El Dorado* of the New World, where gold was believed to be more plentiful than in the old country, the culture of which was in consequence neglected.

13. The expulsion of the Moors from Spain, as we have formerly noticed, had driven them to the opposite African coasts and made them pirates. Their outrages drew down an attack from Ferdinand of Spain in 1509, in which he captured the town of Algiers. Later, one of the Algerian princes invited the aid of the Greek renegade Barbarossa, who had made himself famous as a Turkish naval chief; but when he arrived he treacherously turned his Corsairs against the Algerians, and made himself Sultan of their country and of Tunis. The Spaniards marched against him from *Oran*; and Barbarossa, after many encounters, was defeated and slain. His brother was then chosen Sultan, and placing himself under the protection of Turkey, drove the Spaniards out of the country. In 1535 Charles of Spain undertook an expedition against the Corsairs, and set free no fewer than 20,000 Christians who had been held as slaves; but a subsequent great armada of 370 ships intended to crush their power proved a complete failure. Emboldened by this, the Algerians pushed their excursions even beyond the Straits of Gibraltar, till the maritime states of Europe were obliged to recognise and pay annual quit money to the pirates of the mountainous Riff coast, between Tangier and Algeria, and the *Sallee* rovers were the dread of the peaceful mariners of the Atlantic.

14. Philip II., the successor of Charles in Spain, was on his accession (1555) the most powerful sovereign in Europe, having Spain, the Two Sicilies, Milan, and the Netherlands, under his sway, but his mal-administration and enormous war expenditure overtaxed the resources of the empire. His fanatical enthusiasm for Catholicism, and his persecution of the reformers in the Netherlands, excited a rebellion there, and brought about the eighty years' struggle which resulted in the establishment of the independent republic of the United Provinces. The direct line of succession in Portugal having become extinct in 1580, Philip laid claim to the throne of that country, and, occupy-

---

<sup>1</sup> A nickname ("Little Hugues") first applied to them in 1560.

ing it with an army, was recognised as sovereign by the Portuguese. His subsequent attempt at the conquest of England by his "invincible Armada" has been previously referred to.

15. While Spain was thus passing the zenith of its greatness, Morocco, on the opposite side of the Mediterranean, was spreading out its limits; the armies sent southward by its emperor, with the aid of the muskets with which his soldiers were armed, had overthrown the great Songhay Empire, occupying Timbuktu and all the towns and routes as far as the line of the rivers Niger and Senegal.

Having thus obtained some idea of what was going on in the Old World of history during the sixteenth century, we may now turn to sketch out for ourselves the rapid progress of discovery beyond the old limits.

16. On *Ascension* day of 1501 the Portuguese navigator Juan de Nova fell in with the solitary volcanic islet of the Atlantic, to which he gave the name of the day of its discovery. *Tristan da Cunha*, another Portuguese, found the islet which bears his name; and next year, on *St. Helena's* day (22d May), another of the solitary islets of the South Atlantic came to light. In 1502 Columbus set out for his last voyage, to follow up his discoveries along the coasts of Central America; but his venture was a disastrous one, and on his return home the Spanish king proved basely ungrateful, and the ablest of navigators was allowed to die in poverty at *Valladolid*.

17. The Portuguese, as we have already seen, had discovered and formed settlements along a great part of the coast of West Africa, and were beginning to extend their dominion over the Indian seas—the great Albuquerque, of the family of the blood royal of Portugal, having been appointed viceroy of the Indies. During the first years of the century they began to supplant the Arabs on the south-east African shores, taking possession of the port of Sofala, extending their conquests inland over the gold region of *Manica*, and soon after establishing themselves at Mozambique. Across the Indian Ocean Albuquerque followed up the beginning made by Cabral on the Malabar coast, conquering *Goa*, which he made the seat of the Portuguese government and the chief place of its Asiatic trade, extending commerce and settlements thence to the whole west coast of India, to Ceylon, Malacca, the Sunda islands, and the coasts of China, and gathering knowledge of the Archipelago as far as the shores of New Guinea. The Arab state of *Muscat* fell into their power in 1507; the islet of *Ormuz*, in the entrance of the Persian Gulf, was also taken and made into a great entrepôt for the goods brought from the Indies; and when the king of Persia sent to collect the tribute formerly paid him by the princes of the island, Albuquerque pointed to cannon balls and swords as the only coin that Portugal would render.

18. Meanwhile the Spaniards were year by year adding new discoveries across the Atlantic. Their first settlement on the island of *Cuba* was made in 1511; two years after that the peninsula called *Florida*, on account of its rich vegetation, was made known, and *St. Augustine*, the first European settlement on the mainland of America, was founded on its Atlantic shores. A small settlement was next made on the inward side of the Caribbean Sea, on the shore of the Gulf of Darien, where the settlers soon gathered rumours from the natives of rich lands to the south, and of a new sea which might be seen from the neighbouring mountains. Vasco Nuñez Balbao was the first to penetrate the forests of the Isthmus of Panama to its central range; leaving his followers below, he ascended the highest ridge, and there, beyond



the intervening forests and valleys, the immense expanse of the "South Sea" lay before him (1513).

19. No sooner had the news of Balbao's discovery reached Spain than Juan Díaz de Solís, who with Yañez Pinzon had been engaged for some years previously in exploring the eastern coast of South America as far as the La Plata, was sent out again with three well-appointed ships to "sail to the other side of *Castilla del Oro*," the name then given to the lands of supposed fabulous wealth which lay beyond the Isthmus of Panama. Sailing south along the coast of Brazil, he came once more to the great opening of the La Plata, which he hoped to find a strait leading to the South Sea. Finding the navigation intricate, he left his vessels and ranged the shores as high as the islet of Martín García, where, deceived by the submissive movements of some natives, he ventured to land. The treacherous savages, however, set upon him and killed him with all his attendants, and, says Charlevoix, "roasted and eat them in sight of those who remained in the boat, and who had now no other course to take but to return to Spain." The inlet thus discovered is now known as the *Río de la Plata* (the river of silver), but at first it received the more appropriate name of Río de Solís.

20. It was about this time that the lonely coral group of the Bermudas Isles was discovered in the North Atlantic: they take their name from that of the Spanish voyager Bermudez, who first sighted them. Discovery was also progressing to the north-west. King Henry VIII. of England had sent out Sebastian Cabot in command of an expedition to Labrador, in which he sailed north across the Arctic Circle and found the wide strait which leads into Hudson's Bay (1517).

21. We left the Portuguese extending the conquests and discoveries they had begun in India even farther to the east. After the conquest of Malacca by Albuquerque, they had heard of the famed *Spice Islands*, and several ships—one commanded by Francisco Serrão (or Serrano, as the Spaniards called him), and another by his friend Fernão de Magalhães (whom we know as Magellan)—were sent out in quest of them. The Portuguese Serrão was fortunate in reaching the Spice Islands or Moluccas on the western borders of the great ocean almost at the same time that Balbao and his Spaniards caught their first glimpse of the great South Sea from the east. So little was then known or conceived of the huge width of this ocean, that Serrão believed, on reaching the Spice Islands, that he must be close to America, and laid plans with his friend Magellan for reaching them by a nearer route. The latter returned to the Portuguese court with great hopes of reward for his services in the Indies, and with schemes for future discovery, but on being coldly received and denied his well-merited honours, he renounced his allegiance and took service under the king of Spain.

22. Towards the close of the fifteenth century, when the sailors of Spain and Portugal were extending their discoveries ever farther west and east Pope Alexander had divided the world between these nations, giving the western hemisphere to Spain, and the eastern to the Portuguese. The line of demarcation was drawn indefinitely through the unknown region of the other side of the world, and when the Portuguese had reached the Spice Islands doubts were raised as to whether they had not passed the limit assigned to them by the Pope and trespassed on the Spanish hemisphere. Acting upon these doubts, Magellan, in concert with the astronomer Ruy Faleiro, who had likewise expatriated himself from Portugal, prepared a globe on which they showed the Spice Islands in such a position that they lay within the Spanish hemisphere, and Magellan urged upon the Spanish court that these rich possessions could be reached more readily by the "Spanish route"—that is, by the western voyage, than by the "Portuguese" or eastern route round the south cape

of Africa. At the same time, comparing South America with South Africa, he showed the probability of the existence of a passage to the South Sea round the coast of South America, and warmly advised a renewal of the search, which had been abandoned in the belief that the land stretched continuously to the south.

23. Thus it came about that five Spanish ships were fitted and manned with 236 seamen, under Magellan, who weighed anchor and set sail from *San Lucar* in September 1519. Taking the ordinary track by the Canaries, the fleet reached the shores of the *Tierra da Santa Cruz* (Brazil), and in January of the next year lay off the "Rio de Solis." After exploring this inlet and becoming convinced that it was no strait, but the mouth of great rivers, and giving the name *Monte Vidi* (Monte Video) to a height on its northern shore, Magellan steered south along the coast, examining each of its many inlets in the hope of finding a passage to the westward, till the barren coasts in the south were reached, and the cold storms of this region and the diminution of provisions raised murmurs and discontent in his ships, testing the energy of the leader to the utmost. Later the discontent broke out into an open mutiny, only subdued by the masterful tact of Magellan. One of its ring-leaders was executed, and two others—the general controller, Juan de Cartagena, and the priest, Pedro Sanchez—were condemned to banishment, and set ashore on the desert coast. The harbour of *San Julian*, where Magellan's expedition wintered (1520), is memorable also as the place at which the name *Patagones* (big feet) was given to the natives from the apparent size of their extremities when covered up in skins; and this name has extended, in the form of Patagonia, to the south-east land of America. In August 1520, with the return of fine weather, the expedition again set out, and in October a deep strait was reached in which the strong tides and currents gave Magellan the hope that he had at length attained the object of his desires, and which proved indeed to be the long-sought passage to the South Sea. The land to the left in passing through it was called *Tierra del Fuego*, since every night the discoverers saw many fires in the woods, no doubt lighted by the natives. New fears and difficulties now arose among his command before venturing out into the unknown seas to reach the Moluccas, and many were in favour of returning for new outfit. To them, however, Magellan replied that "if he knew that they should be brought to such a pass as to have to eat the leather work of the rigging, still he would go on through the strait, to fulfil the promise he had given to the king, and he hoped that God would help him therein." One ship, missing the others in the labyrinth of the strait, returned to Europe, bringing thither the first news of the great discovery, but with the rest Magellan began his long voyage across the vast South Sea. Soon under the fair trade wind its warm latitudes were reached, and he gave it the name *Oceano Pacifico* from the fine weather he experienced in sailing through its vast breadth. Strange to relate, Magellan's ships threaded the multitude of the islands of Oceania, sighting but two islets before the discovery of Guahan or Guam (6th March 1521), one of the group to which Magellan gave the name *Ladrones*, or Thieves' Islands, now known as the *Marianas*. Next he came upon one of the group afterwards named the Philippine Islands, and there, on the island of Zebu, met his death in a foolish conflict provoked with the islanders, in April 1521. The rest of his command, choosing a new leader, reached the long-sought Moluccas, but only eighteen of the seamen who had set out from Spain under Sebastian del Cano crossed the Indian Ocean to the Atlantic again, and only one ship, the famed "Victoria," with tattered sails and planks as full of holes as a sieve, again appeared at the mouth of the Guadalquivir (September 1522), a glorious ruin and an object of wonder to all Europe. Thus the world was first encompassed, and its roundness was first demonstrated to the popular mind.



24. The chivalrous Francis I. of France now joined in the work of discovery, and the voyager Verazzano, sent out under his auspices, explored the Atlantic coast of North America, joining the Spanish discoveries in Florida with those of the Cabots about Newfoundland (1524). Ten years later, Jacques Cartier, in the service of the same prince, explored the gulf and river *St. Lawrence* (giving them the name from having first sailed into the gulf on that saint's day), and penetrated as far as the rapids, near the site of the present city of *Montreal*, in Canada.<sup>1</sup>

25. The Spaniards were meanwhile rapidly extending their excursions and conquests from the settlements in the West Indies. Cuba, the Queen of the Antilles, began to be colonised permanently in 1511, and soon became the base of further operations. As the Spaniards increased in numbers and employed the aborigines, Arawaks and Caribs, in working at the mines, these native West Indians died out with extraordinary rapidity, and the philanthropic Las Casas, Bishop of Cuba, proposed the introduction of stronger African negro slaves to work in the sugar plantations and mines. Charles of Spain accordingly authorised in 1577 the importation of negroes from the Portuguese African settlements in Guinea, and thus began the American slave trade, which afterwards grew to such gigantic proportions, and laid the seeds of so much future trouble for the land.

26. Only three years after Cuba had been conquered, its Spanish governor, Diego Velasquez, entrusted his lieutenant, Hernan Cortes, with the leadership of an expedition for the conquest of Mexico, on the western mainland. The continent was peopled by a race which was very different from that of the aborigines of the islands. As early, perhaps, as the fifth century, when the barbarian hordes from the north were beginning to descend in bands upon the nations of western Europe, a people named the *Toltecs* had come from some primitive seat in the north to occupy the Mexican plateau, bringing to it the elements of civilisation, introducing agriculture and metal-working, making roads, and raising great cities and temples of colossal dimensions, the ruins of which remain to this day. To this people, about the twelfth century, had succeeded another family, named the *Aztecs*, also from the north, who engrafted upon the civilisation bequeathed them by the Toltecs many fierce and sanguinary religious observances, in which human sacrifices to the patron gods were carried out in splendid temples. Their city of *Tenochtitlan*, or Mexico, had been founded about 1325. Their form of government was that of an elective empire, and the land was ruled by severe laws, though justice was administered in open courts.

At the time when the Spaniards first reached America the Aztec Empire stretched across Mexico from sea to sea. When Cortes set out from the *Havana* or Haven of Cuba for the conquest of this remarkable country in 1519, its throne was occupied by Montezuma, who had at first been an energetic prince, extending his dominion to the south, but who had later grown indolent and estranged from his people. The oracles which he consulted frequently portended the speedy fall of his empire, and thus the landing of the Spaniards on the coast, near where the town of *Vera Cruz* now stands, terrified him and his priestly councillors, who endeavoured to propitiate the strangers by sending costly gifts. The road to success was thus strangely opened to Cortes, who had with him but a handful of men to attack this great empire. Resolved to advance, Cortes burned his ships to prevent retreat, and after founding the settlement of the *Vera Cruz* ("true cross"), set out for the capital, where he was received with great pomp, the Spaniards being regarded as

---

<sup>1</sup> Canada has its name from *Kanata*, an Iroquois word signifying a collection of huts, which the discoverers mistook for the name of the country.

the descendants of the sun, who, according to prophecy, were to come from the east to succeed to the Aztec Empire. It was soon discovered, however, that the Spaniards were but mortal, and the city of Mexico rose against them, but after a siege of four months in 1521, during which a famine aided the Spanish arms, the city was taken, and soon the whole empire was subjugated. Cortes subsequently fitted out several expeditions, one of which, exploring the western shores of the newly-conquered land, discovered the peninsula which was named California (1534).

27. The fame of the splendid achievement of Cortes gave fresh impulse to adventure, and led others to imitate his exploits. Among the adventurers who had been with Balbao when he discovered the South Sea from the Isthmus of Panama, and heard of the golden country to the south, was a Spanish soldier named Francisco Pizarro, and Cortes' success rekindled his ambition to reach this unknown country. Forming a copartnership with another adventurer named Diego de Almagro, and a priest named Hernando Luque, the three friends made up a small expedition which set out from *Panama* to the south in November 1524, but they did not pass beyond a cape at the southern entrance of the Gulf of Panama, which they called Punta Quemada (Burnt Point). Two years later, however, they set sail again in two ships, and this time reached the port now called *Santa*, in about 9° S. lat., thus discovering the coast-line of Peru and the northern portion of the giant Andes; they returned to Panama with many ornaments of gold and silver, woollen cloths of brilliant dyes, and some members of the camel order called llamas or alpacas. With these proofs Pizarro now repaired to Spain to seek the aid of King Charles, and he obtained from him the rights of discovery and conquest. He was named Governor and Captain-General of Peru, agreeing to send to Spain a fifth of all treasures he should gain, and, returning to Panama, set sail for the south again with a small force of 180 men.

28. The new lands thus approached by the Spaniards were by no means savage countries, but had, like Mexico, a civilisation and history of their own, leading back into mysterious centuries of the past. We now know that before the tenth century A.D. the *Colla* or *Aymara* nation lived during a period of unknown duration on the high plateaus of the Andes, and built themselves large cities and temples, attested by the great ruins still found everywhere throughout the land. This ancient race was supplanted, about the year 1000, by the *Quichuas*, one of whose tribes were the *Incas*, who first appeared on the shores of Lake Titicaca, proclaiming themselves children of *Inti* (the Sun). Manco Ccapac (or Manco the Ruler), the first Inca sovereign, who founded the city of *Cuzco*, introduced law and organisation into his small territory round the new city. From this nucleus the Empire spread out, till, in the fifteenth century, the Inca armies had crossed over the terrible desert of Atacama into Chile, fixed the southern boundary of Peru at the river Maule (in 36° S.), and brought all the vast territory extending from the forests of the Amazonas plain to the sources of the river Paraguay under the sway of the central power at Cuzco. From the capital, great roads had been made, radiating out to every part of the empire. The Inca monarch, as the representative of the sun, was also the head of the priesthood, and presided at the great religious festivals. The four great provinces of the empire were each ruled by a Governor or Viceroy, and the nation, which numbered not fewer than thirty millions of people, was further subdivided into departments of about 10,000 inhabitants each. The arts of architecture and agriculture had been brought to high excellence, and peace and security smiled upon the land.

29. Shortly before the arrival of Pizarro, however, on the death of the reigning Inca, a strife arose between his sons Atahualpa and Huascar for the

inheritance. Atahualpa, to whom the recently conquered kingdom of Quito in the north had been apportioned, had advanced with an army against his brother at Cuzco, had defeated and taken him prisoner there, and had retired with his army to *Cajamarca*, on the eastern side of the Andes. At this crisis Pizarro disembarked his Spaniards at *Tumbez*, and boldly advanced to Atahualpa's camp. Here, at *Cajamarca*, while Pizarro's priest was telling the indignant Inca how the Pope of Rome had presented Peru to the Spanish monarch, the Spaniards treacherously turned the murderous fire of their mysterious artillery against the Peruvians. Atahualpa himself was captured, and, despite his payment of a vast ransom in gold, was basely executed.

Now the adventurers set out for the capital, Cuzco, which they entered in November 1533, stripping the splendid Temple of the Sun, and gaining great treasures of gold and silver. Leaving a garrison in the capital, Pizarro repaired to the sea-coast, where he founded the "City of the Kings," now called *Lima*. There were many insurrections of the Incas before their great nation was finally conquered, but more serious than these was a quarrel between Pizarro and his fellow-adventurer Almagro. This *conquistador* had obtained from Spain a permission to subjugate for himself a new province to the south of Pizarro's conquests, and accordingly marched south into Chile. On returning from this victorious expedition he found the Spaniards enclosed in Cuzco and Lima by the Peruvians, and, taking advantage of the opportunity, endeavoured to make himself master of Peru also. In a desperate battle before Cuzco (1538), Almagro was defeated, taken, and condemned to death.

30. While Pizarro was conquering Peru the Spanish navigators had been following up Magellan's discoveries in the West Pacific; some of the islands of the group, afterwards known as the *Carolinas*, on the western border of the Pacific, were discovered, as well as several of those which form the Radack and Ralik chains. The Portuguese seamen were also busily exploring the confines of their half of the outer world. Mascarenhas had found the important islands of Bourbon and Mauritius, in the Indian Ocean which are still collectively named after him. The ports of China (Macao) and Japan were now visited by their trading ships; and Francis Xavier, one of the founders of the Jesuit order, had set out on his great mission, and had journeyed from India and Malacca to begin his efforts for the conversion of the Japanese Empire; his efforts were so successful that at one time it seemed as if the whole of this secluded but cultivated region would embrace the Catholic faith.

31. Spain and Portugal, now at the height of their prosperity, held complete command of the southern seas, and of the known highways to the Indies, east and west, to the exclusion of the other maritime nations of Europe, however anxious they were to share their good fortune and to prosecute trade with the new realms. It was for this reason that the thoughts of the northern maritime nations were turned to the possibility of opening up a new and independent trade route to the Indies and the Spice Islands, either by what was called the *north-east passage*, round Norway and along the coast of Siberia, or the *north-west passage*, between Greenland and the north coast of America.

32. The search for a north-east passage was begun by England in 1553, when Sir Hugh Willoughby set out with three vessels; passing round the North Cape he entered the White Sea, and sighted the land now called by the Russians *Novaya Zemlya* (New Land); but the voyage was disastrous, and two of the vessels were lost after drifting about with the ice over the waste of water, and with them perished the leader of the first Arctic expedition. The attempt was twice renewed by the English before the end of the cen-

ture, in expeditions under Burroughes and Pet, and Jackman, but without success.

When the attempts to force a passage north-eastward had failed, efforts were directed to the north-west, and Martin Frobisher sailed from Deptford in March 1576 with two little vessels of 25 tons each, Queen Elizabeth, who was then at Greenwich, bidding them God speed as they passed down the river. In July they sighted Greenland, and soon after the barren lands on the American coast to which the name "*Meta Incognita*" was given, and they discovered the bay to the north of Hudson Bay, which is named after Frobisher. Ten years later, Captain John Davis was more successful in sailing north through the strait which bears his name, and in reaching as high a latitude as  $72^{\circ}$  off the west Greenland coast.

33. While other maritime nations were forbidden a lawful share in the good fortune of the Spaniards, who arrogantly assumed a divine right to the New World and practised great cruelties upon all foreign interlopers, enterprising mariners of England and France began to make reprisals in the "*Spanish Main*," to cut out their trading vessels, and especially to intercept and capture the heavy galleons which every year brought to the Peninsula the gold, silver, and other wealth contributed by the American colonies to the mother country. Sir John Hawkins, the first Englishman it is said who trafficked in slaves, was afterwards more honourably employed, and became noted for his exploits in the Spanish Main. In one of his last adventures he was joined by Francis Drake, who subsequently made several freebooting voyages to the West Indies. In 1570 Drake obtained a commission from Queen Elizabeth, and sailing again for America plundered the town of *Nombre de Dios*, on the Isthmus of Panama. Crossing the mountains, he saw the Pacific, and "prayed God to grant him leave to sail an English ship on this sea." Retiring with much spoil to England, he set out again in 1577, and following on the track of Magellan reached the Pacific, sacked and plundered all the Spanish coast towns from Chile up to Peru, capturing also a great plate galleon. He then steered still northward, hoping to find a northern passage back to the Atlantic, and took formal possession of the land between  $43^{\circ}$  N. and  $38^{\circ} 30'$  N. in the name of Queen Elizabeth. Thence he sailed across the Pacific to the Moluccas, to Ternate, and Java, and straight across the Indian Ocean to the Cape of Good Hope, reaching Plymouth again in 1579, completing thus the second circumnavigation of the globe.

34. Within a few months of Drake's return, Sir Humphrey Gilbert, accompanied by the famous Sir Walter Raleigh, set out on an ill-fated expedition to Newfoundland, with the object of forming a colony in North America. The island was formally taken possession of in the name of Queen Elizabeth; but the return voyage was disastrous, and the leader of the expedition was lost. Raleigh's spirit of enterprise, however, led him again to America, and on his behalf the country was now first occupied which he named *Virginia*, in allusion to his virgin Queen Elizabeth, and thus was here planted the first little germ of Anglo-Saxon America.

35. It was to men trained in these schools of maritime adventure under Drake and Hawkins, Frobisher and Raleigh, bold and dexterous in the management of their little vessels, that England owed her safety when Philip of Spain, burning to revenge his losses on the Spanish Main, and the aid given by England to the Protestants of the Netherlands in their war of independence, sent his huge Armada of 130 great war vessels into the English Channel. It was there defeated and chased away north to the Orkneys, and round the Western Isles of Scotland, to be wrecked all along those stormy shores.

36. Meanwhile in Holland William of Orange was fighting for his country's freedom against the Spanish troops, relieving *Leyden* by breaking through

the sea dykes, flooding the country, and drowning many of the besieging Spaniards; while his coadjutors, the "Beggars of the Sea," made heavy depredations on Spanish commerce, and took the ports of *Brill* and *Flushing*. Henceforth the Dutch also began to take a place in maritime adventure and discovery on the high seas. They were the first Europeans to settle and organise trading stations in the country called "*Guayana*" (or Guiana), on the coast of South America (1580). The Dutch also took up the quest of the supposed north-east passage to the Indies, and William Barentz, one of the best seamen of his age, sailed three times to the north, reaching the high latitude of  $80^{\circ}$  in his last voyage in 1596; he discovered *Bear Island*, and the sharp black peaks of the glacial land named *Spitzbergen*; doubling also the northern cape of Novaya Zemlya he wintered on its eastern coast, and was the first European to live out a dark season in the Arctic region.

37. Spanish seamen also continued to add to their discoveries in the Pacific. In 1567 Alvaro Mendaña found the islands which he called the *Salomons*, to suggest the idea that Solomon had gone thither for the gold which adorned his temple, and thus to draw attention to the discovery. Thirty years later the group which was called *Sta. Cruz* was discovered, and in the next year, the archipelago far out in the centre of the Pacific, to which Mendaña attached the name of the reigning viceroy of Peru, calling them the *Marquesas de Mendoza*. Farther east in the Pacific *Juan Fernandez* found the islet on which the English mariner Selkirk (Robinson Crusoe) afterwards was exiled; but on the west coast of North America they never got farther north than  $43^{\circ} 10'$  during the 16th century, for Juan de Fuca, who claimed to have discovered the strait now named after him, has been proved an impostor.

38. Failing in their efforts to find an independent track to the Indies, the other maritime nations of Europe, now that the pride of Spain had been humbled, began towards the end of the century to frequent the southern trade routes hitherto sacred to the Portuguese and Spaniards. We have noticed that the Dutch had already secured a footing in South America in Guayana. The British also had laid the foundation of a colony in Virginia on the northern half of the continent, and were soon to gain a hold on the West Indies by settling in the fertile islet of *Barbadoes*. Away in the East Indies also, British and Dutch ships began to appear, and to compete there with the Portuguese. The Dutch under Houtman reached *Achin*, in the north of Sumatra, in 1599, and two years later brought home to Holland the first cargo of goods from that region, with two native ambassadors. It was on the 31st December 1600 that Queen Elizabeth granted a charter to a number of merchants of London trading to the East Indies, which gave them the exclusive right of trading in the Indian Ocean and Pacific; and from this *East India Company* our great Indian Empire was to rise.

39. To sum up in a few words the state of the known world at the end of the sixteenth century:—In Asia the Chinese Empire remained unshaken; Persia had again become an independent empire; the Mohammedan Moguls had begun to reign in northern India; the once great Tatar empire had been reduced to the states east of the Caspian. In the north, Russia was spreading eastward over Asia, and had come in contact with the Ottoman Empire, now expanding to its greatest extent in the south, and with Sweden in the north-west. The great Reformation had passed over Europe, separating its Catholic states of the south from the Protestants of the north, and giving rise to fierce wars and many political changes. Maritime discovery and adventure and commerce were being eagerly extended by the nations of western Europe. Four times the world had been circumnavigated—by the Portuguese Magellan, by the English Drake and Cavendish, and lastly by the Dutchman Van Noort.

3

.

.

.

.

.

.

.

London Edward Stanford, 13, 14 & 14a Long Acre, W.C.



Spain had extended her conquests to Mexico, Peru, and Chile, which were now ruled by Spanish viceroys. The Portuguese had established themselves firmly on the African shores at Senegambia, Guinea, and Angola on the west, and at Mozambique and Sofala on the east; their possessions and settlements in the East Indies included the Malabar coast of India, Ceylon, and Malacca; and their traffic reached to all the islands of the Asiatic archipelago, to China and Japan, touching on these seas the discoveries and claims of Spain.

The English and Dutch, after vainly seeking an independent highway to the north-east or north-west through the ice-fields of the Arctic region, had become formidable rivals of the Spaniards and Portuguese in their own lines, both in the West Indies and round the Cape of Good Hope to the eastward. In the Indian Ocean the Dutch (1598) even took one of the Mascarennas isles from the Portuguese, giving it the name *Mauritius* in honour of their prince Maurice.

#### 10. 1600-1700.

1. Not long after the coasts of Cathay or China began to be better known to the maritime nations of the west, and to be brought under the influence of the Christian religion by the Jesuit missionaries, the Manchu Tatars from beyond the great wall on the north-east took advantage of a civil strife in the empire to invade it. The rebel bands entered Peking, whereupon the last of the Ming sovereigns strangled himself with his girdle, and a seven years' contest began, which was to end in the establishment of the Tatar "Tsing" or pure dynasty. The Manchu Tatar conquerors were not, like the Mongols, a nomadic race, but a much more cultivated and agricultural people, and they had the wisdom to conform in great measure to the existing institutions of Chinese government; but they altered the national Chinese costume, and compelled the men of the country to wear the badge of servitude implied in shaving the head and wearing the long Tatar queue with which we are now familiar in all pictures of Chinamen.

2. In the latter part of the century, the Russians, overrunning and conquering Siberia, threatened the northern Manchu frontier, and a desultory warfare ensued with the Cossack freebooters which extended over thirty years; but a mission was finally sent to the frontier, and the boundary dividing the two nations was settled by mutual agreement in 1689.

3. Westward of the Chinese Empire the Khanates of Turkestan do not appear to have materially altered their relative positions in this century. In Persia the period begins in the midst of the reign of Shah Abbas the Great, who distinguished his rule by recovering Kurdistan, Mosul, and Diarbekr for Persia from the Ottoman Turks in the west, and by taking Kandahar from the possessions of the Great Mogul on the east. The reigns of his successors during this century were not marked by further increase of territory, but were spent in promoting the internal prosperity of the kingdom.

4. This was the period, also, at which the Mohammedan empire in India was raised to its highest point of splendour and greatness by Shah Jehan, the "King of the World," who subjugated the kingdoms of Ahmednuggur, Beejapur, and Golconda, on the Deccan plateau; and by his son, the famous Aurungzeb, the crafty and ambitious "reviver of religion." It was during these reigns that the English began to gain a hold on India and to take a part in its politics; we shall afterwards, however, have occasion to notice the chief events of their arrival and establishment.

5. Coming now westward to the Ottoman empire, we find its Sultans contending successfully with Austria in the earlier part of the century for the possession of Hungary, but losing Mesopotamia, as we have seen, to the



Persians in the east, and the allegiance of the Khanates of the Crimea. Wars with the Poles and Venetians followed, in which the island of Candia was gained by the Turks, along with most of the old Venetian strongholds in the *Ægean*, though with some losses in Dalmatia. Later, a combined Polish and German army defeated a Turkish force which had advanced to lay siege to Vienna; and the Austrians followed up their victory by repossessing themselves of Hungary after the great battle of *Mohacz* (1687). The peace of *Carlowitz* at the end of the century put an end for ever to the Turkish dominion in Hungary.

6. For Russia the seventeenth century began very disastrously with internal quarrels, which gave Sigismund of Poland the opportunity to invade the country, to take Moscow, and carry off the Czar to die in a Polish prison, and to leave the country completely disorganised. A rising of the Russians three years later drove the Poles out of the country, and placed the Czar Michael, of the house of Romanof, on the throne (1613). After restoring order in his empire, this sovereign concluded a treaty with Sweden, giving that country the coasts of the Gulf of Finland. His successor carried on a war with Turkey, and obtained Smolensk from Poland and the abandonment of all claims on Little Russia by the Turks. The close of the century brought Peter the Great to the throne, and opened his grand schemes for the reorganisation of Russia.

7. Eastward the Russians had been busily pushing their conquests across the forest lands of northern Asia. The river Obi had been reached, as we have seen, in the last century, and the town of *Tobolsk* had been founded. During the early part of the seventeenth century the Yenisei was passed and the Lena crossed; the settlement of *Yakutsk* was made in 1632, and the shores of the sea of Okhotsk were reached in 1639. Thus, while the Manchu Tatars were advancing southward to the conquest of the Chinese Empire, the Russians were occupying the land on their northern borders, and had confirmed themselves so strongly in its possession that they could conclude a treaty with the Chinese in 1689, which defined the Siberian-Chinese frontier in the line running from the sea of Okhotsk, north of the basin of the Amur, westward by the great lake Baikal, and thence to the source mountains of the Obi, called the Ala Tau.

8. In the last chapter we left Sweden at a time when the feeble rule of the successors of Gustavus Vasa had brought the land into disorder and had involved it in war with Russia, Poland, and Denmark. Early in the seventeenth century, Gustavus Adolphus, grandson of Vasa, succeeded to the throne, established a feudal or military government, drove the Danes out of the Baltic coasts of Sweden, opening up the ocean route to western Europe; allying himself with the Hollanders, he obtained a settlement of the Russian limits. The new boundary line included in Sweden the country beyond the south coast of the Gulf of Finland. A settlement with Poland was next agreed on, which gave to Sweden the Baltic coast districts of *Elbing*, *Braunsberg*, *Pillau*, and *Memel*. Gustavus's hands were now free to carry out a cherished plan to aid the Protestants of Germany in their struggle with the Catholic League. Marching south at the head of 15,000 men, he gave the Catholics good reason to fear the "snow king and his bodyguard," for he crossed the Danube, gained a great victory at *Ingolstadt*, marching triumphantly to Munich, and dying on the victorious field of *Lutzen* (1632).

9. The reign of his successor, Charles X., was also a warlike one. Poland was again invaded, when Russia, Denmark, and Prussia combined against the northern king. From Holstein Charles at once marched across the frozen Belt to the Danish capital, before which he dictated the peace of *Roeskild*. The reign of Charles XI. was also characterised by success abroad; and at the close of the century, when young Charles XII. had newly ascended

the throne, we find Sweden so strong as to have become the object of a combined attack upon it by the neighbouring powers. The young king, however, threatening Copenhagen, compelled the Danes to a new peace, and with only 8000 Swedes stormed the Russian camp with its army of 50,000 at *Narva* in November 1700.

10. In Norway and Denmark, beyond the frequent contests with Sweden referred to, there is nothing of moment to occupy us at this time.

11. During the first half of the seventeenth century, Germany was kept in ferment by the succession of contests which are generally termed the "Thirty Years' War" (1612-1648), and which originated with attempts of the Catholics to deprive the Protestants of the liberties they had attained. The treaty of Westphalia (or of Münster) drawn up by congresses of all the great continental powers of Europe, restored tranquillity to Germany and established a new system of political equilibrium in Europe.

By this treaty, the independence of the United Provinces of the Netherlands was recognised by Spain, and that of Switzerland by Germany, which last country was cut up into a multitude of petty states.

12. In former paragraphs we have referred to the forcible Christianisation and conquest of the lands south of the Baltic by the Teutonic knights, the cession of west Prussia to Poland, and the declaration of the remainder of the country as fief to that kingdom. The Grand Masters of the Order subsequently took the title of Dukes of Prussia (by one of whom the university of *Königsberg* was founded in 1544). Early in the seventeenth century the Duchy of Prussia became incorporated with the Electorate of Brandenburg. During the thirty years' war the country was alternately a prey to the Swedish and Imperial armies; but the treaty of Westphalia restored to it Eastern Pomerania and other territories, and the aid given by the Elector Frederick William to King Charles of Sweden in the taking of *Warsaw* (1656) was recompensed by the complete emancipation of the Prussian Duchy from Polish dependence. Frederick William, called the "Great Elector," now devoted himself to consolidating and advancing the prosperity of his dominions. Such was his success that Prussia now rose to the rank of a great European power. Frederick III., who succeeded him, exhibited the same zeal for the amelioration and extension of his dominions, and was crowned first King of Prussia at *Königsberg* in 1701.

13. The politics of France in the earlier portion of the century were directed by the great Cardinal Richelieu, who, in furtherance of his great object of humbling the power of the house of Austria, allied himself with the Protestants in Germany, and with their champion Gustavus of Sweden, involving France in long and costly wars. At home, however, he oppressed the Protestant party and overthrew the political power of the Reformers or Huguenots, conducting in person the siege and capture of their stronghold *La Rochelle*. During the minority of Louis XIV., the French nobles seeking to shake off the authority of the Crown, and the political faction known as the *Frondeurs*, caused great domestic disturbances; but with the assumption of absolute power by the young king (1661) a new era began for France; prosperity was again restored; the military successes of Louis's generals, Turenne and Condé, were most brilliant, and the borders of France were greatly enlarged. First, in virtue of his claim to it as the son-in-law of Philip IV. of Spain, Louis mastered the portion of Flanders known as French Flanders, and the whole of Franche Comté. The triple alliance of England, the Netherlands, and Sweden, compelled him to relinquish the latter, and arrested for a time his course of conquest; but two years later, after seizing Lorraine, he marched into the Netherlands, conquering half the country. Ten cities of Alsace also fell into his power, and the free German city of *Strassburg* was taken in 1681. During

the earlier part of his reign, manufactures had begun to flourish greatly—the textures of the *Gobelins*, the silks of *Tours* and *Lyon*, and the fine cloths of the northern towns, *Louviers*, *Abbeville*, *Sedan*, acquired great celebrity. Not long after the zenith of his power and influence had been reached and passed, Louis fell under the influence of the Jesuits; the effect of the change was the adoption of severe measures against the Protestants, and the revocation of the Edict of Nantes, which had given them liberty of worship. The result of this despotic act, disastrous for France, was the exodus from the country of not fewer than 400,000 of the most industrious and intelligent of its people, chiefly manufacturers and artisans, who carried with them into exile, to all parts of the known world, their skill, knowledge, and taste. From them England especially learned the art of silk manufacture, and many other industrial arts.

Towards the close of the century an invasion of south Germany led to a coalition against France; and, his resources being exhausted, Louis signed the Treaty of *Ryswick* (between Delft and The Hague) concluded between England, France, Spain, and Germany, 1697.

14. The seventeenth century opened for Britain with the union of the crowns of England and Scotland, under James I.; then followed the disturbed reign of Charles I., beginning badly with the unsuccessful expedition against Cadiz, and the loss of the fleet off Rochelle. His persecutions of the Puritans in England, and of the Presbyterians in Scotland, and the embitterment of popular feeling, brewed the storm which broke out in the civil wars and the battles of *Edgehill* and *Marston Moor*. The final defeat of the royalists at *Naseby* was followed by the execution of Charles in 1649, and the protectorate of Cromwell, under which England was respected abroad and was brilliantly successful at sea against the Spaniards. Charles the Second was at the Hague at the time of his father's execution, and immediately assuming the title of King proceeded to Scotland, and was crowned at Scone in 1651; putting himself at the head of the Scots, he marched into England, only to be defeated on the field of *Worcester*, whence he escaped amid many dangers to France. After the death of the Protector, a reversal of popular feeling recalled Charles from France to the English throne, when he began his dishonourable and dissolute reign, persecuting all Presbyterians and Nonconformists at home, agreeing for money to carry on war with the Netherlands, till compelled by the appearance in the Thames of the Dutch fleet under De Ruyter to make an ignominious peace. James II. now succeeded, and by his tyranny estranged all classes of his subjects.

15. The independence of the United Provinces (the Netherlands) had been acknowledged by the treaty of Münster (1648). During the reign of Charles II. of England they had been engaged in a seven years' contest with Louis XIV. of France, which had terminated in an honourable way for the United Provinces, and the power of the "Stadtholder," William, Prince of Orange,<sup>1</sup> who had married Mary, the eldest daughter of the Duke of York, afterwards James II. of England, had become great in Europe. The Stadtholder had leagued himself with the malcontents in England, and when disaffection was at its height, landed at *Torbay* (1688) with 15,000 English and Dutchmen, entered London as a national deliverer, and Parliament gave the crown to William and Mary. The adherents of James held out in Scotland and Ireland till the battle of the *Ryne* terminated the contest, and James fled to France. Then Britain and Holland came into close union against France.

16. We left the Spanish Peninsula, in the last section, at the time of the death of Philip II., when Portugal had been reduced to a Spanish province;

---

<sup>1</sup> A principality now comprised in the French department of Vaucluse.

but the Spanish kingdom had been impoverished in unsuccessful wars in the Netherlands, and in the attempts against England. One of the earliest acts of his successor Philip III. was the unwise expulsion from the Peninsula of the remaining Moriscos, or half-caste Moors, who had been allowed by Ferdinand the Catholic to remain; about half a million of these industrious and peaceable inhabitants were thus driven from the land. The reign of Charles II. was still more unfortunate; Spanish armies and fleets were everywhere defeated, and the wealth of America was in vain poured into the enervated country.

17. A few years before the peace of Westphalia secured the independence of Holland from the Spanish yoke, Portugal freed itself by a rebellion (1640) from the forced union with Spain, which had lasted for 60 years, and had involved the country in war and disaster at home, as well as abroad in the Indies.

18. In Italy, during this century, the Papal States grew out to their widest limit. Venetia was at war with the Turks; and Naples and Sicily, in the south of the peninsula, continued under the sway of Spain.

19. Across in north Africa the Algerians continued to harass the powers of Christendom trading in the Mediterranean, and their insolence at sea increased. They even attacked the south coasts of France, compelling Louis XIV. to retaliate by bombarding Algiers (1682); when, by way of replying to the cannonade, the Dey caused the French consul to be shot off from the mouth of a cannon. The result of the punishment was indecisive; nor were the English and Dutch fleets more successful in repressing the ferocity of the Corsairs.

20. In Morocco, the empire that had extended its limits to the Sudan in the previous century fell to pieces in this, and was succeeded (1647) by the government of the Sherifs of Tafillet, who conquered Morocco proper and Fes, united the whole under one rule, and founded the dynasty which reigns at present. The influence of Morocco again spread southward till it reached, in the middle of the century, even to the borders of the Portuguese settlements in Guinea.

If we now turn to look at the progress of conquest and discovery beyond the seas during the seventeenth century, it cannot fail to be remarked how completely the spread of knowledge on the outer borders of the known world was controlled by events which took place in western Europe. We have remarked the gradual crippling and decay of the maritime supremacy of Spain and Portugal, and the rise of that of the Dutch and British into strength. Maritime enterprise during this century passed to Holland, England, and France.

21. Just at the end of the sixteenth century, the Dutch first opened up trading communication with the East Indies, and entered into alliances with the Achinese of Samatra; two years later their East India Company was formed. Spain and Portugal being united in war with the Netherlands at home in Europe, the contest was extended to the Indies, where by violence and intrigue the Dutch began to oust the Portuguese from their possessions. A footing was also gained in the Spanish half of the world, for in the year 1600 the Dutch captured the island of *St. Eustatius*; and five years later the British settled in *Barbadoes*, the most easterly of the Antilles.

22. Among the last important discoveries made by the Spaniards in the Pacific were those of the island of *Sagittaria* (now known as Tahiti) by the

voyager Quiros, and of the strait which has been named from its discoverer Luis Vaez de Torres, who sailed into it in 1605, and who saw the northern extremity of the great southern continent, afterwards to be made known.

23. While the Dutch were wresting the Spice Islands from the Portuguese, a band of English gentlemen and a few artisans went out to Sir Walter Raleigh's Virginia, and formed (May 1607) the first permanent English colony on the North American shores, founding *James Town* on the James River (named after King James), and buying land and provisions from the friendly Indians. A year later the French were following up the discoveries of Jacques Cartier on the St. Lawrence; Champlain discovered the great Lake Ontario, and founded the city of *Quebec*, which for more than a century was the centre of French trade and civilisation in North America, and the point whence the efforts of the Roman Catholic missionaries radiated.

24. During these two years the navigator Henry Hudson was making vain attempts to penetrate the north-east passage by *Novaya Zemlya*; giving up hope of finding a passage there, he sailed a third time to the north-west by Davis Strait, in a vessel fitted out by the Dutch East India Company (1609). Reaching America about latitude  $44^{\circ}$  north, he discovered the beautiful river which bears his name, and took possession of it for Holland. Next year he again bore to the north-west, and on the farther side of Davis Strait passed through the channel now known as *Hudson Strait*, and entered the vast bay beyond, which he took to be none other than an inlet of the Pacific, an opinion which was contradicted some years later by the researches of Baffin. He resolved to winter here and to follow up his discoveries in the following spring, but his crew mutinied, and placed him with his gun in a small boat at the mercy of the waves, after which nothing was ever heard of this brave mariner.

25. As early as 1611 the solitary Bermudas Islands were colonised from the new British settlements in Virginia; in the same year a Dutch navigator sailing north of Iceland discovered the island which takes his name, *Jan Mayen*, with its volcano sending flames and smoke out of its snow-clad cone.

26. About the year 1614 there was living at Amsterdam a famous merchant named Lemaire, who then began to interest himself in geographical discovery; for it had been a recognised rule in Europe since the time of Columbus that any one making a new discovery beyond the seas had the rights and use of whatever he found. The Dutch East India Company had now been successful in exploring for themselves the way by the Straits of Magellan, and had consequently the exclusive right to the use of this passage to the South Seas. With some other merchants of the town of *Hoorn*, Lemaire joined to form an "Austral Company," and fitted out two ships, the "Eendragt" and "Het Hoorn," placing them under the command of the navigators Schouten and Jacob Lemaire, son of the merchant. In June 1615 the vessels left the *Texel*, and by the end of December had reached the south of Patagonia, making what was then considered a very rapid passage through the Atlantic. Here the yacht "Hoorn" took fire, and was totally wrecked, and her crew was transferred to the "Eendragt." Passing the eastern entrance of the Strait of Magellan, they came upon the long eastward promontory of *Tierra del Fuego*, through which they soon found a broad deep passage to the south; the land east of this they named, in honour of the States-General of Holland, *Staten Land*. Thence bearing south and west against the adverse winds, they passed along the island-bound south coast of *Tierra del Fuego*, and, reaching a high rocky island peak, which they took to be the extremity of the mainland, they named it *Kaep van Hoorn*, in honour of the native town of Schouten and many of his sailors. Thence



sailing into the open South Sea and northward by Juan Fernandez island, they crossed the ocean to the East Indies, being the first to see the land afterwards called New Britain. Schouten alone of the discoverers again reached Holland, his companion Lemaire having died on the homeward voyage.<sup>1</sup>

27. The British East India Company had meanwhile been establishing itself on the mainland; in 1612 they had factories at *Surat*, *Ahmedabad*, *Cambaya*, and *Gogha* on the coast of the Gulf of Cambay, and in 1615 the English ambassador was well received in the court of the Great Mogul.

28. It was about this time that the great south land, now known as *Australia*, began to be made known. The Dutch, finding the harbours on the east coast of Africa and in India closed against them by the jealousy of the Portuguese, sought for a passage in more southerly latitudes; and thus, partly by accident, partly by design, they discovered a large portion of Australia. In 1605 Captain Saris, of the Dutch yacht "Duiveken," was despatched from Bantam to search for a passage to the south of New Guinea, and obtained some glimpses of the north coast. In 1616 another Dutch voyager, Dirk Hartog, in the ship "Eendragt," sailed down its western shores as far as 27° S., and his discovery is perpetuated in the name of Dirk Hartog Island, one of those which enclose Shark's Bay, on the west Australian coast.

29. The course of discovery and colonisation now takes us back to the Atlantic. In Britain, the hope of the possible discovery of a shorter north-west passage to the Pacific was still strong. The account of the complete closure of the inland sea discovered by Hudson was not universally credited, and accordingly, in 1615, Captain Bylot sailed for that bay, without, however, finding any outlet from it. Next year, with his pilot Baffin, he sailed up Davis Strait, reaching 78° N., and, after a superficial examination of the coast, came to the conclusion that this also was a great gulf without outlet. Hence the name *Baffin Bay* was given to this, the northern broad expanse of the strait which divides the American Arctic islands from Greenland.

30. The violent efforts made by King James to extirpate Puritanism in England drove a large number of the Independents to embark at *Plymouth*, in 1620, for the New World. These emigrants, known as the "Pilgrim Fathers," disembarked from the "Mayflower" on the North American coast, in lat. 42° N. on a bay about 200 miles north-east of the river-mouth discovered by Hudson, and there founded the settlement of *New Plymouth*, calling the land New England. A year afterwards the Dutch bought *Manhattan Island* (at the mouth of Hudson River, on which the central portion of the city of New York now stands) from the native Indians for twenty-four dollars, and founded there the settlement of New Amsterdam, naming the country round it New Holland. Thus there were now five European settlements on the North American coast,—those of the Spaniards in Florida, the English Cavaliers in Virginia, the Dutch at the mouth of the Hudson, the English Puritans more to the north, and the French on the St. Lawrence; in 1638 a sixth was added by the Swedes, who then colonised the Delaware river.

31. In the West Indies also the northern nations began to gain ground on the Spanish lands. Barbadoes, as we have noticed, was already British; *St. Christopher*, or St. Kitts, was added in 1623, and from thence English emigrants passed to *Nevis* in 1628. *Antigua* and *Montserrat* followed in 1632. Then the French came to settle on *Martinique* and *Guadaloupe* in 1635, and about that time British settlements were formed on the South

---

<sup>1</sup> On reaching the East Indies and the Dutch settlements in Java, the Governor there, disbelieving the report of their discovery of a new passage, or taking it to be adverse to the interests of the Dutch India Company, confiscated the "Eendragt" and her crew.

American mainland in Guayana at the mouths of the Berbice and Surinam, and by the French in Cayenne, farther east.

32. The French now began to appear in the Indian Ocean also; for in 1642 we find them taking possession of the southern island of the Mascarenhas, and naming it *Ile Bourbon*, and also settling on the north-west of Madagascar.

33. Meanwhile the Dutch had been extending their circle of exploration from their settlements, and the western coast of Australia had been traced along its whole extent; for in 1619 the merchants named Edel and Houtman had passed beyond Dirk Hartog's farthest, to  $32\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  S., and named the coast-land there *Edel's Land*. Another Dutch ship, in 1622, reached the south-west cape, giving it the name of the ship, *Leeuwin* (or Lioness). Before the end of 1627 the south-west corner had been turned, and another Dutchman sailing along it in the "Guldezeepard" (golden sea-lion), gave the name *Nuyts' Land* to the coast, in honour of a distinguished passenger, Peter Nuyts—a name which is preserved in Nuyts Archipelago in the great Australian bight.

34. Far more extended discoveries were made in this direction by the navigator Abel Jansen Tasman, who sailed from Batavia in November 1642. Rounding the west coast of Australia, and then turning east, he came upon what he believed to be a portion of the same southern continent of New Holland, and named the new territory *Van Diemen's Land*, in honour of the Governor-General of the Dutch East Indies. An island on its eastern coast he called Maria, after Van Diemen's daughter. Sailing still farther east into the Pacific, Tasman discovered the shore of a new land, which he took to be a continuation of the Staaten Land of Schouten and Lemaire, and named it accordingly; but Hendrik Brouwer, in the following year, showed that it could not be united in any way to the Staaten Land east of Tierra del Fuego, and re-named it *New Zealand*, from the Dutch province.

35. We have already noticed the rapid advance of the Russian Cossacks over Siberia, conquering and rendering tributary the native tribes of Tunguses and Yakuts; how the Arctic Ocean was reached at the mouth of the Lena in 1636, and the Pacific at the sea of Okhotsk in 1639. Not halting at this barrier, the Cossacks took to the sea at the farthest limits of their land journeys, and one of them, named Deshenev, as early as 1648, reported that he had sailed between Asia and America, and that the two continents were not united. His whole voyage, however, was at the time regarded as a fable, and was not confirmed till nearly a century after.

36. The leading movement of subsequent years in the Asiatic region appears to have been the extension of Dutch power over Portuguese in the East India Islands,—in *Celebes*, *Borneo*,<sup>1</sup> and at *Padang* in Sumatra. It was in the middle of this century also that the attention of the Dutch East India Company was first effectively directed towards South Africa, when, in 1652, Jan Anthony van Riebeeck, a surgeon in the service of the company, first settled on the promontory of the *Cape of Good Hope* with about a hundred officers and servants of the company. On the Gold Coast of Africa the Dutch had already supplanted the Portuguese, and there the British first settled in 1664.

37. Three or four years later the French gained a footing on the Senegal coast, and afterwards formed their Senegal Company. In 1668 they first appear in India at Surat, and four years later we find them buying their possession of *Pondichéry* from the native princes.

38. In America the British dominion was extended by the addition of one of the *Virgin Islands* (1666), and by the formation in 1670 of the *Hudson Bay*

---

<sup>1</sup> A corruption of the native name Bruni or Brunei.

11



A detailed, hand-colored map of the world, oriented with North at the top. The map shows the continents and major islands, with various territories and colonies highlighted in different colors. The map is titled "THE WORLD" at the top center. The colors used are primarily green, yellow, red, blue, and orange. The map includes labels for major landmasses, oceans, and numerous islands and archipelagos. The map is a historical representation, likely from the late 19th or early 20th century, given the inclusion of territories and the style of the coloring.

London: Edward Stanford, 12, 13 & 14, Long Acre, W.C.

*Company*, which at first consisted of Prince Rupert, cousin of Charles II. of England, and certain associates of his who were invested with the absolute proprietorship and sovereignty of all the territory draining to Hudson's Bay and its strait. In 1690 this fur company was in full working, and had built several forts and factories on the coasts, whence from time to time their operations extended inland.

The French also, after their countryman La Salle first descended (1682) the great river *Mississippi*, "the father of waters," invaded Spanish claims by settling in *Louisiana*, about the mouth of the great river, in 1699.

## 11. 1700-1800.

According to the general plan that we have been following, we now return to review briefly the greater changes, extensions, and contractions, of power within the Old World, before taking up again the outline of discovery and conquest beyond the seas, within the next hundred years.

1. Of China under the prosperous rule of the Manchu Emperors there is little to be told that affects the outer world. One of its rulers during this century (Kien-lung) had a reign of sixty years of uninterrupted external peace, and was successful in many military expeditions against the interior tribes, over whom he asserted the authority of the empire. It was only during the last year of his reign (1796) that the turbulent and aggressive prince of the State of Nepal, on the southern slope of the Himalaya range in north India, invaded Tibet on the high Asiatic plateau, and plundered the Lama monastery of Teshu Lumpo near *Shigatse*.

2. Tibet had for several centuries been partially tributary to China; its danger now gave an opportunity for the intervention of the empire: a Chinese army marched into it, defeated the Nepalese, and drove them back across the Himalaya. From that time onwards Tibet has remained under Chinese control; a Chinese viceroy sits at *Lhasa*, and the Grand Lama of Tibet, or Pope of Buddhism, retained only his spiritual authority till 1896, when he withdrew to China before the English expedition to Lhasa in that year. During the reign of Kien-lung the Chinese occupied Bokhara.

3. Near the end of the century the semi-tributary State of Anam or Cochin China was extended by incorporating Tongking, its sovereign receiving aid in this from France. Burma, another State of the peninsula of farther India, also begins to acquire importance at this period; it was in 1752 that Aloung-Pra, the most celebrated warrior-king in Burman history, arose, subdued the hostile Peguans and incorporated their country and many neighbouring States, thus forming an empire which continued to expand to such an extent as to attract to itself a Chinese military expedition (1767) for its conquest, which, however, was destroyed on the river Irawadi.

4. The expansion of Russian power, both in Europe and Asia, is one of the great features of the century. European Russia at the beginning of this period was still shut out from navigable seas,—by Sweden, from the Baltic in the north, and by Turkey from the Euxine in the south,—leaving only the northern port of Archangel on the icy White Sea as the outlet of its ships. One of the most cherished designs of Peter the Great, in the middle of whose reign the century begins, was that of creating an armed and mercantile fleet for Russia; for this, however, the possession of accessible seaports was essential, and these were to be obtained only by breaking through Turkish or Swedish territory.

The Turkish port of *Azof* at the mouth of the Don was taken after a long siege (1696). In the north the Czar joined with Poland and Denmark in attacking Sweden, and though defeated, as we have seen, at *Narva*, in 1700, he laid the foundation of the city of *St. Petersburg* in Swedish territory in 1703, and by routing the Swedish army at *Poltava* in 1709 gained for Russia the whole of the Baltic provinces and part of Finland. Two years later an unsuccessful war with Turkey lost him the hard-won port of *Azof*; but in the north his arms were crowned with success; the Swedish fleet was defeated at *Hango*, and the outlet of the Baltic was secured.

5. In 1722 a war was begun with Persia in order to open up the Caspian Sea to Russian commerce, and for a time the provinces of Persia bordering on that sea were in Russian hands. The reign of Catherine II. (1762-1796) was not less glorious for Russia than that of Peter the Great had been. Her successful wars with Poland and Sweden in the north, and with Turkey and Persia in the south, widely extended the limits of the empire. In a scheme for the partition of Turkey between Austria and Russia, the former aggressive power was constantly defeated, but the Russians were as uniformly successful: the Turkish provinces on the Danube fell into their hands, and the main army of the Turks was signally defeated before *Shumla*. In spite of a clear treaty concluded in 1774, the Crimea and the whole country eastward to the Caspian were immediately afterwards annexed. Again war broke out; the Russian armies again overran the northern provinces of Turkey, and by the treaty of *Jassy* (1792) the Dniester river was made the boundary line, and the Crimea and Kuban were finally ceded to Russia, which thus gained the whole north shores of the Black Sea.

6. Power was also being rapidly consolidated in Asiatic Russia; already in 1727 a line of armed Cossack outposts was drawn along the Chinese frontier from the sea of *Okhotsk* to the *Ala Tau* Mountains; in 1772 these posts were increased in numbers and strengthened by regular troops. Discovery had also been progressing towards the north and east, defining more clearly the natural limits of the new possession. Adventurers had even gone beyond its shores: the *Liakhov*, or New Siberian islands in the icy Arctic Sea, with their stores of mammoth ivory, had been found; and the voyager *Vitus Bering*, sailing out from a port of the peninsula of *Kamtchatka* in 1728, had reached the entrance of the strait which bears his name, confirming the separation of Asia from America that had been reported by the Cossack *Deshenev*. The division of Russia into Governments dates from 1769.

7. Sweden's wars with Russia in the early part of the century, which lost for her the south-eastern coasts of the Baltic, have been already referred to; these overwhelmed the country with debt, and were followed by a long period of disorganisation. In 1788 Sweden again went to war with Russia, at the time when that country was engaged in active hostilities against the Turks, but without advantageous issue.

8. Denmark during this period still ruled over Norway; it exercised no very important influence in the affairs of Europe, but increased greatly in wealth and commerce. A Danish Asiatic Company was formed in 1733, and the French gave their share of the Virgin Islands in the West Indies to Denmark, on the condition that they should not be made over to any other power without the sanction of France. It was during the reign of Frederick V. (1746-1766) that a Greenland Company was formed, and that a number of learned men, among whom was *Niebuhr*, the explorer of Arabia, were sent from Denmark to travel in the east.

9. Prussia, we have already seen, had risen in the first year of this century to the rank of a great European power. Frederick William created for it

his splendid army of tall soldiers, which his successor Frederick the Great (1740-1746) used to such advantage for the extension of the kingdom, beginning his career by occupying Silesia, and holding it against the utmost efforts of Austria. The desperate conflict of the "Seven Years' War" (1756-1763), in which all the powers of central Europe were engaged, made no change in the territorial distribution, but left Frederick the acknowledged sovereign of Silesia.

10. Poland had been closely allied with Russia against the Swedes, and thus the dependence of that country on the stronger power had begun. From this time its government fell more and more under Russian influence, the intensely national spirit of the Poles being craftily turned so as to keep alive the dissensions which were surely weakening the country. A few zealous patriots, alarmed at the closing grasp of Russia, and supported by Turkey, raised an army and declared war.

11. It was at this juncture that Frederick of Prussia proposed to Austria and Russia an iniquitous partition of Poland; the mediation of the other powers of Europe was sought by Poland in vain, so that in 1772 a first partition of a large part of the country was effected by these three powers. A second partition of still larger territories between Russia and Prussia followed in 1793. The Poles now became desperate, and compelled the Prussians to retreat to their own country, and several times routed the Russian troops. But Austria, chagrined at having had no share in the second division, now again appeared on the scene, and fresh Russian forces arriving, the patriot army of Kosciusko was finally defeated, Warsaw was captured, and the Polish monarchy for ever annihilated. The third and last partition of this unfortunate kingdom gave all eastern and central Poland to Russia, Posen to Prussia, and Galicia and Bukovina to Austria.

12. All western Europe became involved in the very first year of this century in the long contest known as the war of the Spanish succession (1700-1713). Charles II. of Spain died without heir, and Louis of France and Leopold of Austria became the rival claimants for the vacant throne, which carried with it the sovereignty of the Spanish Netherlands, the Milanese, Naples and Sicily in Italy, and the vast American possessions. The Austrian party at first prevailed in Spain, but Louis succeeded in undermining their influence and in having his second grandson Philip declared king. This union could not fail to endanger the independence of every other state in western Europe, and the subsequent occupation of the Netherlands by Louis brought about the alliance of Britain, Germany, and Holland against France and the Spanish usurper. A combined army of these powers, under Marlborough, attacked the French in Belgium. The Austrians also sent an army into Italy, Bavaria alone declaring for France. The defeat at *Blenheim*, in Bavaria, lost the French their hold on Germany; at *Ramillies* the fate of the Spanish Netherlands was decided; and in the battle of *Turin* the French power in north Italy was shattered. A force of British and Dutch troops also landing at *Lisbon*, were joined by the Portuguese, and invaded Spain from the west, ultimately driving the Bourbon forces across the Pyrenees. By the peace of *Utrecht*, which concluded this contest, France ceded to Britain her American possessions of Hudson Bay, Newfoundland, and Nova Scotia, with St. Kitts in the West Indies; the Italian possessions of Spain were renounced in favour of Austria; the rock of Gibraltar and the island of Minorca were given up to Britain; Portugal gained the country north of the Amazon in South America; and the profitable "asiento" or monopoly of the supply of negro slaves to the American colonies was transferred to Britain.

13. The death of the Emperor Charles VI. of Austria (1740), by which the male line of the house of Hapsburg became extinct, was the signal for another

war among the powers of Europe, which continued with alternating success for eight years, but left the limits of the various states, at the peace of Aix which concluded it, very much as before.

14. In 1756 broke out the Seven Years' War, in which Britain took the part of Prussia against France, Austria, and Russia ; during this contest Wolfe made his conquest of the French Canadian possessions, and Clive took from them their settlements in India.

15. It was soon after the conclusion of this war by the treaty of Paris, by which the greater part of the French colonial possessions were given up to Britain, that the first attempt was made to increase the finances of the United Kingdom by taxing the American colonies, a measure which excited the most determined opposition, ultimately leading to a war (1774) between them and the mother country, in which they were materially supported by her enemies France and Spain, and by Holland. After eight years of fighting this struggle concluded in the acknowledgment of the independence of the American colonies and the formation of the Republic of the United States (1783), which we shall afterwards notice more particularly.

16. This war for freedom had disseminated republican ideas in the minds of the lower orders in France, where an incapable government and prodigal court threatened the bankruptcy of the state, and undoubtedly laid the seeds of the great revolution which was about to break out. Insurrections first alarmed Paris in 1789, when the people took possession of the Bastille, but the conciliations attempted by the king and nobles delayed the grand outbreak till 1792, when a war with Austria was begun and the defeat of the French was visited on the unfortunate Louis. Revolt now broke loose in every part of France ; a reign of blood and terror succeeded, and all the surrounding states combined against the new republic, till the brilliant exploits of the young general Napoleon Bonaparte, at the head of the French troops against the Austrians in Lombardy, turned all men's thoughts to follow his successes.

17. In 1797 Bonaparte was master in Italy, and Austria had been compelled to give up Belgium, which had been hers since the peace of Utrecht, and which was afterwards recognised as part of France. In Holland the French troops had been warmly received by the so-called patriots of the United Provinces ; the Stadtholder William V. and his family (1795) had been obliged to escape to England in a fishing-boat, and the Batavian Republic, under the protection of France, had been set up. A year later Bonaparte undertook the famous expedition against Egypt, in which the battle of the Pyramids made the French for a time masters of the Nile Delta. This also was the expedition which gave Nelson the opportunity of signalling his first independent command by the grand victory of the Nile, in which he utterly destroyed the French fleet and cut off Napoleon's communications with Europe. Leaving his army behind, Bonaparte escaped from Alexandria, and we leave him at the end of the century First Consul of France, soon to extend the limits of his kingdom by further successes in Europe.

18. Passing by Portugal, now apathetic and subordinate, from which state the ancient glory had departed never to return, we come to the states which lie along the shores of the Mediterranean. Morocco we find remaining an independent state under the rule of the Sherifs of Taflet ; Algeria, a military oligarchy, at the head of which was the Dey, and under him a strong Turkish militia, lawless and turbulent at home and piratical abroad, defying the greater Christian powers, and forcing tribute from the lesser on the waters of the Mediterranean. Against them the last Spanish expedition, with 44 ships of war and 340 transports, carrying 25,000 soldiers, went fruitlessly in 1775.

Tunis at this time had been made tributary to Algiers ; Egypt remained a



province of Turkey, administered by Pashas, until Bonaparte's invasion brought it for a year or two at the close of the century under the power of France.

19. The repeated aggressions of Russia and Austria in the Ottoman dominion in Europe, and the loss to Turkey of the lands bordering on the north coasts of the Black Sea, have been already alluded to. In part recompense for these losses the Turks received the Morea from the Venetians, and brought the whole of Greece again under Mohammedan dominion.

20. In Asia the story of the Ottoman Empire at this time connects itself with that of Persia. At the beginning of this century the Afghans of the east had acquired independence and power, and Persia was ruled by an Afghan king, whose cruelties have made the name of his people hated in Persia to the present day. A notable leader, who has been called the Wallace of Persia, soon, however, appeared as the deliverer of the country. This was Nadir Shah; at first merely the leader of a band of outlaws who levied contributions on the province of Khorassan, and by announcing his intention of expelling the hated race of the Afghans, drew large numbers to his standard, he reduced the cities of *Mashhad* and *Herat*, and afterwards subdued all Khorassan, and placed a Persian king again on the throne. He was then sent against the Turks (1731), and defeating them at *Hamadan*, regained for Persia the Armenian provinces. On returning after this campaign Nadir was himself crowned Shah. He resumed his war with the Turks, and granted terms of peace, Persia thereby recovering the province of Georgia. He now advanced against the Afghans in the East, and conquering them passed on to the north-west provinces of India against the Great Mogul; took Delhi, and returned to Persia with an enormous booty, including the famous diamond, the "Koh-i-nur." He next drove back the Uzbeks on the north, and reducing Bokhara and Kharezm, or Khiva, restored for a time to Persia the wide limits of the empire as in the days of the Sassanian kings. On his death anarchy again broke loose in Persia, and before the end of the century we find Afghanistan and Baluchistan finally separated as independent states from Persia proper, and large territories in the north-west, bordering on the Caspian, in the hands of Russia, to which empire Georgia was also soon to be added as a new province.

21. During the wars between Britain and France at home in this period hostilities broke out in India, where the French and British were already sufficiently jealous of one another's influence with the native princes. It was now that the great soldier-statesman Clive laid the foundation of British supremacy in the East, breaking the power of France in this region by his great victory at *Arcole* in 1761. The next great event here was the siege and capture of *Calcutta* by the viceroy of the Great Mogul in Bengal, when the prisoners captured suffered the horrors of the "Black Hole of Calcutta." In command of an expedition fitted out at *Madras*, Clive soon recovered Calcutta, and before 1765, Bengal, with part of Behar and Orissa, had been ceded by the Great Mogul to the East India Company. The power of the great Mohammedan ruler of Northern India had indeed already suffered greatly from the expedition of Nadir Shah. Ten years later two powerful Mohammedan sovereigns of Southern India, Hyder Ali and the Nizam of the Deccan, assisted by French officers, combined against the English, but the able policy of Warren Hastings broke up the federation and defeated Hyder Ali. War next broke out with Tippoo, Hyder Ali's son and successor, who had invaded Travancore, then under British protection. *Seringapatam*, his capital, was taken, and half his dominions ceded to the company as the price of peace. Not long after this the bad faith of Tippoo and his intrigues with the French again drew the British, under Marquis Wellesley, to *Seringapatam* (1799), when Tippoo lost both his crown and his life.

It remains for us now to sketch out the progress of geographical discovery beyond the limits of the Old World during this period.

22. One of the earliest important expeditions sent out from the Old World in this century was that of Hans Egede, a Norwegian clergyman, who, believing it possible that the old Greenland colonies might still be in existence, determined to seek out his forlorn countrymen; accordingly in 1721 he embarked with his wife and family and 46 emigrants, sailed for the west coast of Greenland, and there founded the settlements which at present occupy that rock and ice bound shore.

23. We have already referred to the Russian expedition from *Petro-paulovsk* in Kamtchatka under Bering, in which he discovered the straits between Asia and America. After some years spent in exploring the Asiatic coasts of Siberia, this voyager sailed in 1741 from Okhotsk out to the east, sighted land in about  $58\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  N. and was the first to trace the American coast in the Alaska peninsula, and to discover the high volcano called Mount St. Elias; but it was not made certain by his voyage whether these were really parts of the American continent, or only the shores of islands lying between the mainlands. Bering followed the coast northward, till, overtaken by sickness and storms, his ship was wrecked on the island of *Awatska*, since called Bering Island, and he died there in December 1741.

24. About this time the search for the "north-west passage" was renewed, and several ships were sent to explore the coasts of Hudson Bay, where it was believed some outlet to the west would be discovered; but in vain; and though a reward of £20,000 was offered by the British Government to the fortunate discoverer of such a navigable passage to the Pacific, the search was abandoned for almost the whole remaining part of the century. On the side of the "north-east," the search for a navigable route had also been abandoned by the western nations of Europe; Russia, however, was exploring the Arctic shores of her vast Siberian territory, and a Russian walrus-fisher for the first time found the eastern or inner coast of Novaya Zemlya in 1742.

25. Two years before this, war between England and Spain having again broken out in 1739, Lord George Anson was sent out from England, commanding a fleet which was intended to inflict whatever injury was possible on Spanish commerce and colonies in the South Seas. His fleet of seven vessels was scattered before rounding the stormy Cape Horn, but four of these arrived at the island of Juan Fernandez; with these he captured a Spanish galleon from *Acapulco*, and steering across the Pacific discovered a number of the smaller uninhabited islands which lie west of the Sandwich group. He reached Spithead again in 1744, having circumnavigated the globe in a cruise of nearly four years. In 1778 Captain Cook explored much of this ocean.

26. Another British officer, Captain Vancouver (1791), was the next to make any important discovery in the Pacific; during four years of incessant exertion he explored the shores of the island on the west coast of North America which now bears his name, and the labyrinth of islands and sounds which extends thence to the limit of Bering's discoveries, thus showing for the first time that no navigable passage existed between this coast and Hudson Bay, as had been so confidently hoped and expected.

27. Shortly before these discoveries were made, General Wolfe had set out (1759) from England with his little army of 8000 men to take Canada from the French. Arrived there, he landed on the island of Orleans in the St. Lawrence opposite *Quebec*, scaled the Heights of Abraham at fearful risk, and made his memorable capture of the city. At the date of the union of

Canada to Britain by the Treaty of Paris, 1763, the colony had gathered a French population of 65,000, inhabiting the immediate banks of the broad St. Lawrence.

28. Soon after his succession to the throne, and after the close of the Seven Years' War, George III. of England took advantage of the returning time of peace to send out, one after the other, a number of voyagers, who made themselves famous by their circumnavigations of the globe and discoveries of new lands. Byron, Wallis, Carteret, and Cook, all left these shores soon after 1764; it was at this time also that Bougainville set out to make the first French circumnavigation of the globe. To Byron geography owes the first survey of the *Falkland Islands*; to Wallis the survey of the *Queen Charlotte Group* of islets in the Pacific, and the re-finding of the beautiful Tahiti; while Carteret made known the afterwards famous *Pitcairn Island*, and was the first to sail through St. George's Channel, between New Britain and New Ireland; but Cook's three great voyages formed the great geographical event of the century.

29. Captain Cook's surveys of the shores of the British possessions of Newfoundland and Labrador introduced him to the notice of the Royal Society, who gave him command of an expedition to the Pacific to observe the approaching transit of Venus over the sun's disc; and he sailed from Plymouth in August 1768. Having passed round South America to Tahiti in the Pacific, he there successfully carried out the main object of his voyage, and leaving that island in July of the following year, steered westward for New Zealand, which had not been seen by Europeans since Tasman's visit, 126 years before. He landed on the coast of North Island, at a place which he named *Poverty Bay*, in October 1769; the natives, the cannibal Maoris, as was afterwards learned, took his ship for a gigantic bird, and were thunderstruck at the beauty and size of its wings. Nearly a year was spent in surveying the coasts of these islands, and thence sailing westward Cook discovered the eastern side of New Holland, or Australia, and coasted along nearly its whole length, taking possession of it in the name of Britain, and giving it the name of New South Wales. A landing was made in the inlet which was called *Botany Bay* (34° S.), from the great number of strange plants seen for the first time on its shores. He next turned north to New Guinea, and proved, by passing through Torres Strait, that the island was really separated from New Holland; thence continuing his voyage by Java and the Cape of Good Hope, he reached the Downs again in June 1771.

30. Geographers had long theoretically held that there must exist a great continent in the south to balance the mass of land in the northern hemisphere, and accordingly a vast "*Terra Australis Incognita*" was shown on most maps of the time, filling up the Antarctic regions. To ascertain the truth about this unknown land was the main object of Cook's second expedition in the ships "Resolution" and "Adventure," with which for three years he searched all round the icy Antarctic region, passing due east from the Cape of Good Hope to New Zealand, and thence round to Patagonia, steering south at frequent intervals, till brought to a halt each time by the close pack-ice of the Antarctic region. He thus made known the vast extent of the southern ocean, freeing it from the fantastic lands that had filled it up, and proving conclusively that no great continent existed at all outside the limit of the south Polar circle.

31. The belief in the possibility of a north-west passage between the Atlantic and Pacific still prevailed at home, and Cook had no sooner returned from his second voyage, than his offer to set out on a new voyage of exploration was accepted by the Admiralty. In this third campaign (1776-79), Cook sought a passage through Bering Straits instead of the old route by Davis Straits, and rounded the north-western extremity of America by this



route, but was brought to a standstill by the barrier of ice in front (Icy Cape). On returning south, he was the first to explore the *Sandwich Islands* (one of which had been seen by Gaetano in 1542), naming them thus after the First Lord of the Admiralty at the time. It was on the island of Hawaii, in this group, that Cook met his tragical death in 1779.

32. While Cook was absent on this third voyage, the attempts to enforce taxation on the North American colonies had led to great events in that part of the world. Though of very various origin, as we have seen, these colonies were united by common fears and interests, so that their first impulse was to join in their common grievance. The first Act to raise revenue by stamps caused great indignation, and was repealed, but the principle was not abandoned, though ultimately the only duty remaining was that on tea. From north to south in the colonies, however, it was determined that this tax should not be paid, and rioters in *Boston*, disguised as Indians, were the first to break the peace by wantonly destroying some cargoes of it, "blackening the harbour with unexpected tea." It was now determined to enforce the government of the crown over the colonies, and a fleet with 10,000 troops was despatched to America, and war was begun in 1775, when the famous battle of *Bunker's Hill*, near Boston, was fought. Next year the colonies proclaimed their separation from Great Britain, declaring themselves free and independent under the general title of the thirteen United States of America. These thirteen states, occupying the Atlantic coast-slope between Spanish Florida and Canada, east of the Alleghany Mountains, had gathered a population, in the century and a half which had elapsed since the first settlement on the coast of Virginia had been made, of about 2,500,000. The war was carried on with varying success; army after army was sent out from England. The States on their part endeavoured in vain to induce the British colonies of Canada and Nova Scotia to join in the struggle for independence; but Spain and Holland joined them in the war, and Paul Jones, with ships fitted out in French ports, but sailing under the American flag, fought desperate battles on the English coasts. It was only in 1783 that peace was finally concluded between England, France, Holland, and America, the independence of the States being acknowledged. Four years later the constitution of the United States was framed, and Washington was the first president.

33. Thus in the latter part of this century, the portions of the North American continent which had been occupied and brought under European government were five. (1.) Mexico or New Spain, with California (which had been occupied in 1767 by the Franciscan friars, the successors of the expelled Jesuits in Mexico), was under the dominion of Spain; (2.) Louisiana, which had been made over to Spain by the ignominious peace of Paris in 1763, was restored at the close of the century to France. (3.) The United States in the east were extended before the end of the century by the addition, to the original thirteen, of the new states of Vermont, Kentucky, and Tennessee. (4.) Canada after its conquest had been extended to include all the interior country down to the confluence of the Mississippi and Ohio; but the territories of Minnesota, Wisconsin, Michigan, Ohio, Indiana, and Illinois, were given up to the American Republic in 1783. (5.) Finally, in the north were the territories of the Hudson Bay Company. All the interior and western region of the continent remained still in the hands of the warlike aboriginal Indians.

34. Explorers sent by the American fur traders of the north were the first to gain a knowledge of the interior of the continent and of its extent towards the Arctic sea. The Coppermine River was first traced down to its mouth on the shore of the Arctic Ocean by an emissary of the Hudson Bay Company named Hearne in 1769; twenty years later, on behalf of a rival association called the North-West Company of Montreal, Mackenzie descended the great

river which now bears his name, past the Great Slave and Bear Lakes to the Arctic sea, and was the first to cross the continent in its entire breadth over the Rocky Mountains to the Pacific.

35. In Spanish South America several changes were made in the administrative divisions during this century; in the north New Granada was made into a separate viceroyalty, formed of the provinces of Panama, Santa Fe de Bogota, and Quito, the last being taken from the existing viceroyalty of Peru. Down to 1763 the basin of the Rio de la Plata in the south remained a dependency of Peru, but in that year it was erected into a distinct viceroyalty, and Upper Peru or Bolivia was subsequently added to it. During the earlier half of the century the "Christian Republic" of the Jesuit missions in Paraguay had enjoyed unexampled prosperity and was rising surely to wealth and power, when the edict went forth from Spain banishing the Jesuits from the realm, and Paraguay was added to the viceroyalty of Buenos Ayres.

36. Brazil meanwhile had entirely recovered its independence from the Dutch, who had all but supplanted the Portuguese in their East Indian colonies, and the fostering care of the mother country was devoted to it almost exclusively. In 1750 the boundaries between Spanish and Portuguese America were first defined. Here, however, as in North America, the European settlements were mainly along the coast land and the lines of the great rivers, all the interior of the land remaining in possession of the native Indian tribes, who were gradually amalgamating with their conquerors and the Africans brought thither as slaves.

37. In West Africa, the coast-line of the vast continent was now well known, and had been settled at various points by European colonies. The period of those inland journeys of exploration which have little by little disclosed its hidden features and unveiled the very fountains of the Nile itself, had now begun. In 1770 James Bruce had reached the capital of Abyssinia and the source-lake of the Blue Nile, bringing back with him such marvellous tales that some of them were set down as fabrications, though they have now been fully confirmed. In 1793, Browne first reached *Dartar*, and brought the first reports of the White Nile. Three years later Mungo Park first saw the Niger, and in the same year the Portuguese sent Dr. Lacenda from Mozambique and the Zambesi stations to visit the inland potentate, the Cazenibe.

38. It was in 1793 that the British first took possession of the Cape Colony, though six years later it was temporarily restored to Holland; and in 1787 the philanthropic endeavours then being made in England under the leadership of William Wilberforce brought about the establishment of the West African colony of *Sierra Leone*, to show the possibility of obtaining colonial produce without slave labour. *Perim Island*, a barren rock, important however in its position at the entrance to the Red Sea, of which it may be called the Gibraltar, was now first taken possession of by the British.

39. Across the Indian Ocean the first European settlement in Australia was formed by the despatch from England of a batch of 760 convicts and 700 soldiers, besides a few cattle, horses, and sheep, all which were landed (January 1788) at Cook's *Botany Bay*; soon afterwards the settlement was transferred a little way north to the more promising shores of Port Jackson, the beautiful harbour of the present city of *Sydney*. Twelve years later *Norfolk Island* was made into a penal settlement for the colony of New South Wales.

40. An important voyage of discovery on the Asiatic coast remains to be noticed. It was made by the French voyager La Perouse, who distinguished himself during the American war by his expedition to attack the British forts on the stormy ice-bound shores of Hudson Bay; he was sent out in 1785 to attempt again the discovery of a north west passage by Bering Strait. He

for the first time surveyed the shores of Japan and Tartary, discovering Saghalien Island, and the straits which separate it from the island of Yesso and the mainland, sending home his journals by way of Kamtchatka. He also examined part of the little-known American coast on the opposite side of the Pacific, though he failed to add to knowledge farther north. His voyage has a strange interest, for after anchoring in Botany Bay on his return, his ships disappeared altogether, and no trace of them was ever afterwards found, though several expeditions were sent out in search—the only clue to his fate being the discovery thirty years later of some articles that had belonged to his vessels on one of the small northern islets of the New Hebrides.

## 12. 1800–1908.

By far the most important and rapid changes of power and territorial limits in the beginning of the nineteenth century were those which were taking place in western Europe, where the boundless ambition of France under Napoleon Bonaparte brought about the most tremendous wars that the civilised world had ever known, and threatened the overthrow of the oldest states of Europe. With this part of the world, accordingly, it may be well to begin our outline of the leading movements of the century through which we have now passed.

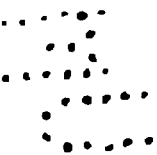
1. We left France when that State had been extended far beyond its normal limits to include the greater part of North Italy on the one side, and Belgium on the other. Egypt also had fallen under its sway, and Napoleon, as First Consul, had in his hands the entire command of its affairs, civil and military. Austria in alliance with Russia had renewed the war with France in 1799, to recover Piedmont and Lombardy, giving the cause for Napoleon's daring march across the Alps by the Great St. Bernard pass, in the spring of 1800, and the great battle of *Marengo*, which for the second time compelled the Austrians to resign their hold on Lombardy. The peace of *Luneville*, (1801) confirmed the conditions which had been premised by those of *Campo Formio* two years before, Austria receiving Venetia within the Adige, while France grasped all the remaining portions of the old maritime state, including its possessions on the Albanian coast, and the Ionian Islands. Nearer home also the French boundary was extended over Belgium to the Rhine.

2. While these events were progressing, the northern powers of Europe—Denmark, Sweden, Russia, and Prussia—jealous of the growing maritime power of Britain, shown by the splendid victories over the Spanish at *Cape St. Vincent*, and the French at *Aboukir Bay*, had entered into an armed neutrality to restrict its power. On this, the British fleet was promptly despatched to the Baltic, and in the glorious battle of *Copenhagen* (1801) Nelson not only captured the Danish fleet, but shattered the dreaded coalition completely. About the same time the British and Turks were finally expelling the French from Egypt—events which paved the way for negotiations.

3. The peace of *Amiens* (1802), which was intended to settle the points in dispute between France, England, Spain, and Holland, obliged the French to leave Rome, Naples, and Elba, but restored tranquillity for a brief space

ABOUT 1908





.

.

.



only: next year the peace was again dissolved, war with Britain was declared, and a large army was assembled at *Boulogne* to invade our islands. The French troops now took possession of Hanover; Sweden joined with Britain, and Spain with France. Over the seas, the Dutch possessions of Surinam, Demerara, and Essequibo, which had been restored to the Batavian Republic by the treaty of Amiens, again fell to Britain.

4. In 1804 Napoleon assumed the title of Emperor of France; in the following summer he was crowned King of Italy at Milan, and in the same year the Genoese or Ligurian Republic was incorporated with France. Alarmed at the growing extent of French power, Austria, Russia, and Sweden now formed a new coalition with Britain, and hostilities began, in which a series of extraordinary triumphs crowned the arms of France. Though at sea the British were still triumphant, gaining the glorious victory of *Trafalgar* over the combined French and Spanish fleets (October 1805), the Austro-Russian army was totally defeated by Bonaparte, two months later, on the field of *Austerlitz*: the continental coalition against France was thereby broken, and the peace that was signed at *Pressburg* on the Danube, gave Venetia and the Adriatic provinces of Austria to France.

5. Next year Bonaparte made his brother Joseph King of Naples, and Louis King of Holland. He then formed the "Confederation of the Rhine," which induced the ruler of Austria to give up his title of Emperor of Germany. Sixteen of the German Princes, the chief of whom were the sovereigns of Bavaria and Wurtemberg, signed an act of confederation at Paris, dissolving their connection with the Germanic Empire and allying themselves with France. Hostilities were now begun against Prussia, which found an ally in Russia, while Napoleon summoned the Poles to his aid by promises of liberation, and gathered round him an army of Patriots. The French entered *Berlin*, defeated the Russians in the great battle of *Friedland*: and the peace of *Tilsit* in 1807 cost Prussia half its dominions, the Poles being rewarded by the partial restoration of their independence by the creation of the "Duchy of Warsaw," to which Galicia was added in 1809.

6. The kingdom of Westphalia, which included that province and a number of the adjoining petty German States, was now formed, and placed under Jerome Bonaparte as a preliminary step to its incorporation with France. Denmark, which had hitherto maintained neutrality, and had been rapidly increasing her fleet, was now summoned to enter into an alliance with England. Refusing this, Copenhagen was bombarded by the British, the arsenals and docks commanding the Sound were destroyed, and all the shipping disabled, sunk, or taken back to England. Smarting under this treatment, Denmark soon after became the ally of France.

7. Napoleon next turned his attention to Portugal, which country had refused to conform to his edict issued at Berlin, excluding British manufactures from the Continent, and Dom João, the Prince Regent, learning that Napoleon had determined upon the destruction of his dynasty, left Portugal with all his family in 1807, transferring his seat of government to *Rio de Janeiro*, the capital of Brazil, an act which was immediately followed by the occupation and annexation of Portugal by the French.

8. Spain had been a party to the aggressions of France in Portugal, but soon herself felt the effects of her folly; the whole of her royal family was entrapped at *Bayonne*, and the crown of Spain and the Indies was made over by Napoleon to his brother, Joseph of Naples, his kingdom there being given to his brother in law, the "Swordsman," Murat. The patriots of Spain and Portugal soon rose against the yoke of France, and Britain being invited to their aid, the Peninsular war began (1808), in which Sir Arthur Wellesley (afterwards Duke of Wellington) gained his glorious name in the triumphs of

*Vimiera* and *Talavera*, on the famous lines of *Torres Vedras*, at *Ciudad Rodrigo*, *Salamanca*, and *Vitoria*, pursuing the French gradually back across the Pyrenees and across the Garonne, to defeat them beneath the walls of *Toulouse* (1814).

9. When the Peninsular war was just beginning, Austria had once more taken arms against the French, drawing upon itself another invasion by Napoleon; the French again entered Venice, and notwithstanding the defeats of *Aspern* and *Essling*, once more prostrated Austria in the decisive battle of *Wagram*, compelling the ignoble peace of Vienna, by which more than 58,000 square miles of her territory on the south and all her seaboard passed into the hands of France—western Galicia, with Cracow, being given up to the Duchy of Warsaw.

10. This treaty was followed by the marriage of Napoleon to the Archduchess Maria Louisa; and three years later Austria joined with France in a short-lived alliance against Russia, when, gathering between the Vistula and Memel a huge force from all his allies—Austrians, Poles, Italians, Swiss, and Germans—Napoleon undertook the invasion of that country. Through *Wilna*, losing thousands after thousands of his troops by sickness and by the incessant attacks of the Cossacks who hung in the rear of his army, he chased the Russians by *Smolensk* till he came up with them at the battle-field of *Borodino*, a week after which deserted *Moscow* was reached. Winter coming on early in the already wasted country compelled the disastrous retreat, October 1812, the very time at which Wellington was beginning to invade southern France from Spain.

11. Abandoning the wretched remnant of his army, Napoleon hastened back to Paris, there to raise a fresh conscription and again to march into Germany. But the spell of terror which the very name of Bonaparte had hitherto exercised was broken. Russia and Prussia allied themselves against him; Austria also joined them; the Confederation of the Rhine and the powers of Westphalia vanished like a mist, the whole German people rising to deliver themselves from their bondage. The three days' "battle of the nations" at *Leipzig* hopelessly ruined the power of Napoleon, and compelled his retreat across the Rhine, followed into France by the allies. In March 1814 *Paris* was taken, and the Emperor of Russia and the King of Prussia entered it as conquerors, the victorious Wellington joining them a few weeks later from the south. Napoleon abdicated, but was allowed to retain the title of emperor and the sovereignty of the little Italian island of *Elba*, whither he was conveyed in a British ship.

12. Less than a year later Napoleon made his escape from *Elba*; landing near *Frejus* (March 1815) on the French coast, he rallied round him his old soldiers, marched to Paris and once more prepared to give battle to the allies. The news of his landing had again spread terror throughout Europe, and Austria, Russia, Prussia, and England at once allied themselves, the Duke of Wellington taking command of the armies of the Netherlands. The campaign lasted but a few days, the memorable battle of *Waterloo* (18th June 1815), annihilating the power of Napoleon, who, under the safeguard of the British, was exiled to the solitary ocean islet of *St. Helena*.

13. Immediately after the downfall of Napoleon, the representatives of every sovereign state in Europe, to the number of 500, gathered in the Congress of Vienna to re-arrange and settle the respective limits which had been so rudely broken through in Napoleon's aggressive wars. By this conference, Belgium and Holland were joined to form the "Kingdom of the Netherlands;" Norway was separated from Denmark and annexed to Sweden in consideration of the aid given by the Swedes against Napoleon, though Iceland and the Greenland colonies remained to Denmark; Hanover was restored to Britain, with a large

ance of Westphalia; Lombardy to Austria; Savoy to Piedmont. Greater discussion was needed before it was decided that Prussia should obtain a portion of Saxony (Prussian Saxony), with Posen and the greater part of the left bank of the Rhine; and before those portions of the Duchy of Warsaw which were not resigned to Austria and Prussia, were formed into the kingdom of Poland as a separate state, united to Russia by the personal tie of the same monarch being sovereign in each. The old constitution of Switzerland was re-established; Genoa was joined to Sardinia; and the Pope was restored to his territorial authority.

From the starting-point of this re-arrangement of the map of Europe we may now follow rapidly the subsequent changes of territory in each of the leading States of Europe which have given them the limits they occupy at the present day.

14. France was now restricted to the limits which it had before the outbreak of the Revolution (1790), and her frontier fortresses were occupied by the allied troops for five years. It may be sufficient here to recall three leading points in the subsequent history of this state—the conquest of Algeria, begun in 1830, which we shall afterwards refer to more particularly, the Italian campaigns in aid of Sardinia against Austria in 1859, in compensation for which the provinces of Savoy and Nice (Alpes Maritimes) were added to France; and the Franco-German war of 1871, during which more than a fourth part of France was overrun by the Germans, and after which two of its most populous and industrial provinces, those of Lorraine and Alsace (which had formed part of Germany till the end of the seventeenth century), were incorporated as part of the German Empire.

15. Directly after the settlement of Vienna, those of the German States which still retained their sovereignty (now about forty in number, united to form a confederation, of which Austria and Prussia were naturally by far the most powerful members, rivaling one another for the leadership of Germany. This rivalry displayed itself in mutual jealousy and ill will, which seemed more than once likely to end in war.

On the northern border animosity had long existed between the German and Danish inhabitants of the duchies of Schleswig and Holstein, which broke out in an actual war in 1848, put down for a time by the defeat of the Schleswig-Holstemers at *Idsted* in 1849. On the death of Frederick VII. of Denmark in 1863, however, the duchies refused the oath of allegiance to the new king as their rightful duke, and appealed to the German Diet; this gave a pretext for the entry of an Austro-Prussian army into Holstein. For ten weeks the Danes made a gallant resistance, but the final victory of the greater powers was inevitable, and after protracted negotiations Denmark was obliged to accept peace (August 1864) on the hard terms of ceding to Austria and Prussia the duchies of Holstein, Schleswig, and Lauenburg, when, by the treaty of *Gastein*, a joint occupation of the duchies by these powers was agreed upon.

16. Already differences of policy between the two rival powers of Germany had begun to show themselves, Prussia being supposed to intend the final annexation of the duchies, Austria to desire the question relating to them to be referred to the Diet for settlement, and both nations made preparations for a final struggle. Italy also was actively arming to take advantage of the impending contest to strike a blow for Venetia. On the sitting of the Diet in 1866, Austria placed the question of the duchies at the disposal of the Diet—an act which was considered as an insult by Prussia; war was soon after declared against Austria. Then followed the Prussian invasion of Austria.



through Bohemia, and the decisive battle of Königgratz or *Sadowa*, which allowed the victorious Prussians to advance towards Vienna. The South German states—Bavaria, Würtemberg, and Baden—had sided with Austria in the contest, but their armies were likewise isolated and defeated. The Italians had attacked Austria by land and sea, in Venetia and the Adriatic, but without great success. By the treaty of *Prague*, which concluded the contest, Austria was excluded from all farther share in the organisation of the Germanic States, and formally agreed to the incorporation of Schleswig-Holstein with Prussia and the surrender of Venetia to Italy. Most of the smaller states north of the river Main which had taken up arms against Prussia were incorporated, and the others were united with Prussia to form the North German Confederation, from which Bavaria, Baden, and Würtemberg, or the South German states, were excluded.

17. In these events, and in the subsequent reorganisation of the country with the prospect of a united Germany, its great statesman Bismarck had been the leading spirit. The opportunity for the accomplishment of this unification of Germany came in 1871. France had declared war with Germany in July of the former year, and South and North Germany united to stem a threatened French invasion. In place of a march to Berlin, the campaign was carried on entirely on French soil, the Germans being victorious throughout from the opening battle of *Saarbrück* to the capitulations of *Sedan*, *Metz*, and *Paris*. At *Versailles*, in January 1871, the King of Prussia was crowned Emperor of Germany, the empire being formed by the close union of every German state with the exception of Austria; the treaty of peace signed at *Frankfort-on-the-Main* in May of the same year added Alsace and Lorraine to that empire. Germany then became ambitious of founding a colonial empire, and several territories and islands in Africa and the Pacific were taken possession of in the course of 1884-1890.

18. Early in the century, at the instigation of Napoleon, Persia had taken up arms again in a vain contest with Russia, terminating (1813), after two years of contest, by the cession to the northern power of all the Persian provinces to the north of Armenia, and conceding the right to the navigation of the Caspian.

19. The events of 1814 had equally altered the condition of Russia, giving that country great weight in European politics, while internal reforms had acted very favourably on the industry and well-being of the empire. This course of progress was, however, checked on the accession of Nicholas I. (1825), who reverted to the ancient despotic policy of the Tsars, and soon involved the country in fresh wars with Persia and Turkey. That with Persia was begun in 1826, and cost that power the remainder of its territory in Armenia, with Erivan, and a large sum for the expenses of the war. The year (1828) that peace was concluded with Persia an invasion of Turkey was begun; Walachia, Moldavia, Bulgaria, and Rumelia were overrun; but at the peace of *Adrianople* (1829) these territories were left in possession of the Porte, in consideration of the cession to Russia of the whole north-east coast of the Black Sea, from the mouth of the river Kuban to the port of *Nikolaya* (42° N.), with the territories of the Caucasus, besides the right of free navigation of the Danube and the free passage for Russian ships through the Dardanelles from the Black Sea to the Mediterranean.

20. A national rising of the Poles next occupied attention. This was suppressed only after a very sanguinary contest of nearly a year's duration, and punished by the conversion of Poland into a mere Russian province. Viewing with alarm the extension of British power in Asia, Nicholas despatched an expedition for the conquest of Khiva, in Central Asia, in 1839; but it failed, as the previous one of Peter had done, the greater part of the Russian army perishing in the desert.

21. In 1853 the hereditary scheme for the absorption of Turkey was again entertained, when the unexpected opposition of Britain, France, and Sardania brought on the Crimean war, during which, if the allies did not gain any signal successes, the defeat on the Danube at *Silistria* and on the *Alma*, and the capture of Sebastopol, drained Russia of men and money, lost her much military prestige, and closed to her the navigation of the Danube and the unrestricted passage of the Dardanelles.

With the capture of the prophet chief *Shamyl*, the most active of Russia's foes in the Caucasus, in 1859, the conquest of that mountain region may be said to have been completed.

22. The next important addition to Russian territory was that of the maritime region of eastern Siberia north of Manchuria. By the treaty with China of 1861, all the territory north of the Amur river and east of its tributary the *Usuri*, including the Asiatic shores of the Sea of Japan as far south as the fine harbour of Peter the Great, or *Vladivostok Bay*, was ceded to Russia, giving the Siberian provinces a good outlet to the Pacific. A new insurrection in Poland in 1863-1864 was put down with extreme severity.

23. Central Asia next claims attention. For many years a series of wars had been waging between the Khanates of Turkestan, in which direction the line of Russian outposts east of the Caspian had been steadily if gradually pushed forward. Bokhara, Khokan, and Khiva had been mutually at war, the first generally prevailing. Taking advantage of these disputes, the Russians, siding with Khiva, invaded Khokan in 1864, and taking the city of *Tashkend*, became virtually masters of this Khanate, forming it in 1867 into the nucleus of the general government of Russian Turkestan. The city of *Samarkand*, in Bokhara, once the capital of Tamerlane's great empire, fell before the Russian advance in 1868, and this, with the surrounding country, was incorporated with Russian Turkestan in 1870 as the province of *Zeravshan*, from the river which flows through it. In 1871 Zungaria with its capital *Kulja* on the *Ili* river was temporarily occupied by Russia, and later restored to China. A third campaign against Khiva in 1873 terminated successfully, the capital town being occupied, and the whole of the former Khivan territory along the right bank of the *Amu Daria* (*Oxus*), being ceded to the conquerors. During the next year a new Trans-Caspian province was formed, extending from the government of the Ural along the eastern side of the Caspian Sea as far as the *Attrek*, the frontier river of Persia. In 1875 the remainder of the Khanate of Khokan was finally incorporated, the Russian frontier in Central Asia being thus extended to the summit of the range of the western *Tian Shan* mountains, thence to the *Oxus* and the Sea of Aral and the limits of Persia on the eastern side of the Caspian. *Merv*, and with it the whole of the country of the *Turkmenians*, was united with the Russian empire in 1884. Thus since 1864 Russia has added nearly a million and a half of square miles of territory and over seven millions of inhabitants to its empire in Central Asia alone.

24. In April 1877, on the pretext of enforcing reforms in the government of Turkey, the Russian Emperor, who during the previous year had been collecting troops in Bessarabia, declared war, his army beginning simultaneously to cross the river *Pruth* into European Turkey, and from *Alexandropol* against *Kars* in Asia Minor. Rumania, though nominally a dependency of Turkey, was friendly to Russia, and no obstacle stood in the way of the advance to the Danube. This river was crossed in the end of June. The heroic defence of *Plevna* by *Osman Pasha* and his army delayed the Russian advance in Europe till the beginning of December, *Kars* having been captured in the previous month. After the fall of *Plevna*, a general advance of the Russian armies took place across the Balkan mountains, almost unchecked, to the neigh-

bourhood of *Constantinople*. All the north-eastern region of European Turkey was thus again in the hands of Russia. A Congress of representatives of the great European Powers subsequently met at Berlin to determine the future limits of Russia and Turkey. By the treaty which was signed in July 1878, the Russian frontier was extended over Western Bessarabia to the Danube (thus to Russia the territory which had been taken from her after the Crimean War was restored), and in Asia the territory from the port of *Batum* on the Black Sea, and round Kars in the interior, was added to the Russian territory of the Caucasus. The independence of Romania, Servia, and Montenegro was recognised. Bulgaria and Eastern Roumelia were separated from the direct rule of the Sultan; Bulgaria being erected into a tributary Principality, and Eastern Roumelia into an autonomous province under a Christian Governor. Servia and Montenegro were enlarged, and Bosnia and Herzegovina placed under Austrian military occupation.

25. Perhaps the most important series of events in the history of China during this century have been those which have opened its vast territory to greater freedom of foreign intercourse. It does not appear that when the coasts of the China Sea were first made known to Europeans, in the fourteenth century, there existed any feeling of opposition to the admission of strangers, but the conduct of the Portuguese and Spaniards, who were the first to come in contact with the Chinese, seems to have excited their hostility.

For nearly 200 years (previous to 1834) the East India Company had held a monopoly of trade with China at the port of *Canton*, and though differences had arisen out of the opium traffic, a British embassy had been well received in *Peking* in 1792. Dissensions, however, rose again in 1839, when open acts of hostility were begun, troops being sent into Canton, and all the opium belonging to the English merchants seized and destroyed. War was thereupon declared; in 1841 the Chinese fleet was scattered, Canton was taken, with *Amoy*, *Ning-po*, *Wu-Sung*, and *Shang-hai*, and by the middle of 1842 China was sufficiently humbled to agree to the peace of *Nanking*, by which the ports of Amoy, Fuchow, Ningpo, and Shang-hai were, with that of Canton, thrown open to foreign trade, the island of Hong-Kong being ceded in perpetuity to Britain. Soon the British trade with China assumed gigantic proportions. A second war broke out, after the seizure of a vessel from Hong-Kong by the Chinese. In 1857 Canton was stormed by the French and English, the forts at the mouth of the Peiho river on the north were taken, and at *Tientsin* a new treaty was concluded, which added that port to the five already opened, besides those of *Kiung-chow* (in Hainan island), *Swatow*, *Teng-chow* (in Shan-tung), *New-chwang* (in Manchuria), and the river ports of *Chin Kiang*, *Kiu Kiang*, and *Hankow*, on the Yangtse, the great central waterway of China. The treaty also stipulated that British diplomatic agents should have residence in Peking; that the Christian religion should be protected; and that British subjects should have the right to travel in all parts of the interior of China,—conditions which were ratified at Peking itself, which was temporarily occupied by the British and French troops in 1860.

26. Among the events in the internal history of China during this time, the most remarkable was the rise and progress and final suppression of the rebellion of the followers of the self-styled "Tai-ping-wang," or "Heavenly King," a religio-political fanatic, who believed that he had a mission to uproot the Tatar dynasty and re-establish native rule. His insurrection broke out in the mountains of the southern province of Kwang-tung in 1849, his followers at once making themselves distinct by allowing their hair to grow naturally long, and not confined in the native queue. Quickly gathering strength, the Taipings overran all southern China, and passing down the Yangtse, they captured and established themselves at the southern capital of

Nauking, afterwards marching northward, their army reached to within 80 miles of Tientsin, where they encountered the Imperial forces in a long contest, and after many defeats, were obliged to fight their way south again. Till 1860, however, the provinces in the lower basin of the Yangtso remained in their hands, when the Imperial forces, with the aid of a British leader ("Chinese Gordon"), began a final campaign which lost them every important position. It was not till 1868 that the last embers of this great insurrection were trodden out in Kwang-si, the original nest of its origin.

27. The Mohammedan Tatars of the western provinces of China also kept the interior country in ferment for a long period, and established themselves as an independent power in the south-western province of Yun nan. Their rebellion spread far inland to Kansu and north-western Mongolia, from which regions they drove the Chinese garrisons, closing for several years all the direct routes of communication between China and Turkestan. In Yun-nan the Mohammedans were in power from 1854 till 1872, when the chief stronghold, the city of *Tali-fu*, again fell to the Chinese troops: the province of Kansu was not again mastered till 1876, and it was only during 1877 that the Chinese again gradually recovered the territories west of Mongolia.

28. In connection with these movements in the far interior of China and with the Russian advances in Western Turkestan, there remains to be noticed the rise and fall of a very remarkable state in the high central plateau of the continent. Until 1864, Eastern Turkestan had formed part of the Chinese Empire, the Manchu kings having conquered it, as we have seen, from the descendants of Genghis Khan. In that year the Mohammedan rebels of Kansu made a successful incursion in this region, and were assisted in expelling the Chinese troops by Usbeg soldiery who had been driven out of Western Turkestan by the advancing Russians. The leader of these Usbegs was a man of remarkable powers, named Yakub Beg, who, after the expulsion of the Chinese, on being joined by thousands of his countrymen from the west, instantly seized the chief power in the newly conquered country, and, organising a strong soldiery, in turn drove out the Turganis, or Kansu Mohammedans. So able was his administration that in a few years Eastern Turkestan, or "Jetysahar," as it was named from its seven cities, became to all appearance such a well consolidated state as to merit the recognition of Britain. A treaty of commerce with India was concluded in 1874, and by firman of the Sultan of Turkey its ruler took the title of Amir Yakub Khan. The Chinese, however, had meanwhile been very gradually recovering their lost provinces in Central Asia, their troops appeared on the border of Eastern Turkestan, and again attacked the usurpers. During the lifetime of Yakub Khan the State continued to resist the returning tide of Chinese power; but his death in June 1877 was a fatal event for Jetysahar, which had been only held together by his iron will. Dissensions about the succession arose, and gave the Chinese opportunity to advance from *Manas* and *Urumchi* almost without resistance, so that before the end of 1877 the capital city of *Kashgar* had fallen into their hands, and Eastern Turkestan was again incorporated with the Chinese Empire.

29. The islands of Japan, soon after their discovery by Europeans in the fourteenth century, had been freely opened to the foreigner; Portuguese and later Dutch traders had established very extensive commercial relations there, and the Jesuit missionaries had extended Christianity very widely. An edict for their complete exclusion had, however, been put in force in 1638, and from that time onward till the middle of the nineteenth century, Japan maintained a most rigid isolation, no Japanese being permitted to leave his own shores, and no foreigner allowed to land on them. This state of matters continued till 1853, when the United States Government succeeded in obtaining



a permission to trade at two ports, under restrictions. The isolation thus broken, a more satisfactory treaty was concluded in 1858, by which foreigners were allowed to trade at the five ports of *Hakodate*, *Kanagawa* (the port of Yedo, or Tokio), *Nagasaki*, *Niigata*, and *Hiogo* (the port of Osaka). Re-opened to foreign influence, changes of almost startling rapidity have been adopted in the country: the whole political constitution of the empire has been re-modelled; religious reforms have been adopted; everything is being rapidly Europeanised; railways, telegraphs, colleges, have been set up, and the successful Chino-Japanese and Russo-Japanese wars of 1894-95 and 1904-05 have enabled Japan to take rank with the Great Powers of the world.

30. We have already noticed how toward the end of the eighteenth century the French secured an interest in the kingdom of Annam or Cochin China. Their first interference, owing to complications at home, had not been rewarded by an accession of territory, but the desire for such a convenient resting-place in the East Indian seas had remained, and a claim to it was set up again in 1860. Landing a force at the delta of the Mekong river in that year, the French captured the city of *Saigon*, and forced a treaty by which three provinces were ceded to them in 1867; the remainder of Lower Cochin China voluntarily submitted to them. Since that time the French have made great efforts to extend and consolidate their Asiatic possessions. Cambodia has been placed under French protection, whilst Annam, after the occupation of Hue, in 1883, acknowledged the suzerainty of France, and surrendered Tongking, the conquest of which province involved France in a war with China.

31. The very interesting countries of Siam and Cambodia have played no important part in the world beyond their limits, and we may pass over them to Burma. This empire, which began to rise to power in the eighteenth century, attained its greatest expansion about the year 1822, when it extended from Bengal on the north-west to Cambodia in the south-east, including all the territory between Assam and the island of Junk Seylon or Salanga, off the coast of the central Malay peninsula.

The East India Company had obtained a settlement, and some other advantages, in Burma in 1737; but at the period of greatest power, aggressions on the part of the Burmese, and insolence to the British ambassador at the court of Ava, gave cause for a first war, which terminated in the cession to Britain of the maritime provinces of Tenasserim and Aracan. A second war in 1852 deprived the empire of its remaining seaboard, the provinces of Pegu and Martaban being retained at its conclusion; these, with the two previously ceded areas, were formed into the territory of British Burma. At the close of the first Burmese war, the northern province of Assam, in the basin of the Brahmaputra river, was also ceded to the British, and was for a time transferred by them to a native Raja whom the Burmese had formerly expelled; but its mis-government led to its being brought finally under British administration in 1838. Thus we again approach India.

32. In touching upon the events, of conquest or of annexation, by which the Indian peninsula has been brought directly or indirectly under the British crown, it is impossible, within our limits, to do more than recall a few of their many prominent points. We left India in the last chapter, when Marquis Wellesley had brought Mysore under British influence. His great victory over the Mahrattas under Scindia at *Assaye*, in 1803, gave the British arms still higher fame in Central India. The same year saw the conquest of Delhi, the capital of the Mogul Emperors of North India, by General Lake, and a very considerable extension of the dominions of the Company in that direction. Sir Charles Napier's conquest of Sind against fearful odds in 1843, is one of the most brilliant military feats in the history of India; immediately after followed the Sikh wars, 1845-46, and 1848-49, which gave Britain the government of

the Panjab. In 1856 the Company was obliged, in the interests of its mis-governed inhabitants, to annex the province of Oude. In 1857 discontent in the native army, fostered by a Mohammedan conspiracy, broke forth in the Sepoy rebellion; the march of the mutineers to Delhi, the massacre of Cawnpore, and the siege and then the relief of Lucknow by the heroic Havelock followed. In 1858 no position of importance had been left to the mutineers, but such a calamity showed the necessity for concentrating the supreme power in the hands of the Imperial government; and, in spite of strenuous resistance, the East India Company was obliged to cede its powers to the crown in August 1858. The system of government of the country was in some degree altered; natives of the higher classes were admitted to a share in the councils, and the proportion of native to European troops was much lessened. The Governor-General, formerly the servant of the East India Company, became "Viceroy and Governor-General." In 1876 the Queen of England assumed the title of "Empress of India."

33. The Portuguese settlers of the sixteenth century in the great island of Ceylon were driven from that island, as we have before noticed, after a contest of twenty years, by the Dutch in the middle of the seventeenth century. Before the beginning of the nineteenth, the Hollanders in turn gave place to the British. During the great European war which succeeded the French Revolution, immediately after the Batavian Republic had been set up under the protection of France, a British expedition under Colonel James Stuart landed at Trincomali and captured Colombo, when all the Dutch settlements on the island were ceded, though it was not till the Peace of Amiens in 1802 that Ceylon was formally annexed to the British Empire.

A war with the Kandyan king in 1815 gave the British direct rule over the central territories of the island, since which time its material prosperity has made rapid strides.

A very important station, that of the island of *Singapore*, on the highway of commerce, in the straits which lead from the China Sea to the Indian Ocean, was acquired by purchase from the Malay Sultan in 1819.

34. During the brief existence of the Batavian Republic, and Napoleon's subsequent incorporation of the Netherlands with France, all the Dutch East Indian possessions, besides Ceylon, fell into the hands of the British—Malacca, Sumatra, the Moluccas or Spice Islands, in 1795-96; Java in 1810. All were, however, restored to the Dutch after the Congress of Vienna, except *Malacca*.

*Labuan*, important from its coal-beds, was ceded to Britain by the Sultan of Brunei in 1846. Brunei itself accepted the British protectorate in 1888, and in 1906 the Sultan became a British prisoner; since 1841 the Sarawak district had been administered by Sir James ("Raja") Brooke, and the protectorate was extended in 1888 to the territory of the British North Borneo Company (chartered in 1882).

35. Afghanistan first appears as an independent state after the death of Nadir Shah (p. 69). While the soldiers of the East India Company were extending their conquests in Northern India in the early part of the last century, the ruler of Afghanistan, Dost Mohammed, was at war with the Persians on his western border, and with the ruler of the Panjab on the east. The Panjab was at this time in friendly relations with the British in the North-West Provinces; and when hostilities broke out in 1838 between the British and Afghanistan (the object of the former being to place a more friendly ruler on the Afghan throne), the Panjab joined, though not heartily, in the enterprise. A British expedition entering Afghanistan by the Bolan Pass captured Kandahar and the fortress of *Ghazni*, and by occupying *Kabul* seemed to have completed the conquest of the country. But when the winter of 1841-2 came on, and assistance from India was impossible, the Afghans

a permission to trade at two ports, under restrictions. The isolation thus broken, a more satisfactory treaty was concluded in 1858, by which foreigners were allowed to trade at the five ports of *Hakodate*, *Kanagawa* (the port of Yedo, or Tokio), *Nagasaki*, *Niigata*, and *Hiogo* (the port of Osaka). Re-opened to foreign influence, changes of almost startling rapidity have been adopted in the country: the whole political constitution of the empire has been re-modelled; religious reforms have been adopted; everything is being rapidly Europeanised; railways, telegraphs, colleges, have been set up, and the successful Chino-Japanese and Russo-Japanese wars of 1894-95 and 1904-05 have enabled Japan to take rank with the Great Powers of the world.

30. We have already noticed how toward the end of the eighteenth century the French secured an interest in the kingdom of Annam or Cochin China. Their first interference, owing to complications at home, had not been rewarded by an accession of territory, but the desire for such a convenient resting-place in the East Indian seas had remained, and a claim to it was set up again in 1860. Landing a force at the delta of the Mekong river in that year, the French captured the city of *Saigon*, and forced a treaty by which three provinces were ceded to them in 1867; the remainder of Lower Cochin China voluntarily submitted to them. Since that time the French have made great efforts to extend and consolidate their Asiatic possessions. Cambodia has been placed under French protection, whilst Annam, after the occupation of Hue, in 1883, acknowledged the suzerainty of France, and surrendered Tongking, the conquest of which province involved France in a war with China.

31. The very interesting countries of Siam and Cambodia have played no important part in the world beyond their limits, and we may pass over them to Burma. This empire, which began to rise to power in the eighteenth century, attained its greatest expansion about the year 1822, when it extended from Bengal on the north-west to Cambodia in the south-east, including all the territory between Assam and the island of Junk Seylon or Salanga, off the coast of the central Malay peninsula.

The East India Company had obtained a settlement, and some other advantages, in Burma in 1737; but at the period of greatest power, aggressions on the part of the Burmese, and insolence to the British ambassador at the court of Ava, gave cause for a first war, which terminated in the cession to Britain of the maritime provinces of Tenasserim and Aracan. A second war in 1852 deprived the empire of its remaining seaboard, the provinces of Pegu and Martaban being retained at its conclusion; these, with the two previously ceded areas, were formed into the territory of British Burma. At the close of the first Burmese war, the northern province of Assam, in the basin of the Brahmaputra river, was also ceded to the British, and was for a time transferred by them to a native Raja whom the Burmese had formerly expelled; but its mis-government led to its being brought finally under British administration in 1838. Thus we again approach India.

32. In touching upon the events, of conquest or of annexation, by which the Indian peninsula has been brought directly or indirectly under the British crown, it is impossible, within our limits, to do more than recall a few of their many prominent points. We left India in the last chapter, when Marquis Wellesley had brought Mysore under British influence. His great victory over the Mahrattas under Scindia at *Assaye*, in 1803, gave the British arms still higher fame in Central India. The same year saw the conquest of Delhi, the capital of the Mogul Emperors of North India, by General Lake, and a very considerable extension of the dominions of the Company in that direction. Sir Charles Napier's conquest of Sind against fearful odds in 1843, is one of the most brilliant military feats in the history of India; immediately after followed the Sikh wars, 1845-46, and 1848-49, which gave Britain the government of

conquest of Constantinople in 1453; its inhabitants groaned under the tyrannous and brutal yoke, till in 1820 they were provoked to rebel against the Turkish rule, and, with the countenance and aid of the Christian powers of Britain, France, and Russia in the struggle, gained the establishment of Greece as an independent kingdom in 1829, a son of the king of Bavaria being ultimately chosen king of the new state.

42. About this time two large regions of the northern side of European Turkey, though not actually separated from the empire, became to some extent distinct from it in their government. These were the principalities of Moldavia and Wallachia, in which a number of the nobles were of Greek descent, and who, simultaneously with the Greeks, made an effort to free themselves altogether from Turkish rule. In this they were not successful, but the influence of Russia gained them certain privileges, and in 1861 they were formed into the tributary State of Romania, which afterwards (1866) obtained a representative government. The complete independence of Romania was recognised, as we have seen, by the Treaty of Berlin in 1878.

43. Servia, the country lying on the southern side of the Danube to the west of Romania, was uniformly the scene of the fierce wars between the Turks and Hungarians, and passed once or twice alternately into the hands of Austria and the Porte, finally falling to the latter. After sixty years of the most oppressive government the Servians revolted in 1801, and by the aid of Russians gained their independence for a time. Napoleon's invasion of Russia, however, withdrew that support, and till 1815 the country again fell under Turkey's tyrannous rule. In that year a war for independence recommenced, and in 1829 the Turks were compelled to grant a virtual independence to Servia. Russia has also aided the mountaineers of Montenegro in maintaining their independence of the Turks. The independence and accessions of territory obtained by these two little States through the Treaty of Berlin 1878 have been already referred to.

44. As if in compensation for the losses of territory sustained in Europe during the last century, and on its northern border in Asia, the limits of the Ottoman Empire in south-western Asia and in Africa have spread out enormously. We have already noticed that the Turks, aided by the British, quickly regained their hold of Egypt. One of the Turkish officers who was sent to Egypt to co-operate with the British against the French invaders was Mehemet Ali, whose military qualities then displayed themselves to such advantage that he was raised first to the command of the Turkish troops in Egypt, and then to the position of viceroy of the country. Mehemet was soon involved in a struggle with the Mamelukes, who had by this time gained such power in Egypt that the Viceroy of the Sultan was merely their nominal ruler. In the end many of them were cruelly massacred at Cairo, and the rest, fleeing up the Nile to Nubia, were pursued thither by Mehemet and utterly exterminated. His son Ibrahim Pasha was engaged during this time in an expedition against the new Mohammedan sect of the Wahabias, who had spread out from the Nejd in central Arabia, and had closed the pilgrim caravan route through Hejaz to Mecca, to the Turks and Persians. This successful undertaking extended the authority of the Porte through Egypt over a large part of Arabia. Along the Nile valley Mehemet Ali next added Kordofan (1821) by conquest to his dominion, and opened up a great traffic in slaves from the Sudan to Egypt.

Thus his position became one of great power and wealth, and his ambition rose in proportion. During the war of Greek independence his fleet was destroyed off *Navarino* by the combined British, French, and Russian navy, and this checked his progress for a few years. The government of the island



of Candia was given to him by the Porte in 1830, but, not satisfied with this, he sent Ibrahim Pasha on an expedition for the conquest of Syria in 1830, the success of which brought the Turkish home government to the brink of ruin. The European powers interfering, Syria was restored to the Porte, but the Pashalic of Egypt was made hereditary in the family of Mehemet Ali.

45. During the occupation of Egypt by Napoleon's troops attention had been drawn to the possibility of re-opening the ancient canal which united the Nile delta with the Red Sea in the time of the Ptolemies, and a careful survey of the isthmus of Suez was then made. From that time onwards plans were continually agitated by French engineers for the construction of a ship canal, which should open a short water-route to the Indies, and in 1856 the concession for such a work was granted to M. de Lesseps. The result was the completion (in 1869) of the greatest engineering enterprise of modern times—the ship canal which unites Port Saïd on the Mediterranean with Suez at the head of the Red Sea, 100 miles in length.

Such an increase of prestige had been gained by Egypt through this and other important works of advancement, that in 1866, by imperial firman, the title of Khedive, or “King” of Egypt, was granted to the late ruler (the fifth of the line of Mehemet Ali), with powers which made him practically an independent prince, yielding homage only to the Porte. The ambition of Ismail Pasha enormously increased the extension of the Egyptian territory. Dar-Fur, to the west of the Nile, was incorporated; Sir Samuel Baker, and later General Gordon, conquered the whole Nile basin up to near the margin of the great lakes; and Harar, with Berbera, and other places, were acquired on the Gulf of Aden.

46. These conquests, no less than a wasteful expenditure in other directions, brought Egypt to the brink of national bankruptcy. The Christian powers persuaded the Sultan to depose Ismail Pasha, and to appoint his son Khedive in his stead. This was in 1879, but already in 1881 the tribes in the Sudan, headed by a Mahdi or prophet, rose upon their Egypto-Turkish governors, whilst in Egypt itself Arabi headed a revolution, with the object of placing the government of the country into the hands of natives of Egypt. It was then that England interfered. Alexandria was bombarded on July 12, 1882, and Arabi's forces crushed in the battle of Tel el Kebir on September 13. Egypt was advised to abandon the Sudan, but only consented to this sacrifice after the Mahdi had annihilated Hicks Pasha's army, at Kashgil, on November 3, 1883. Soon afterwards General Gordon, failing to stem the revolt, died at his post (1885). The Mahdi was succeeded in 1885 by the Khalifa Abdallah, who was overthrown at the battle of Omdurman in 1898, when the Sudan was restored to Egypt and constituted the present Anglo-Egyptian Condominium.

47. Beyond Egypt on the Mediterranean coast-land, Tripoli, with the territories of Barka and Fezzan, remains a province of the Ottoman Empire; but Tunis, still farther west, has virtually become a dependency of France.

48. For many years previous to the opening of the Suez Canal, the Turkish power in Arabia had been allowed to fall into abeyance, the struggle of the Egyptians with the strong nation of the Wahabis having been abandoned about 1849. After the opening of the great highway, however, it became important that these regions should be under settled government, and accordingly, through the influence of France and Britain, active means were taken by the Turkish Government for their recovery in 1871. Between that year and 1873, the whole of the coast-land of the Red Sea was recovered and formed into the two governments of Hejaz and Yemen. The Turks have also wrested the coast-land of the Persian Gulf from the Wahabis, extending their rule from the Euphrates delta to the island of *Bahrein*, and forming this seaboard into the government of “El Hasa.” Thus, the Wahabi kingdom

of the Nejd has been again restricted to the central region of the Arabian peninsula, and the Turkish borders have been extended to meet those of the independent state of Oman, or Muscat, in the south-eastern corner of Arabia.

49 *Muscat*, as we have noticed in a former chapter (page 49), was one of the earliest conquests of the Portuguese, under Albuquerque, after their advance round the Cape of Good Hope into the Indian Seas. It remained in their hands for nearly a century and a half, till it was recovered by the Arabs. When the Portuguese were finally expelled (about 1735) from the northern parts of the East African coast, the Imam of Muscat also took possession of their former settlements about Zanzibar. The greatest extension of native power in this state was obtained during the reign of Said Seid, who reigned in Muscat from 1803 till 1856, extending the Sultanate of Oman not only over the south eastern portions of Arabia, and on the Zanzibar coast of Africa, but to the opposite shores of the Gulf, to *Bunder Abbas* and *Linga* on the Persian coast, and the island of *Ormuz* between. On the death of this ruler his dominion was divided between his sons, the one becoming Sultan of Zanzibar, the other retaining the sovereignty of the Asiatic provinces, which have dwindled in extent. The possessions on the Persian coast were restored to Persia in 1867, while the incursions of the Bedouins from the desert, and of the Wahabis from the Nejd, have again reduced the sultanate of Muscat to the immediate vicinity of its capital.

50. Before passing across to Africa, we must notice the British station of *Aden*, on the south-west Arabian coast, on the route to India. Though exceedingly important from its position at the entrance to the Red Sea, and having on this account been an ancient mart of Asiatic commerce, to which even the Chinese were wont to come, this "Eye of Yemen" is a hot barren volcanic crater that would never have attracted attention or invited residence but for its geographical position. Its situation, however, made it a very desirable vantage point. Not long after it began to be thus coveted, in 1838, a British vessel was shipwrecked off its coast, and the crew being ill-treated and plundered, restitution was forced from the native Arabian sultan, and terms of cession of his territory to Britain were agreed upon. Repenting of his transaction, the chief would have withdrawn his consent, but was held to the bargain by force of arms; since 1839 Aden has become a strong British fortress, and has gathered a population from all quarters of the earth.

51. On the other side of the Red Sea, in Africa, rises the wedge-like plateau of Abyssinia, the top of which, somewhat more extensive in area than the United Kingdom, is occupied by the mixed peoples—primitive Ethiopians, Arabs, Jews, Gallas, and true Negroes—whose name, Abyssinians, from the Arabic *habesh* = "confusion," refers to this variety of origin. The name is not less applicable to the political condition of the country, for it has been the scene of continual struggles for mastery, warfare within and without. Christianity appears to have gained ground here as early as the fourth century, and two centuries later the Abyssinians were powerful enough to invade Arabia and conquer Yemen. The Mohammedan tide of conquest took the coast-land of the Red Sea from Abyssinia. The Portuguese, arriving in the fifteenth century, for a time raised the kingdom to importance, but its later history is of continual changes; one or other of the chieftains of its clans gaining, it may be, the sovereignty over the whole plateau, only to lose it again by fresh revolutions. This condition of affairs was well illustrated in the events which made the British Abyssinian expedition of 1868 a necessity. The chief Theodore having raised himself by conquest from the condition of the leader of a band of robbers to be for a brief period "King of kings of Ethiopia," and failing to be immediately recognised as a rightful sovereign by European powers, imprisoned and held captive the few British subjects and foreign

missionaries who happened to be in the country. All peaceable efforts for their release having failed, a British force landed at Annesley Bay, near *Massowa*, on the Red Sea, and passed in an arduous march along the high eastern edge of the table-land towards the fortress of *Magdala*, whither Theodore had retreated. He now surrendered his prisoners ; but his personal surrender was required. *Magdala* was stormed, and Theodore fell by his own hand (1868).

52. Since then Abyssinia has again been the scene of contests between rivals for supreme power ; but in the end King John, of Tigre, was acknowledged king of kings. After his death (1889) Menelik, King of Shoa, acquired the overlordship and removed the imperial capital to Addis Abeba in the extreme south. He has extended his sway over Gallaland and a great part of Somaliland, and maintained his independence against the claims to a protectorate made by the Italians, who were defeated with great slaughter at the battle of Adowa in 1896. They have, however, retained their colony of *Eritrea*, with its capital *Massowa*, and a large section of Somaliland. The rest of Somaliland has been occupied by the English along the north coast (*Zeila*, *Bulhar*, *Berbera*), and by the French in the north-west (*Obok*, *Tajura Bay*, *Jibutil*).

53. The *Suaheli*, or Zanzibar coast, farther south, is, as we have already seen, in the hands of Arabs from Oman, though the power of the Sultan is now virtually confined to the two islands of Zanzibar and Pemba, his territory on the mainland having passed into the hands of the English and Germans. The Sultan, however, is still the tutelar sovereign of the British East Africa Protectorate up to ten miles inland. But since 1890, when he accepted the British protectorate, he has become little more than a British pensioner with a privy purse limited to about £25,000. Facing Zanzibar lies *German East Africa*, which was occupied in 1884 and now extends inland to Lakes Nyassa, Tanganyika, and Victoria, with area 384,000 square miles, coast-line 620 miles, and population (1906) 6,700,000. Southwards follows *Portuguese East Africa*, between Cape Delgado and Delagoa Bay, with three districts (*Mozambique*, *Zambezia*, and *Lourenzo Marquez*), with area 294,000 square miles, and population (1906) 3,120,000.

54. Still farther on we come upon the regions of South Africa which have passed under British rule—the Cape Colony, Natal, and dependencies. The British gained final possession of the Cape Colony in 1806, after the fleet had been sent out to aid the Prince of Orange in recovering the possession for the Dutch from the settlers, who, influenced by the revolutionary ideas then spreading in Europe, had rebelled against the mother country, and after the Batavian Republic had come under Napoleon's power. At this time the territory did not exceed a third of its present area ; for the colonists had not spread beyond the Hottentot country, nor as far as the Fish River in the east, nor beyond the Great Karroo, the central mountain range. The Treaty of Paris in 1815 gave Britain formal possession. Before this the "Boers," or peasant farmers of the colony, extending eastward, had come in contact with the warlike Kafir tribes beyond the Fish River, and had fought the great Kafir war of 1811. The Kafirs invaded the territory west of the Fish River in 1818 ; but they were unable to stand against the guns with which the colonists were armed ; this second war terminated in the annexation of a large slice of their territory. A third Kafir invasion, in 1830, had the same result, the invaders being driven back, and more of their territory—this time as far as the Kei River—being added to the colony. The emancipation of slaves throughout all the British dominions in 1833 had the effect, in the Cape Colony, of increasing the already existing dissatisfaction of the Dutch Boers with British rule, to such an extent that many thousands of them left

the Cape Colony, marching with all their belongings northward across the Orange River and the Drakenberg mountains; one section of them founding what is now the colony of Natal, another the Orange State, and a third settling in the Transvaal; while a body of the Griquas or "Bastards," a race sprung from the intercourse of the Boers with their Hottentot slaves, settled themselves in the neighbourhood of the confluence of the Orange and Vaal rivers. A fourth great Kafir war, in 1846, terminated as before in the farther extension of the colonial limits, which were now declared to be the Orange River on the north, and "British Kafiraria," the space between the Kei and Keiskama River on the east, occupied at first by the Kafir tribes who had been dispossessed of their lands to the westward by the colonists. Still a fifth Kafir war broke out in 1857, and a sixth in 1863, after which British Kafiraria was finally incorporated with the colony. In 1868 the Basutos, or mountain Bechnanas, who occupy the hill country at the head of the Orange River, were proclaimed British subjects. A grand discovery of the presence of diamonds was made in the country near the junction of the Vaal and Orange rivers in 1867, the country to which the Griquas had emigrated in 1833, and thither rushed thousands from all parts of the world. In 1871 this diamondiferous district was annexed to Cape Colony as Griqualand West. Since then South Bechnanaland has been incorporated with Cape Colony, and a protectorate proclaimed over North Bechnanaland up to the Zambesi. At the same time the vast region between the Limpopo and Lake Tanganyika has been organised partly under the Chartered South Africa Company (South, North-west, and North-east Rhodesia), partly as a protectorate (Barotseland), and partly as a separate colony (British East Central Africa, i.e. the *British Nyasaland Protectorate*, as renamed in 1907).

55. Since 1870 the limits of the Cape Colony have been expanded eastwards by the peaceful submission of a number of the chiefs and tribes of formerly independent Kafiraria to British rule. What may be called a seventh Kafir war, in 1877, resulted in the incorporation of further territories with the colony, and since then the rest of the coast as far as Natal has been proclaimed British territory.

56. Natal was first brought under European influence by the migrating Boers from the Cape Colony in 1838, but they had scarcely entered it when their main body was set upon and massacred by the Zulu Kafirs at a place which bears the significant name of Weenen ("weeping") to this day. A war of retaliation began, and led to the interference of the British Governor of Cape Colony, after a brave struggle the Boers were overcome, the country being proclaimed British in 1843, and in 1856 erected into a special colony.

57. The Orange State, in the interior, immediately north of the Orange river, was also settled by the Boers from the Cape, and fell to the British at the same time as Natal, when it became known as the Orange River Sovereignty. But in 1854 it recovered its independence, and continued to enjoy full autonomy as the Orange Free State till 1900, when it was re-occupied by the English as the Orange River Colony, in consequence of its participation in the Boer invasion of British territory in 1899. In 1907 representative government was restored under the British Crown.

58. The new republic founded in the Transvaal by the Boer trekkers about 1836 continued to prosper till about 1876, when conflicts took place with the Zulu Kafirs on its eastern limits, especially in the district of Lydenburg, where rich goldfields had been discovered; the Boers were defeated by the now well-armed Kafirs, and disorders in the financial government of the State brought it into a condition of hopeless anarchy and to the verge of ruin.

At this crisis, and to avert the impending invasion of the State by the powerful Kafir chiefs on its eastern borders, the British intervened; and in



1877 the Transvaal was annexed. But the Boers again rose, and in 1881 the "South African Republic" was acknowledged, with reservations. Then the Jameson Raid, the discovery of gold, and the harsh treatment of the British "outlanders" led to the South African war of 1899-1902, resulting in the annexation of the two Boer States. Both however were granted representative government in 1906-07.

59. On the Atlantic seaboard we next come to the unproductive districts of Great Namaqualand and Damaraland, inhabited the former by Nama Hottentots, the latter by Ova-Herero Bantus. These districts were provisionally annexed to Cape Colony in 1878, but afterwards abandoned, all but Walfish Bay. In 1884 the whole region was occupied by Germany, and now forms the colony of *German South-West Africa*.

From the Cunene, separating them from German territory, the Portuguese West African possessions extend for over 1000 miles along the coast to and beyond the Lower Congo, and are now conterminous in the north with French Congo and the Congo Free State, and in the interior with the Free State and with British South Africa. They comprise the six administrative districts of Congo, Loanda (Angola), Benguella, Mossamedes, Huitla, and Lunda. *Angola*, as *Portuguese West Africa* is officially called, has a collective area of 485,000 square miles and a population of over 4,000,000. There is a railway running from Loanda, the capital on the coast, for 278 miles to and beyond Ambacca in the interior.

60. The Congo International Association, founded in 1882 by Leopold, King of the Belgians, was recognised by the Berlin Congress of 1885 as the Congo Free State, and placed under King Leopold, who in 1889 bequeathed all his rights to Belgium. He is represented by a governor-general who administers the territory in accordance with his orders. The State comprises most of the Congo basin, with an area of 900,000 square miles and an estimated population of 30,000,000, mainly exploited in the interests of the king and of trading companies responsible to him. There are fourteen administrative districts, 300 miles of railway, numerous steamers on the navigable waters, and a large army, mostly cannibals, chiefly employed in the forced collection of ivory, rubber, and other local produce. *French Congo* occupies nearly all the seaboard between the Free State and the *German Kameruns*, and stretches inland to the Ubanghi and thence north to Lake Chad, with area 680,000 square miles and population (1907) 10,000,000. The German colony, founded in 1884 and lying between French Congo and British Nigeria, extends from the Kameruns through Adamawa to Lake Chad, with area 191,000 square miles and population (1905) 3,500,000.

61. Of the high volcanic islands in the Gulf of Guinea, two, Princes Island and St. Thomas, have belonged to Portugal since their discovery; the other two, Annobom and Fernando Po, the largest have been given over to Spain.

62. *Lagos*, formerly the chief centre of the slave traffic, was captured by the English in 1851, and permanently occupied in 1861. Since then the Yoruba hinterland has been added, together with most of Central Sudan between the Lower Niger and Lake Chad, bordering north on French Sudan and south on the German Kameruns. The whole region, previously administered by the *Royal Niger Company*, came under direct imperial control in 1900, and is now consolidated as *Northern and Southern Nigeria*, with total area 310,000 square miles and population estimated in 1906 at 25,000,000. Sokoto, capital of the late Mohammedan Fulah empire, was captured in 1902, and in 1906 the old colony of Lagos was included in Southern Nigeria, as the ancient kingdom of Bornu was in Northern Nigeria.

63. After the discovery of the Gold Coast the Portuguese founded (1481)

the fort of *El Mina*, "the mine," which with their other settlements fell to the Dutch in 1641. The British first formed trading stations here in 1667, and were followed by the Danes and Brandenburgers. At the back of these colonies the native kingdom of Ashantee rose to power in the eighteenth century. In the course of their conquest of the Fantee tribes near the coast, the Ashantees first came in contact with the British in 1807, becoming involved in a war which lasted till 1826, when they were driven inland. The Danish settlements were acquired by purchase in 1850, and those of the Dutch in 1872, when the entire coast remained in British hands. In two subsequent wars the Ashantees were completely reduced, and their capital, Coamassie, permanently occupied in 1901. The neighbouring kingdom of *Dahomey* had been conquered by the French in 1893, and in 1884 the Germans occupied the little district of *Togoland* (33,000 square miles), between Dahomey and the British Crown Colony of the Gold Coast.

64. In 1883 the French occupied the Ivory Coast between the Gold Coast and Cape Palmas, beyond which follows the negro republic of *Liberia*. When the presence of freed slaves in America had begun to be found an incubus, a committee of philanthropists was formed in America in 1816, with the object of founding a colony for freed negroes, and giving them an opportunity of self-improvement. In 1822 a compact was made with some of the native chiefs of the Pepper or Grain Coast of Upper Guinea for the acquirement of a tract of land; thither the emancipated negroes were sent, and were expected to till the soil, and collect the palm oil with which the country abounds. A settlement was first formed at Cape Mesurado and named *Monrovia*, and the new colony was styled Liberia, the land of the freed. New settlements were founded, other tracts of land purchased, and in 1847 the colony proclaimed itself an independent republic, adopting a constitution in imitation of that of the United States. Some years later an adjoining colony at Cape Palmas, named Maryland, was incorporated. The state, however, has not realised the ardent expectations formed of it; the American "civilised" negroes, few in number comparatively, seem for the most part to have relapsed into indolence—the stamp of the republic being generally that of a caricature of its model; though it has established a very considerable trade with Europe and America. Area 45,000 square miles; population (1907) 2,000,000.

65. On the north-western border of Liberia lies the British settlement of the peninsula of *Sierra Leone*, or the "Lion Hill," the origin of which in 1787 we have already referred to. In 1808 it was made into a colony, and used as a refuge at which the slaves captured by the British cruisers along the coast were debarked. In 1875 Gambia, founded in 1806, was attached to Sierra Leone, but in 1888 again erected into a separate colony. Passing over a few isolated French and Portuguese settlements which lie between these two detached British possessions, we come to the old West African settlement of the French, between the Gambia and the Senegal rivers.

66. The French arrived on this coast about 1650; their "Senegal Company" dates from 1685, and since about 1880 *French West Africa*, as the colony is officially called, has acquired an enormous development. It now comprises the whole region between the Atlantic and the Upper Niger, with most of the great bend, Timbuktu (occupied 1894), the Ivory Coast, Dahomey, and the tracts lying between the Niger and Lake Chad north of British Nigeria, besides the Western Sahara. There are five great administrative divisions, with total area 2,830,000 square miles and population (1905) 15,273,000.

67. Off the coast lie the *Cape de Verd Islands* and the *Canary group*. The former, after their discovery in 1460 by the Venetian Ca da Mosto, were taken possession of by the Portuguese, but remained a private property till 1692.

when they passed to the Portuguese crown, and with the settlements on the opposite continental coast form the "Province of Cape Verd." The Canaries have been Spanish since the end of the fifteenth century, but Madeira has remained from that time in the hands of the Portuguese, except during its occupation by the British from 1807 till 1814. Madeira, which with the neighbouring islets of Porto Santo and the rocky Desertas, has an area of 370 square miles and a population (1900) of 150,000, lies 560 miles from Lisbon and 430 from Cape Cantin, the nearest point on the Morocco coast. Before the discovery it had never been occupied by man, so that most of its inhabitants are the descendants of the early Portuguese settlers. The surface is mountainous, being traversed in its entire length by an elevated range at a mean height of 4000 feet, and culminating in the Pico Ruivo (6100). Its mild and salubrious climate combined with its picturesque scenery makes Madeira a favourite health resort, especially for invalids from Great Britain. Funchal, the capital on the south coast, has a mean annual temperature of 65° F., ranging from 60° in winter to about 72° in summer, is pleasantly situated at the foot of these hills, and has steamer communication with Lisbon and Liverpool.

68. Owing to chronic internal disorders and pressure from without, Morocco has almost ceased to be an independent State, and seems kept together mainly by the jealousy of rival European powers. An international congress held at Algeciras in 1906 entrusted the maintenance of order on the seaboard to France and Spain. But since then the massacre of Europeans in the capital and on the coast has called for the active intervention of these two powers, and the occupation of Ujdah by the French. The situation is aggravated by the revolt of Raisuli and other powerful chiefs, and by the appearance (1907) of a rival to the throne of the reigning Sultan.

69. In completing the circuit of the continent we come to Algeria, which we left in the last chapter in the hands of the "nation of corsairs," who by their piracies had so often drawn upon themselves the vengeance of the maritime powers of Europe. While Napoleonic wars were in progress the presence of strong fleets in the Mediterranean kept them in harbour, but at the close of the wars their raids began as vigorously as ever. The Americans this time took the lead, and after defeating the Algerian fleet off *Carthagen* (1815), compelled the Dey to respect the American flag; then the British and Dutch fleets furiously bombarded Algiers, and rescued the Christians who had been detained there, but still next year (1817) the corsairs were as busy as ever, and now ventured to extend their piracies even to the North Sea. Between this time and 1823 French ships suffered severely, and in consequence of one of the disputes that arose the Dey wrote an angry letter to the King of France: to this no reply was sent, and the Dey, summoning the French consul, asked why his master remained silent. To this the consul is reported to have replied that a King of France could not condescend to correspond with a Dey of Algiers, on which the Dey struck the consul and roundly abused the king. This insult brought a French squadron to Algiers in 1827, and for three years a blockade of the coast was maintained. In 1830 40,000 men effected a landing, Algiers was again bombarded, and capitulated on the 6th of July. From this time forward till 1857 the arduous task of the conquest of Algeria was in progress. Seven years of fighting were required to master the coast-land, and the towns which lie along it. The Tell country, or fertile slope of the mountains facing the Mediterranean, was not brought under French rule till 1845; from that time till 1847 the battle was waged along the Moroccan frontier, and then eastward towards Tunis. Between 1857 and 1859 the contest was carried inland over the high plateaus and down into the Algerian Sahara beyond. Until 1864 sanguinary conflicts were constantly occurring with the Kabyles or Berbers of the mountains, descendants of the

fiery Numidians. The great enemy of the French in this conflict was Abd-el-Kader, the brave leader of the Arab tribes of Oran, who had seized the opportunity of the downfall of the Turkish Day at Algiers to make themselves independent, and who in their later struggles against the French were aided by the Sultan of Morocco. The capture of Abd el Kader in 1847, after he had troubled the French for fifteen years, was one of the most important points of the conquest. The arduous character of the struggle for this possession may be estimated when it is known that the French troops had at times to be raised to a strength of 100,000 men, and that a sum of 120 millions of pounds sterling was spent in military operations. Till 1871 the country remained under strict military rule, and it was not till that time that a civil administration in the provinces of Oran, Algiers, and Constantine could be safely organised. The acquisition of Tunis, in 1881, has already been noticed.

70. Having thus completed a rapid survey of the possessions which lie round the margins of Africa, we may now glance at one or two of the more prominent of the discoveries which have been made within the vast continent by the host of European explorers who have been besieging its hidden regions from all sides during this century. Among the earliest travellers of this period were the Englishmen Clapperton, Oudney, and Denham, who started from *Tripoli*, and after crossing the Great Desert, first reached the state of Bornu, in the Sudan, and saw the great shallow Lake Chad. In 1826, Major Laing first reached the famed city of *Timbuktu*, which had been known by report to Europeans since the fourteenth century, paying for his hardly-won knowledge by his life. Then the Frenchman Caillié brought back an account of this great centre of commerce; and the German, Heinrich Barth, returned from his six years of travel to and fro in the Sudan (1819-55). It was not till after these arduous journeys that any distinct conception could be formed of the political condition of the great fertile belt of central Africa which lies south of the barrier of the vast Sahara. Then came to light the great series of Mohammedan states which lie between Dar Fār on the east and Senegambia on the west—Wadai, Bornu, and the Fellatah states of central Sudan.

71. The powerful state of Bornu, in which the descendants of Arabs are the ruling race over the far more numerous negro inhabitants, had its first Moslem ruler as early as 1086, and seems to have reached the zenith of its power in the twelfth century, when its limits extended over Fezzan on the north.

72. The states lying westward—Sokoto, Gando, Masena—with many minor ones, owe their foundation to the Fulahs or Fellatahs, who appear to have been converted to Mohammedanism as lately as the middle of the eighteenth century, and who have been extending their religious wars of conquest eastward over the Niger basin since 1802, and long continued to spread their influence farther into the pagan domain of central Negroland.

73. Among the many notable points in the progress of South African discovery, it may suffice to recall here the first crossing of the continent by Livingstone, and his exploration of the course of the great river Zambesi in 1854-55; the discovery of the snowy mountains of the eastern equatorial zone by the missionaries Rebmann and Krapf in 1849, and the news they gathered on their travels of the vast lakes in the interior; Captain Burton's discovery of the Tanganyika Lake, and Speke's first view of the Ukerawe, or Victoria Nyanza, in 1858; Speke and Grant's subsequent exploration of the Victoria Lake, an expanse of water nearly as large as Scotland, and their discovery that the Nile flowed from its northern shores; Livingstone's arrival at the Nyassa in 1859; Sir Samuel Baker's discovery of the Albert Lake in 1864; the exploration of the lake chain of the Lualaba by Livingstone in 1866-70; Commander Cameron's journey across the equatorial region from Indian Ocean to Atlantic in 1874-75, and Stanley's brave voyage down the Congo in 1876-77.



74. The geographical conquest of the continent has been all but completed by the later explorations of Junker about the Nile-Congo divide ; of Böttger, Donaldson Smith, Butter, Maud, Harrison, and others in Somaliland and amongst the romantic lakes between Abyssinia and Lake Rudolf ; of Wellby, Crosby, Austin, and Macmillan between Rudolf and the White Nile ; of Dybowski, Maistre, Lenfant, and Chevalier about the Congo-Chad water-parting ; and by Foureau, Gautier, Laperrine, Thiévenant, and Hans Vischer in the Sahara, all during the decade ending in 1906. The political conquest has proceeded with equal rapidity, and by 1908 the whole of Africa, except Abyssinia, Liberia, and Morocco, had been distributed amongst eight European powers — Britain, France, Germany, Spain, Portugal, Italy, Belgium, and Turkey.

75. The physiography of the land is now thoroughly understood. The great divides between the northern and the southern sections have been crossed and re-crossed, and the hydrographic systems of the four main arteries — Nile, Congo, Niger, and Zambesi — clearly defined. Even the Sahara has been crossed in various directions, and Bilma, one of the chief strategical points permanently occupied by the French. But the great desert has not yet been traversed in its entire length either from west to east or from east to west.

Coming now to America, we may rapidly survey the political changes that have taken place in that region since the beginning of the last century.

76. At that time England was at war with Spain, the ally of France, and, owing to the open disaffection of the colonists of La Plata, had some hopes of acquiring that region, which had already become the most considerable mart of Spanish America, and whither the steady tide of immigration from all parts of Europe was setting. In the year 1806, accordingly, a British squadron of five vessels entered the La Plata, took *Maldonado*, on the north coast of the inlet, and advanced upon the city of *Buenos Ayres*, which capitulated at once. The triumph, however was of brief duration, for the people soon rallied and compelled the British to retreat to Maldonado again. Next year *Monte Video* was carried by assault, but a second attempt to gain Buenos Ayres was a complete failure ; and a convention was entered into by which the British abandoned La Plata.

The Spanish American colonists thus gained a knowledge of their strength in repelling a force stronger than that of their rulers ; for a time they had remained faithful to Spain, but disaffection showed itself unmistakably when the French under Napoleon had occupied Spain, and when the Bourbons were dethroned by him in 1808. An agent of Napoleon was then sent out to induce the colonists to swear fealty to Joseph Bonaparte, but was put under arrest for his pains. A claim made by the Prince Regent of Portugal was likewise rejected for several years. Under a provisional government, the people of the La Plata were divided in opinion, some desiring a monarchy, others a new organisation and independence.

77. Paraguay was the first to assert her right to self-government, having become not only free from the authority of Spain, but independent also of the other states of La Plata, as early as 1811. On the other extreme limit of Spanish America, in Mexico, the discontent which had been gaining ground against the viceregal government during Napoleon's wars in the Peninsula broke out in open rebellion ; Chile in the south now also began the war for independence. The patriots of the Captain-Generalship of Caracas or Venezuela, under the leadership of the famous Simon Bolivar, claimed independence

in 1810, but the country was restored for two years more to its allegiance. In 1813, however, Bolivar entered Caracas as conqueror, and was hailed as liberator of Venezuela. In 1816, an assembly of representatives from all the provinces of the La Plata met at Tucuman, where a declaration of independence was drawn up. Four governments were formed from the former viceroyalties of Buenos Ayres, Paraguay, Alto Peru or Bolivia, the Banda Oriental (eastern side of the Uruguay river) or Uruguay, and the united provinces of La Plata. The victories of *Tupa* and *Boyaca* released New Granada and Ecuador, and in 1819 the republic of Colombia was declared. The battle of *Maypu* achieved the independence of Chile in 1818; that of *Ayacucho*, the freedom of Upper Peru, now called Bolivia in honour of the liberator. The republic of Colombia also became independent of the mother country in 1819, and the three states composing it remained in union till 1830. Mexico finally established its freedom in 1824. Peru, the first formed viceroyalty in South America, was the last to set up the standard of independence; it remained completely in the hands of Spain till 1820, but then, aided by patriots from Chile and by English volunteers, it quickly gained its independence. Before 1823, the Central American States had also thrown off the rule of Spain and formed themselves into a federal republic, composed of the states of Guatemala, Nicaragua, Honduras, Salvador, and Costa Rica—a confederation which held together till 1839.

Thus before 1825 all the vast continental possessions of Spanish America were separated from the mother country and divided into a number of separate republics, in too many of which a continual round of revolutions forms the sum of their subsequent history.

78. We have already remarked, in noticing events in Portugal, that under the threat of Napoleon's invasion the royal family transferred itself thence to Brazil in 1807; the seat of government of Portugal was for the time transferred to Rio de Janeiro. After the combined efforts of the British and Portuguese had freed Portugal from the French, on the death of Queen Maria in 1810, the Regent succeeded to the joint crowns of Portugal and Brazil. The continued residence of the new king at Rio de Janeiro, however, gave rise to discontent at home, and ultimately to the revolution of 1820 at Lisbon, and to the proclamation of a constitutional form of government there. Brazil, on shaking off the imperial yoke like its neighbours, found a merely nominal revolution sufficient, and accepted a hereditary monarchy instead of a restless republican system, its independence being ratified by King João, and its government placed in the hands of Dom Pedro his son—an arrangement which lasted till 1889, when Brazil became a republic.

79. Of all the vast extent of Spanish America there remain now under the government of the mother country only the islands of Cuba and Puerto Rico in the West Indies. The misgovernment of the former, and the exclusion of the native-born Creole element from all offices and emoluments, drove that island into rebellion, resulting in the conquest of both islands by the United States in the Spanish-American war of 1898.

80. The island of Hayti or Hispaniola, lying between Cuba and Puerto Rico, and nearly as large as Scotland, has had a remarkably disturbed history. On its shores the first settlement of Spanish America was placed by Columbus, and after the aboriginal Indians had been swept away it became one of the earliest fields of negro slavery. During the seventeenth century the buccaneers and filibusters of the Caribbean Seas made its western harbours their great haunt, and, as they were chiefly French, this part of the island was ceded to France by the peace of Ryswick in 1697. For nearly a century the buccaneers imported great numbers of Africans; an intermediate race of mulattoes sprang up, and soon the mutual antipathies of these three

colours gave rise to the terrible internecine struggle of 1791, which ended in the extermination of the once dominant Europeans.

In 1801 a fruitless effort was made by France to recover this dependency. For a time a negro named Dessalines was "Emperor of Hayti," after which revolution on revolution changed the political condition to and fro from republic to monarchy or despotism. In 1843 the inhabitants of the eastern or Spanish portion of Hayti formed themselves into the Dominican Republic, which during 1861-65 placed itself under the authority of Spain, but in the latter year again proclaimed the republic and expelled the Spanish troops.

81. Returning to the mainland of North America, some important points must be noted in the history of Mexico after its rise to independence. After Louisiana had been purchased from the French by the United States in 1803, the territory of Texas, lying between that and Mexico, became a debateable land, claimed alike by Spain and by the United States; till 1837 Texas was the scene of continual disturbances brought about by the attempts of the Americans to wrest the country from the Mexicans, the warlike native Apache and Comanche Indians keeping up the unsettled condition of the land. In 1837 however, after an unsuccessful Mexican invasion, Texas became for a few years an independent republic, which in 1845 was annexed to the United States. As Mexico had never recognised the independence of Texas, this annexation gave rise to a war with the United States; hostilities were carried on for three years, and the city of Mexico was stormed and taken.

During a series of revolutions between 1850 and 1860, such wanton aggressions were committed against foreign residents in Mexico as to provoke the interference of European powers, and in April 1862 the French Emperor declared war against the republic. In June of the following year the French troops entered the capital, a provisional monarchy was set up, and the crown was accepted by the ill-fated archduke Ferdinand Maximilian of Austria. The repugnance of the United States to the establishment of an empire on its borders led to the removal of the French troops, when the republicans immediately rose to arms, defeated the Imperialists, and Maximilian, betrayed into their hands, was executed in 1867. After this the republican constitution of 1857 again came into operation.

82. The marvellous changes which have been brought about in the North American continent by the expansion of the Republic of the United States now claim attention, as they have no parallel in the history of the globe. At the beginning of the last century four states had been added to the original thirteen which lay along the Atlantic slope of the Alleghany mountains; now the territory of the United States reaches across from Atlantic to Pacific. In 1800 the States already had a population of 6 millions, which in 1908 had increased to nearly 87 millions. The continent was crossed for the first time by Alexander Mackenzie in 1793, and again by Lewis and Clarke in 1804; yet a railway had already been opened from ocean to ocean in 1869. The interior was still roamed by the natives at the beginning of the last century; now but few survive, interesting because disappearing or becoming incorporated with the stronger race.

A few leading points in the history of the development of the United States may be recalled.

83. On the death of the first president, the seat of government of the Republic was removed in 1800 to the city on the Potomac which he had planned for the capital, and which bears his name of *Washington*. Three years after this the area of the territory of the United States was more than doubled by the acquisition of Louisiana. During Napoleon's wars the debated right of search of American vessels for British-born subjects to be impressed

into the naval service, gave rise to disputes and then to a war, in which Canada was invaded from the United States, and Washington city was taken (1814) by the British fleet. Peace once more restored, the rapid tide of European immigration required the formation of seven new states within the first twenty years of the century.<sup>1</sup> The peninsula of Florida also was ceded by Spain, in 1812. Before this time slavery had been gradually abolished in the northern and middle States, but was retained in the purely agricultural States of the south. Two sections were thus formed in the Republic.

84. The war with Mexico for the possession of Texas has been previously referred to. Just before the treaty which concluded it, after the occupation of the capital city of Mexico by the American troops, the discovery of gold was made in Upper California, an event which was to work the most marvellously rapid change in the condition of all Western America. The Mexican treaty, concluded immediately after, added New Mexico and Upper California to the United States; men rushed thither from all parts of the world, *San Francisco* rose as if by magic to become the great mart of the Pacific coast, and only three years after the discovery of the precious metal gold was exported thence to the value of nine millions sterling. California having been raised to the condition of a State, the country inland, between it and the states already formed east of the Mississippi, was rapidly explored and incorporated.

85. In 1854 the attempt to introduce slavery into the central territory of Kansas led to the first active outbreak of the storm which had been brewing between the slave-party and the friends of free labour in the United States, and after a violent contest the latter prevailed.

At the presidential election of 1860 the northern or abolition party and the southern slaveholders were formally arrayed in opposition in Congress, and the Southern States being outvoted at once began to withdraw from the union. The legislature of South Carolina was the first to dissolve its union. Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Georgia, Louisiana, and Texas followed at once, and a year later North Carolina, Virginia, Tennessee, and Arkansas joined them: Kentucky and Missouri were divided between the Northern and Southern inclinations. For the capital of the Southern or rebel government *Richmond* in Virginia was chosen, and the contest between the Northerners or Federals and the Southerners or Confederates began with the battle of *Bull Run*, near the Potomac river, in July 1861. In the four years' war which ensued, the decisive victory of the Federals at *Chattanooga* in Tennessee, and the capture of *Vicksburg* on the Mississippi, nearly at the same time in 1863, may be said to have been the great turning points of the war, as they re-opened the highway of the great river from its mouth upward, and divided the Confederate States into two portions. The great battle of *Petersburg* in April 1865, by which the evacuation of Richmond was necessitated, brought the great rebellion to a close. In 1866 all the seceded states were restored to the union, and slavery ceased to exist in the United States.

86. The remote north-western provinces of America, discovered by Bering on his voyage from Siberia, remained in the hands of the Imperial Russian Fur Trading Company, as a vast hunting ground, from 1799 till 1867. In that year the territory was purchased from Russia by the United States, and has since taken the title of the *Alaska* territory.

At the present time the Union consists of 43 states and 4 territories, each of which is represented according to its population in the Congress of the Union, but is independent in the management of its internal and local affairs.

---

<sup>1</sup> Ohio 1802, Louisiana 1812, Indiana 1816, Mississippi 1817, Illinois 1818, Alabama 1819, Maine 1820.

87. We now come to British North America. By the treaty of Utrecht in 1713, which ended the ten years' conflict of the wars of the Spanish succession, the French possessions on the eastern coasts of North America known as Acadia passed into the hands of Britain. New Brunswick and Nova Scotia were not formally settled as colonies by the British till the middle of the eighteenth century, when the French, who with the native Indians had kept up hostilities against the new comers, were finally expelled or reduced to submission.

Newfoundland, on the coasts of which the French still hold the privileges of the cod-fishery, obtained a government of its own in 1728, and Labrador has been included in its administration since 1809. Prince Edward Island, adjoining New Brunswick and Nova Scotia, though settled in 1745, was not finally annexed to Britain till 1763. It takes its name from Edward, Duke of Kent, commander of the British forces in America at the end of the eighteenth century.

88. The conquest of Canada in 1759-60 has already been noted. After the territory had been restricted to its present limits north of the great lakes and the 49th parallel of latitude by the cession of the six sovereign states of Minnesota, Wisconsin, Michigan, Ohio, Indiana, and Illinois to the United States, it was divided in 1791 for a time into two separate provinces; the eastern one, or Lower Canada, with a larger proportion of French inhabitants, retained its national institutions, and the western province, or Upper Canada, became the English section of the land. Dissensions between these differently constituted provinces increased in malignity, till in 1837 armed insurrections broke out, which were only suppressed after martial law had been proclaimed; the result of the movement being the union of the provinces under one government in 1841.

89. The whole unoccupied territory west of the Rocky Mountains called Oregon (as far as the 55th degree of N. latitude) was claimed equally by Britain and by the United States, and by a treaty made in 1818, and renewed in 1827, it was agreed that this region should be considered joint property. Its increasing importance, however, made it necessary to have some definite line of division, and in 1846 a compromise was made by which Britain held all the land north of the 49th parallel, the United States all south of that line.

90. Vancouver Island, which the Hudson's Bay Company had been accustomed to visit regularly for the furs provided by its native Indians, was brought prominently into notice by this boundary question, and was granted in 1849 to the Company, under the express condition of colonising it. At this time the territory of the Pacific side of the continent north of the 49th parallel was still a part of the hunting grounds of the Hudson's Bay Company. The discovery of gold here in 1857, as in California farther south, drew crowds of adventurers to its shores, and when the monopoly of the Company ceased in 1858, the territory was named British Columbia, and was raised to the rank of a colony.

91. The question of the union of the various British American provinces now began to be discussed, and found favour from the obvious advantages that the plan would confer. It was not till 1867, however, that an Act of Imperial Parliament was passed uniting federally the separate provinces of Canada, Nova Scotia, and New Brunswick, into one Dominion under the name of Canada, with a constitution modelled on that of the United Kingdom. Subsequently the Dominion has been extended over the North-West Territory (the Hudson's Bay Company's territory and Rupert's Land), which was acquired by purchase in 1869. From this territory the small province of Manitoba, embracing the basin of the Red River next the United States boundary, was formed in 1870. In 1871 British Columbia and Vancouver

Island also joined the Dominion ; Prince Edward Island was added in 1873 ; so that at present Newfoundland alone holds out independently from the rest of the group now included in the Dominion of Canada.

92. Scarcely less wonderful than the rapid development of the Republic of the United States of America has been that of the Australian colonies of Great Britain. Though Cook had sailed along the greater part of the eastern shores of New Holland, and a British colony had been established at Botany Bay in 1788, so little was known even of the coast-line of the new continent that it was not until within two years of the close of the eighteenth century that Dr. Bass, in H.M.S. 'Reliance,' established the fact that Van Diemen's Land (Tasmania) was really separated from the mainland by a strait 150 miles in width. During the year 1803 a vessel carrying a party of convicts and a small armed guard was sent out from England to form another station, like that of Botany Bay, on the shores of Bass's Strait. This party landed at *Port Philip* (the site of the present city of Melbourne) but considering the country too sterile left the place and crossed the strait to Van Diemen's Land, and formed a camp at *Sullivan's Cove*, where the little settlement struggled through its first years in resisting the attacks of the aborigines. In 1825 another convict station was placed at *Moreton Bay*, on the north of the New South Wales coast, and West Australia was first occupied in 1826, the *Swan River* being chosen as the point of settlement. Port Philip, after the first cursory visit to it, does not appear to have attracted attention again till 1835, when a stockowner bartered a quantity of cloth with the natives there for a large tract of land ; his schooner arriving in the mouth of the Yarra Yarra (a stream flowing into Port Philip) was moored to the trees on its banks where the wharves of Melbourne now stand.

93. In 1825, when the settlers in Van Diemen's Land numbered about 3000, Tasmania was raised to be a separate colony, and ten years later was under the governorship of Sir John Franklin, of Arctic fame, under whom it made great progress. South Australia was unoccupied till 1836, when a party of 200 colonists landed and began a settlement at the site of the present city of *Adelaide*. The Swan River Settlement on the west coast had not prospered greatly before 1850, at which date, by petition of the colonists, it received the convicts who were now refused by New South Wales, and between that time and 1868, when the transportation ceased, about 10,000 prisoners were added to its little population.

94. A grand event in the history of Australia was the discovery of gold in the Port Philip district of New South Wales in 1850, causing the whole settlement to become "drunk with gold ;" drawing men of all avocations—merchants, sailors, tradesmen—from all parts of the world to the diggings. Up to this time the Port Philip district had been but an appanage of New South Wales ; now it was created into the independent colony of *Victoria*, which developed its roads, railways, and manufactures with astonishing rapidity.

From New South Wales, on the northern side, the Moreton Bay district was separated in 1859, to form the colony of *Queensland*.

95. As yet the interior of the continent was all but unknown, though explorers were every year lifting the borders of the veil which covered it. Most prominent of all in the long list of Australian pioneers stands M'Donnell Stuart, who after many attempts succeeded in crossing the continent from South Australia to its northern shores in 1862. In consequence of the favourable report given by Stuart, the South Australian government determined to attempt the colonisation of the northern territory, which was then added to its existing limits. The experiment was not successful, but within ten years of Stuart's exploring march a line of electric telegraph had been set up all along the route that he followed from sea to sea, uniting



South Australia with the Asiatic and European system of communication. From a few hundreds dotted about at various convict stations along the coasts the population of the five divisions of Australia rose in 1906 to upwards of four millions ; explorers have investigated the interior in all directions ; the large cities of *Sydney*, *Melbourne*, and *Adelaide* have arisen, and settlements extend far inland on all sides excepting the northern seaboard. In 1901 the several states became federated as *The Commonwealth of Australia* (p. 456).

96. No European is known to have resided in New Zealand before 1814, and no attempt at colonisation was made until 1839, when a patch of land at *Port Nicholson*, in Cook Strait, was bought from the natives for the first party of settlers, by a number of gentlemen who had clubbed together to form a New Zealand Company. *Wellington*, the present capital, and *Auckland*, the former seat of government in the North Island, were first founded in 1840 ; *New Plymouth* and *Nelson* in 1841 ; *Dunedin* in Otago, by a Scotch company under the auspices of the Free Church, in 1848 ; and *Canterbury* in 1850, in connection with the Church of England. The first British governor took office in 1840, and the history of the colony thence onward until 1865, especially in the North Island, is one of almost constant warfare with the brave and skilful Maori natives. This fine aboriginal race, found by the discoverer Cook living in a state of considerable civilisation, was in 1906 reduced by incessant wars from 200,000 to 48,000, all of whom now live peaceably on the North Island. In 1875 the colony was brought under one administration, and in 1901 assumed the title of the *Dominion of New Zealand*.

97. North-east of New Zealand the archipelago of the *Viti or Fiji Islands* forms one of the latest acquisitions of the British Crown. As early as 1804 a number of escaped convicts from New South Wales reached their shores, and, remaining there, acquired considerable influence in the tribal wars which were constantly being waged. About 1820 the Wesleyan missionaries began their work here, and so far paved the way for the arrival of white settlers that the number of these had increased in 1905 to over 2500. In 1875 the islands were formed into a British colony. The final partition of New Guinea took place in 1885-87, when the N.E. section fell to Germany (*Kaiser Wilhelm's Land*, 70,000 sq. miles), and the S.E. to Britain (*British New Guinea*, 90,000 sq. miles), Holland retaining the W. section (152,000 sq. miles). Germany also acquired the neighbouring Admiralty, New Britain and New Ireland Islands, now re-named the *Bismarck Archipelago* (1885), besides the northern section of the Solomons (1886), and in 1899 all the Marianne, Pelew (except Guam), and Caroline groups by purchase from Spain, and part of Samoa by agreement with England and United States. The rest of Samoa went to the United States, which also wrested from Spain the Philippines and Guam. England took over the Tonga and South Solomon groups, and a sort of Anglo-French Condominium was permanently established in the New Hebrides by the Convention of 1907. Such are now the political relations in the Pacific Ocean.

98. About 1800 the age of great maritime discovery was closed, Cook and others having shown that no large tracts of *habitable land* lay about either pole. Since then extensive ice-bound regions have no doubt been discovered or sighted, especially in the south. But there has been no revelation of lands which can ever be of value for the habitation of men, and, in later years especially, exploration has taken a new direction, aiming rather at the scientific conquest of the globe.

In the Antarctic region the *South Shetland Isles*, south-east of Cape Horn, were reached by Captain Smith in 1816 ; the Russian voyager Bellinghausen found the most southerly land then known, *Peter Island*, in 1821 ; Captain Biscoe discovered the coast he named *Enderby Land* in 1831 ; Balleny the

islands named after him in 1839 ; the French commander Dumont D'Urville, *Adelie Land*, in 1840 ; and Sir James Ross reached the highest south point yet attained in 1841, discovering *Victoria Land*, with its volcanoes of Erebus and Terror.

Then, after a lull, operations were resumed about 1900 in which the English, Germans, French, Scandinavians, and Belgians took part. Most successful was Captain Scott of the 'Discovery,' who beat all previous records by reaching the high latitudes of  $82^{\circ} 17'$  and  $83^{\circ}$  S. in *Victoria Land*, which was coasted a long way south and explored on sledges for over 900 miles inland, while east of Cape Adare a new region with snow-clad heights was discovered and named *King Edward VII. Land* (1902-3). The German Captain Drygalski of the 'Gauss' failed to sight the supposed *Termination Land*, and was arrested by a new land at  $66^{\circ}$  S.

In the Arctic seas, Parry, following the inlet of Lancaster Sound, in 1819 reached *Melville Island* and other barren Arctic islands to which his name has been given ; Scoresby and Graah made known the fiord and glacier coast of *East Greenland* in 1822-23 ; the many expeditions in quest of the lost Sir John Franklin and his ships, which had gone on the last search for the north-west passage, added many hundreds of miles of coast-line to the Arctic American shores ; Dr. Kane extended knowledge in *Smith Sound* in 1853 ; an Austrian expedition in 1872-74 discovered the archipelago north-east of Novaya Zemlya which was named *Franz Josef Land* ; Captain Markham, of a British expedition under Captain Nares, reached lat.  $83^{\circ} 20'$  N. ; Nordenskjöld effected the north-east passage, and was the first to circumnavigate Asia ; and Lieutenant Lockwood, of the American Greely expedition advanced along the N.W. coast of Greenland to lat.  $83^{\circ} 24'$ . Then followed Nansen's memorable voyage in the 'Fram' (1895-96). But all previous records were again beaten by the American Captain Peary, who in 1906 reached  $87^{\circ} 6'$ , about 200 miles from the Pole. About the same time other less successful expeditions were made by Captain R. Amundsen of the 'Gjøa,' Lieutenant Hansen, A. H. Harrison, and M. Erichsen ; in 1908 E. Mikkelsen found deep water free of land stretching a long way toward the Pole.

99. The scientific conquest of the globe has begun. Europe is being surveyed with the minutest accuracy of detail, and in every other region the closer weaving of a network of routes of exploration is ever in progress. The systematic *sounding* of the oceans has begun, so that their true depth in every part may be known. As the first representatives of this exploration of the deep seas, may be taken the circumnavigation voyages of the British ship 'Challenger' (1872-76), the United States expeditions to the Pacific in the 'Tuscarora' (1874-76), and the 'Nero' (1900) ; the German 'Gazelle' voyage in the same years, and others in 1904-5, when 675 soundings were taken in the Pacific ; that of the Norwegian ship 'Voringen' between Norway and Iceland in 1875-76 ; and the latest German, French, British, and other oceanic surveys.

### III. PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY.

#### I. FORM AND DIMENSIONS OF THE EARTH.

1. The earliest speculators as to the nature of the earth regarded it as a great plain, the centre of which was occupied by the land to which they themselves belonged, all outside this,



to the edge of the plain, being filled up by the imagined lands of mythical peoples. This is illustrated in the view of the world accepted by the Greeks of Homer's time, which represents the land round central Greece, and on each side of the sea, passing into the territories of the Cimmerians and the borders of night on the north, to the borders of day and the land of the Pygmies on the south, and to the Elysian fields, the paradise of terrestrial heroes, in the far west—all being girt about by the ocean, from which the sun rose and into which it was believed to set.

2. But already two hundred and fifty years before the Christian era, when the Romans were beginning their aggressive wars against opulent Carthage, the philosophers of the schools of Alexandria seem to have abandoned these dreamy ideas and to have gained from theoretical considerations a remarkably clear conception of what we now know practically to be the true figure of the earth. Ptolemy in his Geography gives a calculation of the size of the sphere of the earth, and from his time onward it seems to have been universally accepted by men of learning that our world was a globe. It was this belief that led Columbus to seek a shorter route to the Indies by sailing due west from Spain ; but his supposition that on reaching Hispaniola and Cuba he had really come to the eastern shores of Asia near Japan, shows how very erroneous were the ideas of the extent of the world in his day.

3. It was not however till after Magellan had first crossed the Pacific, and that one of his ships which had sailed out westward from San Lucar was brought back to the same port from the east, that there existed any proof of the sphericity of the earth which could be convincing to the popular mind, or that any true conception of the extent of its lands and seas was obtained, for before that time no one had any idea of the vast width of the Pacific. We can readily understand why the earliest notion of the form of the earth should have been that of a flat disc floating in or surrounded by water, since it is difficult, if not impossible, to become convinced by practical observation that the earth is round without moving from one spot on its surface. The irregularities of the surface of the land, trees, hills, and valleys, generally give a broken horizon, and the first idea suggested by looking at any small space of water is that of the apparent levelness of its surface.

4. As soon, however, as men began to extend their journeys and voyages in all directions, a number of appearances must have been observed which could only be explained on the supposition that the surface of the earth was curved and not flat. Watching the departure of a vessel from harbour, as she sailed out to sea, it could not fail to be noticed that the hull was the first part to disappear, sinking as it were

beneath the sea, that the lower masts and sails were next hidden, till the top masts alone remained, before the ship was finally lost sight of; or if scanning the sea horizon for the return of a cargo-ship, the same appearances were noted, but in exactly reverse order, as the vessel drew towards the port. Such appearances could not be explained on the supposition that the earth and the sea over it was a flat plain; but the explanation becomes clear at once, if it be admitted that the surface is curved, the rise of the curve being that which conceals from view the lower part of the distant ship.

5. If, instead of watching the ship's arrival or departure from the land, one were sailing away from or towards shore in the ship itself, the appearances of the vanishing or rising land would be precisely similar. The low grounds of the shore are the first to be lost in leaving, the last to be seen in approaching. On nearing the low coasts of Holland, for example, the first objects noted are probably

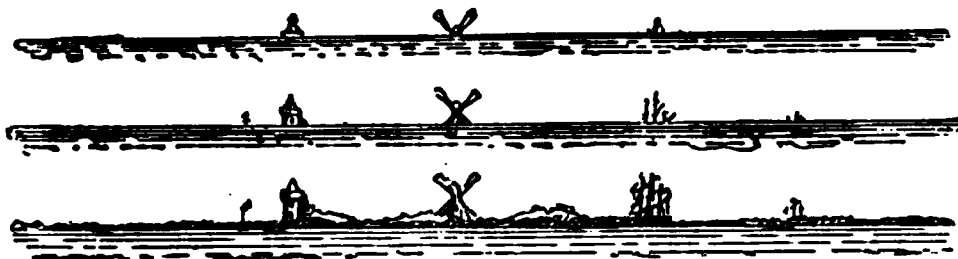


Fig. 13.

the top of a church steeple or the upper half of a windmill which seems to be spinning in the sea itself; and it is not till much later that the low dyke or bank which keeps out the sea from the land at the same level, comes into view. This is one of the most familiar and yet most convincing proofs of the curvature of the earth's surface, and one that can readily be tested at any part of the sea coast; and as we now know that precisely the same appearances are presented in every part of the world that has been visited, and that the amount of the curving is practically the same in all, the only conclusion that can be arrived at is that the earth is a sphere.

6. On land the visible horizon is, as we have said, in most parts broken by the irregularities of the surface, but wherever there is a plain wide enough to allow an unrestricted view in all directions, the limit of vision of the observer standing on it is formed by a circle where sky and land seem to meet at a uniform distance from him on all sides. At sea this definite circular limit of the horizon becomes more distinct; move in what direction one may, the limit of the circle is never reached; new objects may rise on the limit towards which the ship is sailing, or towards which you may walk on the plain, while others formerly within sight sink on the backward horizon, but the vessel or the individual always seems to

form the central point of this horizon-circle. This is observed all over the world, to whatever part one may go, and the same height above the sea level or above the plain gives practically the same extent of horizon in any part of the earth. Now there is no other shape than that of a sphere which would seem circular in every point of view.

7. It may also be taken as a proof of the earth's roundness that as one climbs a height the circle of vision expands ; for as we ascend we are enabled to look over a part of the curve which has limited our vision below. Observations show that an equivalent expansion of horizon is obtained by an equal increase of elevation in all parts of the world. The conclusion again is that the earth is a sphere.

8. In early days of navigation the sailors of the eastern Mediterranean were wont to steer by the constellation Arktos, the Bear,<sup>1</sup> and later by the smaller group of stars to which the name Lesser Bear was given, the brightest of which we now call the *Pole-star*. Sailing north and south between Greece and Egypt, they could not fail to notice how their change of position affected the altitude of these stars ; how as they sailed southward the Little Bear seemed to sink down towards the earth, and to rise again in the heavens as they steered northward ; and the sailors of our day voyaging in wider seas find the Pole-star rising over their heads to near the zenith as they sail towards the Arctic ice ; as they go south through the Atlantic the Pole-star sinks down and down towards the horizon, till at length it touches it and disappears beneath, while new constellations, among them the Southern Cross, rise in the heavens to the southward. On the homeward voyage from the south the Pole-star again appears on the horizon, and again seems to mount the sky, till at the port where the ship started it is found to have the same altitude as when it was last seen there, and to the people who have stayed at home it has not changed its position at all. Evidently, then, the apparent movement of the stars is due to the real change of position of the voyager along the surface of the sea.

9. This only shows, however, that the surface of the earth is curved in a north and south direction. If the voyage were made in a due east and west direction, the Pole-star would maintain the same altitude throughout ; but the apparent movement of the sun and stars gives evidence of curving in this direction also. If the earth were level from west to east, the sun would rise at the same moment to all places along this line. But a voyager starting, say, for instance, with his chronometer set to Greenwich time, finds

<sup>1</sup> Part of which we already know as the Plough or the Wain. (p. 7).

that as he sails west the sun and stars rise and set later than at Greenwich; till when he reached the West Indies he would find his chronometer six hours in advance of the time of the place, which is called local time. If he had steered east to India he would have observed the sun and stars rising and setting earlier as he proceeded, till on arriving there his clock would be six hours behind the apparent time in India. Reaching London again, his clock agrees with local time as before. This change in the times of sun and star rising could only take place if the earth were curved in an east and west direction also. The observation that the shadow cast by the earth in eclipses of the moon is always circular, was made as long ago as the time of Aristotle, and affords another strong proof of the globular form of the earth.

10. Coming now to the question of the actual size of the earth, it has already been noted that the philosophers of the schools of Alexandria made a wonderfully close approximation to the true solution of this problem, though at the time they lived not a hundredth part of the earth's surface was known from actual discovery. One of these philosophers, named Eratosthenes, watching the apparent annual movement of the sun across the sky, had observed that at midsummer, or the longest day, its rays illuminated the bottom of a deep well at Syene (Assuan), on the Nile. By observing the slope of the sun's shadow at Alexandria at the same time, he found that there the sun was a fiftieth part of the circumference of a circle ( $7^{\circ} 12'$ ) from the zenith, or the point directly overhead in the heavens. Reasoning that if the earth is a sphere and its centre the middle point of the visible celestial vault, any change which makes an alteration in the zenith-distance of a celestial object such as the sun or a star must correspond to a like distance on the earth's surface, he concluded that the distance between Syene and Alexandria, which he found to be about 5000 stadia, must be a fiftieth part of the earth's circumference, which he accordingly set down as 250,000 stadia, a calculation which is in error only by about a seventh from what we now know to be the true circuit of the earth.

11. Thus to Eratosthenes belongs the credit of having first applied a true principle for the solution of the problem of measuring the earth, the principle upon which more accurate measurements are being extended at the present day. At intervals from the time of Eratosthenes, measurements on the plan that he had adopted were made both in eastern and western Europe, but it was not till after the invention of the telescope in the seventeenth century had given new and wonderful powers of observation of the heavens, and aid to the labour of the surveyor on the earth itself, that measurements

of large belts of the earth's surface began to be made with care and precision. These measurements, which are still being extended and perfected in all civilised countries, and which form the basis of every accurate map, are conducted somewhat in the following way. Two stations (it may be several hundreds of miles apart), which lie as nearly as possible north and south of one another (Fig. 14), are chosen, and the difference of zenith distance of several celestial objects, the sun and stars, is accurately ascertained at the same moment; next what is termed a "base-line" is accurately measured on the ground in feet and inches at one of these stations, and by the method known as triangulation the measurement is extended over the whole distance to the second station, the distance of which

from the first is thus precisely found.<sup>1</sup> As the previously determined differences of zenith distance between the two chosen stations give the number of degrees contained in the length which separates them, the length of a degree in feet or yards or miles can be at once determined; and hence, on the supposition that the length of a degree is uniform, the circumference ( $360^\circ$ ) of the whole earth in feet, yards, or miles, becomes known.

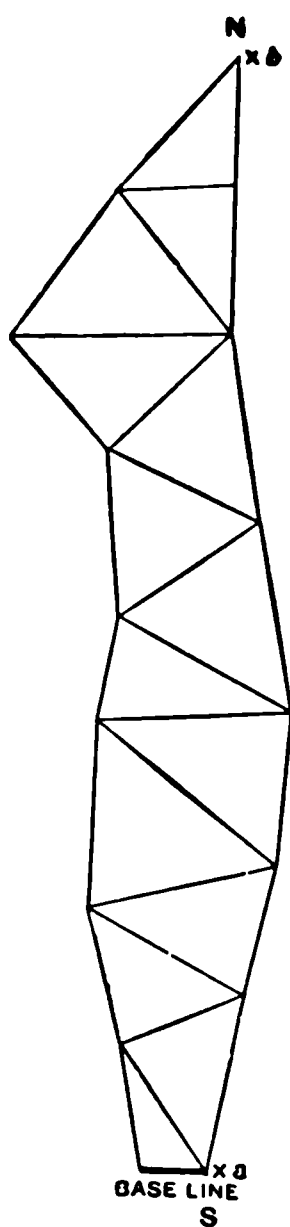


Fig. 14.

12. Delicate operations of this kind have now been extended not only in Europe, but in India, Cape Colony, the East India Islands, the United States, Peru, and in Asiatic Russia, and have enabled the figure of the earth to be determined with great accuracy. As a general result from all of these measurements, it is found that the earth's figure is not precisely that of a true sphere; that a degree measures 68·7 English miles in the neighbourhood of the equator and 69·4 miles in the neighbourhood of the poles of the globe; in other words, that to bring about a change in the zenith distance of a celestial object of one degree, it is necessary to travel nearly a mile farther in a north and south direction in the polar than in equatorial parts of the earth. The globe is flattened a little at the polar region, so that a section of it cut through the poles would, on very minute measure-

ment, be found to be not precisely a circle but an ellipse very

<sup>1</sup> The measured base-line is taken as the known side of the primary triangle, and when the angles of this have been measured the lengths of the other sides are readily derived from it. From the sides of this primary triangle a series or network of triangles is extended (advantage being taken of some marked point, hill tops or church spires, for the corner points of the triangles) between the two extreme stations, and the dimen-

closely approaching one, and this figure, which may be described as a flattened sphere, is called a *spheroid*. Minute differences in the result of the degree-measurements in various parts of the earth show further, that the earth varies in different parts slightly from even a truly spheroidal form. So minute, however, are the deviations from true sphericity in the globe, that they could never have been discovered without the aid of powerful instruments and refined calculation; and, as far as any of the phenomena that we shall have to do with here are concerned, it may be assumed that the earth is a perfect sphere with a diameter of 7900 English miles and a circumference of 25,000 miles; a degree, or a 360th part of a great circle of its surface, being sixty-nine statute or sixty geographical miles long.<sup>1</sup>

13. In order to describe and compare different parts of the earth's surface, which are so far apart that actual measurement between them is not possible, it becomes necessary to have some means of determining their relative position.

It has already been noted, as a proof of the spherical form of the earth, that as one travels north or south the stars apparently change their altitude. If we could stand at the North Pole, the chief star in the constellation of the Little Bear would appear immediately overhead, and all the others would move round it in horizontal circles. Coming southward, the traveller would see the Pole-star gradually sinking and the stars circling round it dipping beneath the horizon as they turned, till a point was reached at which the stars would seem to rise vertically from the east and set due west of the traveller. Passing this, going still southward, the circles formed by the stars overhead begin again to increase and complete themselves, till at the South Pole, as at the north, the stars would seem to move round in perfectly horizontal circles. The imaginary central line round the earth, midway between the poles, at which the stars rise and set vertically, is termed the *Equator*,<sup>2</sup> since it divides the globe into two equal halves—a northern and a southern *hemisphere*. A certain distance north or south of the equator corresponds, as we have seen, to a certain change in the apparent height of the stars above the horizon, and the measurement of their altitudes when due north or south, or of the Pole-star

sions of each of these triangles are ascertained by calculation from that of the first from which they spring.

<sup>1</sup> 365,000 feet, as many thousand feet as there are days in the year.

The dimensions of the earth, in the round number on which all calculators are agreed are as follows:—

Greater or Equatorial diameter . . . . .	7,926 English miles.
Lesser or Polar diameter . . . . .	7,899                   "
Equatorial circumference . . . . .	24,900                   "
Area of surface . . . . .	196,550,000 square miles.

<sup>2</sup> Lat. *æquæ*, to make equal.

in the northern hemisphere, gives the means of determining the *latitude* of a particular place, or its distance, expressed in degrees, minutes, and seconds, from the equator, north or south. Imaginary circles, conceived to be drawn parallel to the equator at equal intervals from it to the poles, becoming smaller and smaller as they approach them, are called *parallels of latitude* (Fig. 15).<sup>1</sup>

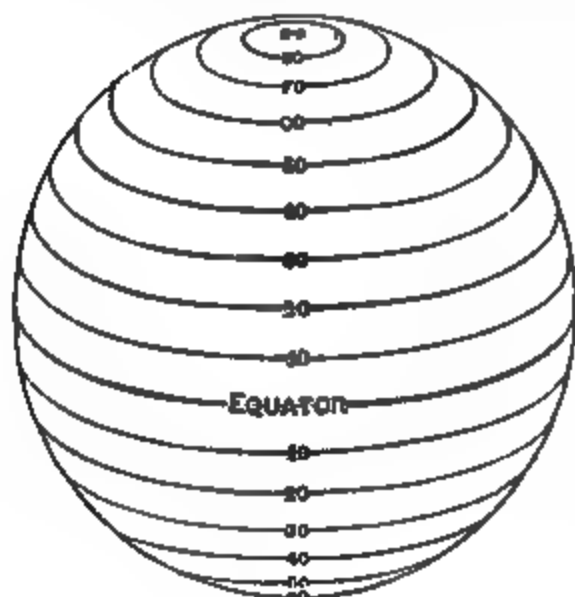


Fig. 15.

Latitude thus determines the distance of a place north or south of the equator, but does not describe its position, for any number of places might lie along the same parallel.

14. To fix the position of a place along its parallel of latitude, reference is made to the *meridian of longitude* upon which it stands. These meridians of longitude are conceived to be drawn from pole to pole through each of the 360 degrees of the equator which they cut at right angles. These lines,

as shown on Fig. 16, differ from the parallel circles of latitude, which diminish towards the poles, in being all of them great circles like the equator, or having their centres in the centre of the earth. They also differ in having no naturally defined starting-point, such as the parallels of latitude have on the equator. They are all equal; every one of them has as much natural right to be considered the first as any of its fellows. Thus, just in the same spirit as that in which the ancient Greeks believed their land to be the centre of the world, modern nations have chosen generally the meri-

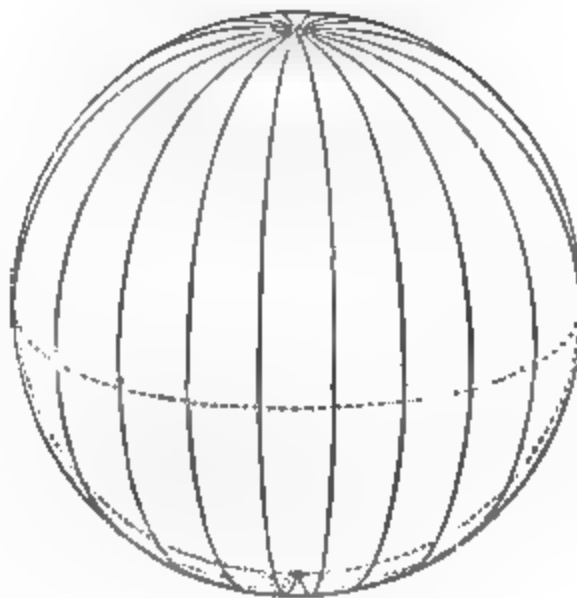


Fig. 16.

<sup>1</sup> *Latitude and Longitude.*—To the ancient Greeks, whose country lay between the



dian of their capital, or of a well-known observatory within their territory (Greenwich, Paris, Washington, Pulkova), as the zero point<sup>1</sup> or initial meridian from which to number the lines of longitude east and west round the world. These lines of longitude are termed *meridians*, because every point along each of them has its midday (*meridies*) at exactly the same moment; it is by observing the change of time at which the sun comes to the meridian of one place as compared with another (most readily accomplished by means of a chronometer set to record the local time of one of them, and carried to the other), that the difference of longitude is determined. Thus Battle lies nearly on the parallel of  $51^{\circ}$  N.;  $51 \times 60 = 3060$  geographical miles north of the equator. The meridian on which it lies is half a degree or  $30'$  east of that of Greenwich. In this case, however, the distance east of the meridian of Greenwich is not represented by 30 geographical miles, for, as may be observed from the figure above, as the meridians gradually converge towards the poles, the degrees of longitude decrease from their value of 60 miles to a degree at the equator, to no extent at all at the pole. Thus the length of a degree of longitude in latitude  $51^{\circ}$  has decreased from 60 to 38 geographical miles, so that the distance of Battle east of the meridian of Greenwich is only half of 38 or 19 miles.

15. These two sets of lines thus give a framework upon which the relative position of every point, the latitude and longitude of which has been determined, can be laid down. Thus the map of the known world has been gradually extended, and is still in process of being perfected, as voyagers and travellers to different parts of the earth accumulate knowledge of its lands and seas, or improve the existing half-knowledge by more accurate observation.

16. When these lines are laid down and the map is drawn upon the surface of an *artificial globe*, an almost perfect representation of the earth's surface may be obtained; but when the attempt is made to show the countries of the world on a more convenient flat surface, or a map (*mappa*, a towel), it is found to be quite impossible to give a true representation of any large portion of the earth in this way. One may readily understand this by trying to lay down the peel of an orange on a flat surface without breaking it at some point.

17. Thus geographers have been driven to seek the least inac-

Black Sea, the northern shores of which have an almost Polar winter, and the hot deserts of Africa, only across the Mediterranean, the habitable earth seemed to be confined within narrow limits from north to south, but from east to west the world they knew offered no such narrow limits. "This latter direction, therefore, came to be considered as that of the earth's *length*, while the dimension along the meridian, or north and south, was its *breadth*, and this mode of speaking still remains to us in the terms Longitude and Latitude." *Concise*.

<sup>1</sup> Generally, but erroneously, called the prime or first meridian. The first meridians lie  $1^{\circ}$  east and west of the zero meridian.



curate method of *projecting*<sup>1</sup> the rounded surface on the flat one, with the result that several methods are employed, each of which has some advantage or minimum of disadvantage to commend it. In that named the *orthographic* projection (Fig. 17), the eye of the observer is

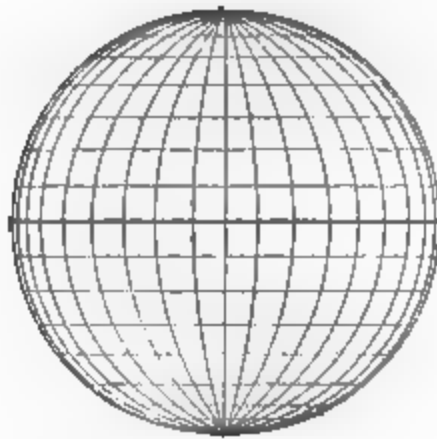


Fig. 17.

conceived to be infinitely distant, so that, when looking at the earth from a point vertically over the equator, the parallels of latitude project themselves as straight lines, and the meridians crowd together towards the outer margin of the representation. For this reason, though the central parts are well shown by this projection, the outer are crowded together and reduced in breadth. Another method of projection of the hemispheres, named the *stereographic* (Fig.

18), is obtained by supposing the eye of the observer to be at the surface of the globe, and to be able to look through the solid sphere as if it were a globe of glass, so as to see the countries which are on the opposite side; these outlines are then drawn as they would project themselves upon a screen stretched over a section of the globe from pole to pole, facing the eye of the observer. On this plan, as shown in the figure, the central countries are somewhat crowded, those on the outer border of the map expanded. To obtain a more equal representation of the equivalent areas marked out by the meridians and parallels, the position of a more favourable point of sight, between those employed in the former projections, has been calculated, giving that which is known as the *globular* projection (Fig. 19), one of the most commonly used. On this, the point of view is assumed to be also vertically over the centre of the plane of projection, at a distance equal to the sine of  $45^\circ$  of the arc of a great circle of the sphere.

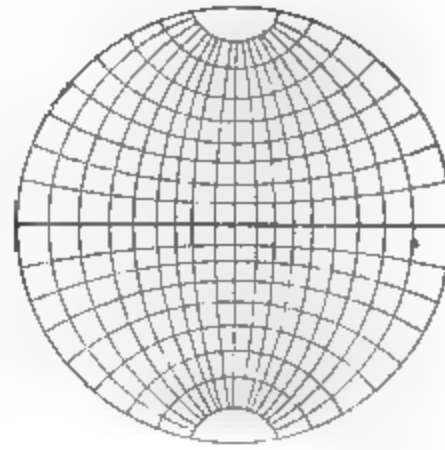


Fig. 18.

By none of these projections, however, can more than half of the

<sup>1</sup> If a flat circular disc be held over a flat surface so that the sunlight comes down perpendicularly upon it, its shadow will be a perfect circle; but if it be inclined, its shadow passes into an ellipse, which will become narrower as the plate is turned, till, when the light falls on the edge only, the shadow becomes a straight line. The shadow here is said to be projected on the surface beneath, and the plan of representing the round surface of the earth on a flat one is also called a *projection*.

earth be shown at a single view, and in none of them are the true bearings of places, one from another, preserved. The entire terrestrial surface, excepting the parts about the poles, can, however, be shown by a method invented by a geographer of Flanders named Gerhard Kremer, who first published his chart in 1556. His device is retained to this day as the basis of all charts for the use of seamen, and is known by the Latinised form of his name as *Mercator's* chart (Fig. 20). The earth is here conceived to have the form of a cylinder, along the length of which the meridians are represented by equidistant straight lines. The parallels are also

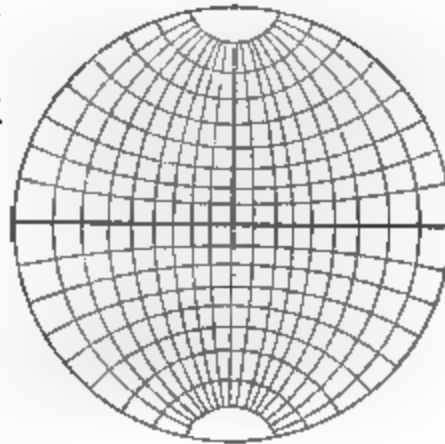


Fig. 19.

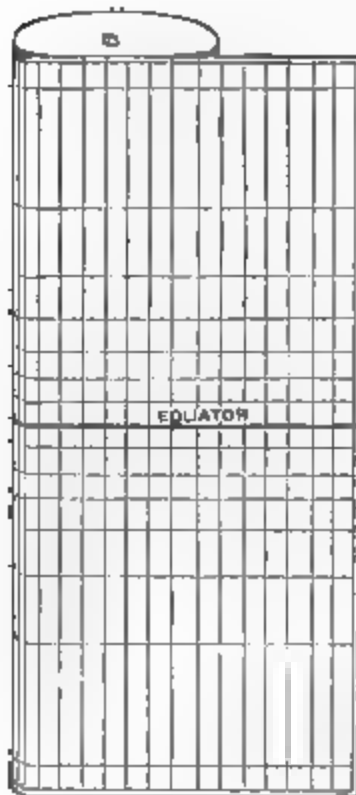


Fig. 20.

represented by straight lines at right angles to the former, but placed at distances which are increased outward from the equator towards the poles, in such a manner that the true shape of every individual part of the land, and its true bearing from every other part, is preserved, though the northern and southern portions of the map, as compared with the equatorial, come to be grossly exaggerated in size. Greenland, for example, appears to be six or eight times as large as the peninsula of India, whereas in reality it is not half as large. The maps in the foregoing historical chapters are drawn upon this method, though, for the sake of clearness, the lines of latitude and longitude have been omitted from them.

18. When it is desired to represent only one country of the world, such as England, on the map, another plan, which gives more accurate results for such a small area, is adopted. This device may be understood by supposing a cone of paper to be set upon an artificial globe in such a way that the paper touches the globe along the central parallel of the country to be shown on the map. (In the case of England the cone would be made to touch along the fifty-third parallel.) The meridians and the parallels on each side of this central one are then conceived to be brought up to meet

the cone, and to be projected on it along with the outlines of the land between them. When the cone is unfolded, it may be spread out on a flat surface. In this case the country lying along the central line of the map, where the cone touches upon the sphere, is represented with perfect accuracy; on each side there is a small amount of distortion, which increases as the area included in the map is extended. Almost all the special maps in the second part of this book are drawn upon this plan, or on a modification of it which supposes the cone to cut the globe through *two* parallels of the area to be mapped, which are chosen at such a distance from one another that the error is more equally distributed over the whole map, which is perfect along two lines instead of one only.

## II. PROPER MOVEMENTS OF THE EARTH.

1. How long ago it is since men began to doubt the belief that the earth was the fixed centre of the universe, round which the sun and all the heavenly bodies moved in circles, cannot be known, but the germ of the system which bears the name of Copernicus, the astronomer of *Thorn* in Prussia (1473-1543), seems to have existed already in the schools of ancient Greece. Through him, however, the system of the world now known to be the true one, representing the sun to be the centre round which the earth and all the other planets move, first gained definite form, enabling the complex and apparently irregular paths of some of the heavenly bodies to be understood as parts of an orderly system. To Kepler of *Magstadt* in Würtemberg (1571-1630) is due the subsequent discovery that the orbit of the planets is not circular, but elliptical, one focus of the ellipse in each case being occupied by the sun. The revelation of the governing principle of these movements in the grand law of universal gravitation, which gives completeness to the whole plan of the universe, was left for the English Sir Isaac Newton (1642-1727). Later discovery makes it clear that the whole solar system, the sun with all its planets, has itself an onward movement through space.

2. It is, however, with those movements of the earth which directly affect the condition of its surface that we have here to do. The first of these is its movement of *rotation*, whereby it spins round continuously on an imaginary axis which coincides with its polar diameter, the extremities being called the poles. This rotation is from west to east. The second movement is that of *translation* or *revolution* round the sun.

3. Without long-continued and close observation of the movements of the heavenly bodies, it would be impossible to convince

ourselves practically from any external appearances that the earth really moves. We feel no movement, for there is no halt or friction, and the atmosphere which envelopes us, held in its place by gravitation, forms an integral part of the globe in its passage through space, taking as perfect a share in its rotation as the sea or land does. Remembering this, it is not surprising that men accepted the natural and obvious explanation of the apparent change of place of the sun and stars, by believing that they did move round the earth from east to west.

4. But without looking beyond the globe itself, it can be shown by experiments that the evidence of the senses is here in error. An experiment which is a very convincing one, and one that has been made with great care and accuracy,<sup>1</sup> is that of observing the fall of a stone or a shot from a vertical height.

It may readily be understood that if the earth be revolving from west to east, the top of a high tower must describe a larger circle round the centre of the earth than its base, and must move in some degree faster than the ground on which it stands. If, then, a shot be

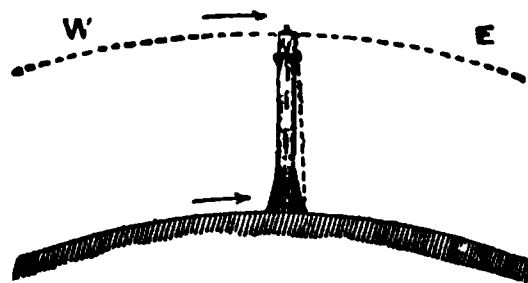


Fig. 21.

carried to the top of such a tower, it will there acquire a rate of movement, which will be greater than it had at the base of the tower in proportion to the elevation to which it has been carried. If now the shot be let fall, it will retain during its descent the speed of revolution that it has acquired at the top of the tower; it will decline a little eastward from the perpendicular, and will strike the ground on that side of the base of the tower.

A very interesting experimental proof of the earth's rotation, first made by M. Foucault, is afforded by a freely suspended pendulum. The plane of vibration of such a pendulum *appears* to turn in the same direction as the sun, that is in the opposite direction to the earth's rotation on its axis. The pendulum indeed maintains its uniform swing, but the earth turns beneath it. To illustrate this, suppose such a pendulum to be hung over the pole of the earth and swung at starting so as to coincide with the meridian of London;

<sup>1</sup> The first experiments of this kind were made by Riccioli, in 1640, from the tower Degli Asinelli at Bologna, from a height of 256 feet. Their author erroneously inferred from the results obtained that the earth stood still. Newton, in 1679, maintained that they proved the contrary, but the experiments made at his suggestion by the Royal Society failed to demonstrate this. It was not till about 112 years after this that Guglielmini, of Bologna, made the first satisfactory experiments from the tower Degli Asinelli, by dropping lead bullets upon a cake of wax spread beneath. In 1802 a series of experiments was made by Dr. Benzenberg from St. Michael's Tower in Hamburg, from a height of 250 feet; and in 1831 another extensive series by Professor Reich in the mines of Freiberg in Saxony, with a depth of fall of 520 feet. In all of these the easterly direction was clearly shown.

if it vibrates constantly in the same direction, and it will do so unless disturbed by some force, the revolution of the earth below it once in 24 hours would make it appear as if the plane of the pendulum's motion were turning once round in 24 hours, but in the opposite direction, and it will coincide with every other meridian in turn. This experiment has not actually been made at the pole, but has been tried at many different latitudes between that and the equator, where the effect ceases. In the latitude of London, such a freely suspended pendulum will appear to change its plane of vibration round a circle in about 30 hours.

5. The form which has been assumed by the earth, the flattening of its polar regions and the bulging of the equatorial, is in itself an evidence of the uniform rotation of the earth on an axis, showing as it does the tendency of those parts of the earth which are rotating the most rapidly to overcome the force of gravitation.

6. One most important purpose accomplished by the rotation of the earth is that of maintaining the position of its parts in relation to the sun. But for its rotation, the earth might change its position continually with regard to the sun, the source of its heat and light, with the effect of introducing extraordinary vicissitudes of temperature. The example of a common spinning-top is sufficient to show the effect of rotation in keeping a body in one position, for it is impossible to balance a top with its point on the ground without having caused it to rotate; once set in rapid rotation, however, it requires considerable force to upset it. It is with this very object of keeping a projectile in one constant position, by means of rapid rotation during its flight, that rifling is used in guns and cannon. The top slackens its speed and falls at last because its motion has been overcome by the friction of the point on the ground, and of the air around it. The earth, revolving in empty space, carrying its atmosphere with it, continues to rotate because there is no friction to retard its motion. The most ancient astronomical observations, compared with those of the present day, show that, for 2000 years at least, the earth has not perceptibly slackened its speed of rotation.

7. The turning of the earth on its axis gives the interpretation of most of the apparent movements of the heavenly bodies,—the apparent rising of the sun in the east, its passage across the sky during the day, and its setting in the west, as well as the similar movements of all the stars by night. The turning of any part of the earth towards and away from the illuminating sun into the shadow gives alternate *day* and *night*. The time elapsing between two successive passages of a place beneath the sun gives the astronomical day of 24 hours; the civil day of like period is reckoned

from one midnight to another, or from the moment when the place is farthest turned from the sun till its return to that station. Since every point of earth's surface, from east to west, or along each of the parallels of latitude, necessarily has a different *meridian*, or has its midday at a different time, it follows that at any moment all times of day and night may be found in different parts of the globe. One place on a particular parallel may be turning from shadow into sunlight, and have its morning; while a second, distant eastward from the first by a quarter of the circumference, has its midday; a third, at a like distance farther on, is just revolving from the lighter side of the east into the darkness, and has its evening; and a fourth, a quarter of the circumference farther, is in the deepest of the midnight shadow. Thus, when the parts of America about the Mississippi are revolving into the morning light, it is already noon in the British Isles, evening on the delta of the Ganges in India, and midnight in New Zealand.

8. But the daily rotation of the earth does not interpret all the apparent movements of the heavenly bodies. In a former chapter we have been observing how, day by day and week by week, the sun seems to change its position in the sky; how it rises gradually from the low flat arch it seems to make in midwinter, higher and higher in spring, till at midsummer it takes its highest arch across the heavens, and then sinks gradually back again, throwing longer and longer shadows, till they are longest in midwinter again. Thus, in the course of the period of time we call a year, the sun has completed one series of apparent changes, from its lowest arch to its highest, and back to the lowest again. In this case, as in the former one of the sun's apparent passage across the sky, the first evidence of the senses is that the earth is standing still and the sun moving to and fro in the heavens. The apparent change is, however, in fact due to the real movement of the earth round the sun; and just as one rotation of the earth on its axis gives one *day*, so the time of one revolution of the earth round the sun defines the *year* of 365½ days.

9. Evidence of this second great movement of the earth—that of translation in an orbit round the sun—is not derivable from anything that can be experienced on the earth itself, but depends wholly upon observation of the other heavenly bodies and their apparent movements. To understand these we should consider the distance between the sun and earth, and their comparative sizes.

The distance between sun and earth, as determined by astronomers, is in round numbers 92 millions of miles. If an express train travelling 55 miles an hour had started to accomplish the distance in the year 1700, and maintained its speed all the way, it would by this time be approaching the sun.

Now with regard to the *magnitude* of the sun. Its diameter is 106 times that of the earth nearly, and in bulk its vast globe is a million and a quarter times greater than that of the earth. Figures, however, give no adequate conception of this enormous disproportion in size; a more distinct idea will be obtained if we compare the sun to a globe of six feet in diameter; then the earth on the same scale will be represented by a little pellet of the same diameter as a threepenny piece. Or if you take the length of a page of this book to represent the sun's diameter, that of the earth will be smaller, on the same scale, than one of the letter *o* types on the page. Now, it would be quite contrary to the teaching of the laws of gravitation that such a vast body as the sun should revolve round one comparatively so minute as the earth; but quite in accordance with it that the earth should belong to a system of planets circling round the sun.

10. The analogous movements of the other planets, as seen from the earth, may be taken as evidence of this orbital movement of the earth. These are seen to disappear and reappear behind the sun, and the telescope shows that each has a greater or less surface enlightened, and has greater or less apparent size, according to its position.

11. By means of the telescope, also, it has been observed that each of the fixed stars apparently describes a small ellipse round its true position within the period of a year, an appearance which can only be interpreted by admitting it to be the effect of the movement of the earth round the sun. These stars are so immensely distant from the earth, even as compared with the sun's distance, that this apparent and very slight change of their position in the heavens can only be determined by close scrutiny, so that to all intents and purposes they are for us fixed, and the interval of time between two successive passages of one of these stars over the meridian of any place (the sidereal day) marks the true time of the earth's revolution on its axis. The interval between two successive passages of the sun over a meridian (the solar day by which we reckon) is, however, observed to be longer by about four minutes than the interval between two passages of a star. Why should this be? If the earth simply revolved on its axis, and had no other movement, the sun and the stars would reach the meridian after the same interval. The fact is that the solar day represents, not merely one rotation of the earth on its axis, but this movement, combined with that of a movement of translation through space round the sun. This movement of translation through a circuit of  $360^{\circ}$  round the sun is accomplished in a year, or 365 days; so that nearly a degree of the circuit is traversed by the earth every day. But a 360th part of a



day of twenty-four hours is four minutes; so that the change of position of the earth due to one day's advance in the annual circuit round the sun corresponds to an addition of four minutes to the time of daily revolution.

The observed difference in length of the sidereal and solar day thus gives us another evidence of the revolution of the earth round the sun.<sup>1</sup>

12. But the path of the earth round the sun is not a circle. Accurate measurement of the apparent diameter of the sun at different times shows this to be the case. From one part of the earth's orbit the sun's diameter is measurably smaller; from another it is sensibly larger; and this appearance can result from no other cause than the greater distance of the earth from the sun at one period than at another. The sun's apparent diameter increases up to the beginning of January, and at that time the earth is said to be in *perihelion*<sup>2</sup> (near the sun); thenceforward till July the apparent size of the sun decreases, so that in July the earth is said to be in *aphelion* (distant from the sun). The change of its distance from the sun between these times is found to be nearly 1-30th of the mean distance, or about three millions of miles. Now, since the sun is the great source of heat, it seems at first sight fair to assume that the amount of heat received by the earth's surface must be much greater at one part of the orbit—that in which it approaches nearest to the sun—than at the other extreme. Here, however, a remarkable law comes in to show that the distribution of heat is after all equalised; for it is found that the angular velocity of the earth in its path varies in such a proportion, that exactly equal amounts of heat are received by it from the sun in passing over equal angles round it.

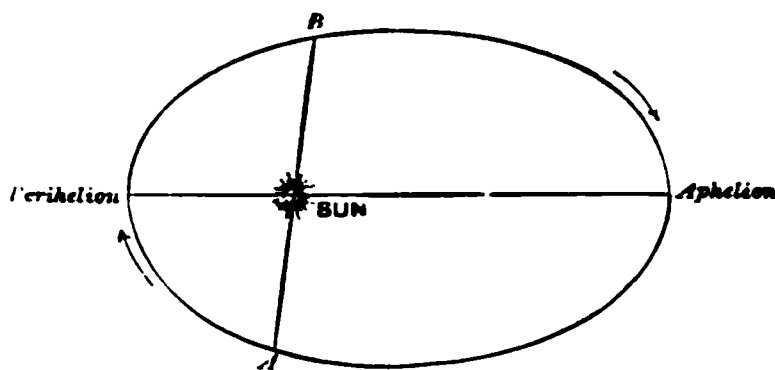


Fig. 22.

13. The accompanying diagram (Fig. 22) gives an exaggerated representation of the ellipse of the earth's orbit. If we suppose it to be divided into two segments by the line

<sup>1</sup> It is an interesting experiment, and one that requires no instruments, to establish this fact for ourselves. To do this, it is only necessary to stand to the north of some well-defined vertical object, such as the angle of a house or a flagstaff, and by placing the eye at a certain fixed point, to note by watch the exact times of two disappearances of the same fixed star (choosing a bright one) behind the building. Next, observe the times of two disappearances of the same edge of the sun behind the same vertical line, using a bit of smoked glass to protect the eye, and compare the length of the sidereal day—the interval between the two disappearances of the star—with the solar day, or the interval between the two corresponding passages of the sun.

<sup>2</sup> *Peri* round about, *helios* sun; *apo* from, *helios* sun.

AB passing through the sun, and the earth to circulate from A through the perihelion point round to B, it will have passed through  $180^\circ$ ; and as many degrees will be passed through in completing the circuit from B round through aphelion to A again. But these segments will be passed through in unequal times; that on the side of perihelion in shorter, the opposite in longer time, in proportion to their area; the more rapid passage through the smaller segment compensating for the greater proximity of the earth to the sun there, and thus maintaining an equilibrium of heat-supply from equinox to equinox.

14. Admitting the fact of the earth's motion of translation round the sun, this in itself does not account for the apparent change of the sun's altitude in the heavens from week to week that we have been observing. To explain this we must consider next the position with regard to the sun which the earth maintains in its annual transit. We have seen that, as a consequence of the earth's rotation in free space, its axis must maintain the same direction; that is, it must always remain parallel to itself. Suppose now that this axis were perpendicular to the plane of the movement round the sun, or to an imaginary radius from the sun to the earth, as in Figure 23, the rotation of the earth would bring every part of its surface in succession beneath the sun's light and heat; a great circle passing through the poles would always divide the illuminated from

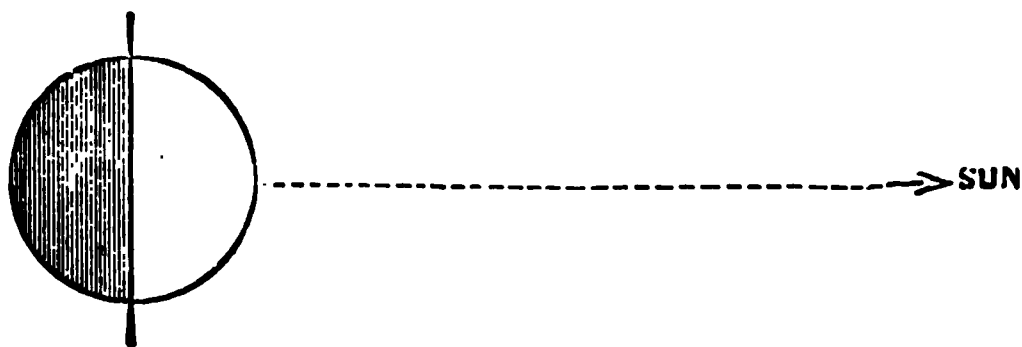


Fig. 23.

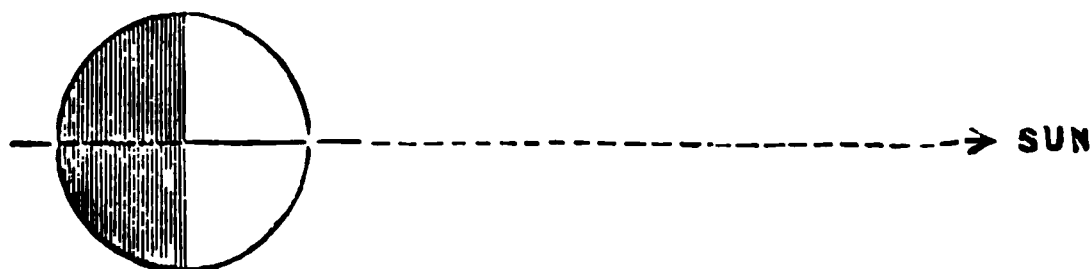
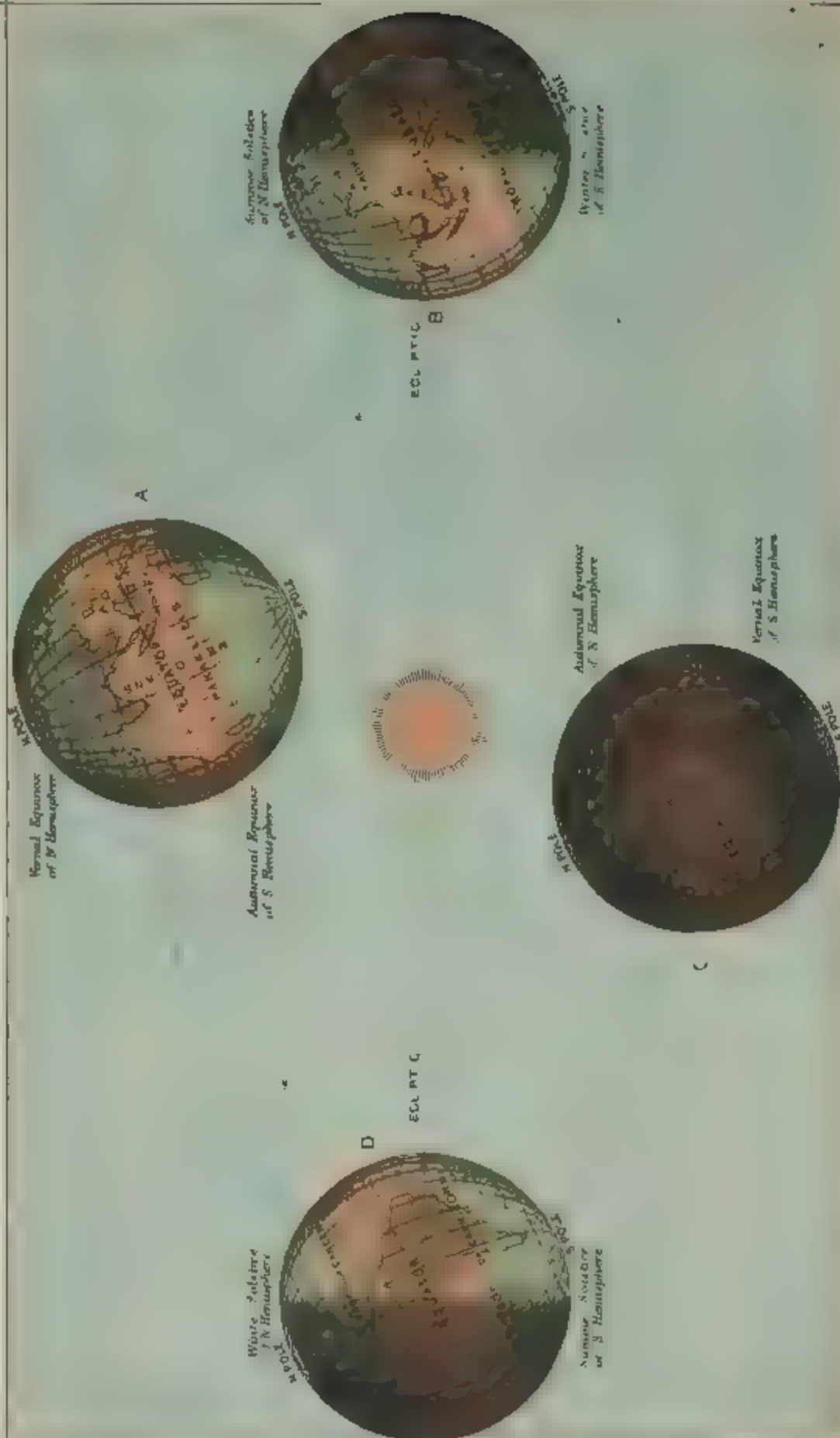


Fig. 24.

the shadow side; day and night would be of equal length all over the world, and all the year round. But now suppose the earth's



# DIAGRAM TO ILLUSTRATE THE SEASONS



Note: The true relative sizes of the Sun and Earth may be estimated by comparing the former to a globe of two feet in diameter, the latter to a pea revolving at a distance of 430 feet from it.

The zones are distinguished by colour thus:  
 Torrid zone - orange  
 Temperate zones - green  
 Frigid zones - white

London: Edward Stanford, 12, 13 & 14, Long Acre, W.C.

axis were parallel to the plane of motion round the sun, as in Figure 24, it is evident that during a long period of the passage round the sun, one half of the earth would remain in constant darkness, while the other half had lasting daylight; one side would experience the severest frosts, while the other was burned up with excessive heat.

15. The actual position of the earth's axis is neither that of the first nor the second supposed case, but in an intermediate position, inclined  $66\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  to the plane of its orbit, called that of the *ecliptic*, being the plane in which eclipses of the sun and moon can alone take place. In other words, the axis of the earth is inclined  $23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  from one that would be perpendicular to a ray from the sun.

16. The position which the earth thus occupies relatively to the sun at various stages of its annual round will be best understood by reference to the illustration on the opposite page. This shows the earth at four positions in its orbit, each  $90^{\circ}$  apart. The shaded portions here represent the dark or night hemisphere, the bright those which are under the sun's light. When the earth is in the positions A and C the sun is vertically over the intersection of the planes of the equator and ecliptic. In these positions, which correspond to those which the earth reaches in March and September, the boundary between the lightened and dark sides runs exactly along a meridian and through the poles. For the time every point on its surface describes half its daily rotation in darkness, half in light; so that day and night are each twelve hours long all over the globe. Hence the term *equinox*. The earth is in the position A at the time of the vernal or spring equinox, and at C during the autumnal equinox, of the northern hemisphere. As the earth reaches the position B, its axis continues to point in the same direction, its northern pole appears to incline more and more towards the sun, allowing a still increasing part of each circle of latitude north of the equator to be reached by the sun, which consequently, to an observer at any part of the northern hemisphere, as in England, seems to rise more and more in the heavens, and to make a higher and larger arch. The days consequently grow longer and longer, till, when the earth has reached the position B, in the month of July, the sun is vertical over the northern tropic or turning point, the *Tropic of Cancer*, and the North Pole with all the lands round it within a radius of  $23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ , or within the *Arctic Circle*, remains constantly enlightened. At the same time, all within a similar radius round the South Pole turns in continued darkness. This then is the position of the summer *solstice* of the northern hemisphere, so called because when reaching the tropic the sun's meridian altitude varies so little from

day to day as to seem to stand still. Advancing round another quarter of its circuit, the earth approaches the position of the autumnal equinox, when days and nights are again equalised ; passing this, on towards the position D, the southern half of the earth, as you will understand from the illustration, seems to become inclined towards the sun ; to us in the northern hemisphere the sun then seems to travel by a lower and lower arch through the sky, and the days become shorter and shorter. For the southern hemisphere, however, they are now increasing in length, till at last the whole of the circle of  $23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  round the South Pole, the *Antarctic* cap of the earth, comes into continued daylight, the sun at the same time reaching its southern turning point or tropic,  $23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  south of the equator, called the *Tropic of Capricorn*. This then is the midwinter position of the northern, the midsummer position of the southern hemisphere.

17. We can now understand why it is that the sun's path seems to rise and sink gradually during the year. In the illustration, the true sizes of the sun and earth could not be shown, and we must be careful not to be misled by it. From the immense distance of the sun its rays reach the earth in parallel lines, not in divergent rays as a glance at the illustration might suggest. Remembering this, if you draw a line parallel to a radius from the sun, to meet the latitude of  $50^{\circ}$  N. (that of south England) on the side of the earth next to the sun in the summer and winter positions B and D, you will notice what a large angle the sun's rays form with the earth at that latitude in midsummer, and how small an angle in winter. Thus it is that in the latitude of London the sun appears to vary in its meridian or midday altitude above our horizon, increasing its arch gradually from one of a height of  $15^{\circ}$  in midwinter to one of  $62^{\circ}$  in midsummer.

18. Since the sun is the great source of the heat which is experienced on the surface of the earth, it follows that the *temperature* of any part of the surface mainly depends upon the amount of sunshine it receives. When any part of the earth is turned towards the sun it is receiving heat, when it has turned away from the sun at night into the darkness, it rapidly parts with heat by radiation. As the average temperature of every place on the earth, observed from year to year carefully by thermometer, is found to remain very nearly constant, it follows that the whole quantity of heat received from the sun, and the amount radiated away into space, must be nearly balanced ; there is no accumulation of heat going on in any part of the world, and no rapid increment of cold in any region.

19. The amount of heat received by any place during the year, however, varies not only with the time of its exposure to the sun's rays, or the length of day and night, but in a still greater degree

with the angle of incidence of the solar rays, the apparent height of the sun above its horizon. It is obvious that the rays which fall vertically are the most concentrated of all, and that those which fall slantingly are more diffused, the diffusion increasing with the amount of obliquity. This will be readily understood from the accompanying diagram (Fig. 25), which represents a ray of light of the same breadth striking the ground at three different angles. When it falls perpendicularly it is concentrated on a space of the ground which is only equal

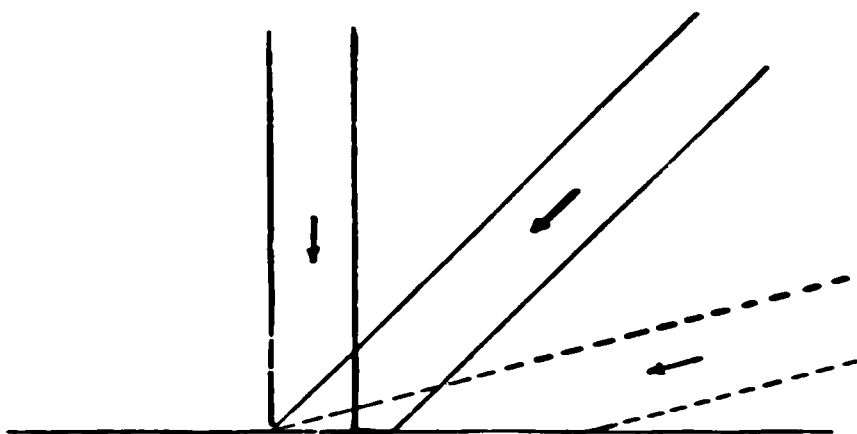


Fig. 25.

to the breadth of the ray ; as the angle of incidence decreases, the heat and light of the ray are spread over a much greater breadth, and are weakened in proportion.

20. This fact of decrease of temperature with increasing obliquity of incidence of the sun's rays enables us to understand both those variations of temperature which are experienced between the poles and the equator, and the changes of warmth during the period of a day, from the cool morning, when the earth is turning to meet the sun's almost level rays up to the heat of midday, when its light is pouring down upon us from the crown of its arch in the sky.

21. Thus the equatorial regions of the globe, receiving the most direct rays, are the hottest of all ; the zone between the two tropics, or apparent turning points of the sun, in which the sun can never appear at a greater distance than twice the distance of each tropic from the equator ( $23\frac{1}{2} + 23\frac{1}{2}$ ), or  $47^\circ$  from the zenith of an observer in any part of the zone, is on this account called the *torrid* or hot zone. It has little seasonal change. Between the tropics and the Arctic and Antarctic circle, the sun's midday altitude has a range nearly from the zenith, on the borders of each tropic, down to the horizon on the skirts of the polar circles ; the belts marked out between the tropics and the polar circles are thus called the *temperate* zones, and have very marked seasonal changes. The caps of the globe within the polar circles, each of which receives but scanty heat from the almost horizontal rays of the sun during its long daylight, and is in the shadow side of the earth for a considerable period of each year, are the coldest parts of the earth, and are thus appropriately called the *frigid* zones, or the *Arctic* and



*Antarctic regions.* In these the sun never appears at a higher level above the horizon than twice  $23\frac{1}{2}$  or 47 degrees.

22. A ray of sunlight, besides being more diffused or spread over a larger space in reaching the earth at a low angle, loses part of its heat by absorption in the earth's atmosphere: the farther a ray has to pass through the air, or the more obliquely it falls, the more its heat will then be *absorbed*. Part is also *reflected* from the atmosphere, and thus lost to the earth, the loss on this account being also greater the more the obliquity increases.

23. From all these considerations it results that in comparison with the amount of heat received by the earth from the vertical sun, the quantity is reduced by about a fourth when the sun's meridional altitude is  $60^\circ$ , by a third when it is  $50^\circ$ , by nearly a half when it is  $35^\circ$ , and by about three-fourths of its amount when the sun's altitude is  $25^\circ$ . When the sun's arch is as little as  $5^\circ$  above the horizon, the comparative amount of heat received from its rays is but  $\frac{1}{16}$ th part of that given by the vertical sun; a result which enables us to understand why it is that during the long-continued daylight experienced within the polar circles for six months of the year, the ice which characterises these regions is *not* entirely melted away by the sun's rays.

24. If there were no other circumstances affecting the distribution of the sun's heat, or if the earth were perfectly uniform in surface, the temperature of each belt would decrease equally at each season by the parallels of latitude from the equator to the poles, and the zones, torrid, temperate, and frigid, with their definite boundaries, would be precise limits of climate; but other causes intervene to disturb the regularity of these divisions, and this leads us to consider next the distribution of land and water on the globe.

### III. DISTRIBUTION OF LAND AND SEA.

1. We have noticed in the foregoing sketch of the progress of discovery how for centuries after Columbus had crossed the Atlantic, and Magellan had sailed through the vast breadth of the Pacific Ocean, men clung still to the idea of a great southern continent, a land that must exist, it was thought, to maintain the balance of the great continents, the coast-lines of which were beginning to be known in the northern hemisphere; how Tasman, when he discovered New Zealand, following this idea, believed it to be no other than a part of Staaten Land which his countrymen Schouten and Lemaire had seen to southward of Magellan's Strait; and how it was not till Cook, in his great voyages during the eighteenth century, had sailed

back and forward zigzag all through the region in which this mythical southern continent had been depicted upon the maps of the world, finding nothing but sea up to the ice-barriers of the Antarctic region, that the enormous expanse of water in the southern hemisphere of the globe was finally realised.

2. Now that all, or very nearly all, the coast-lines of the globe have been mapped out, it requires but a glance at the chart of the world to convince oneself that the sea covers a far greater portion of the earth's surface than is exposed as dry land. About three quarters of the surface is occupied by ocean, leaving only one quarter above the sea; or, if we measure still more accurately, we find that of the 196 millions of square miles of the globe's superficial area, 55 millions only are occupied by land, and 141 millions by water.

3. It is also evident that the distribution of land and sea is a very irregular one; that the land is crowded together in that hemisphere which is north of the equator, and that this half of the globe has nearly three times as much land as the corresponding southern half. If, however, we suppose the globe to be divided into hemispheres, one of which has its pole in southern England, the other near New Zealand, and draw a map of the world on this plan, as in the figure (Fig. 26), the contrast in the distribution of land and water is brought out most clearly of all. The hemisphere with England as its centre embraces nearly all Europe, Asia, and Africa, besides North America and South America except its southern prolongation; while the other hemisphere, of which New Zealand is the centre, shows no land except this, and Australia, the East India Islands, and the long southern cape of South America. On this account the halves of the globe shown in the figure have been called the continental or *land* and the oceanic or *water* hemispheres.

4. In looking at the chart the general outward similarity in the form of the great masses of the land called the continents<sup>1</sup> cannot fail to be noted as a remarkable feature. Each of the four, as shown in the land hemisphere—Asia, Africa, North America, and South America—is massive and broad toward the north, but tapering and wedge-like to the south. The islands or fragmentary parts of the land appear as a rule to the south and east of the continents; the East Indian Archipelago to the south-east of Asia, Madagascar to the south-east of Africa, the West Indian Islands to the south-east of North America, the Falkland Islands to the south-east of South America.

5. While there is a general similarity in the form of the masses of the land, strong contrasts are presented when we come to look at

<sup>1</sup> *con* "together," and *tenes* "I hold."

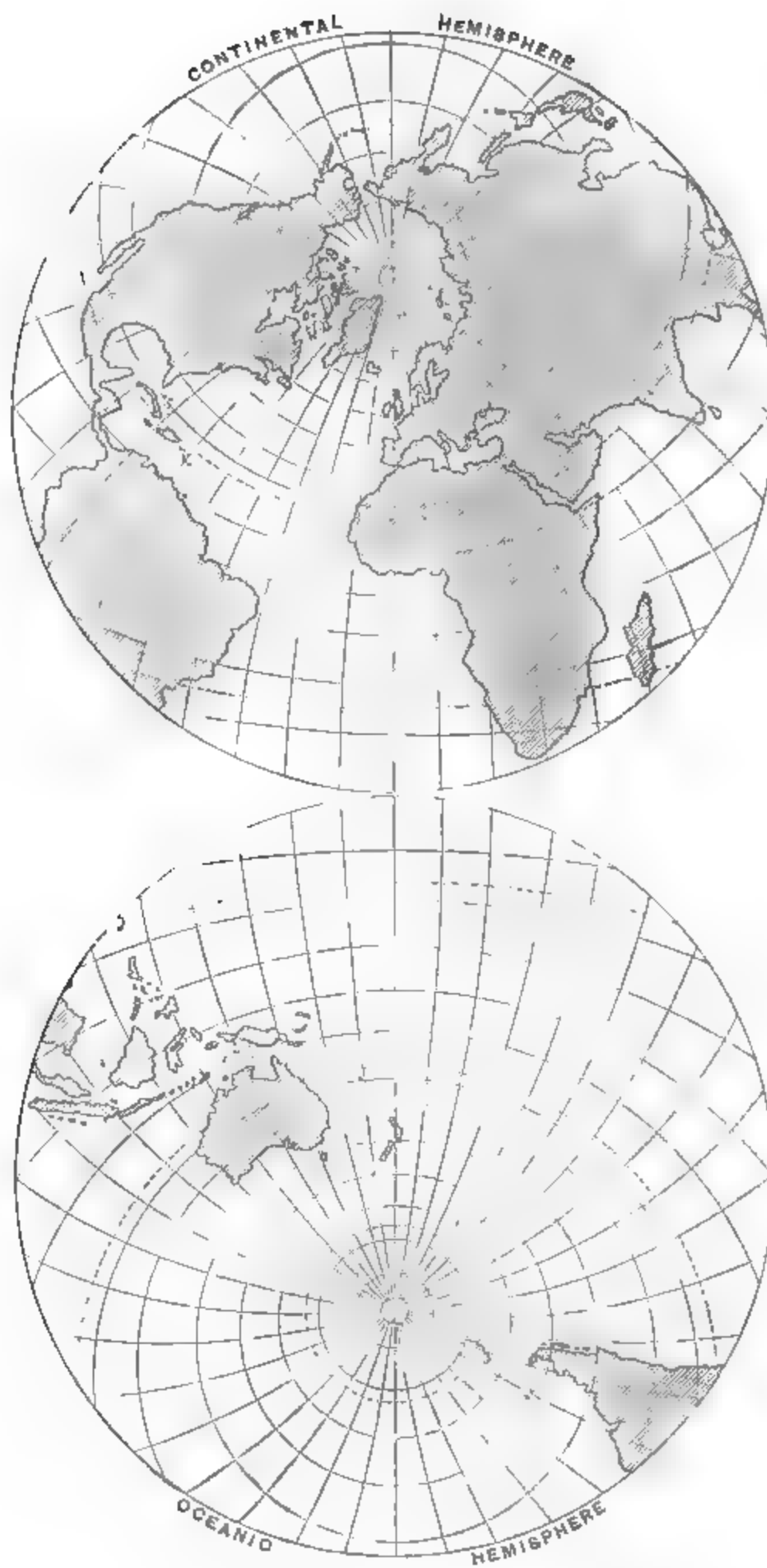


Fig. 26.

their outline more in detail. Some reach out in spreading members, others are rounded and compact. Looking at the continent of Europe and Asia, we see that it is deeply cut into by arms and bays of the ocean, between which corresponding promontories and peninsulas<sup>1</sup> of the land run out. On the European side are the great inlets of the Mediterranean and the Baltic, corresponding to a series of peninsulas such as those of Spain, Italy, Greece, Denmark, and Scandinavia. On the opposite side, the continent also branches out in the peninsulas of Kamtchatka and Korea, in the great promontories of further India, Hindustan, and Arabia. Africa by contrast is rounded and close in outline, and has no single deep inlet in its coast-line. Its rounded form is nearly copied in Australia and in South America, but North America, like Asia and Europe, has deep bays and branching arms on both coasts, such as those of Alaska and California on the Pacific side, and Labrador, Nova Scotia, and Florida on the Atlantic coast-line.

6. When taken in connection with the history of the progress of discovery, and after that of the gradual spread of knowledge and civilisation over the earth, this study of the external form of the lands of the globe, and the shape of their coast-line, becomes one of remarkable interest. Discovery has always advanced far more rapidly by sea than by land. Now those parts of the land which are most easily approached by sea from any direction are the small fragments of it (the islands) which are bathed on all sides by the ocean; after these, in point of accessibility, come those shores in which deep inlets and projecting peninsulas give smoother water and shelter to approaching ships. Those coasts which are rounded and unbroken and exposed to the unchecked power of the ocean, on the other hand, refuse a harbour to the approaching vessel, or an easy landing to its crew.

7. In a former paragraph it has been stated that the position of any point on the surface of the earth is determined by reference to its *latitude*, its distance north or south of the central line of the equator; and *longitude*, its distance east or west of a chosen zero meridian, at right angles to the former. This, however, is still an imperfect determination, for it omits the consideration of the elevation of the point on the earth's surface in respect to other neighbouring points. The third co-ordinate of *elevation* is necessary to a perfect definition of position.

8. Since for the purpose of comparison all measurements of height or depth must be referred to one uniform datum line or starting point, the level of the surface of the sea has been adopted as giving the zero line of all measurements of so-called *absolute*

<sup>1</sup> *Pæne* "almost." *insula*, "an island."

height above, or absolute depth beneath, this level on the earth's surface. A distinction must of course be drawn between measurements from this base and the *relative* heights or depths of any points, such as the elevation of a mountain peak above the neighbouring plain, or the depth of the bed of a lake beneath the level of its surface water.

9. It would carry us too far away from our subject to discuss here the various methods which are employed in determining elevation, by means of the barometer, which shows the amount of atmosphere left beneath the observer in ascending, or by trigonometrical measurement with the theodolite; or to describe the method of measuring depth by the sounding line.

10. As yet this third element of elevation has been determined with precision for comparatively few points of the earth's surface; though, by means of the convenient barometer, a good general idea has been obtained of the absolute height of large areas of the land. Accurate depth-measurements from which the form of the sea bed can be obtained are as yet fewer in number, but we are receiving additions every year.

11. Let us glance, then, first, at what is known of this general elevation of the continents. The greatest absolute elevation that has been measured is that of the summit of Mount Everest in the Himalaya range, north of India, 29,002 feet, or  $5\frac{1}{2}$  English miles, above the sea level. It is useful to compare this great elevation with the diameter of the globe, both to gain an idea of the size of the earth, and of the insignificance of even such a mountain range as the Himalaya when compared with its mass. The height of Mount Everest does not amount to a 1400th part of the diameter of the earth; or, if we suppose the earth to be represented by a globe of 14 inches in diameter, the highest mountain shown on this scale would not amount to the 100th part of an inch, or would come within the thickness of a sheet of paper laid on the globe. It must be remembered, however, that Mount Everest is only a single point in a range, the *average* elevation of which does not much exceed half the height of its summits.

12. The average elevation of the whole of the land of the globe, again, is very small in comparison with that of the range of the Himalaya. As yet the number of elevations that have been determined are too few to enable any accurate estimate of the mean elevation of all the land above the sea level to be made; but present knowledge indicates that this may be assumed at about 2250<sup>1</sup> feet. If, then, the greatest height of all on the earth's surface would lie within the thickness of a sheet of paper laid upon our supposed globe, a thirteenth part of this thickness would nearly represent the average height of the land above the sea level.

<sup>1</sup> Dr. J. Murray's estimate (1888); M. Lapparent makes it 2120 feet.

13. Only within recent years, and chiefly in connexion with the laying of telegraph cables from one continent to another, has attention been turned to the question of the depth of the sea and the form of its bed beyond the mere margin of its shores. The North Atlantic has now been sounded in many directions, so that a general plan of its trough can be made with some accuracy, elsewhere accurate soundings are as yet fewer in number. The greatest depths yet found by trustworthy soundings exceed the greatest land heights by nearly 2000 feet. The 27,900 feet obtained by Commander Belknap of the United States Navy in 1874 near the Kurile Islands were greatly exceeded by the soundings obtained in 1896 by Commander A. F. Balfour of H.M.S. *Penguin* about 100 miles N.E. of the Kermaderc group (30,882 feet), and 100 miles E. Macarthy Island (30,936 feet), both in the South Pacific. But the greatest yet recorded is the *Nero Deep* (31,614 feet), discovered in 1900 by Captain Hodges of the U.S. ship *Nero*, between Guam and Midway Islands in the North Pacific. The average, being more than 12,500 feet, is thus much greater than the mean height of dry land. Even in the Mediterranean the Austrian ship *Pola* found a depression of 14,436 feet in 1892, about 58 miles S.W. of Cape Matapan.

14. The mean depth of the sea is in fact more than five times the mean height of the continental land; and the oceanic water on the earth occupies nearly fourteen times as much space as the dry land. This contrast will be made more striking if we suppose that all the continents could be pared off from the globe at the line of the sea level and gathered up. If then this mass was thrown into the trough of the Atlantic, it would not half fill it up.

15. At first sight there appears to be no general relation subsisting between the distribution of height on one continent and on another. The two Americas indeed correspond remarkably in having their greatest height along their western borders, but in Asia and Africa and Australia the highest lands lie towards the opposite margins of the continents. A closer study of the great lines of height on the globe, however, discloses some very remarkable points of correspondence throughout their whole system. It is first observed that the higher parts of each continent rise towards one or other margin of the mass of land not centrally; next that these heights descend more steeply towards that coast of the continent nearest which they rise, and sink with a more gentle descent on the opposite side, farthest from the sea. Moreover, almost all the greater heights lie on those sides of the continents which are nearest to the greater areas of water, the Pacific and Indian Oceans, while most of the gentler slopes, and the broad plains extending from them, lie round



the narrower divisions of the water, the Atlantic and Arctic Oceans.

16. If we were to make a tour of the shores of the Pacific and Indian Oceans, we should pass in succession all the highest mountains of the world. Starting at Cape Horn, we should keep in sight of the vast range of the Andes all along the South American coast for 5000 miles; sailing on by the Isthmus of Panama, the high volcanoes of Central America would come in view; next, the high western edge of the table-land of Mexico, then the Sierra Nevada of California, and after that the Cascade Range, and the lofty peak of Mount St. Elias seen fifty miles out at sea. The chain of high volcanoes of the Aleutian Islands would guide us across to the mountains of Kamtchatka, the mountains of Korea, and the Khinghan Range, which form the eastern slope of the great table-land of Asia. The outliers of the Peling and Nanling mountains of China would next pass in review. From the Indian Ocean we might approach the base of the giant range of the Himalaya; from the Arabian Sea the buttresses of the plateau of Persia. Along the east coast of Africa also we should have, with the exception of the Ruwenzori range, the highest land near at hand; from the Abyssinian heights in the north, past Kenia and Kilimanjaro, near the equator, to the Drakenberg of Natal and the terraced ranges of Cape Colony.

17. Thus we have seen that all the highest lands, with very few exceptions, lie close to the borders of the greatest expanse of ocean on the globe, and in most cases rise directly from its waters. If we were to climb any of these steep buttresses that we have been looking at in making the circuit of the Pacific and Indian Oceans, and pass over their summits, we should find that in almost every case the inner slope was a comparatively short one, that the land immediately behind them appeared as a high table-land or plateau of more level character; farther, that this plateau was enclosed on the landward side by a second range of heights running roughly parallel to the coast range at a greater or less distance from it. On crossing this second ridge, however, we should find the land descending by a gradual slope to low plains which stretch away for hundreds of miles to the Atlantic or Arctic coast.

18. This general form of the land will be made clearer by comparing the accompanying diagrams, which represent sections, greatly exaggerated in vertical scale, through South and North America, Asia, and Africa.

19. If we were to climb the steep slope of the Andes from the Pacific shores and cross the summit by one of the passes, we should find ourselves on the high table-lands, it may be of Bolivia, of Peru, or Ecuador, which are supported between the lines of the Cordilleras



at an average elevation of 12,000 feet above the sea. Behind the Sierra Madre of Mexico we should find ourselves on the great table-



Fig. 27

land of Anahuac, everywhere about 7500 feet above the sea level. Farther north, across the Sierra Nevada or the Cascade Mountains, the great plateau of the Western United States would be reached spreading out to the Rocky Mountain ranges which support it on the landward side. In Asia, if we ascended the Khyngan Mountains or the Himalaya, we should find ourselves on the great plateau of Tibet, where rivers are navigated at an elevation of 14,000 feet above the sea; and the land would remain high as we advanced into the interior of the continent, until the second inclosing ranges of the Altai and Thian Shan mountains were crossed, when the land would be found to sink in the low plains of Siberia. Or again, if the steep edge of the mountains which rise from the Red Sea had been climbed, we should stand on the high plateau of Abyssinia, with its pastoral plains 7000 feet above the sea level, and crossing its opposite border, should descend to the valley of the Nile and the lowlands of the Sudan, which extend all the way to the Niger and the Atlantic.

20. The mountains which rise round the Mediterranean, in southern Europe and north Africa, may not exhibit this system of distribution of height so completely. Still if we look at the general form of the Alps we shall see that their steeper slope is to the south, and that they support the Bavarian plateau on the continental side. The mountains of Algeria also have their steepest descent to the Mediterranean, and enclose the high plateau of Barbary between their coast ranges and the inner Sahara Border Range, as it has been called, crossing which one would descend gradually to the lowlands of the desert. The general form

of the heights is here the same as in the greater elevations. If we come to Australia we shall find the same system of distribution. The Australian Alps lie close to the Pacific border of the continent; behind them are the high pastoral "downs," and from them the land sinks away to the lowlands which form nearly all the remainder of the great island.

21. Having gained a general idea of the distribution of land on the earth's surface, of its extent, and of the broad features of the relief or elevation of the continents, we now come to consider the general character of the different regions of the land as they are adapted for the habitation and development of mankind, as well as of the animal and vegetable populations of the earth.

#### IV. CAUSES WHICH DETERMINE CLIMATE.

1. The chief circumstance that determines the character of any region of the land, and the abundance or limitation of vegetable and animal forms upon it, is that of climate. Now the principal element in the formation of climate is, as we have already seen, the distribution of the sun's heat, the length of day and night, and the duration of the seasons. It was the observation of the effect of the varying slope of the sun's rays in countries lying north and south of one another that led Ptolemy, the geographer of Alexandria, to divide the earth into *climates*,<sup>1</sup> or zones differing in the length of their longest day. But there are a number of causes in operation which very considerably modify the manner of reception and distribution of the sun's heat and the effects of it on the earth's surface, all of which are taken into account in what is now understood by climate, a term which groups together all those external circumstances which give character to any region of the earth. We propose then to find out what these modifying causes of climate, in its old acceptation, are, and then to survey the general results of varying climate shown in the general character of the different regions of the land.

2. We have just been considering the relief of the land of the globe and the difference of elevation of its surface. Every one who has climbed a mountain must have observed how the air became cooler as he got up higher, and that it was colder at the top than it had been at the bottom. Why this should be the case may be understood when we learn that the air is warmed, not by the direct passage of the sun's rays through it, since but little heat is absorbed in this way by the atmosphere, but chiefly by contact with the

<sup>1</sup> κλίματα, slopes or inclinations.

warmed surface of the earth ; hence it is evident that the lowest strata of the air, in immediate contact with the earth, will be most heated by the sun's rays, the upper least of all. The upper air, also, subjected to less pressure, occupies greater space, and a loss of heat attends this expansion or separation of its particles ; and the less covering of atmosphere there is, the more rapidly can radiation of heat take place from the earth. The rate at which temperature diminishes with elevation is generally stated to be about  $1^{\circ}$  of the scale of Fahrenheit's thermometer for every 300 feet of ascent ; but on mountains this varies very much according to situation and season.

3. The clearest evidence of the existence of such a decrease of temperature with elevation is afforded by the snow-clad summits which may be seen even in the tropical zone. Mount Kilimanjaro, for example, rises on the eastern heights of Africa, almost under the equator, and snow lies all the year round on its summit above an elevation of 16,400 feet. The average temperature of the air at the sea level in this part of Africa is about  $85^{\circ}$  F., an almost burning heat, but the presence of the snow on this mountain shows that the temperature at 16,400 feet must average less than  $32^{\circ}$ . But snow does not remain unmelted at the level of the sea in any parts of the earth excepting the polar regions. From this it is evident that a change of elevation of a few thousand feet at the equator produces a change of temperature-climate as great as would be experienced in sailing from the equator 6000 miles to the frozen regions of the poles. Thus also, two places at the same distance from the equator, each receiving the same amount of sunlight, having days of the same length, and experiencing the same changes of season, but one of them elevated, the other low-lying, may have a very different climate. The elevation of the land thus introduces one very important modification of the climate due to latitude.

4. A second modification, scarcely less considerable, is due to the situation of different parts of the continents with reference to the ocean ; for land and water differ very greatly in their manner of reception of the sun's heat, and in their powers of conducting and retaining it. The heat which falls upon the *land* is arrested by a thin layer of the surface soil, the particles of which, having no movement among one another, cannot communicate their warmth downward except by the slow process known as conduction. This daily process of heating downwards ceases to be perceptible generally at a depth of four feet from the surface, but varies according to the nature of the soil. Bare desert sand, for example, has so little conducting power, that the sun's heat accumulates during the day on the very surface layer till it is raised to an intense heat. Where

vegetation, such as grass, covers the land, the temperature does not rise so rapidly, for part of the heat is spent in evaporating the moisture of the plants, and their blades, in free contact with the air, give off to it their superfluous warmth. Where forests cover the ground, the change of temperature during the day is much retarded; observation shows that the trees do not reach their maximum temperature till after sunset, and they thus store up the heat of day against the cold of night. The heat rays which descend upon the *ocean* are not stopped and accumulated at the surface as on the land, but penetrate to some depth—not, however, by conduction. The action of waves tends to diffuse their heat through the surface stratum; but evaporation, on the other hand, is always reducing the temperature. And the “specific heat” of water is very great. It requires more heat to raise its temperature by one degree than it does to increase the temperature of almost any other substance by a like amount. The amount of heat that would raise a pound of water one degree, would produce an equivalent rise of temperature in four pounds of chalk or nine pounds of iron.

Hence the temperature of the sea in any latitude cannot be raised to the same degree as that of the land on the same parallel receiving the same amount of sunlight. But, for the same reasons, the sea retains its heat much longer than the land.

5. Now, since the temperature of the atmosphere depends mainly upon the heat radiated upward from the surface upon which it rests, the air over the land must be heated in a different degree from that which lies over the ocean. During the long days of their summer, the temperature of the great masses of land in the northern or southern hemispheres becomes much warmer than the ocean on each side of them; but in winter the land, and the air over it, falls to a much lower temperature than the heat-storing ocean. This brings about a difference of climate between those regions of the land which lie nearest the sea and the interior countries of the continent. The temperature of a country bordering on the sea in the temperate zone is lowered in summer by the presence of the more slowly warming sea nearer it; in winter, however, its temperature does not fall so low as it otherwise would, for the sea round it has stored up the warmth of summer, and quantities of moist air flow over the cooler land, bringing with them and distributing the warmth of the sun in winter rains. Countries lying far from the sea have, in contrast to this, great heat in summer and excessive cold in winter. Thus the unequal reception of heat by land and sea introduces the modification known as the insular or maritime and the continental climate, the one more uniform, the other excessive. Our climate in the British Isles is decidedly a maritime one, its average temperature

rauding from about  $40^{\circ}$  to  $60^{\circ}$  F. In central Asia, however, in the same latitude, and at the same height above the sea, the average temperature ranges from  $0^{\circ}$ <sup>1</sup> in winter to about  $70^{\circ}$  in summer. The temperature of the British Isles surrounded by the sea thus varies only  $20^{\circ}$  on an average during the year, but that of the centre of the continent in the same latitude changes to the extent of  $70^{\circ}$ .

6. In bringing about this difference of maritime and continental climate, especially in aiding to equalise that of the coast regions, the movements of the air brought about by the unequal heating of land and sea play an important part. The movement of air due to heat at one point is familiarly illustrated in the draught which ascends the chimney over a fire, or the current from outside into a warm room when the door or window is opened. Heat accumulating rapidly on the surface of the land during the day causes an ascending current, towards which the cooler air is drawn from over the sea, which, as we have seen, takes a far longer time to become warmed. At night the land radiates its heat rapidly, the temperature of the air over it falls below that of the neighbouring sea, the air is thus made dense, the current is reversed, and the wind blows seaward. This is the origin of

the *land and sea breezes* which alternate on the coasts of all countries in warm latitudes; it explains also the much more extensive movements of the atmosphere caused by the excessive heating of the continental lands during their summer



Fig. 25.

and their excessive cooling during winter. Excess of heat in summer produces an expansion and an upward current, which draws the winds inward to the continent from all sides; excess of cold in winter, on the other hand, tends to increase the density of the air over the continent, and to bring about a downward or outward flow of it to all sides. Thus the winds round each of the continents have a more or less regular periodical or seasonal flow — into the continent during its summer, and out of it on all sides when its winter cold is greatest. This movement is most marked in the largest of the continents, that of Asia, and the periodical winds round its south and eastern borders are on this account known as the *monsoons*, a name adopted from the Arabic word *Mausum*, a season.

7. Over the belt of the equatorial region of the globe which is beneath the vertical sun, where the heat is greatest and evaporation

<sup>1</sup> Or  $32^{\circ}$  below freezing point.



most rapid, an ascending current of air rises at all seasons; to supply the place of the air which is thus raised, cooler denser air flows in horizontally from north and south towards the equatorial region, forming the most constant of the great atmospheric currents known on the globe, the *trade winds*. But air which is drawn towards the equator from, say, N. lat.  $25^{\circ}$ , has at first a velocity of rotation (W. to E.) which is less than that of the places it will in succession reach (since in 24 hours it describes a smaller circle); these places,

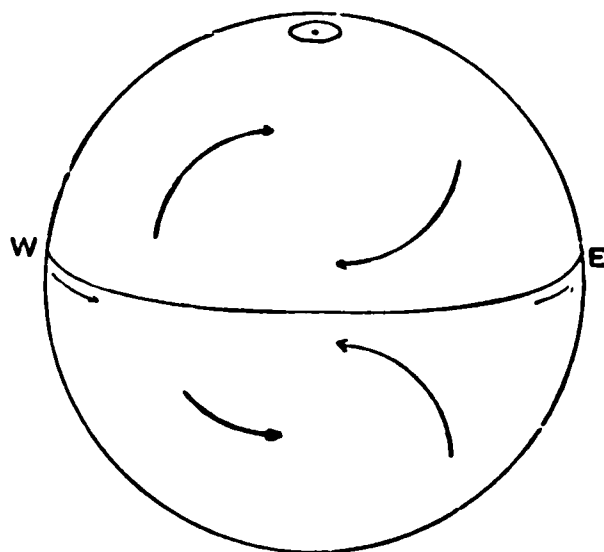


Fig. 29.

then, in their movement from W. to E., strike against the air which is being drawn from the north; hence the trade winds of the northern hemisphere appear as N.E. winds, and similarly those of the southern hemisphere as S.E. winds.

8. The return currents towards the poles, which restore to the north temperate regions the air which has been drawn from them to supply the trade winds, appear

in like manner not as direct southerly or northerly winds, but as the south-westerly winds with which we are familiar, and as the north-westerly currents of the southern temperate latitudes.

9. It would take us too far from our subject to examine here the other complex agencies which bring about the manifold movements of the atmosphere; sufficient has perhaps been said to enable us to understand how the winds blowing generally from colder to warmer regions of the earth along its surface strive continually to equalise the temperature of the air over the whole globe, and to reduce the excessive variations of climate which would result from the absence of their powerful agency.

10. The accompanying charts indicate the direction of the greater currents of the atmosphere during the year. In looking at them, however, we must be careful to remember that they represent only the average of the many variations of direction that are brought about by local, changing, circumstances, which would require a chart for every day, perhaps for *every hour*, to represent them adequately. Even the so-called constant trade winds vary in position with each season, moving to and fro with the vertical sun between the tropics, and changing in strength with every hour of the day.

11. A fourth very important agent in modifying the climate due to latitude is present in the continual circulation of the waters of the ocean. Here we may leave out of consideration those swell-



London. Published for Edward Stanford, 12 J3 & 14 Long Acre W C





ings and fallings of the ocean which take place twice within the lunar day, called the tides, brought about by the attraction of the moon and sun on the waters of the globe. The undulation thus formed involves no onward movement of the water in the open ocean, no circulation of its particles; and it is only along the immediate shore that the tidal undulation is converted by the opposing land into an actual forward or sideward movement of the water. The tides play but a very insignificant part in the movements or interchange of the waters, and have no appreciable influence in modifying the climate of any part of the globe.

12. The great causes of circulation in the waters, like those which set the air in motion, operate at the surface of the earth itself, and though very various in their modes, are all referable, directly or indirectly, to the distribution of the sun's heat.

13. The grandest movement of circulation in the waters of the ocean is one which, it is now generally admitted, is caused by the differences of temperature of the polar and equatorial regions of the globe. The point of maximum density of fresh water is  $39^{\circ}$  F., and it freezes at  $32^{\circ}$  F.; but the salt water of the ocean does not solidify into ice till it has cooled down to  $27^{\circ}$ , or even to  $25^{\circ}$  if it is very saline, and its point of maximum density is still two degrees lower than this. When the water of the Arctic or Antarctic polar seas is cooled down to near this temperature, its greater weight gives it a tendency to sink and displace the water of less specific gravity beneath it. In this way a disturbance of equilibrium may be gradually brought about, and a very gradual "creeping flow" of the polar waters takes place along the floor of the ocean towards the equatorial region. To compensate this movement, the upper, warmer and lighter, stratum of water from the equatorial region is drawn north and south, and floats towards each polar region. The thermometers sent down with the sounding lines in each of the great sea-basins conclusively show that such an interchange of polar and equatorial water does take place; for it is found that the ocean water, in the greatest depths of the equatorial seas, has a temperature only a degree or two above the freezing point; and that only a comparatively shallow upper stratum of the surface water within the tropics is at a high temperature.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Other causes than the difference of temperature may be at work in producing or aiding this circulation. One high authority<sup>2</sup> considers the influx of cold water along the floor of the ocean, from the Antarctic regions, to be solely due to the "excess of evaporation over precipitation in the northern portion of the land hemisphere, and the excess of precipitation over evaporation in the middle and southern part of the water hemisphere." We have yet to learn, however, from actual observation, that there is an excess of precipitation over evaporation in the southern hemisphere. Quite the contrary view seems *prima facie* to be the reasonable one, that evaporation is in excess in the southern or water hemisphere, precipitation in excess of evaporation in the northern or land hemisphere of the globe.

<sup>2</sup> Sir Wyville Thomson.

Thus, in course of time, every drop of water in the ocean may pass from the poles to the equator and back again, and from the greatest depths up to the surface.

14. Much more important in their relation to climate than this gradual interchange of the ocean waters in its vertical circulation, are the superficial movements of the ocean waters in horizontal directions, forming the streams which are known as *ocean currents*. Among the various agencies which are at work upon the exposed surface of the ocean in producing these movements, the winds are the most active and powerful. Beneath the trade winds, in each hemisphere, great equatorial currents are found in each of the oceans, the Atlantic, the Indian Ocean, and the Pacific. Meeting and moving westward together, these equatorial streams reach the shores of continents which interrupt their path, and still pressed by the wind they escape northward and southward. Thus, in the Atlantic, part of the water, carried west to America by the equatorial streams, turns south along the Brazilian coast. But most of it sets north-west, partly through the Caribbean Sea and Gulf of Mexico round to Florida Strait, but mainly *outside* the West Indies to the northern entrance of Florida Strait, the junction of the two currents forming the *Gulf Stream*.<sup>1</sup> A third part of the excess drawn westward escapes back again eastward between the main branches of the equatorial streams, and forms the counter-stream known as the Guinea current.

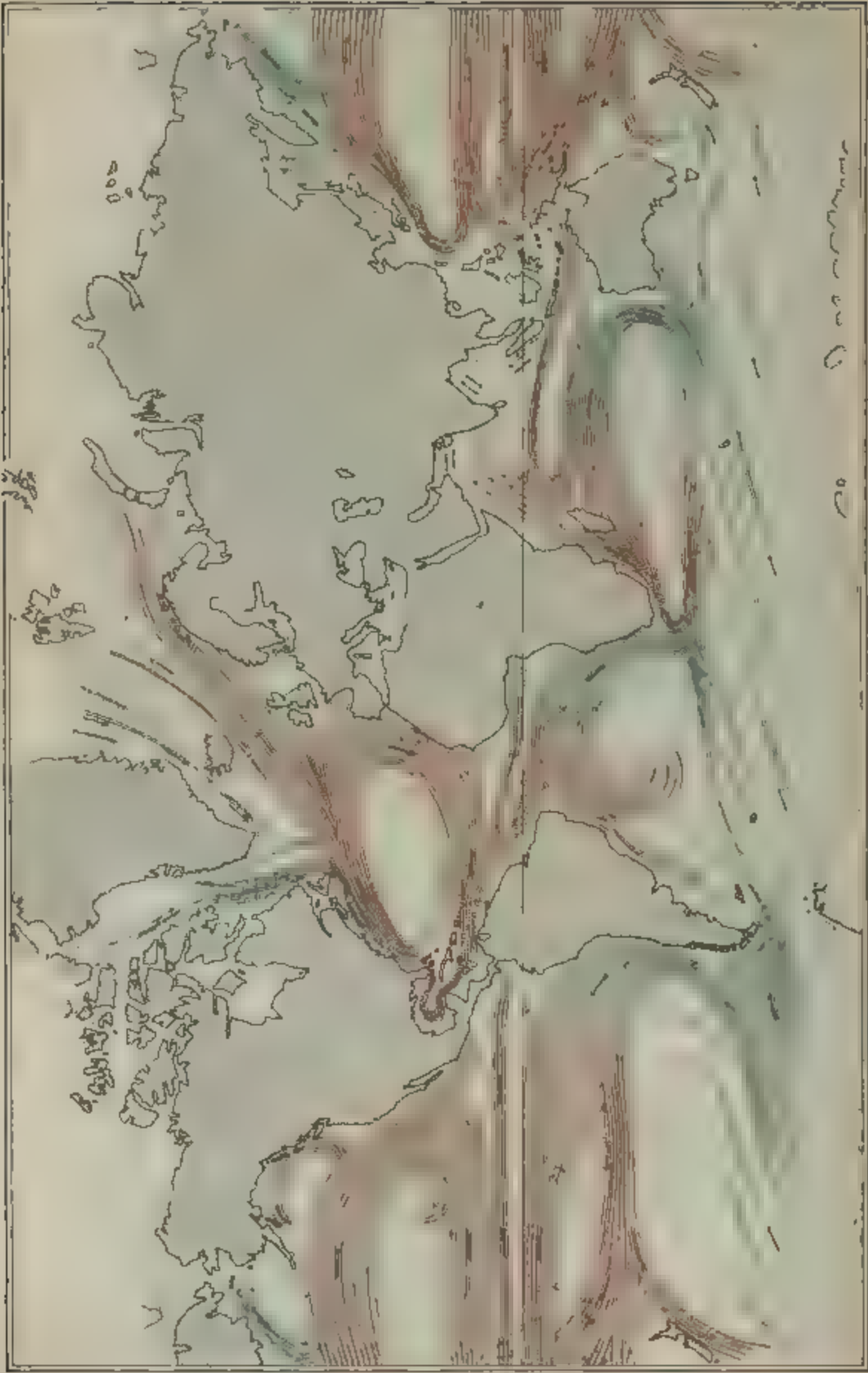
15. In the Pacific this system is developed on a still larger scale, and there the water carried westward escapes, as in the Atlantic, south and north by the coast of Australia, through the channels of the East India Islands, and by the great *Japan current*, called the Kuro Siwo, or black stream, the counterpart of the Gulf Stream of the Atlantic. Part also returns towards America as a central equatorial stream. In the Indian Ocean also the equatorial currents meeting the African coast escape southward by the *Mozambique current*, which flows down the East African coast to Cape Colony, and at some seasons also they find their way northward into the Arabian Sea. The currents of the north Indian Ocean are, however, controlled entirely in their movements by the monsoon winds, and thus change their direction completely in the course of the year, giving the clearest possible evidence of the power of the winds in the formation of these ocean streams.

16. Since the waters drawn forward by the trade winds to supply the great equatorial currents must be continually replaced, a series of supplying currents are formed, which complete the circulation. The finest examples of these are found in the great water expanse of the southern hemisphere; in the Humboldt or *Peruvian current*, which feeds the trade-wind stream along the west coast of

<sup>1</sup> So named because formerly these tepid waters were all supposed to flow from the Gulf of Mexico through Florida Strait to the North Atlantic.

11

OCEAN CURRENTS



London. Published by Edward Stanford 12 13 & 14 Long. Ave., W. C.

South America ; in the similarly formed *South Atlantic current* on the west coast of South Africa ; and in its counterpart, the west *Australian current*, passing into the trade-wind region of the south Indian Ocean. The indraught currents of the north Atlantic between Spain and the Azores, and of the Pacific opposite the shores of north California, are of exactly the same character.

17. But the indrawing by the trade-wind currents is only in part the cause of these supplying streams ; for the waters of the temperate region in each hemisphere are being borne forward, just as the currents beneath the trade winds, by the westerly winds, the return current of the trades, which prevail in these latitudes. As almost the whole of the Southern Ocean in temperate latitudes is encircled by water, there consequently the westerly winds have their greatest influence, and the whole surface of the ocean appears to have an eastward movement under their influence in the general current known as the *Antarctic drift*. In the northern hemisphere the Gulf Stream, partly escaping from the basin which gives its name, flows northward along the coast of the United States as far as Newfoundland, with the momentum given it by the "head" of water in the Gulf of Mexico ; but in doing so it becomes merged in the general drift of the ocean in a north-easterly direction under the south-west winds, and supplies this drift current with part of the warmed waters that it carries past the British Isles and Norway into the Arctic Gulf between Spitzbergen and Novaya Zemlya.

Just in the same way the Japan current is taken up and continued by the westerly wind drift of the Pacific, to be carried back to the American coast and round again by the equatorial stream.

18. Though Bering Strait, the connecting channel between the Arctic and Pacific Oceans, is about thirty-six miles wide, it is so shallow that its existence scarcely affects the conditions of the ocean on either side of it : the Arctic Sea, indeed, may be considered as a great gulf enclosed between North America and Siberia, partly blocked up at its mouth by the mass of Greenland, with one broad opening into it between Greenland and Norway, and a number of narrower connecting channels between Greenland and the islands of the American archipelago. We have seen that the westerly winds drift before them a great volume of water from southern latitudes past the British Isles and Norway into the Arctic Gulf between Spitzbergen and Novaya Zemlya. This water escapes again from the closed sea, in the same way as the accumulated water of the Caribbean Sea does in the Gulf Stream, mainly by the great ice-bearing *current of East Greenland*, which fills the sea between that coast and Iceland, and which, flowing into the Atlantic round

Cape Farewell, joins the united escape currents which have made their way through the channels of the Arctic islands, to form the ice stream of Labrador and Newfoundland.

19. The extraordinary effect of these ocean streams in modifying the climate of the lands towards which they flow, is nowhere so strikingly illustrated as in the contrast presented by the climate of the two sides of the North Atlantic in high latitudes. While on the *western* side the ice-bearing Labrador current closes the harbours of that coast, chills the atmosphere, and stunts the vegetation all along the shores of Newfoundland, carrying icebergs into the western Atlantic nearly to the latitude of Malta in the Mediterranean, the *eastern* shores of this ocean, our own islands, and the coasts of Norway, right up into the Arctic regions, are washed with warm water from the far south, which not only keeps them free of all ice, but enables the land to support a luxuriant vegetation. That this water has actually come from far southern latitudes is shown not only by its temperature but by its casting ashore on our coasts, or even on those of Norway, strange nuts and seeds or pieces of wood from tropical America or the West Indies. One might bathe off the North Cape of Norway, in  $71^{\circ}$  north latitude, in water of the same temperature as that in the harbour of New York, on the opposite side of the Atlantic, in lat.  $40^{\circ}$ .

20. The two sides of the North Pacific present the same contrast, from the same cause. There the shores of the Sea of Okhotsk are frozen over from November till April, and all its harbours are closed. The western shores of America, in the same latitude, towards which the north-east drift of the North Pacific carries warm water, are always freely open to navigation. It is through the agency of the winds, however, that the warmth thus carried by the ocean streams to high latitudes, or the chilly air from over the ice-pack which they bring southward, is carried on and distributed over the land to modify its climate. Here in England we know well the difference between a warm south-west and a chilly north-west wind; the one has come to us over the warm waters of the Atlantic; the other may have passed over the broad ice stream that comes down along the East Greenland coast.

21. As the currents are, in the main, dependent on the winds, it is not surprising to find, on comparing the chart of the prevailing winds with that of the ocean currents, that there is a very close agreement between them in direction and form. The winds, however, are not restricted as the ocean streams are, and so are able to carry their temperature onward over the land.

22. Hitherto we have been dealing with those modifications of climate which result from causes which raise or decrease the tem-



perature that would result from exposure to a certain quantity of sunlight. But heat and cold are not the only circumstances which go to form climate; moisture, and the absence of it, dryness, have quite as important an influence in determining its character. Let us see, then, in what manner moisture is broadly distributed over the land of the globe.

23. Evaporation, as may be readily understood, though it proceeds continually from water in whatever form it may occur, even in its solid state of ice and snow, is greatest where the sun's heat is most strongly felt, in tropical regions. In the belt of calms which lies between the two great converging air-currents of the trade winds, over the ocean in the equatorial zone, the sun generally rises in a clear sky; but about midday, when its rays have gained their full strength, the heated air from the surface of the sea ascending carries up with it great quantities of vapour, and the sky is soon covered with black clouds, from which prodigious quantities of rain descend; towards evening the sky again clears. A great part of the vapour thus drawn from the equatorial ocean falls back again in torrents to its surface, but a very large part is also carried on with the great trade-wind currents to the westward, to be expended ultimately in copious showers on the land which lies across the path of the broad current.

24. If we look at the chart of the winds, it will be seen that the north-east and south-east trade-winds of the Atlantic converge towards the American coasts between the Gulf of Mexico and Brazil. To the whole of the eastward slope of this region of the New World, from the Atlantic shores upward to the crests of the Andes, the trade winds carry the moisture they have gathered from the ocean, distilling it in the heavy showers which flood the vast rivers, the Amazon and Orinoco. From the great caldron of the Indian Ocean the south-east trade wind continually carries a supply of moisture towards equatorial Africa; the north-east monsoon aids it in this work for half the year, but during the other half turns to blow towards Asia, and travels laden with vapour till intercepted by the heights of India, giving to that region its season of heavy rains. The islands of the East Indian Archipelago, lying also across the path of the trade and the monsoon winds, are among the wettest regions of the earth.

25. Before going farther, it is necessary to understand one of the main conditions upon which the distribution of moisture by the winds depends. If a current of air is advancing from a cooler to a warmer zone, and if no other circumstance intervenes, its power of absorbing and retaining moisture will increase as it advances to warmer latitudes and becomes itself warmed. If, on the other

hand, the direction of the current is from warm to colder latitudes, its power of holding moisture is decreasing as it advances and becomes cooled. We have already noticed, however, that an increase of elevation above the earth's surface brings about a change of temperature which is equivalent to that which would be experienced in moving to a higher northern or southern zone; so that a current of air forced upward by any means to a higher level, will lose its power of retaining moisture just in the same way as if it had been carried to a colder latitude.

26. This enables us to understand how it is that the trade winds, blowing from cooler to warmer regions, lose the power of retaining the moisture they have gathered from the sea as soon as they are forced upward to higher levels by the intervening land. Over the ocean these winds, advancing to warmer latitudes at a uniform level, and increasing in temperature as they advance, appear uniformly as dry winds. In the Atlantic, for example, the islet of St. Helena, lying in the path of the south-east trade wind, and being of such inconsiderable size as to effect no disturbance in the current of the stream of air which passes it, has only about five inches of rain in the year. The Cape Verd islets, in the path of the north-east trade wind of this ocean, are also parched and dry. If we follow the broad paths of each of the trade-wind currents still farther back, to where they seem to come out of the land, we cannot fail to notice that every one of the regions from which they spring is barren and desert. Tracing the path of the north-east trade wind of the Atlantic eastward, we come to the great desert of the Sahara; the south-east current of the Atlantic, in like manner, seems to spring from the arid deserts of the Kalahara and of the south-west African coast. The north-east trade wind of the Pacific leaves the dry deserts of the western United States and of Lower California behind it; its south-east wind comes from the coast deserts of Peru, and Bolivia and Chile. If we follow the south-east trade wind of the Indian Ocean, we again reach a most arid region, that of central and western Australia. If we ask why all the driest regions of the land in each hemisphere should be those which lie in the areas of the original indraught to the trade winds, the answer evidently is this: they are thus dry and barren, because the air which passes over them has been drawn in each case from long distances overland, and is moving from colder to warmer latitudes, so that it passes by not only uncondensed in rain, but with an increasing tendency to promote evaporation, and to take up moisture from every water-surface over which it may blow. The influence of the horizontal extent of the land in determining its climate is here made apparent, for where this is greatest—as in Asia.

Africa, and Australia—the dry regions are widest; in America, where the width from sea to sea is much less, the dry regions are comparatively narrow and insignificant.

27. Thus we see that the greatest of the atmospheric currents, the trade winds, at the originating points of their paths, are the cause of drought and barrenness, but that where they cross land at the termination of their course in the equatorial zone they give the most copious rain supplies. This contrast may be made more striking if it is observed that in some parts of the Moroccan Sahara, near what may be called the head of the north-east trade wind of the Atlantic, not a shower is experienced for, it may be, twenty years at a time; but where this same wind reaches the coasts of South America, it brings a rainfall that represents a depth of twenty feet of water in the year.

28. The other great prevailing currents of the atmosphere, the westerly winds of the temperate regions, unlike the trade winds, blow from warmer to colder latitudes, so that the vapour they carry tends to become condensed as they advance, and they readily part with it in heavy rain showers whenever an opposing coast raises the stream to a higher level. To these south-westerly winds from the Atlantic the British Isles and all western Europe owe their moisture supply, as the similar winds from the Pacific bring the rain to the coasts of north-western America, and from the southern ocean to the slopes of Chile and New Zealand.

29. These great atmospheric currents, modified in many ways both by local circumstances and by seasonal changes, thus regulate the broader features of the distribution of moisture over the land. One of the most important of the minor conditions that guide the distribution of moisture is that of the relief of the land. Whenever any height intercepts the movement of a current of moist air from the ocean, the obstructing slope, wedging the air up into the cooler strata of the atmosphere, condenses the moisture into cloud and then into rain, which descends upon the outer slope, thereby diminishing the supply of the lands that lie behind this barrier. We need not go farther than our own islands for a good example of this. The



Fig. 30.

mountain districts of the west coast of Britain, of Wales, or Cumberland, or of Scotland, facing the prevailing south-west winds from the Atlantic (Fig. 30), have in some places ten times as much rainfall every year as the opposite or leeward coasts; in some years upwards

of 200 *inches of rain*<sup>1</sup> fall in some valleys of the Cumberland mountains in England, while the average annual rainfall of the east coasts on the opposite side is not more than 20 inches.

30. It may be safely said that *every* considerable mountain range or plateau has a wetter side and a drier one, or shows this contrast in a greater or less degree. An extreme example is presented by the lofty chain of the Andes in the trade-wind region, that side which faces the Atlantic winds having a rainfall that fills the great tributaries of the Amazon, while the opposite or leeward coast is so completely screened by the great barrier as to receive scarcely a drop of rain from year to year. This may also serve as an illustration of the influence of the rotation of the earth from west to east upon the climate of different regions of its surface. If we suppose the earth to have been set in rotation in the opposite direction, on the same axis, the direction of the trade winds would have been the reverse of their present curve, or they would have appeared as north-west and south-west winds. On the supposition of such a change, the trade winds of the Pacific would have poured their rain supplies on the steep *western* slope of the Andes, and all the humid forest basin of the Amazon would have been a bare riverless steppe.

31. All the great plateau lands of the globe, indeed, but more especially those which are walled in by two mountain buttresses, a maritime and an inland one, are characterised by deficiency of moisture supply. Such are the high bare plateaus of Bolivia and Peru between the Cordilleras of the Andes, called the *Punas*, and the "great basin" of the western United States lying between the Rocky Mountains and the Sierra Nevada, where the Salt Lake of Utah and the dry deserts of Colorado are found. The great central plateau of Asia, with the bare region of Mongolia and the Gobi desert, between the outer walls of the Khinghan and Altai mountains, is another example; as is also the dry plateau of Khorassan in Persia, enclosed between the mountains of Karman and the Elburz range.

32. Intermediate between those regions which are most bountifully supplied with rainfall through their situation with respect to moisture-bearing winds, and those in which deficiency of rain is observed, either through their position in relation to a current of air which passes over them from colder to warmer latitudes, or through their being screened from rain-bearing winds by mountain barriers, lie intermediate belts in which the supply of rain graduates from one extreme to the other. Excepting along the lines of some of the higher mountain ranges, there is nowhere any abrupt transition from a very moist to a very dry region.

<sup>1</sup> Meaning an amount that would cover the ground to a depth of 200 inches if the whole of it were collected for a year.

33. We have thus followed the chief links of the chain of conditions that go to form *climate*: we have seen that exposure to the more direct or more oblique incidence of the sun's rays resulting from latitude is not always the most influential element; that its effects are modified both in temperature and in moisture-supply by the relief of the land, by the maritime or continental situation of its different parts, and by the prevailing winds and the ocean currents which are driven by them, both of these being dependent in direction upon the rotation of the earth itself.

34. In reviewing and grouping together the broad features that characterise the landscape of different regions of the earth's surface, we find that these correspond precisely to the changes and gradations of heat and cold, moisture and drought; the more closely we study them, the more convinced do we become of their complete dependence upon climate in its widest sense. We now understand, for example, that it is not owing to any peculiarity of the soil that the Sahara region is a desert, and the Amazon basin a land of luxuriant forest growth, but mainly that the one is a region of extreme drought, the other of great moisture, both having a high average temperature; for we find the same conditions at the extremities of each of the divisions of the great trade-wind currents. In our own island, the same rock which weathers into the fertile soil of the Channel Islands gives the comparatively barren ground of some parts of the Highlands of Scotland; the rich pastures of Hereford, and some of the infertile moors of North Britain, lie on the same old red sandstone. To take another instance; the high Viti islands are clothed on that side which faces the trade wind of the Pacific with a luxuriant mantle of huge tree-ferns and creepers, while the leeward side displays only a grassy country. We cannot suppose this to be due to any difference of soil on the two sides of the island, but simply to the fact that one side is supplied with constant moisture from the ocean, while the other is deprived of this by the intervening height of the land, especially when we find the same appearance repeated not only on every ocean island but on every hill and mountain range of the land that is similarly situated with respect to a moisture-bearing stream of air.

35. The limits of the appearance of forest, of prairie or steppe, of desert "tundra" and snowfield, whether in latitude or in vertical elevation above the sea level, may thus be taken as marking in the most distinct way the true natural boundaries of the various climates of the land, and the great natural provinces of the globe.

As all animals live either on other animals or on vegetable food, it is evident that their distribution depends primarily upon that of climate. The herbivorous are restricted to the more limited regions correspond-



ing to the different zones of vegetation ; the carnivorous remain within hunting distance of those animals on which they prey.

It is, however, to the limiting effects of climate upon the distribution of man himself that we wish to direct attention here. In the first place, it is evident that man in his natural state cannot live where the land and sea are bound up so constantly in the grasp of frost that he cannot obtain food by hunting or fishing. The Eskimo of the Arctic region cannot range north farther than those latitudes in which the seal, their all in all, is sufficiently abundant, and all the Antarctic region capped by heavy ice is uninhabited by man. The great deserts of the world equally forbid almost any permanent settlement by man, and in crossing them the traveller makes what speed he can away from their barren sands. Thus the first paths of each of the trade-wind belts lie over almost uninhabited ground. It might be supposed that man would attain his greatest powers where vegetation and the lower forms of animal life attain their greatest luxuriance of growth, or in those equatorial regions in which heat and moisture are combined in greatest degree. But, on the contrary, if we look along the belt of equatorial forest, we find it everywhere to this day inhabited by savages the most barbarous. The selvas of the Amazon basin have their numberless tribes of uncivilised Indians ; the African equatorial forests their cannibal negro tribes ; the Philippine Archipelago the wild negritos in the deep solitude of their forests. If we look back at the history of the world as far as we know it, there is not the least sign of any spark of enlightenment, or of a thought much higher than the instincts of the lower animals, ever having been fostered within the hot and humid climate of these equatorial forests. Even when transferred thither from other regions, the energies and powers of man seem to fail beneath the tropical sun.

36. It is in the temperate regions of the Old World that the germs of religious thought, of art and government, and wide intercourse, have taken root and flourish, and thence too all the power that rules the world has spread out. It is in these middle latitudes alone that human energy seems capable of attaining its highest development. The history of progress in the American continent since its discovery by Europeans affords the best illustration of this. If we look for those portions of America which are now farthest advanced in every respect, most populous and most prosperous, we find them, not in the equatorial region which was earliest discovered and settled from Europe, but in the temperate latitudes, the United States in the northern, and the province of the La Plata basin in the southern continent. Approaching the equatorial zone from either of these two regions, we come to States such as Bolivia, Peru, Ecuador,

Venezuela, which lie indolent and half civilised, their natural wealth undeveloped, their government in the hands of half-castes. The tropical island of Hayti, where Columbus planted the first European settlement of the New World, is now a debased negro republic, the Africans having expelled the white men who brought them thither.

37. The natural condition of men inhabiting the forest regions of the globe is that of hunters and trappers, and these pursuits are characteristic of the sombre forests of Hudson's Bay territory and of Siberia at the present day. Pastoral countries, on the other hand, generally present a small nomadic population, like that of the herdsmen of the Russian steppes, the cattle-driving "gauchos" of the Argentine pampas, or the Arabs with their droves of camels. It is between these extremes, in the belts which lie along the borders of the forests, that the agricultural districts of the world are found—districts in which men have first collected together in fixed habitations, gradually forming villages, and towns, and cities, acting together for common purposes and becoming civilised.<sup>1</sup> From these points inroads have been gradually made into the forests, for their climate and vegetable soil is also well adapted for agriculture, until, as in Europe or the eastern United States, the larger proportion of the land has been cleared of its natural wood and parcelled out into hedged fields. The most densely inhabited portions of the Old World, the great plain of China, the alluvial valley of the Ganges, the plain of Lombardy, and the lowlands of Belgium, are those which have the greatest agricultural capabilities.

38. The general distribution and condition of the human race are thus determined mainly by climate and by the characteristic landscapes which have resulted from its variations.

39. Subject to this main controlling element, the local arrangement and accumulation of population seems to have been to a large extent determined, especially in the later historical periods, by another independent cause—the presence of mineral wealth. It was the wealth of Tartessus in silver, lead, and iron, that drew the Phœnicians through the Straits of Gibraltar, and the tin of Cornwall that brought their ships to Britain; the search after "El Dorado" caused the Spaniards to overrun all the South American continent and Mexico; California owed its population, in the first place, to its gold, just as the gold of Victoria in Australia has raised it above the older parent colony of New South Wales; and as the discovery of diamonds drew thousands to settle even in the arid plains of Griqualand in South Africa.

With the more extended use of machinery driven by steam,

<sup>1</sup> Lat. *civis*, a citizen.



in place of manual labour, coal and iron have wielded the greatest influence in determining the local concentrations of people. The manufacturing districts of our own island, the "Black country," lying over the iron and coal fields, is its most densely peopled area, the workshop of the world. A dense population has in like manner gathered over the iron and coal fields of Pennsylvania, in the United States. Commerce, dependent on the variety of productions of different lands and the exchange of surplus products or manufactures, is regulated in the paths which it follows by physical causes, and brings men to the natural inlets of every country, the estuaries of the river highways. In the ports, the business of the world is carried on, the products of the interior are stored for export, and those of foreign lands for distribution inward; hence many of the great cities of the world have grown up round their seaports.

## V. PEOPLES OF THE WORLD: NATURAL, RELIGIOUS, AND POLITICAL SYSTEMS.

1. It is important to remember that the population of the world, now estimated at about or over 1500 millions, is by no means a constant number; that it has been increasing steadily and rapidly throughout all historical ages. The United States of America, for example, have amassed their eighty or ninety millions of inhabitants, foreign to the soil, in little over a century, and Australia has been peopled within far less time. If the present average rate of increase of numbers continues, it has been calculated that the population of Europe will be about twice as dense in the year 2000 as it is in the present year. The rate of increase in different parts of Europe is, however, very various; some states, such as Great Britain, are rushing upwards in numbers; while others, such as France, appear to have arrived at a point from which the population neither advances nor decreases.

2. It has been well remarked that countries which possess the most varied physical features, and which, in consequence, have the greatest variety of climate and landscape, giving the greatest range of character and occupation to their inhabitants, have produced the most highly-developed races, who have borne and continue to bear rule upon earth. Such countries are Persia, Greece, Italy, Spain, and in a far higher degree our own British Isles.

3. Throughout the many classifications of the varieties of the human family in the different schools of ethnology,<sup>1</sup> there is a general agreement in recognising the peoples of the most highly-

<sup>1</sup> *Ethnos*, race; *logos*, discourse.

developed nations of the world, which extend from India across Europe, as belonging for the most part to one group. This is called the Aryan or Indo-European family of nations, the first name being preserved in the modern native name of Persia, Airan or Iran. Somewhere in central Asia the mother nation of the Indo-European peoples had its primitive seat, while Europe, before the dawn of history, was perhaps inhabited by tribes allied to the Iberians and Eskimo of America. From this Asiatic centre successive migrations seem to have taken place outward to north-west, the first swarm having been the Celts, who at one time appear to have occupied a great part of Europe; later, along the Mediterranean shores, came the ancestors of the Greek and of the Italian peoples; while a more northerly stream is thought to have taken its way round the Caspian to form the Teutonic and the Slavonic nations. Subsequently migrants seem to have poured out in the opposite direction towards the plains of India, where the Aryans became the dominant race of the fertile Ganges valley, those remaining at home becoming the great Medes and Persians of history. Increasing ever in civilisation and intellectual power from age to age, this group has become the dominant one in the world, extending its influence to every part of the earth, supplanting many inferior races, and re-peopling wide areas, as in America and Australia.

4. Another great branch of the human family in the Old World is known as the *Mongolian*, corresponding very closely with the exploded "Turanian" of some writers. The Persians from the earliest times called the land lying to the north of them Turan, a name which is still used synonymously with that of Turkestan in central Asia. This race may be said to occupy now almost all the mainland of Asia that is not inhabited by Aryan nations. Though an offshoot from this family seems to have founded an empire in China, and to have attained there a high state of civilisation before any Aryan nation had risen to an equal stage of progress on the shores of the Mediterranean, the western nations have long since passed the Mongolians, whose influence has been chiefly confined to the one continent. They figure continually, however, in the history of this part of the earth, as the Scythians of Greek geography; the Huns, who carried desolation westward; or the Tatars, who spread their conquests over all the wide region from Russia to the plains of India.

5. Two other families possibly of Asiatic origin have extended their area south-westwards into Africa. These are called the *Hamites*, who have peopled Egypt, Libya, and Numidia, from the earliest beginnings of history, inventing on the borders of the Nile the hieroglyphic literature and the arts in which Egypt excelled;

and their successors from south-western Asia, the *Semites*, or Syro-Arabians, who had founded or conquered the cities of Nineveh and Babylon by the rivers of Mesopotamia. To the Canaanitic branch of this family belonged the Israelites and the Phoenicians, whose colonists on the African coast, the Carthaginians, were absorbed by the indigenous Hamitic Numidians; or by another branch of the Semites, the Arabs, who followed after them, and extended their rule and religion (Islam) over North Africa, Sudan, Nubia, Galla and Somali lands, and along the east coast southwards to Zanzibar and Sofala. Note that the Hamites, Semites, and Aryans form a single anthropological division collectively called *Caucasic*.

6. This brings us to the indigenous families of Africa, the *Negroes* proper, who occupy the whole of the central portion of the vast continent in enormous numbers, of diverse tribes, from the Atlantic about Cape Verd to Khartum on the Nile, and southward to the Congo; and the family which has been named *Bantu*,<sup>1</sup> speaking a language which differs essentially from any negro tongue, covering fully a third of the continent on the south, from the Gulf of Guinea, the Congo, and the great Nile lakes, southward to Cape Colony.

7. Compressed into the south-west corner of the continent we find the remains of another distinct family, that of the yellow *Hot-tentots* and *Bushmen*, possessing a language which is radically distinct from any other known form of speech.

8. In the islands and peninsulas of south-eastern Asia appears another family, which is now generally regarded as an *Oceanic branch* of the Mongol division. It includes the Malays of Malacca, Sumatra, Java, the Moluccas and Philippines; and the Hovas dominant in Madagascar, but not the Polynesians of the Pacific Ocean, who show *Caucasic* affinities. The Malaysans, however, are scattered over an exceedingly wide area.

9. As another group or family, the aboriginal Indians of North and South America are classed together as the "copper-red" race of men, though it seems very questionable whether we have here to do with one original stock or with people of separate centres of origin. In the northern half of America, these aboriginal peoples, as we have seen, have been so supplanted by the tide of emigrants from Europe and their African slaves that only small remnants of the original tribes remain. In South America, on the other hand, they still hold much of the central regions of the land, and on its maritime borders have become combined with the settlers from Europe and the Africans introduced by them.

<sup>1</sup> *Bantu*=men. One of the most typical branches of this family is that of the "Kafirs" (from the Arab *Kafir*=infidel) of S.E. Africa. The proper native names are *Ama-Xosa* in Kafraria, and *Ama-Zulu* in Natal and Zululand.

10. From the aborigines of America must be separated the *Esquimo*, the strange inhabitants of the borders of the polar seas—a people by some supposed to be of Asiatic origin.

11. Lowest of all in the scale of humanity stand the *Papuas*, *Melanesians*, and *Negritos*<sup>1</sup> of New Guinea, the Philippines, and some of the Sunda Islands, with the allied aborigines of Australia, now rapidly disappearing from that continent before the advance of the European settlers. Their features, the retreating forehead, woolly hair, flat nose, and thick lips, in many cases surprisingly recall the African blacks, hence are classed as *Oceanic* Negroes. The Australians rank with the extinct Tasmanians, the Bushmen, and Fuegians as the most abject of all races—without history or tradition, perpetual wanderers, never tilling the ground, destitute of all means of bodily comfort, and incapable of improvement.

12. The following is a rough estimate, for 1908, of the populations of the great divisions above enumerated, an estimate largely based upon very unsatisfactory data :—

<i>Caucasic Division</i> : Aryans ; Semites, Hamites ;		
	Polynesians . . . . .	790,000,000
<i>Mongolic Division</i> : Continental Section . . . . .		516,000,000
" "	Oceanic Section (Malayans) . . . . .	35,000,000
<i>Negro Division</i> : African Section . . . . .		183,000,000
" "	Oceanic Section (Papuans, Tasmanians, Melanesians ; Australians) . . . . .	3,000,000
<i>American Division</i> : Full blood, 10 . . . . .		} 30,000,000
" "	Mestizos, 20 . . . . .	
Total . . . . .		1,557,000,000

13. Second to distinctions of race and language in marking out at once the broad divisions and bonds of union among mankind, come the differences of religious belief. There are everywhere in the world traces of order, plan, and design, as in the circuit of the seasons, the alternations of light and darkness, the ebb and flow of the tide, so that the idea of a Being who controls and guides all things is more or less definitely expressed in almost every language. Among the savage tribes in which the reasoning powers have not been developed, two principles are first recognised as striving for the mastery, a creative and a destructive, a good and an evil agency—the one, it may be, sending sunshine and showers which promote verdure and abundance, the other sending excessive cold or scorching heat, and denying the fertilising rain. Hence their efforts are

<sup>1</sup> Spanish diminutive of *Negroes*.

directed rather to propitiate and pacify the evil than to worship the good. The whole belief of the West African negro, for example, is in evil spirits and in "fetishes"<sup>1</sup> to counteract their evil influences ; and the adoration of the Hindu is mainly divided between Siva, "the destroyer," and Vishnu, "the preserver." With the increase of intelligence and reasoning power, however, comes the conception of a supreme being ; culminating in the belief in one living and true God, infinite in power, Creator and Preserver of all things.

14. Here then we have the broadest distinctions of religion—the *polytheism*, or belief in many powers of good and evil, of the heathen, and the *monotheism*, or belief in one God, of all the more civilised peoples of the world.

To the former belong the superstitions of the aboriginal Indians of America, of the natives of Africa, and of the islands of the Pacific : a higher stage is reached in worship of the gods of the Hindus, and from that we pass to the religion of Buddha, professed by perhaps a third of all the multitude of human beings in the world. Though originating in India about 2500 years ago, this religion has now little hold in the peninsula, but bears full sway in Ceylon, and prevails over the continent of the Old World from the lower Volga and Zungaria through Tibet and Mongolia, over China, Japan, Burma, and Siam, to the farther Indian peninsulas and two of the East India Islands ; its area thus corresponds in great part with the limits of the Mongolian race. Buddhism has lost much of its original purity, and its temples are now filled with images of the spirits of the woods and the valleys ; but it is characteristic of this widely-diffused religion, breathing as it does a spirit of universal charity, that force has never been employed in its propagation, rarely even to resist aggression. In China, Buddhism divides adherence with the Confucian system of philosophy, which contains scarcely a trace of a personal god, and with that founded by Lao-tse, a contemporary of Confucius : the followers of the latter philosopher being known as the Tao, or "way of safety."

15. The belief in one God was the chief distinguishing peculiarity of the descendants of the patriarch Abraham, the Jews who migrated from Mesopotamia about 2000 B.C. to Canaan or Palestine ; their religion under a new dispensation is Christianity, which has taken deepest root in the most highly developed branch of the human race, the Aryan or Indo-Germanic, and its offshoots in all parts of the world. Latest of all the creeds which have taken hold of the minds of large sections of the human race comes Islam, the religion founded by Mohammed, but based mainly on the Jewish faith, which burst out like a volcano from Arabia about 600 years

<sup>1</sup> Portuguese *feitição* = magic.



after Christianity had begun to spread. Obeying its injunction (which is now all but a dead letter) of making war upon all infidels, the followers of Mohammed spread their conquests and their faith all across North Africa, far into the Sudan, down the coasts of the Red Sea into India and the archipelago beyond, as well as far into central Asia and (with the Turks) into south-eastern Europe. In most of these regions Mohammedanism still prevails.

16. In point of religions the numbers of the inhabitants of the world may be approximately divided (1908) as follows:—

Christians . . . . .	500,000,000
Jews . . . . .	10,000,000
Mohammedans . . . . .	225,000,000
Buddhists, Taosts, Shintus, etc.	155,000,000
Hindus . . . . .	220,000,000
Heathen and fetish worshippers	145,000,000

17. The influence which religious belief has exercised in determining the events of history, and which it holds over the political systems of all nations of the world, need scarcely be pointed out. It may suffice to recall the fierce wars by which Mohammedanism was spread over a large area of the globe, the reaction of Christendom in the crusades, the struggles of the Reformation in Europe, or in the present day the great conflict begun by Russia ostensibly for the emancipation of the Christian populations from their Mohammedan oppressors the Turks.

18. Among the perfectly barbarous peoples of the earth, who are generally wanderers over a vast tract of thinly-peopled country, there is rarely found any approach to organisation or union; each tribe indeed may hold together under one head or *patriarch*,<sup>1</sup> or under a chief chosen for his prowess, but these separate tribes are most frequently hostile to one another.

Wherever, from the character and products of the country, the population has become denser and more settled in habits, a more united condition begins to appear, even if it is not accompanied by any approach to higher culture. Examples of this were the former kingdoms of central Africa (Ruia, Uganda, etc.), the inhabitants of which, though remaining in almost the lowest stage of barbarism, were united under hereditary and absolute rulers, who, through subordinate chiefs, held sway over territories larger than many European kingdoms. The extreme contrast to the condition of savage communities, in which each member or family shifts for itself, is reached in the orderly association of highly-civilised peoples for intercourse, government, and mutual protection.

<sup>1</sup> Gr. *patriarchēs*, the head of a tribe

19. The highest in rank and importance of such associations of men are those which are termed *Empires*; such are governed by an emperor, a name taken from the Roman "imperator," the general of an army, which had at first a military signification, but the meaning of which has now become very various. The name is used in some cases to express the agglomeration of many states under one crown, as in the case of the British Empire meaning the whole of the British possessions in all parts of the world, as distinguished from any one portion. Countries ruled over by a king or queen (Saxon *cyning*; from *cyn*=kin, tribe), or *kingdoms*, are generally placed next to empires, but there is practically no such sequence. From its derivation the office of king seems to have grown out of that of the patriarch, the king having originally had a similar rule to that of the father of a family. The term *monarchy* (Greek *monos arkhos*, sole ruler) is applied equally to empires and kingdoms where the supreme power is concentrated in one individual.

20. If all three great functions of government—the legislative, the executive, and the judicial—are centred in one person, and exercised unrestrainedly by him, the monarchy becomes a *despotism*. Such a condition can only be permanent among savage peoples; by culture men become conscious of their rights. Military despotism has from time to time been extended over great territories, but in almost every instance, as in that of the great kingdom of Genghiz Khan, or in that of Napoleon, the power has crumbled away immediately on the death or downfall of the one man whose will upheld it.

21. When the head of the state, still maintaining the dignity of royalty, shares the supreme power with a class of nobles, with a body of popular representatives, or with both, the government is termed a *Limited Monarchy*. Here the sovereign represents the will, the executive; the aristocracy, the mind of the deliberative assembly; the representatives of the people, the suggestive element. When the first is predominant, in proportion to this predominance the monarchy approaches a despotism; where the second element preponderates, an *Oligarchy*<sup>1</sup> arises; where the third is in power, a *Democracy*.<sup>2</sup>

22. A *Republic*<sup>3</sup> implies a government dependent upon the will of part or whole of the people, and is thus properly a democratic form of government; but, according to the constitution of the governing body, a republic may vary from being the most exclusive oligarchy to a pure democracy.

We shall afterwards notice that in different countries and among

<sup>1</sup> Greek, *oligos arkhé*, the rule of few.    <sup>2</sup> Greek, *demos*, the people; *krateo*, to rule.

<sup>3</sup> Lat. *Res publica*, commonwealth, public good.



different races these forms of government vary between each of these extremes.

A *State*<sup>1</sup> is any country having supreme authority within itself, but the name is generally applied to smaller political bodies which are united together for mutual advantage within an empire, as in the states of the German Empire, or as in a republic of the United States of America. The *States* or *Estates* is the name given to the classes of population in a country, directly, or by their representatives, taking part in its government, as in the phrase "the estates of the realm."

23. The name *Colony*<sup>2</sup> is applied to embrace various classes of territories in foreign lands, either directly dependent or subordinate to a parent state, from which they have been peopled, the name having been adopted from the fact that the first inhabitants of a colony have generally been agriculturists. The Australian and North American possessions of Britain are colonies in the true sense. All dependencies of a state are not, however, colonies. Such possessions as Gibraltar, at the gate of the Mediterranean, and Perim Island, at the entrance to the Red Sea, are mere fortresses upheld for protective purposes; the garrisons residing in them being maintained and paid by the State. India, again, which affords profitable residence to the British who live there as the rulers of the native races, is in no sense a colony.

24. In passing on to consider more in detail the many political divisions, empires, kingdoms, and states of the world, as they appear at the present day, we shall have first to consider their limits or *boundaries*. Here we shall find that, subject to the extent of the land, and its natural limits towards the ocean, the interior frontiers of every state have been determined by the combination of a number of circumstances, such as the climate and character of the land, the history of the people who occupy it, the race of men they belong to, their language, or their religious belief. In some cases, as a natural limit, a mountain range or a broad river forms part of the frontier, but in quite as many instances this has been decided by other circumstances, or has been drawn arbitrarily, without regard either to natural features, to race, language, or creed. The artificial frontiers thus laid down have, in most cases, the great disadvantage of necessitating the maintenance of barriers both against armed aggression from neighbouring states, and for the protection of legitimate from contraband trade. Hence a maritime state has many advantages over one the boundaries of which lie wholly inland; its seaboard, if it possesses available harbours, opens the way for commerce with far distant lands. Our own country, doubtless,

<sup>1</sup> Lat. *status*, a condition.

<sup>2</sup> Lat. *colonus*, a husbandman.

owes its political as well as its commercial importance in a great degree to its situation, open to the sea on all sides. The disadvantages attending the deficiency of permanent natural outlet by the sea are illustrated in the gigantic empire of Russia, which, ever since it became a maritime state under Peter the Great, has been striving to add to its seaboard in a southerly direction, to escape from the blockade of the ice which annually closes all its northern European and Asiatic coasts, as well as the harbours of the Baltic and the Black Sea.

25. Within the limit of each state, in order to arrive at a clear conception of its political value in the world, we shall have to consider its relief, and the character impressed on it by climate, as far as these circumstances react upon the condition and occupation of its inhabitants ; its productions, whether of the vegetable, animal, or mineral kingdoms ; its manufactures, affording the means of profitable exchange with other countries ; its inhabitants themselves, and their relation to the peoples of neighbouring lands in race and creed, their distribution over the land, whether in cities, or as peasants or nomads ; and, lastly, the form of government under which they live, representing, as this does in many cases, the outcome of many experimental trials, struggles, and experiences in the past, and, in some degree, the final choice and intention of the nation itself. This will have been made more clear by the previous chapters, in which the leading points of the history of each state have been sketched. We shall now come back to them as to old friends, of whom we have known something from their birth upwards.





## EUROPE.<sup>1</sup>

1. **ALTHOUGH** Europe—from its historical and actual importance—has always been regarded as one of the great divisions of the earth's surface, it is not a separate and independent mass, but a great peninsula of the continent of Europe and Asia (sometimes called *Eurasia*) reaching westward with many limbs between the Arctic Sea on the north, the Atlantic on the west, and the Mediterranean on the south. On the side of Asia, the crests of the Ural mountains and of the Caucasus are generally recognised as the natural limits of Europe, though these do not correspond to its political boundaries in this direction.

2. **Extent.**—The area of Europe measures about 3,800,000 square miles; but as these figures convey no definite impression in themselves, it may be noted that its extent is about a third of that of Africa, a fourth of that of America, and somewhat more than a fifth of that of Asia, or that it comprises about a fourteenth part of the known land of the globe.

The greatest distance between its extreme north and south points—the North Cape of Norway and Cape Matapan in Greece—is about 2400 miles; and from east to west—from Cape La Roca, or the "Rock of Lisbon," to Cape Apsheron, the eastern extremity of the Caucasus range, on the Caspian—about 3000 miles.

3. The most striking feature of its outline is that of its great irregularity, the deep inlets and gulfs of the ocean which penetrate its mass, and the peninsulas which run out from it.

**Gulfs and Inlets.**—On the north the *White Sea*, so called from the ice and snow which bind it up for more than half the year, reaches in from the Arctic Ocean. From the Atlantic, the shallow *North Sea*, or German Ocean, and the *English Channel* (called *La Manche*, or "The Sleeve," by the French) break in to separate the British Isles from the mainland; and from the former the *Skager Rak*, "the crooked and boisterous strait," leads through the *Kattegat*, the "Cat's Throat" (also called "The Sleeve," by English seamen),

<sup>1</sup> The name Europe appears to have come into use among the Greeks between the times of Homer and Herodotus, and seems to have been first employed to distinguish between the land of the Hellenes and the Peloponnesus and islands. Carl Ritter derives it from *Apia*, the name said to be given by the Scythians to the flat steppe lands west of the Caspian, contrasting with the high lands of Asia.

and the "Belts" of the Danish islands, to the *Baltic*,<sup>1</sup> or the "East Sea" of the Germans, and its continuations, the Gulfs of Bothnia, Finland, and Riga.

Farther southward, the stormy *Bay of Biscay*, named from the Basque province of Vizcaya, sweeps in along the northern coast of Spain, and beyond the Peninsula the narrow *Strait of Gibraltar* leads into the great *Mediterranean* (*medius*, middle; *terra*, land), which stretches eastward for 2300 miles. Among the many branches of this great basin are the *Gallic Sea*, running north towards Gaul, between Spain and the islands of Sardinia and Corsica, forming the stormy Gulf of the Lion and that of Genoa; the *Tyrrhenian Sea*, between Sardinia and Italy; the *Ionian Sea* and the *Adriatic* running north from it, between Italy and the Balkan peninsula, towards the ancient seaport of Adria, perhaps the oldest in Europe, in the delta land of the rivers Po and Adige, now separated from the sea to which it gave its name by a stretch of ten miles of alluvial land formed by the action of the rivers. Beyond Greece, the island-studded *Ægean* leads north to the narrow inlet of the *Dardanelles*,<sup>2</sup> opening into the little Sea of Marmora, named from its marble-yielding islands, and from that by the *Bosporus* or Ox ford (the canal of Constantinople), into the second great Mediterranean basin, the *Black Sea* or Euxine,<sup>3</sup> with its offshoot the shallow *Sea of Azof* (a town at the mouth of the Don), behind the peninsula of the Crimea, called the Balik Defiz by the Tatars from its abundance of fish. The Caspian Sea, forming part of the natural frontier between Europe and Asia, probably at one period extended as a third great Mediterranean, united to the Black Sea by a strait lying to the north of the Caucasus, where the ground between is so low that a rise of eighty feet only in the Black Sea would cause its waters to overflow into the Caspian basin. Since the separation, the waters of the Caspian have shrunk down by excess of evaporation over supply, till the level of its surface is now eighty-four feet beneath that of the other basins of the Mediterranean which are still connected with the ocean. The indented seaboard of Europe measures not less than 60,000 miles.

4. **Peninsulas.**—Between each of these branches of the sea there run out corresponding promontories and peninsulas of the mainland: these are most numerous on the south side, where we find the *Crimea*, *Turkey* and *Greece*, *Italy* and *Spain*, bordered by the islands of the Archipelago, by Sicily, Sardinia and Corsica, and the Balears. The western or Atlantic side presents the greatest peninsula, that of *Scandinavia*; and the most important island group, that of the British Isles. The Danish peninsula is remarkable as the only one in Europe, and indeed in almost any part of the world, that points northward; the long snow wastes of the island of Novaya Zemlya, detached portions of the chain of the Ural mountains, cut off from the mainland by a narrow strait, point in the same direction.

Iceland, Spitzbergen, and Franz-Josef Land in the Arctic Seas lie so far out from the mainland of Europe, with which they are nominally classed, as to make it doubtful whether they should not rather be considered dependencies, one of the American, the other of the Asiatic, continent.

<sup>1</sup> This name is first employed by Adam of Bremen, eleventh century, who derived it from *Baltia*, an island mentioned by Pliny, and identified probably with Zealand.

<sup>2</sup> From Dardanus, a Greek city on its shore; also called the Hellespont = the "Sea of Helle."

<sup>3</sup> The original name, given either from the dangers of its navigation or from the savage tribes who inhabited its shores in early times, was *Axine* = inhospitable; this was changed by the Greeks to *Euxinus* = hospitable. The Turks seem to have reverted to the old name, calling it Kara Defiz, the "Black Sea," perhaps from the strong N.E. winds, the fogs, and thunderstorms to which it is subject.



5. **Relief.**—The varied outline of the coasts of Europe is repeated in the diversified relief of its surface ; the main mass or body of the land next Asia lies low, but almost all the members, attached or detached, peninsular or insular, are high and mountainous.

The great lowland of Europe thus lies towards the east, embracing the vast continental area of Russia, and sending out arms westward round the Gulf of Bothnia and the Swedish side of the Baltic, and through North Germany and Denmark, to form the lowlands of Holland and Belgium and of Western France, along the shores of the Bay of Biscay, as far as the rise of the Pyrenees.

6. The vast central area of the Russian lowland has almost everywhere the same character, *woods and marshes* alternating with cultivated land, affording a superfluity of grain, which is sent down by the rivers to the seaports of the Baltic and the Black Sea, but along its northern border, next the icy Arctic Sea, lie the moss-covered swamps called the *Tundras*, the soil of which is never thawed for more than a yard's depth ; all its southern margin towards the Black Sea and the Caspian is a treeless *steppe*, over which at some seasons the grasses shoot up above a man's height, concealing the pasturing herds. Towards the Caspian, over the area covered by that sea in former times, the *steppe* has a different aspect, the soil being so filled with salt left by the retreating sea as to support only the prickly saltwort and such saline plants.

Finland is one of the most remarkable regions of the great European plain ; its granite floor, elevated above the sea-level probably in a recent geological period, is worn into thousands of angular lake-basins, which form a perfect network over its surface, to the sailor on the Baltic its margin presents a girdle of steep cliffs guarded by a fringe of rocky islets or skerries. The cliffy Åland Islands are detached fragments of this remarkable formation. A curious feature of the lowlands of Scandinavia is observed in the gravel ridges, called "ösar," which extend generally from N.N.W. to S.S.E., and are the equivalent of the "kames" of Scotland.

The eastern portions of the North German plain, as far as the Oder, have the same character, the same corn-yielding clay soil, as the adjoining lowlands in Russia ; but farther west, round the capital city of Berlin, the plain becomes less fertile, in some parts sandy and bare. Beyond the Elbe, in Hanover, the *Lüneburg heath* covers a large part of the plain ; next it lie the moors, marshes, and fens of Oldenburg and the borders of Holland, where cattle and horses are the wealth of the land ; and beyond these the highly cultivated lowlands on each side of the Rhine delta, separated by the heaths (*Campine*) and moors (*Peel*) of Brabant, which run out towards the lower Scheldt like a dividing wedge between Holland and Belgium.

Passing into France, and across the broad river basins of its lowlands which open to the English Channel and the Bay of Biscay, we come upon the great wine-yielding lands, such as *Champagne* and the vineyards of the Gironde, with the corn country of Brie north-east of Paris, and of Touraine, on the Loire between these ; and lastly, at the extremity of this branch of the European plain, to the *Landes* along the coast between the mouth of the Gironde and the Pyrenees, over whose sandy heaths and marshes the natives stalk about on stilts.

Of the more isolated lowlands of Europe, two of large extent occur in the basin of the river Danube, separated by the gorge of the "Iron Gate," formed where the Balkan and Carpathian ranges approach most closely. The upper plain, circled about on all sides by mountains, is that of *Hungary*, over which



corn-fields interchange with pastoral steppes well stocked with horses and cattle, sheep and swine, merging in some parts into marsh lands with cranes and storks, or into dusty sand flats. Where the plain begins to rise to the sunny hills, the Hungarian grape ripens to yield its famous wines. The lower plain of the Danube, which might be called a branch of the vast Russian lowland, is that of *Romania*, with its far-stretching treeless heaths and pasture lands supporting great herds of cattle and horses, passing into wide reed swamps which characterise the delta of the Danube.

Corresponding to the Romanian plain is that of *Lombardy*, perhaps the most productive region of Europe, in which the irrigated meadows may be six times mowed in the year, and where wheat, maize, and rice, and wine and dairy produce, are yielded in vast quantity.

The islands of Europe, as before remarked, are generally high; the only ones which are altogether low are those of the Danish archipelago. The only other considerable island plain is that of central Ireland, with its extensive peat bogs.

**7. Highlands.**—Europe presents two great highland regions; a southern, extending along the northern border of the Mediterranean from Turkey to Spain, in continuation of the chief line of the heights of Asia; and a northern, appearing in Scandinavia and Britain, separated from the former by the western branch of the great lowland that we have been noticing.

The *Alps* rise as the central mass of the southern highland region of Europe. The many groups comprised in this series of heights which curve round the plain of Lombardy arrange themselves into three generally recognised divisions:—The Western Alps, the groups lying between the Gulf of Genoa and the Little St. Bernard Pass; the Central Alps, extending from the St. Bernard to the pass named the Stilfser Joch; and the Eastern Alps beyond this. The central mass is the highest, rising with majestic forms from deep valleys up to sharp riven peaks, high above the line of permanent snow; its wings to east and west decrease in elevation towards the Gallic Sea and the plain of the Danube on either side. All the less jagged heights are mantled in snows, from which glacier streams descend. The largest of these ice streams are the Aletsch glacier from the group of the Finsteraarhorn, and those of the frequented valley of Chamounix, descending from Mont Blanc, the monarch of the Alps (15,781 feet).

The passes of the Alps have always had importance as the gates of traffic from North Italy to the rest of Europe; some of them, such as the two St. Bernard Passes, are under the protection of friendly monks; but railroads have now been constructed to pass the great barrier by the tunnels of Mont Cenis in the west, of St. Gothard in the centre, and the Simplon farther east (opened 1906), by a line over the Brenner Pass from Innsbruck to Bozen, and by an eastern road over the Semmering from Vienna to Graz.

8. Southward the Alps fall steeply to the low plain of Lombardy, but a mass of lesser highlands and plateaus extends northward from them over central Europe to the border of the plain of Northern Germany.

The first outlier of the Alps in this division is the long limestone range of the *Jura*, with its magnificent pine forests. Beyond, bordering the Rhine valley, rises the *Schwarzwald*, or Black Forest, then the *Odenwald* and the *Rhön* mountains, leading into the *Vogelsberg* and *Taunus*, and to the outlying *Harz*, the farthest north of the central European heights. Turning eastward, we reach the *Thüringerwald*, the *Fichtel Gebirge*, and the metaliferous or *Erz Gebirge*; then across the *Elbe*, in Saxon Switzerland, come

the *Rieser Gebirge* (the Giant Range), and the *Sudetic Mountains*, extending to the Oder. Turning south again towards the Alps, the *Mährische Höhen* (the Moravian heights) are reached, and joining with these to close in the high valley of the Upper Elbe, the high *Böhmerwald*, the forest mountain of Bohemia. Almost all the area of South Germany, including Würtemberg, Bavaria, and Bohemia, enclosed by these heights, which extend northward from the Alpine mass, is high plateau land. It is remarkable here how the name "wald,"—forest, has come to be synonymous with that of mountain. The lower lands have been cleared of their natural forest growth for agricultural purposes, but the hills retain their covering.

9. Westward of these central European heights, beyond the Rhone, rises the range of the *Cevennes* in France, extending from near the Pyrenees northward through the *Forez* and *Côte d'Or* to the plateau of *Langres*, to the *Vosges* and *Hardt*, the undulating plateau of *Ardennes* covered with beech and oak wood, and the volcanic group of the *Eifel*, skirting the Rhine valley. More centrally in France, contrasting with the adjoining long range of the *Cevennes*, the volcanic cones and domes of *Auvergne* rise from bare lava-covered plateaus.

10. Shut off from the rest of Europe by the *Pyrenees*<sup>1</sup> (*Pic de Néthou*, *Maladetta*, 11,168 feet), whose high and close barrier admits easy passage only round its flanks, is the Spanish Peninsula, which, excepting in its river valleys, and along some parts of the seaboard, is a continuous highland. A number of mountain ranges, supporting broad plateaus between, traverse it from east to west. Along its northern edge the *Cantabrian* mountains prolong the high line of the *Pyrenees*, centrally rise the *Sierras of Guadarrama* and *Estrella*; farther south the *Sierra Morena*, and along the Mediterranean border the *Sierra Nevada* (11,420 feet of *Granada*). Throughout the summer the table-lands of *Castile*, bare and treeless, are burned up by the hot sun, but through the chilly winter they are swept by violent winds. The herdsman who wears a broad-brimmed hat for protection against the excessive heat during the day, a few hours later puts on his thick warm cloak; in the same way, after the almost rainless summer, follows a cold winter with ice and snow.

11. The *Apennines* prolong the Maritime Alps, and run like a backbone through the peninsula of Italy. Cleared of its natural wood, and scorched by the southern sun, this range is generally dreary and barren in aspect, like a long wall, with few peaks or salient points to recall the magnificent forms of the Alps. The volcano of *Vesuvius*, the only active one in all the continental part of Europe, rises over the coast plain of *Campania*.

The lines of the eastern wing of the Alps are prolonged north-eastward across the Danube by the grand curve of the wooded *Carpathians* and *Transylvanian Alps*, circling round the plain of Hungary. South-eastward they branch into the many ranges which support between them the confused mass of highlands of *Bosnia*, *Herzegovina*, and *Montenegro*, of *Servia* and *Albania*. Farther on these heights take more definite shape in the range of the *Balkan* which runs east to the Black Sea, in the mass of the *Rhodope* mountains extending south-eastward to the *Ægean Sea*, and in the *Pindus* range, which gives shape to Greece, and runs out into the Mediterranean in the peninsulas of the *Morea*.

12. Distinct from all the rest of the southern highlands of Europe stands the huge mass of the *Caucasus*, the natural frontier of Europe on the south-east, rising like a wall from the flat isthmus between the Black Sea and the Caspian. Its close parallel chains are united by high plateaus cut into by deep narrow transverse gorges of extreme depth. Though attaining far greater

<sup>1</sup> Supposed to be from the Basque word *Pyrg* = high.

heights than the Alps (Elburz, 18,526 feet; Kazbek, 16,546 feet) and reaching several thousand feet above the limit of perennial snows, the glaciers and snow fields of the Caucasus are small and insignificant in comparison with those of the Alps. This is owing to the dryness of the region in which they stand, and the small snowfall over them.

The hills of the Crimean peninsula, rising steeply from the Black Sea to the "yaltas" or "alps" of the Tatar herdsmen, are evidently a western continuation of the line of heights of the Caucasus.

13. In the north European mountain region the mass of heights which form the Scandinavian peninsula are by far the most important. These present no definite range, but are rather a collection of broad plateaus topped with moor or snow field, cut into by long steep-walled "fjords" on the Atlantic side, and resembling the Alps in the pine woods of their slopes, in their lakes and extensive glaciers, though they are nowhere of very great altitude (Galdhøppig, Ymes Field, 8540 feet).

The name *field*, which is applied to most of the Scandinavian mountain groups, suggests their plateau form, the *Hardanger Field*, *Ymes Field*, and *Dovre Field*, with the *Jostedal Bræ* (or ice-bræ=glacier), are the most prominent of the southern heights of Norway; in the north the broken heights which run along the Atlantic and Arctic borders of the peninsula have the general name of the *Kiölen*. The heather-covered hills of Scotland—the Grampians and west coast mountains—as well as those of Cumberland and Wales farther south in Great Britain, belong to the same system as that of the Scandinavian heights.

14. We have formerly noticed that almost all the European islands are high. In the Mediterranean we find the island of Crete reaching to upwards of 8000 feet in *Mount Ida*; Sicily, with its volcano of *Etna* (10,866 feet); Sardinia, with *Mount Gennargentu* (6290 feet); Corsica, with *Monte Rotondo* (8607 feet); Iceland, on the border of the Arctic seas, recalling Norway in its grand fjords, rises high in its mass of volcanic peaks (*Orarfa*, 6408 feet; *Hecla*, 5115 feet), covered in between with accumulated snows and glaciers, *Spitzbergen's* black peaks, which give its name, also rise high from its white glacier fields.

15. Separate and distinct in character and direction from the mountains of the rest of Europe, is the long chain of the *Ural*, rich in gold, platinum, iron, and copper. It takes its name probably from the Tatar word meaning "belt," which well expresses the length and continuity of this remarkable line of heights, stretching along the eastern border of the great European plain for more than 1200 miles. In height, however, the Ural is insignificant (Tölpöss-15, 5430 feet). Another separated height, that of the forest-covered Valdai hills in Western Russia, would scarcely be worthy of mention among the European highlands if it did not form the water-parting of the greatest of European rivers, the Volga.

16. **Hydrography.**—The rivers of Europe flow in part to the Atlantic and its Mediterranean branches, partly to the Arctic Sea, and partly to the Caspian, which last belongs to the "continental" system of drainage, or the area from which no rivers escape to the open ocean.

The *Volga*, the largest of European rivers, is the great feeder of this largest of inland seas. Spreading out with its many arms through the cornlands of Russia eastward to the mines of the Ural, and south through the salt-yielding plains about the Caspian, it forms the great natural highways of commerce of the vast Russian lowland, which have been extended from it by

canals to reach the White Sea, the Baltic, and the Euxine. Besides the steamers and trading vessels which regularly traverse the Caspian, a large fleet of war-ships is maintained there by Russia. Its navigation, at all times difficult, is perilous when the fierce steppe winds blow over it, its northern portion is also ice-bound in winter, so that vessels cannot enter the Volga mouths till the middle of April.

17. Four great navigable rivers—the *Don*, *Dnieper*, *Dniester*, and *Danube*, flow to the Black Sea. The last-named is the second of European rivers, and forms, with its sixty navigable tributaries, the great highway between Central Europe and the East. So important is the navigation of the Danube that it was placed in 1856 under the control of a commission appointed by the European powers. The Suina mouth of the delta is kept navigable by two long artificial dams, and even the rapids of the rocky barrier of the "Iron Gate" have been rendered passable for vessels of considerable draught. Several thousands of vessels navigate the Danube, carrying out immense quantities of grain from the lands drained by its branches. All these large rivers of the Black Sea drainage are subject to the annual blockade of frost, though in a less degree than the Volga. Ice covers the Sea of Azof in winter, and extends round the north coast of the Euxine. The Danube itself is closed by ice in severe winters as long as from December till February.

Only three rivers of importance flow directly to the Mediterranean. These are the *Po*, which gives natural highways to the fertile plain of Lombardy; the *Rhone*, the most rapid and wild of European rivers, subject to devastating floods, and of little value for navigation above its delta; and the *Ebro*, the narrowest and shallowest of all Spanish rivers, filled with water only after the snows melt on the Pyrenees.

18. The Mediterranean, the Black Sea, and the Caspian may be called tideless seas, and the rivers which drain to them have thus no estuary,<sup>1</sup> and no double current in the lunar day. Their stream is always against a vessel entering from the sea.

Coming round to the open Atlantic, however, we find that the rivers which lead directly to this greatest of maritime highways, have, besides this advantage, that of an upward flow of their waters at the river mouth twice in the day, which will bear the approaching vessels with it into the land. It is this advantage mainly that has given the river mouths of western Europe their immense importance in commerce, and that has been the means of forming on them some of the greatest cities of the world.

If we look along the Atlantic coast of Europe, we find the great city and port of Lisbon on the estuary of the *Tagus*; Oporto on that of the *Douro*; Bordeaux on that of the *Gironde*, Nantes at the head of the tideway of the *Loire*, Havre and Rouen on the estuary of the *Seine*; London, the greatest city and port of the world, on the estuary of the *Thames*; Rotterdam opposite it, on the estuary of the *Meuse*, Liverpool on that of the *Mersey*; Hamburg on that of the *Elbe*. None of the Atlantic rivers of the highland of the Iberian peninsula—the *Guadalquivir*, *Guadiana*, *Tagus*, or *Douro*—are of much value to commerce excepting at their mouths; the great rivers of France, the *Gironde* (with the *Garonne*), *Loire*, and *Seine*, are of greater importance in navigation; most valuable of all are the *Rhine* and the *Elbe*; the former giving an uninterrupted waterway up to the borders of Switzerland, the latter into the heart of Bohemia.

<sup>1</sup> Estuary from *estuarium*, pertaining to the tide.



19. The drainage basin of the Baltic is characterised rather by its lakes than by large rivers ; its southern affluents, the *Oder*, *Vistula*, *Niemen*, and *Dvina*, are all, however, important highways of the European plain, carrying down its products in barges and rafts to the Baltic ports. The short but large channel of the *Neva*, the river of Petersburg, is important in itself, and from its navigation being joined by canals with all the great waterways of the interior of Russia. Like the Caspian, the shallow Baltic and its rivers are closed to traffic by ice all through the winter for a period of from three to five months. Charles X. of Sweden, we may remember, marched his whole army across the frozen Belt in 1658 to attack the Danes.

20. The great rivers which flow to the Arctic Sea from Europe are the *Dvina* and *Pechora*. Both are navigable, the latter almost to its source, but both are held in the grasp of frost for more than half the year. It is only during the summer months that the timber, furs, and grain which are exported from Archangel can be brought to it by rafts and barges, and trading vessels from a distance can make but one hasty voyage in the year to the White Sea to avoid being caught in its icy covering.

21. The great lake region of Europe lies round the Baltic. There is the *Ladoga*, the greatest fresh-water lake of Europe, as wide across as the English Channel between Portsmouth and Cherbourg, with *Onega* and *Peipus* also in Russia ; *Wetter* and *Mælar* in Sweden ; besides the myriad lakes of *Finland*. The beautiful lakes of the folds of the Alps, *Geneva*, *Neuchatel*, and *Constance* on the north side, *Maggiore*, *Como*, and *Garda* in the Italian valleys, form the only other considerable lake series of this division of the earth.

22. **Climate.**—A glance at the map shows that Europe belongs for the most part to the northern portion of the temperate zone. Its most southerly peninsulas are still 12 or 13 degrees distant from the tropical line, over which the sun becomes vertical, and its northern borders reach well into the Arctic zone, where the sun's rays are low even in summer, and where he scarcely peeps over the horizon in winter. The greater part of it also lies within the influence of the westerly winds, bringing the moisture from the ocean, and thus it belongs to the forest zone of the temperate region ; only its northern margin, the "tundra" belt, being too *cold* for tree growth, and its southern border of steppes along the Caspian and the Black Sea being too *dry* to support a covering of woods.

Farthest north, where the average temperature of the year is not above the freezing point, extends the desolate country of the Tundras, where the winter darkness is lit up by the "Northern Lights," a very waste of snow for nine or ten months of the year ; when the warmth of the long summer day melts this covering, then swamps, and lakes, and marshes with grey plains covered with mosses and lichens between, appear in this desolate landscape. The largest plant to be seen is a little willow, never rising more than a finger length above the ground, and hiding its stem among the protecting moss. Here the cultivation of grain being impossible, and warming food being required to resist the cold, the Arctic Samoyeds and Laplanders depend for this on the animal kingdom, on their reindeer, on the seals, and sea-birds, and on fish when the rivers are free. Next comes the *subarctic belt* of the pine-woods, extending across Scandinavia and Northern Russia, in the cultivated portions of which barley

and oats are the staple food plants, and in which cattle and sheep are the domestic animals. Then follows, across Central Europe, the zone of the deciduous<sup>1</sup> trees, or those which annually lose and renew their leaves; this belt includes the greater part of the many trees and shrubs of the temperate regions; in it wheat represents the cultivated grains; fine fruits, apples, pears, and peaches, ripen, and the vine begins to yield its grapes and wine. Lastly, in the south we come again to a zone in which evergreen trees, such as the cork-oak of Spain, the chestnut, the stone pine of Italy, give character to the landscape. Here also a few palms, wanderers from warmer latitudes, begin to be seen; figs and oranges become the common fruits; maize and wheat the chief food grains; and the grape yields its sweetest and strongest wines.

23. These climatic belts arranged from north to south in latitude, with their accompanying landscapes, appear also in stages one above another, wherever the elevation of the land carries it up through corresponding climatic regions. In the extreme south, for example, we should find these stages ranged one above another from the sea-level to the point of perennial snow, thus:—

	Perennial snow.
<i>Snow-line</i>	-----
	Alpine plants, mosses and lichens.
	Pine woods.
	-----
	Deciduous trees.
	-----
	Evergreen woods.
<i>Sea-level</i>	-----

In the farthest north, in Spitzbergen, only the uppermost of these stages is represented, for the snow limit comes down nearly to the water's edge. The heights of the tundras of Lapland have the two uppermost; the mountains of Scandinavia three, and of Central Europe four, the lowest stage being that of the deciduous trees. In the Alpine regions, for example, we find the deciduous trees of the plains at their base extending up to an elevation of nearly 4000 feet, where a climate is reached that corresponds with that of their northern limit in latitude; pine woods follow in the stage between 4000 and 5000 feet above the sea; Alpine plants, corresponding to those of the tundras of Lapland, between 5000 and 9000 feet; and above lies the region which is constantly snow-clad. The snow limit, and with it the limits of all the stages beneath it, varies in different parts of the continent in the same latitude, from causes which have before been referred to, chiefly that of the distribution of moisture, and with the seasons. In winter, just as the realm of snow and ice spreads out southward from the Arctic regions over a great part of Europe, binding up the Baltic and the rivers, and covering tundra and pine forest alike with a white mantle of snow; so at this season the snows of the Alps, reaching farther and farther down, drive the herds before them into the sheltering valleys; in spring and summer the herds follow the retreating snows upwards to higher and higher mountain pastures, till a few weeks later the descent must be again begun.

<sup>1</sup> From *de* and *cado*, falling off.

24. With but few exceptional places, such as the malarious *Pontine Marshes* and the *Maremma* of the west coast of Italy, or the *Dobruja* swamp of the delta of the Danube, the climate of Europe is a very healthy one. Clouds, rain, and fog are commonest over Western and South-western Europe, which is first reached by the moist south-west winds from the tropical Atlantic; losing their moisture as they pass, the west winds become thoroughly dry land winds before they reach the Ural. The seaward aspect of Western Europe, broken into peninsulas and gulfs, gives it also a maritime climate, which is damp and equable in contrast to the drier climate and excessive changes of temperature in the eastern or more continental region.

Hot south winds from the African desert, the *Solano* of Spain and *Sirocco* of Italy, visit the Mediterranean peninsulas, and appear in the north as the *Föhn* wind, the snow-melter of the Alps. The south-eastern region, that of the Caspian and the south Russian steppes, comes within the indraught of the dry north-east trade wind.

25. **Products and Material Culture.**—Though Europe is naturally a forest-covered country, so widely have agricultural operations been extended, especially in the west and south, that these regions, except along the mountain belts, are all but cleared of wood. The great natural granaries of Europe lie in Russia, Poland, and the plains of the Danube, where agriculture is not so advanced. Cattle and horses, sheep and swine, are domesticated everywhere, but occur in greatest numbers on the natural pastures, the steppes of South Russia; the camel also appears in the neighbourhood of the Caspian. Just as in the extreme north the reindeer takes the place of cattle, so in the far south, in Italy especially, the buffalo supplants the ox. Round the coasts the fisheries employ and give food for a large part of the population: we may note the turbot and lobster fisheries of Norway, those of herring and mackerel from the British coasts, the sardine fisheries of France, and the tunny fisheries of the Mediterranean, besides the inland fisheries of many rivers.

Of mineral products, *gold* is most abundant in the Ural and in Transylvania; *silver* and *lead* in Spain, England, Norway, and the Ural; *quick-silver* in Spain; *copper* in England, Russia, and Sweden; *iron* and *coal* are mined for the most part from Britain; in smaller quantity in Germany, France and Belgium, Austria and Russia.

Volcanic Sicily yields *sulphur*, and *salt* is almost everywhere abundant either as rock or bay salt. In the production of raw materials, in manufacture by aid of machinery, Britain takes the lead, followed by Germany, France, and Belgium.

26. The form of Europe adapts itself admirably to the exchange of raw or manufactured products, for large rivers, the natural highways, extend over the wide plains; and in the highland regions, where the streams are smaller and generally unnavigable, long arms of the sea reach into the land. Canals have been constructed to unite the river highways all over Europe; roads and railways have been extended in every direction across rivers and ravines, even over the Alps, or through them by tunnels; upwards of 140,000 miles of railway now form a network over Europe; telegraphs not only bring every corner of the land into momentary connection with every other, but reach out in submarine lines to all parts of the world.

27. **Races.**—The Europeans belong, as we have seen,<sup>1</sup> in by far the greater part to branches of the Aryan race, characterised by their white skin, fair, brown, or black hair, and regular features;



those of Mongolian race—of whom a yellowish colour, scanty beard, flat features, and oblique eyes are generally characteristic—are comparatively few in numbers. To the latter belong the peoples of North-eastern Europe, the Samoyeds and Lapps, with the Ugro-Finns and other tribes of Northern Russia.

28. Long before the race which now occupies the greater part of Europe began to migrate from Central Asia, these northern tribes, the Ugric Mongolians, as they have been called (the *Ugrycs* of many long preserved stories), extended over a far larger part of Europe, and were gradually pushed northward into the inhospitable region which they now occupy, by their more powerful successors in Central Europe. The Hungarian "*Magyars*" are known from history and their speech to be Ugro-Finns from the Urals, now assimilated in physique to the Aryans. Later, the Osmanli Turks established themselves in the Balkan Peninsula, where, taking to themselves Circassian wives, their descendants have become rather Caucasian than Mongolian in features.

29. The first swarm of the Aryan race that migrated into Europe is believed to have been that of the *Celtic peoples*, who seem at one time to have occupied a great part of Europe, and at the dawn of history extended from Spain through France to Brittany and the British Isles. The relics of the language of this people, pressed into the farthest corners of the continent, are still found in the Bas Breton of Brittany, the western hill corner of France; in the Irish tongue still spoken in the western skirts and islands of Ireland, in the Welsh,<sup>1</sup> the Gaelic of the Scottish Highlands, and till the eighteenth century in the now extinct Cornish of the south-western extremity of England. The Basques of the Pyrenees, however, are not Celts, but a remnant of the ancient Iberians.

30. One chief group of the Aryan peoples of Europe is that which has arisen over the old Roman Empire, hence called the *Romanic group*, occupying the south-western peninsulas. To this belong the Spaniards and Portuguese, the French and Walloons, the Italians and the Romanians; the modern Greeks might be added as related most closely to this group. Here the white colour passes towards brown; a slight form, black hair, dark grey eyes, activity, and quick wit are general characteristics.

31. Another great group is that of the *Germanic peoples*, the northern blue-eyed and flaxen haired barbarians of Roman times, many of whom, marching southward victoriously into the Roman provinces, remained there, giving great vigour to the peoples of those lands whose language and customs they adopted. The descendants of these hunting and pastoral tribes occupy the central and north-western region, as the Germans, the Dutch and Flemings, the Swedes, Norwegians, Danes, and Icelanders, and the English. The national name is Theodisk, Diutisk, Deutsch (Dutch), whence the collective form *Teutonic*.

32. The *Slavonic peoples*, pressing in from the east, also appeared as wild barbarians to the more civilised Romans. A heavy figure, light brown or blackish hair, are generally characteristic of the Slavonic people; cringing in submissive obedience to their rulers, they have not the proud freedom of the Germanic nature, and have been longest of all in adopting the civilisation that has distinguished the rest of Europe. To this group belong the Russians and Poles, the Letts and Wends, Czechs of Bohemia, the Yugo or Southern Slavs (Slovenes, Servians, Croats, Bosnians, Montenegrins) and the Bulgarians. The Bulgarians were originally a Finnish tribe from the Middle Volga, who

<sup>1</sup> Wales, from *Waelha*, plural of *Waelh*, a foreigner. The Welsh were foreigners to the Anglo-Saxons.

crossed the Danube in the seventh century, and, subduing the Slavonic peoples (Moesians) of the Balkan region, became incorporated and assimilated with them.

33. Two elements of population remain to be noted—that of the *Semitic Jews*, scattered as active traders over every part of Europe, and kept apart by their faith; they are most numerous in Poland, which country offered them an asylum during the fierce persecutions and massacres to which they were subjected by Christian Europe from the eleventh to the fourteenth centuries; and the mysterious vagabond *Gypsies*, of Indian origin, restless wanderers, fortune-tellers, tinkers, or beggars, in every part of Europe.

34. **Education.**—Such progress has been made in general culture throughout Europe that its inhabitants belong for the most part to the civilised world; the hunting Lapps and Samoyeds of the far north, as well as the nomadic Nogai, Kirghiz, and Kalmucks of the Russian steppes, are the only general exceptions.

But the advance which has been made by the different peoples is very various; of the three chief groups that have been named, the Germanic stands highest, the Slavonic lowest, in the scale of culture. Education has been general and compulsory in Germany for a long time; but it was only in 1870 that an act for this end came into force in England, in which country many of the adults are still unable to write. In France, in 1905, 14 out of every hundred of the grown-up men and women were found to be unable to write; on an average, in Italy, 57 adults out of every hundred are illiterate, and in the other Romanic nations the scale falls still lower; the masses of the Slavonic people, however, are the most backward; among the Slav inhabitants of Austria only about 15 per cent can read and write, and in Russia only about 27 in every hundred recruits can read.

35. **Religion.**—Excepting the Kalmucks, who are Buddhists, and a few tribes of heathen Shamanists, the Europeans are Monotheists, and chiefly Christians; with over 9 millions of Jews, and 8 millions of Mohammedans.

The Christian confessions are three :—

1. The Roman Catholic, chiefly in Romanic countries.
2. The Greek or Byzantine Church, chiefly adhered to by the Slavonic peoples.
3. The Protestant, chiefly in the Germanic section of Europe.

The first includes almost as many adherents as the two latter, while these are about equal in number.

The separation of these confessions was the work of time; when the Roman Empire fell into an Eastern and Western division, the two capitals of Rome and Constantinople, rivalling one another in precedence, drew round them two parties differing to some extent in belief and practice; the Eastern separating, under the Patriarch of Constantinople, from the Western Church under the Pope of Rome. The separation of the Protestants, who hold that the authority of the Bible is supreme, and above that of councils and bishops, from the Roman Catholic Church, took place in the sixteenth century. Of this church the chief sects are the Lutheran, in North Germany and Scandinavia chiefly; the Reformed, in Holland, South Germany, and Switzerland; the Anglican, in England; and the Presbyterian, in Scotland.

**36. Government.**—Unrestricted sovereign power is found in Europe only among those peoples who are lowest in the scale of advancement—the servile Slavs of Russia, and the semi-barbarous peoples ruled by the despotic Turks.

In Russia the whole legislative, executive, and judicial power was vested in the Emperor till 1905, when an elective State Council (*Duma*) was created, in Turkey the will of the Sultan is absolute. Most of the European states are limited monarchies, in which the monarchical, aristocratic, and democratic elements are more or less equally represented. With the exception of France, which has frequently changed its form of government since the great Revolution, the Republics of Europe are the states of least importance. they are Switzerland, a confederation of twenty little republics or cantons, the little state of San Marino in Italy, and Andorra in the Pyrenees.

In point of rank, Great Britain, Germany, France, Austria, and Russia, stand first as the "five great powers." These include within their limits more than two thirds of the entire population of Europe, and have for a long time controlled all continental questions. Second come Italy, Spain, and Sweden; in the third rank are Turkey, Belgium, Holland, Denmark, and Portugal.

In describing the political divisions of Europe somewhat more in detail, it may be well to keep to the groups that have been sketched out, beginning with the highest in culture, the *Germanic*; passing thence to the *Romanic*; concluding with the *Slavonic*, and the lands under the rule of the *Turks*, lowest in the scale, which are most closely connected with Asia.

## I. THE TEUTONIC STATES.

### 1.—THE BRITISH ISLES.

1. That the British Isles distinctly belong to the mainland of Europe may be inferred both from their geological formation, which is found to correspond precisely with that of the nearest parts of the continent, and from the fact that they rise on a submarine plateau which unites them to the mainland, and which beyond their shores sinks rapidly to the depths of the Atlantic. The sea between England and Holland is nowhere so deep that it would cover the cathedral of St. Paul's if set down in any part of it. If we imagine that the sea level were to fall 60 feet—the leight of an ordinary house—the broad *Dogger Bank*, midway between England and Denmark, would begin to show its sands, and if a fall of 200 feet took place one might walk dryshod across to the continent, to Belgium, Holland, or Denmark. From its shallows and banks, its stormy cross seas and frequent fogs, the navigation of the *North Sea* is dangerous; yet the traffic over it is enormous, for it is surrounded by countries, the

inhabitants of which have been famous on the seas from the earliest times. The great highways of commerce from it are *Dover Strait* (Pas de Calais), leading to the English Channel, in the south, and the stormy *Pentland Firth*, which separates Scotland from the Orkney Islands, in the north. The *English Channel*, though deeper than the North Sea, is also shallow ; the enclosed *Irish Sea*, between England and Ireland, with *St. George's Channel* and the *North Channel* leading out from it to the ocean, has been scoured deeper in its central lines ; but there is a width of about 50 miles of shallow sea, or "soundings," all round the islands in the west, where they face the broad Atlantic.

In looking at the general coast-line of the islands, it is evident that their eastern shores on the North Sea are generally rounded, sandy, and flat, while the western or Atlantic coasts, especially those of Scotland and Ireland, are bold and rugged, broken into deep sea lochs or fiords guarded by islands, recalling those of the Norwegian coast farther north, difficult of approach both from their intricate channels and strong flowing tides.

2. **Extent.**—As we shall afterwards have occasion to use the British Isles as a standard measure with which to compare the size of other countries over the world, it is important to get as clear an idea as possible of their extent. The main island of Great Britain, roughly triangular in shape, measures about 600 miles in a straight line from its south-west corner, where the granite walls of *Land's End* and the dark serpentine cliffs of the *Lizard* run out into the Atlantic, to the northern apex, the high red sandstone rocks of *Dunnet Head*, frequented by sea-fowl, or its companion *Duncansby Head*, where John o' Groat's House<sup>1</sup> stood, on the beach of the Pentland Firth.

If we could walk this distance straight across country at the rate of 20 miles a day, it would take us a month to go from one extremity of the island to the other.

The base of the island, forming the north coast of the English Channel, measures only about half this distance, or 320 miles ; and the eastern side, from the chalk cliffs of the *South Foreland*, on the Strait of Dover, to the Pentland Firth, is about 540 miles long. No part of the interior of Great Britain is more distant than three or four days' walk from the sea on one side or other. In the narrower parts of the north of Scotland indeed, where the Moray Firth runs into the land, it is an easy day's journey from the head of this inlet of the North Sea to that of one or other of the opposite sea lochs running in from the Atlantic.

The area of the island is nearly 90,000 square miles ; its northern

<sup>1</sup> John de Groot, or Groat, of Warse, built a house on the west side of this headland in James IV.'s time, probably as a ferry house to the opposite Orkney Islands ; settling at the same time the controversies between his brothers, by giving it eight sides, so that each might enter by his own door.



division, Scotland, including 30,417; its southern, England and Wales, nearly 60,000 square miles (58,186).

The second island, *Ireland*, more rounded in general outline, measures 300 miles from *Malin Head*, its northernmost point, to *Mizen Head*, its most southerly extremity, and 200 miles from *Carnsore Point*, its south-eastern corner nearest England, to *Erris Head*, its north-western promontory on the Atlantic; its area is 32,531 square miles.

The most extensive of the many satellite island groups and islets which belong to the British Archipelago, are those which lie off the broken west coast of Scotland, the wild and rugged Outer and Inner Hebrides, of which *Lewis*,<sup>1</sup> separated by the channel called the Minch,<sup>2</sup> and *Skye*,<sup>3</sup> *Mull*, *Islay*, and *Arran*, in the inner group, are the largest. The *Orkney* group, separated from the north of Scotland by the turbulent Pentland Firth, consist of no fewer than fifty-nine rocky islets; and the *Shetlands*, forty miles farther north, comprise upwards of a hundred separate points. The high Isle of *Man*,<sup>4</sup> in the middle of the Irish Sea; *Anglesey*,<sup>5</sup> close to the Welsh coast, and now united to it by the famous railway tubes across the Menai Strait; and the *Isle of Wight*, "the garden of England," in the English Channel, separated from the mainland by the busy Solent, are the others of importance. The Channel Islands, of which *Jersey* and *Guernsey* are the largest, belong politically to Britain, but are physically parts of France.

The names of the many capes and headlands, with those of the inlets between, and the relative positions of these, will be learned far better from the map than from any written description, so that it seems useless to give a list of them here.

**3. Relief.** -In the island of Great Britain, the broadest distinction in the relief of the land is that the highest portions lie generally to north and west, the lowlands to south and east. This corresponds to the geological structure of the islands; the older rocks of the west and north forming the mountainous region, the newer strata of the south and east seldom rising to any great elevation.

The heather covered Highlands which fill the north of Scotland are divided by the great natural passage of *Glen More*, which runs in a straight line across the island from north-east to south-west, into two chief groups, the northern and central.

The northern group consists of irregularly-distributed and often almost isolated masses, separated, it may be, by deep sea-fjords, and presenting every variety of contour, from that of the round mass of *Ben Wyvis*<sup>6</sup> to the steep wall-like sides of *Suilven*<sup>7</sup> or the sharp peak of *Ben Stack*. The Central Highlands or the *Grampians*,<sup>8</sup> extending from the peninsula of Cantyre north-eastward to the precipitous coast of Buchan on the North Sea, are far more massive and continuous. *Ben Nevis*,<sup>9</sup> a huge round outlier of the range

<sup>1</sup> Norwegian. *Ljothhus*, the "sounding house."

<sup>2</sup> *Reca Ing La Manche*.

<sup>3</sup> Icelandic *sky*, a "cloud."

<sup>4</sup> Or *Mona*, possibly so named from the Latin *monachus*, which appears in *Monk*, referring to the reputed holy character of the isle in ancient times (Canisius). The native name is *Ellan Vannin* or *eg Veen*, "Dear little isle of Man."

<sup>5</sup> *Anglesey*, "Engl shman's Island."

<sup>6</sup> *Ben* or *Pen* = mount = "The Mountain of Horror."

<sup>7</sup> "The Sugar-Loaf."

<sup>8</sup> First employed in 18th century and derived from *Grampius* (misread *Grampius*), a mountain mentioned by Tacitus.

<sup>9</sup> "The Mountain of Death."

on its north side, ascending abruptly from the shores of Loch Eil at the mouth of the Great Glen, is the highest mountain of the British Isles (4406 ft.); *Ben Muich Dhui*,<sup>1</sup> in the central part of the range, is second in height (4296 ft.)

The *Campsie*, *Ochil*, and *Sidlaw* hills are outliers of the Grampians on the south, separated from them by Strathmore = the great valley.

The Southern Highlands of Scotland, stretching from the peninsula which terminates in the Mull or headland of Galloway on the North Channel to St. Abb's Head on the German Ocean, are again more broken, and separated by river valleys. *Mount Merrick*, in the south-west (2764 ft.), is their highest point; the *Lowther Hills* form their central group; the *Pentlands*, *Moorfoot*, and *Lammermoor* hills their more detached portions, on the north-east.

With the Cheviot Hills, the boundary range between Scotland and England, begins the long *Pennine chain*, which reaches due south into the heart of England. *Cheviot Hill*, in the north (2676 ft.), *Crossfell* (2892 ft.), and *Whernside* (2414 ft.), and the *Peak of Derby* (1981 ft.), in the south, mark the summits and direction of the chain. To the west of the Pennine chain rises the compact circular knob of slate mountains of Cumberland, with the summit of England proper, *Scawfell*<sup>2</sup> (3161 ft.); and corresponding to this mass, near the opposite coast, the eastern moorlands and *wolds*<sup>3</sup> of Yorkshire (1489 ft.)

Separated from the Pennine heights by the plain of Cheshire (west of England) rise the highlands of Wales, collectively called the *Cambrian Mountains*. The main direction of the connected ridges forming this mass is the same as that of the Scottish Highlands, from north-east to south-west, as may be noticed in the peninsula which runs out to Braich-y-Pwll from *Snowdon* (3570 ft.), the highest mountain of South Britain, in the north of the mass; or that which extends on the south to St. David's Head, from the central heights of *Plynlymmon* (2469 ft.), and *Radnor Forest*. The *Black Mountains* of South Wales, highest in the *Brecknock Beacon* (2910 ft.), are a more distinct part of the highland, and the *Malvern Hills* (1395 ft.) an almost detached outlier in the east.

Across the Bristol Channel we come to the heights of the south-western peninsula of England, with its three groups of *Exmoor* (Dunkery Beacon, 1707); *Dartmoor*, with its rugged granite tors<sup>4</sup> (2040 ft.); and the *Cornish Heights* (1368 ft.) These are all the more important mountain groups of Great Britain.

Over all the south and east of England the elevations are comparatively insignificant; broad, undulating, grassy uplands, called the *South Downs*<sup>5</sup> and the *Chiltern Hills*, rarely attaining more than 800 feet of elevation, follow the chalk formation across Southern England as far as Beachy Head on the Channel and the Foreland Cliffs on the Strait of Dover. The limestone *Cotswold Hills* between these and the Welsh Highlands rise somewhat higher (1093 ft.)

4. Almost all the lowlands of Great Britain, as we have noticed, lie to the east and south. Here we find the plain of the "*New Forest*" in Hampshire and the treeless *Salisbury Plain*, the broad open *Valley of the Thames*, the "*Eastern Plain*" of Essex, Suffolk, and Norfolk, extending with rounded shores towards the North Sea; the low "*Fen district*" behind the shallow estuary of "*The Wash*," from which many tracts have been reclaimed; the long "*Plain of York*" beyond; the valleys of the Tees and Tweed, the latter

<sup>1</sup> "The Black Boar Mountain."

<sup>2</sup> "The Craggy Hill."

<sup>3</sup> *Wold* or *weald* (German, *wald*), forest, suggesting the former wooded covering of these heights, as in the present forest hills of Germany.

<sup>4</sup> *Tor*, Celtic, "a projecting rock;" occurs also in *Taurus*, *Tauern*, etc.

<sup>5</sup> *Dun*, Saxon and Celtic = a "hillock" or "dune."

including the cultivated "*Morae*," the march or border land of Berwickshire; the Scottish "*Lowlands*" between the Central and Southern Highlands; the "*Carse*" or alluvial plain of Gowrie, north of the Tay; "*Strathmure*," the broad valley which extends between the Grampians and their southern outliers; the *plain of Orkney* and the level moors of eastern Caithness farthest north of all. The only extensive lowlands on the western side of the island are the "*Fale of Severn*," the "*Plain of Cheshire*," between the Pennine chain and the Welsh Highlands, the lowlands round the estuary of the Solway, those of Ayrshire, and the *Valley of the Clyde*.

5. Crossing over to Ireland, though we find the lines of elevation running generally in the same direction as those of Great Britain, or from north-east to south-west, as shown in the peninsulas of the south-west coast, the mountains appear rather in detached clusters than in definite ranges, with shapes rather rounded than abrupt, forming a fringe round the coasts. Three groups, these called the *Twelve Pins*, *Muncella* (2688 ft.) and *Crough Patrick*, and the *Nephin Mountains*, form the central promontory of the western coast in Connaught. Farther north we come to the coast group which culminates in *Caulgagh* (2188). Round the north coast rise the *Lerryveagh Mountains* (Errigal, 2466), and the *Blue Stack group* in Donegal; the *Sperrin Mountains* (2240), with Carratogher and Trostan on the coast; the plateau of Antrim, which forms the precipice of *Fair Head* (530 ft.), the nearest point to the Scottish coast, and the remarkable basaltic scenery of the Giant's Causeway. On the eastern side we find the granitic groups of the *Mountains in Down* (2796), and of the *Wicklow Mountains* (Lugnaquilla, 3039 ft.) Near the centre of the south coast rise the *Comeragh*, *Knockmoldurn*, and *Galty Mountains* (3015 ft.); and in the south-west the *Mountains of Kerry*, the chief of which are Mangerton and the Macgillendry Reeks, the latter containing *Carn Tual*,<sup>1</sup> the summit of all Ireland (3414 ft.)

The only important groups that lie centrally in the island are the mountains of western Tipperary, round their summit *Keeper* (2278 ft.), and the *Slieve Bloom* (1733 ft.) to the northward of these.

6. Within the circle of these heights, and branching out between them at many points to the sea-coast, lies the *Great Plain of Ireland*, averaging perhaps 200 ft. in elevation above the sea. The highest point between Dublin and Galway, east to west across its centre, is only 320 ft. above the sea level. Many parts of it, such as that which surrounds Lough Neagh in the north, are scarcely 50 feet in elevation.

7. **Hydrography.**—As the higher mountains of Great Britain rise in the west of the island, so the water-parting line following the greatest general height lies nearer the west than the east. The longer and gentler slope of the island is to the North Sea; the shorter and steeper to the Atlantic side.

Hence most of the larger rivers belong to the North Sea drainage. From south to north on this side we find the *Thames*, the largest of all, 200 miles in length, draining an area of over 5000 square miles, giving a navigable highway for 160 miles to Lechlade, and possessing a tidal upflow as far as Teddington Lock, 60 miles above its open estuary. The next longest river to northward is the *Great Ouse*, navigable from the west for 90 miles to Bedford; then we come to the group of rivers which water the long plain of York, and

<sup>1</sup> Irish, *carran*, a reaping hook, and *tuathail*, left-handed or reversed, applied in reference to the curved and jagged edge of the mountain.—*Richardson*.

<sup>2</sup> Irish, *Slabh* = mountain.



unite in the estuary of the Humber, including the *Trent* from the south, navigable 105 miles to Burton; the *Yorkshire Ouse*, navigable 45 miles to the city of York, with its main tributary the *Derwent*. Farther north are the *Tees* and *Wear*, and the busy *Tyne*. Passing into Scotland, we reach the *Tweed*, valuable for its fisheries, but unnavigable; the *Forth*, winding in links through the fertile lowland, navigable to Stirling; the *Tay*, navigable to Perth; the rapid *Dee* and *Spey* from the Grampians, and the *Ness* from the lakes of Glenmore.

On the western or Atlantic side of Britain, the largest river, the second in drainage area in the island, is the *Severn*, 178 miles long, drawing its upper tributaries from the Welsh mountains, and its chief lower affluent, the navigable *Avon*, from England, curving round to the British Channel; it is navigable to Welshpool, 120 miles from its mouth. The *Mersey*, though a short river, forms one of the most important estuaries of the island, the "Liverpool Channel." Scarcely less valuable in this respect is the lower *Clyde*, the most important commercial river of Scotland, navigable to Glasgow, and forming in its upper valley the largest falls in the island.

Almost all the river estuaries of Britain are great highways of commerce; the Solway Firth, between England and Scotland on the west coast, is the most important exception, its swift and strong tides, rushing in over the sands so fast that a galloping horseman can scarcely escape from them, being exceedingly dangerous to shipping. Besides these estuaries many natural harbours lie round the coast. Such are the sheltered Solent and Portsmouth harbour behind the Isle of Wight, Plymouth Sound farther west, and Milford Haven on the south coast of Wales, unsurpassed perhaps in the world as a deep and spacious harbour thoroughly sheltered from all winds.

8. Among the many canals which have been constructed from river to river by aqueducts over valleys, by tunnels, or locks over heights, to aid inland navigation in Britain, may be mentioned those which, leaving the Thames at London, Brentford, and Oxford, pass through the heart of the country to the manufacturing districts, to Birmingham and Stafford; the Thames and Severn Canal, passing by a tunnel more than two miles long through the Cotswold hills; the Trent and Mersey and Leeds and Liverpool Canals, uniting the navigation of these rivers across Central England; the Forth and Clyde Canal in the lowlands of Scotland; and the Caledonian Canal, joining the deep lakes of the Great Glen of the north of Scotland, from the North Sea to the Atlantic.

9. The lakes of South Britain are comparatively few and small. *Bala Lake*, only four miles long, is the largest in the Welsh Highlands, and in England the only considerable group is that which clusters round the knot of mountains in Cumberland—*Windermere*,<sup>1</sup> the largest, 10 miles in length, *Ulleswater* and *Derwentwater*, the next in size. Scotland, however, abounds in lakes in all three Highland districts, and their number increases towards the north. *Loch Lomond*, 24 miles long, the largest in Britain, *Loch Awe*, *Loch Tay*, *Loch Rannoch*, and *Loch Erich*, may be mentioned as the largest of those in the Grampian valleys. *Loch Ness*, 24 miles long and 800 feet deep, with *Loch Oich* and *Loch Lochy*, fills the deep trench of the Great Glen between the Grampians and the Northern Highlands; *Loch Shin*, 20 miles long and only 1 mile broad, and *Loch Maree*, are the largest of the Northern Highland region. On the western watershed of the Northern Highlands, however, lakes are so thickly sown that hundreds may be counted from a mountaintop, and the Outer Hebrides are covered with a perfect network of them.

10. In Ireland, in contrast to Britain, the watersheds are more evenly

---

<sup>1</sup> Mere = lake (meer—mare).

divided towards all points of the compass; the greatest drainage, however, is westwards, to the Atlantic. On this side we find the largest river, the *Shannon*, 160 miles long, draining an area second only to that of the Thames in extent, and affording a navigable highway over the central plain almost up to its source. The *Erne* is another large river of the western drainage of Ireland. Flowing northward we find the *Foyle*, and the *Bann* passing through Lough Neagh, and navigable for 55 miles. On the eastern watershed the *Liffey*, from the Wicklow Mountains, is the most important stream; the *Barrow*, navigable to Athy, 70 miles, from its fine estuary of Waterford Harbour, receiving near its mouth the almost equally important *Nore* and *Suir*, is the chief river of the southern drainage; the *Blackwater*, affording 22 miles of navigation, and the *Lee*, flowing to Cork (Queenstown) Harbour, are the other notable rivers of this slope.

By means of the canals inland navigation is extended throughout the plain of Ireland from sea to sea, north, west, and south and east. Among the natural harbours of Ireland which are not river estuaries properly so-called, may be noted Belfast Lough, Carlingford Lough, Dundalk Bay, Dublin Bay (with the artificial harbour of Kingstown), and Wexford Bay on the east coast; Cork and Kinsale harbours in the south. Tralee Bay, Galway Bay, the proposed terminus of a line of steamers to America, and Sligo Bay, are natural ports of the west coast; Lough Foyle, on the north coast, leads to Londonderry, the chief port of that side.

The lakes of Ireland, in contrast to those of Britain, belong rather to the plain than to the mountain regions. *Lough Neagh*, in the basin of the Bann in the north, is the largest of all in the British Islands, 154 sq. miles in area, 20 miles in length. The lakes of the *Erne*, upper and lower, stand next in size; *Loughs Corrib* and *Mask* in Connaught, joined by a subterranean channel, are the largest in the west. The *Shannon* has three large expansions, *Loughs Allen*, *Ree*, and *Derg*. Most famous for their scenery, however, are the much smaller highland *Lakes of Killarney*, embosomed in the south-western mountains of Kerry.

**11. Climate and Landscape.**—The climate of the British Isles displays the effect of maritime situation, in relation to the prevailing south westerly wind currents of the temperate zone, more remarkably than any other part of the earth between the same latitudes ( $50^{\circ}$  to  $60^{\circ}$  N.) In comparison with that of any continental region between the same parallels the climate is mild and equable; the winters being considerably warmer, the summers cooler. The moist and genial south west winds prevail throughout the year, excepting in the spring months, when for a few weeks they give place to north-east winds, which appear to be dry and parched, because they are flowing from colder to warmer latitudes, and have a great capacity for absorbing moisture from every surface over which they pass. Ireland, from its more maritime position, and from its first arresting the moist west winds, has a greater rainfall (average about 36 inches) than Britain; its climate and moisture being so favourable to vegetation as to have given it from early times the name of the "Green" or "Emerald Isle."

The high side of Britain faces the west, and, arresting the moist winds, con-

denses upon itself an excessive rainfall, leaving for the eastern slope only a moderate supply. We have already noticed that the rainfall of Western Britain is more than double that of the eastern coast-lands. A regular decrease of temperature takes place from south to north in both islands with increasing latitude. The distinction between maritime and continental climates, however, begins to show itself clearly in the islands themselves, the Atlantic sides being one or two degrees cooler on an average in the summer months, and several degrees warmer in winter, than the slopes which face Europe. Thus, the south-west coast of Ireland has an average temperature of  $62^{\circ}$  in July, while in London, in the same latitude, the mean temperature is  $64^{\circ}$ ; but in January that part of the Irish coast enjoys a mean temperature of  $43^{\circ}$ , while the average for London is as low as  $37^{\circ}$ .

12. The climate of the British Isles belongs naturally to that of the forest zone of Europe, Scotland mainly to the pine wood belt, England and Ireland to that of the deciduous trees; woods still form a part of almost every landscape within them, and in earlier times these no doubt spread over the greater part of the country, though as land became valuable and as agriculture spread the forests were gradually cleared away. Many parts of England—such as the “*New Forest*” in Hampshire, the *Forest of Arden* in Warwick, *Sherwood* in Nottingham; and parts of Scotland—in the fir forest of *Rothiemurchus* and the pine-covered slopes of Braemar—remain under their natural covering; many more wide districts, such as the Saxon *Wealds* (woods) of Kent, the *Wolds* of Lincoln and Yorkshire, the deer “forests” of Scotland, retain the names given them when they were covered with wood. The black oak roots and trunks preserved in great numbers in the Irish bogs testify to the ancient forest landscape of the great plain of Ireland, though at the present day the island is deficient in timber, the woods being restricted now to the hilly districts.

13. In South Britain a line drawn diagonally across from the mouth of the Tees round the plain of York to the vale of the Severn, and across the southern peninsula to the mouth of the Exe, marks out two divisions of England which are strongly contrasted in several ways. North and west of this lie the mountainous districts of Cumberland, the Pennine chain, Wales, and Cornwall, in which pasturage prevails over agricultural land; south and east of it lie the agricultural and pastoral lowlands, where corn fields, market gardens, and meadows enclosed by hedgerows, take the place of the more open hill pastures and moorlands,<sup>1</sup> divided by walls and fences. The only extensive lowland in the north-western region is the pastoral lowland of Cheshire, famous for its cheese. This line, as we shall afterwards notice, also shuts off the mining and manufacturing districts of the north-west of England from the non-manufacturing region of the south-east.

North Britain divides itself naturally into the agricultural lowlands, occupying about a fifth of the area, in which the science and practice of this branch of industry have been carried to a higher point than in perhaps any other part of the world; and the pastoral highlands, in which numbers of sheep and cattle are reared. Very large areas of the Grampians and northern moorlands and heather-

<sup>1</sup> Anglo-Saxon *mōr* = waste land.

covered hills are, however, preserved as "deer forests" and grouse covers, to the almost total exclusion of sheep and cattle.

The great plain of Ireland, in contrast to the lowlands of Britain, is almost entirely a pastoral country. Till the middle of last century it was exclusively so, and to the present day its agricultural system is very inferior. Cattle are far more abundant than sheep; butter is produced in immense quantities, but very little cheese. Characteristic of the surface of the Irish plain are its spongy peat bogs, occupying fully a seventh of the whole area of the island. The largest of them is the succession of morasses which lies east of the Shannon, called the *Bog of Allen*, which covers 350 square miles. From the level character of the plain great difficulties are met with in the attempts to reclaim this land, which would be almost waste did it not yield valuable stores of peat fuel or "black turf," as it is called.

14. England and Ireland lie within the climatic belt in which wheat and barley flourish, and the former country excels in the cultivation of these grains, though not nearly enough can be grown for its population. While the greater number of Englishmen live on wheaten bread, the Irish are more dependent on the potato (first introduced from Virginia), the cultivation of which in Ireland is relatively more extensive than in other European countries. Much of the soil is suited to the growth of flax, and in the north this is by far the most important crop, giving employment both to an agricultural and manufacturing population. Scotland passes north into the climatic belt in which the hardier oats thrive best, and oatmeal porridge and cakes are consequently supposed to be the popular food.

✧ 15. **Mineral Products.**—To north and west of the agricultural division of England lie all the great mining districts of the country. Of these the coal and iron fields, as determining the most advantageous position for those manufactures in which steam machinery is employed, are the most important.

The principal coalfields in England are these:—The *Newcastle coalfield* in the north, lying across the basin of the Tees; the *Yorkshire and Lancashire fields*, one on the eastern, the other on the western side of the Pennine chain of mountains, occupying the northern part of the plain of Cheshire; the *Staffordshire field*, farther south, between Trent and Severn; and the *South Wales coalfield*, on the north side of the Bristol Channel. Some idea of the enormous value of these mines, which, next to those of the United States, are the most productive in the world, may be gained from the fact that the output for the United Kingdom was 236,130,000 tons in 1905, besides 9,608,000 tons of pig-iron. This equals the output of all the rest of the world excepting the United States, which in the same year yielded 385,000,000 tons of coal and 22,992,000 tons of pig-iron.

The *Tin mines of Cornwall* are by far the richest in Europe, but here, from the absence of coal, there are no manufactures at all. The most important *salt mines* are those of Northwich in Cheshire.

In Scotland a rich coal and iron field similar to those of England extends from the Firth of Forth across the Clyde basin to the coast of Ayrshire.

Over this area, accordingly, with few exceptions, the manufacturing industries of Scotland are concentrated. Though iron and coal are widely distributed in Ireland, yet, from the thinness and poverty of the seams, mining has never become important there. Gold and silver exist in the Wicklow Mountains, but the mines were abandoned as unproductive at the beginning of this century.

**16. Inhabitants and Race.**—During the four centuries in which the Romans held the lowlands of South Britain, many of the native British tribes became Romanised, but the Celtic peoples of the mountain regions of Wales, the Scottish Highlands, and of the west of Ireland, have retained their language and more or less pure blood to the present day. After the fall of the Roman power the invading Anglo-Saxons and Jutes conquered the island, and to their strong Germanic element followed that of the brilliant Normans, the Northmen who had settled in Normandy, and who had there adopted the religion, language, and manners of the French.

Thus the population of these islands is a mixed Celtic, Germanic, and Romanic one, all its elements being more thoroughly amalgamated in the populous lowlands of Britain, the Celtic remaining purer in the highland regions, which are more difficult of access. In Ireland the Teutonic element prevails along the eastern margin; thence towards the western mountains the transition is gradual to the pure Celtic.

The English character thus combines the characteristics of German and Gaul, the earnest conscientiousness of the one with the active wit and skill of the other.<sup>1</sup> The English language, though it has perhaps a larger proportion of words of Latin than of Saxon derivation, and has incorporated words from almost every land of the globe, retains its Teutonic basis.

In 1901 the population of England and Wales was	32,527,843
"      "      of Scotland	4,472,103
"      "      of Ireland	4,458,775
In all, including Man and the Channel islands	41,976,736

In point of numbers the population of England is at the present day nearly four times as large as it was at the beginning of the last century. In the same period the population of Scotland has more than doubled itself. In Ireland, however, the total number of inhabitants at the present day is much less than it was in the late 'forties, nearly four millions of people having emigrated from it during the past sixty years.

**17. Religion.**—In regard to religion, rather more than half of the population of England claims membership with the Anglican branch of the Reformed Protestant Church—the Church of England; the most prominent dissenting bodies being those of the Wesleyan Methodists, the Independents, and Baptists. About a twentieth part of the population ( $1\frac{1}{2}$  million) is Roman Catholic.

While the English Church has three orders of clergy—bishops, priests, and deacons—under the two archbishops of *Canterbury* and *York* (the former of whom is the first peer of the realm, next to the royal princes), the Established Church of Scotland is a perfect democracy.

---

<sup>1</sup> As it is well to see ourselves as others see us, it may be noted that the English are considered by Continental writers as wilful, proud, and unapproachable, conservative in customs, not unfrequently subject to "spleen," a "kind of dulness induced by the foggy and melancholy climate."



The dissenters from the Church of Scotland chiefly the United Free Church—are probably superior in number to the adherents of the State Church. In Ireland the mass of the population remains Roman Catholic, only a fourth belonging to the Protestant, Episcopalian, Presbyterian, or Dissenting bodies. The Roman Catholic Church of Ireland is under four archbishops of *Armagh, Cashel, Dublin, and Tuam*. Both the Government subsidies, to the Maynooth College for the education of priests, in Kildare, and the royal bounty to the Presbyterian clergy, were abolished in 1869.

**18. Education.**—Public education in Britain has made immense progress during the past quarter of a century, though, as we have already seen, the country is not so far advanced in this respect as some of the continental states. The manufacturing and mining portions of England are higher in the educational scale than the agricultural. By the legislation of 1870 it was made compulsory upon parents to give their children the advantage of education.

Besides the two ancient (thirteenth century) Universities of *Oxford* and *Cambridge* there are the modern ones of *Durham* (founded 1831); *London* (1836), with which the teaching London University was incorporated in 1905; *Manchester* (Victoria), 1880, *Birmingham*, 1900, *Liverpool*, 1903, *Leeds*, 1904; *Sheffield*, 1905; *Wales*, 1903. There are several Colleges, such as that of *St. Bees*, in Cumberland, for the education of the clergy of the north of England; at *Lampeter*, in Cardiganshire, for the Welsh clergy; *University College*, and *King's College*, in London. The great Public Schools of England, in the order of their foundation, are *Winchester* (1387), *Eton* (1441), *St. Paul's*, London (1510), *Manchester* (1515), *Berkhamstead* (1545), *Birmingham* (1552), *Shrewsbury* (1552), *Christ's Hospital*, London (1553), *Tunbridge* (1553), *Rampton* (1556), *Westminster* (1560), *Merchant Taylors'*, London (1561), *Bedford* (1566), *Rugby* (1567), *Harrow* (1571), *Uppingham* (1587), *Charterhouse*, Godalming (1611), and the more modern *Clifton*, *Cheltenham*, *Marlborough*, *Wellington*, *Rossall*, and *Haileybury*.

In Scotland the establishment of parish schools began with the Reformation, and the lower classes of that country have always stood higher in education than those of England. Higher education is provided at the Universities of *Edinburgh*, *Glasgow*, *Aberdeen*, and *St. Andrews*; but in these the students are not resident, as at Oxford and Cambridge.

In Ireland education stands lower than in England, more than 16 per cent being illiterate. Now government elementary schools have been established in every district. For higher education there are *Dublin University* (1592), with its one College of Trinity, and the *Royal University of Ireland*, on the plan of that of London, and Queen's Colleges at Cork, Belfast, and Galway.

**19 Industries and Chief Towns.**—Population is densest and is increasing most rapidly over those areas of Britain in which the manufacturing industries are busiest, and in the great commercial seaports which carry on the exchange of raw and manufactured products with foreign lands.

Of the latter, *London*, with its five millions of inhabitants, the greatest city in the world, extending over 200 square miles, has been likened to a province covered with houses. Its population exceeds that of all Scotland. Its traffic in later times has risen to a marvellous extent: its harbour, the Thames, is crowded with a press of ships from

all corners of the earth, filling the magazines round its docks with the products of every land ; and its streets are thronged with busy crowds.

*Hull*, the *Tyne Ports* (Newcastle, Gateshead, and Shields), and *Sunderland*, with London, form the great outlets of the east of England.

*Liverpool* (with Birkenhead), ranking even before London in maritime importance, and *Bristol*, are the great outlets and seats of commerce in the west of England, as *Southampton* and *Plymouth* on the Channel are in the south.

20. The most important of all the textile industries of England is that of cotton, which has centred itself in *Manchester* (with Salford and Chorlton), and in its satellite cities on the coalfield of Lancashire and Cheshire (Preston, Blackburn, Oldham, Wigan, Bury, Rochdale, Bolton, Stockport, Macclesfield), drawing a dense population round these centres, with their thousands of factories, fed with raw material from abroad, and relieved of their manufactured products by Liverpool and the new port of Manchester.

The woollen manufactures, next in importance, are gathered over the coalfield on the opposite side of the Pennine chain, in the great towns of *Leeds* and *Bradford*, as well as in Halifax, Huddersfield, Wakefield, and Dewsbury, clustering round these. Linen manufactures centre at *Barnsley*, farther south, also on this Yorkshire coalfield. Three outlying woollen manufacturing centres may be noted ; these are *Leicester*, in a famous sheep-rearing district, and *Kidderminster*, noted for its carpets, *Stroud*, *Bradford*, and other towns in the west of England, noted for the quality of their cloth. Newtown, in Montgomeryshire, is the centre of the Welsh flannel trade.

Hardwares have two great points of production—the one round *Sheffield*, on the Yorkshire coal and iron field, the other round *Birmingham* and its satellite towns on the South Stafford coal and iron field (Wolverhampton, Wednesbury, Bilston, Dudley, Walsall), called the “Black Country” because large parts of it are so completely cut up with collieries and ironworks that no cultivation exists.

In North Staffordshire, between the iron and the cotton manufacturing regions, lies the “Potteries,” a district which by supplying coal is able to maintain its staple industry. *Stoke-upon-Trent* is the centre of the cluster of Pottery towns (Burslem, Longton, Hanley, Tunstall), all connected by lines of busy hamlets. Worcester, on the Severn, is also celebrated for its pottery.

English silk manufactures give importance to three separate districts, those round *Congleton* and *Macclesfield*, in Cheshire ; *Derby* ; and *Coventry*, in Warwickshire. *Nottingham* town combines silk and cotton manufactures in hosiery and lace work. *Stafford* town supplies boots and shoes to all the manufacturing towns which lie round it.

21. The coal trade of North England centres in the *Tyne ports* and *Sunderland*, which are also famous for their iron ships and engines, and their chemical works. The South Wales iron and coal field has its heart in *Merthyr Tydfil*, one of the largest towns of Wales ; *Cardiff*, with fine docks and iron shipbuilding yards, besides its large coal export trade ; *Swansea* is the head-quarters of copper and tin smelting, from ores brought thither from the most distant parts of the world ; *Milford Haven* aspires to becoming the rival of Liverpool in the trade with America.

Among the few large towns besides London which lie outside the manufacturing and mining region of England, may be noted *Norwich*, in agricultural



Norfolk, a seat of manufactures of the most various kind, introduced by about 4000 Flemings who fled thither in Queen Elizabeth's reign; *Brighton*, on the channel, which has grown to importance solely from its attractions as a sea-side watering place; *Bath*, near Bristol, which owes its prosperity to its hot saline springs; *Portsmouth*, the chief naval arsenal and fortress of Britain; and *Devonport*, next Plymouth, also a fortified arsenal and dockyard.

22. On the Scottish coal and iron field, *Glasgow*, favoured by its position on the estuary of the Clyde, has risen to be at once the great commercial and manufacturing centre of the country, carrying on a large trade with all parts of the world, in manufacturing cottons and machinery, and in building iron ships. A number of manufacturing towns (*Paisley*, noted for its shawls; *Greenock*, for its sugar-refining; *Dumbarton*, for its iron ships; *Airdrie*, in the midst of the collieries and iron works) have risen round Glasgow over the Scottish coalfield.

*Edinburgh*, the metropolis of Scotland, which grew up originally beneath the protecting walls of its castle, is not a manufacturing town, but derives its importance mainly from the law courts, its university and schools, and its printing and publishing trade; *Leith*, the port of Edinburgh, is mainly engaged in the Baltic grain trade; *Dundee*, on the estuary of the Tay, owes much of its prosperity to its jute and hemp factories, and to its Greenland whaling and sealing trade.

23. Owing to its poverty in coal and iron, the manufactures of Ireland have not attained an extent at all comparable with those of Britain. Its only extensive manufacturing district is that which lies round *Belfast* in the north-east, where the flax, grown largely in the north of the country, is made into linen. The linen district extends to *Armagh* on the west, and *Coleraine* in the north.

*Dublin*, the capital, is noted for its poplins, stout, and whisky; its quays afford excellent accommodation for shipping, and it takes the lead in the foreign trade of Ireland.

*Cork*, with its fine harbour the "Cove of Cork," or Queenstown, in the south; *Limerick*, on the Shannon; *Galway*, the port of the west; *Londonderry*, in the north, are the other important centres of population in Ireland.

24. **Trade and Communications.**—Several circumstances which may be gathered from the foregoing paragraphs have combined to secure for the United Kingdom its grand commercial pre-eminence in the world:—the position of the islands in the centre of the land hemisphere of the world; their temperate climate, allowing free navigation of the surrounding seas at all seasons; the proximity of every part of them to the highway of the sea; the splendid system of communication over the land, by river, canal, and railway; the excellence of the manufactures; and above all their economy, due to the presence of coal and iron in conjunction over large areas. In 1905 upwards of 20,580 sailing and steam ships belonged to the ports of the United Kingdom, and are engaged in the home and foreign trade of the islands. These, with foreign vessels, now bring or take away more than 80 millions of tons of goods every year, and the amount is steadily and largely increasing.

The chief among the articles of home produce or manufacture exported from the British Isles, are cotton goods (£96,000,000 in 1906), woollens, iron

and steel, coal, machinery, and linen. Among imports, corn and flour, wool, sugar, timber, meat, cotton, cattle, and tea, take rank one after the other.

Besides the fluvial and artificial waterways extending over the lowlands of the British Isles, a network of roads, some of them following the old straight lines laid down by the Romans, reaches to every corner of the islands. Since 1825, when the first short line of steam-carriage railway was opened for passenger traffic between Stockton and Darlington, in Durham, railroads have been made to intersect the country in all directions, till there are now (1905) 22,847 miles of these iron highways in the United Kingdom. Telegraph wires, also first brought into practical use in England for general purposes in 1837, now join every city, town, and hamlet in the kingdom, and by sea cables place the British Isles in immediate union with almost every part of the world.

**25. Political Divisions.**—South Britain is divided into 52 counties or shires (47 in England, 12 in Wales); Scotland into 32 counties, and 1 stewartry; Ireland into 4 provinces, and these again into 32 counties. These divisions have no sort of uniformity or relation in point of extent or population. The West Riding of Yorkshire, the largest of the English counties, is 19 times the size of Rutland, the smallest; and in population the variations are still greater.

Several of the counties of England—such as Kent, Essex, Norfolk, Suffolk—were formed out of the small Anglo-Saxon kingdoms, earls being substituted for kings as the consolidation of the country into one kingdom advanced; the Saxon earls were replaced by Norman *counts* after the conquest. Other small kingdoms were split up into *shires* (*sciran*, to divide); some—such as York, Durham, Cheshire, and Worcester—take their names from ancient bishoprics. The name *stewartry*, still applied to Kirkcudbright in the south of Scotland, though its government does not now differ from that of other counties, recalls the time when Galloway (the present Wigton and Kirkcudbright), after it had forfeited its Celtic princes and laws, under whom it had been rather a dependency than an integral part of Scotland, was placed under a steward, who had more extensive powers than a sheriff.<sup>1</sup>

The four provinces of Ireland—Ulster, Leinster, Munster, and Connaught—retain the names of old Celtic kingdoms, the division into counties having been made after the conquest by England, as the country gradually came more under English influence, between the twelfth and the sixteenth centuries. The names and relative positions of these internal divisions will be best learned from the map.

**26. Government.**—The conquest of Ireland by England began in the twelfth century, and Scotland was united to the English crown at Queen Elizabeth's death (1603). Ireland remained a distinct kingdom till 1801, when it was joined with Great Britain to form the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland. By the constitution, the supreme legislative power is vested in the *Parliament*,<sup>2</sup> the origin of which may be traced to the great Saxon Council or Wittenagemote.<sup>3</sup> For a long period this council consisted of the king's *barons*, or those who held estates from the crown; but its constitution was altered by the Magna Charta (1215), by which it was ordained that all archbishops, earls, and greater barons, should be summoned to form what is now called the House of Lords. As cities grew up, chiefly round the protecting walls of the baronial castles, and their citizens or burghesses<sup>4</sup> grew

<sup>1</sup> *Scir-grêfa*, the reeve or fiscal officer of a shire.

<sup>2</sup> Fr. *parler*, to talk.

<sup>3</sup> Meeting of wise men.

<sup>4</sup> Sax. *burg* = a hill, castle.

wealthy, it became necessary to summon some of their members to the council; in the same way the freeholders of the country came to be represented by *knights of the shires*. The constitution appears to have taken this form in the thirteenth century, when writs were issued directing the election of two knights for every county, two citizens for every city, and two burgesses for every borough, to form the Lower House, or Commons of the Grand Council. The Acts of Union with Scotland and Ireland fixed the number of members to be sent to the one Parliament by each part of the United Kingdom. Great changes in the franchise as well as in the distribution were effected by the Reform Acts of 1832 and 1867, and again in 1885, when the representation was arranged more in conformity with the existing distribution of population, and the franchise in counties assimilated to that in boroughs. The constituent parts of the Parliament are the Sovereign, the House of Lords, and the House of Commons. The whole executive power is vested nominally in the Sovereign, but practically in a committee of ministers called the Cabinet; the Crown is also the fountain of justice and honour. The Sovereign summons and dissolves Parliament. The province of the Houses of Parliament is chiefly to legislate with the Crown; but they also review the Acts of the Executive, and can practically, by their censure, cause a change of the Ministry or Cabinet. The House of Lords exercises also judicial functions, since it forms the highest court of appeal in the realm. It consisted in 1906 of 613 members. The House of Commons numbers 670 members, returned as follows by the 4 divisions of the United Kingdom.

	England.	Wales.	Scotland.	Ireland
{ 377 Counties . . . . .	234	19	39	85
{ 284 Boroughs . . . . .	226	11	31	16
{ 9 Universities . . . . .	5	—	2	2

Thus throughout the counties preponderate.

The principal courts of law and equity in England hold their sittings in London. Twice a year judges from the courts go round the whole country on circuit, holding the *Assizes* (sittings) in the principal town of each county. The country is divided into eight circuits, called respectively the Home, North-Eastern, Midland, Oxford, Western, Northern, North Wales, and South Wales. County courts decide minor cases. It is one of the chief offices of the *Sheriff* to carry out all judgments and orders of the courts of law.

27. The executive government of Ireland is vested in a Lord-Lieutenant, and the law is administered by a Lord Chancellor and twelve judges. An armed constabulary, however, is maintained. Scottish law differs in many particulars from that of England, as well as in its administration; the highest civil tribunal of Scotland, the Court of Session, has its seat at Edinburgh; the Circuit Courts of Justiciary, of which there are three—the North, West, and South—resemble the assizes of England.

The British army is small compared with the armies of continental states, and differs from them by service in it being *voluntary*. The regular force is supplemented by the “territorial force,” a reconstituted form of the “volunteers.” The strength of the country lies in its navy, the finest in the world.

28. The British possessions in Europe are the fortress of *Gibraltar* (Jebel-al-Tarik = Tarik’s Mount), British since 1704, guarding the entrance of the Mediterranean; and the islands of *Malta* and *Gozo*, in the central Mediterranean, with *Valetta* (in Malta), now one of the strongest fortresses in the world. *Heligoland*, an islet off the mouth of the Elbe, which had been taken from Denmark in 1807, was ceded to Germany in 1890.

29. The **BRITISH EMPIRE**, including its colonies and dependencies, extends over more than 11,000,000 square miles, and embraces a population of 391,000,000, distributed as follows :—

	Area, sq. m.	Population, 1905-6.
United Kingdom . . . . .	121,130	43,660,000
European Dependencies, with Cyprus	3,710	470,000
North America . . . . .	3,510,600	5,900,000
West Indies and Central America	20,600	1,718,000
South America . . . . .	115,500	316,000
Africa . . . . .	2,463,000	34,058,000
Asia . . . . .	2,005,000	300,680,000
Australasia . . . . .	3,175,000	4,406,000
	<hr/> <hr/> 11,414,540	<hr/> <hr/> 391,208,000

## 2.—SCANDINAVIA.

1. **Sweden<sup>1</sup> and Norway.<sup>2</sup>**—The Scandinavian peninsula, the largest of Europe, shuts off the Baltic and its prolongation the Gulf of Bothnia on the east from the Atlantic on the west ; for several hundreds of miles it is washed north-west and north by the Arctic Ocean ; the Skager Rak, Kattegat, and the Sound, separate it from Denmark on the south. Its only landward frontier lies along the inhospitable lake region of northern Finland, where the Torneå river, at the head of the Gulf of Bothnia, and the Varanger Fiord on the Arctic coast, separate Sweden and Norway politically from northern Russia.

The length of the peninsula from north to south is nearly 1200 miles, or double that of Great Britain ; its width at greatest 450 miles, and its area 295,000 square miles (172,000 in Sweden, 123,000 in Norway).

2. The general configuration of the peninsula—the lowland toward the Baltic forming a branch of the great European plain, the mountains and snow fjelds and glaciers towards the west, and its high deeply-fretted fiord coast on the Atlantic—has already been sketched in connection with the other great features of Europe.

The coasts of the Gulf of Bothnia are flat and sandy, covered with the soil brought down by the many streams, and the numerous islets are likewise low. From the Qvarken Islands northwards, however, the coast is partly low and sandy, partly marked by lines of cliffs fringed with rocky skärs or skerries, separated by narrow passages with intricate windings, rendering access tedious and difficult. The island of Gotland (= good land), 80 miles long, is a high cliff-walled terrace ; the narrower Öland near the coast is also a tableland. Approaching the southmost plain of Skåne or Scania the rocky coast line ceases, the coasts appear low and sandy and free from islands. Turning north again, however, into the Kattegat and Skager Rak, and up into

<sup>1</sup> Sverige = Swedes' Kingdom.

<sup>2</sup> Norge = Northern Kingdom.

the fine fiord of Kristiania, the rocky islets, the high and broken coasts, again appear. The deep fiords of the west coast, filled with such beautifully clear water that one can see the bottom through a depth of 100 feet, penetrate into the land between the high mountain sides, sometimes presenting steep walls 1000 feet high, over which waterfalls leap into the abyss; or glaciers descend nearly to the water's edge, or borders of dark pine forest; while hundreds of romantic rocky islets stud the neighbouring sea. The *Sogne Fiord* (in 61° N.) is the largest of all, reaching eastward into the land more than 100 miles; one of the many waterfalls, the *Vättisfos*, tumbles into this fiord.

3. Most important of the many lofty islands with which the Atlantic coast of Norway is studded, is the mountainous granitic group of the *Vesterdlen* (68° to 69° N.), which runs out south-westward like a long promontory, broken through by narrow tortuous fissures. The largest of the group is *Hindoe*, 50 miles long; and the five islands farthest to the south-west, enclosing the West-fiord, are the *Lofoten*, which sometimes give their name to the whole group, between two of which the famous *Moskø* or *Mael Strom* whirlpool is formed by the rushing tide pent up by the island barrier. The most notable of the islands farther north is that called *Magerø*, 22 miles long, the northmost land of Europe, inhabited by a few Lapp families, who can look out over the Arctic Sea from the summit of its northward cliff, the *North Cape*, 970 feet high. This is to be distinguished from the *Nord Kæn*, the northernmost point of the mainland, 40 miles farther east.

4 **Hydrography.**—The shallow Baltic on the east is frozen over during a considerable part of the year, closing all the ports of Sweden, and that of Kristiania in Norway, for at least four months. Entering the Skager Rak we find the sea-bed on its northern side sinking to a depth of more than 200 fathoms in a deep trough which skirts the southern promontory of Norway. All along the west coast, however, from lat. 60° to the North Cape, at some distance from the fiord mouths, there runs a chain of banks partly of sand, partly of rocks and stones, which form the great fishing grounds of the peninsula. Outside of these the Atlantic sinks to great depths. In contrast to the Baltic shores, all the western coast of Norway, from the Skager Rak to the North Cape and the Varanger Fiord, is kept free of ice all the year round by the warming waters of the Gulf Stream drift, borne towards them by the south-westerly winds.

5. Few countries are so copiously watered as this, with innumerable lesser and greater streams, or present such a multitude of large and small lakes at every elevation. The rivers are, for the most part, so broken by rapids and falls<sup>1</sup> that few of them can be rendered valuable for any traffic, and the navigation even of the larger lakes is intricate and dangerous. The streams, however, are turned to account in floating down the valuable timber of the forests, and their rapids give abundant mill power.

<sup>1</sup> Among the finest are the *Rjukan Foss*, or smoking fall, of the *Maan Elv*, in South Norway, one of the finest in Europe, and the *Voring Foss*.



From the position of the mountain region on the west the river slope lies towards the south and east.

The largest river of Norway, the *Glommen* or *Stor-Elv* (great river), has a rapid course of about 300 miles southward to the Skager Rak, tumbling at a distance of 10 miles from the sea over its last fall, the *Sarpen Fos*, 60 feet high. Up to this it can be navigated by large boats. Next to its basin in Sweden comes that of the *Klar Elf*, the chief of those which feed Lake Wener, the largest water expanse of Scandinavia. This lake overflows to the Kattegat by the *Göta*, noted for its picturesque rapids and its larger falls, the *Rånnum* and *Trolhätta*. By means of the *Trolhätta Canal* and its locks, designed by the English engineer Telford to avoid these falls, and cut in the granite rock, the navigation of the Göta forms part of a line of navigation which joins the Kattegat, through the great lakes, with the Baltic. Among the larger of those which flow south-eastward from the mountains to the northern part of the Baltic coast (from south to north) are the *Dal Elf*, with its east and west upper branches; the *Ljusne Elf*, *Indals Elf*, flowing through the large Stor Lake; *Angerman Elf*, one of the largest rivers of Sweden, navigable for a few miles from the Gulf of Bothnia; the *Umedå*, with two splendid falls not far from its mouth; the *Skelleftea*, the *Pitedå*, from Sulitelma (5930 ft.), the highest mountain of the northern dividing range; the *Luledå* and the *Tornedå*, the lower half of which forms the boundary between Sweden and Russia. The only river of importance flowing to the Arctic Sea from Scandinavia is the *Tana*, which also forms part of the Russian frontier.

6. Lake *Wener*, more than 2000 square miles in area (or as big as the county of Northumberland) is nearly divided by peninsulas running out from its north and south shores. Its coasts are studded with islets, it is in many parts shallow, and strong wind gusts make its navigation difficult. Lake *Wetter*, about 25 miles south-east of the former, 70 miles long, has clear green water, surrounded by lofty unbroken shores. These lakes are respectively 150 and 300 feet above the Baltic. Lake *Mälär*, the intricate maze of waters next the Baltic coast, on the other hand, is scarcely 6 feet above the level of that sea; it is 81 miles long, and its shores are varied with cliffs and woods and sloping lawns or cultivated fields. The most important line of artificial navigation in the peninsula is that of the Göta Canal, before noticed, which unites the Göta river with Lakes Wener and Wetter.

7. **Climate.**—Reaching north and south through more than a thousand miles, the Scandinavian peninsula has a great range of climate from latitude alone. In the extreme south its days and nights correspond in duration to those of the north of England; towards the north the summer days and winter nights grow longer; at the Arctic circle the mid-winter day is scarcely lighted by the sun, and at midsummer the sun may be seen at midnight; at the North Cape there are nearly three months (May, June, July) of summer daylight, and an equally long winter night (November, December, January).

All the northern part of the land is held in the sway of frost and snow, and the streams are closed with ice, from September till June. Farther south, in the latitude of Stockholm, the winter frosts bind the rivers and lakes from December till April, and in the extreme south of Sweden only till March. Summer by contrast is hot, and the apparent change to this season

from winter is very rapid, owing to the sudden disappearance of the snow, especially in the north. The two sides of the peninsula are, however, remarkably contrasted in climate, that facing the Atlantic having a foggy, rainy, and more equable one; the other, sloping to the Continent, having a drier climate, with great extremes. This cannot be better illustrated than by remembering that the Skager Rak in the south, lying within the extreme continental climate of the Baltic, is frozen in winter, while the North Cape, 1000 miles higher in latitude, is kept open and free of ice all through the year by the warm water carried against it by the prevailing south-westerly winds. Even the western side of southern Sweden, next the Kattegat, has a milder and more equable climate than the corresponding east coast on the Baltic. It is owing to the lesser rainfall and the hotter summers that the limit of perennial snow on the mountains lies at a higher elevation on the eastern or continental than it does on the maritime side of Scandinavia.

**8. Products.** Forests of pine and fir (beech and oak only in the far south) form the natural covering of all the lower lands of Scandinavia, and reach up to a considerable elevation in the mountains, higher also on the eastern than on the western side of the hills, corresponding to the snow-line.

North of 64°, however, on the greater elevations, the trees become stunted, and finally give place to scanty grasses, berry-bearing plants, mosses, and lichens. Above these, on the mountains, come the snow fields with their dependent glaciers.

At the North Cape potatoes and cabbages can only be reared with care in enclosures. Rye will not ripen north of 66°. Between the 64th and 65th parallels oats seldom come to maturity, and this is the northerly limit of all orchard fruits, as well as of flax and hemp. Hops grow as far north as 62°. The 61st parallel may be said to separate the agricultural from the forest region of Scandinavia, all the lowland to the north of this being left for the most part under its natural woods. South of that line agriculture has now been widely extended, oats, barley, rye, and wheat being grown in sufficient quantity to be largely exported. The plain of *Skåne*, the southernmost promontory of Sweden, may be termed the granary of the country.

**9. Iron and copper and silver** are widely distributed in Scandinavia. Central Sweden has not far short of 200 iron mines, but the quantity produced is less than a twentieth of the yield of the British iron fields. The most famous mine of Sweden is that of *Dannemora* in Upsala, north of Stockholm, giving magnetic iron which is formed into the finest steel. The most productive copper mines are those of the *Dal valley* in Sweden, and of the *Kaafjord*, a branch of the *Altenfjord* in the north of Norway (70° N.) Silver is obtained in greatest quantity at *Sala* in Vestmanland, north-west of Stockholm.

**10 People.** The people of the peninsula are of Germanic race, with the exception of the small number of Finns and the Lapps in the north. Population (1900, 7,376,000 (Norway, 2,240,000; Sweden, 5,136,000).

The Northmen of Norway, of middle stature, strong, generally blonde-haired and blue-eyed, seamen by choice, have adopted the Danish as the language of the towns and of literature, the modernised Old Norse being banished to the outlying country districts and unfrequented fiords. The Finlanders of Finmark, on the north, and between the Glommen and Klar Elv in the south (*Kuani* or *Kajani*), few in numbers,<sup>1</sup> are darker than the Nor-

<sup>1</sup> 28,800 in Sweden and Norway.



wegians, but do not differ much in outward form ; they speak Finnish (a dialect of the Ural-Altaic family of languages) ; the *Lapps*<sup>1</sup> (who call themselves *Sahmelads*) of the northern Arctic provinces, are little, white, thickset people, with small slit eyes, broad low brow, and sharp beardless chin, and have been kept separate as an inferior race by the Northmen.

The Swedes are also a Germanic people, tall and strong, but with more variety of characteristics than the Norwegians. The Swedish language, allied closely to Norse and Danish, appears in very many dialects.

**11. Religion and Education.**—Almost the whole population is Protestant, adhering to the Lutheran Church, members of which alone are permitted to hold public offices. Education is well advanced in both countries, public instruction being gratuitous and compulsory.

Sweden has the Universities of *Upsala* (1720 students in 1904), which dates from 1477, and of *Lund* (817 students), founded in 1668, besides the many scientific and educational institutions of Stockholm. Norway has the University of *Kristiania*, founded in 1811 (1600 students).

**12. Industries.**—In Norway by far the largest division of the inhabitants find employment in agriculture and in cattle-rearing (though only about one-thousandth part of the surface of the land is cultivable), or as seamen or fishers, or as woodcutters in the pine forests, so that only a very small proportion of the people, about a sixth, are dwellers in towns.

Agriculture, as we have seen, is not profitable except in the extreme south, and in the deep valleys ; cattle-rearing, however, is the industry of the higher valleys ; here each farmer has a *sæter* or summer pasture on the heights of the field, whither he repairs with his cattle, and where the animals grow fat, but they need to be kept indoors upon hay and moss during the winter.

The fisheries give occupation and food to a large part of the population of Norway. Herring shoals come twice a year to the coast, in winter and summer, and at the latter season great numbers are netted. Soon after New Year the cod-fishing begins, the *Lofoten Isles* being one of its greatest centres. In this about 9000 boats with 83,000 men, besides about 350 "*yaegts*" or storing ships, are employed. The two most frequent trees, the pine and the birch, are indispensable to the Norwegian. Of these he builds houses, churches, bridges, sledges, carioles, and boats. The birch twigs also give winter food for the cattle, and are useful in sweeping. The forests also supply timber for export, the most important outlets of the forests being the rivers which flow to the Skager Rak.

**13. Kristiania** (pop. 228,000 in 1900) is the capital and seat of Government, on its fiord reaching north from the Skager Rak ; *Bergen*, on the Atlantic coast, the commercial town of Norway, is the only other important centre of population in the country.

*Trondhjem*, *Stavanger*, and *Kristianssand*, on the same coast, are seaport towns, trading in fish, timber, and copper. *Drammen*, on a branch of the

<sup>1</sup> 24,000 in Sweden and Norway.

Kristiania fiord, is the chief timber port. *Tromsö* and *Hammerfest* are remarkable as the most northerly ports of the world that are open to navigation all the year round.

14. In Sweden about 87 per cent of the population is rural, employed mainly in the agricultural region of the south, in the central mining regions, and in the industries of the forests farther north. Manufactures of various kinds, chiefly of cotton and woollen spinning, are, however, extending in Sweden.

15. The trade of the country centres in the capital, *Stockholm* (pop. 324,000 in 1905), advantageously placed for commerce in the island of Lake Mälär, where its channels open to the Baltic through a maze of rocks and tree-covered islets, and at *Göteborg* (pop. 141,000) on the Kattegat. These are the only large towns of the country.

*Malmö*, on the Sound, opposite Copenhagen, is the outlet of the corn granary of the southern plain; *Norrköping*, on an inlet of the Baltic, after Stockholm, is the busiest manufacturing town of Sweden, its mills being driven by the rapids of the Motala; *Gefle* lies north of Stockholm, and is second only to it as a seaport on the Baltic side of the country; and *Karlskrona*, on the south coast, is the fortified naval arsenal and head-quarters of the fleet of Sweden.

Within recent years a network of railways has been formed over southern Sweden and Norway, connecting the capital towns with the ports of Göteborg, Malmö, and many other points.

16. **Government.**—After the crisis of European affairs brought about by Napoleon's wars, Denmark, we may remember, lost her hold over Norway, which had been united to it for more than four centuries, and that country was made over to Sweden in exchange for Finland, which then passed under Russian sway. Norway, however, was again separated from Sweden as an independent kingdom under King Haakon VII. in 1905.

17. The constitution of Sweden dates from 1809, but in 1866, when the separate meetings of the four estates—nobles, clergy, burghers, and peasants—were done away, the legislative system was much modified, and it now approximates to that of Britain. The executive power is vested in the king, acting under the advice of a Council of State; the legislative in the two Chambers of the *Diet*, both of which are elected by the people—the first for nine years from proprietors, the second for three years from a lower class. The administration of justice is entirely independent of the Government.

18. Norway is much more democratic; no privilege of birth or hereditary nobility has been recognised since 1821. There the Chambers of the "*Storting*," or Great Court, represent the sovereign will of the people, and the king has only a limited power of veto on the laws passed by this assembly.

19. For administrative purposes Sweden is divided into twenty-five *län* or governments, grouped within three great regions of the country—*Svealand*, or Svea Rike, the old kingdom of Sweden, in the

centre ; *Gothland*, or *Göta Rike*, in the south ; and *Norrland*=north land. Norway is divided into twenty *amts* or bailiwicks, grouped in the six dioceses or *stifts*, of *Kristiania*, *Hamar*, *Kristianssand*, *Bergen*, *Trondhjem*, and *Tromsö*.

Sweden no longer possesses a colony since the island of St. Bartholomew in the West Indies, ceded by France, in 1784, has been restored to that power.

### 3.—DENMARK.

1. The Danish territory includes the northern tract of the Cimbrian peninsula or Jutland, and the archipelago of islands which lies east of it ; besides the widely-separated *Faröe* islands and Iceland, belonging also to Europe, and Danish Greenland, which must be described along with the American continent.

The home portion of the territory, that which lies south of the Scandinavian peninsula, has an area of 13,784 square miles, which is much less than the half that of Scotland or Ireland. Its coasts are washed by shallow seas : by the North Sea on the west, the Skager Rak and the Kattegat on the north and north-east, the Sound and Belts and the Baltic on the east ; the only land frontier being that which crosses the peninsula, separating Jutland from the German province of Schleswig.

Two-thirds of the area is formed by the peninsula. The islands form three main groups—(1) Those of *Fyen* or *Fünen*, with its satellites *Langeland*, *Ærö*, and *Taasinge*, nearest the peninsula, separated by the Little Belt ; (2) of *Sjælland* or *Zealand*, with *Möen*, *Falster* and *Laaland*, *Amager* and *Saltholm*, between the Great Belt and the Sound ; and (3) *Bornholm*, in the Baltic. Most apart lie the islands of *Læsö* and *Anholt* on the Kattegat, and of *Samsö* between Zealand and Jutland.

2. **Physical Features.**—The sea round all the coasts is shallow and difficult of approach. The western shore of Jutland especially is one of the most dangerous in the world, and is so deficient in harbours and anchorage-ground as to be called the “iron coast” by the sailors.

The most frequented highway to the Baltic leads from the Kattegat through the well buoyed and lighted *Sound*, and in this, opposite Copenhagen, the *Kongedybet*, or King’s Deeps, afford the best and safest anchorage on all the Danish coast. The *Great and Little Belts* are also navigable, but the channel through them winds about so much that the passage is double the length of that through the Sound. Among the many inlets of the coasts, the *Limfjord*, which reaches across and isolates the northern part of Jutland, is the most remarkable. It opens by a narrow channel to the Kattegat at *Hals*, and on the opposite side by the *Agger Minde* to the North Sea, which broke through into the fjord during a storm in 1825. From its shallowness it is only passable by flat-bottomed boats called “Kaage.”

3. The whole of this home country of Denmark, except the island of Bornholm, is so low and flat that an elevation of 100 feet would be noticed as a marked rise.

The very highest points of all are the *Kushørnehøj* and the *Himmerfjerg*, two hills in Eastern Jutland, the former rising 565, the latter only 560 feet above the sea. *Bornholm* is an extension of the granite mass of South Sweden, presenting steep slopes to the sea. The greater part of the other Danish islands and Jutland are, however, of chalk formation, which, as in England, occasionally appears in sea cliffs, the most notable being those called *Sterns Klit*, on the eastern coast of Zealand. Here, as in Sweden, errati-blocks occur, the largest being that called the Lady's Rock, in Funen (128 feet in circumference, 42 feet high), which, according to the legend, was thrown from Langeland to Funen by a noble lady. Dunes of drift sand extend almost continuously along the west coast protecting it from the sea, from the *Skar* or horn of Skagen in the extreme north of Jutland, to the *Blåvand Huk*, 200 miles south.

4. **Climate and Products.** Denmark, surrounded by the sea, has a climate more humid, milder, and more equable than that of Germany to the south of it, rain and fog and change being characteristic; but it is more excessive or continental than that of the parts of England and Scotland in the same latitude, as is shown by the winter freezing of the Baltic and its Sounds. The summers are occasionally very hot. The contrast of its east and west sides is as remarkable as that of the Scandinavian peninsula north of it—the west coast remaining ice-free during the year. West winds prevail, as in Britain, during the greater part of the year, excepting in spring, when cold dry east and north-west winds (*skar*) set in.

The damp climate of Denmark supplies the country with many brooks, but there are no important rivers. Lakes, however, are numerous in East Jutland and on the islands.

5. The more hilly eastern belt of Jutland is a fertile corn land, interspersed with beech woods. The centre and west of the peninsula, from north to south, presents bare sandy heaths, with here and there "holms" or islands of more cultivable land. Zealand and Funen have little wood, but are well supplied with turf fuel, and possess much fertile corn-growing land. Laaland grows excellent wheat, and has fine beech and oak woods, and Falster is called the orchard of Denmark. The central heights of Bornholm are heath-covered, but elsewhere the land is tolerably fertile. This is the only part of the home country of Denmark that has any mineral resources at all, yielding a little coal and the porcelain clay which is used at Copenhagen.

6. **People.**—The inhabitants of Jutland and the islands number over 2 millions (1906, 2,605,000). They belong to the Scandinavian branch of the Teutonic peoples, and speak the Danish form of the old Norse, which was fixed in writing about the time of the Reformation.

Three dialects are, however, to be distinguished—(1) The Zealandic, closest to the written tongue; (2) the Jutic, which differs very much from the written language, and which, in the west, becomes very like English; (3) the dialect of Bornholm, which is like that of Sweden.

**7. Religion and Education.**—Since the Reformation the Danes have been adherents of the Evangelic Lutheran Church. The kingdom is divided into seven bishoprics. Education is well advanced, and there are very few people in the country who can neither read nor write.

Copenhagen has a university and Royal library. Sorö academy, in central Zealand, ranks next as a school of learning.

**8. Industries.**—Denmark is essentially an agricultural country, nearly a third of its surface being fertile and cultivable, so that about 60 per cent of its inhabitants find their occupation in tilling the soil—oats, barley, rye, and wheat being the chief crops. The peninsula of Jutland, with its uncultivable heaths and marsh lands in the west, is the chief pastoral region of Denmark, supporting large herds of cattle, horses, and sheep. All the inhabitants of the sandy west coast are fishers, the flounder fisheries of the *Skaw* being the most important of all. Herring and seals are taken in the Belts, in some parts of which also large numbers of porpoises are trapped as their shoals pass out of the Baltic.

Denmark is not to any considerable extent a manufacturing country, for both water power and coal for steam machinery are wanting; but rough woollen cloth is woven by hand in some of the country houses, and the making of wooden shoes employs many hands in the wooded parts of the country. Neither is Denmark a trading country, only about 5 per cent of its inhabitants being engaged in commerce. On this account but few canals have been constructed. The roads in Zealand are good, but in Jutland very bad. In comparison to its area, however, Denmark is better provided with railways than even the British Isles.

**9. Chief Towns.**—*Copenhagen*<sup>1</sup> (pop., 1906, 426,500), the capital, most advantageously placed beside the best anchorage and across the best harbour of the most frequented passage to the Baltic, is the only large town of Denmark.

It embraces within it about one-seventh of all the urban population of the country, and is the centre of education, art, manufactures, and trade, besides being the arsenal of the kingdom. The city lies across the harbour formed by the channel between the mainland of Zealand and its satellite of Amager, and is strongly fortified. *Odense*,<sup>2</sup> in Fünen, connected by canal with its fiord, is the largest provincial town of Denmark, and the oldest one in the country. *Aarhus*, on the east coast of Jutland, and *Aalborg*, on the Limfiord, are the chief ports of the peninsula. At *Elsinore* (Helsingör), on the narrowest part of the Sound, vessels formerly stopped to pay the "Sound dues" collected by the Danish Government, before entering the Baltic; these, however, were abolished by treaty in 1857. Beside this is the strong stone fortress of *Kronborg*, the guns of which command the passage.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Dan.* Kjöbenhavn = Merchants' Harbour.

<sup>2</sup> Odin's Vé = Odin's Shrine.

10. **Government.**—The present constitution of Denmark dates from 1866. The executive power is vested in the King and his ministers, the legislative in the *Rigsdag* or Diet, comprising the *Landsting* or Upper House, and the *Folkething* or House of Commons, partly nominated by the Crown, partly elected, indirectly, by the people.

For administrative purposes the country is divided into 22 *amter*, or districts—12 on the islands, and 10 in Jutland.

#### FARÖE ISLANDS.

11. The *Faroer* (probably meaning sheep islands, from *Faar*, a sheep), out in the Atlantic, between Norway and Iceland, 200 miles north of Cape Wrath in Scotland, belonged at one time to Norway, came with that country to the Danish crown in 1397, and remained in its possession after Norway was separated. They consist of 25 irregularly shaped mountainous islets of trap and basalt rocks, the coasts of which descend steeply by jagged cliffs to the narrow channels which separate them, and through which the tidal currents rush. Together they occupy nearly 500 square miles, the largest of them, Stromo, being 30 miles in length.

The highest point, named *Slattaretinda*, occurs in the island of Österö, and rises 2792 feet above the sea. Their climate is thoroughly maritime, with clouded skies and frequent changes; though they are in such a high latitude (62°), snow seldom lies for more than a day or two in winter. The heavy storms which sweep over the islands prevent the growth of trees; barley does not always ripen. The general aspect of the islands is dull and bare, green only where the soil happens to be a few feet thick. The islanders, over 16,000 in 1900, living on 17 of the islands, are Norse colonists, speaking a dialect of the old Scandinavian, their food is yielded chiefly by the flocks of sheep; ponies run half-wild. Many of the islanders live by climbing the dangerous cliffs for the eggs and feathers of the multitudes of sea birds that nest on them; others are fishers, chiefly of cod and the round headed whale, called the Grindhval by the islanders, which comes in large "schools" or herds.

The Faröe Islands send two deputies to the Danish Rigsdag, and form part of the bishopric of Iceland. The amtmand or governor resides at *Thorshavn* on Stromo.

#### ICELAND.

12. The interesting island of Iceland lies on the border of the Arctic Circle nearer Greenland than Europe, and might be considered part of America; but as a Danish province it is generally grouped with the European countries. It is the second largest of the European islands, nearly half as large as Great Britain, and considerably larger than Ireland, covering about 40,000 square miles. Its general outline, cut into by fiords, recalls that of Norway or the



coast of Scotland ; the fiords of the south and east coast are comparatively small, those on the north and west run deep into the land ; there the *Huna Floi* and *Breithi fiord*, filled with skerries, almost shut off the large north-western peninsula, and the *Faxa fiord* forms a great bay.

Almost all the interior is high and mountainous ; cliffs of bare trap rocks form the eastern and western halves, a belt of volcanic island heights lying between, from south to north. The three-fourths of the island which are mountainous rise to an average elevation of from 1600 to 3000 feet, and as perennial snow lies at heights of 3000 feet in the south, the greater part is at too high an elevation to allow of agriculture. About a ninth part of the whole island is covered with *Jökulls* or glacier fields, an eighteenth part with lava beds.

On the south of the volcanic central area rises the huge mass, called the *Vatna* or *Klofa Jökull*, covering more than 3000 square miles (or as large in breadth as between London and Brighton), on the sea border of which rises *Oræfa*<sup>1</sup> (6429 ft.), the highest point of the island. Towards the south-west stands the devastating volcano of *Hekla*<sup>2</sup> (5095 ft.)

13. Only a few moist tracts along the south and west coasts, and a few grassy dales in the south, are in any degree capable of cultivation ; elsewhere, mosses, snow fields, and volcanic ashes cover the land. Scarcely a tree is to be seen, and though oats and barley will sometimes grow, the chance of their ripening is so precarious that it becomes more expensive to cultivate than to import grain.

14. In the south of Iceland the longest day lasts 20 hours, the shortest 4 ; but in the extreme north the sun never sets for a week at midsummer, nor rises for a like time in midwinter. The climate in the south, where the warm Atlantic current reaches the shores, is wet, foggy, and variable. The winter, though long, is not very severe, the summer cool—June, July, and August being the only months in which snow does not fall. The north and north-east coasts, which are washed by the cold East-Greenland current, contrast with the southern and south-western. This stream carries drift-ice through the strait between Iceland and Greenland at all times of the year, and in winter this frequently extends so as to blockade all the northern shores : upon these, however, the ice casts an abundance of drift-wood from the Siberian seas, valued as fuel by the islanders.

The streams are generally short torrents, but lakes are frequent, and in some cases of great depth ; *Thingvalla Vatn* in the south, and *My Vatn* (Midge lake) in the north, are the largest. In the volcanic region the hot springs and *geysers*<sup>3</sup> are remarkable features.

15. The Icelanders, 78,500 in 1901, are the descendants of the old Norwegian colonists, and are distinguished for their honesty and love of education ; notwithstanding their poverty and adverse circumstances, it is rare to find an Icelander who cannot read and write. They are all Protestants, belonging to the Lutheran Church.

Sheep, cattle, and ponies form the chief wealth of the land ; in spring

<sup>1</sup> Oræfa = "wilderness."

<sup>2</sup> Hekla or Heklufjalla = "mantle mountain."

<sup>3</sup> From *ad geysa* = breaking up suddenly.



nearly all the men go off to the south coast for three months to the cod fisheries on the banks, to which French and Dutch vessels also come at this season. The eider ducks and seals, along the coast, are taken in large numbers. Knitting of stockings and gloves is the domestic industry of the island.

Among the minerals, *Surtar brand*, a kind of brown coal found beneath the lava beds, is used for fuel; sulphur is abundant; but Iceland spar is the only mineral exported.

16. Iceland has its own constitution and administration under charter of 1874, the legislative power being vested in the *Althing* of 30 members elected by the people, and 6 nominated by the King of Denmark.

A minister for Iceland is at the head of the administration, while the highest local authority rests with the Governor or *Landsholding*, who resides at *Reykjavik* (2000). The island is divided into three parts or provinces, of *Nordlendinga*, the north; *Sudlendinga*, the south; and *Westyrdinga*, the west, subdivided into *sysseis* or counties.

#### 4. GERMAN EMPIRE (*Das Deutsche<sup>1</sup> Reich*).

1. This combination of Germanic States extends now from the outliers of the Alps and the Bohemian mountains on the south to the Baltic on the north; and from the borders of France, Belgium, and Holland, on the west, to those of Russia on the east; the greatest distance across it from east to west and from north to south being about 500 miles. The area amounts to 208,780 square miles, or somewhat more than four times that of England. The mountains on the south and the sea on the north give natural frontiers for the most part, but west and east artificial boundaries are marked out, which correspond only in a few parts with the ethnographic limits of Germanic and Romanic peoples on the one side, and Germanic and Slavonic on the other.

2. **Relief.**—The country lies partly on the plateau lands and minor ranges which extend northward from the Alps, partly on the plain of Northern Europe, and this gives the broad distinction between Upper and Lower Germany (*Ober* and *Nieder Deutschland*).

The most remarkable features of the coast are the expansions of the river mouths in the Baltic; the lagoons called the *Kurische Haff*, *Frische Haff*, and *Stettiner Haff*, the estuaries of the *Elbe* and *Weser*, and the rounded inlets of *Jade Bay* and the *Ems* mouth, on the North Sea.

3. **Rivers.**—By far the greater part of the country is drained northwards to the Baltic and the North Sea by its navigable highways the *Vistula*, *Oder*, *Elbe*, *Weser*, and *Rhine*, which have been already noticed. the south-eastern corner alone belongs to the upper basin of the *Danube* flowing towards the Black Sea.

<sup>1</sup> From *thiuda* or *diota*, "belonging to the people." The Latin name *Germania* from which the modern derives, does not seem to have been used by the Germanic tribes themselves, but may have been borrowed by the Romans from the Celtic word "gairn" = a loud cry, referring to the war shout with which they began an attack.

4. **Climate.**—The climate of Germany presents less diversity than might be inferred from the difference of latitude between its northern and southern borders, for the greater strength of sunlight and heat received in the south is compensated to some extent by the rise of the land in that direction from the Baltic plain. The average temperature of central Germany may be said to be the same as that of southern England, but it lies between much wider extremes, the heat in summer being nearly  $10^{\circ}$  greater than in England, and the winter cold falling nearly the same amount lower, so that at Berlin the hackney coaches are converted for the time into sledges ; but the climate graduates from an almost maritime one in the west to a thoroughly continental one in the east.

The Elbe at Hamburg is only closed by ice for a short time in severe winters, but the Vistula is sealed up from December till the beginning of March every year. The swallows appear in western Germany four weeks sooner than in eastern. Westerly winds prevail through the greater part of the year, as in Britain ; cold dry east winds in spring. Rain falls at all seasons, but most in summer (about 20 inches in Berlin), and more towards the west or Atlantic side of the country than towards the east.

5. **Products.**—Following this distribution of climate, the forests which still cover a great part of Germany, and form a feature of its landscapes, are chiefly of the hardier pines in the north and east, and of deciduous trees in the south and west. About 61 per cent of the surface of the empire is suitable for cultivation, the forests occupy 25 per cent, and the uncultivable moors and mountain tracts only 8 per cent. Rye, oats, potatoes, wheat, and barley, are the chief grain crops ; flax is grown in all parts, tobacco in the upper valleys of the Rhine and Oder ; the middle valleys and slopes of the Rhine and Main are noted for their vineyards ; north Germany is noted for its horses and cattle, the central districts of the northern lowland for sheep.

The mineral products of Germany are widely spread. By far the most important coal and iron fields of the empire are those of the valley of the Ruhr, a small tributary of the lower Rhine, on its right bank ; next in point of productiveness stand those of the upper valleys of the Oder in Silesia ; third, those of the valley of the Saar, a tributary of the Moselle, from the Vosges Mountains, on the left of the Rhine basin. The Harz Mountains are especially noted for their wealth of silver, lead, copper, and zinc ; the Baltic coasts for their amber.

6. **People.**—The population of the Empire was over 60,641,000 in 1905, or one-third more than that of the British Isles. The whole of the *German people* of Western Europe are not included within the boundaries of the empire (a considerable portion remaining in Austria and Switzerland), but the political boundaries reach beyond the borders of the German area proper, on several sides. Along the eastern frontier and in Lusatia over 3 millions of Slavonic *Lithuanians*, *Poles*, *Wends*, and *Czechs*, are included ; in the north about 140,000 *Danes*, belonging to the Scandinavian branch of the German family, live within the boundary of the empire ; and in the west over 200,000 Romanic *French* and *Walloons*.

The natural division of the country into highland and plain, Upper and Lower Germany, also marks out broadly two regions which differ in dialect. The Upper German, from which the so-called *Hoch deutsch*, the written language, has come, is distinguished by the use of the article *das* ; the Lower or *Platt deutsch*, which is giving way more and more to the other, by the article *dat*.

7. **Education, Religion.**—It has already been noticed that in point of education and general culture the Germans are in advance of all the world ; theirs is, above all, the nation of earnest thinkers. There are no fewer than twenty-one universities in the empire (at *Königsberg, Berlin, Breslau, Greifswald* (in Pomerania, south-east of Stralsund), *Kiel, Halle, Göttingen, Münster, Bonn, Marburg, Rostock, Giessen, Jena, Leipzig, Heidelberg, Freiburg, Strassburg, Tübingen, Munich, Erlangen, and Würzburg*), with many other academies for special branches—art, military, forest, agriculture, and navigation.

8. Protestantism (62 per cent) prevails in all parts of Germany excepting in the south-west ; Roman Catholics, most numerous in South Germany, form 36 per cent of the population ; Jews about 1 per cent.

9. **Constitution of the Empire.**—The constitution of the German Empire dates from 1871, and by its terms the States which comprise it are united for the protection of the realm and the care and welfare of the German people. The supreme direction of the military and political affairs of the empire is vested in the King of Prussia, controlled by the *Bundesrath*, or Federal Council, formed of the representatives of the States constituting the empire, and the *Reichstag*, or Diet of the Realm, elected by universal suffrage.

The States of the Empire are as follows :—

	Area. English Sq. Miles.	Population. Dec. 1, 1905.
Kingdom of Prussia . . . .	136,073	37,293,324
„ Bavaria . . . .	29,632	6,524,372
„ Saxony . . . .	5,856	4,508,601
„ Würtemberg . . . .	7,619	2,302,179
Grand-Duchy of Baden . . . .	5,891	2,010,728
„ Hesse . . . .	3,000	1,209,175
„ Mecklenburg-Schwerin . . . .	5,197	625,045
„ „ -Strelitz . . . .	1,144	103,451
„ Saxe-Weimar . . . .	1,404	388,095
„ Oldenburg . . . .	2,508	438,856
Duchy of Brunswick . . . .	1,441	485,958
„ Saxe Meiningen . . . .	964	268,916
„ Saxe Altenburg . . . .	517	206,508
„ Saxe Coburg-Gotha . . . .	765	242,432
„ Anhalt . . . .	917	328,029
Principality of Schwarzburg-Rudolstadt . . . .	367	96,835
„ Schwarzburg-Sondershausen . . . .	337	85,152
Carry forward . . . .	203,632	57,117,656

	Area. English Sq. Miles.	Population. Dec. 1, 1905.
Brought forward . . . . .	203,632	57,117,656
Principality of Waldeck . . . . .	438	59,127
„ Reuss (elder line) . . . . .	123	70,603
„ Reuss (younger line) . . . . .	323	144,584
„ Schaumburg Lippe . . . . .	133	44,992
„ Lippe . . . . .	475	145,577
Free town of Lübeck . . . . .	116	105,857
„ Bremen . . . . .	100	263,440
„ Hamburg . . . . .	160	874,878
Reichsland, or Imperial territory of Alsace- Lorraine (Elsass-Lothringen) . . . . .	5,668	1,814,564
Total . . . . .	<u>211,168</u>	<u>60,641,278</u>

10. The States of the Empire, together with *Luxemburg*, are combined for the furtherance of their trade and commerce in a Customs League or *Zollverein*, the administration of which is merged in the Reichstag, or Diet of the Empire, at Berlin. The customs receipts, together with excise and stamp duties, and the profits from telegraphs and the post-office are paid into the Imperial Exchequer, to be applied to the common expenses of the Empire. Upwards of 35,000 miles of railway (opened in 1905) facilitate communication over the empire, and 4320 ships, of 2,470,000 tons burthen, belong to the ports. Each state, however, retains its own independent internal administration, and on this account it is necessary to notice the more important of them separately.

## NORTH GERMANY.

### PRUSSIA.

11. PRUSSIA,<sup>1</sup> the growth of which state has been rapid since Frederick the Great acquired Silesia (1742), now extends uninterruptedly from the frontiers of Holland and Belgium on the west across to Russian Poland; the incorporation of Schleswig-Holstein, taken from Denmark in 1865, and of Hanover in 1866, united the formerly separate eastern and western portions of the kingdom. Prussia lies for the most part in the northern lowland of Germany, and embraces two-thirds of the entire area of the empire; its population (37 millions) is also considerably more than half of that of the whole empire.

12. The crown of Prussia is hereditary in the male line, and in the exercise of executive government the king is assisted by a council of ministers.

The legislative authority is shared by the king with a representative assembly composed of two Chambers, the *Herrenhaus* (or House of Lords) and the *Abgeordnetenhaus* (or Chamber of Deputies).

Prussia is divided administratively into the thirteen provinces of *East* and

<sup>1</sup> Named from the Pruzzi or Borussi, the ancient inhabitants of Prussia proper, between the lower Vistula and Niemen rivers.

*West Prussia, Brandenburg, Pomerania, Posen, and Silesia*, in the east; *Saxony*, central, *Schleswig-Holstein*, the southern part of the peninsula between the Baltic and the North Sea; *Hanover, Westphalia, Rhineland* or *Rhenish Prussia*, and *Hesse-Nassau*, in the west; *Hohenzollern*, a detached territory in the south.

13. By far the most important centre of population is the city of *Berlin* (1905, 2,040,000), capital both of the empire and of the kingdom of Prussia. The growth of this city round the islets of the *Spree*, on the sandy plain of Brandenburg, is comparatively modern, and at first sight its situation seems to present no natural advantages. But its position midway between the natural highways of the *Oder* leading to the Baltic, and the *Elbe* to the North Sea, and the channels which almost unite there across the plain, give it great natural facilities of communication with widely separated regions. It is now a great railway centre, and besides its attraction as the seat of government and of the court, and its university and schools, it has important manufactures of cotton and linen, and is famous for iron-casting and porcelain.

The great manufacturing districts of Prussia, as of England, are those of its coal and iron fields, in *Silesia* and *Rhenish Prussia*. *Breslau* (pop. 471,000), on the *Oder*, the capital of the mining districts of *Silesia*, has grown to be the second town of the kingdom, carrying on very extensive manufactures and a great trade by river and railway. It is also the emporium of the flax growing district of *Silesia*. About the *Rhenish* coalfields, which yield half the supply of the kingdom, stand the manufacturing and trading towns of *Cologne* (pop. 429,000), *Aachen* or *Aix*, *Barmen*, *Düsseldorf*, *Elberfeld*, *Crefeld*, and *Dortmund*, spinning cotton, wool, linen, and silk; and the famous iron and steel works of *Solingen* and *Essen*, where Krupp's steel guns are made. *Magdeburg*, on the *Elbe*, and *Cassel*, on the *Fulda*, are the great manufacturing and trading towns of central Prussia. Much of the internal trade of Germany is still carried on at great annual fairs, and in this respect the two *Frankforts* (on the *Main* to the west, and on the *Oder* to the east, hold the most important place. *Hanover*, on the *Leine*, is the point of exchange of the mineral products of the *Harz* for the goods which come in by *Bremen* on the *Weser*, and has besides important manufactures of its own.

The chief ports belonging to Prussia are the Baltic ones—*Königsberg*, *Danzig*, *Stettin*, *Stralsund*, *Memel*, *Rostock*, *Wismar*, and *Kiel*, on the Baltic; *Altona*, on the *Elbe*, next *Hamburg*. *Posen*, on the *Warthe*, was the ancient capital of Poland, and is the most important fortress towards the Russian frontier. *Wiesbaden* is the most important and the oldest of the watering-places which have grown up round the mineral springs of *Nassau*. *Eisleben*, where Luther was born, and *Erfurt*, where he resided, both in Prussian Saxony, are notable points in connection with the history of the Reformation in Germany.

#### SAXONY.

14. The kingdom of *SAXONY* lies along the northern slope of the *Erz Gebirge*, which divide it from *Bohemia*. The river *Elbe* breaks through these mountains into Saxony by the picturesque wooded gorges known as *Saxon Switzerland*, and flows on north-



westwards as the great highway and outlet of the country. The products and manufactures of busy Saxony are very varied. Its mountains are clothed with woods, and are rich in iron, lead, copper, silver, and coal ; its porcelain clay is the best in Europe ; its sheep are celebrated for their wool ; its cattle and horses are numerous ; and its soil is cultivated with great care.

15. *Dresden* (pop., 1905, 517,000), its capital, finely placed on the Elbe, famous for its art treasures, has also many varied manufactures.

So-called "Dresden china" is made for the most part at *Meissen*, 15 miles north-west of Dresden. *Leipzig* (pop. 504,000) is not only the seat of a famous university (second in the Empire) and the great book market of Germany, but has one of the largest annual fairs in the world, to which merchants come from all parts of the earth, even from America and China. *Chemnitz* and *Zwickau*, beside the Saxon coalfield, are the great woollen and machine-manufacturing towns of the kingdom. *Freiberg* is famed for its school of mines.

16. The present constitution of Saxony dates from 1831. The king holds the executive power, and shares the legislative with a parliament of two chambers, the upper composed of princes, barons, burgomasters, and deputies from the University of Leipzig and from five collegiate institutions ; the lower, of deputies from the landed proprietors, manufacturers, merchants, towns, and villagers.

The kingdom is divided into the four provinces (*Kreis-Hauptmannschaften*) of *Dresden*, *Leipzig*, *Bautzen*, and *Zwickau*.

#### SMALLER STATES OF NORTH GERMANY.

17. All the smaller states of central and northern Germany—the Grand-Duchies of Hesse-Darmstadt, Mecklenburg, Saxe-Weimar, and Oldenburg ; the Duchies of Brunswick, Saxe-Altenburg, Saxe Coburg-Gotha, and Anhalt (Dessau-Köthen) ; and the Principalities of Schwarzburg, Waldeck, Reuss, and Lippe—are little constitutional and hereditary monarchies, in each of which the legislative power is vested in a diet or parliament. In Mecklenburg-Schwerin and Strelitz alone, the diet is composed of the equestrian order and the burghers, the peasantry being unrepresented.

These little states present few features that require notice. Mecklenburg-Schwerin (5197 square miles) is the largest of the northern Grand-Duchies ; Reuss senior (123 square miles) the smallest of the principalities. *Brunswick*, on the Ocker, a tributary of the Weser, between Magdeburg and Hanover, is the largest town of these minor states. *Mainz* (or Mayence), in Hesse, at the confluence of the Rhine and Main, is the strongest fortress in Germany. *Gotha* has the most important geographical establishment in the world.

18. HAMBURG (874,878), BREMEN, and LÜBECK, the remaining free Hanse<sup>1</sup> towns, are republics, each governed by a senate and

<sup>1</sup> The Hansa or League of the North German towns was the first trade-union of Europe, and dates from the thirteenth century. At one time it included 85 towns, and had several foreign factories.

house of burgesses. Each of them has a small territory besides that occupied by the city.

They are the great gates of the external commerce of Germany, and from this have also become important centres for the preparation of foreign products, and of the necessities of trading (tobacco, sugar refining, cotton-spinning, shipbuilding). Besides the traffic brought to Hamburg and Bremen by their rivers, all the railways of the north-west converge towards them, and through them a stream of emigration constantly flows to America. More than 14,000 vessels entered Hamburg in 1904; nearly 4000 Bremen or its port of *Bremerhaven*.

## SOUTH GERMANY.

### BAVARIA.<sup>1</sup>

19 The kingdom of Bavaria (29,632 square miles), about the same size as Scotland, lies on the plateau lands which extend north from the Alps to the *Rhine* and *Fichtel Gebirge*, and eastward to the height of the *Bohmer Wald*. All the south lies in the basin of the Danube, flowing east; all the north of the country in that of the Main, flowing west to join the Rhine. The detached Rhenish palatinate lies west of the Rhine, partly on the heights of the *Hardt*, partly on the low valley of the river.

Woods occupy 34 per cent of the surface; cultivated land 41 per cent. Iron, coal, graphite, and kaolin (from the *Bohmer Wald*), and lithographic stone (from Solenhofen, in North Bavaria) are the most important minerals. Its population of 6½ millions is two-thirds Roman Catholic, one-third Protestant.

20. *Munch* (Munich), the capital (539,000), stands in the midst of a bare elevated plain on the left bank of the Isar, 1700 feet above sea-level, but has risen to importance as the central point of the great grain-growing plateau of southern Bavaria. It is the great corn depôt of the country, and the place of manufacture of its favourite beer, the national beverage. In recent times it has become celebrated as a seat of the fine arts and for its splendid buildings. Munich, Erlangen, and Wurzburg, are the seats of universities.

Ancient *Nurnberg* (Norimberg), with its double line of walls, where watches, first called Nurnberg eggs, were invented, is the great seat of industry and commerce in the north of Bavaria, exporting toys which go to all parts of the world. It stands on the Ludwigs Canal, the most important one in the kingdom, uniting the navigable tributaries of the Rhine and Danube.

*Augsburg* (Augusta Vindelicorum), on the Lech, north-west of Munich, where the Protestants presented the Confession of Faith to Charles V., is a chief centre of Bavarian trade and exchange. *Wurzburg*, on the Main, is the old capital of Franconia, the district which was peopled by colonies of Franks in the sixth century.

<sup>1</sup> Bayern (Lat. Boiaria), the old name for Bohemia, the original seat of the Bavarians.



*Speyer* or *Spire* and the fortress of *Landau* are also important places in the palatinate.

21. The constitution of Bavaria dates from 1818. The king has the executive power ; the legislative functions are performed by the Crown and the Upper and Lower Houses of Parliament.

The provincial divisions of the country are *Upper and Lower Bavaria* in the south-east ; *Swabia*<sup>1</sup> in the south-west ; Upper, Middle, and Lower *Frankonia* and the *Bavarian Palatinate* in the north ; besides the *Rhenish Palatinate*,<sup>2</sup> lying west of the Rhine between Hesse and Lorraine.

#### WÜRTENBERG.

22. The little kingdom of Würtemberg (7619 square miles) is a hilly country, averaging 1500 feet above the sea, well watered by the system of the *Neckar*, a tributary of the Rhine. The *Swabian Jura* or *Rauhe Alp* rises in the south-east, the *Schwarzwald* in the west. About 30 per cent of the surface is wooded ; elsewhere agriculture is carefully prosecuted. The vineyards, especially of the *Neckar* valley, give excellent wine. Iron and salt are the chief minerals.

The manufactures of the country are considerable ; those of linen, cotton, wool, silk, paper, tobacco, beer, and iron-work are the chief ; and the external trade in timber is large. The book trade of the country stands next to that of Leipzig and Berlin ; this centres in the capital, *Stuttgart* (250,000), where Hegel was born, and where Schiller spent his youth. The fortress of *Ulm*, on the Danube, where it leaves Würtemberg, has a large transit trade. *Heilbronn* is another important trading place. *Tübingen* is the university town. Like Bavaria, Würtemberg is a constitutional monarchy.

23. The little territory belonging to the house of *Hohenzollern*, which runs into Würtemberg on the south, fell by inheritance to the King of Prussia in 1849.

#### BADEN.

24. BADEN, the largest of the Grand-Duchies (5891 square miles, one-sixth less than Yorkshire), occupies one of the most beautiful portions of Germany, the eastern or right side of the broad lowland of the Middle Rhine and the slope of the *Schwarzwald*. The *Rhine*, bordering it for the greater part of its extent, affords a fine highway, and the streams flowing to it from the hills water the land admirably, besides giving great motive power by their rapid descent.

Thirty-four per cent of the surface is forest-covered ; thirty-seven per cent well-tilled agricultural land, meadow, vineyard, or orchard. It is not a manufacturing state, and its trade is chiefly in the transit of goods. *Carlsruhe*, the capital, and *Mannheim*, at the confluence of the Neckar and Rhine, are its largest towns. *Heidelberg* (north) and *Freiburg* (south) are the seats of uni-

<sup>1</sup> An ancient duchy of the Frank empire named from the tribe of the Suevi.

<sup>2</sup> The name Palatinate or Pfalz is derived from the territory which was from the eleventh century onward under a hereditary Count Palatine or Pfalz-graf of Germany. Bavaria received the largest share of this territory at the peace of 1815.

versities. *Baden-Baden* in the centre, the famous watering-place, gives its name to the Duchy.

25. The "Reichsland" or imperial territory of **ELSASS-LOTHRINGEN** (Alsace and Lorraine), restored to Germany after the war of 1871, comprises the area beyond the Rhine within which the Germanic element of population prevails. *Elsass* (which from 1798 to 1871 formed the French departments of Haut- and Bas-Rhin), sloping to the plain of the Rhine from the Vosges, is an exceedingly rich, populous, and fertile territory, which was called in the old times the storehouse, granary, and wine-cellar of Germany. *Lothringen* (embracing the whole of the former French department of Moselle and the eastern half of that of Meurthe) extends farther back over the undulating forest plateau between the Vosges and Ardennes, and has its chief wealth in the coal and iron mines of the Saar valley. The main outlets of the country by water are the Rhine and Moselle, and the Rhine-Rhone canal which passes through Southern Elsass.

The fortress of *Strassburg* (168,000), on the Rhine, in central Elsass, anciently a free imperial city of Germany, is the chief place in the Reichsland and its university town, noted also for its manufacture of leather-work and of beer. The cotton, wool, and silk factories and machine works of the province centre at *Mülhausen* in southern Elsass. The fortresses of *Metz* and *Diedenhofen* or Thionville, memorable in the war of 1871, are the chief places in Lothringen. The administration of the territory is under a Governor-general or Statthalter, appointed by the Emperor. There is a Representative Body with limited powers. The population (1,814,564) is mainly Roman Catholic.

## 5.—AUSTRIA AND HUNGARY.

1. Since 1867 Austria (German, *Öster-reich*<sup>1</sup>) and Hungary (*Ungarn*) are two distinct kingdoms (sometimes called the *Cis-Leithan* and *Trans-Leithan* monarchies, the Leitha being a small stream which joins the Danube from the south, forming part of the frontier between Austria and Hungary), united by having a common ruler of the German house of Hapsburg, as well as in external policy and in military affairs. Austria-Hungary belongs to the Germanic group of European States, because the dominant race is German. The Germans, however, do not form so much as a third of its varied population.

2. **Extent.**—In point of *area* (241,000 square miles) Austria-Hungary ranks third among the European States, Scandinavia and Russia alone being larger. It is rather more than four times as large as England, its extreme north and south points being nearly 700 miles apart, its east and west extremities nearly 900 miles distant from one another.

<sup>1</sup> Charlemagne founded the *Öster-reich* or eastern realm as an eastern frontier province for protection against the incursions of the tribes of the Pannonian and Dacian plains; it was subsequently (890) occupied by the hosts of the Magyars or Hungarians after many a hard-fought battle.

Italy, Switzerland, and Bavaria are conterminous with Austria on the west; Prussia and Russia lie north and north-east; Romania lies south-east of Hungary; Servia and Turkey to the south. The peninsula of Istria, extending into the northern Adriatic, with its gulfs on each side, is the only maritime portion of the frontier of Austria proper; but to reach this the great barrier of the Eastern Alps must be crossed. The steep and rocky shores of Dalmatia belonging to it are almost isolated from the rest of the empire.

**3. Relief.**—Austria-Hungary has been well termed the “*Empire of the Danube*,” since it lies for the most part within the basin of that river, and embraces the whole of its upper plain, which lies at an elevation of about 300 feet above the sea.

On the west, however, Austria embraces nearly half of the great mass of the *Alps* between the plateau of Bavaria and the plain of Lombardy, the mountain and valley scenery of Tyrol and Salzburg resembling that of Switzerland on a lesser scale; the highest point of all here is the Ortler Spitze (12,817 ft.) An eastern outlier of these heights, the *Bakony Wald*, runs into Hungary, compelling the Danube to form a sharp east-to-south bend or knee in its course. In the north-west the *Böhmer Wald*, the *Erz* and *Riesen Gebirge* (Schneekoppe, 5254 ft.), the *Sudetic Mountains*, and the *Moravian heights*, enclose the high basin of the Upper Elbe in Bohemia. Farther east the wooded *Carpathians*, with the high outlying granitic mass of the *Tatra* (8750 ft.), rise round the north of the Hungarian plain. These are continued by the *Transylvanian Alps* (Negoi, 8320 ft.), which form the south-eastern frontier, next Romania, and which, with their northern branch, the *Biharia Mountains*, enclose the highland of Transylvania or Siebenbürgen, on the east of the Hungarian plain.

**4. Rivers and Lakes.**—The *Danube*, entering Austria from Bavaria as a considerable river, and flowing south-eastward over the plain of Hungary, grows to more than half a mile in width before it leaves the Hungarian border to descend by the gorge of the Iron Gates into its lower plains. It is the great highway of the kingdom, and the great outlet to the Black Sea on the east.

The *Save*, the southern boundary river of Hungary, and the *Drave*, join the Danube in the south from the Eastern Alps, up to the base of which both are navigable. The *Theiss*, winding south through the plain of Hungary from its source in the Carpathians, is its great northern tributary, also navigable, and so full of fish as to be popularly described as “two-thirds water and one-third fish.” The *March*, from the Sudetic Mountains, corresponds to the *Leitha* from the south in forming part of the boundary between Austria and Hungary. The high basin of Bohemia, as before said, forms the upper basin of the *Elbe*, which escapes thence into Saxony. The head stream of the *Oder* passes through Austrian Silesia; and the *Vistula*, draining like these to the Baltic, has its head streams in the northern slopes of the Carpathians in Galicia, the eastern portion of which province, however, drains to the Black Sea by the *Dniester*.

The two large lake basins of the country, which seem to be remnants of much more extensive inland waters, lie in Hungary between the Danube and the Drave. The larger, the *Platten See* or *Balaton Lake*, fifty miles long, shallow and stagnant, overflows into the surrounding marshes only in spring; the *Neusiedler See*, farther north, is now so dried up that its deeper hollows

only are filled with water. Between the years 1865 and 1870 its bed was so dry that cultivation was extended over a great part of it. The *Lake of Constanz*, on the northern margin of the Alps, and the *Lago di Garda*, on the southern, touch upon Austrian territory.

**5. Climate.** Though from the variations of elevation the climates of different parts of Austria-Hungary are very diverse, three broad divisions may be recognised—(1) the climate of the countries which lie north of the Carpathian heights, in which the winters are long and cold, and in which the vine does not flourish; (2) that of the central plains and slopes of Hungary, favourable to wheat and vines; and (3) the Mediterranean climate of the Adriatic shores, which yield oil and silk.

Snow begins to fall on the Carpathians in the north in September, and lies on the heights till May. If we take the climate of Vienna as representing that of the central regions of the country, we find it nearly the same as that of London on the average of the year, but it is much more excessive. During the whole month of January the temperature at Vienna averages two or three degrees below freezing point, and then the Danube is crossed on the ice. The heat at midsummer, however, is nearly ten degrees on an average in excess of that felt in England. The rainfall generally is somewhat less than in England. The north Adriatic coasts are subject, especially in summer, to the strong, cold, dry north wind known as the *Bora*.

Generally speaking, all the mountainous borders of Austria-Hungary are forest-covered, the woods occupying a third of the whole surface of those regions; the great plain of Hungary, on the other hand, is an open treeless *steppe*.

**6. People.**—Austria-Hungary extends over the area in which the different families of men in Europe meet and interlace. Its population of 41,000,000 includes *Germanic*, *Slavonic*, *Magyar*, and *Romanic* elements, with their various tongues and dialects. The Germanic prevails in the Alpine regions and in the valley of the Danube in the west, and is widely mingled with the Slavonic and Magyar in the northern and central parts of the country.

The Slavs, the most numerous branch, forming about 45 per cent of the whole population, appear in two divisions, a northern and southern; to the northern Slavs belong the *Czechs* of Bohemia (the most westerly outpost of this family), the *Moravians* and *Slovaks*, *Poles* and *Ruthenians*, or *Russnaks* of Galicia and Bukovina; to the southern Slavs belong the *Slovenes*, *Croats*, and *Serrians*, who occupy the southern border lands of Hungary, between the Drave and Save, westward to the peninsula of Istria and the Dalmatian coasts of the Adriatic. The *Romanic* element appears in the south-east on the Danube frontier, in southern Transylvania and eastern Bukovina (*Wallachians*), and in the south-west, where the *Italians* prevail in numbers on the borders of Venetia. The *Magyars* occupy the central plains of Hungary. The *Szeklers* of eastern Transylvania are a branch of the same family, by some believed to be the descendants of the once formidable Huns. Among minor elements of population *Jews* are numerous in the northern provinces, *Gypsies* in Hungary, and *Armenians* in Transylvania and Galicia.

**7. Religion and Education.**—The state religion is the Roman Catholic, and this is professed by two-thirds of the popula-

tion ; a large proportion on the eastern borders next Russia adhere to the Greek Church ; Protestants are most numerous in Hungary and Transylvania, but form only a tenth part. General education, excepting in German Austria, where the compulsory system is enforced, is in a very backward state. There are, however, eleven universities in Austria-Hungary : *Vienna, Prague* (two), *Pest, Graz, Innsbruck, Cracow, Lemberg, Czernowitz, Klausenburg, and Agram.*

**8. Industries.**—The occupations of the country naturally divide themselves between the mining and pastoral industries of the mountains, and the agricultural and pastoral of the plains.

Agriculture employs by far the largest share of the population ; and the lower lands of Austria-Hungary are among the most fertile portions of Europe, and would be still more productive if better methods of farming were in general use. Oats, rye, barley, wheat, and maize, are the commonest grains ; flax and hemp are widely grown, wines and tobacco chiefly in Hungary, hops in Bohemia. The central Hungarian steppes are full of cattle, and those of the Alpine regions are an exceedingly fine breed. Merino sheep, introduced by Empress Maria Theresa in 1763, are carefully reared, especially in Moravia, Bohemia, and Hungary. Hunting is still an important industry in the forest countries ; the bear appears in the Carpathians and the Alps, and in Dalmatia ; the wolf in southern Hungary, Transylvania, and Galicia. The river fisheries are important all over the land. The coast fisheries are of the utmost importance in rocky Dalmatia, where there is little cultivable land.

**9. Mineral Products.**—The mountains are rich in mineral wealth, and some parts of them, in Bohemia and Hungary in the north, and in Carniola in the south, are nearly the richest in Europe in this respect.

Gold, silver, copper, lead, zinc, nickel, are present in large quantities, but the most important product of the mines is that of iron, which is found in every province excepting those which lie round the Adriatic, and most abundantly in Styria and Carinthia. Austria possesses numerous coalfields, the richest of which are those of Bohemia, and it stands fifth among European countries in respect of the quantity annually mined : the Carpathian mountains are incomparably rich in salt ; at the famous mines of *Wieliczka* (near Cracow), the largest in the world, where galleries, halls, and even a chapel, have been cut out of the solid rock salt, a million cwts. of salt are annually raised. *Salzburg*, in Upper Austria, takes its name from the salt mountains of its vicinity.

**10. Manufactures.**—Although great progress has been made in manufactures in some parts of Austria, the country is still dependent to a considerable extent on foreign lands.

Manufactures are most developed in the German portion of Bohemia, in the districts round Vienna, in Moravia and Austrian Silesia, and in Styria. The Magyar countries are far behind in this respect, and Dalmatia and Bukovina have scarcely any manufactures at all. Weaving employs the largest number of hands ; next in number come the metal, stone, glass, and wood workers, then the workers in leather. Iron and steel goods are made in the Alps of Styria.



**11. Trade.**—Enclosed on almost all sides by mountains, the kingdoms of Austria and Hungary have few natural facilities for traffic with the outer world, and their foreign commerce is consequently small.

The only available sea-board on the Adriatic has to be reached by crossing the high ranges of the eastern Alps, and then opens only upon an inland branch of an inland sea; the Danube, its great highway, also leads to an inland sea. Two thirds of the commerce of the country passes overland through Germany; part to Turkey by the Danube; smaller shares towards Italy and Russia. Britain receives large quantities of wheat and flour from Hungary. From the diversity of products of the great divisions, however, the internal traffic is very large; the Danube joins the treeless granary of Hungary with the Alpine lands of the west, which are rich in wood but deficient in corn.

Railways now extend over every part of the kingdoms, and several lines have been carried over the mountains to bring the central lands into easier communication with the Adriatic.

**12. Government.**—Previous to the war of 1866 Austria was an absolute monarchy. The disasters of that war, however, compelled the emperor to reform the internal administration of the state, and to grant to the Hungarians the constitution for which they had struggled in 1848. The government of both states is now a constitutional one.

Austria and Hungary have each their own Parliament, Ministers, and Government. In Austria the *Reichsrath*, or Council of the Empire, consists of an Upper (Herrenhaus) and a Lower Chamber (Abgeordnetenhaus). In Hungary the *Diet* is also composed of an Upper House of Magnates and a Lower House of Representatives. The kingdoms are united by having one hereditary sovereign, a common army and navy, and a united external diplomacy controlled by a body called the *Delegations*, half of which represents the Legislature of Austria, half that of Hungary, its jurisdiction being limited to foreign affairs and war. Each of the Cis-Leithan Crown lands has its provincial diet in addition.

#### CIS-LEITHAN AUSTRIA.

**13.** The Arch-Duchies of AUSTRIA (pop., 1900, 4,200,000), below and above the Enns, form the nucleus of the monarchy. They extend along both banks of the Danube, which below Vienna emerges upon a broad plain, of which the *Marchfeld* forms the best-known part. The country is hilly, and in the south quite alpine in its character. Coal and iron are won; the vine is cultivated with success, and the manufacturing industry of great importance. The inhabitants are almost without exception Germans.

*Vienna*<sup>1</sup> (pop. 1,675,000), the capital of the Austrian monarchy, on the Danube, just where it leaves the mountainous region and enters the plain, is a great centre of traffic; all the provinces radiate outward from this centre, and the most convenient highroads from one to another lead through it.

<sup>1</sup> German *Wien*, from the little stream of the Wien which flows through the old city.

Vienna comprises within itself one-seventh of all the industrial activity of Austria. *Linz*, also on the Danube, is the seat of a considerable trade. *Steyr*, on the river Enns, is noted for its steel and iron industry. Right in the centre of the limestone mountains, in a district famous for its salt mines and brine springs, and hence known as the *Salzkammergut* ("Estate of the Salt Office"), are *Ischl* and *Hallstatt*.

14. The Duchy of SALZBURG (pop. 193,000) is a mountain country, bounded on the south by the ice-clad Hohe Tauern, and drained by the Salza, a tributary of the Inn. Gold, iron, nickel, and salt (at *Hallein*) are won. *Salzburg*, the capital, is renowned for the beauty of its site.

15. The Duchy of STYRIA (Steiermark, pop. 1,356,000) is traversed by three spurs of the Alps, but not wanting in fertile plains and valleys, which are for the most part carefully cultivated. The principal rivers are the Mur, Drau or Drave, and Sau or Save. The north is inhabited by Germans, the south by Slovenes.

Northern Styria is the centre of the Austrian steel and iron industry, carried on more especially around *Leoben*. The capital, *Graz*, is a staple place for the manufacture of machinery.

16. The Duchy of CARINTHIA (Kärnten, pop. 367,000) is shut in between lofty ranges of the Alps, and drained by the Drau or Drave. Lead and zinc are foremost amongst the products of its mines. Capital, *Klagenfurt*.

17. The Duchy of CARNIOLA (Krain, pop. 508,000) lies almost wholly to the south of the river Save, and is remarkable for its limestone mountains, abounding in underground rivers, winter lakes (including that of Zirknitz), and stalactite caverns (Adelberg). The mines yield iron, copper, lead, zinc, coal, and quicksilver (at Idria). Capital, *Laibach*. The inhabitants are for the most part Slovenes.

18. The Adriatic COAST LANDS (pop. 756,000) include Görz (Gorizia), Gradisca, the city of Trieste, the peninsula of Istria, and the islands in the Gulf of Quarnero, and are separated from the inland provinces by the sterile upland of the Carso or Karst. Though the bulk of the population is Slav, Italian prevails in the towns.

*Trieste*, the only great seaport of the Empire, at the head of its gulf, on the North Adriatic, is the seat of the Austrian Lloyds' Steamship Company, and carries on a considerable trade with all the Mediterranean ports, Great Britain, Brazil, and India. *Pola*, near the southern extremity of the peninsula of Istria, is the chief naval station of Austria, which possesses fourteen ironclads.

19. The TYROL (pop. 982,000) is the most alpine part of the monarchy. Its principal rivers are the Inn, in the north, and the Etsch or Adige, in the south, the mountain range separating them



being crossed by the Pass of the Brenner (5860 feet). Coal, iron, lead, and other metals are won.

*Innsbruck*, on the Inn, is the capital; on the Adige are *Botzen*, *Trent*, and *Roveredo*, the two last inhabited by Italians.

20. VORARLBERG (pop. 120,000) is a small mountain district which slopes down to the Rhine, which separates it from Switzerland, and the Boden See. *Bregenz*, at the head of the latter, is the capital.

Within this small district lies the still smaller principality of *Lichtenstein*, one of the smallest independent states of Europe (70 square miles, pop. 9600), with *Vaduz*, a little market town, for its capital. Its inhabitants render no military service.

21. The kingdom of BOHEMIA (pop., 1900, 6,318,000) is a hilly country, shut in between the Bohmerwald, the Erz Gebirge, the Riesen-Gebirge, and the Moravian tableland, and drained by the river Elbe, which escapes in the north, through the picturesque gorges known as Bohemian and Saxon Switzerland. The kingdom is rich in iron, coal, and silver, and its manufactures are highly developed. Two-fifths of the inhabitants are German, three-fifths Slav.

*Prague* (pop. 201,500), finely seated upon the Moldau, a head stream of the Elbe, is the kernel of Bohemian commerce and transit trade; *Reichenberg*, in the north, is the centre of the textile trades; *Teplice* and *Karlsbad*, at the foot of the Erz-Gebirge, are famous watering-places; *Pilsen*, in the west, is noted for its beer. *Königgrätz* and *Sadowa*, where the battle was fought which decided the seven weeks' war in 1866, are in the east.

22. MORAVIA (pop. 2,438,000) is a fertile region stretching from the Sudetic mountains and the Moravian tableland, on the borders of Bohemia, eastward to the foot of the Carpathians. The March is the principal river. Coal and iron abound.

*Braun* (pop. 109,000) is the great centre of the Austrian woollen trade; near it is the old State prison *Spielberg*. *Olmutz* is a strong fortress on the March.

23. AUSTRIAN SILESIA (pop. 680,000) is a small fragment of the old Duchy, the bulk of which now belongs to Prussia. It lies to the north of Moravia, and is drained by the incipient Oder and Vistula. Coal and iron abound. *Troppau* is the principal town.

24. The kingdom of GALICIA (pop. 7,316,000) stretches from the crest of the Carpathians into the level country of Poland and Russia. Coal, iron, and salt abound. Poles inhabit the west, Ruthenians the east of this extensive province.

*Lemberg* and *Cracow* (the ancient capital of Poland) are the centres of trade, and the marts for the agricultural produce.

25. BUKOVINA (pop. 730,000) is a small duchy at the head of the Sereth and other rivers falling into the Black Sea, with *Czernowitz* for its capital. About 40 per cent of the inhabitants are Romanians.

26. **DALMATIA** (pop. 594,000) stretches for 300 miles along the eastern side of the Adriatic. Its coast is indented by deep fiords, and fringed by numerous islands. *Zara, Spalato, Ragusa, and Cattaro* are the principal towns.

#### THE KINGDOM OF HUNGARY.

The Kingdom of "Hungary" includes Hungary with Transylvania, Croatia-Slavonia, which has a diet of its own for local affairs; and the municipal territory of Fiume. Out of a total population of 19,255,000 souls, 42 per cent are Magyars and Jews, 16 per cent Romanians, 12 per cent Germans, and nearly all the remainder Slavs.

27. **HUNGARY** lies within a basin almost wholly shut in by the Carpathians and by spurs of the Alps. Its wide plains are watered by the Danube and its tributaries, which enters through a "gorge" above Pressburg, and leaves through a similar gorge, known as the "Iron Gate," below Orsova.

*Buda-Pest* (732,000), two cities united by a fine suspension-bridge across the Danube, form the central point and capital of Hungary, and the seat of the exchange of the products of the agricultural plain, wool, wine, wheat, cattle, leather, for the wood, soda, and potash brought from the mountain region. *Pressburg*, near the eastern frontier, is the old coronation city; *Komorn*, lower down on the Danube, is famous as a fortress; *Szegedin*, the chief town on the Theiss, was almost wholly destroyed by floods in the year 1878.

28. **TRANSYLVANIA**, that is, the "Country beyond the Forests," in German *Siebenbürgen*, the Land of the Seven Castles, built by the Saxons on their establishment in the country, lies within the bastion formed by the Carpathians above the plain of the lower Danube. *Hermannstadt* is its finest, as *Kronstadt* is its most populous town.

29. **CROATIA and SLAVONIA** (pop. 2,400,000), with the adjoining part of the old military frontier distinct, stretch eastward from the Adriatic to the confluence of the Save with the Danube at *Semlin*.

*Agram (Zagor)* is the capital; on the Drave is the fortress of *Esseg*, on the Danube that of *Peterwardein*. *Fiume*, at the head of the Quarnero Gulf, is the chief seaport of Hungary.

30. **Bosnia and Herzegovina**, at present in Austrian occupation, are described at page 251.

#### 6.—SWITZERLAND.<sup>1</sup>

1. **Extent.**—The alpine country of Switzerland is entirely an inland one. No part of it is within 100 miles of the sea. It is also a very small country (16,000 square miles), not much larger than the half of Scotland.

<sup>1</sup> Germ. *Schweiz*; Fr. *Suisse*.

Its extent, from its German frontier in the north to that of Italy in the south, is about 150 miles=London to Hull; and from France in the west to Austria in the east 210 miles.

**2. Configuration.**—The southern boundary lies for the most part along the highest crests of the Alps, which descend by the Italian valleys to the plain of Lombardy; the summits of the *Matterhorn* (14,705 feet) and *Monte Rosa* (15,217 feet) rise on the boundary line, which is crossed by the *Great St. Bernard*, *Simplon*, and *Splügen* passes. North of this mass of heights the deep valleys of the Upper Rhone flowing west to the Lake of Geneva, and of the Upper Rhine flowing north-east to that of Constanz, mark a deep trench all across the country. In the heart of the country rises the mass of the *Bernese Alps* or *Oberland*, the *Alps of Uri* and *Glarus*, with the summits of the *Finsteraarhorn* (14,026 feet) and *Jungfrau* (13,671 feet); still farther north the country descends gradually by less elevated mountains and hills to the undulating lowland of Switzerland (still 1500 feet above the sea), which extends in a curve from the Lake of Constanz on the north-east along the *Valley of the Aar*, by the Lakes of Biel (Bienne) and Neuchâtel to that of Geneva. Beyond this the long parallel ranges of the *Jura* close in the country on the north-western frontier.

More than half of the whole country is covered by rocks, glaciers, forest, and mountain pasture, and cannot be permanently inhabited, except by the chamois, or by the now rare lämmergeier or bearded vulture. The wolf is extinct, whilst the bear has become very rare.

**3. Rivers and Lakes.**—All the northern part of the country belongs to the basin of the *Rhine* flowing to the North Sea. That river, having purified its waters in its passage through the *Boden-See* or Lake of *Constanz* (partly in Switzerland), is joined by the *Aar*, which rises near the Grimsel, and flows through the lakes of *Brienzen* and *Thun*. To this basin also belong the lakes of *Zürich* and *Zug*, *Luzern*, *Neuchâtel*, and *Biel* or *Bienne*. The south-western district drains by the *Rhone* to the Mediterranean, through the Lake of *Geneva* or *Leman*, which is partly in Switzerland, partly in France.

The smaller part of the southern boundary that laps over the Italian valleys of the Alps, includes the head of *Lago Maggiore* in Switzerland and the upper *Ticino*, which flows through it to the plain of Lombardy and the Adriatic. In the east the boundary embraces only one valley which drains to the Danube, the Engadin, through which the Upper *Inn* flows north-eastward.

From the elevation at which they rise, and their rapids, the rivers of Switzerland are of no value in navigation. The *Rhine* only begins to be freely navigable at Basel, where it leaves the country. The larger lakes, however, have little steamers plying from shore to shore; that of Geneva, 47 miles long, has a considerable traffic.

**4. Climate.**—The climate naturally varies with the elevation above the sea-level, from that of the perennial snows at an elevation

of about 9000 feet, downward, through the pastoral alpine region and the tall pine forests, to the lower lands in which the chestnut flourishes, and where orchard fruits, the vine, mulberry, and wheat, can be grown. The temperature in the Swiss lower lands averages two or three degrees lower than the mean at London, but is several degrees higher in summer and lower in winter.

**5. Products.**—The forests, which cover about a sixth of the surface, are of immense value to the country, where most of the houses are built of wood. The mountain pastures give the characteristic employments of the people of the Alps and Jura, as herdsmen and shepherds, tending their cattle and making cheese in the mountain chalets during summer.

Arable land appears only in the lower parts of the country, and does not form more than a ninth of the surface, so that, although it is diligently tilled, the crops are insufficient and corn has to be imported. Salt, obtained on the banks of the Rhine, is the only valuable mineral of the country.

**6. Inhabitants.**—Seventy-two per cent of the population (3,463,000 in 1905) of Switzerland, occupying all the centre and north of the country, is *Germanic*; the remaining 28 per cent belongs to three branches of the *Romanic* family—the French in the west, the Italian in the south, and the Rhæto-Romanic in the south-east. A little more than half of the population is Protestant, the rest, chiefly in the mountain region, Roman Catholic.

Education is widely diffused, especially in the Protestant districts of the north-east, where the law of compulsory education is rigidly enforced. There are universities at *Basel* (founded 1460), *Bern*, *Zürich*, *Geneva*, and *Lausanne*.

**7.** Switzerland, which has been called the playground of Europe, is visited by large numbers of tourists from all parts of the world, attracted by its magnificent mountain and lake scenery.

*Geneva* and *Lausanne* on the beautiful lake of Geneva, *Interlaken* (between the lakes of Thun and Brienz), *Luzern*, and the Rigi, *Schaffhausen* at the Rhine fall, *Zermatt* beneath Monte Rosa, *Lugano* in the heart of the Italian lake district, are notable tourist stations; *St. Moritz* in the Engadin, and *Leuk* (Louèche) in the Rhône valley, *Pfäfers* in that of the Upper Rhine, are famous for their baths.

*Einsiedeln* has a Benedictine abbey with a black image of the Virgin, to which 150,000 pilgrims annually repair.

**8.** Manufactures are carried on only along the northern lower lands of Switzerland; the characteristic industry in the west is that of watches, the different parts of which are made all over the country, and put together at the centres of this manufacture, *Geneva* (114,500) and *Neuchâtel*. In eastern Switzerland, on the other hand, the cotton and silk weaving are the prevailing industries, centring at *Zürich* (181,000), *St. Gall*, and *Basel* (128,000), which supply the surrounding countries far and wide.

Although the country is obliged to import almost all the raw material required for its manufactures, and has no natural facilities of commerce, nor sea-board, its trade is very considerable. On the north this converges on Basel and has its outlet by the Rhine; on the south-west on Geneva; a third direction has been given to traffic since railways have been constructed across the Alps from Zurich, by the lake shores of Zug and Luzern, beneath the *St. Gothard Pass* (6900 ft.) and the *Simplon Pass* (6600 ft.) to Lago Maggiore, which unites the manufacturing lowland of Switzerland and all Germany with the Italian plain. Railways already extend in a network over all the northern lowlands, and penetrate up the valley of the Rhone to within 30 miles of its source, where the line of communication into Italy is carried on over the *Simplon Pass*, and through the tunnel opened in 1906.

**9. Government.**—At the close of the political storms which raged in Europe from 1789 till 1815, the affairs of Switzerland were re-arranged by the Congress of Vienna, which provided for the perpetual neutrality and independence of Switzerland in its 22 cantons.<sup>1</sup> Since 1848 the independent states or cantons of Switzerland have become a united confederacy (*Bundes Staat*), the supreme legislative and executive authority of which is vested in a Parliament of two chambers, sitting at *Bern*—the *Stände Rath* or States Council, and the *National Rath*, the first composed of two members for each canton, the second of representatives of the people according to numbers. The cantons are still, however, in a great measure independent democracies, each making its own laws and managing its local affairs.

10 The cantons in which the *German language* prevails are—

Bern (Berne).	St. Gallen (St. Gall).
Solothurn (Soleure).	Graubünden (Grisons)
Basel (Bale), town and country.	Glarus (Glarus).
Aargau <sup>2</sup> (Argovie).	Zug
Zürich.	Uri.
Schaffhausen (Schaffhouse).	Schwyz. <sup>4</sup>
Thurgau (Thurgovie).	{ Unterwalden ob dem Wald. <sup>5</sup>
{ Appenzell <sup>3</sup> -inner-Rhoden.	{ Unterwalden nid dem Wald.
{ Appenzell ausser-Rhoden.	Luzern (Lucerne).

*Those in which the French element prevails are—*

Pays de Vaud (Waadt).	Le Valais (Wallis <sup>6</sup> ).
Geneve (Genf).	Fribourg (Freiburg)
Neuchâtel (Neuenburg).	

*The Italian canton—*

Ticino (Tessin)

<sup>1</sup> *Fr.* *canton*, a corner or district

<sup>2</sup> *Gau* = district. Aargau = district of the river Aar

<sup>3</sup> From Germ. *Abteu zelle* = the abbot's cell, residence of the abbot. St. Gall founded an abbey in this district in the seventh century

<sup>4</sup> Gives its name to the whole country

<sup>5</sup> Above and below the forest.

<sup>6</sup> Wallis from the same root as Wales, the people of Wallis were foreigners to the Germans

## 7.—HOLLAND OR THE NETHERLANDS.

1. The remarkable little country of Holland, not so large as a fourth part of England (12,700 square miles), occupies the western corner of the plains of Central Europe, where the North Sea is ever striving to gain more ground from the continent.

From the Belgian frontier on the south, to the north coast of Holland, is a distance of about 160 miles (London to Sheffield); from the German border to the west coast, about 110 miles.

2. Almost the whole country is flat and low; the parts of it nearest the coasts are even below the sea-level, the waters being kept out by dykes, which are maintained at a great annual cost. One stretch of 50 miles of the coast is guarded by a triple wall of piles driven into the soil, filled up between, and buttressed by huge granite blocks brought hither from Norway. If it were not for these dykes controlling the rivers and keeping out the sea, nearly half of the country ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ) would be under water. All the southern part of Holland belongs to the alluvial delta lands formed at the mouths of the Rhine (the chief branch of which is named the Waal), the Meuse or Maas, and Scheldt. Opening out into broad shallow estuaries, these river mouths form a number of islands, of which *Walcheren* and *Beveland*, *Schouwen* and *Tholen*, *Over Flakkee*, *Voorne* and *Beyerland*, are the largest. Towards the north appears the great shallow gulf called the *Zuider Zee* (or South Sea, in distinction from the North Sea outside), which was formed in the thirteenth century by the bursting of the sea into a former inland lake called "Flevo" by the Roman geographers. Outside of it a chain of islands—*Texel*, *Vlieland*, *Terschelling*, *Ameland*, and *Schiermonnikoog*—marks the line of the former coast of the mainland.

3. **Rivers and Canals.**—Besides the natural channels formed by the estuaries of the *Scheldt*, the *Maas*, and the delta branches of the *Rhine* (the *Waal*, *Lek*, *Old Rhine*, *Vecht*, *Amstel*, and *Yssel*), the country is intersected in all directions by *Grachts* or larger canals, lined with rows of trees, joining river to river, and marking out the green *polders*<sup>1</sup> between, which are cut up by smaller drainage channels. No country in the world has such a network of waterways; ships' masts, and windmills with large sails, pumping the water from the smaller drainage canals, are seen everywhere.

The largest canal until recently was that of North Holland, which allows the passage of large ships from the great granite-built dyke of the *Helder*, at the entrance to the *Zuider Zee*, 40 miles south through the land, to *Amsterdam*; but a still greater work opens a direct channel to the capital from an artificial harbour on the North Sea, through the narrow neck of land which separates

<sup>1</sup> *Polder* = a drained morass or pool.



it from the *I*, a branch of the *Zuider Zee*, on which Amsterdam stands. Though much territory has been lost to Holland by the invading sea, much has been regained through the unwearied energy and perseverance of the Dutch; one of their greatest engineering enterprises was the draining of the *Haarlem lake* (72 square miles), south-west of Amsterdam, which was accomplished between 1840 and 1853, its site being now occupied by waving fields. A gigantic scheme for the recovery of the whole of the southern part of the *Zuider Zee* has recently received the sanction of the Government.

4. **Climate.**—The general climate of Holland resembles that of England opposite to it in its rapid variations; but it is less distinctly maritime, and from the abundance of water in the country more humid. Dense sea fogs from the North Sea drive over it. In most winters the rivers and canals are frozen over for two or three months, when even women skate to market; in summer the thermometer rises to 80° or 90° in the shade.

All the western and central districts of the land (70 per cent of the whole area) are covered with well guarded "polders," meadow or agricultural land; in the east there remain some unproductive areas, such as the *Bourtanger Moor*, which reaches in from Hanover, and the boggy *Peel* in the south-east, from which large quantities of peat fuel are dug. These districts are, however, being gradually reclaimed by the process of planting them with fir and oak; elsewhere there is scarcely any timber growing in the country, supplies being drawn from the Black Forest and Norway.

5. **People.** Of the population (1905) of 5,592,000, the greater part (70 per cent) is formed by the Dutch or Batavians, the descendants of the Germanic tribe of the Batavi who occupied the delta of the Rhine in the time of the Roman conquest of the land.

The character of these people bears the impress of their incessant struggle with opposing natural elements: they are brave, diligent, and economical, clean to excess, born traders and seamen. *Frieslanders* (14 per cent), descendants of the ancient *Frisii*, occupy the northern borders of the country, where the peasantry still speak a language closely allied to Anglo-Saxon; the *Flemings* (13 per cent) occupy the south-eastern borders of the country. Their language differs little from the Dutch; but the dialects throughout the country are very numerous.

6. **Religion and Education.**—The larger proportion of the Dutch (60 per cent) are Protestants; the smaller (38 per cent) Roman Catholic; Jews form about 2 per cent. General education, now provided for by law, extends to nearly the whole population, and in 1905 only 2·4 per cent of the conscripts were illiterate. Higher culture is well represented in the universities of *Leyden*, *Groningen*, *Amsterdam*, and *Utrecht*, besides a private university founded in 1880.

7. **Industries.**—Cattle-rearing, butter and cheese making, are the most general industries of the country, for the grazing meadows are far more extensive than the corn lands. In the latter, rye, barley, wheat, and potatoes, are the chief crops. Flax, and beet-root for sugar, chicory, and tobacco, are grown also to a considerable extent.

The herring-fisheries of Holland, in the North Sea, date from the twelfth century, and are still one of the most important sources of national wealth. The cod-fisheries of the *Dogger Bank*, in the North Sea, and of the banks of Iceland, employ a number of boats. *Vlaardingen* and *Maassluis* near the mouth of the Maas, and *Scheveningen* on the North Sea coast, are the headquarters of the fishers.

Holland is not distinctively a manufacturing country, for it has no mineral resources of its own, and coal becomes expensive in carriage from abroad. Shipbuilding is the most important mechanical occupation of the country, and there are between 600 and 700 building yards, in connection with which many windmills are in operation in sawing the timber. Distilling of gin (or Hollands) is another characteristic industry; at *Schiedam* on the lower Maas there are more than 200 distilleries. Woollens are largely manufactured at *Tilburg* near the south border, and at *Leyden*; linen (Holland) and cotton weaving employs many hands at *Haarlem*.

8. The unexampled perseverance of the Dutch has raised Holland to the position of one of the most important and most prosperous trading countries of Europe. This has especially been the case since the beginning of the seventeenth century, when the Dutch supplanted the Portuguese in the islands of the East Indies, and founded their great colonial trading company, which supplies eastern Europe with coffee, sugar, tin, indigo, tobacco, cotton, cloves, gutta-percha, camphor, etc., for which produce *Amsterdam* and *Rotterdam*, *Dordrecht* and *Schiedam* (all upon the delta branches of the Rhine), are the great depôts. At most of these places large sugar-refineries have grown up.

9. *Amsterdam*<sup>1</sup> (558,000 in 1905), built on piles driven into the sand, with canals for its streets, has thus become one of the great commercial cities of the world. An industry which is almost peculiar to it is that of diamond-cutting, which employs about 650 hands.

The *Hague* (s'Gravenhage, 242,000),<sup>2</sup> the seat of the court of Holland, lies 14 miles north-west of *Rotterdam* (370,000), which is the great port of the country. The chief fortified places are the *Helder* on the coast; *Bergen op Zoom*, and s'*Hertogenbosch* (= Duke's Wood or Bois-le-Duc) and *Maastricht*<sup>3</sup> on the Maas in the south; *Nymegen* on the Waal; *Utrecht* (114,000) in the centre; *Deventer* on the Yssel, and *Groningen* in the north.

10. **Government.**—On the re-arrangement of European affairs, after the fall of Napoleon, Holland and Belgium were formed into the ill-assorted kingdom of the Netherlands under the family of Orange. The differences between the northern and southern divisions in race and language, in history, religion, and customs, proved too great; and Belgium seceded in 1830, receiving a Coburg prince for its ruler. The present constitution of Holland was granted in 1848. The executive authority lies in the sovereign, who is of the House of Orange, and a responsible council of ministers; the whole legislative authority is vested in the States-General, a parliament of two chambers elected by the provinces, according to population.

<sup>1</sup> Formerly *Amstelerdamme* = the dam of the Amstel.

<sup>2</sup> = The count's hedge or enclosure.

<sup>3</sup> *Trajectum vetus*.

11. The provinces of the kingdom from south to north are as follows :—

Zeeland.	North Holland.	Drenthe.
North Brabant.	Utrecht.	Friesland.
Limburg.	Gelderland.	Groningen.
South Holland.	Overijssel.	

#### LUXEMBURG.

12. The late King of Holland was also grand-duke of the neutral territory of Luxemburg, between the Rhenish provinces of Germany, the Reichsland or Imperial territory of Alsace-Lorraine, Belgium, and France, which belongs to the German Zollverein though not to the German Empire. The territory is about 1000 square miles in area (or nearly the same size as the county of Cheshire), and belongs to the basin of the Moselle which forms its south-east boundary. Its inhabitants (236,500 in 1900) are chiefly Germans, with an admixture of Romanic Walloons, and are mainly engaged in agriculture. The duchy was declared neutral territory in 1867, and the fortifications of its capital, *Luxemburg*, demolished. The personal union with Holland ceased at the death of King William, November 1890.

### 8.—BELGIUM.

1. This small kingdom lies across the boundary between two of the great branches of the European peoples. The Germanic and Romanic elements of its population are very nearly balanced ; the former, however, prevails, and for this reason the country has been classed with the German States, though its spirit is more French.

2. **Extent.**—Belgium is even smaller than Holland (11,400 square miles), and is not so large as a fifth part of England.

From the eastern boundary, which touches upon Dutch Limburg, Rhenish Prussia, and Luxemburg, to the North Sea on the west, the distance across it is only 150 miles (Hastings to Bristol), and from the French frontier on the south to that of Holland on the north about 100 miles. Only about 40 miles of the boundary lies on the low unbroken seaboard, along which the waters are kept out by dunes and dykes from inundating the “polders.”

3. **Relief.**—All the north and west of the country is low and level plain like Holland, but the undulating forest plateaus of the *Ardennes* cover all the south and east, rising near the frontier in that direction to a height of 2000 feet above the sea.

4. **Rivers.**—The land thus slopes generally northward, and this is the direction of the numerous rivers and streams which water it. The great river of the country is the *Meuse*, which enters from France and passes out into Holland, being navigable all through Belgium. Its tributary the *Sambre*, from France, which joins it on the left near the centre of the country, is also a navigable stream ;

and the *Ourthe*, from the frontier of Luxemburg, which joins it lower down on the right, is navigable for half its course. The *Escaut* or *Scheldt* is the main river of the lowland in the west, and with its chief tributaries, the *Lys* on the left and the *Rupel* on the right, forms the waterway of the plain. A widespread canal system unites these natural channels of communication.

5. **Climate and Landscape.**—Belgium has a climate which resembles that of England opposite to it in the same latitude, but which is more continental or excessive. The lowland of the north is foggy and damp, like Holland ; the higher country south and east has clearer skies.

The plain of the north and west is characterised by its cultivated fields and gardens, the hilly region of the south and east by its forests, pastoral valleys, and mines ; but along the broad borderland between Belgium and Holland there extends the unfertile district called the *Campine* or *Kempen*, covered with marshes and barren sandy heath. Through this waste has been cut the Campine Canal, which unites the navigation of the Scheldt and Maas.

6. **People.**—Belgium, with 6,693,000 inhabitants in 1900, is one of the most densely peopled countries of the world, only equalled in this respect by some parts of the plain of China, or of the valley of the Ganges in India, a result which is no doubt due to the combination of natural facilities for agriculture, manufactures, and trade, within its limits. About 54 per cent, or more than half of the people, are *Flemings*, a branch of the Teutonic family, who speak the Flemish form of Low German. These are the inhabitants of the northern and western plain. About 45 per cent, the people of the hilly south and south-east, are *Walloons*, descendants of the old Gallic Belgæ, who eventually became Romanised, especially in their language, which is now a French patois.

Their name (in Dutch *Walen*) shows that, like the Welsh, Wallachians, etc., they were “foreigners” to the Germanic peoples. In their impulsive character, dark hair, and gray eyes, they contrast with the fair, phlegmatic, earnest Flemings.

7. **Religion and Education.**—Almost all the inhabitants of Belgium are Roman Catholics, though complete liberty and social equality is allowed to all religious confessions. The kingdom is divided into six dioceses—the Archbishopric of Malines, and the Bishoprics of Bruges, Ghent, Liège, Namur, and Tournay. Education is not yet generally diffused through the population, and was, until recently, almost entirely in the hands of the Roman Catholic clergy. In 1905 over 10 per cent of the conscripts were illiterate. There are State universities at *Ghent* and *Liège*, an independent liberal university at *Brussels*, and a Catholic university at *Louvain*.

During the occupation of the country by the French in Napoleon's time, the official use of the Flemish language was forbidden, and it is only since 1830 that this national form of speech and its literature have been reviving. French is the language of the Court and of the higher classes, and the facilities for the introduction of French literature hinder the development of a national one.

**8. Products and Industries.**—About a fourth of all the inhabitants of Belgium are occupied in agriculture. Besides wheat, rye, and oats, hops are cultivated on a large scale, for export chiefly to France and England. Beetroot for the sugar-factories, of which there are over a hundred in the country, is also a large crop, and flax is largely grown in the Flemish lowlands.

Two great *coalfields* extend across the central part of the country from west to east, along the valleys of the Meuse and its tributary the Sambre, and from these the total output was 22,000,000 tons in the year 1905. In proportion to its area, Belgium produces more coal than even the British Isles. Iron is obtained in smaller proportion, but still in large quantity, as well as lead and zinc, and Belgium has 1780 stone quarries.

9. Along the line of the coalfields in the valley of the Meuse lie the great iron towns of *Liège* (122,000), where about 20,000 men are employed in the manufacture of arms and cannon; of *Seraing*, near it, where machinery is forged on an almost equal scale; *Namur*, *Charleroi*, and *Mons*. Manufactures of various kinds employ about a fifth of the whole population. The oldest industry is that of linen-weaving, which is still the characteristic one of all the towns in the west of the lowland—*Ghent* (or *Gand*) and *Aalst* (*Alost*), *Tournay* (where the so-called Brussels carpets are made), *Kortryk* (*Courtrai*), *Rousselare*, and *Brügge* (*Bruges*<sup>1</sup>). Ghent is also the chief seat of the cotton manufactures. Lace-weaving is characteristic of *Brussels* and *Mecheln* (*Malines*).

10. *Brussels*, the capital (612,400), near the centre of the country, is a second Paris, with its boulevards, palaces, monuments, and galleries. The commerce of the country, however, flows through *Antwerp* (298,000), the great seaport town and fortress of Belgium, on the Scheldt, towards which railways converge from all parts of the country.

Belgium has a much greater extent of railway in proportion to its area than any other European country. Through the fortress of *Ostend*, the only place of importance on the North Sea coast, almost all the direct traffic with England passes, and it is the head-quarters of the Belgian cod and herring fisheries. The field of *Waterloo* lies twelve miles south of Brussels. *Spa*, formerly much frequented for its mineral waters, is near the German frontier on the east.

**11. Government and Political Divisions.**—The constitution of Belgium, except Romania and Servia the most recently made regal state of the Continent, dates from 1831. By this the legislative power is vested in the King, a Chamber of Representatives

<sup>1</sup> = Bridges, there being 54 of them in the town; a venerable, half-deserted place, once the metropolis of the world's commerce, but now (1908) reviving.

chosen according to population, one for every 40,000, and a Senate, also elected by the people. The executive power lies in the king and a responsible ministry.

The provincial divisions of the country are as follows :—

Chiefly Flemish.	{	Brabant (South Brabant).		Chiefly Walloon.	{	Hainaut or Hennegau.
		Antwerp.				Namur.
		Limburg (Belgian Lim-				Luxemburg (Belgian Lux-
		burg).				emburg).
		West Flanders.				Liège (Luyk, in German
		East Flanders.				Lüttich).

## II. THE ROMANIC STATES.

To these belong especially France, Spain, Portugal, and Italy, with Rumania, till recently a vassal state of Turkey.

### 1.—FRANCE.

1. France occupies the narrowest part of the great western peninsula of the European continent between the Mediterranean, where the Golfe du Lion runs into the land, and the Atlantic which invades the continent in the Bay of Biscay and the English Channel. As both coasts have many harbours, the situation between two seas is a very advantageous one. In extent (204,000 square miles) it is fully three and a half times larger than England, measuring about 600 miles each way across it. Most of its frontiers are natural.

The Atlantic washes it in the west and north-west; the Mediterranean in the south-east; on the south the high barrier of the Pyrenees rises between it and Spain; on the east the Alps and Jura separate it from Italy and Switzerland, and part of the Vosges mountains forms the boundary towards Germany. On the north-east alone the political limit towards Germany and Belgium is artificially drawn, and has to be guarded by a line of fortresses. Since 1768, France has held the Mediterranean island of *Corsica*, a rugged pyramid of forest-covered mountains, a little more than half the extent of Yorkshire.

2. **Relief.**—Within France the long curve of the *Cevennes Mountains* in the south-east, prolonged northward by the *Côte d'or*, the *Plateau of Langres*, and the *Vosges*, determines the slope of the country. Between them and the *Alps* lies the deep valley of the *Rhone*, with a southward fall to the Mediterranean. But these high lands, ramifying outward with gentler descent to north and west, give direction to the drainage of the longer slope to the Atlantic coast, the Bay of Biscay, the Channel, and the North Sea.

*Mont Blanc* (15,777 ft.), the highest point of Europe, rises within France, near the point of union of its boundary with that of Italy and Switzerland; the *Pic de Néthou* (11,168 ft.), the highest point of the Pyrenean barrier, stands just outside the boundary on the Spanish side; centrally in the country, the highest point is *Mont Dore* (Puy de Sancy, 6180 ft.), in the volcanic group of the mountains of Auvergne, embraced by the curve of the Cevennes. The



lowlands of France are not level plains like those of Belgium and Holland, but for the most part undulating districts; they lie along the Atlantic border (excepting where the heights of Normandy and Brittany run out into the ocean) and in the Mediterranean valley of the Rhone.

**3. Rivers.**—The main direction of the drainage of France is from south-east to north-west over the long slope of the land. The *Garonne*, receiving the numerous *gaves*, as the streams from the Pyrenees are called, and its tributary the *Dordogne*, from the mountains of Auvergne, forming the estuary of the *Gironde* in the south; the *Loire*, curving through the centre of the country from the Cevennes to the Atlantic,—the longest river of France; the *Seine*, from the Côte d'or, flowing north-west to the English Channel; and the *Meuse*, from the Vosges, passing out to join the Rhine in the Netherlands—are all navigable rivers, forming with their tributaries the natural waterways of France, which possesses a river navigation of about 5500 miles. The great southern river, the *Rhone*, from the mountains of Switzerland, receiving its chief tributary, the *Saône*, from the southern Vosges, is comparatively valueless to navigation from the rapidity of its current.

About 150 canals unite the various river basins or pass laterally along the unnavigable portions of the rivers. Among the more important of these may be noted the *Marne-Rhine Canal*, the longest in the French system, which joins the Rhine above Strassburg over the Vosges with the Marne, a tributary of the Seine, which falls into that river above Paris; and the *Canal du Midi*, or the southern canal, completed in 1668, which joins the Atlantic and Mediterranean from the basin of the Garonne to the Gulf of Lyons.

**4. Climate and Landscape.**—Occupying a middle position between northern and southern Europe, France enjoys one of the finest climates of the continent. Towards the north-east it becomes more continental, towards the north-west more maritime and liker that of southern England; in the warm south the hot winds from the African deserts may occasionally be felt, and in contrast to these, in the Rhone valley, the chilly north-east wind known as the *Mistral* at times descends from the Alpine heights with great violence; but the greater part of the country is within the area of the westerly winds.

At Paris the temperature of the coldest winter month is scarcely above the average of London at the same time, though the summer heat exceeds that of London by an average of three or four degrees. The distribution of climate is, however, best indicated by the limits of the growth of some of the more important products: thus, the region in which the oil yielding *olive* flourishes lies south-east of the Cevennes, across the valley of the Rhone; *wheat* extends northward to a line drawn diagonally across France, from the Gironde estuary to the Rhine north of Strassburg; the *vine* finds its northern limit in a parallel line drawn from above the mouth of the Loire to where the Meuse leaves the country; and all the remaining north-western maritime region nearest England may be called the *oat* region of France.

5. Very few parts of the country are unadapted for cultivation ; only some parts of the Pyrenees, the Landes, and of the Vosges, can be thus characterised. The destruction of natural timber in France within the past two centuries has been enormous, and it is only in comparatively recent years that attention has been directed to the preservation of the forests and to planting.

It is estimated that now about a sixth part of the surface is wooded, the most extensive remaining forests being those of *Orléans* and *Fontainebleau*, between the northern curve of the Loire and Paris ; of the hills of Var in the extreme south-east ; and of the Jura and the Vosges. Much of the department of *Vaucluse*, in the lower valley of the Rhone, is covered with *Truffle oaks*, from about the roots of which enormous quantities of this fungus are obtained. The western promontory of Brittany is now barest of all, but here, as in the mountains of Auvergne, the Cévennes, the Pyrenees, and the Alps, replanting has begun. The vine is grown in all parts of France excepting the north-western departments ; more than 1400 varieties of grapes are recognised ; the finest growths being those of *Champagne* and *Burgundy* in the east, and of the basin of the Gironde (*Bordeaux*) in the south-west. Wheat, flax, and beet-root for sugar, are the staple products of the north ; olives of the extreme south-east. Apples and pears are widely grown in Normandy for cider and perry ; oranges, citrons, and pomegranates come from the Mediterranean departments. The minute subdivision of the land—there are over three million owners of arable land—is stated to have checked the progress of agriculture, and the yield per acre is undoubtedly much smaller than it is in England. In pastoral wealth, in cattle and sheep rearing, France is far behind England and Germany, in proportion to its extent, and it is mainly dependent for its cavalry horses on other countries. Among the larger wild animals bears are now only found in the Alps and Pyrenees ; the older forests, however, shelter the wolf, fox, and wild boar.

6. **People.**—To the aboriginal *Iberian* and *Celtic* peoples of France came the *Romans*, chiefly in the south and east ; the descendants of this intermixture being the small dark and lively Frenchman of the south ; in the north, in some degree, the Germanic element became interwoven ; hence the Frenchman of the northern parts of the land partakes more of the character of his neighbours, is taller, blonde, blue-eyed, and less volatile than the southerner. Hence also the old division of the Romanised French language into the *Langue d'oc* (or Provençal) of the south ; and the *Langue d'oïl* (or Roman Walloon) of the north, from which the many dialects now spoken have descended.

The *Celtic* element remains almost pure in Brittany, and the *Iberian* in the *Basques* of the western Pyrenees. *Italians* appear in the south-east and in Corsica, *Flemings* on the Belgian frontier, and *Germans* towards Lorraine and Alsace, though, in this direction, the boundary drawn along the Vosges and round Lorraine since the war of 1871 follows as nearly as possible the meeting points of the German and French inhabitants of the north-east. With its 39½ millions of inhabitants (1906) France is one of the best peopled regions of Europe, but its population has not exhibited the same rate of increase as other European lands during the past and present centuries.

7. **Religion and Education.**—France is a Roman Catholic

country. Protestants form but a small proportion, and are most numerous in the south-west between the Loire and the Pyrenees. Public education is entirely under the supervision of the Government, and no longer in the hands of the clergy. Since 1905 all congregational schools have been closed, and many of the private clerical transformed to lay institutions. The percentage of illiterates has been greatly reduced, but varies considerably in different parts of the country, showing a very remarkable gradation from advancement to extreme backwardness in the direction from the districts which lie nearest to Germany towards the Atlantic coast-lands of the west and south-west, in which education is most deficient of all.

The University of France, which has academies in the chief towns, provides for higher education in letters, science, law, theology, and medicine. From its graceful ease the French language has become almost universally current among the higher classes of all nations of Europe, and French literature is the most universally circulated of all. In a still greater degree, however, than through its language, France (through its capital, *Paris*) rules the higher classes of other nations by its fashions, that is, through the varying forms of dress adopted in its capital and eagerly copied by the outer world.

In almost all the sciences France has representative men of high standing. Bravery, ingenuity, and liveliness characterise the nation; but on the other hand, in impulsiveness and inconstancy, and in a love of pleasure which passes to extreme frivolity, the French contrast strongly with the earnest Germans.

**8. Industries and Trade.**—Agricultural and pastoral pursuits occupy the larger share of the people of France, one of the principal sources of agricultural wealth being, as before said, the vine and its wines. The trade of the Champagne wine district centres at *Reims* and *Châlons-sur-Marne*, east of Paris; that of the Burgundy wines at *Dijon*, in the Saône valley, on the east; that of the Gironde wines, or claret, at *Bordeaux*, on the south-west. The subsidiary products of vinegar and brandy are made most largely, the one at *Orléans*, on the Loire, the other at *Cognac*, a small town on the Charente, north of Bordeaux.

Textile manufactures are the most important of the mechanical industries of France. *Lyons*, the third city of France, in population (459,000), at the junction of the Saône with the Rhone, is the centre of the silk-growing region and the metropolis of the *silk manufactures*, in which the country stands unrivalled. *St. Etienne* (146,600), south-west of Lyons, comes second to it in this manufacture, after which come *Nîmes*, near the delta of the Rhone, *Tours*, on the Loire, and *Paris*. Inland trade and manufactures in the south are most active at ancient *Toulouse* (150,000), on the Garonne, and at *Montpellier*, near the Rhone delta. *Woollen, linen, and cotton manufactures* are almost entirely confined to the northern region. Foremost among these manufacturing towns of the north stands *Lille*, the fifth city in point of size in France (210,700), with its neighbour towns of *Roubaix* and *Tourcoing*, still nearer the Belgian manufacturing region; and *Cambrai*,<sup>1</sup> *Douai*, *Valenciennes*, and *St. Quentin*, south-east of it; *Rouen* (116,000), on the Seine in Normandy, and *Amiens*,

<sup>1</sup> Whence *cambric*.

on the Somme, between Rouen and Lille, *Reims*, in the Champagne district, *Sedan*, on the Ardennes, and *Nancy*, in French Lorraine, still farther east, are the other chief manufacturing towns of the northern region. *Le Mans*, on the Sarthe, a northern tributary of the lower Loire, *Angers* on the Loire, and *Rennes* north-west of it, are more southern woollen and cotton manufacturing centres. *Paris* manufactures costly shawls.

At *Sèvres*, south-west of Paris, are the chief *porcelain* factories, which give the models and take the lead in this industry. *Limoges*, on the Vienne, a southern tributary of the Loire, is also a noted centre of porcelain manufacture. *Glass* is very extensively made in the northern departments. Paris itself excels in every kind of luxurious and fanciful manufacture. *Besançon*, the largest town near the frontier of Switzerland, is a great depot for the produce of the French half of that country, and manufactures watches largely.

9. The mining industries of France, though on a limited scale in comparison with those of England, are still very considerable. *Coal* is drawn chiefly from the *basin of Valenciennes*, which continues the Belgian coalfield on the north, from the basin of the Loire and Rhone, and from that of *Creuzot*, on the south of the heights of the Côte d'or. Though more than 34½ millions of tons were mined in 1906, the supply is insufficient for the wants of France, which imports coal largely from Belgium, Germany, and England. Iron occurs in eleven districts and is of excellent quality, but generally lies distant from the fuel necessary to smelt it, so that this metal must also be imported in large quantity. *St. Etienne*, south-west of Lyons, is the most noted centre of the French hardware manufactures, especially of chassepot guns and machinery; *Le Creuzot*, in the midst of its coal basin, has also, noted ironworks.

10. The trade of France is only inferior to that of Britain, Germany, and the United States; the position of the country, with coasts on three of the most frequented seas, is exceedingly favourable to its commerce, which is further aided by (1905) 24,730 miles of railway. The great seats of maritime traffic with all the world are *Marseille* (491,000), on the Mediterranean coast; *Bordeaux* (258,000) and *Nantes*, with *St. Nazaire*, on the coast of the Bay of Biscay; *Le Havre* (at the mouth of the Seine, 130,000), *Boulogne*, *Calais*, and *Dunkerque*, on the English Channel. All of these may in a sense be called the harbours of the central point of the life of the state, luxurious *Paris* (2,714,000), which has grown out from the original settlement of the Celtic Parisii, which Cæsar found on the island of the Seine, to be the second city of Europe, with nearly three millions of inhabitants in 1907.

11. The naval arsenals of France, dockyards, and stations of the fleet, are at *Cherbourg* and *Brest*, on the north-west coast; *L'Orient* and *Rochefort* (south of La Rochelle), on the Bay of Biscay; and *Toulon*, on the Mediterranean. *Nice* and *Cannes*, on the Riviera, are favourite winter resorts. France has more than 100 fortified places; indeed almost every town along the northern and north-eastern border is a fortress. *Briançon*, the highest town in the country, in the Alps, south of the pass of Mont Cenis into Italy, is the chief arsenal and depot of this mountain barrier, and is considered impregnable.

12. **Government and Political Divisions.**—By the latest of the frequent political changes that have taken place since the great Revolution (1789), France was proclaimed a Republic. Its present constitution dates from 1875, and vests the legislative power in an assembly of two houses, a Chamber of Deputies and a Senate. The executive is in the hands of a chief magistrate, called the President of the Republic, controlled by a responsible ministry.

Previous to the Revolution France was divided into provinces, which bore the names of the separate territories out of which the state had been gradually built up. These are accordingly of much greater historical interest than the later division into 87 *departments*, which are almost universally named after the river basins in which they lie. The provincial names are also those which are still most in use in ordinary life in France.

The following are the provinces, with the dates of their incorporation as parts of France, and the departments they include :—

- I. *Ile de France*, the original kernel of the state round Paris (*Departments*—Seine, Seine et Oise, Seine et Marne, Oise, Aisne).
- II. *Champagne* (part of France since 1285) ; to the east of the former (Ardennes, Marne, Haute-Marne, Aube).
- III. *Lorraine* (since 1766), east of Champagne (Meuse, Meurthe et Moselle, Vosges, and territory of Belfort).
- IV. *Flanders* (since 1677), on the border of Belgium (Nord).
- V. *Artois* (since 1640), on the Channel (Pas de Calais).
- VI. *Picardy* (original), adjoining Ile de France on N. (Somme).
- VII. *Normandy* (since 1203), along the Channel (Seine-inférieure, Eure, Calvados, La Manche, Orne).
- VIII. *Brittany* (since 1532), the western peninsula (Finistère, Morbihan, Côtes-du-Nord, Ille et Vilaine, Loire-inférieure).
- IX. *Poitou* (since 1375), south-east of Brittany (Vendée, Deux-Sèvres, Vienne).
- X. *Anjou* (since 1202) north of Poitou, across the Loire (Maine et Loire).
- XI. *Maine* (since 1202), between Anjou and Normandy (Mayenne, Sarthe).
- XII. *Angoumois, Aunis, and Saintonge* (since 1242), south of Poitou, along the Bay of Biscay (Charente and Charente-inférieure).
- XIII. *Touraine* (since 1256), across the Loire, east of Anjou (Indre et Loire).
- XIV. *Orléans*<sup>1</sup> (original), south of Ile de France (Loire et Cher, Eure et Loire, Loiret).
- XV. *Nivernais* (since 1707), south-east of Orléans (Nièvre).
- XVI. *Bourbonnais* (since 1559), south of Nivernais (Allier).
- XVII. *Marche* (since 1531), south-west of Bourbonnais (Creuse).
- XVIII. *Berri* (since 1100), between Marche and Orléans (Cher, Indre).
- XIX. *Limousin* (since 1369), south-west of Marche (Haute-Vienne and Corrèze).

<sup>1</sup> From its capital *Aurelianum*, named from Roman Emperor Aurelius.

- XX. *Auvergne* (since 1531), west of Limousin (Cantal, Puy-de-Dôme).
- XXI. *Lyonnais* (since 1307), north-east of Auvergne (Loire, Rhône).
- XXII. *Burgundy* (since 1476), south of Champagne (Ain, Saône et Loire, Côte d'or, Yonne).
- XXIII. *Franche Comté*<sup>1</sup> (since 1674), nearest Switzerland (Haute-Saône, Jura, Doubs).
- XXIV. *Dauphiné* (since 1349), between the Alps and the Rhone Channel (Isère, Drôme, Hautes-Alpes).
- XXV. *Savoie* (since 1860), south of Lake of Geneva (Savoie, Haute-Savoie).
- XXVI. *Languedoc* (since 1271), along the Mediterranean, west of the Rhone (Ardèche, Haute-Loire, Lozère, Gard, Hérault, Tarn, Haute-Garonne, Aude).
- XXVII. *Guyenne* (since 1453), in the basin of the Garonne, south-west (Aveyron, Lot, Dordogne, Tarn et Garonne, Lot et Garonne, Gironde).
- XXVIII. *Gascogne* (since 1453), in the south-west, old *Aquitaine* (Landes, Gers, Hautes-Pyrénées).
- XXIX. *Béarn* and *Navarre* (since 1607) (Basses Pyrénées).
- XXX. *Foix* (since 1607) next Spain, in the south (Ariège).
- XXXI. *Roussillon* (since 1642), in the south-east (Pyrénées-Orientales).
- XXXII. *Avignon*, *Vennaisin*, and *Orange* (since 1791), near the Rhone delta (Vaucluse).
- XXXIII. *Provence*, Roman *Provincia* (since 1245), in the south-east along the Mediterranean (Bouches-du-Rhone, Basses-Alpes, Var, Alpes-Maritimes).
- XXXIV. *Corsica* (since 1768), in the Mediterranean (Corse).

#### THE PYRENÆAN OR IBERIAN<sup>2</sup> PENINSULA.

We shall first consider the physical characteristics and the population of this Peninsula as a whole, and afterwards describe separately the government, productions, etc., of each of the two countries (Spain and Portugal) which occupy it.

1. **Extent.**—This most westerly of the southern peninsulas of Europe, pushed out like a great buttress into the ocean (230,000 square miles), is nearly four times as large as England and Wales, or is larger than the German Empire or France, and somewhat less than Austria-Hungary.

From north to south and from east to west the irregular square of the Peninsula, which was compared in old times to a bull's hide in shape, is about 500 miles.

---

<sup>1</sup> = Free county of Burgundy.

<sup>2</sup> From the ancient name Iberia, given from the Iberus or Ebro river.



2. **Relief.**—The whole Peninsula is a plateau and mountain land, the most extensive and continuous if not the loftiest in Europe.

On its northern side rise the *Pyrenees* (11,168 ft.) and the *Cantabrian* or *Asturian Mountains* (summit *Peña Vieja de Europa*, 8740 ft.), the ramifications of which may be said to extend to Cape Finisterre in the west. In a direction generally parallel to those farther south, beyond the valleys of the Ebro and Duero, rise the ranges of the *Sierra de Guadarrama* (7890 ft.), *de Grédos*, *de Gata*, and *de Estrella*, terminating at the cape called the Rock of Lisbon, which shuts in the estuary of the Tagus. In the centre of the peninsula, between the valleys of the Tagus and Guadiana, are the *Mountains of Toledo* and the *Sietras de Guadalupe* and *Mamede* continuing them westward. Next southward, with the same east and west direction, the *Sierra Morena* and its outliers may be said to reach across the country from Cabo de la Nao on the Mediterranean to the *Sierra de Monchique*, which forms Cape St. Vincent, the south-western corner of the quadrangle. In the line of the *Sierra Morena* prolonged eastward are noticed the three islands of Iviza, Majorca, and Minorca. Lastly, along the south coast rises the *Sierra Nevada* and its tributary ranges between the Capes of Gata and Palos on the south east, and those of Trafalgar, Tarifa, and Gibraltar on the extreme south, facing the strait which leads from the Atlantic to the Mediterranean. *Mulhacen*, the summit of the *Sierra Nevada*, is the culminating point of the peninsula (11,420 ft.), higher even than the summit of the *Pyrenees*, and supplying from its snowy cap the most southerly glaciers of Europe. Nearly half of the area of the Peninsula, in the central region between these ranges, is high, bare, monotonous table-land, the most important sections of which are named the *Plateau of Old Castile and Leon*, or that which extends between the *Cantabrian Mountains* and the *Guadarrama*; and of *New Castile and Estremadura*, between the *Guadarrama* and *Morena*. The city of Valladolid stands near the middle of the former plateau, at an elevation of 2230 feet above the sea. Madrid, the capital, on the latter, is 2150 feet.

The only lowlands of the Peninsula which are of any considerable extent occur in the lower part of the valley of the *Ebro* in the north-east, and in the plain of *Seville* in the lower basin of the *Guadalquivir* in the south-west; this plain has the *Campaña* of Cordova at its upper end and the saline swamp land named the *Marismas*, which extends across the mouth of the river, at the lower, shut out from the sea by the great sand dunes called the *Arenas Gordas*.

3. About two-fifths of the coast-line of the Peninsula lies on the Mediterranean, three-fifths face the Atlantic and the Bay of Biscay. The north coast is almost everywhere steep, its high broken rocks being beaten by the waves of the stormy bay, and is all but inaccessible to ships, excepting in the deep inlets or *rias*, which recall the northern fiords. The northern part of the west coast is also bold and rocky, with deep inlets such as those of *Pontevedra* and *Vigo*. Beyond the mouth of the *Minho* it becomes a broad sandy strand, and from that passes to marsh lands with stagnant pools, from which much salt is obtained. Between the *Estuary of the Tagus* and the *Bay of Setúbal* rise the chalk heights of *Arrabida*, which terminate at the high point called Cape Espichel. Beyond this lies the coast plain of *Alentejo*, which is terminated in the south by the high coast of Cape St. Vincent. The south coast round by the sand-dunes of the plain of the *Guadalquivir* and the famous *Bay of Cadiz* is lower again. From the high Cape Trafalgar past the south-west point of Europe by the *Rock of Gibraltar* to Cabo de Gata steep shores interchange with more level strand. The steppe-like *Campo de Cartagena* beyond Cape Gata includes the *Mar Menor*, a large coast lagoon fourteen miles long, past which the east coast forms high jagged capes. Beyond Cabo de la Nao begins

the stormy *Bay of Valencia*, feared by sailors, bordered by the cultivated *Plana*. Again a varied coast follows; then the low lagoon-covered *Delta of the Ebro* pushes out into the sea, and beyond that is the high coast formed by the spurs of the Pyrenees.

**4. Rivers.**—From the parallel east and west direction of the lines of heights on the Peninsula it follows that all the important rivers take these directions. The longer slope and the greater number of the rivers flow west to the Atlantic, a smaller number eastward to the Mediterranean. The great general height of the land from which they have to descend gives them a rapid course, generally over rocky beds. They are also subject to great changes of level in winter floods and summer droughts, so that in general they neither serve well the purpose of irrigating the land nor that of navigation.

To the eastern system belongs the *Ebro*, which gathers its supplies from the Pyrenees, and from the eastern descent of the plateau of Old Castile. The *Guadalquivir*, *Júcar*, and *Segura* are the other important rivers of the eastern watershed. The *Minho*, *Douro*, *Tagus*, *Guadiana*,<sup>1</sup> and *Guadalquivir* drain the western valleys which are formed between the mountain ranges of the Peninsula. The *Tagus*, the largest river of the Peninsula, the estuary of which forms such a magnificent harbour, is only navigable for seventy miles above its estuary (to *Abrantes*). The *Guadalquivir*, though the shortest of the larger streams, is the most important on account of its fulness and its course through the most extensive lowland of the Peninsula. The effect of the tide in it is felt for several leagues above *Seville*, to which city it is navigable, eighty miles from the sea. From its rapid upper course and sluggish flow over the plains beneath, its waters overflow these whenever a heavy rain falls in the *Sierra Morena*. The *Ebro* is the narrowest and shallowest of the large rivers, chiefly because a number of canals are drawn off from it for irrigation and navigation. The most important of these is that called the *Imperial Canal*, which runs parallel with its middle course for nearly a hundred miles. This, with the *Canal de Castilia*, which extends from the southern slope of the *Cantabrian* mountains to *Valladolid* near the *Douro*, is the chief artificial waterway of the Peninsula.

**5. Climate and Landscape.**—From the extent and varied elevation of the Peninsula its climate and aspect are very diversified, but the greatest contrasts, from temperate to almost tropical, are presented in the direction from north-west to south-east.

All the north-western maritime region has a damp, foggy, and rainy climate (in the *Serra da Estrella* 118 inches of rain fall in the year), with long winters, during which cold winds blow from the snow-covered mountains. Hill and dale alternate here with meadow-lands watered by copious streams full of fish. Corn, wine, and wood, from the pine on the heights to the chestnut and apple beneath, are abundant. The middle zone of the great bare table-lands, with wooded mountains between, occupying the larger part of the Peninsula, has a pleasant spring and autumn climate; chilly winter winds, however, sweep

---

<sup>1</sup> *Guad*, of frequent occurrence in the names of the southern Spanish rivers, recalls the occupation of the country by the Moors. It is the equivalent of the Arabic *Wâdi* = river-bed. Thus, *Guadalquivir* = *Wadi-al-Kebir*, or large river.

over the treeless plateaus, which in summer are burned up by the hot sun. At Madrid the pools can be skated over almost every winter, but in June and July the plains of New Castile round it become a dusty wilderness, without water or any green vegetation, and over all hangs the haze called the *calina*. The rainfall begins to be scanty here (only fifteen inches annually at Madrid). Pasture, with corn, wine, and olives in the lower districts, is characteristic. On descending from the plateaus the almost tropical heat and rich vegetation of the southern zone present the most striking contrasts. Here the winter is temperate, the spring and autumn delightful; but the summer heat is almost intolerable to northern Europeans, especially when the hot south wind called the *Solano* blows from the African deserts. This is the region of the orange and date, of sugar-cane, cotton, and rice.

Portugal, from its more maritime position, is exempt from the dry summer heat of the interior table-lands. Snow falls abundantly on its northern hills in winter, which is also the rainiest season of its lowlands, but it never is seen in the extreme south, where the spring begins with the year and harvest is over by midsummer.

6. The northern and central mountains shelter deer, bears, wolves, and wild goats. The Spanish *scorpion* is especially abundant in the Ebro basin; the *mouflon* or wild sheep appears in the mountains of the south; the rock of Gibraltar has its *Barbary apes*; the *flamingo* nests in the lower Guadalquivir; and the *chameleon* is seen in the neighbourhood of Malaga.

7. **People.** The basis of the population of the whole Peninsula (in 1900, 23,634,000) is that of the *old Iberians*, modified by the admixture of *Celtic*, *Phœnician*, *Roman*, *Germanic*, and *Moorish* (Arab) invaders, who from time to time gained ascendancy in the land and became intermixed with the ancient inhabitants.

A remnant of the aboriginal Iberians is found in the brave and independent Basques (440,000) of the northern Cantabrian mountain region, a residue of the Gothic invaders live in the mountains south of the Douro; and much Arab blood is still traceable in the inhabitants of the southern and eastern coast lands. The Romans, however, gave their language to the Peninsula. Both the rich and soft Spanish or Castilian and the more nasal Portuguese are daughters of Latin, but the antipathy which long prevailed between the branches of the inhabitants speaking these sister tongues has served to keep them separate and dissimilar. The language of the Basques of the north (called by them *Euscara*) is peculiarly their own. The Gallegos, the rude but honest and industrious people of the north-western province of Galicia, speak a dialect which is not understood by the Castilians, and which is intermediate between the Portuguese and the Spanish.

8. **Religion and Education.**—At one time the proudest and most opulent of the States of Europe, sharing between them the empire of the world, Spain and Portugal had lapsed before the beginning of the last century into stagnation and apathy, in which ease and squalor seemed to be preferred to labour and affluence. Since that date, however, the Peninsula has again been throwing off its lethargy, promoting education and industry, and advancing to a more healthy condition. Still, the mass of the population in both States remains in extreme ignorance and bigotry. The Roman

Catholic is the religion of the Peninsula, and toleration to other creeds is as yet shown but grudgingly.

At the head of the Church in Spain stands the Archbishop of *Toledo*; the Portuguese Church is under the jurisdiction of the "Patriarch" of *Lisbon*. Spain has ten universities—at *Madrid*, *Santiago*, *Barcelona*, *Granada*, *Seville*, *Valencia*, *Valladolid*, *Oviedo*, *Salamanca*, and *Saragossa* (Zaragoza). Portugal's only university is at *Coimbra*.

## 2.—SPAIN.

9. All except the south-western sixth of the Peninsula belongs to the kingdom of *Spain*, which has thus an area (191,100 square miles) nearly three and a half times that of England. Spain also includes four-fifths ( $1\frac{4}{5}$  millions) of the population of the Peninsula.

The artificially-drawn frontier towards Portugal is guarded by the fortresses of *Badajoz* and *Ciudad Rodrigo*; the chief passes of the Pyrenees towards France by those of *Pamplona* and *Gerona*.

10. **Government.**—The present monarchical constitution of Spain dates only from 1876, and by it the executive power rests with the king and his responsible ministry; the legislative rests with the king and the *Cortes*, which is a parliament composed of a senate (made up of the *grandees* or nobles of the country, who are senators by right, of senators nominated by the king, and of others elected by the state), and a congress elected by the country according to population. The palace of the *Cortes* is at *Madrid*, the capital (540,000), which is in every way the very heart of the kingdom.

For administrative purposes Spain has been divided since 1833 into forty-nine districts, each of which has its local administration. Here, as in France, however, the old provinces and kingdoms of which this state was originally made up, and of which the districts are subdivisions, are of far greater importance and historical interest.

These are

*Old Castile and New Castile*, the central kingdoms which took their name, it is said, from the castles built along their frontiers for defence against the Moors.

*Leon*, north-west of Old Castile, one of the oldest parts of the monarchy, earliest freed from the Moorish rule, and joined to Castile in the eleventh century.

*Estremadura* (Extrema Ora), the southern province of the old kingdom of Leon beyond the Douro.

*Galicia*, the north-western corner of the Peninsula.

*Asturias and Viscaya* (Biscay), on the maritime slopes of the Cantabrian mountains, whose inhabitants held their own against the Moors.



*Navarre*, on the southern slopes of the Pyrenees, at the head of the Ebro valley.

*Aragon*, north-east of Castile, to which it was united in the fifteenth century by the marriage of Ferdinand and Isabella ; along with

*Catalonia*, in the north-eastern corner of Spain, which had been joined to Aragon in the twelfth century.

*Valencia*, extending along the coasts of its Mediterranean gulf, which remained Moorish longer than any of the preceding provinces.

*Murcia*, on the south-east, subjugated by Ferdinand III. of Castile in the thirteenth century.

*Andalucia*, in the south, including Sevilla and Granada, whence the Moors were not driven till the end of the fifteenth century.

The Balearic and Canary Islands are considered part of the home country of Spain.

**11. Products and Industries.**—Agriculture is the chief source of national wealth in Spain. Valencia and Catalonia in the east, Galicia, Asturias, and the Basque districts in the north, are the most industrious in this respect. The vineyards of Andalucia, whence come our *sherry* (Jerez) and *Málaga wine*, are the most famous. *Raisins* are dried chiefly about Málaga, Alicante, and Valencia, on the south and east coasts. *Apples* are the chief fruit of the north-west, *oranges*, *figs*, and *almonds* of the Mediterranean provinces ; while *nuts*, known by the name of Barcelona, the port at which they are chiefly shipped, are grown on a large scale in Catalonia and Asturias. The Andalucian *horses* surpass all others in the Peninsula ; those of Castile are strong and well suited for heavy cavalry ; Galician *ponies* are hardy and well suited to their country. The horse-fair of Ronda, in the south of Andalucia, is the most important in the country. Spanish *mules* are the finest of all. *Wild cattle* from the Guadarrama mountains and Navarre are prized for the bull-fights, the national pastime, in which from 8000 to 4000 horses are annually killed. The most important pastoral industry of Spain, however, is that of *sheep-rearing*. Under an ancient law called the *mesta*, the sheep-owners of Castile, Aragon, and Leon drive their vast flocks southward on the approach of winter to the pastures of southern Estremadura and Andalucia, in herds of about 10,000 head (*cabañas*), and every proprietor along the roads through which they pass is obliged to leave a breadth of ninety paces wide free to the herds. The *silk worm* is cared for chiefly in Valencia and Murcia. The *Cochineal* insect is cultivated in the extreme south. The *fisheries* of Galicia, of Cadiz, and Valencia, are the most important.

In recent times, on account of the great destruction of the *forests* in Spain, the Government has turned its attention to their preservation, and a forest academy has been established at Villa Viciosa, south-west of Madrid. About a fifth of the country, in the mountain ranges chiefly, is covered with timber, and about a fifth of that is pine wood.

In mineral wealth Spain is one of the richest countries in Europe, as the Phœnicians and Romans discovered in ancient times. Most important are the royal *quicksilver* mines of Almaden, on the northern slope of the Sierra Morena, and the *copper* mines of Rio Tinto, west of Sevilla. *Iron* is very widely dis-

tributed, but is mined for the most part in Biscay and Asturias, near Toledo, south-west of Madrid, and in Múrcia and Granada on the south. *Coal* is found in almost every province, the most numerous mines being in Asturias in the north, and about Córdoba in the Guadalquivir basin in the south; but owing to the difficulties of carriage the imports of Belgian and English coals are large. *Salt* is abundant; near Cardona in Catalonia is a famous salt mountain, which presents a brilliant aspect when the sun shines on it; *sea salt* is obtained chiefly on the coasts of Múrcia and the bay of Cadiz.

**12. Manufactures and Chief Towns.**—Spain long remained far behind the other countries of Europe in its manufactures, and though within recent years it has made great advances, its imports still greatly consist of foreign manufactured goods. Much of its raw silk goes to France; its merino wool to England.

Cotton-spinning is the main industry in Catalonia, chiefly in the towns of *Barcelona* (which is the great manufacturing town of Spain, second in size to Madrid, pop. 533,000) and *Tarragona*, on the Mediterranean coast; silk is woven at *Madrid* and *Toledo* in the centre, at *Valencia* (213,500) and *Barcelona* on the east coast, at *Granada*, *Seville*, and *Múrcia* in the south. Paper is made chiefly in *Barcelona*, and at *Gerona*, north-east of it. Among the many iron foundries of Spain, those of Barcelona are numerous; near *Bilbao*, in Biscay, where an apparently inexhaustible quantity of fine magnetic iron occurs in conjunction with coal, are the royal arms factories of Spain, which supply large quantities of cannon, guns, carbines, bayonets, and cuirasses for the army. *Toledo* has its great *Fabrica de Armas*, built in 1788, though long before that time Toledan blades had become famous. Tobacco manufacture is a monopoly of the state, and is carried on at seven great factories in *Seville*, *Madrid*, *Santander*, *Gijon*, and *La Coruña*, on the north coast, at *Valencia* and *Alicante* on the east coast. *Córdoba* is famous for its leather. Corks for bottles are very extensively made from the bark of the cork oak, which is abundant in the southern parts of the Peninsula.

**13. Trade.**—The trade of Spain, like its industries, is again reviving from the low point to which it had fallen. Situated between two seas, the country is admirably adapted for trade, and its coasts possess more numerous harbours than those of France. The customs duties levied in Spain are, however, heavier than in any other country of Europe, so that smuggling is carried on to a large extent. Internal trade has its centre at *Madrid*, the capital; the other chief trading towns of the interior are *Valladolid*, *Palencia*, and *Búrgos*, in the Douro basin, on the most direct lines of communication with the ports of the north coast, *Zaragoza* on the Ebro, and *Granada* at the northern base of the Sierra Nevada. The great seaports of Spain are *Barcelona*, *Valencia*, *Alicante*, and *Cartagena* (the chief naval port of Spain), on the Mediterranean coast; *Málaga*, and *Cadiz*, with its sub-port of *Jerez* on the south coast; *La Coruña*, the centre of the Galician fisheries; the naval station of *Ferrol* opposite to it; *Santander*, the most direct outlet of Madrid to the north, and *San Sebastian*, on the shores of the Bay of Biscay. *Palma* on the south coast of Majorca, the largest of the Balearic Islands (about the same size as the county of Cornwall), has also a fine harbour.

The African ports of *Ceuta* and *Melilla*, on the coast of Morocco, belong to Spain.

**14.** The fact that until the year 1848 Spain had not a mile of railway, and that it now (1906) possesses 9190 miles radiating outward from Madrid to all the chief seaports, is very significant of the recent progress made by the country.



Its communications are still, however, far behind those of the rest of western Europe; Belgium, for example, is seven times as well provided with railways as Spain. The mercantile fleet belonging to Spain has a burthen of nearly 520,000 tons (Great Britain has over 11 millions).

15. The strange little republic of *Andorra*, occupying a high forest valley of the Pyrenees (about 175 square miles in area), in the north of Catalonia, dates its independence from the time of Charlemagne, who gave it freedom in return for the services rendered by its people in the Moorish wars. Its little pastoral population (1905) of 5230 is governed by a council general of six members, under the protection of France, but belongs to the bishopric of Urgel in Catalonia.

16. The famous rock of *Gibraltar*<sup>1</sup> has belonged to Britain since 1704; it is about 3 miles long, and rises to 1400 feet; every point of it bristles with defensive works and artillery, galleries and batteries hewn in the solid stone. A garrison of about 5000 men is maintained. With the town beneath the fortress, the possession had 18,700 inhabitants in 1901.

### 3.—PORTUGAL.

*Portugal*, occupying the south-western sixth of the Peninsula (32,530 square miles), is about the same size as Ireland; but its population (5,016,000 in 1900) is somewhat greater.

17. **Government.** The constitution of Portugal dates from 1826. Its crown is hereditary in the female as well as the male line; its legislature rests in the Cortes, a Parliament of two chambers, the "*Câmara dos Pares*" or House of Peers, nominated by the Sovereign, and the "*Câmara dos Deputados*" or House of Deputies, chosen by the people. The executive authority is vested in the Sovereign and his responsible Cabinet; the seat of government is at the capital, *Lisbon* (356,000), the largest city of Portugal. The old provinces of Portugal are subdivided for administrative purposes into seventeen districts.

The provinces are—

*Entre Douro e Minho*, the maritime province between the Douro<sup>2</sup> and Minho rivers, in the north.

*Trás os Montes*, "beyond the hills," inland from the former.

*Beira alta* or upper, and *Beira baixa* or lower, south of the former.

*Estremadura*, central.

*Alentejo* ("beyond the Tejo") and *Algarve*, in the south.

The Azores Islands and Madeira are considered part of the home possessions of Portugal.

18. **Products and Industries.** Agriculture in Portugal flourishes only in the northern province of Minho, and in Algarve in the south—wheat, maize,

<sup>1</sup> *Jebel Tarrak* = Tarrak's Mountain.

<sup>2</sup> Douro in Portuguese = Duero in Spanish.

<sup>3</sup> From *El Gharb* Arabic = "Western Land."

and barley being the chief crops. The vine is grown everywhere, but the Douro basin gives the most valuable *port wine* (or Oporto). Oranges, figs, olives, chestnuts, are grown in great profusion. The coast fisheries of sardines and tunny form an important industry. The mines and forests of Portugal are more neglected than even those of Spain; the yearly product of the former is unimportant, but salt is obtained in large quantity from the coast lagoons, and is in great request abroad. The most extensive forest in the country is that of *Leiria*, on the north slope of the Sierra da Estrella, which has perhaps 20 millions of pine trees. This, and the smaller forest of *Busaco*, in the valley of the Mondego, north-east of Coimbra, famed for its tall cypresses, belong to the state.

19. **Manufactures.**—*Linen* is woven in almost all parts of Portugal; *cottons* are made largely at *Oporto* and *Lisbon*; woollens in the district of *Castello Branco*, between the Estrella mountains and the Tagus, about *Guarda* on the opposite side of the Sierra, at *Oporto*, and *Lisbon*. *Bragança* (which gives its name to the reigning family), in the north-east corner of the state, is in the midst of the most important *silk* district of the country.

Most of the trade of Portugal, and nearly all its import traffic, is with England. *Lisbon* and *Oporto*<sup>1</sup> are at once the seaports and trading centres of the country; the former rises on an amphitheatre of heights above the north side of its splendid port, formed by the widening estuary of the Tagus, and will always be memorable for the great earthquake which shook it into ruins in 1755. Unlike Madrid, where everyone is Spanish, the cosmopolitan port of Lisbon is thronged with white and negro, English clerks, bearded Jews, and weather-beaten sailors of all nationalities. Oporto is busiest in sending the port wine of the Douro valley to England.

20. The high volcanic cluster of the nine islands of the Azores<sup>2</sup> lies out in the Atlantic, 800 miles from the coast of Portugal; the largest of them, St. Michael, is upwards of 200 square miles in area, and has the chief town of the group, *Ponta Delgada*; the islands supply immense quantities of oranges and pine apples for the London market.

21. The beautiful island of *Madeira*,<sup>3</sup> famous for its delightful climate, lies nearly 400 miles out from the coast of Morocco; it is high and precipitous, the lower slopes are covered with tropical plants, vines, and sugar cane. Its people are mixed Portuguese, Moorish, and Negro.

#### 4.—ITALY.

1. The alpine peninsula of Italy, reaching down into the Mediterranean, the central one of the three which form the southern extremities of Europe, with the islands of Sicily and Sardinia, which belong to it politically, may be compared in extent (111,000 square miles) with the British Isles, though it is somewhat less than these.

From the northern barrier of the Alps, where they fall steeply round the low plain of Lombardy and Venetia, in the north, and where Austria, Switzerland, and France touch upon the confines of Italy, to where the promontory that terminates in Cape Leuca runs out to form the Strait of Otranto and the Gulf of Taranto, in the south, is a distance of nearly 700 miles (Shetland to Land's End). The lowland in the north, between the French and Austrian

<sup>1</sup> O Porto = the port, referring to an ancient town named Cale, which is now over-spread by the modern town. Oporto gives its name to the whole country, Portus Cale.

<sup>2</sup> Açor, a hawk.

<sup>3</sup> = Wood, timber.

frontiers, has a width from east to west of 300 miles, but the general breadth of the peninsula, between the Adriatic and the Tyrrhenian Seas, does not exceed 100 miles, or about the distance between Hull and Liverpool.

**2. Relief and Rivers.**—The northern plain of Italy (generally but a few feet above sea-level), round which the Alps rise like a wall, is believed to have been at one period an extension of the Adriatic Gulf, which has been gradually filled up with rich alluvial soil worn down from the steep sides of the mountains by the snow-fed torrents. The *Po*, the only great river of Italy, winds through the lowland, and, fed by its many tributaries (the largest of which are the *Ticino* from Lago Maggiore, the *Adda* from *Lake Como*, the *Oglio* from *Lake Iseo*, and the *Mincio* from the *Lago di Garda*), is ever carrying fresh material down from the heights to add to its delta in the Adriatic. In this way the plain has extended eastward by many square miles since the old port of *Adria*, now an inland town, gave its name to the gulf. The *Etsch* or *Adige*, descending from the mountains of the Tyrol and reaching the sea on the north side of the delta of the *Po*, may thus also in time become a tributary of the main river.

The form of all the more strictly peninsular part of Italy is given by the central range of the Apennines, which extends continuously through its length from the maritime Alps of France, round the head of the Gulf of Genoa, down to Cape Spartivento in the extreme south.

The Apennines have their highest part, called the *Gran Sasso d'Italia*, "the great rock of Italy" (Monte Corvo, 9580 feet), near the centre of the long range. The slopes of these heights to the sea, north-east and south west, are so short as to allow of only small rivers. The largest of these are the famous *Tiber* (Tevere), which flows through Rome; and the *Arno*, on which Florence stands. Among the lesser lowlands of the peninsular part of Italy are the plain of the *Arno*, which opens out on the coast to the marshy *Maremma*; <sup>1</sup> the bare *Campagna di Roma*, south of the city, also opening into the unhealthy maritime plains which extend from north of the Tiber mouth for sixty miles along the coast to the *Pontine Marshes*; and the plain of Naples, called the *Campagna Felice* from its fertility.

Nearly parallel with the southern part of the Apennine range, and westward of it, there appears a more recent chain of isolated volcanic heights. Chief of these, on the peninsula, is the cone of *Vesuvius* (4206 feet), which rises abruptly from the Campagna of Naples, above the old cities of Herculaneum and Pompeii buried by its lava streams and ashes. North of Rome, in this volcanic region, the round lakes of *Bolsena* and *Bracciano* occupy the craters of old volcanoes. Carrying the line southward, across the Tyrrhenian Sea, we come to the volcanic group of the *Lipari Islands*, with the ever-active volcano of *Stromboli*, and farther on to *Mount Etna* (Mongibello), in Sicily, the highest of European volcanoes (10,870 feet). Almost all the rest of Sicily, not volcanic, is covered with mountains of moderate elevation, the main line of which extends along the northern side of the island from east to

<sup>1</sup> *Maremma* or *Maritima* = maritime district.

west as if in continuation of the course of the Apennines across the narrow Strait of Messina.

The island of *Sardinia*, separated from Corsica by the Strait of Bonifacio, 150 miles long from north to south, is for the most part mountainous, especially along the eastern side, in the middle of which rises the granitic *Mount Gennargentu*<sup>1</sup> (6293 feet). The mountainous south-western corner of the island is separated from the larger highland on the north-east by the plain called the *Campidano*, which reaches across from the Bay of Cagliari on the south coast, to that of Oristano on the western.

The island of *Elba*, famous as the place of Napoleon's exile, between Corsica and the peninsula, 18 miles long, is high, its western part being formed by *Mount Capanne*, which rises to 3323 feet. *Capri*, south of the Bay of Naples, where the Emperor Tiberius passed the last ten years of his life; and *Caprera*, Garibaldi's home, on the north coast of Sardinia, are other noteworthy islands.

**3. Climate and Landscape.**—The north of Italy has the excessive climate of the temperate region of continental Europe; in the central parts of the peninsula the climate becomes more genial and sunny, and to the south almost tropical.

The plain of Lombardy, with an average temperature of 55° F., has winters which are as cold as those of the Scottish lowlands, and the lagoons of Venice have been frozen over; but its summers are as hot as those of Rome or Nice. The changes are few; rain lasts for weeks together in autumn, but in summer the blue sky is never clouded except when a violent thunder and hail storm occurs. The east wind brings up clouds from the Adriatic, and the west wind from the Alps dispels them; from the abundance of water in the streams and canals of the plain the east wind causes November fogs just as it does in the Thames valley. About Florence the winters are much milder, with the same summer heat, and this difference between the seasons decreases still more to southward. The summer of the Campagna of Rome, when a heat mist rises over the plain, is almost unbearable; in January the sky is blue, the mornings may be frosty, and fresh spring air blows over the land; in March the trees are already leafy, and in June the harvest begins; in July everything withers under the excessive heat, till the autumn rains revive the land. In Naples and South Italy the sky is cloudless for months together, and the air is so pure that distant plains appear to be close at hand. The chief faults of the Italian climate are the cold mountain winds called the *Tramontana*, like the mistral of south France, and the *Bora* of the north Adriatic, and, in contrast, the hot *Sirocco* which occasionally blows from the African deserts, besides the malaria of the western coast marshes and of the Venetian lagoons.

4. Round the lakes at the base of the steep southern slope of the Alps Mediterranean forms of vegetation appear; the chestnut reaches up to 2500 feet, above that comes the belt of beeches and oaks, still higher the pine woods, then the pretty alpine plants and high pastures. Scarcely any part of the world is so covered with irrigating canals (*navighios*) as the highly cultivated plain of Lombardy, so that the whole of it appears like a great garden. At the northern base of the Apennines the Mediterranean flora of laurels and myrtles, cork oak and cypress, covers the first slopes; above that groups of oaks appear, then beech woods and the extensive summer pastures which

---

<sup>1</sup> Janua argenti.



reach all over the Apennine range. The Apennines have no permanent snows, but their highest summits are frequently snow-clad between October and May, and send down cold breezes into the warm valleys.

On the Mediterranean slope round the coasts of the Gulf of Genoa, called the *Riviera*, the characteristic vegetation of the lowlands of the southern portion of the peninsula appears; the roads are lined with aloes, and lead through olive woods and orchards of almonds, oranges, peaches, figs, apricots, and now and then of date palms. In Sicily the vegetation takes an African character, and many tropical forms flourish; it is not a well wooded island, but forests occur here and there.

**5. People.**—The present homogeneous population of Italy (33,733,000 in 1906) has arisen from a perfect chaos of races. The ancient *Ligurians* of Iberian race and the *Umbrians* of the north were joined, from an unknown quarter, by the strange people called *Etruscans*<sup>1</sup> or Tuscans by the Romans, who exercised such an immense influence on European civilisation. The *Greeks* peopled the south, and held Sicily along with the Phœnicians; the *Romans* spread out from the centre of the peninsula to extend their conquests far beyond its limits; then the *Goths* and *Franks* poured in from the north, and after them the *Longobards*, who gave their name to Lombardy. The *Savoyards* and *Waldenses* of the valleys of Piedmont along the French border appear to be of Gallic descent. Insular Sardinia was free from the irruptions of the northern people, but came under the influence of the Greeks, the Arabs, and then of the Spaniards.

Here, as in France and Spain, the Roman language endured and prevailed over all others, and now the people of Italy have one language and literature, the Italian descended from the Latin. Its dialects show traces of the mixture of nationalities, but the Tuscan has now become classic, for the great writers (Dante, Boccaccio) were Tuscans.

**6. Education and Religion.**—Although in ancient times and in the middle ages men were born in Italy who left great masterpieces of art in sculpture, architecture, and painting, as models for all time, and though modern Italy has talented musicians and poets, the greater part of its inhabitants still remain without even the rudiments of education; beggars are very numerous, in south Italy especially, where even yet brigandage exists.

Great efforts are being made, however, by the young kingdom to improve this state of things, and much of the property confiscated by the Government from the many monastic establishments has been devoted to the purposes of public education. Higher education is well provided for, since there are not fewer than 21 universities in Italy, the oldest of which are those of *Bologna*, *Parma*, *Padua*, and *Turin*, on the northern plain; of *Perugia*, near the centre of the peninsula; of *Florence*, *Pisa*, *Siena*, *Rome*, and *Naples*, on the south-western slope of the Apennines.

The Roman Catholic is the state religion of Italy, but since the suppression

<sup>1</sup> The national name was *Rasena*.

of the temporal government of the pope the power of the clergy has been subordinated to that of the civil government, and perfect religious freedom has been secured.

7. Previous to 1859, Italy was divided into a number of separate states : in the north were the kingdom of Sardinia, and the Lombardo - Venetian state under the dominion of Austria ; the grand-duchy of Tuscany, and the duchies of Parma, Modena, and Lucca ; the Pontifical States extended from sea to sea, and from the river Po on the north to the Gulf of Gaeta on the south-west ; lastly, the kingdom of the Two Sicilies, with Naples for its capital, occupied the whole of the southern region. Aided by France, Sardinia obtained possession of Lombardy, after the victories of *Magenta* and *Solferino*, in the campaign of 1859, when the departments of Nice and Savoy became parts of France. Early in the year 1860 the duchies and the Emilian provinces of the Papal States were added to the kingdom of Sardinia, and in March of that year Victor Emmanuel assumed the title of King of Italy. A swift conquest of the Neapolitan kingdom on the south by the patriot Garibaldi added this also to the new kingdom. Umbria and Ancona were next incorporated, and the States of the Church became reduced to the five departments round Rome.<sup>1</sup>

After the Austro-Prussian war of 1866, Austria agreed to the surrender of Venetia also to the Italian kingdom. Now for a time the remaining Pontifical territories were protected from further diminution by the influence of France and the presence of an armed force from that country ; but on the outbreak of the war with Germany in 1870 the French troops were withdrawn, and after but a feeble resistance the Italians entered and took possession of Rome, thus completing the unification of Italy as one kingdom.

8. **Government and Divisions.**—The present constitution is an expansion of that which was granted to his subjects in 1848 by the king of Sardinia, from which country as a nucleus the unification of Italy spread out. According to it the executive power rests with the sovereign and his responsible ministers ; the legislative power is exercised conjointly by the king and a parliament of two chambers—the Senate of princes and members nominated by the king, and the Chamber of Deputies elected by the people. For administrative purposes the kingdom is divided into 69 provinces, in each of which the executive power is entrusted to a prefect appointed by the ministry. As in the case of other countries, the larger and older divisions of the country, called *Compartimentos* in Italy, are of much greater historical and geographical interest than the modern ones.

These are as follows :—

*Piedmont* (Turin) and *Liguria* (Genoa) in the north-west, which formed the continental part of the former kingdom of Sardinia.

*Lombardy* (Milan) and *Venetia* on the great plain of the north.

*Emilia*<sup>2</sup> on the northern slope of the Apennines to the Po,

<sup>1</sup> Rome, Viterbo, Civita Vecchia, Velletri, and Frosinone.

<sup>2</sup> Named from the old *Via Æmilia*.



including the former duchies of Parma and Modena, and the Romagna (Bologna).

*Tuscany*, the former grand-duchy (Florence), between the Apennines and the Mediterranean opposite Corsica, which includes the island of Elba.

*Umbria* (Perugia), the central province of the broadest part of the peninsula.

*The Marches* of Ancona, the eastern slope of the Apennines to the Adriatic opposite Umbria.

*Latium* or *Rome*, the coast slope to the Tyrrhenian Sea on each side of the Tiber.

*The Abruzzi and Molise*, the compartment which extends across the highest part of the Apennines to the Adriatic coast opposite Rome.

*Campagna* (Naples), the western coast-land south of Latium, extending round the Gulfs of Gaeta, Naples, Salerno, and Policastro.

*Apulia*, the territory extending along the Adriatic and Straits of Otranto from the promontory of Monte Gargano to Cape Leuca.

*Basilicata*, the country at the head of the Gulf of Taranto.

*Calabria*, in the extreme south of the peninsula, between the Gulf of Taranto and the Tyrrhenian Sea.

*Sicily and Sardinia*, the insular provinces.

**9. Products and Industries.**—Of the whole surface of Italy it is estimated that 83 per cent is suitable for cultivation. The greatest proportion of agricultural land, however, lies in the great plain of Lombardy and the Campagna Felice of Naples. Notwithstanding this, the supply of corn grown in Italy is not sufficient for its wants, and more is imported from Russia, Egypt, and even from North America. Maize and wheat afford the staple food of the lower classes, as *polenta* and *macaroni*.

A sixth of the area of the kingdom is covered with wood or bush, the island of Sardinia having the largest forests of all the kingdom—the districts of Lake Como, of Southern Tuscany, and Genoa, being the best wooded parts of the mainland. The *olive* grows all over peninsular Italy, and enormous quantities of oil are produced, much being exported. All parts of the country are suited to vine-growing. Most *wine*, however, is made in south Italy and Sicily; most *horses* are bred in Lombardy, where *cattle* are most numerous in the dairy farms, which supply enormous quantities of *cheese* (Parmesan, etc.); Tuscany has most *sheep*; Sicily the finest *mules* and *asses*; Umbria the greatest number of *swine*. The coast fisheries of Italy employ between 5000 and 6000 boats, and fully 26,000 men. *Coral* fishers go out from Naples, Leghorn (Livorno), and Genoa to the coasts of the Balearic Isles and of Algeria and Tunis in large numbers.

The most important mineral product of Italy is the *sulphur* of Sicily;

*iron* is widely distributed, but is obtained in most considerable quantity in Lombardy and Liguria; *lead* is an important product of Tuscany; *sea salt* of the vicinity of Cagliari, the chief town of the island of Sardinia. Famous pure white *marble* is quarried at Carrara and Massa, on the north-west coast-land of Tuscany.

**10. Manufactures.**—The zenith period of Italian manufactures, when Milan was famous for its wool-workers, Venice for its dyes, Florence for its cloth, has long since passed away, and in this respect Italy now occupies a low position.

*Silk*-growing, spinning, and weaving is now the most important branch, and in this the towns of Lombardy—*Bergamo, Como, Milan, Turin*—take the lead, followed by those in the plain round *Naples*, and by *Catania* and *Palermo* in Sicily. *Glass*-making has also fallen from its old position; the works at *Intra*, on Lago Maggiore, and the manufacture of beads and mosaics at *Venice* (Murano), are, however, still very important. These beads serve for coin in Africa. *Porcelain* is now made chiefly at *Milan* and *Florence*; *straw hats* at *Vicenza* in Venetia, and in Tuscany, whence they come to us as *Leghorn* hats, from the port at which they are shipped.

**11. Trade.**—The great advantages of the peninsular position of Italy on the Mediterranean are modified by the presence of the great mountain barrier which shuts the country off from the rest of Europe. Hence the eagerness of its statesmen to complete the railways under or over *Mont Cenis*, the *Brenner Pass*, the *St. Gothard*, and the *Simplon*, all of which are now finished, bringing the cities of Turin and Milan, as well as the great ports of *Genoa* and *Venice*, in direct communication with the Continent. The external commerce of Italy is chiefly carried on with France, Britain, Austria, and Switzerland. Corn and cotton goods are the chief articles required from abroad. Silk and oil and sulphur are the chief articles with which Italy supplies other lands, and the country possesses about 2000 ships that make long voyages. The chief seaports of the country after *Genoa*, “the Superb,” which is the busiest of all, are in order round the coast—*Livorno*, or Leghorn, the port of Tuscany and Florence; *Civita Vecchia*, the port of Latium; *Naples* (the second in business in Italy), with *Castellamare* on the south side of its bay; *Messina*, on the Sicilian side of the Strait named after it, with one of the finest harbours in Europe, beside the eddy which was feared as the whirlpool of Charybdis in ancient times; *Palermo*, “la Felice,” in the vale of the Golden Shell, on the north coast of Sicily; *Catania*, on the east coast of the island. Coming round to the Adriatic coasts we reach the port of *Brindisi*, a notable point in the most direct route from western Europe to Egypt and the East. The most important line of railway in Italy, that leads from the plain of Lombardy all down the east side of the peninsula, has the port of Brindisi as its objective point. Farther north in the middle of this coast is *Ancona*, the port of the Marches. Lastly we come to *Chioggia* and *Venice*, the city of canals and bridges, on the coast lagoon of the north of the Adriatic.

**12.** The Italian navy is a strong one, and in 1907 possessed four powerful battleships, with about twenty cruisers and numerous torpedo craft. The naval arsenal of Italy is at *Spezia*, between Genoa and Leghorn. *Mantua*, on the Mincio, in the east of the plain of Lombardy, is one of the strongest fortresses of Europe, and with *Peschiera*, at the point where the Mincio leaves the Lago di Garda, *Verona*, and *Legnago*, on the Adige, forms the famous “*Quadrilateral*.”

**13.** The wonderful beauty of its site and the fertility of the surrounding

plain, with its maritime commerce, have made *Naples*, the former capital of the kingdom of the Two Sicilies, the most populous place in Italy (564,000). *Rome* (463,000), on the seven hills, owes its greatness rather to its military and political importance from the oldest times, its triumphs, and the treasures which flowed to it as the seat of the sovereign pontiff of the Catholic Church, and has now a smaller number of inhabitants than Naples. Since 1870 the territorial possessions of the Pope have been limited to the portion of Rome which lies west of the Tiber, named the *Città Leonina*, which includes the Vatican, the church of St. Peter, the Borgo, and the castle of St. Angelo. Rome is now the capital of the kingdom. *Milan* (493,000) and *Turin* (336,000), on the fertile northern plain, come third and fourth; then, in order of size, *Palermo* (310,000), *Genoa* (234,000), *Florence* ("La Bella," 205,600), *Venice* (152,000), and *Bologna* (153,000).

14. The only district in Italy that has not yet become one with the kingdom is the little republic of *San Marino*, on the north-east slope of the Apennines, between Bologna and Ancona, both the most ancient and the smallest state in Europe, which had its pigmy feuds and factions even in the middle ages. Saint Marinos is said to have settled here in the fifth century, and to have founded the state. It is a craggy height only 38 square miles in area, with 11,000 people, governed by two captains-general and a senate.

15. The group of the *Maltese islands*, Malta, Gozo, and Comino, 60 miles south of the coast of Sicily, belongs geographically to Italy, but politically to Britain. Malta (or *Melita*), the largest (17 miles long), has the impregnable fortified and splendid port of *Valetta*, with dockyards and arsenal, on its north coast, where a garrison of over 5000 men is ordinarily maintained. The islands form an admirable naval station for a fleet commanding the Mediterranean, and a military point for the concentration of a force which could protect the great highway to Egypt and India. Malta is thus one of the most important dependencies of Great Britain and the head-quarters of the British Mediterranean fleet. The islands have a population (1901) of 205,000, and are under a British governor and council.

## 5.—GREECE.<sup>1</sup>

1. The extremity of the third peninsula of southern Europe is occupied by the kingdom of Greece, the land of the ancient Hellenes, called by them *Hellas*, and first named *Græcia* by the Romans. Greece is essentially a country of rugged mountains and valleys, peninsulas, gulfs, and islands. It comprises a northern, or more continental portion, called *Rumelia*, and the peninsula of the *Morea* (Peloponnesus), joined to the mainland by the Isthmus of Corinth, which is only four miles wide at its narrowest; besides a large share of the islands of the *Ægean Sea*, and the Ionian islands on its west coasts. All of these make up an area (25,040 square miles) which might be compared with that of Scotland north of the lowland between the Forth and Clyde, the length of the country from its northern or Turkish border to the extreme south cape being about 250 miles.

<sup>1</sup> Thessaly and a slice of Epirus (5100 sq. m., pop. 400,000) have been surrendered to Greece in accordance with the Treaty of Berlin. The principal towns within this territory are *Arta*, *Trikala*, *Larissa*, *Pharsala*, and *Volo*.

2. Its coasts form a succession of deep bays and gulfs. The north-west frontier is formed in part by the *Gulf of Arta*; the Morea is all but separated from the mainland by the *Gulf of Patras* and its inner *Gulf of Corinth*; the *Bay of Arcadia* indents the western side of the Morea; the Gulfs of *Koron* (or *Kalamata*) and of *Laconia* (or *Marathonisi*) run into the south of the Morea between the promontories which terminate in Capes *Matapan* and *Malia*; the Gulfs of *Nauplia* (or *Argos*), of *Ægina* (or *Athens*), break the eastern coast; the narrow channels of *Egripo* and *Talanta* separate the long island of *Eubœa* from the mainland; and in the north-east the *Gulf of Volo* penetrates into *Thessaly*.

3. The mountainous *Eubœa* or *Egripo* (called *Negroponte*<sup>1</sup> by the Italians) is the largest island of Greece—more than 100 miles long. North-east of it lie the *Sporades* or scattered islets, the largest of which are *Skyros* and *Skopelos*; within the Gulf of Athens lie *Salamis* and *Ægina*; south-east is the archipelago of the *Cyclades* (*Kyklades*), so called from their circling round the little island of *Delos*, sacred in old times to the worship of *Apollo*. The largest of these are *Andros* and *Tinos*, *Syra*, *Naxos*, *Paros*, *Milos*, and *Amorgos*, the remarkable volcanic island of *Santorin* being the most southerly of the group. The *Ionian islands*—*Corfu*, *Leucas* or *St. Maura*, *Ithaka*, *Kephalonia*, *Zante*, and *Cerigo*—lie along the west and south coasts.

4. **Relief.**—The surface of Greece is everywhere mountainous, even down to the bold headlands of the coast, and its scenery almost everywhere presents striking views of sea and rugged heights. There are no definite ranges in the masses of heights which cover the country, unless it be in the coast range of *Thessaly*, including the famous *Olympus*, or in the *Pindus*, and its eastern branch, the *Othrys Mountains*, running out towards the Gulf of *Volo*; or in the *Taygetos* (or *Pentedactylon*, from its five fingers or peaks), and *Parnon* or *Malevo*, which run south in the Morea, forming the promontories which terminate at *Matapan* and *Malia*. Elsewhere irregular masses cover the land.

The culminating point of all Greece is the famous *Olympus* (9750 ft.), which rises boldly from the *Ægean Sea*, in the coast range of *Thessaly*, and has for its neighbours the scarcely less famous *Ossa* (*Kissovo*) (6407 ft.) and *Pelion* (5310 ft.) The summits of the *Pindus* are far inferior to *Olympus*, the highest being *Mount Kiona* (8240 ft.), which stands near the centre of *Rumelia* in the north. South-east of it is *Liakura*, the classic *Parnassus*, rising to nearly an equal elevation. In the Morea the highest point is *Mount St. Elias* (7900 ft.), at the head of the central promontory of the south coast; many other points of the peninsula are nearly as high. The plains of *Thessaly*, between the *Pindus* and the coast range; of *Boeotia*, between the head of the Gulf of *Corinth* and the *Egripo* channel; and of *Messenia* in the south-west at the head of the Gulf of *Koron*, are the most extensive.

5. **Rivers.**—The streams and mountain torrents of Greece flowing down the steep valleys are necessarily short and unnavigable. They also vary very greatly in volume from the time of the autumn and winter rains to the heat of summer.

<sup>1</sup> A corruption of *Egripo* and *ponte* = bridge.

The only real river is the navigable *Salambria*, which gathers the streams that descend from the Pindus to water the fertile plain of Thessaly, and escapes to the sea between the classic heights of Olympus and Ossa (Kissovo), overlooking the Gulf of Salonica. Of the minor streams the largest is the *Aspropotamo* (anc. Achelous), which drains that portion of Epirus which has recently been assigned to Greece, and reaches the sea at the western corner of the opening into the Gulf of Patras. On the eastern side of Rumelia the *Mavro Potamo* (Kephissus) springs from near the base of Parnassus, and flows eastward to feed *Lake Topolias* (Kopäis), the largest of the lakes of Greece (10 miles wide), which is very imperfectly drained to the Talanta channel by subterranean passages. The *Rufia* (Alpheus), flowing to the Bay of Arcadia, is the largest stream of the Morea. Among the mountains of the north-east of the Morea flows the torrent now called the *Mavro Nero*, or Drako Nero, the *Styx* or Cocytus of the ancient Greeks, regarded by them with superstitious awe, and believed to be poisonous. All around is wild, naked, and solitary. The mountain walls of black, blue, or green slate have a weird and desolate appearance.

6. **Climate.**—Snow lies for two or three months of winter on the mountains of Greece, but is scarcely known in the deeper valleys and coast-lands. The summer sky is cloudless and bright, and the heat very great; and at this season the swampy valleys, such as that of Lake Topolias, become unhealthy from the malarious vapours. The sirocco is occasionally felt in the south; north winds blow cold. In general the climate is temperate and healthy.

7. **People.**—The inhabitants of Greece (2,434,000 in 1896) are in the main the descendants of the old *Greeks*—of tall, slim stature, with straight nose, dark fiery eyes, and black hair. Devotedly attached to their country, they are as fond of their independence as were the old Highlanders of Scotland, and consequently are bitter enemies of the Turks. They speak the modern Greek tongue, which is a greatly modified form of the old.

A large admixture of *Albanian* mountaineers is found in the north of Greece. Their language is remotely related to Greek. In Thessaly there are many Turks as well as Gypsies, and a good number of English and Italians are also resident.

8. **Religion and Education.**—The majority of the Greeks belong to the Orthodox Greek Church, the clergy of which, since 1833, owe nominal allegiance only to the Patriarch of Constantinople, but are under the real authority of the Metropolitan of Athens. A small proportion are Roman Catholics. In Thessaly Mohammedans are numerous.

The freedom of Greece from the oppressive rule of the Turks and its establishment as an independent kingdom is an event of comparatively recent times. Law and order and industry have been extended over the whole land, and brigandage may be said to be extinct, except in the districts only recently acquired from Turkey.

The Government has given much attention to public education, but although schools have been established on the German system of compulsory education, one-third of the adult population are illiterate. A university was opened at *Athens* in 1837, and was attended by 2574 students in 1903.

**9. Government.**—According to the constitution, which was framed by an assembly in 1864, the executive power is vested in the King and his responsible Ministry ; the legislature is a single Chamber of Deputies, called the *Boulé*, elected by the people, and meets at Athens, the capital. Previous to this, the country had been divided for administrative purposes into provinces or *nomarchies*, which correspond, in their names at least, with the divisions of ancient Greece. These are—

In *Rumelia*, or the mainland of northern Greece—

Thessaly, with a slice of Epirus, including the town of Arta.  
Attica and Bœotia (Athens), and Eubœa, with the Sporades,  
in the east.

Phthiotis and Phocis, central.

Acarmania and Etolia, in the west.

In the *Morea*—

Argolis and Corinth, in the north-east.

Achaia and Elis, in the north-west.

Arcadia, in the centre of the peninsula.

Messenia, in the south-west.

Laconia, in the south-east.

In *Insular Greece*—

The nomarchies of the Ionian Islands, Corfu, Cephalonia,  
and Zante (Zakynthos), and of the Cyclades.

**10. Products and Industries.**—As may be understood from the mountainous character of the country and its recent enfranchisement, only about a third of the area of Greece is cultivable and not a half of this available land has been tilled.

Most of the mountain sides have woods which shelter wolves and foxes and wild boars, but in many parts the trees have been burned off, destroyed, or cut down for shipbuilding or for their resin. Wheat is more cultivated than any other grain, but barley is the staple food of the poorer classes, especially in the islands, and as the home supply is not sufficient, corn is imported from south Russia. *Tobacco* is largely grown in Thessaly. The vineyards are very extensive, and are always increasing, but the methods of preparing the Greek wines are still very rude. Mulberry trees and silk-cultivation are also widespread, but the most important product of Greece by far is its *currants* (a small grape),<sup>1</sup> which are grown in the Ionian islands and Morea. The *honey* of *Mount Hymettus*, south-east of Athens, was famed in ancient times, and apiculture is at the present day so important that the tax on bees forms a considerable part of the national revenue. Of domestic animals sheep and goats are the most numerous. The little horses are hardy, and these, or mules, were used by all travellers before the recent development of the internal communications—2870 miles of good roads and 700 miles of railway open in 1905. Though not poor in minerals, Greece has no mines of importance. *Iron ore* is sent to Newcastle from the island of *Seriphos* in the Cyclades, *Paros*

<sup>1</sup> So called from the city of *Corinth*.



has famous *marble*, *Zante* yields *petroleum* now as in the time of Herodotus. At Athens most of the printing and production of the literature of Greece takes place; it has also a little silk and cotton weaving, but manufactures of this kind are insignificant in any part of the country. The Greeks of the sea coasts and of the islands are born seamen, fishers, and traders, known as such all over the waters of the Mediterranean.

11. The chief centres of trade are the *Piræus*, the port of Athens, joined to it by a short line of railway about seven miles long, busy in supplying the capital; *Patras*, on the south coast of its gulf, which opens into that of Corinth, where most of the currents of the Morea are shipped; *Mesolongion* (*Mesolonghi*), rendered famous by its siege, in 1826, on the northern shore of the same gulf; *Kalamata*, at the head of the Gulf of Koron, in the south, exporting silk and figs; *Nauplia*, at the head of its gulf, on the east side of the peninsula; *Volo*, the port of Thessaly; and *Syra* or *Hermupolis*, the second town of importance in the kingdom, the central point of the Cyclades, and an important station of several steamer lines. The little navy of Greece has its head-quarters at the island of *Poros*, in the Gulf of *Ægina*. Other towns of note are *Larissa* and *Trikala* in Thessaly; *Egripo* or *Khalkis* on Eubœa; *Tripolitza*, the old capital of the Morea, and *Sparta*, in Laconia.

12. *Athens* (112,000), built on the margin of the olive and vine covered plain, where it rises to the hill of *Lykabettos*, is almost entirely a modern town, built since the liberation of the country in 1830, when it became the capital of the kingdom,<sup>1</sup> but the *Acropolis*, or *Mars' Hill*, the ruins of the *Parthenon*, of the temple of *Jupiter Olympus*, and of the temple of *Theseus*, remain to mark its ancient greatness. No other town in Greece is half so large.

## 6. ROMANIA.

1. The well-marked division of the northern plain of the Lower Danube between the Transylvanian Alps and the river, equivalent to considerably more than three-fourths of England and Wales in area (48,300 sq. m.), was conquered by the Turks in the beginning of the sixteenth century. Twice it passed under the control of the invading Russians, twice it was re-occupied by the Turks; but the influence of the northern power gained for it a government by its own native princes, and freedom from the oppression of the corrupt Greek or Fanariot princes of Constantinople who had previously farmed the land. The union of its two principalities, *Walachia* in the south and *Moldavia* in the east, as the principality of *Romania*, under one ruler, was granted by the Sultan in 1861, and till May 1877 the country paid tribute to the Porte. At that date *Romania* declared its independence of Turkey, and its freedom was confirmed by the Treaty of Berlin in 1878. By this treaty it obtained the district of the *Dobruja* south of the delta of the Danube, in exchange for the portion of *Bessarabia* alienated from Russia by the Treaty of Paris (1856), and now restored.

<sup>1</sup> In place of *Livadia*, on the border of Lake *Topolhas*, the capital under Turkish rule.

2. **Relief.**—Romania consists for the most part of a great treeless steppe-like plain, occupying nearly the whole of the northern watershed of the Lower Danube ; behind this plain rise the wooded Transylvanian Alps. Between the northern bend of the river to its marshy delta and the Black Sea there rises the bare plateau called the Dobruja, partly grass-covered, partly swampy, without tree or bush. This famous old battle-ground is crossed by Trajan's double wall or rampart, built to keep the northern barbarians out of the Roman provinces, which was a serviceable line of defence in 1854.

3. **Rivers.**—All the rivers are tributaries of the Danube, and flow from the Carpathians and the Transylvanian Alps across the level steppe to join its left bank. The chief are the *Prut*, which now forms the boundary towards Russia, the *Seret*, and the *Oltu* (Aluta). By the Treaty of Paris of 1856 the supreme control of the navigation of the delta mouths of the Danube was placed in the hands of an International Commission, which receives dues from passing vessels, and expends these in maintaining the navigability of its channels, especially of the chief or Sulina mouth. By the Treaty of Berlin this Commission is maintained in its functions in complete independence, below Galatz, of the territorial authorities. No vessel of war is now permitted to navigate the Danube below the Iron Gates, and all fortresses and fortifications on this part of the river are to be razed.

4. **People.**—Most of the population (5,957,000 in 1899) are supposed to be descendants of the race formed by the alliance of the Roman colonists with the original inhabitants of Dacia ; these are the Romanians or Rumëni, in whose language three-fourths of the words are Latin. They are strong, well-knit men, with black hair, lively, but not very active. The mass of the people live in the greatest poverty ; their huts are worse even than the cabins of the Irish peasantry : a few thousand *Boyars*, nobles, or landed proprietors, really form the nation. Large numbers of Jews and Gypsies live among the Romanians. Almost the entire population belongs to the Orthodox Greek Church, but perfect religious equality is secured by the Berlin Treaty.

5. **Government.**—Its constitution, voted by a popular assembly in 1866, vests the executive authority in the reigning king and his council of ministers ; the legislative body consists of a Senate and a Chamber of Deputies ; the seat of government is at *Bucharest* (Bucuresci) in Walachia.

For administrative purposes Walachia is divided into eighteen, Moldavia into thirteen, districts, each under a prefect or governor.

6. **Products and Industries.**—In this great pastoral and

agricultural plain, cattle-rearing and corn-growing (maize, wheat, barley, rye) are naturally the chief and almost exclusive industries. The peasant makes his own rough clothing and cap of sheepskin; his waggon requires no iron work; and the corn is trodden out by horses; all the imports are for the luxurious *Boyars*.

7. *Bucharest*, the capital (278,000), the entrepôt of trade between Turkey and Hungary, towards the south of the Walachian plain, is a thoroughly oriental town, a great chaos of huts and palaces and courtyards, with large gardens between. It is the seat of the Romanian university, and of the now important literature of the country. *Jassy* (78,000), the chief town in Moldavia, lies picturesquely on the slope of the hills, ten miles west of the river Prut; *Galatz* (62,500), the head-quarters of the Danube Commission, below the mouth of the Seret, and *Braila*, a short distance above it, are the great grain ports and depôts of the plain.

The first railway in Romania was constructed in 1869, from Bucharest south to *Gurgevo* on the Danube; now the capital is in railway communication with the rest of Europe through Galatz and Moldavia. The district of the Dobruja includes an important line of railway, which passes alongside of the ancient Roman wall from *Chernavoda* on the Danube to *Kustenje* on the Black Sea. In 1906 about 2000 miles of railway were open.

### III. THE SLAVONIC STATES.

#### THE BALKAN PENINSULA.

1. In the Balkan<sup>1</sup> peninsula, between the Adriatic and the Black Sea, we reach a part of Europe which has been, till recently, held subject since the fifteenth century by a people of Asiatic race, the warlike Osmanli Turks, differing in creed, in customs, and character in the widest degree from all the other nations of this part of the world, and incompetent to keep pace with their development in peaceful industries. Gradually the power of this once dreaded foreign race, numerically far inferior, has been losing its hold; the territories nearest the main body of European States have passed, from being firmly subject, to be tributary only in name, or virtually independent of the Turk, "the sick man," who seems destined to be pushed out of Europe by the way he came. The Balkan peninsula, however, is but a small part of the empire of the Turks; compared with the Turkish dominions in Asia and Africa, this European portion is only equivalent to about a twenty-fifth part of their extent; its population to about a seventh.

Although the large territory (148,240 square miles) which lies south of the borders of Austria and Romania, marked out by the *Save*, the *Middle* and *Lower Danube*, extending to the frontier of Greece on the south, has little remaining unity in its political conditions, it will be convenient here to consider it first as one

<sup>1</sup> Balkan, Turkish, = mountain.

geographical division of the Continent ; and afterwards to separate it into its individual states.<sup>1</sup>

**2. Extent and Configuration.**—In area the division under consideration may be compared to twice that of Great Britain ; it extends about 400 miles across from north to south and 500 east to west. It lies favourably between the branches of the Mediterranean, and has harbours on the Adriatic and the Ionian Sea on the west, on the Ægean and the Sea of Marmora in the south, and on the Black Sea in the east, from which the great natural highway of the Danube leads into the land.

South of the Danube a gentle ascent of undulating well-cultivated pastoral land, with dwarf oaks, leads up to the rounded heights of the *Balkan*,<sup>2</sup> on which beech and oak woods interchange with grass. The steep right bank of the Danube along the north edge of this slope is cultivated and populous ; between the northern bend of the river and the Black Sea rises the bare plateau called the *Dobruja*, partly grass-covered, partly swampy, without tree or bush.

The long range of the Balkan curves round from the "Iron Gates" of the Danube parallel with the river to Cape Emine on the Black Sea coast. The *Koja Balkan* (= chief mountains, 7790 feet), west of the Shipka Pass, near the centre of the range, are the highest. Almost all the country west and south of the Balkan is high and mountainous. Most of its ranges take the direction of the western coast, and continue the ramifications of the eastern or *Illyrian Mountains* (the direct extension of the Julian Alps) down into Greece, and enclose between them high grassy meadows, lying about 2000 feet, on an average, above the Adriatic. The highest points of these ranges, often with wooded slopes rising to naked white peaks and pyramids, are the mountains called *Dormitor* in Montenegro (8150 feet), and *Mount Kuchki Kom* on the inner border of Montenegro (7920 feet), the *Shar Dag* (or Scardus) in eastern Albania (10,010 feet), and the *Pindus Mountains*, between Macedonia and Epirus. Between the steep southern slope of the Balkan to the basin of Kazanlik and the valley of the Maritza, and the coasts of the Ægean, rises the broad mass of heights called the *Rhodope*, or *Despoto Dag*,<sup>3</sup> with several granite summits reaching over 7000 feet. Seen from the north this mass looks like a great plateau, with belts of oak and beech, fir and larch, skirting its slopes. Where the systems of the Rhodope, the Balkans, and the western heights run together, in the centre of the country, there rise the highest summits of all, the *Mus-alla* (9570 feet), and the *Rilo Dag* (8960 feet), covered with pine forest, and clear of snow only in midsummer.

	Area in sq. miles	Population.
<sup>1</sup> Turkey proper, with Crete . . . . .	64,000	6,130,000
Tributary States. { Eastern Roumelia . . . . .	13,660	3,744,000
{ Bulgaria . . . . .	24,660	
{ Bosnia and Herzegovina (in Austrian occupation) . . . . .	23,570	1,591,000
Independent { Serbia (1905) . . . . .	18,750	2,689,000
{ Montenegro . . . . .	3,600	230,000
	<u>148,240</u>	<u>14,284,000</u>

Thessaly and that portion of Epirus which have been ceded to Greece in accordance with the Treaty of Berlin (5100 sq. m., pop 400,000), are not included above.

<sup>2</sup> The eastern part of the range is called *Emine Dag* by the Turks = "the mountains which serve for a defence."

<sup>3</sup> *Despoto Dag*. Turkish = "monks' mountains," from the numerous convents.



Towards the *Ægean* the high crests run out into the remarkable peninsula of *Chalcidice*, with its three prongs, one of which is terminated by *Mount Athos*, or the Holy Hill<sup>1</sup> (6350 feet). Through this arm of the peninsula Xerxes cut a canal for his ships to escape the stormy gales which render the navigation round the mountain dangerous. Opposite this the long peninsula of Gallipoli also runs south between the narrow Dardanelles and the Gulf of Saros; between these are the high islands of *Thaso* and *Samothrace* (where St. Paul touched on his way to Macedonia), but the latter is politically included in the Asiatic division of the Turkish Archipelago. Far to the south of the *Ægean*, however, the large island of *Crete*, or *Candia* (150 miles long), on which Mount *Ida* rises to 8000 feet, belongs to European Turkey.

3. **Rivers.**—The torrents which descend to the Adriatic from the mountains and plateaus of the west are of little value, except for their mill-driving powers, and for floating timber down from the hills. The most considerable of them is called the *Boyana*, the overflow of the large *Skadar* or *Scutari* lake (25 miles long), near the middle of the Adriatic coast-land; near its exit from the lake the *Boyana* is joined by the *Drin*; this river has its chief source in *Lake Okhrida* (18 miles long), which occupies one of the plateaus of eastern Albania, lying at an elevation of nearly 2300 feet above the sea. The *Vardar* from the *Shar Dag*, flowing south-east to the Gulf of Salonica, is a large stream; but the *Maritza*, rising between the Balkans and the Rhodope, watering the great valley of Thrace, and curving round the latter mass of heights, is the most important river of the southern drainage. It is navigable, excepting in summer, as far as Philippopolis, 170 miles above its mouth. The great highway of the northern plain, as before said, is the *Danube*.

4. **Climate.**—The climate of the Balkan Peninsula is on the whole a favourable one. It becomes less so in proportion as the land rises to greater heights, and as it is exposed to the cold blasts of the north-east wind from the Russian steppes.

The climate of the northern plain is especially a continental or excessive one; the severe winter covers the plain with deep snow for four months, when the *Danube* also is frozen; spring begins in April, May is hot, July is characterised by storms and flooded rivers, filled by the rains and the melting snows; autumn being fine. South of the protecting barrier of the Balkans the myrtle survives the winter, and the orange, olive, and mulberry thrive. The Albanian slope to the Adriatic is perfectly sheltered from the cold north winds; the summers there are unbearably hot, and cold weather lasts only till March. Snow seldom falls in the lower valley of the *Maritza*, and the climate of these districts round the *Ægean* is specially agreeable, but the *Bosporus* has been frozen in exceptional winters.

5. **People.**—No part of the world embraces such a strange mixture of antagonistic races—*Asiatic*, *Greco-Latin*, *Slavonic*, *Semitic*—as well as of languages and creeds, as this division of Europe. Of the 14,000,000 of people who inhabit this area, the *Osmanli* or *Turks* constitute less than a sixth part (3,000,000). They live in compact masses only in the south and east of the country, as round parts of the coasts of the *Ægean*, in the Rhodope highland, about Adrianople in the valley of the *Maritza*, and along the Black Sea coast-land between the Balkans and the delta of the *Danube*.

<sup>1</sup> From the large number of Greek monasteries on it.

After the Crimean war large numbers of the *Tatars* of the Crimea, allied in race to the Turks, came over the Black Sea to settle in the Dobruja, south of the Danube mouths, whence they are extending westward. The *Greeks* (about 1,300,000) form the most important element of the population in the south, and extend round the *Ægean* to Constantinople. The western central highlands towards the Adriatic are occupied by the *Albanians* (1,500,000), who are called Arnauts by the Turks, Skipetars by themselves; they are akin to the Greeks, and are supposed to be the descendants of the ancient Illyrians. From the south side of the Danube up over the Balkans to the limits of the Greek and Turkish districts on the coast lands of the *Ægean*, live the *Bulgarians* (nearly 4,000,000), a people of Finnish (Mongolian) origin, who migrated hither in the seventh century, gradually becoming amalgamated with the Slavonic peoples whom they had conquered, adopting their language and customs.

Lastly we come to the purely *Slavonic* division of the peoples of this region (over 4½ millions), the Servians, Bosnians, Herzegovinians, Croats, and Montenegrins of the north-western highlands. Among the more important of the minor elements of population found in European Turkey are the *Circassians* (Cherkesses), people of the Caucasus who crossed over into Turkey in numbers after the conquest of their native mountains by Russia in 1864; the *Armenians*, who are found as well-to-do traders in every town; the *Gypsies*, who, true to their nomad life and poverty, are found scattered among the Bulgarians, living in tents or huts in summer, and digging themselves into the ground in the cold winter; and the scattered *Jews*, most numerous north of the Danube.

**6. Religions.**—It is to be noted that the religious divisions of the peoples of the Balkan Peninsula do not correspond to those of race. The Turks are not the only Mohammedans, for large numbers of the subject races—of the Bulgarians, Albanians, and Bosnians especially—to escape oppression, turned converts to the creed of their rulers, and have since become fanatical followers of the Prophet; though the ties of nationality seem to remain stronger than those of religion.

Among the Bosnians of the north-west, all the nobles have become faithful adherents of Islam; but there are nearly three *Christians* in this division of Europe for every Mohammedan. The *Orthodox Greek Church*, under the Patriarch of Constantinople, counts the greatest number of adherents among the Greeks of the south, the Albanians, and Slavs of the north-west. The *Armenian Church*, the Patriarch of which resides in Armenia, and the United or *Catholic Armenian*, which recognises the authority of the Pope of Rome, have also many adherents. Thus the Balkan Peninsula presents not only contrasts between Turks and non-Turks, but also between Mohammedans and Christians, and these again between Greeks and Catholics.

Though the majority of the population of Turkey is Christian, non-Mohammedans long remained under the most cruel oppression, and have even now obtained only the barest toleration under pressure from the Christian States of Europe. Christians were excluded from all official positions; they had no redress for wrongs, for the word of a Christian had no weight against that of a Turk; the possession of land was also forbidden to them, and as farmers they were obliged to pay a third of the harvest to the owner of the soil; and such heavy taxes were exacted that it is scarcely surprising that the flame of insurrection was and is even still continually breaking out. The



European powers, held back by jealousy of one another, looked on inactively at these iniquities. Russia alone, whether out of purely philanthropic motives or not, was disposed to give effect to her sympathies with the oppressed peoples allied to her in race and religion, and the resistance to these efforts by England, who feared the presence of a great power at Constantinople between the two most important sections of the British Empire, brought about the Crimean war, in which Russian aims were for the time defeated. At the conclusion of this war a scheme of Turkish governmental reforms of the most liberal kind met the approval of the European powers; this document, however, remained absolutely a dead letter. In 1876, by mutual agreement of the European Powers, it was proposed to the Turkish Government that the reforms should be placed under the control of commissioners appointed by the Powers. The rejection of these proposals by the Turkish government brought about the Russo-Turkish campaign of 1877, in which all the eastern region, except Constantinople itself, was occupied by Russian troops; and in the subsequent Congress of European Powers at Berlin the political boundaries and relations of the country were greatly altered.

**7. Political Divisions.**—Previous to the Russian invasion of 1877-78, the greater part of the Balkan Peninsula formed European Turkey with its tributary states. Several of these, indeed, had already gained freedom in a greater or less degree from the Turkish rule. The treaty of Berlin in 1878, however, greatly altered the political relations of the different parts of the country, reducing the area under direct Turkish rule to less than half of the whole, besides confirming the independence and extending the limits of several of the formerly tributary states.

The independence of the state of *Romania*, in the great plain north of the Danube, was recognised. South of the Danube a new principality of *Bulgaria* was formed, embracing the country from the river to the crests of the Balkan range; this is a tributary principality with a Christian ruler elected by the people, the choice being confirmed by the Turkish Sultan, with the assent of the great powers of Europe.

South of the Balkans a second tributary principality named *Eastern Roumelia* was also formed. It extends between the Balkan and the Rhodope mountains, and eastward to the Black Sea, embracing the whole of the upper basin of the Maritza river. This province was to have been placed under a Christian governor appointed by the Porte, but now virtually forms part of Bulgaria. The mountain state of *Servia* was again promoted to the rank of an independent state, and its limits were extended southward to embrace the upper basin of the Morava river. The freedom of *Montenegro*, in the western mountains, was also confirmed, and a considerable addition was made to its territory. The small port of *Spitza*, on the coast of the Adriatic south of the former termination of the Dalmatian territory, was ceded to Austria, which power was also charged with the occupation and administration of the affairs of Bosnia and Herzegovina, adjoining her territory of Slavonia, for an indefinite period. Nearly all Thessaly with a slice of Epirus was ceded to Greece, as a reward for her abstention from war. Thus there remain under direct Turkish rule only the country called Rumili or Roumelia, the old Roman or Byzantine land in the south, embracing the greater parts of Thrace, Macedonia, and Epirus, besides Albania.

## 1.—SERVIA.

8. The little mountainous country of Serbia, between the western Balkans and the Illyrian mountains, on each side of the valley in which the *Morava* flows north to the Danube, is a relic of the great Servian monarchy of the fourteenth century, which fell before the Turkish advance. Its present area (nearly 19,000 square miles) may be compared with that of Switzerland. Its long struggles for independence gained it the right of self-government in 1829, but it remained still tributary and nominally subject to Constantinople till December 1877, when it proclaimed its independence of Turkey; its freedom, as we have seen, was confirmed by the Treaty of Berlin.

9. Its present ruler, Peter I., of the Karageorgevich dynasty, came to the throne in 1903 after the assassination of King Alexander of the rival Obrenovich dynasty. The king holds the executive power with his ministers, and the legislative authority is vested in the "*Sovjet*" or Senate, nominated by the prince, and in the National Assembly or "*Skupshchina*."

10. The greater part of the country is mountainous and wooded; it is full of forests and hills, hedged fields, and fresh meadows, forming pretty but never very grand landscapes. The Servian mountaineers in general are lazy and hate agricultural labour, so that nearly nine-tenths of the land is left under its primitive *woods* and *pastures*; agriculture and cattle-rearing are unimportant, but large droves of *swine* are fed on the acorns in the woods, and are driven to market in Hungary. The mineral treasures of Serbia are considerable; *gold*, *copper*, and *zinc* occur in the hills which reach towards the "Iron Gates" of the Danube, and coal beds extend along the river. The only large place is the capital, the fortress of *Belgrad* (80,700 in 1905), on the Danube, which for three and a half centuries was the central point of contest between the Austrians and the Turks. It is an important place in the transit trade between the northern and southern countries.

## 2.—MONTENEGRO.

11. The first part of the Balkan Peninsula to free itself from Turkish bondage was the little principality which we know by its Venetian name *Montenegro*; <sup>1</sup> with the additions made to its territory by the treaty of 1878 it is not as large as Devonshire with Cornwall, and occupies the western mountain region from the range which culminates in the *Dormitor* and *Kuchki Kom*, to the narrow strip of Dalmatian territory which shuts it off from Cattaro, its natural harbour, and farther south to the Adriatic itself.

12. Its reigning prince is a descendant of the prince bishop who liberated

---

<sup>1</sup> The Turks call it *Karadagh*, the Servians and Montenegrini *Czernagora*, all three meaning black mountains, either from the Servian chief Czernoi, the black or the rebel, who took refuge here, or from the dark forest formerly covering the mountain.

the country from the Turks at the end of the seventeenth century, since which time it has been virtually independent. The people (about 230,000) are divided into forty tribes, and all the men are trained as soldiers. The government, as last modified in 1905, takes the form of a hereditary constitutional monarchy with popular representation and universal suffrage. The Assembly meets at the chief village of *Cetinje* (pron Tsetinye). The territory ceded to Montenegro by the Treaty of Berlin includes the small fortified towns of *Nikshich* on the north and *Podgoritza* on the south of the old territory, besides the more important trading harbours of *Antivari* and *Dulcigno* on the Adriatic coast. These latter, however, have a powerful Albanian element in their population.

### 3.—BOSNIA AND HERZEGOVINA.

13. The north-western mountain region of the Balkan Peninsula was embraced in the Roman province of Illyria, and suffered many vicissitudes after the division of the empire. Previous to the seventh century the portion of it known as Bosnia was governed by princes of its own, called Bans, who became dependent on Hungary. Conquered afterwards by the Turks, it was annexed to the Ottoman empire in 1522. At the end of the sixteenth century the Turks also mastered the southern portion of Croatia. As early as 1466 the Herzegovina<sup>1</sup> south of Bosnia and Croatia, which had been known as the dukedom of Saint Saba under the Venetian rule, also fell into the hands of the advancing Turkish invaders, and after being the battlefield of Christian and Mohammedan for more than two centuries, was finally annexed to the Turkish empire by the Treaty of Carlowitz in 1697.

These three conquered territories were formed into the Turkish province of Bosnia, the hereditary chiefs being deprived of their prerogatives and of most of their revenues. Since that time the country has been the scene of almost constant disturbances and rebellions by the brave and hardy mountaineers. So unstable has been the Turkish power in this territory, that the Congress of European powers at Berlin in 1878 agreed to the occupation of Bosnia and Herzegovina by the Austrian troops, and to their administration for an undetined future period by the Austrian government.

14. The country is entirely covered with well-wooded mountain ranges, with well-watered valleys between, on which grain and fruits are produced in great abundance. Game and fish abound, and the country is celebrated for its sheep, goats, swine, and honey bees. Minerals abound, and under the new régime iron, copper, coal, and quicksilver are mined. The communications have also been greatly improved, and in 1906 nearly 800 miles of railway were open. The population is for the most part Slavonic (Bosnians, Croats, Morlaks), and their Bosnian language, somewhat different from the Servian, has been preserved pure, the Turkish never having passed into general use. In appearance the Bosnians are tall and strong, with fine expressive features and dignified bearing.

<sup>1</sup> That is the Herzog-thum or dukedom

Their towns are generally divided into three portions—the *Grad*, or citadel; the *Varos*, or walled town proper, often surrounded by walls and ditches; and the *Mahala* or *Palanka*, or suburbs, inhabited by the lowest classes.

15. *Serai-Bosna*, or Saraiyevo, is the largest town (38,000), and was formerly the capital of Bosnia and Turkish Croatia, and is the centre of trade in the country. *Travnik*, north-west of it, is an important fortress; and *Banyaluka*,<sup>1</sup> on the border of Turkish Croatia, is the most beautifully situated place in the territory. *Zvornik*, on the boundary river Drina on the east, is almost entirely a Servian town trading largely in timber. *Mostar*, on the Narenta, is the chief town of Herzegovina, and has one of the finest bridges in all this region, with high strong quadrangular towers at each end forming a single arch over the river.<sup>2</sup> *Trebinye*, in the southern corner of the country not far from the port of Ragusa, is surrounded by old Servian fortifications.

## EUROPEAN TURKEY.

### 4.—BULGARIA AND EASTERN ROUMELIA.

1. By the Treaty of Berlin two large territories have been removed from under the direct authority of the Sultan of Turkey, to be formed into tributary principalities enjoying the right of self-government. These are *Bulgaria* on the northern slope of the Balkans to the Danube, and *Eastern Roumelia* on the southern descent to the basin of the Maritza in Thrace.

2. The province of the Danube or Bulgaria, ancient Moesia, is a fertile agricultural country, watered by the Isker, Osma, Yantra, and Lom, tributaries of the Danube, growing maize and wheat, and able to export large quantities of these by the port of Varna on the Black Sea. In rearing of herds of cattle and sheep it is not so prosperous as Walachia on the other side of the Danube. Buffaloes drag the native carts here as in Italy. The Bulgarian peasants are thicker set than the Romanians, lean and muscular, wearing a cubara or sheepskin cap in place of the fez. Though of Finnish origin, their customs and language have become entirely those of the Slavonic people whom they conquered. Most of them belong to the Greek Catholic Church.

3. The important towns of Bulgaria from west to east are, *Vidin*, a busy trading town on the Danube near the Servian frontier; *Sofia*, on a fine plain beside the river Isker in the south-west, formerly capital of the Turkish province; *Nicopolis*, on the Danube at the mouth of the Osma; *Plevna*, south-west of it, memorable for its siege in 1877; *Sistova*, a trading town on the Danube; *Tirnova*, south of it, the residence of the Bulgarian kings before the Turkish conquest; *Rustchuk*, the most important trading and manufacturing town on the Danube; *Shumla*, a strong natural fortress; and *Varna*, the port of the country on the Black Sea. Nearly 1000 miles of railway connect Bulgaria with the general European system.

4. The constitution of the newly-formed principality of Bulgaria was determined by an assembly of notables at Tirnova, the old Bulgarian capital in the centre of the territory. The new State pays tribute to the Porte, and bears part of the public debt of the empire, but has a Christian government and a militia of its own, and its religious liberty is guaranteed.

<sup>1</sup> Banyaluka = Bath meadow.

<sup>2</sup> The name Mostar is thus probably derived from *Mostari* = old bridge.

5. *Eastern Roumelia* is formed out of the provinces of *Slivno* and *Philippopolis*, with part of that of *Adrianople*, and embraces the upper basin of the *Maritza* and of its tributary the *Tunja*, extending also eastward of the latter to the coast of the *Black Sea* round the *Gulf of Burgas*. With the exception of the portion of the *Rhodope* plateau which falls within it, the whole of this is a charming country of undulating ridges covered with green vegetation. Along the base of the steep slopes of the *Balkan*, on the north of it, lies the rose-growing country, in which most of the famous attar of roses is made.

6. The population in this newly carved out principality is also for the most part Bulgarian. The chief towns are—*Philippopolis*,<sup>1</sup> on the Upper *Maritza*, which begins to be navigable here for boats. This ancient town was founded by Philip, father of Alexander the Great, and was taken in 1860 by the Turks. *Kazanlik*, on the *Tunja*, at the base of the *Balkan*, and *Slivno*, or *Islimye*, farther east, also close to the steep face of the mountains on the north, are both great centres of the manufacture and trade in attar of roses. *Burgas*, on an inlet of the *Black Sea* coast, is the chief port of the new province.

7. Eastern Roumelia was originally to have been placed under a Christian governor-general appointed by the Porte with the consent of the great European powers, but is now virtually a part of Bulgaria. Since the union of the two principalities Roumelia takes also the name of *Southern Bulgaria*.

### 5.—TURKEY PROPER.

1. The remaining portions of the *Balkan Peninsula*—extending south of the new boundaries of *Montenegro*, *Servia*, and *Eastern Roumelia* to the *Ægean*, and from the *Black Sea* and *Sea of Marmora* to the *Straits of Otranto*—are still under direct Turkish authority.

2. **Government.**—Here the Sultan is ruler, and his will is absolute in so far as it is not in opposition to the precepts of the *Koran*, the sacred book of the Mohammedans. He acts through the Grand Vizier, who is head of the temporal government and president of the state council of the *Sublime Porte*;<sup>2</sup> and through the *Mufti*, or Sheik-ul-Islam, the head of the Church and chief of the “*Ulemas*,” a body which includes the clergy and the chief functionaries of the law, the interpreters of the *Koran*, on which all laws, civil and religious, are based.

3. **Divisions.**—The whole Turkish Empire is divided into *vilayets* or governments, each under a *vali* who represents the Sultan, and each subdivided into *Sanjaks* or provinces. Of these divisions there are seven on the mainland of European Turkey—*Constantinople*, *Adrianople*, *Salonica* or *Saloniki*, *Monastir*, *Kossovo*, *Skadar* or *Scutari*, and *Yanina*. In 1898 the vilayet of *Crete* became an autonomous State under a High Commissioner of the Powers, subject to the suzerainty of the Porte, but without tribute. The better known old divisions on the mainland are *Thrace*, the south-eastern region between the *Balkans* and *Rhodope*; *Macedonia*,

<sup>1</sup> Turkish, *Felibé*; Bulgarian, *Plovdiv*.

<sup>2</sup> So named in allusion to the eastern custom of dispensing justice at the gate—from the lofty gateway of the Seraglio or palace at Constantinople opposite which the Grand Vizier resides.

between the Rhodope, the Shar Dagħ, and the *Ægean* ; *Epirus*, on the western slopes of the Pindus range ; and *Albania*, the western mountain region south of Servia.

**4. Products and Industries.**—Turkey is a country of great natural resources, but few similarly gifted parts of the earth are so much neglected. The greater part of the population, as may be understood from the foregoing paragraphs, has no interest in the cultivation of the land ; labour, capital, and roads are very deficient.

More than half the area is arable land or meadow, but little more is cultivated than is necessary to supply the requirements of the people themselves. Yet the land yields so plentifully that every Turkish harbour exports grain ; the *olive* is more especially cultivated in the maritime districts, and *olive oil* is the staple product of the island of Crete ; the vine is grown and *wine* is made almost everywhere in a rough way ; *cotton* is an important product of the southern districts and of Crete. The forests give abundant timber, and are the haunts of the bear and wolf. The riches of the people are chiefly in their *cattle* ; the *horse* is carefully reared, but is inferior to the Arabian ; *sheep* give clothing for all the people, the wool of Macedonia and Thrace being specially valued. Though iron, copper, lead, and salt are present, scarcely any mining is carried on.

5. Turkey cannot be said to be without manufactures, though these are of no great extent or importance. Wool is woven into rough cloth all over the land, and the Turkish carpets are famous ; ropes for the Turkish ships are made from native hemp ; silk-weaving flourishes in Constantinople and Salonica ; guns are made and cannon founded in the Bosphorus suburbs of the capital. The trades of saddlers, swordsmiths, barbers, and bathmen are restricted to Turks.

6. Roads and communication of all kinds are exceedingly deficient in Turkey, so that the difficult transport of goods is maintained chiefly by pack animals ; and riding Tatars or couriers maintain a system of posts. It is only since 1865 that any railways have been made in Turkey. There are now (1906) 1240 miles of railroad in operation, the chief lines being those from Constantinople through Adrianople and Philippopolis and the upper valley of the Maritza to Nish (in Servia) ; where it joins the line connecting Salonica with Uskub at the base of the Shar Dagħ and Belgrad and the railway system of Central Europe.

7. *Constantinople*, the capital (1,106,000), the ancient Byzantium (Stambul of the Turks), takes its name from the Emperor Constantine, who made it the capital of the Roman Empire in the fourth century. Secure and enchanting in position, commanding the shores of Europe and Asia, and the traffic of two seas, its natural facilities for trade raised it to its great eminence in the East.

The narrow arm of the Bosphorus, the *Golden Horn*, bordering the promontory on which the city proper, terminating in the serai or palace-enclosure, is built, affords a safe and commodious harbour for the largest vessels, and was visited in 1905 by 16,300 ships of 15,000,000 tons. Across this, bridges lead to the suburbs of *Pera* and *Galata*, the European or Frankish quarter, with the palaces of the foreign ambassadors ; beyond



which, along the Bosphorus, the suburb after suburb to *Buyukdere*, where the fortifications begin which guard the outlet of the strait to the Black Sea.

*Salonica* or *Saloniki*, at the head of its gulf in the *Ægean*, is, after *Constantinople*, the most frequented port of Turkey, sending out grain and wool, silk and tobacco. *Adrianople*<sup>1</sup> (pop. 81,000) is the depôt and trading-place of the broad valley of Thrace. The railway north-west from *Salonica* leads to *Uskub*, at the south-east base of the *Shar Dag*. *Prisrendi* or *Prizren*, at the north west base of that range in Albania, is one of the richest and busiest towns of European Turkey; north of it is *Prishtina*, the most important town of old Serbia or Dardania. In Epirus, near the borders of Greece, *Ionina* is the chief place.

8. The island of *Crete* (3320 square miles) might be compared in length to the distance from London to York. Several groups of high mountains rise along its length, culminating in the central *Mount Ida*. Its climate is a very pleasant one; olive woods cover many of the slopes, and vines and southern fruits are abundant. Its staple product is olive oil. The language of both Christians and Moslems in the island is modern Greek.

*Megalo Kastron*, or *Candia*, on the north coast, a fortified town founded by the Saracens, is the largest place. *Canea*, near the western extremity, also on the north coast, is the best port of the island. A little east of it is the bay of *Suda*, in which the Turkish Government held a Mediterranean naval station and arsenal till the year 1898.

## 6.—EUROPEAN RUSSIA.

1. We have already come upon *Slavonic* peoples living within the political limits of the German Empire, in greater numbers within the Austro-Hungarian monarchy, as subjects of the Turks in the north-west of the Balkan peninsula, and under independent princes of their own race in the recently freed State of Serbia and in Montenegro. In Russia alone, however, have the Slavonic peoples raised themselves to the position of a great European power, incorporating other nationalities with their own.

2. **Extent and Configuration.** It may give some idea of the enormous extent of the territory of European Russia (over 2 million square miles) if it is remembered that it covers a space which is more than equivalent to the united extent of all the other states of Europe that we have been describing. If we measure its vast area by that of England, we find that it is nearly 40 times greater.

From the shores of the Arctic Sea on the north to those of the Black Sea on the south the distance is 1700 miles. From the western border where Russia touches upon Scandinavia, the Baltic, Germany, Austria, and Rumania, to the natural frontier of the Ural belt on the east, the great plain has a width of about 1400 miles, or six times the distance between London and Newcastle. Vast as this territory is, it forms little more than a fourth of the area of the huge Empire commanded by Russia in Europe and Asia.

3. The general features and climate of this vast region, which occupies the

<sup>1</sup> Founded by the emperor Hadrian

body of Europe as the other states do its peninsular members, have already been noticed in the general description of the continent (pp. 155-167). It may suffice to recall here the general lowness of the country. Apart from the Caucasus, the Urals, and the Crimea, the only districts rising above 1000 feet are the Valdai hills (1150) at head of the Volga, the Timan range (over 3000) in the Pechora basin, several heights in Russian Lapland (over 1500), and some in Ukraine (over 1000). The main divisions of its landscape are the treeless northern *tundras*, frozen in winter, grassy in summer; the rock and lake plateau of Finland; the immense central forest region, the cultivated parts of which supply Europe with grain; and the treeless *steppes*, which lie across the south of the plain from the saline borders of the northern Caspian towards Romania on the west. While recalling also the magnificent system of natural waterways that ramifies over the huge plain (Volga, Dnieper, etc.), it is important to remember the disadvantage which Russian commerce suffers, in comparison with that of peninsular Europe, in having its seas on every side—the Arctic, the Baltic, the Black Sea coasts and those of the Caspian—closed by ice, for a longer or shorter period, during its rigorous continental winter.

4. **People.**—The enormous extent of Russia is more thinly peopled than almost any other part of Europe; on an average it has only about 58 people to a square mile of surface. England in comparison is more than nine times as well peopled; France more than three times. About four-fifths of the whole number of inhabitants (in 1897, 107 millions, including Poland) are of Slavonic race.

The dominant Russian division of the Slav peoples appears in three main sections: the *Great Russians* (52 millions) of the centre and north of the country; the *Little* or *Malo Russians* (24 millions) (also called Ruthens, or Russniaks, or Red Russians) of the Ukraine<sup>1</sup> on the south-west, to whom belong the Cossacks or Kazaks (= armed horsemen) of the lower Don region in the south; and the *White Russians* (5 millions) in the western provinces. West of the last named, in the basin of the Vistula, live the *Poles* (9 millions), and on the borders of Romania, in the south-west, a small proportion of Bulgarians. Allied in race to the Slavonic peoples are the blue-eyed and fair-skinned *Lithuanians* (Litvani), with the kindred *Letts* and *Shmudes* (Samogitians) beside them, who are mixed with Finnish blood (2 millions).

Most important in point of numbers among the non-Slav races included in the political division of European Russia are the fair-haired *Finnish peoples*<sup>2</sup> (over 3½ millions), who occur in a western, or Baltic, and an eastern division; the former includes the Ests, Chudes, and Livs of the Baltic provinces, the Karelians, *Suomi*, and *Quenes* of Finland, and the Lapps (who call themselves Sahmelads) farther north; the latter, the Siryans, Permyaks, and Votyaks towards the Ural, and the Cheremis and Mordvins of the middle Volga basin.

Scarcely less numerous than the Finns are the peoples of *Turkish* origin within Russia. To these belong the Tatars of Kazan; the Nogai Tatars of the Crimea in the south, and the Kirgiz on the Caspian. The Bashkirs, Chuvash, and others, in the Ural and Volga, are tatarised Finns. The *Kalmucks* may be taken as the purest type of the Mongols; they are short, swarthy, broad-shouldered horsemen, black-haired and black-eyed, the eyes slanting down

<sup>1</sup> *Ukraine* (Slav., a frontier country or march), a name first given by the Poles to the frontier country towards the Tatars, afterwards to the fertile regions on both sides of the middle Dnieper.

<sup>2</sup> The name *Finn* is of foreign origin. The people call themselves *Suomelaiset* = lake or fen people, in reference to their lake-studded country.

towards the flat nose. In the tundra region of the Arctic shores dwell the dwarfed *Samoyed* pagans, the original people of all the northern Asiatic plain, now driven to the borders of the icy sea, living by hunting and by their reindeer herds. *Jews* (in 1906 five millions) are most numerous in Poland and in the south-west, but have been much reduced by recent persecutions ; amongst foreigners the most prominent place is held by the *Germans* (over a million) of the Baltic provinces, and by the *Swedes* of Finland.

**5. Religion.**—Nearly 93 per cent of the people of Russia are *Christians*, and of these by far the larger proportion belong to the *Russo-Greek Church*, the established one of the State, which in the sixteenth century replaced the Byzantine by a national Patriarch whose office was suppressed by Peter the Great. In doctrine it is still Orthodox Greek, and differs from the Church of Rome mainly in denying the spiritual supremacy of the Pope.

The Emperor is the defender of the Church, and executes the judgments of its Synod, which takes the place of the former Patriarch. No member of the Russo-Greek Church may renounce his creed, on pain of detention for life in a convent. Among the minor religious bodies in Russia, the *Roman Catholics*, who have their greatest number of adherents in Poland, come first ; the *Jewish* traders of Poland and the south-western provinces, who are not permitted to settle in Russia proper, next in numbers ; then the *Protestants*, who are found chiefly in the Baltic provinces nearest to Germany ; *Armenians*, in the south. Followers of the rites of *Shamanism*, the ancient belief of the north Asiatic tribes, sacrificing animals to propitiate evil demons, and of *Lamaism*, the corrupt Buddhism of Tibet, occur in smaller numbers along the Asiatic border. These are the broad religious divisions of the country ; but it is not unusual to find towns which are as diversified in the religion of their inhabitants as in the languages spoken in them. Astrakhan, for example, has Greek, Roman Catholic, Protestant, and Armenian churches, many Mohammedan mosques, and a Lama temple. On Fridays the Tatars go to mosque ; on Saturday the black silk kaftans of the Jews appear ; on Sunday the Greek “kolakolniks” or belfries ring out.

**6. Education.**—From the close of the sixteenth century onward till 1861, the greater portion of the inhabitants of Russia were *serfs*, belonging either to the crown or to private individuals. By imperial decree in that year, coming into force in 1863, serfdom was abolished. Under these circumstances it is not surprising that the masses of the people in Russia are without education. That progress is being made in this direction is shown by the fact that in 1904 nearly 91,000 schools were open, with 209,000 teachers and 5,345,000 pupils, while the nine universities were attended by over 19,000 students.

Finland is in advance of all other parts of the empire in respect of education ; it possesses a separate system ; but the rest of European Russia is now divided into educational districts, which correspond to the seats of the Russian universities at *Moscow* (the oldest, 1755), at *Dorpat*, and *St. Petersburg*, in the Baltic provinces ; at *Vilna* and *Warsaw* in the west ; at *Kief*, *Kharkof*, and *Odessa*, in the south-west ; and at *Kazan* in the east.

7. Both Russian and Polish are members of the Slavonic linguistic family, while Finnish belongs to the Ural-Altaic connection.

8. **Government.**—Since 1905, when the *Duma* was created, Russia must be called a constitutional hereditary monarchy, although the executive and judicial functions are still centred in the Tsar, who continues to bear the title of Autocrat. No law, however, takes effect without the sanction of the Duma, whose members are returned for five years by all the provinces and twenty-eight of the largest towns. In 1906 both the Duma and the *Council of the Empire*, or Upper House, were reorganised, and no bill can now be submitted for the Tsar's sanction until it has passed both chambers. Half of the members of Council, who sit for nine years, are nominated by the Tsar, the rest by the provincial Zemstvos, the Holy Synod, the Universities, and other corporations. The administration, however, is still carried on by the four great boards or councils, with separate functions. These are—the reorganised *Council of the Empire*, now mainly legislative; the *Directing Senate*, or High Court of Justice; the *Holy Synod*, concerned with religion; and the *Council of Ministers*, most important, since its reorganisation in 1905, comprises all the ministers of war, navy, finance, foreign affairs, etc. In 1864 Poland lost its constitution; and that of Finland, as reformed in 1906, consists of a single chamber, the members of which are elected by all adults of both sexes, but controlled by the Grand Duke, *i.e.* the Tsar.

*Moscow*, the old central capital (1,092,000 in 1905), is now outstripped by *St. Petersburg* on the Neva (1,430,000), defended by the island fortress of *Kronstadt*.

9. **Political Divisions.**—The 65 administrative departments are distributed amongst the great territorial divisions as under:—

*Great Russia* (Muscovy)—All the central and northern regions to the Arctic shores. Chief towns—Moscow, Tula.

*Little Russia*, or the Ukraine—In the south-west. Chief town—Kief (Kiyef).

*Eastern Russia.* Chief towns—Astrakhan, Kazan, Samara, Saratof.

*South Russia*—Along the Black Sea. Chief towns—Odessa, Nikolayef, Kishenef.

*Western Russia*—Including Volhynia, Podolia, and other portions of the former kingdom of Poland. Chief town—Vilna.

*The Baltic Provinces*—The coast-lands of the Gulfs of Finland and Riga. Chief towns—St. Petersburg, Revel, Riga.

*The Grand-Duchy of Finland*—In the north-west, next Scandinavia. Chief towns—Viborg, Helsingfors, Abo.

*Poland*—In the west, next Germany. Chief town—Warsaw.

10. **Products and Industries.**—Excepting along the Tundra belt on the Arctic coasts, in Finland, and in the saline Steppes of the south-east, the cultivation of *grain* extends all over the great Russian plains.

Rye and barley, oats and flax, are the chief crops in the north; wheat and vines, hemp and tobacco, the products of the centre and the south. The

south central governments, extending from the Upper Oka to the Ukraine on the Dnieper, may be regarded as the granary of Russia, for they produce a third of all its corn supply. Russia is thus most important of all as a grain-producing country : its *forests* extend over about 40 per cent of the surface—pine, and fir, and birch in the north ; oak and elm and lime in the centre and south ; and their *timber* is sent down the Niemen and Vistula to the Baltic, and to Archangel in the White Sea, in enormous quantities for the supply of western Europe. In Russia itself the larger proportion of the houses are built of wood. The Steppes of the south are the great *pastoral lands* of Russia, which possess more than 45 millions of *sheep*, about 25 per cent yielding fine wool, 25 millions of *cattle*, and 20 millions of *horses*. Russian leather is famous. *Swine* are also kept in very large numbers all over the land : the export of bristles and brushes from Russia is very large. *Reindeer* form the wealth of the Lapps and Samoyeds in the north ; *camels* of the Tatars in the south-eastern Steppes. Hunting the bear, wolf, fox, and deer, and trapping the sable in the forests for their skins, give employment to many : the Caspian, as well as the Sea of Azof, the Black Sea, and the great rivers, are rich in *fish*—tunny, sturgeon, salmon, anchovy. Most *caviare* is made at Astrakhan on the Caspian. The great mining region of European Russia is the Ural belt, which yields a greater profusion of metals—gold, silver, copper, iron, lead, and platinum—than any other part of Europe. *Coal* is mined in the basin of the Donetz, a tributary of the lower Don in the south, in the Vistula basin in Poland, round Moscow, and in the Ural, but the yield is insignificant in comparison with that of Britain or Belgium. The lakes round the north of the Caspian depression (Lake Elton especially) yield *salt* in great quantity.

11. **Manufactures.**—Agricultural and pastoral industries employ about 76 per cent of the inhabitants of Russia ; manufacture, only about 15 per cent ; and almost all the workers are peasants, who turn to these occupations while the long winter holds the land.

Cotton, silk, and other textiles are woven chiefly in *St. Petersburg*, *Moscow*, and *Poland*. Flax-spinning and the manufacture of rough linen and hemp, and especially of sailcloth and ropes, is important and widespread, not only in the seaports, but in several of the inland towns. Most important of all the metal industries are the *ironworks* of Perm in the Ural region, of *Petersburg*, and of *Poland*. The imperial cannon-foundry is at *Petrozavodsk*, on the west shore of Lake Onega.

12. **Trade.**—Towards western Europe Russia sends out raw products, receiving back manufactured goods ; towards Asia its relations are exactly reversed. The great navigable rivers facilitate traffic to the seaports in summer ; in winter all the coasts are closed ; but just at that time the snow covering the land renders the transport of goods over it in sledges an easy matter, so that inland communications are busiest at this season.

The main highways are well maintained, and since the first little railway was finished at *Petersburg* in 1838, 32,740 miles of iron way had been extended over European Russia in 1907. Trade with Europe passes mainly through the ports of the Baltic—*St. Petersburg*, *Kronstadt*, *Riga* (282,000), and *Revel* ; of the Black Sea, in the south—*Odessa*.

(450,000), *Taganrog* (the emporium of the trade of the Don), *Rostof*, and *Berdiansk*; and through *Archangel*, on the White Sea in the north; but also to a large extent across the western land frontier through Germany and Austria, mainly by two great highways of commerce which unite Petersburg and Moscow with *Warsaw* (756,500). The great eastern highway to Siberia, often crowded with endless caravans, passes from Moscow, through *Kazan* (144,000) on the Volga, across the Ural at the fortified mining town of *Yekaterinburg*: the chief south-eastern routes cross the Volga at *Samara* (90,000) and *Saratof* (137,000), to pass by *Orenburg* to southern Asia. Through *Astrakhan* and by the Caspian, trade with Persia is maintained.

13. Within the country exchanges are effected at great annual *fairs*, each of which draws to it a busy concourse from all sides.

The largest of these, the greatest fair in the world, is held at *Nishni-Novgorod*, at the confluence of the Volga and the Oka, nominally from the 15th of July till the 15th of August, though its vast business cannot be restricted within these limits. Merchants (Persians, Hindus, Chinese), strangers, to the number of about 200,000, come from all parts of the world to this fair, to which vast quantities of goods of every kind are brought—tea, silks, skins and furs, prints, woollens, etc. The fair of *Irbitz*, beyond *Yekaterinburg*, on the Asiatic side of the Ural in the government of Perm, for Siberian produce chiefly, held in February and March, is the next in importance. The great wool fair and horse market held at *Kharkof* (174,000), in the Ukraine, stands next; about 80,000 sledges come over the snow to this winter fair. *Kishenef* (126,000), near the Dniester, in Bessarabia, nearest to the Romanian plain (chiefly Jewish), is another great trading town of the Steppe region, owning immense herds, and dealing largely in wheat and tallow.

14. European Russia has nineteen *fortresses* of the first rank, its great arsenals being those of *Petersburg*, and its guarding fortress of the island of *Kronstadt*; of *Kief* (319,000), on the Dnieper, in the Ukraine; and *Nikolayef*, the strongly fortified naval port of Russia on the Black Sea, at the mouth of the Bug, not far from the great grain port of Odessa. The harbour of *Sevastopol*, in the south of the Crimea, was formerly the great Russian fortress and naval station in the Black Sea; but it was destroyed by the British and French in the memorable siege of 1854-55, and its military works have only partially been restored.

For areas and present estimated populations of European Russia and of the Empire, see note, p. 277.



## ASIA—GENERAL.

---

1. ASIA,<sup>1</sup> the main mass of the great continent of the old world (the East, the Levant, the Oriental or morning land, in contrast to the Occidental or evening land of Europe in the west), is of surpassing interest as the cradle of the human race, and of all religion, wisdom, and civilisation. Its enormous area (16,780,000 square miles) spreads out over nearly four times the extent of the great western promontory of Europe, and forms a third of all the land of the earth's surface.

Between *Cape Romania*, the terminal point of the Malay peninsula, which runs south into the warm Indian Ocean, and *Cape Chelyuskin*, which juts into the ice-covered Arctic Sea in the far north, there lies an overland journey of 5300 miles; and from the narrow water-line of the *Suez Canal*, joining the Red Sea to the Mediterranean, and separating Asia from Africa, to where *East Cape*, only 36 miles distant from the American shores, runs out to form Bering Strait, and to divide the great Pacific Ocean from the Arctic Sea, one might travel by land for 6700 miles, or for more than a quarter of the distance round the globe.

2. Whilst the low-lying northern side of Asia next the Arctic Sea is comparatively even in outline, the southern and eastern coasts, towards the Indian Ocean and the Pacific, correspond remarkably to the branching form of Europe.

Here, as there, three well-marked southern peninsulas appear—those of Arabia, of Hindustan, and Farther India: here, also, the amount of dismemberment increases towards the east. Arabia, like Spain, is most compact, and has the fewest islands round its shores. Ceylon recalls Sicily, and Farther India, like Greece, is the most broken of the three, with Malacca for its Peloponessus, and the Great East Indian Archipelago for its Cyclades and Sporades, with directions reversed: on the eastern front Kamtchatka, enclosing the Sea of Okhotsk, resembles the larger Scandinavian peninsula, with the smaller Baltic; Japan, with its enclosed waters, the British Isles with their North Sea. But the East and Yellow Seas of China, within the Korea, and the South China Sea, enclosed by the great islands of the archipelago, have no parallel on the European side.

3. **Lowlands.**—Asia is essentially the continent of great

<sup>1</sup> Carl Ritter believes that the name Asia was extended to the continent from that of a people living on the north side of the Caucasus, whom Ptolemy calls the *Asaei*. Others derive it from a Hebrew or Assyrian root which signifies the "East, or the rising sun."

mountains and table-lands. It is only in the north-west that lowlands spread out very extensively. There the *Turanian and Siberian lowland*, separated from the plains of Europe only by the narrow belt of the Ural, extends from the shore of the Caspian away north to merge into the ice-covering of the Arctic Sea. On the west the plain has an enormous width, but farther east the mountain region, approaching nearer the icy sea, narrows the lowland till it becomes a comparatively small coast plain, sending branches southward along the Lena and the other great rivers.

The surface of the great plain of northern Asia also exhibits widely different landscapes. Farthest on the south-west, from the Caspian to Bokhara or Turkestan, where the Sea of Aral and Lake Balkash appear as the relics of a great Mediterranean, large tracts of the plain are occupied by deserts of drift sand, such as the *Turkoman Desert* and the *sand-waste of Kizil Kum*, between the Amu and the Syr Daria; but where the rivers cross these, and whenever their waters can be drawn off for irrigation, the dreary expanse of the desert is relieved by the brilliant green of rich vegetation, as in the gardens round the cities of Samarkand, or of Khiva, which seem in contrast like a terrestrial Paradise. About the parallels of  $48^{\circ}$  to  $50^{\circ}$  N. lat., the deserts give place gradually to the region of grassy steppes, where rain is less scanty. The southern part of this region of the Asiatic plain is known as the *Kirghiz Steppe*, occupied by the little, middle, and great hordes of the nomadic Kirghiz, whose wealth is in their flocks of broad-tailed sheep and their camel droves. Herds of antelopes also gallop over these plains. Northward the *Steppe of Ishim*, on both sides of that tributary of the Ob, is also a great pastoral country of Western Siberia; and the *Steppe of Barabinsk*, between the Irtysh and Ob, with its endless lakes, yields salt for the whole region. In the hot summer, clouds of midges hover over the grazing herds, but winter brings a covering of hard frozen snow, over which the sledge caravans pass on their way to the winter fairs. Gradually, in about  $55^{\circ}$  N., the steppe begins to be covered with trees, and we enter the *forest zone*, with its woods of pine, and fir, and birch, sheltering innumerable squirrels, martens, and sables, bears, foxes, and reindeer. Here the Russian and Samoyed hunters carry on their winter fur campaign. Approaching the Arctic circle the trees thin out, and give place at last to the bare swampy levels of the *tundra region*, over which winter holds sway during the greater part of the year. In the tundras the nomadic Samoyed hunts and fishes, and hither, in the short summer, the reindeer come to crop the mosses, the only vegetation that can ripen in the rigorous climate. So level are the tundras, that along the coast in winter it would be difficult to tell where land ceased, and the ice-covering of the Arctic Sea began, were it not for the line of drift timber marking the shore. Here, also, the polar bear and Arctic fox roam about, and the frozen soil is like a great graveyard of the mammoth, whose curving tusks are regularly sought for by the Siberian ivory hunters.

The remaining lowlands of Asia occur isolated along the south and eastern borders of the continent. Farthest west is the great *plain of Mesopotamia*, once the seat of high civilisation, irrigated from the Euphrates and Tigris by innumerable canals, and cultivated like a great garden, so as to support a large population round the cities of Nineveh and Babylon, but now appearing as a great dry steppe, green with vegetation only in the wet season. Over it the hot winds are ever extending the sands of the Arabian desert, and nomadic herdsmen and plundering Beduins have taken the place of busy citizens.

The next extensive plain we reach is that of Hindustan, between the Himalaya edge of the great Asiatic table-land and the Deccan plateau of Southern India. In this there are two widely different regions. Immediately east of the Indus, the plain which reaches from the Arabian Sea to the parallel of  $31^{\circ}$  N. is almost entirely occupied by the scantily inhabited *Indian desert*, with its strange succession of sandy ridges without a single stone, sometimes rising as high as 200 feet above the valleys between them, called the "*Thar*," and the "*Put*," a region of hard level soil abruptly bordering on the former. The eastern half of the Indian plain, in the basin of the Ganges, may be compared to its miniature representative, the plain of Lombardy in Southern Europe, for the broad alluvial lowland of the Ganges is at once the most fertile, the most cultivated, and most densely peopled region of India. The delta mouths of the Ganges, however, like those of the Po, have their unhealthy swamps, the muddy mangrove covered "*Sundarbans*."

Lastly, on the eastern side of the continent, we come to the wide alluvial plain of China, extending from the great wall on the north down to the lower Yang-tse river, every corner of which is irrigated and cultivated to support the enormous population of nearly two hundred millions of human beings that crowd its surface.

**4. Highlands.**—The great mass of the Asiatic highlands extends through the whole continent, from the Mediterranean on the south west round to Bering Strait on the north-east. Midway nearly, the plains of north-western India and of Southern Turkestan approaching one another, the highland is compressed to its narrowest, so that two unequal portions of it, an eastern and a western, are only united by the isthmus-like range of the *Hindu-Kush*, from the opposite sides of which tributaries flow to the Indus and to the Oxus.

The mass which rises east of the Hindu Kush is by far the grander. Its southern border is marked by the giant walls of the *Himalaya*, which reach higher above the sea-level than any other mountains on the globe, and have the highest peak of all, Mount Everest, 29,002 feet. South-eastward it runs out into the fan-like ranges which form Farther India; eastward it gives off the *Nan-ling* and *Pe-ling* mountains of China; north-eastward its edge is defined by the *Kinghan Mountains*, and, continuing their direction, the *Pablonoi* and *Stanovoi* mountains extend away to Bering Strait. Towards the Siberian lowlands its limits are formed by the mountains which enclose Lake Baikal, by the *Sayan Mountains*, the *Altai*, and the *Tarbagatai* and *Altan* ranges farther west, and at the head of the Oxus the circuit is completed by the great plateau land of the *Pamir Steppe*, called by the Persians "*Bam-i-dunia*," the roof of the world. Within the limits of this huge division of the Asiatic highland three regions are broadly distinguished. There are (1), the great *table-land of Tibet*, at an average elevation of about 15,000 feet, marked out between the Himalaya ranges, which support it on the south, and the Karakoram and Kuenlun, which form a similar if not so elevated buttress to the plateau, on its northern or inner side. (2) The *basin of the Turan river* in Eastern Turkestan, and the central *Gobi region* of Mongolia, at an average height of 3000 to 4000 feet above the sea. The western part of this second region is very clearly defined in Eastern Turkestan, where the Kuenlun on the south, and the *Thian Shan* or *Celestial Mountains* descending into it on the north, are united by the *Pamir plateau* on the west, to form a great bay of mountains round Kashgar and Yarkand. (3) The third region embraces the series of higher plateaus which rise towards the northern side of the mass,

between the inner slope of the Thian Shan, and the outer one of the Altai and other ranges which skirt the Siberian border of the highland.

5. The division of the highland which rises west of the Hindu-Kush isthmus opens out first into the broad *plateau lands of Afghanistan and Persia*, the outer edges of which also are very clearly defined. On the northern side the ranges continuing the Hindu-Kush along the south of the Turkoman desert run west to join the *Elburz range* (Mount Demavend, 18,464 ft.), which falls abruptly to the southern coast of the Caspian. Towards the Indian plain the *Sulaiman range* forms the edge of the plateau, and towards the Indian Ocean, the Persian Gulf, and the plain of Mesopotamia, the parallel chains of South Western Persia, the *Kohrud*, the *Mountains of Fars and of Kurdistan*,<sup>1</sup> give a distinct and well-marked limit. Where the northern and southern border ranges of the Persian highland approach one another west of the Southern Caspian, they form the *mountain land of Armenia*, with Ararat (16,916 ft.) for its central point. Farther west the highland again opens out in the broad plateau of Asia Minor, which has the *Taurus ranges* for its southern buttress. From the heights of Western Kurdistan also a line of height runs southward along the coasts of Syria to form the *Lebanon*; and the continuations of its double chain are the *plateaus of Judæa and of Moab* east and west of the remarkable fissure of the Jordan and the Dead Sea, the deepest hollow of the earth's surface.

6. Besides the main mass of the Asiatic highland in its two great divisions above sketched, several isolated highlands may be noticed. One of these nearly fills the desert land of Arabia, rising at once from the Red Sea coasts and descending gradually towards the Mesopotamian plain. The highest part of this plateau is in that part of its edge which faces the Gulf of Oman, where the summit of *Jebel Akhdar*, the "green mountain," is not far short of 10,000 feet in height. Another isolated highland is that of the *Deccan* in Southern India, marked out between the Western and Eastern Ghats or "passes," by which it is ascended from the Arabian sea-coast, or from that of the Bay of Bengal; and by the *Vindhya Mountains* along its northern edge, facing the plain of the Ganges. A third important detached mass is that of the *Sikhota Alin* or Tatar Mountains, and their southern prolongation, the *Shan Alin*, and the high mountains which give its form to the peninsula of Korea. The valleys of the Amur and of the Liao-ho separate this mountain region almost completely from the main mass of the Asiatic heights.

7. Lastly, we have to notice the chain of volcanic heights which forms so many remarkable loops along the eastern or Pacific front of the continent from Kamtchatka (Klyutchev vol., 15,760 ft.); through the Kurile Islands to Japan (Fusi no Yama vol., 12,300 ft.); thence through the Liu-Kiu Islands to Formosa (Mount Morrison, 10,800 ft.); and from that through the Philippines to Borneo (Kini-Balu, 13,698 feet), Sumatra, and Java, which last has a greater number of volcanic cones than are to be found on any land of similar extent on the earth.

8. To obtain a general idea of the character of the great highland mass of Central Asia, we may suppose ourselves to be travelling from the plains of India northward to those of Siberia. From the cultivated plain of the Ganges we should reach first the dreaded forest belt of the "Terai" along the base of the mountains. Having passed its swamps, leaving the tropical vegetation of the lower slopes of the Himalaya, we should find ourselves, at a height of 4000 or 5000 feet, in forests of oaks, walnuts, and chestnuts, like those of Southern Europe. Higher up the face of the Himalaya, from 8000 to 10,000 feet, this forest is replaced by rhododendrons, and above the latter

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes collectively called by the old Greek name of *Zagros*.

height to 12,000 feet by pine trees. Above 15,000 feet vegetation becomes scanty, though plants have been gathered up to 19,000 feet above the sea. Then follows the snowy region, which gives its name the "abode of snow"<sup>1</sup> to this highest range in the world, and which sends down great glaciers, in comparison with which those of the Alps are insignificant. The passes, always difficult, lead through the snowy zone, the lowest of them being as high as the most elevated of the Alpine passes of Europe. Having crossed the crest of the snowy range, we would enter the bare region of Tibet, the highest plateau land of the world, where the herdsman tends his flocks of long-haired shawl-wool goats, his sheep and Yak oxen, and where grain can only be cultivated in the deeper valleys. This is also the country of the wild horse and of the great wild sheep or Argali. Descending the northern edge of the Kuenlun from the Tibetan plateau into the central basin of the Tarim, we should reach the Takla Makan desert, which is a continuation of the sandy Gobi, with bordering steppe land next the bases of the mountains on each side. Ascending the opposite range of the Thian Shan, and entering Zungaria, we should find ourselves again in a more favoured Alpine region, with cultivable valleys and woods reaching up to the snow limit, and grassy Alps to which the Kirghiz resort for summer pastures. Lastly, descending to the lowland, we should enter the pine forests of the Siberian plain.

**9. Hydrography.**—The rivers of Asia flow outward from the edges of the great highlands of the interior to the Indian Ocean, the Pacific, and the Arctic Seas; but within the borders of the great plateaus, and in the dry regions of the steppes and deserts, there is an immense area from which no rivers escape to the ocean.

Amongst the greatest Asiatic rivers are those flowing over the Siberian lowlands to the Arctic Sea. The *Ob*, 2700 miles in length, richest in fish of all the rivers of Siberia, affords a great summer thoroughfare for all western Siberia through its main channel and that of its tributary the *Irtish*. The latter gathers its head streams in the *Zaisan Lake*, 80 square miles in area, and 1350 feet above the sea, in a valley of the *Altai*. Its channel is twice flooded, first when the snows of the plains melt in May, and again in July when the mountains in the south send down their supplies, inundating the land; the plain then presents the appearance of a waste of waters, broken only by the tree-tops which rise above its surface. At its mouth it freezes in October, and the ice does not break up till May.

The *Yenisei* is a still larger river, ranked, by Russian geographers, after the *Mississippi*. Its head waters, or rather those of its main branch the *Angara*, collect in the great *Lake Baikal*,<sup>2</sup> 1550 feet above the sea, which is the greatest fresh lake in Asia, 300 miles in length (London to Edinburgh), regularly traversed in summer by steamboats, and from November till April by sledges over its ice covering. The *Selenga*, the main feeder of the *Baikal*, has an upper reservoir in the *Kos-gol*, in the mountains south-west of *Irkutsk*, also a great expanse, 70 miles long and 25 wide. Till quite recently the traffic on the *Yenisei* by summer steamer and winter sledge was confined to Siberian interchange alone. But since the *Kara Sea* and the *Yenisei* were shown by Capt. J. Wiggins to be navigable into the heart of Siberia (1887), this section of the north-east passage is becoming a great highway of traffic during the short summer season for the furs, hemp, flax, wheat, and other Siberian products.

The *Lena*, rising in the mountains near *Lake Baikal*, is the great artery of trade and communication in eastern Siberia; it begins to be a navigable river

<sup>1</sup> Sanskrit, *Hima*, snow, *ulaga*, abode

<sup>2</sup> Turkish, *Bai-kul* = Rich lake.



at no great distance from its source, and between Kirensk, its point of communication with Irkutsk, and Yakutsk at its great knee lower down, a considerable traffic is maintained. At Yakutsk it is frozen over for more than 200 days in the year (October to May).

10. Coming round to the Pacific slope, the first great river we meet with is the *Amur*, which the Tatars call "Karamuren," and the Manchus "Sakhalin-ula," both meaning "Black river," from its dark-brown colour, and the Chinese, "Che-lung-kiang," or river of the black dragon. Formed by the confluence of the *Shilka* and *Argun* at the northern extremity of the Kinghan range, and joined below by the *Sungari* from Manchuria, the Amur is a great river, destined to be of the utmost importance as the highway of Russian trade in eastern Siberia. It is navigable by steamers up to Chita on the Ingoda, a tributary of the Shilka, a distance of nearly 2500 miles by river.

The two great rivers of China, the Hoang-ho, or "Yellow river," and the Yang-tse-Kiang, the "son of the ocean," have their head streams near one another in the mountains of central Tibet, and after widely divergent courses tend to meet again near their mouths. The *Hoang-ho*, "the trouble of the sons of Hona," is a wayward and turbulent river, which has changed its lower course over the level plain of China no less than ten times within the period of historical record. Its last change, accompanied by great calamities through the bursting of its embankments and the burying of entire villages in mud, took place in 1887, when it broke through its southern banks and took a course to the Yellow Sea, in place of its old channel which reached the Gulf of Pe-chi-li, about 300 miles north of its most recent mouth. It is little used for navigation, Chinese vessels being unable to stem its current, and in its present condition it is unserviceable for steam traffic.

The *Yang-tse*, on the other hand, is the great commercial highway of China. It emerges from the grand mountain gorges of Tibet at a distance of about 1300 miles from its source, there making its way through narrow clefts with precipitous walls of rock, so narrow in some places that boats passing up or down keep to their own side of the stream to avoid collision. The Tsi-tan rapid at the mouth of the Metan gorge,<sup>1</sup> about 1200 miles from its mouth, marks the limit of its navigation for larger vessels; but the Chinese traders ascend it for fully 1000 miles farther, tracking or towing the boats up the perilous rapids by the united efforts of from fifty to two hundred men, who earn their living partly in this way, partly by pillaging the many wrecks that occur. The vast size and importance of the lower river may be estimated when it is remembered that ocean steamers, those which bring the freight of tea to England, can easily ascend to Hankow, 700 miles from the sea, to take in cargo there.

The *Song-ka*, or "Red River," the river of Tong-king, which rises in the Chinese province of Yun-nan, has recently been occupied by the French, who hope to utilise it as a highway of trade.

11. Still farther south, approaching the slope to the Indian Ocean, we come upon the *Me-Kong*, or Cambodia, the greatest river of Farther India, which also has its sources in the mountains of Yun-nan, and which thence flows south for 1700 miles through Siam and Cambodia to form its great delta of Lower Cochin-China, now held by the French. In 1866-68 a French expedition explored a large part of this great river, which in many places is narrowed by rocks and by sandbanks to such an extent as to make it improbable that it will ever become a great highway of trade.

The *Menam*, or "mother of waters," the central river of Siam, the river of the busy port of Bangkok, like another Nile, fertilises its banks by its annual overflow.

---

<sup>1</sup> In 31° N.



Coming round the Malay peninsula to the Indian Ocean, we first reach the *Salwin*, a fine river, the mouth and middle course of which are included in British Burma, and its neighbour river the *Irawadi*. The former of these has its head waters on the plateau of Tibet, and is navigable for 400 miles above its seaport of Maulmein to where it breaks by rapids through a mountain gorge: the latter, though shorter, can be ascended without difficulty for nearly 600 miles to a defile through which it passes above the town of Bamo.

Next we come to the twin rivers *Brahmaputra* and *Ganges*, with their huge delta at the head of the Gulf of Bengal. For a long time it was not known which of the rivers of south-eastern Asia received the waters of the *Sanpo*, the great river of the Tibetan plateau which flows eastward behind the ranges of the Himalaya, and on which vessels of considerable size pass and repass, at an elevation of 13,000 feet above the sea: there is now, however, no doubt that the Sanpo is the upper course of the Brahmaputra, and that it breaks through the Himalayan chain, turning south in about  $95^{\circ}$  E., where it has the name *Dihang*. Reaching the lowland of Assam it reverses its earlier direction, turning west and south-west to join its waters to those of the Ganges on the east of the delta. Though rapid, the lower Brahmaputra is navigable throughout Assam to where it takes the name of the Dihang in issuing from the mountains. The *Ganges* (Gangâ), the sacred river of the Hindus, rises in a snow-field of the southern face of the Himalaya, at an elevation of nearly 14,000 feet above the sea, rushing down as a torrent to the highest accessible point on its banks (10,300 feet), where the temple of Gangotri is built. To the Hindu a bath or a drink of the sacred water at this point has wonderful atoning virtues, and those who cannot themselves make the pilgrimage hither are supplied with flasks of the holy element bottled by the priests of Gangotri. At Hardwar, 1050 miles from the delta, the Ganges leaves the mountains, and, entering the great plain, becomes at once a navigable river. At Allahabad the *Jumna*, which has followed a parallel course from the mountains, adds its strength; thence, by Benares and Patna, it passes eastward to weave its many mouths with those of the Brahmaputra, and to wage a battle twice daily with the inflowing tide among the malarious islands of the Sundarbans. One of the westerly delta branches, the *Hugli*, on which Calcutta stands, is the most frequented highway to the sea.

The *Indus*, the great western river of India, has its source like the Brahmaputra high up in the dreary tableland of Tibet, and not far from the sacred *Mansarawar Lakes*, which lie between the heads of these two rivers at an elevation of 14,500 feet above the sea. Its course between the Himalaya and the Karakoram ranges is first north-west; like the Brahmaputra it then turns south to find its way by deep gorges to the Indian plain. At Attock, where it is still 1000 feet above sea-level, and 950 miles from the sea, it receives the *Kabul river*, of nearly equal volume, and this is the limit point of its navigation, though it cannot be ascended during the floods from May till September. Midway from Attock to the sea it is joined on the left by the *Panjnâd*, which brings to it the united waters of the *Jhelum*, *Chenab*, *Ravi*, *Bias*, and *Sutlej*, which make up the "five rivers" of north-western India that give its name to the country of the Panjab.<sup>1</sup>

From its shifting channels and sandbanks, and the arid nature of the country through which it flows, the Indus is of less value as a highway of traffic than most other rivers of equal magnitude; and in winter or the season of low water only one of its numerous delta outlets is available for passage to the sea; yet the Indus Steam Flotilla Company keeps up regular communications between Kotri above the Delta and Multan in the Panjab.

<sup>1</sup> Persian. *panj*, five, *ab*, water or river.

The great rivers which embrace Mesopotamia, the *Euphrates*, and its twin brother the *Tigris*, are perhaps destined to play an important part in history again, as parts of a great highway to India ; the former, from its source near Mount Ararat in Armenia, flows first westward like the Indus through the mountain ranges, to turn south into the lowland, after having approached to within 100 miles of the Mediterranean. It is significant that just at this point (at Bir, 1150 miles from the sea) the river becomes navigable for light draught steamers and leads thence in a direct line to the head of the Persian Gulf. The *Tigris*, the "arrowy," springing within the great bend of the upper Euphrates, is a more rapid river, bringing down great quantities of mud ; joining the Euphrates about 120 miles from the head of the Gulf, it forms with it the deep tidal channel called the *Shat el Arab*, navigable for ships of 500 tons. Above the confluence the Euphrates is a lifeless stream ; but the Tigris, navigable for steamers to Bagdad, still floats down the curious *kelleks* or inflated goatskin craft, as in the time of Herodotus.

12. The landlocked *continental drainage area* embraces both the wide dry region of the lowland which surrounds the Caspian and the Sea of Aral, and the interior plateaus of both great divisions of the Asiatic highlands, Tibet, Turkestan, and Mongolia in the east, and Persia and Arabia west of the isthmus of the Hindu-Kush. To the lowland region belong the great residual lakes of a former Mediterranean, the Caspian, which we have already noticed in connection with Europe, the Aral, and Lake Balkash, with many smaller salt-pools.

The *Aral*, the "sea of islands" (25,870 square miles), is a wider and larger expanse than the Irish Sea, and we may compare a voyage across it in one of the Russian steamers which now navigate it to one from Liverpool to Dublin. But it is much shallower, and the gigantic reeds, 20 feet high, which surround its shores are ever gaining upon its receding and brackish waters, and forming new islands. Though it lies in the same latitude as southern France, it has ice a foot thick over it in winter. Unlike the Caspian, its level is 158 feet above that of the ocean. The rapid evaporation from its surface is compensated by its feeders, the *Syr Daria* (or Jaxartes) and the *Amu Daria* (Oxus), from the Thian Shan and the Pamir edges of the great central highland.

Both of these rivers, the largest of those in the continental drainage system of Asia, are now navigated by small Russian steamers, though both have a rapid flow.

The curving *Balkash Lake*, 310 miles long, receiving seven streams from the Ala Tau mountains which rise south of it, the chief of these being the *Ili*, is a still shallower expanse, the greatest depth found in it by the Russian explorers being only 70 feet, and its waters are bitterly salt. Though in the same latitude as the Aral, it has a more continental position, and it is also much higher above sea-level, 780 feet, so that it is frozen over from November till April. South of it, filling a high mountain valley of the Thian Shan and Alatau ranges, at a height of about 5000 feet above the sea, lies a remarkable expanse of brackish water called the *Issik-Kul* or "warm lake," 120 miles long from east to west, and more than ten times larger than the lake of Geneva. It is very deep, and, perhaps mainly on that account, never freezes ; it has, besides, another peculiarity, that of receiving occasionally the discharge of the *Chui* river, one of the many which terminate in the smaller salt-lakes of the lowland of Turkestan.

Within the continental drainage of the *highland* of Asia the most important river is the *Tarm*, which gathers its waters from the sides of the crescent of mountains that encircles Kashgar and Yarkand in high Eastern Turkestan. Many of its head streams are employed in irrigating the cultivated land round these cities, but the remainder escapes away eastward into the desert to keep up the supply of *Lake Lob*, a great marshy expanse at a level of about 2200 feet above the sea, which was re-discovered by a Russian explorer in January 1877.

13. On each side of the vast central desert, the mountains of Tibet and of north-western Mongolia form many isolated basins, each with its central lake fed by the mountain streams. One of the largest of these, not far from the sources of the Hoang-Ho and Yangtse, is the *Koko-nor* or "blue lake," 10,500 feet above the ocean, and about 200 miles in circumference. The *Tengri-Nor*, called the *Nome* or "sky lake," in the vicinity of Lhasa, is another of these large isolated basins.

14. Almost the only river of importance in the western highland region of interior drainage is the *Helmand*, which flows south-westward from the Hindu-Kush with varying volume, to fill the pools of the great expanse called the *Hamun Swamp* or *Seistan Lake* on the borders of eastern Persia. At ordinary seasons the *Hamun*, which reaches through a length of 70 miles, is for the most part dry and grass-covered, its edges being marked only by reed beds and clay cliffs. Lakes *Urmiah* and *Van* in the mountain region between Armenia and Kurdistan, west of the southern Caspian, are the largest lakes of the western division of the highland. The former, 85 miles long (Portsmouth to Cherbourg), has water of such intense salinity that no fish can live in it, and it lies at 4000 feet above the sea; the latter, Lake Van, 5120 feet in elevation, is of somewhat smaller dimensions, and is but slightly brackish. Saltiest of all salt lakes, perhaps, is that known as the *Tuz Gol*, "salt-lake," the centre of the interior drainage of the plateau of Asia Minor, 60 miles long; no fish can live in it; birds avoid it, for their wings if they bathe in it become covered with a stiff salt crust.

15 **Climate.**—Like Europe, Asia belongs for the most part to the temperate zone, only the southern promontories and islands reach into the tropical belt, only the broad northern border of the Siberian lowland extends into the Arctic region.

This position of the continent in latitude, together with the effect of its great highland barrier reaching across it from south-west to north-east, exposing all its northern slope to cold atmospheric currents from the polar region, and shutting it off from the warm winds of the south, brings about a broad triple division in its climates—

(1) That of Siberia from the icy sea to the base of the mountains;

(2) That of the Asiatic highlands;

(3) That of India and the southern promontories.

Besides their contrast in temperature, these three divisions of the continent are even more strongly distinguished in their supply of moisture. During summer, or while the vast area of the continent is beneath the more direct influence of the sun approaching the northern tropic, the winds are drawn towards the heated land

from all sides. Thus the peninsular region south-east of the mountain belt combines heat with an abundant rain supply, brought to it by the "*monsoon*" or seasonal wind from the Indian Ocean (S.W.), and from the Pacific (S.E.); so that Hindustan, Farther India, Southern China, and the islands which lie beyond, are characterised by luxuriant plant life. During summer, also, the winds are drawn in from the thawing Arctic Ocean on the north, from the Atlantic on the west, and the Pacific on the east, to the northern slopes of the continent, and bring the moisture supply which supports the vast forests of Siberia. The outer edges and slopes of the central mountain region thus intercept the rainfall which maintains the great rivers which flow from them north, east, and south, to the sea; but the plateau lands between these encircling heights are screened by them from the rain-bearing winds, and are consequently dry and bare.

Thus it is that all the inner plateaus of Asia, the vast region of Mongolia, of Eastern Turkestan, and Tibet, of Persia and Asia Minor on the west, present landscapes of bare steppes and sandy deserts, with their accompanying dry atmosphere, cloudless blue skies, and failing and treacherous periodical streams that end in salt-lakes or evaporate in the sands. Hence also their inhabitants, compelled to seek fresh pastures and watering-places with almost every change of season, appear as restless nomads: hence also their inclination, so frequently illustrated in the history of the continent, to quit their barren steppes at times, and sweep like a devastating flight of locusts over the settled nations of the south and west.

16. One very prominent feature of the climate of Asia, which depends on the vast extent of the continent,—one which is more pronounced here than in any other part of the world, just in proportion as the extent of land is greater,—is its *excessive* character. We have already noticed in speaking of the climate of Europe how the extremes of daily and yearly temperature grew wider and wider apart as we left the maritime climate of our islands and advanced eastward towards the Russian steppes. Here in Asia the same divergence continues to increase towards the central regions of the great continent. The Russian army advancing towards Khiva in the campaign of 1839-40 experienced vicissitudes of temperature from a heat of over 100° F., to a cold in which the thermometer sank to 45° below the zero point, and Khiva owed its safety then to the climate of its surrounding deserts. At Verkhoyansk, in Eastern Siberia, the culminating point of excessive climate in all the world is reached. The temperature there sinks to the lowest known point, many degrees below the average of the polar ocean to northward of it, and the soil is permanently frozen, as was proved by the sinking of a shaft, to a depth of 380 feet. From October on through the winter till April, frost holds sway both day and night, the *average* temperature of January being – 49° F. Two months later, the Lena is free from ice; the surface soil has thawed for three or four feet, and the warmth of the short summer is such that grain will ripen in the shallow stratum of soil above the frozen mass beneath, the mean temperature of July being 70° F., or higher than that of Paris. Here, then, at what may be called the pole of excessive climate, the year is divided into a long winter and a short summer, with rapid change-times between. Outward from this towards south and east the extremes decrease, till in India, and all the maritime regions of the south-east, the seasons are marked rather as the dry and the wet, accord-

ing to the direction of the monsoon wind, than by changes of temperature, and in the islands of the East Indies, about the equator, the minimum line of annual variation of temperature is reached. At Colombo, in Ceylon, for example, in contrast to Verkhoyansk, the average temperature of each month of the year remains very nearly the same, in January 80°, in July 81°.

17. Many parts of Southern Asia are unhealthy. Intermittent fevers are so common in the lower parts of India that mountain "sanitaria" have been established for Europeans who can thus enjoy a temperate climate: the "Sundarbans" of the Ganges delta are believed to be the very home of cholera: yellow fever imported from the West Indies has spread, especially in the Moluccas; the plague which, at different periods from the sixth till the seventeenth century, visited Western Europe, made its devastating march thither from China. Hence the strictest "quarantine" is maintained all along the many trade routes of the south of the continent from port to port.

18. **Products.**—To Central Asia we owe most of the European grains and tree fruits, oranges and lemons, peaches and apricots, the fig and olive, vines and nut trees, besides hemp and flax, the garden rose, and many other cultivated flowering plants. From India the banana has spread out to all parts of the tropical world, with rice and the sugar cane, indigo and several sorts of cotton; it is also the home of several palms, the coco and the pinang, which gives the areca or betel nut; it has the largest poppy fields yielding opium, giant bamboos, ebony, and teak the most durable of shipbuilding timbers.

China is the native country of the tea plant: the East India islands and the Malay peninsula of spices, cinnamon, black pepper, and cloves, and of the large tree yielding the milky juice that hardens into "gutta percha."

The mountain region of Central Asia is the native land of the horse and the ass, of the ox and buffalo, the sheep and goat, from which the domesticated varieties appear to have derived their origin. Both varieties of the camel, the Arabian and the Bactrian,<sup>1</sup> the single and the double humped, are Asiatic. The Yak ox, with its silky coat of long hair, is to the inhabitants of the highland of Tibet what the reindeer is to the tribes of the Siberian plain in the far north, almost their sole wealth and support. The elephant, of a different species from that of Africa, is a native of the tropical parts of Asia; the lion of Southern Asia is smaller than that of Africa: the tiger<sup>2</sup> ranges from Java and India north to Manchuria: bears are found in all parts, the white bear in the extreme north, and other formidable species in the more temperate parts, while those of the tropical region are harmless feeders on fruits and honey. Dogs are used by some of the Siberian tribes as sledge-drawers, others are fattened in China for food, but in all Mohammedan Asia the dog is an unclean animal, and prowls about as the scavenger of the towns and villages.

Tropical Asia abounds in monkeys, the largest being the "orang outan," the "wild man of the woods" of Malacca and the south-eastern islands. Some are tailed—others, such as the orang, are tailless; but none have prehensile tails like the American monkeys.

The domestic poultry of all parts of the world seems also to be derived from the numerous gallinaceous birds of Asia; the pheasant takes its name from the Phasis river (the modern Rion flowing to the Black Sea from the Caucasus), from the banks of which it was brought at an early period into Greece; the splendid peacock is a native of the East Indies, as the exquisite birds of paradise are almost exclusively of New Guinea.

<sup>1</sup> Bactria = modern Balkh.

<sup>2</sup> In India, according to official returns, from 15,000 to 20,000 people are lost by snake bites, or are the prey of wild animals, chiefly tigers, or of the crocodiles and gavials of the rivers, every year.



Siberia, the flora and fauna of which are almost limited to its fine woods and fur-bearing animals, makes up for this deficiency by its mineral treasures ; it is the great mining region of Asia, yielding gold, silver, and platinum, copper and lead, coal, and graphite better known as black lead ; India has diamonds and other precious stones ; China its fine porcelain clay or kaolin, besides vast coal-fields ; the Steppes round the Caspian region are rich in salt ; the steamers of the Caspian, in place of coal, now make use of the abundant naphtha or petroleum from the "fire fields" of Baku, to which Ghebr fire-worshippers of Persia formerly made pilgrimages ; the Dead Sea also occasionally casts up large masses of asphaltum or bitumen, whence its ancient name of *Lacus Asphaltites*.

**19. Peoples.**—In contrast to Europe, the greater part of which is occupied by one race, Asia is peopled by races belonging to five ethnographic groups—the *Aryan*<sup>1</sup> and the *Semitic* in the south-west, the *Malay* in the south-east, the *Mongolo-Tataric* of the central, northern, and eastern regions, and the *Negritos* of Malaysia.

The Mongolian peoples may be divided linguistically into two branches, according to whether their speech is monosyllabic or agglutinating. To the former belong the cultivated *Chinese* ; the *Tibetans* with the *Burmese* ; and most of the peoples of Farther India.

The remaining Mongolians include—1. The *Japanese* and *Koreans*. 2. The *Mongols* proper, including the Khalkas of Mongolia, the Buryats on Lake Baikal, and the Eleut or Kalmucks in Zungaria and the Altai. 3. The *Tunguses* and *Manchu*, who occupy Manchuria, the Amur basin and borders of the Sea of Okhotsk, and who also reach away north to the Arctic Sea. 4. The *Turks* or *Tatars*, including the Kirghiz of south-western Siberia, the Usbeks and other tribes of Turkestan, the Turkomans towards the Caspian, the Osmanli, and the isolated Yakuts of the Lena basin. 5. The *Finns*, represented by the Samoyeds and Ostyaks in the west, and by the Soyot on the upper Yenisei. 6. The small tribes of north-eastern Siberia, including the Koryaks, Kamtchadales, and Chukchi, which last form the connecting link with the Eskimo of America.

The *Ainu* of Yezo and Sakhalin, many of the Chinese and Indo-Chinese aborigines, and the Khmer or Cambodians are not of Mongol but of Caucasian stock.

**20.** In very early times the whole of the great southern promontory of India was inhabited by dark-coloured tribes, now grouped as *Kolarians* and *Dravidians*, whose relationship to the other great families of mankind is still undetermined. At an epoch which cannot be accurately determined, but which is supposed to have been about 1600 years B.C., a colony of the Aryan or Indo-European race, fair-complexioned people from the high plateau on the north-west, descended into the great plain of Northern India, and, establishing themselves there by physical force and higher culture, spread out and diffused themselves as the dominant race over all the low country northward of the Vindhya Mountains. Thus was formed the nation we know as the Hindus (the dwellers by the Indus river), who are still the most cultivated of the Asiatic Aryans. Their influence extended feebly into the highland of Southern India ; hence the majority of the inhabitants of the Deccan plateau remain distinct in their short and dark outward form from the taller and

---

<sup>1</sup> Or Indo-European.



fairer Hindus, and in their languages. Within these broad lines, the peoples of India of the present day differ quite as much among themselves in appearance as do the nations of Europe.

Besides the Hindus, there belong to the Aryan peoples of Asia, the Tajiks<sup>1</sup> of Persia, the Afghans, Baluchis, and Kards of the Iranian highlands; the Armenians of the mountain region farther west which culminates in Ararat, one of the oldest civilised peoples in the world; and the Ossetes in the Caucasus. The Georgians or Kartvels of the broad valley between the Armenian mountains and the Caucasus; and the tribes of that mountain range, the Cherkesses or Circassians,<sup>2</sup> Mingrelians, Lesghians, etc., form a distinct family, supposed to represent the Iberians.

In later times a stream of the Slavonic branch of the Indo-European race has flowed eastward across Southern Siberia to beyond Lake Baikal, and down the banks of the great rivers of the northern lowland of Asia, as the dominant power; almost the whole of India also has passed under the control of our section of the Germanic branch of the Aryan race (the British), who, however, are in numbers only as one to three thousand of the native population.

21. To the *Semitic race* in Asia belong the greater part of the inhabitants of Syria and Arabia, and most of those of the Mesopotamian plain; all round the borders of these regions the Semitic peoples are under the government of the dominant Turks; in the interior of Arabia, however, the Wahabi and others maintain their independence, and the Beduins of the Syrian deserts owe no allegiance to any foreign race.

22. The *Malays* of the south-eastern tropical peninsula and islands are a brown-complexioned race, with long coarse black and shining hair, a large mouth and short flat nose, with slight and well-formed limbs, but generally below the English middle height. Divided into many tribes, they appear in some parts as peaceable agriculturists, under their own chiefs or under foreign masters, in others as shy savages, again as fishermen or traders, or as dreaded pirates of the narrow seas. Their relations, the cannibal *Bataks* of Sumatra, the *Bugis* of Celebes, and the *Dyaks* of Borneo, are somewhat larger in build and stronger in frame than the Malays proper.

In the interior of many of the islands of the Eastern Archipelago there live still, as remnants probably of an aboriginal race which once held the whole region, certain negro-like tribes, to whom the Spaniards gave the name *negritos* (the diminutive of negro), from their resemblance to the negroes of African Guinea in the projection of the under part of the face, their woolly hair, broad nostrils, and very dark complexion, and from their short stature. In Western "New Guinea" these aborigines received their name *Papuas* from the Malay word "Papuwh," which signifies curly or woolly.

23. **Religion.**—Asia, as we have seen, has given the rest of the world most of its domesticated animals and cultivated plants, it has also been the centre in which the higher religions and civilisations have arisen, and whence these have spread outward.

The three monotheistic religions which have taken the widest hold on the minds of men (Jewish, Christian, Mohammedan) arose among the Semitic peoples of south-western Asia. Christianity has become the religion of enlightened Europe, but in its native country it has been overshadowed by *Mohammedanism*, which prevails in all south-western Asia, in Asiatic Turkey

<sup>1</sup> *Tajiks* = Persians, in contradistinction to the *Turks*, or warriors.

<sup>2</sup> On the subjugation of the Caucasus region by the Russians in 1864, nearly half a million of Circassians, or inhabitants of the north-western wing of the range, made a simultaneous exodus into Asiatic and European Turkey.

and Arabia, in Persia and Turkestan, and which has penetrated deeply into Hindustan<sup>1</sup> and among the Malays of the East Indies. Christianity appears only here and there in islets, as among the Armenians and Georgians. The fundamental article in the creed of the Mohammedan is—"There is no God but Allah : and Mohammed is his prophet." He believes in an immutably fixed destiny (fate), in eternal punishment for idolaters and unbelievers, and a voluptuous paradise for the faithful ; and frequent ablutions, prayer five times a day, a pilgrimage to the shrine of the prophet, fasts, abstention from wine and the flesh of swine, and the giving of alms, are obligatory duties. The Mohammedan's bible is the *Koran* : his weekly day of rest is Friday. Mohammedan temples or *mosques*<sup>2</sup> are roofed with rounded cupolas and adorned with slender *minaret* towers, from the galleries of which the call to prayer is given. The priests are called *Imam*, the saints are *Marabuts*, the monks are *Dervishes* or *Fakirs*. Two main sects divide the Mohammedans—the *Sunnite* sect, to which the Turks and Tatars chiefly belong, recognises the Sunna, a collection of traditional doctrines and laws supplementary to the *Koran* ; the *Shiahs* or sectarians (as they are called by the Sunnites) of Persia, are followers of Ali, the son-in-law of Mohammed, who is endowed by some of them with more than human attributes. The *Wahabis*, a more recent sect, now dominant throughout the greater part of Central Arabia, may be considered as puritanical reformers, who seek to purge away the innovations that have been introduced into Islam in the course of time, and to return to the literal precepts of the *Koran*.

24. The religion founded by Zoroaster of Bactria (the doctrine of the "Magi" of the ancient world), with its scriptures called the *Zend-avesta*, is interesting from its antiquity ; originally a pure monotheism, it passed afterwards into a belief in a conflict between the powers of good and evil, light and darkness, (Dualism), the former of which will, it is believed, ultimately triumph. Thus the symbol of light, the sun and fire, are venerated, and towards these the believer is enjoined to turn during his devotions. Purity of thought, word, and deed sum up the ethical code. Previous to its conquest by the Mohammedans, the religion of Zoroaster prevailed over Persia, but in the seventh century A.D. most of the inhabitants of that region became converts to Islam, others clung to the old faith, and, subjected to persecution, fled to the wilderness and to the island of Ormuz. Their descendants are known as the *Ghebrs* (Turkish *Ghiaur*), and are scattered here and there over Persia at the present day. A branch of them after many migrations found shelter in India in the sixteenth century, and as the *Parsis* (people of Pars or Fars, or ancient Persia) now form about 20 per cent of the population of the neighbourhood of Bombay.

25. In Hindustan, so far as Mohammedanism has not taken its place, the *Brahminic religion* (in several sects) prevails, and from it, based on the same philosophy, arose the religion of Buddha, which spread over Farther India, Tibet, China, and Japan, and next to Christianity has far more numerous adherents than any other faith in the world.

The Brahminical religion, a corrupt form of the Vedic nature-worship, has three principal gods, Brahma the creator, Siva the destroyer, and Vishnu the preserver. Its scriptures are the *Vedas*, one of the oldest literary documents in existence. The soul is believed to be identical in nature with the spirit whence it proceeds, and only the purified soul of the believer who understands its true nature returns to eternal bliss ; the impure soul wanders or transmigrates through animals and men again, till its purification is complete. Good works, prayer, and fastings, and even self-tortures, are supposed to be necessary acts of a pious life.

---

<sup>1</sup> 21 per cent of the inhabitants of British India are Mohammedans.

<sup>2</sup> *Masjad*, a place of prayer.

Four chief *castes* or classes of Hindu society, with many subdivisions, are distinguished and are kept apart by petty laws and penalties. These are—

(1.) The *Brahmans*, or sacerdotal class, who are said to have issued from the mouth of Brahma at the moment of creation, and are treated with profound respect.

(2.) The *Kshatriya* or military class, to which the rulers for the most part belong.

(3.) The *Vaisya* or mercantile class, men of business, traders, farmers.

(4.) The *Sudras* or servile class, subject to the three foregoing, never to improve or to reach the dignity of the higher castes.

Beneath all come the *Pariahs*, the lowest class of the population in India, outcasts, degraded and miserable.

The Hindu temples or pagodas are great pyramidal buildings of hewn stones of colossal dimensions, covered with the richest ornamentation, and with very numerous figures of deities. To these are attached a class of Bayaderes<sup>1</sup> or dancing-girls, *Devadasis*, whose duty is to sing the praises of their special god at festivals, and dance before him.

26. About the sixth century before Christ, Buddha, a prince of a kingdom which lay on the borders of Oude and Nepal in northern India, after six years of rigorous asceticism, began to preach his new gospel throughout northern India, and continued his mission for forty years. In about 300 B.C. the faith was carried by zealous missionaries over all parts of eastern Asia, and to Ceylon, where it has since flourished. About 65 A.D. it was acknowledged by the Chinese Emperor as a third religion, and from the fourth century A.D. onward during six centuries a stream of Buddhist pilgrims continued to flow from China to India. The main element in the success of Buddhism, perhaps, was the spirit of charity which it breathed in contrast to the exclusiveness of caste, all the followers of Buddha being released from its restrictions. The adoration of the statues of the contemplating Buddha, the central object in the temples, is the chief external ceremony of this religion; but Buddha is not a god, only the ideal of what man may become. There are no priests properly so called, the *Sramanas*, ascetics or mendicants, being a religious order who have entered on a course of greater austerity than other men, to the more speedy attainment of the state of *Nirvana*, or complete absorption.

In Tibet Buddhism has taken a somewhat different form, known as *Lamaism*, which has much in common with Roman Catholicism, in its observances, processions, rosaries, and patron saints. The Lama hierarchy has two popes, the one the Dalai Lama, till 1904 resident at Lhasa, the other the Tesho or Bogdo Lama, resident at Shigatse. Next in rank are the *Kutukus*, who may be called cardinals and archbishops, the third degree being that of the *Kubutghans* or priests, who are exceedingly numerous.

27. In China, the religion of Buddha, now degenerate from its primitive purity, and overlaid with a surd logias and image worship, keeps its place along with the systems of philosophy of *Confucius* and of *Lao-tse* (*Taoism*), which appear to have arisen almost contemporaneously with the former. In Japan also Buddhism has been modified by contact with the much older faith in the gods or *Shintoism*,<sup>2</sup> the hierarchy of which is composed of the *Mikado* or spiritual emperor, who is supposed to be descended from the great sun goddess, and who as such unites in his person all the attributes of the deity, besides ecclesiastical judges, monks, and priests. The Shinto temples are usually built on an eminence surrounded by groves, and have no idols; but a mirror is placed on the altar as an emblem of the purity required of the adherents of Shintoism.

<sup>1</sup> From Portuguese *Bailadeira*.

<sup>2</sup> "Way of the Gods."

28. The aborigines of Siberia and Mongolia are still heathens at heart, although the Kirghiz profess Islam outwardly, the Mongols Buddhism, and the Yakuts and others Orthodox Christianity. The still prevalent *Shamanism* is a kind of sorcery, in which the wizard pretends to invoke or propitiate the good and bad spirits by various mysterious observances. They enjoy great influence, since "the Shaman has the word of wisdom," and is credited with supernatural powers.

29. All the central mass of the continent, from Arabia over the Caspian region northward into Siberia and eastward to Mongolia, is a region characterised by pastoral steppe and bare desert. Hence the nomadic character of so large a share of the population of these regions. The Beduin of the Arabian and Syrian deserts wanders from pasture to pasture, carrying with him his black tent of woven goat's hair; the restless Kirghiz roam about the vast monotonous steppes that stretch north and east of the Caspian, as do the Mongols with their camel droves over the steppes north and south of the Gobi desert. In all this region the seats of settled and more cultivated men appear only like islets in a wide sea. In Siberia also, the settlements of Russian colonists, partly deported, partly voluntary exiles, begun in the sixteenth century, are only so many points in the midst of the native tribes, most of whom are nomadic fur trappers in the forests, or fishers, or owners of reindeer herds, which migrate north and south according to the season.

The south and east of the continent presents a remarkable contrast. There China and Japan, India and Indo-China, present densely peopled and highly cultivated lands, studded with great towns and venerable monuments of a civilisation which dates from the most remote times, but which, with the remarkable exception of Japan, seems to have reached a point beyond which it cannot advance of its own inward vitality, one generation of men following another in the same stereotyped process.

The princes of India rode on elephants and lived in splendid palaces at the time of Alexander the Great's invasion, and the people were then skilled in the same arts they now possess, but all impulse to higher culture and progress beyond that point has come from without, and since the country began to pass under British rule. The Chinese preceded Europeans in many inventions—in printing and paper-making, in the invention of the compass, in burning coal for fuel, in making porcelain, guns, and gunpowder,—but with these the inventive power seems to have become exhausted, and though foreigners have come and gone teaching new arts and sciences, the Chinese hold tenaciously to the same beaten paths of ancient custom. The Japanese alone have fully awakened, and this only in very recent years, and after several centuries of rigid seclusion from the outer world, to the knowledge of the superiority of western civilisation. As the result of this the most remarkable and sweeping reforms have been made, and the whole spirit of that nation has been rapidly transformed.

30. With the nomadic tribes of Central Asia patriarchal government is associated. In the anciently civilised states of the south and east the ruler is always an absolute monarch or despot. No other form of government than this—except for village or tribal rule—has ever been known on the continent. The ancient Babylonian, Assyrian, and Persian empires, like those of the Arabs, Mongols, and Turks, following them, were all despotisms, the rulers having frequently, as at the present day in China and Tibet, the double attributes of religious and political supremacy.

31. Three great European powers, Russia, Britain, and France, now hold sway over more than three-fifths of the vast extent of Asia, and most of the great political movements that have taken place on the continent during the last two centuries have been connected with the steady expansion, especially



of the first two, of these powers. In India the English have consolidated their empire, which now includes Burma and Baluchistan, and thus extends from the Persian to the Chinese and Siamese frontiers, and also comprises most of the Malay Peninsula. The Russians have on their part absorbed the whole of Siberia, Caucasus, and Western Turkestan, so that their territory is now (1908) continuous southwards with Persia, Afghanistan, and British India. Lastly, the French have, during the latter part of the nineteenth century, acquired a considerable portion of Farther India, including Tongkin, Annam (Cochin China), Cambodia, and a large slice of Siam. Their territory is thus also since 1896 continuous westwards with British India and northwards with China.

## RUSSIAN ASIA.

### THE CAUCASUS.

1. The division of the Russian Empire named the *Lieutenancy of the Caucasus*,<sup>1</sup> reaching down from the summits of the great natural boundary range northward into the lowland of Russia, and southward over the mountainous region of Georgia and Armenia, lies partly within the geographical limits of Europe, partly in Asia. We may gain an idea of its great extent if we note that it occupies an area nearly as large as the kingdom of Sweden, reaching 800 miles from east to west, and about 500 from north to south.

2. Relief.—The main feature of the region is its great central range, extending in an almost direct line from the peninsula which separates the Black Sea from the Sea of Azof in the west to Cape Apsheron, which projects into the western shores of the Caspian. Like the Pyrenees, but in strong contrast to the Alps, the Caucasus is a single chain, so narrow that the same summits may be seen from the steppes which reach out from its northern base, and from the deep valleys which separate it from the heights of Armenia on the south. It has thus no great valleys in the direction of its length. The spurs descending from the main chain have deep gorges or troughs between. The culminating points are the *Elbrus* peak (18,526 ft.) and *Kashtan Tau* (17,096 ft.), towards the western end of the chain; and *Mount Kazbek* (16,546 ft.), near the middle of it; all rising grandly from deep valleys. The two most important passes over it were called in ancient times the Caucasian and Albanian gates. The former, now called the *Dariel Pass*, lies close to the eastern base of the

	Area in sq. miles.	Pop. est. 1905.
<sup>1</sup> European Russia	1,002,000	107,420,000
Poland	40,160	10,775,000
Finland	144,250	2,810,000
Caucasus (Cis- and Trans-Caucasia)	182,500	10,960,000
Siberia	4,834,000	0,588,000
Central Asia	1,548,000	8,752,000
	<hr/>	<hr/>
	8,659,910	146,797,000
Caspian Sea	169,860	—
Sea of Aral	26,870	—
	<hr/>	<hr/>
RUSSIAN EMPIRE	8,855,440	146,797,000

Kazbek, and is a narrow cleft 8215 feet above the sea, available for carriages in the summer. The latter skirts the eastern termination of the range on the shores of the Caspian.

Over the whole chain vegetation is vigorous, but more luxuriant on the warmer southern slopes. The valleys opening in that direction are highly fertile, producing rice and cotton and silk, indigo, tobacco, and vines, and luxuriant woods. The northern slopes, exposed to the keen winds of the steppes, are characterised by bare pasture-lands and scattered fir-woods. At an elevation of about 6700 feet trees disappear, and the snow line is reached at 9000 to 9500 feet on the west, and 12,000 feet in the drier eastern region.

3. *Rivers*.—The two northern rivers descending from the Caucasus are the *Terek*, which turns eastward to the Caspian, and the *Kuban*, which makes its way westward to the Black Sea near the Strait of Kertch. Beyond these, on the low steppes, the *Manich*, a tributary of the Lower Don, forms the greater part of the northern boundary of the territory.

The valleys immediately south of the Caucasus are occupied by the *Kur* (or *Cyrus*), flowing south-east along the mountain base to the Caspian, and by the much smaller *Rion* flowing west to the Black Sea. Beyond these valleys rise the irregular masses of the mountains of Armenia, forming a high basin in which the large lake *Gokcha*, the “blue water” contrasting with the green mountains round it, lies at an elevation of 6340 feet above the sea; and on the southern border of the territory, the frontiers of Russia, Persia, and Asiatic Turkey meet in the majestic dome of *Mount Ararat* (16,920 ft.), covered on its upper three thousand feet with snow and glacier ice. Between Ararat and the heights walling in the Gokcha the *Aras* (or *Araxes*) flows east to join the Kur, near the Caspian, and forms the south-eastern boundary of the territory. Towards the west, since the war of 1877, the Russian boundary of the Caucasus territory has been extended southward to the Choruk river, which reaches the Black Sea south of the port of Batum, so as to include within it also the high volcanic plateau on which the almost impregnable fortress of Kars is built.

4. *Inhabitants*.—The peoples of the Caucasus region differ vastly in language, dress, and customs, and they belong to at least four types of the human family. The Indo-Europeans are represented by Russian and other colonists (26 per cent). To the Iranians (19 per cent) belong the Armenians, Ossetes, Tati, Kurds, and Persians. The “Caucasians” of Russian writers, classed by some ethnologists as Iberians, constitute 31 per cent of the total population, and include the Grusinians or Georgians, the Lesghians, the Chechenzes, and a variety of mountain tribes. Lastly, there are Mongols (25 per cent), represented by Tatars, Turks, and Kalmucks. In addition to these there are Jews, Germans, and gypsies.

A long struggle for independence was maintained by these hardy mountaineers against the Russians. The capture of one of their most determined chiefs in 1859 virtually completed the subjugation of the country, but it was not till 1864 that Russian authority could be extended over the whole region; on the completion of the conquest nearly half a million of Cherkesses or Western Caucasians made a simultaneous exodus from the districts adjoining the Black Sea to Asiatic and European Turkey. German colonists, who came hither from Würtemberg in 1812-15, and who have settled in various districts, have done much for the improvement of the vineyards. In religion the peoples within the territory are nearly equally divided between Christianity and Mohammedanism. The Greek Church prevails, owing to the large number of Russian colonists, but the Armenians form a powerful minority.

5. *Divisions*.—For administrative purposes the country has been divided into the Government of *Stavropol*, the nearest to European Russia, in the plains, and the territories of the *Kuban*, of the *Terek*, and of *Daghistan*, along



the northern or Ciscaucasian slopes of the range. On the southern or Transcaucasian side the division is into the Governments of *Baku*, next the Caspian; *Elizavetpol* and *Erivan*, between the Kur and Aras; of *Tiflis* south of the central part of the range; and of *Kutais* in the valley of the Rion, sloping to the Black Sea. There are besides on the southern side the military district of *Sukhum*, and the "district of the Black Sea" along the southwestern maritime border of the Caucasus, and the newly-added territory, including *Kars* and *Batum*, on the south-west.

6. **Chief Towns.** — *Tiflis* (pop. 160,000), on the Kur, immediately south of the Dariel Pass over the Caucasus, a fortified city, formerly the capital of the old kingdom of Georgia, is now the seat of the Russian Governor General. Here also a Greek and an Armenian bishop reside, and the town is the great emporium of all Transcaucasia, carrying on a large trade with Persia. *Staropol* or "cross town," on the main route from the Dariel Pass northward into Russia, is the chief place in the Ciscaucasian territory. *Derbent*, meaning the "narrow pass," formerly the capital of Albania, is a busy seaport of the Caspian, named from its position between the mountains and the sea. *Baku*, also on the Caspian, on the south coast of the peninsula of Apsheron, at the point where the great southern route along the base of the Caucasus meets that along the coast of the Caspian, is famous for its petroleum wells, which give it an extensive commerce. *Shemakha* and *Nukha*, on the southern slope of the Eastern Caucasus, are famous for their silk. *Erivan*, "the visible," in Armenia, in the valley of the Aras, north of Ararat, is so named from the tradition that Noah, looking from the mountain, saw this spot dry after the flood. *Alexandropol*, north-west of it, is a strong fortress, capable of accommodating 10,000 men; and *Kars*, in 1878 gained permanently by the Russians, is a no less formidable fortress, which has been thrice besieged and taken by them (1828, 1855, and 1877). *Poti*, at the terminus of a railway from Tiflis, is the chief port of the Caucasus region on the Black Sea. *Batum*, farther south, added in 1878, is rising in value as a seaport. A railway joins it to Tiflis with Batum and Baku.

#### SIBERIA.

1. All the immense northern region of Asia, from the Ural Mountains to the Pacific, and from the northern slopes of the great plateau of Central Asia to the low shores of the Arctic Sea, is included in the Russian territory of Siberia. The extreme limits east and west are more than 4000 miles apart; the most southerly point of its frontier, at the Tumen river, which separates it from Korea, and the most northerly, Cape Chelyuskin, which runs out into the icy sea on the north, have a difference of latitude of more than 35°, and it would take nearly fifty-five islands as large as Great Britain to make up an equivalent area to that of Siberia.

2. **Physical Features.** — All Western Siberia, nearest the Ural belt and European Russia, is a vast plain rising almost imperceptibly from the shores of the Arctic Ocean to the Kirghiz steppes and the base of the *Altai* mountains, which spring up from it like a wall, forming the northern buttress of the great tableland of central Asia. The northern border of this plain is occupied by the marshy frozen *tundras*; the broad central belt is covered with *forest*, in the cleared spaces of which the soil is fertile and well suited to agriculture; all the southern portion of it is occupied by treeless *steppes* which reach away south towards the Caspian and Aral Seas.

Eastern Siberia, on the other hand, is more diversified in surface, and there the plain is narrowed by the advancing mountains, to occupy only the border of the Arctic Seas. The *Altai* chain, which reaches a height of 11,000 feet in its summit of *Bielukha*, is prolonged eastward by the Sayan mountains, which separate the Kos-gol lake in Mongolia from the great Baikal in Siberia. Still farther east the *Yablonoi* and *Stanovoi* mountains stretch out towards Bering Strait, and from these moderately elevated ranges irregular tablelands extend northward, filling almost the whole of the north-eastern region, and reaching in several places to the very shores of the Arctic Ocean. In the long peninsula of Kamtchatka, the volcanic belt of Eastern Asia begins, and its surface is dotted over with groups of mountains, which culminate in the volcano of Klyuchev, 15,760 feet above the sea.

3. The four great rivers of Siberia, the Ob, Yenisei, and Lena, entering the Arctic Ocean, and the Amur, winding east to the Pacific, as well as the great Siberian lake Baikal, have already been noticed.<sup>1</sup>

4. *Climate*.—Siberian climate is proverbially the most severe of any on the globe. Round Yakutsk, on the Lena, to the north-east, the *average* temperature of the year is 12° of our Fahrenheit scale, or 20° below the freezing point. Here the mean monthly temperature varies between -45° in January and 66° in July, but only 128 days throughout the year are free from frost, and the soil, which is congealed to a depth of several hundred feet, only thaws at the surface for a time. Along the base of the mountains on the south a less rigorous climate is experienced; there the winter sets in about November, when snow falls, which lies till the succeeding March. At Tomsk, in south-western Siberia, the average temperature of the year is about the freezing point, the extremes being -40° (or 36° below freezing point) in January, and 67° in July.

5. *Products*.—Minerals are the most important products of Siberia. Gold is found in many of the rivers, and though the diggings of the Altai mountains seem to have been nearly exhausted, the supply of gold is still abundant on the mountains farther east. Lead, silver, iron, and copper, are also given by the Altai mines; coal is worked near Tomsk, and black lead or graphite, obtained from the mountains west of Irkutsk, and from the lower Yenisei district, has become important in commerce. Fur-hunting comes next in value to mining—the sable and ermine (getting scarcer now every year), elks and deer, bears, wolves, and foxes, are hunted for their skins in the forest region. Even the tiger is sometimes met in southern Siberia. The rivers abound in fish, and “fossil ivory” is found all over northern Siberia, and in the islands beyond in the Arctic Sea; the northern border of the continent, indeed, may be compared to a great graveyard of the Mammoth, the whole tribe of these huge animals having been destroyed apparently by a rapid refrigeration of the climate in a former period. Their dead bodies, carried down by the great rivers to the Arctic shores, have become imbedded there in the frozen soil, and so, preserved in ice, are found with flesh and skin undecomposed. In the more favourable climate of the slopes of the mountains in the south of Siberia, agriculture is capable of great development, and wheat, rye, and barley, give full crops.

6. *People*.—The Russians, or their descendants, who have spread out especially over the plains of south-western Siberia from central European Russia towards Lake Baikal, and down the banks of the four great rivers towards the Arctic Sea and the Pacific, now form by far the largest proportion of the inhabitants of Siberia (4,834,000), and far exceed those of purely Asiatic origin. These “Siberiaks,” or people who have Russian or Polish blood

<sup>1</sup> See pp. 265, 266.

in their veins, have fair hair and broad faces and prominent cheek-bones, and are a frugal, energetic, and hospitable people, though cunning and addicted to strong drinks. They are largely the descendants of exiles, of whom from twelve to sixteen thousand are sent every year to Siberia for political or other offences. Many Russian offenders are now also transferred to the far distant island of Sakhalin, in the Sea of Okhotsk.

The native populations, Tatars, Mongols, Tunguses, Ostiaks, and Samoyeds, whose distribution we have previously indicated, are either agriculturists, nomadic cattle-breeders, or hunters and fishermen, and these classes are distinguished by law. Chinese are numerous on the south-eastern border.

In religion the majority of the Siberian inhabitants are Christians. Buddhists and Shamanists come next in numbers, then Mohammedans and Jews. Education is as yet only thought of in the towns of the more purely Russian districts of the south-west; there, however, grammar schools and training colleges for schoolmasters have been formed, and since 1878 a university has been established at *Tomsk*.

7. **Divisions, Trade, and Chief Towns.**—All the land belongs to the Russian Government, and it is leased out to village communities and individuals. *Tobolsk* (21,500), below the confluence of the Ishim and Irtysh rivers (tributaries of the Ob), is the seat of government of Western Siberia, which is divided into the two governments of Tobolsk and Tomsk. *Irkutsk* (51,500), on the Angara (the main tributary of the Yenisei), a short distance from its outflow from Lake Baikal, is the fortified capital of Eastern Siberia, which is divided into the six governments of Irkutsk, Yeniseisk, Yakutsk, Trans-Baikal, Amur, and the Maritime Region next the Sea of Japan, ceded by China in 1860. To it belongs the northern half of Sakhalin, the southern having been ceded to Japan in 1905.

8. Siberia exports metals, furs, and sometimes even wheat to Europe, of its own produce; but the transit trade through the country from China to Europe, although it has decreased since the opening of so many Chinese sea-ports to foreign commerce, is by far the more important. The great trade route and the line along which the chief towns of Siberia lie, is that which passes from the frontier of Mongolia at the trading depot of *Kiakhta* (protected by the fort of Troitzkosavsk), near where the Selenga river crosses the boundary south-east of Lake Baikal, through *Irkutsk* on the Angara, *Krasnoyarsk* on the Yenisei, *Tomsk* in the Ob basin (the richest and most civilised town of Siberia, pop. 63,500), and *Tara* on the Irtysh, to *Yekaterinburg*, at the main passage of the Ural belt into European Russia. Along this line the Chinese brick tea was formerly carried in a six months' journey to the great fairs of Europe; in summer by caravans; in winter by sledges over the snow. But since 1903 tea and most of the local produce are transported by the trans-Siberian railway. A great branch line leads by the Lena river, by boat when it is open or by sledge when it is frozen, to the great market of north-eastern Siberia at *Yakutsk*, whither the furs trapped in all the surrounding country, and the fossil ivory from the far north, are brought to be sent to market by way of Irkutsk. In summer steamers now navigate the Ob, Yenisei, and Amur, as well as Lake Baikal, but the efforts to open a direct summer highway of trade between Europe and the two first named rivers through the Kara Sea have only met with partial success. This route has been largely neutralised by the great trans-continental railway, 5000 miles long, which runs from the Urals through Tomsk, Irkutsk, and Kharbin (Harbin) to Vladivostok and Khabarovka on the Pacific, and was completed in 1901. *Barnaul* (17,000), in the upper Ob, is the centre of the traffic of the mining region of the Altai.

On the Pacific coast the most important place now is the naval harbour of *Vladivostok* in the south-west corner of the maritime region, on an inlet of the

Sea of Japan. *Nikolayevsk*, at the mouth of the Amur; *Okhotsk*, from which the great mediterranean sea of Okhotsk, ice-bound through the winter months, takes its name; and *Petropaulovsk*, on the south-east coast of Kamtchatka, are the other seaports of the Pacific margin of Siberia.

### RUSSIAN CENTRAL ASIA.

1. This division of the Russian Empire spreads out over the vast steppe lands of inner Asia from the Irtysh and the Ural rivers on the north to the mountains bordering the great plateau of Asia and the deserts along the eastern margin of the Caspian Sea. On the south it embraces a great part of the formerly independent Khanates of Turkestan, which have fallen one by one before the northern invader.

2. The northern portion of this region is that of the *Kirghiz Steppe*, a bare stony region, almost everywhere deficient in water, with many salt-lakes and desert patches. In winter its climate is excessively cold, and strong winds whirl the snow about in clouds; in summer the soil is baked with burning heat. The ground here is considered common property by the nomadic Kirghiz: each occupies as much as his herds require, and yet is not a land-owner. The Russians, who occupy the villages and fortified posts chiefly, are few in number; they have divided the country into the provinces of *Uralsk* in the west, *Turgai*, *Akmolinsk*, and *Semipalatinsk*, the "seven castles," in the east, each corresponding to a fortified capital of the same name.

3. The southern portion, now formed into the *General Government of Turkestan*, reaches from the great salt-lake of Balkash southward up to the crest of the Thian Shan range, and westward to the sea of Aral. The main feature of the western half of this territory is the great uninhabited desert called the *Kizil Kum* or "red sands," which spreads out over the lowland between the Syr and Amu, or Jaxartes and Oxus rivers, which descend to the Sea of Aral from the eastern heights. The eastern districts, on the other hand, rise from the low-lying "seven streamland," south of the Balkash, over the high ranges which cover the country north of the great snowy mass of the Thian Shan. Between these forest-covered mountains are fine valleys watered by the head streams of the Syr Daria, and of the streams which terminate in Lake Balkash. These mountains also enclose the remarkable *Issik-kul* or "warm lake," so called because its brackish waters never freeze. This lake is occasionally fed by an arm of the *Chui*, a river which is ultimately lost in the sandy steppes between Balkash and the Aral.

4. The most important districts of Russian Turkestan are the valleys of the *Ili* river, the chief of those which flow to Lake Balkash; that of the Syr Daria, called the *Narin* in its upper course in the mountain region; and that of the *Zerafshan*, farther south.

The upper valley of the first-named, including the town of Kulja, was occupied by the Russians after the authority of the Chinese had been destroyed in consequence of the outbreak of the Tungani rebellion in 1862. A treaty, signed in August 1881, provided for the restoration of this fertile district to China (see p. 295). The Russian fort of *Vernoye* guards the entrance to the upper Ili valley.

The upper *Narin* valley, or Ferghana, constituted the chief part of the former Khanate of Kokan, which was completely incorporated in the Russian general government in 1875. It is a lovely and fertile basin, including a



nomadic population of Kara Kirghiz and Kipchaks and settled Usbegs<sup>1</sup> in the towns and villages, some of which, however, are occupied almost exclusively by Tajiks or primitive Persians. *Kokand* (pop. 81,000), the capital of this district, lies in a beautiful valley south of the Syr. On a northern tributary of the Syr lies the city of *Tashkend* (155,800), the largest town of Russian Turkestan, in a fertile plain surrounded by a wall of sun-dried bricks, 12 miles in circuit; it is also the great trading town of this region, and the centre of several great caravan routes. The valley of the third river, the Zerafshan, contains the famous city of *Samarkand* (58,000), once the capital of Tamerlane's powerful empire. Its walls have six gates, and within are the tomb of Tamerlane and many ruinous buildings which testify to its ancient splendour.

5. The *Sea of Aral*, which may now be called a Russian lake, takes its name, the "sea of islands," from the islets which are formed by the sands drifting between the reed patches which grow out into its shallow waters. West of it, as far as the Caspian shores, lies the remarkable bare plateau called the *Ust Yurt*, about 300 miles wide. It rises 600 feet above this sea, to which it presents a steep scarp called the "Chink." After the successful Khivan campaign of 1873, all this eastern border land of the Caspian, as far south as the *Atrek* river and the Persian boundary, was formed into the Russian *Transcaspian province*, and since then a successful campaign against the Turkomans has resulted in a further advance of the Russian frontier until it marches with that of Afghanistan. Here the chief places are *Krasnovodsk*, *Geoktepe* (which the Russians carried with great slaughter in 1882), *Askabad*, and the oases of *Tejend*, *Merv* (occupied in 1884), and *Penjdeh*. The trans-Caspian railway, completed in 1906, runs from *Krasnovodsk* on the Caspian through *Merv* to *Charjui* where it crosses the *Oxus* for *Bokhara*, *Samarkand*, and *Khejend*. Here it ramifies, one branch running up the Syr valley to *Kokand* and *Andijan*, the other north through *Tashkend* to *Orenburg*, where it joins the trans-Siberian line. There is a branch from *Merv* to *Kushk Post* on the Afghan frontier near *Herat*. The section from the Caspian to *Tashkend* is 1100 miles long, and thence to *Orenburg*, 1180 miles.

## CHINESE ASIA.

### CHINESE EMPIRE

1. **Extent.**—To obtain an idea of the vast extent and importance of the territories embraced within the limits of the Chinese Empire, it may be remembered that these occupy an area very considerably greater than that of Europe, and that their inhabitants are about as numerous as those of the British dominions in all parts of the world. If we compared the extent of the Chinese dominions with England alone we should find that they were nearly ninety times as large.

2. **Relief.**—Occupying all the central and eastern portion of the continent of Asia, their limits are for the most part very dis-

<sup>1</sup> The Usbegs are a people of Turkish race who at the close of the fifteenth century invaded and conquered the small states into which Turkestan was then divided and till recently they have maintained their hold of these khanates. They are for the most part settled agriculturists and traders.

tinctly marked out by great natural features. The boundary with Russian Siberia on the north runs along the Amur river and the crests of the Sayan and Altai mountains ; towards western Turkestan the alpine heights of the Thian Shan and the Pamir form the limit ; the snow-clad Himalaya range separates China from the hot plains of India in the south, and the mountains of Yun-nan continue the natural frontier eastward again to the coasts of the Pacific.

3. **Divisions.**—Within these wide exterior limits the empire includes a number of countries, some of which are strongly contrasted with one another in their natural features and in the character of their population. Along the eastern or maritime border, where the rivers flowing down from the mountain region of the interior have spread out in wide alluvial plains next the sea, lie China proper, and Manchuria, filled with a teeming population of busy agriculturists and townsfolk. Within, on the high plateau of Central Asia, the region of bare steppes and deserts, and the mountain skirts round it, are the countries of Mongolia, Eastern Turkestan, and Tibet, thinly peopled for the most part by nomadic pastoral tribes. In this order we may take up the more particular description of these divisions of the great Chinese Empire.<sup>1</sup>

CHINA PROPER—the “Central Flowery Land.”

4. This main south-eastern division of the empire includes about a third of its whole extent, reaching from the coast of the Pacific inland for more than a thousand miles. The frontier on the northern side next Mongolia is marked out by the *Great Wall of China*, the most remarkable artificial bulwark in the world, which extends westward continuously almost into the heart of the continent for a distance of 1500 miles, over mountain and valley, and across rivers and ravines. It is a rampart of earth, 10 to 30 feet high, broad enough at the top to admit of several horsemen passing abreast, and was formerly cased on the sides and top with bricks and stones, and was flanked by numerous projections or towers, gates being left at intervals for the passage of travellers and the collection of customs. Now it has fallen in many places, and its gates are negligently guarded,

<sup>1</sup> According to the most recent estimates the area and population of the divisions are as follows :—

	Area in sq. miles.	Population.
China Proper . . . . .	1,298,000	350,000,000
Manchuria . . . . .	368,000	16,000,000
Mongolia . . . . .	1,288,000	2,600,000
Tibet . . . . .	652,000	6,500,000
Eastern Turkistan . . . . .	432,000	620,000
Zungaria . . . . .	148,000	630,000
	<hr/> 4,181,000	<hr/> 376,350,000

Older estimates credit China Proper with a population of four or five hundred millions.



and northward of Peking the growing Chinese population has spread and settled the country to a considerable distance beyond its barrier. Towards Tibet, on the west, the limits are formed by the high margin of the great central plateau of Asia ; from this edge minor ranges extend eastward towards the ocean, embracing between them the valleys of the great rivers and the wide alluvial plains which these rivers have formed by the gradual process of wearing down the highlands and carrying their débris towards the sea.

5. **Relief.**—The mountains and hill ranges are known by a multitude of local names, but two great groups are generally recognised. These are the *Pe-ling*, or northern series of mountains which ramify eastward from the plateau between the basins of the Hoang-ho and Yangtse rivers ; and the *Nan-ling*, or southern series of mountains, which spread eastward over southern China from the mountains of Yunnan and the edge of the plateau of Tibet, separating the valley of the Yangtse from that of the Si-kiang or Canton river in the south. The most important of the maritime lowlands of China is that known as *The Great Plain*, which extends on both sides of the lower Hoang-ho in the north-east of the country, between the great cities of Peking and Nanking, over an area more than three times as extensive as England (200,000 square miles). Sedulously irrigated or drained, and cultivated in every corner, the great plain of China supports the densest agricultural population in the world. Towards the interior extend fertile river valleys and hills, carefully terraced and tilled, or planted with timber trees. Still farther inland the highlands become less peopled, and are covered with bamboo at the base up to pine woods along their summits, till, on the western borders, in approaching the highlands of Tibet, the country becomes rugged and uneven, the rivers and streams form deep gorges and defiles, and the mountains reach up to the limit of perennial snow.

6. **Islands.**—The large island of *Formosa*, the “beautiful,” which belongs geographically to China, and which is largely inhabited by a Chinese population from the opposite mainland, was ceded to Japan, together with the little Pescadores group off the west coast, after the disastrous war of 1894-5. See p. 306. In consequence of this loss the only large insular land still owned by China is *Hai-nan*, on the south coast. This important island, which is about 180 miles long by 100 broad, has been more completely subjugated by the Chinese, but in the mountainous interior the submission of the aboriginal tribes is only partial.

7. **Seas, Rivers, and Canals.**—The semi-mediterranean seas and gulfs of the Pacific along the coast of China are distinguished by separate names. In the north, between the Korea peninsula and the mainland of China, is the *Hoang Hai* or Yellow Sea, 300 miles wide, named from the lemon colour of its waters, filled with the alluvium brought down to it by the Hoang-ho, and so shallow that its muddy bed is frequently furrowed by passing vessels. Within or northward lie the *Bay of Korea* and the *Gulfs of Pe-chi-li* and *Liao-tung*, the two last separated almost entirely from the outer China Sea by the projecting promontories of Shan-tung and Liao-tong. South of the Yellow Sea, between the mainland and southern Japan, with the chain of the Luchu islands and Formosa, extends the wider *Tung-hai* or Eastern Sea ; and from this the Fu-kien Channel, between Formosa and the coast of China, 100 miles wide, leads into the great mediterranean called the *Nan-hai* or South Sea of China, which is almost completely shut in by Borneo and the Philippine Islands. The coasts of the Yellow Sea bordering on the great plain are low

and flat; southward thence to the island of Hainan the shores of China rise steep, and are dotted round with rocky islets.

8. The characteristics of the two great rivers of China proper, the *Hoang-ho*, or Yellow River, and the *Yang-tse-kiang*, have been noticed in the general description of the continent. Besides these may be noted the *Pei-ho*, which gathers the waters of the northern portion of the great plain, and forms a highway of communication between the capital city of Peking and the port of Tien-tsin, 35 m. above its mouth; the *Min*, the river of the province of Fukien, by which the Bohea teas are brought down to the port of Fu-chou; and the *Si-kiang*, the largest river of Southern China, one of the delta branches of which forms the *Chu-kiang*, or river of the great port of Canton. The three largest lakes of China lie immediately south of the course of the Yang-tse. The *Tung-ting-hu*, 70 miles long, and the *Poyang-hu*, nearly as large, are expansions of the mouths of the chief southern tributaries of the Yang-tse in Central China; the third, the *Tai-hu*, lies south of the estuary.

9. Greatest of all the public works in China is the *Grand Canal*, which traverses the great plain for a distance of 700 miles, passing from Tien-tsin, on the Pei-ho, in the north, across the course of the Hoang-ho to the lower course of the Yang-tse, connecting a system of water communications which extended from the capital to the chief parts of the empire. It is but the greatest sample of the system of canals, great and small, which form a network over all parts of the lowlands of China. During the present dynasty this great work has been allowed to go to ruin in many places, and the Yellow River, in finding a new course for itself, in 1851-53, and again in 1887, completed the destruction of a great part of it, so that now the portion northward of the Hoang-ho is dry for ten months in the year.

10. **Climate.**—The climate of a country so extensive as China proper, reaching through more than 20 degrees of latitude, must vary to a great degree, for this reason alone. We have to remember, also, its variations of level, from the low plains skirting the eastern seas, to the high mountain edges of the plateau of Central Asia, on the western borders. In general the temperature is lower than in the same latitudes in Europe.

Three zones may, however, be distinguished—a northern, central, and a southern, differing both in their climate and vegetable productions. The belt northward of the 35th parallel, or of the middle course of the Hoang-ho, has an excessive or continental climate,<sup>1</sup> with hot summers, and winters so cold that ice a foot thick seals up the rivers and canals, while cold biting winds sweep down from the steppes of Mongolia. The European grains and vegetables are the characteristic crops of this region.

The central zone, extending down to the 27th or 28th parallel, has a milder and more equable climate, the temperature averaging about 62° Fahr., and rising to a maximum of 110° in summer. It has two rainy and two dry seasons in the year. This is the richest portion of China. Tea<sup>2</sup> and silk are its great products; rice is produced in enormous quantity in the lowlands, which are inundated from the great rivers. Wheat, cotton, the mulberry,

<sup>1</sup> At Peking the mean temperature of the year is 55° Fahr.; of summer, 81°; and of winter, 27°.

<sup>2</sup> The tea-plant is an evergreen shrub, five or six feet high at full growth, indigenous in China, Japan, and Upper Assam, and its cultivation succeeds best on the slopes of the hills. It is grown in almost every part of China, but the districts which produce the finest teas are limited chiefly to the maritime borders of China between the lower Yang-tse and the Si-kiang.

sugar-cane (imported from India in the eighth century), and bamboos, are other important resources. The eastern part of this zone is specially famed for its silks and cottons; the central is called the granary of China; and the western mountains supply most of the Chinese timber.

The southernmost belt has an almost tropical climate. Here the rainy season lasts from April till October, while the south-west monsoon is blowing, and dreaded "*typhoons*," as the hurricanes of the South China Sea are named, are of not infrequent occurrence from June till September.<sup>1</sup> Here oranges, mangoes and bananas, ground nuts, sweet potatoes and yams, besides rice, are the staple fruits and vegetables, and the opium poppy is still extensively cultivated, although in 1906 steps were taken to gradually suppress its growth.

11. **Minerals.**—The mineral wealth of China is very great. The province of Yunnan, in the south-western corner of the country, has some of the largest gold workings in the world. Here, also, is obtained the famous *pe-tung*, or white copper. Silver, lead, iron, tin, and cinnabar, are widely distributed. Coal formations seem to extend almost all over the basin of the Yang-tse, as well as in the provinces north of the lower Hoang-ho; and though it has been mined in a rude fashion, and used as fuel in China since the thirteenth century, the vast supplies seem to be scarcely touched. Southern Yunnan furnishes a variety of precious stones—rubies, amethysts, sapphires, topazes, opals, besides malachite, and the steatite or soapstone, in which the Chinese carve figures of all sorts.

The much-prized Yu, or *jade*, brought formerly from Turkestan, comes now from the Hoang-ho valley; lapis lazuli (for the preparation of ultramarine) is found in the mountains of Che-kiang, in the east coast region. Large beds of porcelain clay occur in this province also, and in its neighbouring one of Kiang-si. Towards the north-western borders hot springs are numerous, and the fire-wells or gas springs of the western province of Se-chuen are famous.

12. Thus, owing to its variety of landscape and character, and the consequent diversity of its vegetable products, and to its rich endowment with mineral wealth of all kinds, China proper is in a position to render its people practically independent of the outer world. To this may be attributed the disdain with which the Chinese have received the outer "barbarians," and the exclusiveness they still maintain in a great part of the empire.

13. **People.**—The Chinese, as we have seen in the general description of the continent, belong to the Mongolian race. Within China proper they are essentially one people, more uniform in type than people in any other part of the globe of equal extent, the differences, except in dialect, being scarcely greater than are to be found between Englishmen of different counties. Parchment-coloured skin, coarse black hair, high cheek-bones, and oblique eyes, are characteristic throughout. There still remain, however, within China proper, a few isolated remnants of aboriginal tribes, who resemble the mountaineers of North-Eastern India much more than the Chinese. Such are the wild *Miautse* and *Yao* tribes of the more inaccessible parts of the Nan-ling or southern mountains, and the *Lolo*, of Caucasian type, in Western Se-chuen. The *Hakha* and *Punti* of the neighbourhood of Canton, and the piratical *Hoklos* of Fukien, are also strange tribes, speaking languages which are unintelligible to the surrounding peoples. The mountains of the central parts of the island of Hainan, also, are still occupied by savage *Li*, supposed to be related to the *Miautse*, surrounded in the maritime plains by Chinese.

---

<sup>1</sup> Canton has a mean temperature of 70°; in July and August the thermometer frequently rises to 100° in the shade; winter temperature averages 54° Fahr. Ice sometimes forms, and snow has been known to fall overnight.

**14. Religion and Education.**—We have previously referred to the religions of China. There are temples of Confucius in every great town, and twice a year, in spring and autumn, sacrifices of animals, fruit, and wine, are offered in honour of the sage. The majority of the Taoists, or followers of Laotse, imitate the Buddhists in their monastic life, and many of them live as hermits in the mountain caves of the upper Yang-tse, or in the most romantic spots of the mountains of China. The Grand Lama of Tibet is the pope of the Buddhist Church, but the priests in China have no political power, and are viewed with contempt by the literary and governing classes. In Peking, however, several large monasteries of Tibetan and Mongolian Buddhists are supported at the expense of the Government.

Besides these three national systems, *Mohammedanism*, supposed to have been introduced by a Tatar tribe which was called in to the assistance of the Chinese during the Tang dynasty, has numerous adherents in the northern and western provinces. They hold aloof from the Pagan Chinese, and have made so many native converts, that in their frequent rebellions they have seriously threatened the imperial power. The native Roman Catholics of China are said to number more than a million, but Protestants are very few.

Standing in the way of all progress in China is the deep-rooted universal superstition called *Feng-shui*, or *Geomancy*, a form of divination, the professors of which must be consulted in every proposed undertaking, to determine its good or bad luck. Education, since it is the high road to official employment, rank, and wealth, in China is eagerly sought by all classes. Competitive examinations, held in the capital every three years, sift out the most proficient candidates for public service. The effete old national system was abolished in 1905, and since then a great impetus has been given to the new educational movement for teaching "western learning" in the Peking University and Medical College (founded 1906), and in the local schools throughout the Empire.

**15.** Just as the laws which used to prohibit the admission of foreigners have gradually been broken down, so those which hedged round the natives of China, restricting them from emigration to other lands, have given way, and now the "*coolies*" are free to embark in vessels which have been inspected by the customs authorities. Numbers of Chinese have now formed busy communities in many of the ports of the Malay Peninsula, in Java and the Philippines, as well as in Calcutta and other parts of India, and in Australia: across the Pacific they have taken root in California, and a Chinese town has grown up as part of the city of San Francisco. Most of these emigrants economise abroad to return to spend their gains and die in their own country.

**16. Industries.**—The skill of the Chinese in husbandry, their painstaking irrigation, and manuring of the lowlands and terracing of the hills, have already been noticed. Agriculture is held in higher estimation here than in any other land in the world. Each new-year's day a grand state ceremony is performed in its honour, the Emperor himself repairing to the sacred field and tracing a furrow with the plough. As it was two thousand years ago, so it is at the present day the custom of the Empress and her ladies every spring to set an example to the people by laying aside their ornaments and picking mulberry leaves to feed the silkworms.

Before European manufactures had reached their higher development, fine "Nankeen" calico was largely imported from China to Europe. "China ware," or porcelain, was first made by the Chinese, and so ignorant were the early Portuguese traders of its value, that they called it "*porcellana*," believing it perhaps to be made of shells; the secret of its manufacture was not discovered in Europe till the beginning of the eighteenth century. The decomposed felspar or "*Kau-ling*" (Kaolin: also called *Pe-tun-ts'*), occurs, as we have noticed, in the maritime provinces of central China; and at King-te-chin in

the province of Kiang si, not far from Yao-chou, there are porcelain factories which were founded by an emperor in 1004 A.D. The Chinese also excel in carpentry: paper making from the bamboo was invented among them as early as the second century B.C. They are highly skilled in the use of metals. bronze vases exist which date from 1760 B.C., and the great bells on the towers of Peking, cast during the Ming dynasty, are still perfect; the sonorous *gong metal* alloy is as yet a Chinese secret: in their delicate embroideries, carvings in ivory, engravings on wood and stone, lacquered wares, and rich silks and satins, they show astonishing handicraft.

17. *Trade.*—For a long period, as we have previously noticed, the trade and intercourse of Europeans with China was jealously restricted to the single port of Canton, and it was not till after the war with Britain, which terminated in 1842, that the additional ports of *Amoy*, *Fu-chou*, *Ning-po*, and *Shanghai*, were thrown open, and that the island of Hong-kong, at the mouth of the Canton river, was ceded in perpetuity to Britain. With these five open ports British trade with China assumed huge proportions, and though the Chinese evaded the treaty wherever practicable, no serious dispute arose till 1857. In that year Canton was stormed by the British and French forces, and next year the ports at the mouth of the Pei-ho river in the north were taken, opening the way to Peking. The treaty of *Tien-tsin*, which concluded this contest, obtained the right of residence of British diplomatic agents at Peking, and opened to trade, in addition to the five ports already named, those of *Kiung-chow* in the island of Hainan; *Suotow*, between Hong-kong and Amoy; the river ports of *Chiu-kiang*, *Kiu-kiang* and *Hankou*, on the Yang-tse; *Teng-chow* and *Chi-fu* on the coasts of the northern promontory of Shantung, *Tien-tsin* itself, and the trading town of *Niu-chowang* in southern Manchuria. In Formosa, before its cession to Japan (1895), *Tai-kan*, the capital, and *Takas*, south of it, were also freed, but, from their insecurity, foreign commerce was transferred to the river *Tamsui* and *Ke-lung* on the north side. By a convention made in 1876, the Chinese Government consented to open three more towns to foreign trade, namely *Pakha* in the southern province of Kwang tung; the seaport of *Wen-chow*, between Ning-po and Fu-chou; *Wu-hu* on the lower Yang-tse, beyond Nanking; and *I-chang* on the upper Yang-tse, 360 miles further inland than Hankou, and nearly in the centre of China proper. At the same time permission was granted for the residence of British agents at the far inland town of *Chung-king* in the province of Se-chuen, at the mouth of a northern tributary of the Yang-tse called the Kiating. In 1902-3 *Wankuen*, *Ngan-king*, *Wanchau*, *Muhden*, *Antung*, *Ta-tung-kan*, and in 1907 *Nan-ning* were opened to trade.

The *maritime* intercourse of China is carried on mainly with Britain and her colonies, in a much smaller extent with the United States, Germany, France, Japan, Belgium, and Russia. *Tea* and *silk* are the staple exports, all others being insignificant in comparison with these.<sup>1</sup> The general foreign trade is increasing rapidly, the imports having risen from £40,000,000 in 1901 to £67,250,000 in 1905, and the exports from £25,500,000 to £34,280,000 in the same years. The taxation of foreign goods passing into the country is, however, exceedingly heavy, so much so as to stimulate smuggling and bribery of all sorts.

A large *overland* traffic is also maintained with Russia. Great quantities of the finest tea, made up into "bricks," as well as silk stuffs, pass northward from central China, converging to the chief gate in the great wall, that of *Chankia-kou* or *Kalgan* north-west of Peking, whence the camel caravans take their way northward across the dreary steppes of Mongolia to the Siberian fron-

<sup>1</sup> In 1881 over 150 million lbs. of tea were exported to Great Britain but, owing to the competition of India and Ceylon, the quantity had fallen to 47,480 lbs. in 1905



tier at Kiakhta, from which depôt the Russian traders convey the goods westward to the great fairs in Europe. Recently endeavours have been made by the British to open up an overland trade route through Yunnan in south-western China with Burma and India. A vast internal traffic is carried on within China itself by the imperial roads, of which there are said to be 20,000, as well as by the numerous canals and rivers, which are crowded with junks and boats. The introduction of railways is already transforming the inland trade. In 1906 over 3700 miles were open for traffic, and Peking is now connected by rail through Tientsin with Mukden and Harbin, through Koupangtse with Niuchwang, and through Paoting with Hankou on the Yang-tse.

18. **Government.**—The despotic form of government which prevails in China dates back from the time of the first emperor, about 210 B.C., who built the great wall to keep out the very Tatars whose descendants now occupy the throne of China. The reigning monarch is absolutely supreme, spiritual as well as temporal sovereign. His person is sacred, and when he is carried abroad, the people return to their houses and bar the doors, for they may not look upon him and live. He is high priest of the empire, and can alone perform the great religious ceremonies, and he alone has the power of appointing those officials or *mandarins* of all grades whose edicts, signed by his vermilion pencil, pass into law. The administrative government comprises the central division at Peking, where sits the great council consisting of four members or ministers of state (*Ta-hyo-si*), chosen by the emperor (two of Tatar and two of Chinese origin), besides two assistants from the great college, whose duty it is to see that nothing is done which is contrary to the civil and religious laws of the empire. In the second division are the governors of the eighteen provinces into which China proper is divided, and of the three provinces of Manchuria; in the third division are the presidents of the vast regions of inner and outer Mongolia, and of Tibet. Under the council are the six boards of government (*Liu-poo*) for the administration of the civil service, finance, rites and ceremonies, military affairs, public works, and criminal law. There is besides an independent board of public censors who are privileged to present any remonstrance to the sovereign, and attend the meetings of the government boards.

19. Each of the eighteen provinces (the names and positions of which will be best learned from the Map) has a governor, who has a small military force at his disposal, but does not command the forces of the province. When the Manchu Tatars conquered China, they divided their army into four corps, distinguished by white, red, blue, and yellow banners. Four more corps were afterwards added, and afterwards eight similar corps of Mongols and eight of Chinese. The chief commands are in the hands of high officers of the three nationalities, the Manchu prevailing. Manchu garrisons hold all the cities and ports, and are established along the frontiers. The Chinese army is being reorganised on lines laid down in 1905; but the navy, nearly annihilated by the Japanese in 1894-5, has not been rebuilt.

20. **Towns.**—*Peking*, the capital, on the northern border of the great plain, consists of two distinct cities, the older Chinese and the newer Tatar or imperial town, forming together an irregular oblong surrounded by high castellated walls about fifteen miles in circuit. The population probably amounts to about 700,000. Marco Polo, who visited it in 1271, gives a description of it which serves almost exactly at the present day, speaking of its rectangular form, its wide straight streets, the incessant traffic maintained in its thoroughfares, and the closing of the gates at night to the sound of a bell. About eight miles north-west of the city lies the imperial park, with lotus lakes and marble bridges, temples and pagodas, in the midst of which the famous Summer Palace stood; it was sacked by the allied (English and French) troops in 1860, and again suffered during the "Boxer" disorders of 1900.



*Nanking* (270,000), formerly the capital, on the Yang tse, is also surrounded by walls, which have a length of eighteen miles and include much open ground within. The city suffered greatly on its capture by the Taiping rebels in 1853, and then its famous porcelain tower, which was 261 feet high, was destroyed. Like the capital, Nanking has wide streets and open spaces; but other great towns of China present almost uniformly the appearance of a great mass of closely-packed red-tiled houses, with overlapping eaves excluding light and air, and only allowing a maze of narrow alleys between. In these the only glimpse of the sky or breath of fresher air can be got on the house-tops, which are commonly decked with flowers set in pots, and furnished with water jars in case of fire. The uniform level of the roofs is only relieved by the imposing official residences, pagodas, and temples, or in the southern provinces by the lofty square towers of the pawnbroking houses. Nearly every town is walled.

Large towns might be enumerated by hundreds. At least fifty are known to have a population of upwards of one hundred thousand, but all those in which foreigners have as yet any special interest have already been named. The number of foreigners resident in China is very small. In 1906 there were only 38,000 in all, nearly half resident in the city of Shanghai.

The British possession of *Hong-kong* island, or "sweet waters," is about eight miles long, and forms an irregular rocky ridge, with peaks rising to 1826 feet. On its north-west the European capital town of *Victoria* has arisen. It is laid out in terraces on a steep slope, and has numerous fine stone buildings and wharves, and is lighted with gas. Its commerce is very large, and it is important as the headquarters of the British naval and military establishments in this part of the world. The population of Victoria exceeds 290,000, including nearly 9000 Europeans and Americans. On the opposite mainland is the district of *Kowloon*, which, since 1861, forms part of Hong-kong. In 1898 this district was enlarged by a tract leased by China to England for ninety-nine years, giving to Hong-kong a total area of over 400 square miles and pop. (1905) 467,000. In the same year England acquired the district of *Wai-hai-wei*, on the north coast of Shantung peninsula, to be held as long as Russia held Port Arthur; area 285 square miles, pop. (1904) 150,000. *Kiao-chau*, on the south coast of Shantung, was also in 1898 leased to Germany for ninety-nine years, having been previously seized by way of reprisal for the murder of some German missionaries; area 260 square miles, pop. (1905) 85,000.

21. *Kansu*. The jurisdiction of the north-western province of *Kansu* reaches far beyond the great wall, over a wide region of the Central Asiatic plateau extending north westward to Eastern Turkestan and Zungaria. This region of the plateau has the general character of the steppes of Mongolia and of the Gobi desert, of which it forms part. It is important as embracing within it one of the great trade routes of Central Asia. This passes from *Lan-chow*, the capital of Inner Kansu, through the *Kia-yu* gate of the great wall, by a ten days' journey across the desert to the fertile oasis of *Hami*, at the southern base of the Thian-shan. *Hami* is an important trading place, at which the wool of Turkestan is exchanged for the products of Central China. A continuation of this trade route northward leads over a pass of the Thian-shan (8980 feet above the sea) to the oasis and town of *Barkul*, at the northern base of the range.

#### MANCHURIA.

This division of the Chinese Empire, the native country of its imperial family, extends north-eastward of China proper, occupying

the wide basin which extends about 500 miles between the *Kinghan* mountains, forming the edge of the great Asiatic plateau, on the west, and the *Shan Alin* or Long White mountains, from their snows on the north side, which divide off the peninsula of Korea on the east. The boundary towards Siberia since 1860, when the whole of Northern Manchuria was ceded to Russia, has been the *Amur* river. In the south the basin opens to the Gulf of Liao-tung and the Bay of Korea within the Yellow Sea, the length of the country north to south being about 800 miles.

22. **Rivers.**—The chief river of the country is the *Sungari*, about 1000 miles long, flowing from the Kinghan range east and north-east to join the boundary river, the *Amur*. The *Ussuri*, another considerable tributary from the south, forms the boundary between Manchuria and the Russian maritime province. It receives the overflow of the large lake *Hinka*, 50 miles long, which lies on the inward slope of the coast mountains at a height of about 2000 feet above the sea. The southern river of Manchuria is the *Liao-ho*, or *Sira-Muren*, which flows also from the Kinghan slopes, but turns southward to the Gulf of Liao-tung.

23. **Landscape.**—Forests cover the whole country in the north. In the west great rolling prairies or grassy plains, on which large herds of cattle find pasture, extend at the base of the Kinghan range, enclosing a bare salt steppe called the desert of *Korchin*. The *Sungari* valley is a fertile region, and the southern portion, in the basin of the *Liao-ho*, resembles Northern China in its irrigated fields of rice, and in its yield of sesame, hemp, and cotton, and of the best tobacco of the empire. Here the climate is most favourable. Towards the north the winters become exceedingly severe; the frosts destroy the grass in August; in September snow begins to fall, and the soil is hard frozen from October till April. Wild animals and birds are abundant, and the rivers are well stocked with fish.

24. **People.**—The Manchus (of lighter complexion and heavier build, and having less scanty beard than, though otherwise resembling, the Chinese) belong undoubtedly to the great Mongol family of the *Tunguses*,<sup>1</sup> and form the most advanced and civilised branch of their stock. As early as the thirteenth century they had become a powerful and warlike nation, distinguished by high intellectual and physical qualities. During the wars of the seventeenth century, when the Manchus overcame the Ming dynasty in China, the greater part of the population of the country seems to have been drawn off southward into the newly-conquered region. The Chinese in turn have since swarmed into Manchuria, so that they now form the bulk of the population here. The Manchu language also has all but disappeared, and the trade and traffic of the land is in the hands of the Chinese. Those of the Tatars who remain in the outskirts of the country living a nomadic tent-life still distinguish themselves as persevering hunters, expert with the bow and arrow, and bold riders. Mohammedanism has spread widely among them, and the followers of this creed appear to keep themselves aloof, occupying chiefly the hilly country of the east, and being a source of frequent trouble to the Chinese Government.

25. **Division and Chief Towns.**—Manchuria is divided into three provinces; the southern called *Shing-king*, or *Liao-tung* nearest China proper, and sometimes considered as its most northerly division, the most populous and agricultural, and the most completely Chinese portion of the land; and the

---

<sup>1</sup> See p. 272.

two provinces of *Tsitsihar*, in the north-west, occupying the basin of the Nonni tributary of the Sungari, and of *Girin* or *Kirin*, between that river and the Shan Alin mountains, in the north-east. The Chinese governor has his seat at the walled city of *Mukden*, on a tributary of the Liao-ho, near the centre of Shing-king. This province is governed in the same manner as those of China proper, but the northern provinces are under military discipline. The town of *Tsitsihar*, situated on the Nonni, the chief place in the north-western province, is a Chinese penal settlement for the worst classes of criminals, pirates, insurgents, members of secret societies, and robbers, under strict military guardianship. *Kirin*, on the upper Sungari, the chief place in the province named from it, is described as a great collection of huts surrounded by an earth wall; here most of the trading-vessels for the Amur are built.

The chief trading town and outlet of Manchuria is that of *Niuchwang*, to which reference has previously been made as one of the places thrown open to foreign traffic by the treaty of Tien tsin. It lies 25 miles south-west of Mukden and 30 miles from the sea, on an unnavigable tributary of the Liao-ho. Its port of *Yinkoa*, at the mouth of the Liao-ho, sends out grain, hemp, hides, and indigo, but is closed by ice from November till March.

#### MONGOLIA.

26. From the snowy crests of the *Altai-shan* mountains, along which winds the great wall that shuts off China proper on the south, and from the *Khingan* mountains in the east, separating it from Manchuria, the vast steppe land of Mongolia reaches away northward a thousand miles to the base of the *Altai* mountains and westward to the *Thian-shan*. If we compare its extent to Great Britain we find that it occupies a space fifteen times as great.

In strong contrast to the people of China, the inhabitants of this vast region build neither towns nor villages, have no houses or settled abodes, cultivate no fields, but dwell in "yurts" or tents, and wander about with their herds between those districts of their country which are most favoured with water and pasture.

27. **Physical Features.**—Within its girdle of forest covered and snow-capped mountains, the tableland of Mongolia, 3000 to 4000 feet above sea-level, presents a border of grassy steppe lands enclosing the central and characteristic feature of this region, the *Gobi* or *Shamo*<sup>1</sup> desert, a tract of not less than 2000 miles in length, with an average width of 500 miles. The aspect of the country in crossing the Gobi is that of low downs, the whole being of a rocky or stony nature rather than sandy, though patches of sand do occur every here and there. What vegetation exists is composed of weeds, "scrub," and heath, there being scarcely any grass, and only a dwarfed and stunted tree here and there in the passes of the low rocky ranges, that cross the desert at uncertain intervals in parallel lines from east to west. Northward towards Siberia the tableland becomes diversified with forest-covered hill ranges, and valleys well clothed with grass.

28. **Rivers and Lakes.** From the mountain belt surrounding the central desert a few streams descend towards it to terminate generally in small salt-lakes. Along the northern borders towards the *Altai*, where the land becomes

<sup>1</sup> Both of these terms, Mongol and Chinese, mean desert; the Chinese also call this region the *Han-hai* or "dry sea."

more broken by mountains, and where the ranges, called the *Tannu-ola* and *Khangai*, extend into the tableland from the north-west, a number of enclosed high basins are formed, each with its central lake; such are the *Ubsa Nor*, the *Turgen* and *Kara* lakes, the *Uliungur*, and others in the north-west of Mongolia. From the northern mountains of Mongolia also the Yenisei receives its head streams, the *Ulu kem*, and the *Selenga* flowing from the high lake called the *Kos-gol*; and the shallow *Kerulen*, flowing along the northern edge of the plateau, feeds the *Dalai Nor* on the north-eastern border of Mongolia, whence the *Argun* river flows to the Amur.

29. *Climate*.—The climate of the Mongolian plateau is excessive or continental in a very high degree. At all seasons of the year there is a great daily variation of temperature, which, along with its deficient rainfall, accounts for its barren character. In October large portions of the country are covered with snow, bitterly cold north-east winds sweep over it, and in the depth of winter the temperature scarcely rises above the freezing point;<sup>1</sup> in summer the midday temperature is correspondingly high. Whirlwinds of sand are frequent in April.

30. *People*.—The inhabitants of Mongolia, thinly scattered over its infertile surface, fall into three chief divisions—(1) The *Khalkas* of the northern side of the plateau, and of the upper valleys of the streams which flow northward towards the Siberian plain, who are types of the pure Mongol race, shown in their high cheek bones, round flat faces, oblique eyes, scanty hair, and square thick set figure. The Khalkas are purely nomadic and pastoral, hating a settled life, and despising agriculture: their wealth is in their flocks and herds, their favourite domestic animal the horse, their habitation the “yurt” or felt tent; (2) The *Suniteh*, who roam over the south-eastern region of the Gobi; and (3) The *Chakhars*, *Tumets*, *Ordos*, *Oluths*, and *Turguths*, who occupy the plateau south of the Gobi outside the great wall of China: this section lives in close intercourse with the Chinese who have extended their agricultural colonies beyond the great wall, and by frequent intermarriage with these have lost to a great extent the distinctive Mongol type, imitating the Chinese in dress and manners, but not in industry, being for the most part rogues and thieves, who make the passage through the southern region difficult for travellers.

The Mongols pay no tribute to China, but are liable to military service, and the country is accordingly divided into *banners* or districts under the control of Mandarins of high rank. The Khalkas are also grouped under their own hereditary princes, who claim descent from Genghiz Khan.<sup>2</sup> The Chinese have colonies in the small towns of northern Mongolia, at *Urga*, the “camp” in the basin of the Selenga river, a town of tents, with a few Chinese houses surrounded by a palisade; and at *Uliassutai*, 500 miles west of it, a straggling town of Chinese houses and “yurts.” These places are also the residences of the high civil governors of Mongolia. *Kobdo*, still farther west, near the Kara lake, has a Chinese fort and trading town surrounded by a crowd of Mongol tents.

In religion the Mongols are Buddhists, and almost every third man among them belongs to one or other of the lower grades of the Lama priesthood, who exercise almost unlimited influence over their secular brethren, and are consulted in every trivial affair of ordinary life. At Urga a *Kutuktu*, archbishop or cardinal, resides: this is the headquarters of Lamaism in Mongolia, and a pilgrimage to this place is considered only second to one made to Lhasa in Tibet.

<sup>1</sup> At Uliassutai, 5736 feet above the sea, Mr. Ney Elias found that in November the thermometer seldom rose to 20° F. even in the middle of the day.

<sup>2</sup> The Khanates of the Khalkas tribes, in order from Zungaria west to Manchuria east, are Kobdo, Tangnu Ulianghai, Zassaktu, Sannoin or Uliassutai, Tuchetu or Urga, and Tsetsen.



31. **Trade.**—The Mongols are best known to Europeans along the trade route which leads across the country in a direct line from the gate of *Kalgan* in the great wall of China, north of Peking, by way of *Urga* to the Russian frontier at the contiguous frontier trading stations of *Maimatchin* and *Kiakhta*, near the Selenga river on the border of Siberia. On this route they act as guards and camel drivers to the camel caravans which carry tea, silks, porcelain, and rhubarb, 900 miles across the desert. At *Maimatchin*, which is a thoroughly Chinese town in contrast to Russian *Kiakhta* beside it, but on the opposite side of the frontier line, a great trade is carried on, especially at the winter fair in December, in exchanging teas and other southern produce for furs, woollen cloths, and linens, brought thither by the Russians.

Another very important trade route, which is not yet frequented, but which, from its more direct line, will probably become the great highway of trade between China and Russia, is that which passes from *Lan-chou*, the capital of *Kansu*, the innermost province of China proper, through the great wall at the gate of *Kia-yu*, by way of the oases of *Hami* and *Barkul*, at the eastern extremity of the *Thian Shan* range; and thence northward across western Mongolia to the Russian frontier at *Zaisan*, near the lake of that name, from which the navigable *Irtish* river flows to join the *Obi*.

#### ZUNGARIA.

32. To the west of Mongolia, between the *Altai* on the north and the *Thian Shan* on the south, and the Russian boundary of central Asia on the west, lies the territory called *Zungaria*, formerly the powerful kingdom of the *Zungares* (from *Zun-gar* = left-hand, or left wing of the Mongols) which has been in the hands of the Chinese, with interruptions, since 1759, when it was placed under military colonies of south-eastern Mongol tribes, and peopled in part by exiles from China. The Chinese call it *Thian-shan pe-lu*, the land north of the *Thian Shan*.

33. It is a region of high mountain basins enclosing lakes, and on the west forms the upper valleys of the rivers which flow down to western Siberia and the low steppes of central Asia. Here the *Black Irtish*, flowing to the *Zaisan* lake on the other side of the Russian boundary, and the *Ili* river, the chief feeder of the *Balkash* salt-lake, take their rise. The valley of the latter river, the most fertile and populous division of *Zungaria*, including the town of *Kulja*, was occupied by the Russians during the disturbed period of the *Tungan* rebellion in 1871. The Chinese later recovered their hold of the northern and central divisions of *Zungaria*, those called *Tarbagatai* and *Kur-kara-usu*; and by virtue of a treaty concluded with Russia in 1881, they have obtained possession of the remainder on condition of indemnifying Russia for the expenses of the temporary occupation. *Kulja*, and the country around, has a mixed population of *Taranjis*, or descendants of penal colonists, banished hither by the Chinese a century ago; and there are also *Tungans*, Chinese, *Kalmucks*, *Kirghiz*, etc., many of whom have preferred emigration to a return under Chinese rule.

The chief settlements in the country are those which lie along the trade route that traverses the northern base of the *Thian Shan*, passing westward from *Barkul* in the extreme north of the province of *Kansu*, through the posts *Gachen* and *Manas* to *Kur-kara-usu*, whence there are lines of communication westward to the *Ili* valley, and northward over the mountains to

the Chinese frontier fort of *Chugutchak*, and to the Russian border post of Zaisan. By these lines a considerable caravan traffic is maintained with the Russian central Asiatic provinces and with the eastern parts of European Russia. Tea is brought from inner China by the above-mentioned route to Chugutchak, and is carried thence by Kalmuck caravans of as many as seventy camels, across the Kirghiz steppes to the frontier markets near the Ural.

#### EASTERN TURKESTAN.

34. We now come to the most westerly portion of the Chinese empire, the Mohammedan rulers of which, claiming descent from Genghiz Khan, were first subjugated in 1758 ; this is the large territory known as *Eastern Turkistan*, or *Chinese Tartary*, which, during its period of independence of Chinese rule from 1864 to 1877, attracted great attention both from the side of British India and from that of the Russian provinces of western Turkestan.

35. *Landscape*.—The Chinese name this region *Thian-shan-nan-lu*, the country south of the Thian Shan. This range encloses it on the north ; westward rises the high edge of the *Pamir* plateau, and on the south the *Kuen-lun* range extends away eastward to join the Nan-shan on the borders of China, forming a northward slope of the great Tibetan plateau comparable with that of the Himalayan descent on the south. Eastern Turkestan thus appears like a huge bay closed by a barrier of the highest mountains of Asia, north, west, and south, but opening out in the east to the wide steppe land of the interior of the Asiatic plateau and towards the vast “dry sea” of the Gobi desert. Though from its complete enclosure the country is almost rainless, there extends round the base of the mountains a crescent of fertile land, which is watered by the streams descending from the mountain snows and glaciers, many of which are exhausted of their supplies in filling a network of irrigation canals. This cultivated border, which lies at a general elevation of about 4000 feet above the sea, is exceedingly rich in wheat-fields and orchards, as well as in cotton, flax, hemp, and other products. All the inner basin of the country within the fertile crescent at the base of the mountains is, however, of the same character as the Gobi of Mongolia of which it forms part, though it is known more commonly as the *Takla Makan* desert.

36. *Rivers*.—The chief of the streams flowing from the mountains at the head of the great bay of Eastern Turkestan are those named from the towns on their banks, the *Kashgar-Daria*, the *Yarkand-Daria*, and the *Khotan-Daria* ; these three unite eastward to form the *Tarim* river, which takes its way through the desert for 500 miles to terminate in the great marshes called the *Kara Burun* and *Lob Nor* in the very heart of the continent.

37. *Climate*.—The great features of the climate of Eastern Turkistan are the extreme dryness of the atmosphere at all seasons, its insignificant rainfall, the dust clouds which frequently obscure its atmosphere, the periodical winds of spring and autumn blowing down from the mountains towards the central basin, the intensity of the sun’s heat, and the great extremes of temperature. Yet the climate must have been much more favourable two thousand years ago, when the Tarim basin, including the present Takla Makan desert, was a fertile, thickly-peopled region, a great centre of Chinese, Hindu, and Græco-Bactrian culture. After remaining for ages buried in the devouring sands, some of its flourishing cities have now been recovered by the explorations of Sven Hedin and Dr. Stein in the districts south of the Tarim, and by



Dr. Lecoq in those near Turfan north of that river. Numerous records on wooden and leather tablets, in Chinese, Tibetan, Sanskrit, and other languages, besides the frescoes on the crumbling walls, show plainly that the ruins belong to the Buddhist period, and that this region already belonged politically to China (M. A. Stein, *Sand-buried Ruins of Khotan*, 1903).

38. **Towns.**—From the seven cities which lie round the habitable crescent, the country has also been named *Jetyshahr*. In order, from south round to east, these are *Khotan* or *Ilchi*, *Yarkand*, *Yung-i-hissar*, *Kashgar*, *Ush Turfan*, *Aksu*, and *Kune Turfan*, the farthest east. Of these, the fortified capital of Kashgar in the extreme west, and Yarkand, the great commercial city of eastern Turkestan, 100 miles south-east of the capital, are the most important.

39. **Trade Routes.**—Of the difficult passes communicating with India, the most frequented is the *Karakoram Pass* (18,550 ft.), on the route from Lash on the Indus to Ilchi, or to Yarkand; across the high Pamir in the west trade is carried on with the Oxus valley; north-westward the Thian Shan is crossed on a route from Kashgar to Kokand and the valley of the Syr Daria, by the difficult *Terek Pass*, and northward between Aksu and Kulja by the *Muzart Pass*. In the bazaars of Yarkand are seen the silks and teas of China; cloths and sugar, which have come over the north-western passes of the Thian Shan from European Russia; and Manchester goods, which have found their way over the Western Himalaya.

#### TIBET.

40. Despite the still partly maintained policy of exclusion, our knowledge of Tibet has been greatly enlarged in recent years (1880-1907), thanks to several successful expeditions, which have crossed the plateau in almost every direction. Tibet embraces the great highland region which is marked out by the high edges of the Kuen-lun and Nan-shan mountains in the north and the Himalaya on the south, reaching westward to the convergence of these ranges on the Pamir plateau, and eastward to where the highland begins to break down on the inner borders of China proper. The area embraced by this vast highland, which appears to have an average elevation of about 15,000 feet above the sea, is nearly seven times the extent of Great Britain.

41. **Physical Features.**—The general aspect of the plateau, as revealed by the explorations of several European and American travellers, and by the surveys of the "pandits" travelling secretly in the service of the British Indian Government, appears to be that of bare grassy plains or wide basins, often enclosing large sheets of water, sometimes fresh, but most frequently salt, separated and enclosed by ranges of gigantic snow-clad mountains. In the uninhabited portions large herds of wild asses, antelopes, and the great wild sheep,<sup>1</sup> help to relieve the monotony of the landscape; the wealth of the nomadic and thinly scattered inhabitants is in their yaks, goats, and sheep, with which they move about from one pasture to another. Winter covers the heights with snow, and seals up the rivers, lakes, and streams in hard enduring frost; very slight summer rains fall in July and August.

42. The north-eastern portion of this region immediately south of the

<sup>1</sup> The *Ovis ammon*, or Argal, long-legged, and standing as high as a calf, with immense horns, "so large that the fox is said to take up his abode in their hollows when detached and bleaching on the barren mountains of Tibet."

Nan-shan mountains, and adjoining the Chinese province of Kansu on the south-west, surrounds the great lake called the *Kuku-nor*, and is known to the Chinese as *Sing-hai*. This is the land of the *Tangutans*, a race closely allied to the Tibetans. They resemble gypsies in appearance, and live in black tents; they are distinct from the Mongols, and are as far beneath them as the Mongols are below the Chinese; they prefer a nomadic to a settled life, and are chiefly engaged in pastoral pursuits; many of them, however, are notorious robbers. *Kuku-nor*, the "blue lake," fed by streams from the Nan-shan, is about 200 miles in circumference, and lies at an elevation of 10,500 feet above the sea, surrounded by mountains. An island near its south-western shore is inhabited by hermit Lamas, whose only communication with the shore is in winter over the ice, there being no boats on the lake. A great marshy plain called the *Zaidam*, about 150 miles in length, shuts off this district from the rest of Tibet.

43. The great features of Southern Tibet<sup>1</sup> are given by the high valleys of the *San-po*, or Upper Brahmaputra, flowing east, and of the *Indus*, flowing north-west, embracing between them the huge mass of the Himalaya, where they turn south to descend to the plains of India. The valleys of the eastern border of the great plateau, where forest-covered slopes and deep gorges take the place of the grassy plains, also give rise to most of the great streams of south-eastern Asia—the Salwin and Mekhong of Farther India, and the Yang-tse and Hoang-ho of China. One of the largest of the lakes of Central Tibet is the *Tengri-nor*, locally called the *Nam-cho*, or "sky lake," from its great altitude (15,190 feet above the sea). *Tengri-nor*, 50 miles long by 20 broad, is the easternmost link in a vast lacustrine chain, which stretches for hundreds of miles north-west and south-east across the plateau, and which includes the large lakes Garing, Kyaring, Chargat, Dangra-yum, Horpa, probably the highest on the globe (17,930 feet), and many others. At present all have an inland drainage, but they appear to be the remains of a vast basin which formerly discharged eastwards to the Pacific. Separated by the *San-po* from this system is the ring-shaped Lake *Palti*, or *Yomdok*, divided into two basins by a peninsula which was formerly supposed to be an island. Springs, with temperatures varying from 130° to 180° Fahr., and geysers which eject their hot sulphurous waters, contrasting in the depth of winter with the hard frozen streams, are other natural curiosities of the plateau.

44. **People.**—The Tibetans are described as of middle stature, with long dark hair, little beard, small slit-like eyes, high cheek bones, small nose, large mouth, and thin lips; pliant, like the Chinese, strong, like the Tatars, but false and treacherous. It is due less to the Chinese Government than to the Tibetan lamas that the exclusive policy is still upheld. Lamaism weaves itself into every concern of life, and its very numerous priests are the true rulers of the land; so much is this the case that the few towns of Tibet are largely collections of temples and monasteries. The Dalai Lama, spiritual head of the hierarchy, had his seat at *Lhasa* till 1904, when he fled to China on the occupation of that place by the British expedition under Sir F. Younghusband. *Lhasa*, which stands on a level plain 12,300 feet above the sea, has a lay population of only 10,000, besides about 20,000 priests in the various lamaseras, the most conspicuous of which is the large *Potala*, the "Tibetan Vatican," dwarfing everything with its stupendous massive walls and gilded roof glittering in the bright Tibetan atmosphere. Another great monastic town is *Shigatse*, on the south side of the *San-po*, about 200 miles south-west of *Lhasa*, the residence of the Tesho or Bogdo

<sup>1</sup> This term, which is of very uncertain origin, is unknown to the natives, who call the country *Bod-yul*, "Land of the Bod," i.e. of the Tibetan race. Tibet is the *Si-tsang* of the Chinese.

Lama, who is nearly equal in spiritual authority to the Dalai : its monasteries harbour more than 3000 priests. About 500 miles east of Lhasa, on a tributary valley of the upper Yang-tse, near the frontier of China proper, stands the great monastery of *Lithang*, the residence of about 3500 priests.

45. **Government.**—A Chinese viceroy, the Amban, resides in Lhasa, and represents the temporal authority of the Emperor. Chinese garrisons and forts are also maintained at various strategical points. The chief administrative divisions appear to be U, in which is Lhasa, the political and religious capital ; Nari-Khorsum, comprising all western Tibet, with chief town Gartok ; Chang, or Utsang, in the south, chief town Shigatse, on the San-po ; Jyade, the "Chinese Province," in the east, which enjoys a large measure of self-government, and which is the centre of the pre-Buddhist Bonbo religion.

46. **Trade.**—The chief place in the western province of Tibet is *Gartok*, in the upper valley of the Indus, a summer camp of about 200 tents, chiefly belonging to traders. A well-maintained high road extends along the valley of the San-po from Lhasa to this point, and by this the Chinese officials keep up communications for 800 miles along the plateau behind the Himalaya, post-houses or *tarjums* being maintained at every stage of 20 to 60 miles. Yak caravans, sometimes numbering 1000 animals, traverse this highway. Near Gartok are the chief gold-fields of Tibet. The most important is that of *Thok Jalung*, at the great altitude of 16,300 feet above the sea.

The above-mentioned British expedition of 1904 was brought about by the non-observance of the commercial treaties of 1890 and 1893 on the part of the Tibetans. The mission sent with an escort to arrange matters forced its way into Lhasa, where a convention was signed providing for the opening of marts at *Yatung*, *Gyangtse*, and *Gartok* for Tibetan and British trade, for the demolition of forts on the trade routes, for the settlement of an equitable customs tariff, for the payment of an indemnity of £167,000, the Tibetans further engaging not to sell or lease territory to any foreign power, nor to subject Tibetan affairs to foreign interference without the consent of the British. The convention was ratified at Peking in 1906, and practically accepted by Russia in the Anglo-Russian Agreement of 1907.

Besides being the greatest place of pilgrimage in Central Asia, and partly on this account, Lhasa is a great trading centre. Here in December merchants from all the surrounding countries congregate : silks, carpets, and porcelain, but especially tea, are brought from China by way of the monastery of *Lithang* and the trading town of *Bathang*, the brick tea being ferried across the Yang-tse and its tributaries in large baskets covered with hides. Musk comes from the country north-east of Lhasa ; gems and gold lace, sheep and horses, from Turkestan ; rice and tobacco, corals, pearls, and spices, from India by way of Sikkim ; saffron from Kashmir in the west.

## KOREA.<sup>1</sup>

1. The kingdom which occupies the large peninsula of Korea projecting southwards from Manchuria was from remote times recognised as an outlying dependency of China. But the Chinese suzerainty had always been contested by Japan, and the conflicting

<sup>1</sup> From *Kora*, the name of an ancient state in the northern part of the peninsula the native name is *Chô-sen*, or "Morning Calm." The Chinese call the country *Tung-king*, or "Eastern Kingdom."

claims of these states were the ostensible cause of the Chino-Japanese war of 1894-5. The main object of Japan was the expulsion of the Chinese and the establishment of a protectorate in anticipation of a Russian extension southwards. Both her objects were achieved, and one of the results of the Russo-Japanese war of 1904-5 was Russia's recognition of Japan's paramount interests in Korea, which, despite the late sovereign's assumption of the title of "Emperor" in 1897, is now virtually a political dependency of Japan.

**2. Physical Features.**—Korea, which is about 600 miles long from north to south, with a mean breadth of 150 miles,<sup>1</sup> is separated from Manchuria northwards by the lofty *Shan-yan-alin* or *Paik-tu-san* ("White-Crested Mountain") range, and north-westwards, where the land is lower and access more easy, by a belt of neutral and uninhabited territory, about 25 miles wide, extending from the high mountains south to the bay of Korea.

All along the eastern or Pacific margin of the peninsula there extends a chain of high mountains with an almost precipitous slope to the sea on this side, forming the backbone of the peninsula, like the Apennines of Italy. One of the peaks, measured by our hydrographers in coasting along, was found to be 8114 feet above the sea;<sup>2</sup> another is 6310 feet, and several exceed 5000 feet. The country slopes gradually from this eastern range westward towards lowlands which border the Yellow Sea, and while the high outer coast is free from islands, the lower, inner, side is fringed with numbers of these. The largest Korean island, however, is the mountainous one called *Che-ju* or *Quelpart*, which rises 50 miles south of the extremity of the peninsula, and which has a length of 45 miles.

**3. Rivers.**—The chief rivers of the peninsula, which may be compared generally with those of England in length, flow naturally from the high eastern range towards the inner Yellow Sea, the longest from north to south being the *Am-nok-gang* (or *Ya-lu* of the Chinese), the *Tai-dong*, and the *Han*, which may be called the Thames of Korea, since the capital town of Seoul<sup>3</sup> is on its banks. Another important river, the *Tiu-mên*, occupies a valley in the extreme north-eastern portion of Korea, flowing northwards between the Shan Alin and the coast range, and bending suddenly south-eastward through a gap to reach the Pacific south of Possiette Bay, and to form the boundary at its mouth between the Russian maritime province and the Korean territory. A smaller river (*Hwang-dun-gang*), called by the Chinese *Tsin-kiang*, drains the extremity of the peninsula southward to the strait which separates it from Japan, reaching the sea to the west of the Japanese port and colony of Fusan.

**4. Climate.**—The climate of a country so varied in elevation must be very diverse; though the peninsula lies between more southerly latitudes than Italy, its average annual temperature is not higher than that of the British Isles, while the extremes of heat and cold in winter and summer are much wider apart. The hot, moist, south-west monsoon blows in the summer half

---

<sup>1</sup> Area, 82,000 sq. miles; population estimated (1906) at 12 millions.

<sup>2</sup> It was named by them Hien Fung, after the emperor who was reigning in China at the time; this of course is not the Korean native name.

<sup>3</sup> Seoul (Seyul, Seoul) means "capital." The town is also known as Han-yang or "fortress on the Han," and Kyöng, after its province.

of the year, but the temperature does not rise so high as in the corresponding parts of the plain of China; the northerly winds of winter bring frosts that freeze the northern rivers Tiu-mên and Ya-lu so hard that horses and heavy baggage cross them with perfect safety. Even in the extreme south the winter cold seems to be excessive.<sup>1</sup>

5. **Products.**—The northern and eastern mountain regions seem to be forest-covered and thinly peopled, but the lowlands of the west yield rice, besides buckwheat, barley, and millet, tobacco, hemp, and cotton. The important product of the country in its traffic with China is, however, the *Ginseng* plant, the root of which is highly esteemed by the wealthier Chinese as a remedy for almost all diseases, and is regarded as possessing extraordinary virtues. The royal tiger and panther are so numerous that their skins form an important article of commerce with foreigners through Chinese traders; stags, musk-deer, foxes, hares, wild hogs, and wolves, are abundant, and the skins of sables from Korea form a prominent article in the tribute to the Emperor of China. Troops of monkeys are encountered in the south. Ponies and large oxen are the domestic animals, sheep being almost unknown. Whales and seals frequent the coasts in winter, and are taken by the Korean fishers. Gold appears to be so abundant that it bears a much smaller value in proportion to silver than it does with us; lead, iron, and coal are also mined and used with skill.

6. **People.**—Belonging to the same Mongolian family the Koreans resemble the Chinese in feature, but have generally a fairer complexion. Their civilisation has been derived from that of China, and the Chinese language and Confucian philosophy are studied by the “literati” of Korea. The ordinary language of the Koreans, unlike that of the Chinese, is written with a phonetic alphabet, but the Chinese characters are employed for “great letters.” Buddhism is the popular religion.

7. **Government.**—Since the time of Genghis Khan (A.D. 1218), the kings of Korea had as a rule received investiture at the hands of the rulers of China, but in course of time this ceremony had become a mere formality, and since the Russo-Japanese war of 1904-5 Japan has established a complete overlordship in Korea, controlling all its foreign relations, guaranteeing its territorial integrity, and maintaining diplomatic and financial advisers in the capital. In 1907 they deposed the first “Emperor” and placed his son, the Crown Prince, on the throne. The eight historical provinces have been abolished, and the country is now administered in 23 *pu* (counties) and 386 *kün* (districts).

8. **Trade.**—Until within the last few years all legitimate external traffic was confined to dealings with China and Japan; but a large contraband trade was kept up by Chinese junks from Shan-tung, the nearest Chinese promontory to Korea. The Chinese trade was carried on by the merchants who were permitted to accompany the caravan which annually carried tribute to the court of Peking, and to the fairs held at stated intervals on the frontier. At present the Japanese Government regulates all commercial matters, and to it belong the 600 miles of railway which traverse the peninsula from Fusan through Seoul to the Yalu, and connect the capital with Chemulpo.

In 1866 Korea came into hostile collision with France, who undertook to avenge the execution of her missionaries, but was forced to retire discomfited. The Americans, in 1871, fared no better, and it was reserved for the Japanese to conclude the first modern treaty of commerce with long-closed Korea (1876). The Americans secured similar privileges by a treaty concluded

<sup>1</sup> A Japanese reports that in January 1876 the thermometer at Fusan fell as low as -22° F.



in 1882; and England and the other powers have since followed suit. By these treaties *Fusan* on the south coast, *Gen-san* (Yuensan) on the east coast, and *Chemulpo* (Jenchuan) on the west coast and near the capital, were made open ports. Already a considerable trade has sprung up, the exports consisting of rice, beans, skins, gold dust, whalebone, ginseng, and raw silk, in exchange for which the Koreans are supplied with manufactured articles. *Port Hamilton*, on a small island off the south coast of Korea, was acquired by England in 1884, but has since been abandoned.

## JAPAN.<sup>1</sup>

1. We now come to what is in many respects the most interesting portion of Mongolian Asia, the Empire of Japan, remarkable alike for the proud isolation which it so long maintained, and for the extraordinary advances which it has made since its renewal of intercourse with the civilised world in recent years.

The islands comprising it have already been likened to the British Isles in their position relative to the Continent, the Sea of Japan and the Strait of Korea resembling our North Sea and Strait of Dover. In their general extent of surface the comparison also holds good. The three contiguous islands of Japan proper are however considerably larger than Great Britain; while the northern possession of Yezo is 3000 square miles larger than Ireland.<sup>2</sup>

### JAPAN PROPER (The Islands of Hondo, Shikoku, Kiushiu).

2. Relief.—The islands are mostly volcanic, forming part of the series of loop-like chains which have risen round the eastern borders of the continent. They are generally mountainous, the numerous ranges which cover their surface extending in directions parallel to the length of the group, giving varied and picturesque landscapes of hill and valley; their irregular coast-line is indented with splendid natural harbours, such as the *Bay of Yedo* on the south-east

	Area in square miles.	Population (1908).
<sup>1</sup> Islands of Japan proper (Hondo, Shikoku, Kiushiu, etc.)	109,848	46,000,000
Yezo, or Hokkaido, and small neighbouring islands	30,562 }	840,000
Kurile Islands (Kunashir, Iturup, etc.)	5,725 }	
Liu-kiu and Bonin Islands	1,896	400,000
Formosa, ceded by China in 1895	13,300	3,000,000
Sakhalin, south half, ceded by Russia in 1905	15,000	20,000
Japanese Empire	<u>175,826</u>	<u>50,260,000</u>

<sup>2</sup> The Japanese call their country Dai-nippon, or Great Nippon, the latter word being formed from *nit*, "the sun," and *pon*, "origin," so that Nippon means the land of the "rising sun," or the east. The Chinese sign meaning the "sun rising," is pronounced Ji-pon, or Ji-pan. The name Nippon thus becomes Ji-pan in the Cantonese dialect, with which European merchants became first familiar. Hence the name Japan. The addition of *Koe* = kingdom, gives Ji-pan-koe, the original of the name Zipango, by which the country was first known in the middle ages.



coast; the beautiful "inland sea" of Japan, with its intricate channel between hundreds of islets, separates the island of Shikoku from the larger one of Hon-*to*, and the enclosed *Suwo nada* and *Buho Channel*, divide the south-western island of Kiushiu from both of these. Many of the mountains attain heights of from 3000 to 8000 feet; but two of the most prominent of all are the now extinct volcanic cone of *Fusi no Yama*, 12,400 feet, which rises snow-capped west of the capital, and which is said to be one of the youngest mountains of the world, having risen in the course of a few days about three centuries before the Christian era; and the smoking *Asama yama*, 8260 feet, near the centre of the island of Nippon.

3. *Rivers*.—From the mountainous character of the long narrow islands the rivers are generally impetuous, and of small economical importance, except for irrigation, and they do not exceed the average of our British streams in size. Among the most important may be noted the *Fodo-gawa*, which flows from the fiddle-shaped *Lake Biwa*, the largest fresh-water expanse in Japan, 35 miles long, to the "inland sea;" the broad and rapid *Ten-riu-gawa*, or "river of the heavenly dragon," which flows south from the central mountains of Nippon; and the *Tone-gawa*, which enters the Pacific, but sends a branch to the Bay of Yedo, which is crossed within the capital by the *Nippon Bashi*, or bridge of Japan, from which, as a starting point, all distances throughout the kingdom are measured.

4. *Climate*.—Though the islands of Japan lie more than ten degrees farther south than our islands, their average temperature is scarcely higher, and the climate, as a whole, may be compared with that of South Britain. The extremes, however, are greater, summer being hotter, and winter colder than in England, increasing to almost Siberian rigour in the north. June, July, and August form the *Satsuki*, or rainiest period; the autumn succeeding is the pleasantest and most genial season of the year. Hurricanes, storms, and fogs, are frequent in the seas round Japan, where warm and cold ocean currents also bring about great differences of sea temperature.

5. *Products*.—The islands have a very beautiful flora, to which our European gardens are indebted for many of their most ornamental plants. The great feature of the vegetation is the intermixture in it of tropical growths, such as the bamboo, palms, tree-ferns, and bananas, with those of temperate regions, the pine, oak, beech, chestnut and maple. Characteristic are the paper mulberry, the vegetable wax tree, the camphor and lacquer trees. The cultivated crops are of rice, maize, wheat, barley, tobacco, tea, and cotton.

Japan is also very rich in minerals. Gold, silver, and copper are especially abundant in the north, and coal and iron beds seem to extend throughout the group.

The animals of Japan resemble those of China. Cattle and horses are used as beasts of burden; swine are reared to be sent to China; dogs and cats, bees and silkworms, are met with in all parts, and the seas yield abundance of fish. In consequence of the dense population, and the almost universal cultivation of the soil, wild animals scarcely exist in Japan.

6. *People*.—The population of the islands of Japan proper is somewhat denser than that of Britain. The complexion of the people varies from a yellow brown to white among the upper classes; the eyes are lengthened, narrow, slightly oblique and deep-set, generally brown or black; the hair black and thick. Though proud and vindictive, the Japanese are described as friendly and good-humoured, industrious and intelligent, manly and polite. Their language, which occurs in many dialects, is remotely related to that of Korea on the continent, and many Chinese words have also become incorporated with it. The native literature is abundant and various, but the whole circle of Chinese Confucian literature has also been adopted. The philosophy of Confucius,

and more recently that of our agnostics, is held by the literati of Japan, but the mass of the people conform, at least outwardly, to the ancient *Shintoism*, in which the ancestral spirits are worshipped, or to *Buddhism*, which was introduced in the sixth century A.D. In education, as well as in matters of religion, enormous changes and advances have been made in recent years.

7. **Industries.**—Agriculture is the chief occupation of the Japanese, and they are excellent and careful farmers. In the mechanical arts also they excel, especially in the use of metals; in the manufacture of porcelain and glass-lacquered wares, and silk fabrics. As early as the seventh century they knew how to make paper, and they employ it for an immense variety of purposes, and have long understood printing from types, and in colours. They have even advanced to engineering, trigonometry, and astronomy. They possess good native maps of their country, and their almanacs foretell the appearances of eclipses of the sun and moon.

After the expulsion of the Portuguese, navigation and communication with the outer world ceased for several centuries, though the Japanese had previously been accustomed to sail in their ships to the Korea and China, and even to Java. Now, the advance they have made in this respect may be best realised from the fact that in 1878 a Japanese-built iron-clad war vessel, navigated by Japanese officers, made a voyage to England by way of Singapore, Aden, and the Suez Canal.

8. **Government.**—The *Kotei*, or Emperor, better known to Europeans by the antiquated title of *Mikado*, is the lineal descendant of Jimmu, who is said to have founded the present dynasty in 660 B.C. The empire was never governed by a second king (*Shogun*, *Taikun*, "Great Prince"), as is generally stated; but in mediæval times this Shogun, or "Feudal King," had absolute executive power over the Daimios or territorial barons. The Daimios governed their own territories, and the Shogun was chief over them, but always subject to the Mikado, who was recognised both as a sacred being and supreme ruler of Japan. The office of Shogun was hereditary for the last 300 years in the House of Tokugawa, its founder. After a short war in 1868 the power of the Daimios was broken; in 1871 the feudal system was entirely suppressed, and on 11th February 1889, the Emperor, hitherto absolute, granted a Constitution to the nation with an Imperial Diet of an Upper and a Lower House. The old territorial estates were also swept away and the empire divided into 46 districts (43 Kens and 3 Fus), administered by governors and *cho*, i.e. city and county magistrates.

9. **Trade.**—Within the country there is a system of excellent Government highroads, the milestones along which are numbered from the bridge in the capital city of Yedo or Tokio. Since 1875, when the first line was built, the railway system has been greatly developed, over 5000 miles being open in 1906; and telegraphs connect the chief ports with the Asiatic lines. By treaties concluded since 1854 at various times, the ports of *Yokohama* (pop., 1903, 326,000), on the Bay of Yedo; *Nagasaki*, on the west coast of Kiushiu; *Kobe* and *Ozaka*, on the "Inland Sea"; *Hakodate*, on the southern extremity of Yezo, in the north; *Niigata*, *Tokio*, and twenty-four special export ports have been opened to foreign trade, and the Anglo-Japanese commercial treaty of 1894 provides for "the most favoured nation treatment" between the two countries. The trade of Japan is developing at a rapid rate, and is now carried on with all civilised States, but chiefly with the British Empire, China, the United States, and Germany. In 1906 the total exports were £42,400,000 (cotton, silks, matches, camphor, coal, etc.); imports, £41,900,000 (raw cotton, rice, woollens, hardware, machinery, etc.).

10. The temporal capital of Japan, and its most extensive city, is the wood-built town of *Yedo* or *Tokio* (1,518,000), spreading over a large area in a broad valley at the head of the Gulf of Yedo. Till recently the sacred Mikado shut himself up mysteriously in his palace at *Miako* or *Kioto* (380,000), an inland city near Lake Biwa, about 200 miles south-west of Tokio. *Osaka* (996,000), south-west of it, on a land-locked bay of the Inland Sea, has been called the "Venice of Japan," from its many canals and bridges. *Kobe*, which forms one town with *Hiogo*, is the port of Kioto. *Shimonoski*, at the western narrows of the strait between Nippon and Kiushiu, is a strongly-fortified port. It faces the *Tsushima* islands, where the Russian fleet was destroyed by the Japanese in 1905.

### YEZO.

11. The northern island of Yezo is not an integral part of Japan, but rather a dependency or colony, towards which the attention of the Government was directed after the Russians began to extend their dominion over the neighbouring shores of the continent.

It is in general mountainous and covered with forests similar in kind to those of the south of Scotland—beech, ash, and pine, besides elm and maple, and dwarf bamboo. Like the other islands of this chain, it is volcanic, and the bay formed by its southern peninsula, next Nippon, is named Volcano Bay, from the three fine volcanoes on its shores, two of which are in active eruption. The *Ishikari*, flowing south-west, is the chief river of Yezo.

The island appears to have great natural wealth of gold, silver, iron, petroleum, and coal; but its capabilities are undeveloped, roads and communications being deficient as yet.

12. A warm ocean current sets from the south up the western side of the island, while a cold stream from the Sea of Okhotsk flows along the eastern shores. Thus the western borders enjoy a more favourable climate, the eastern being often cold and foggy.

The Japanese colonists do not form more than about a fifth of the population, and live in villages along the southern coasts. Most of them engage in the productive fisheries (salmon and herring), and in gathering large quantities of seaweed and sea slugs (*irico*) for home consumption and export to China, and return to their homes on the main island when the season is over. All the interior is inhabited by the *Ainus*, a race of Caucasian origin quite distinct from the Mongolian stock. While these have beardless faces and oblique eyes, the Ainus are distinguished by a profusion of black hair, which mingles with the thick beards that fall almost to their waists, and their eyes are large and round. These barbarians make garments from bark, and are employed in the chase or in fishing.

13. *Hakodate*, the most northerly port open to foreign trade, is situated on the southern peninsula of the island of Yezo, on a bay of the strait of Tsugaru, which separates it from the northern coast of Nippon. It is the great resort of the whaling ships of these seas. *Matsumaye*, forty miles south-west of it, is, however, the chief centre of population.

## KURILE ISLANDS.

## (JAPANESE CHI-SIMA.)

14. The Japanese had also settled on some parts of the southern Kurile Islands, the volcanic chain which reaches from Yezo north-eastward to the southern cape of Kamtchatka, and the south of the island of Sakhalin. In 1876 the Russian Government, desiring the complete possession of the latter island, effected an exchange with Japan, giving to it the Kuriles for south Sakhalin. This, however, was restored to Japan by the treaty of Portsmouth, U.S., 1905. By the same treaty Russia ceded to Japan the lease of *Port Arthur* with *Dalny* and adjacent territory, besides the section of the Manchurian railway from *Chan-chun* south to Port Arthur.

The Kurile chain, in which *Yeterop* or *Iturup*, *Urup*, *Simusir*, *Onkotan*, and *Paramusir*, are the chief islands, is, like Yezo, mountainous and wooded, and inhabited by Ainus, who maintain themselves by hunting and fishing, the products of which they barter with Russian, American, and Japanese traders.

## LIU-KIU AND BONIN ISLANDS AND FORMOSA.

On the opposite side of Japan from the Kurile chain another long archipelago reaches southward in a curve towards Formosa. This chain, called the *Liu-kiu* by the Japanese and *Lu-chu* by the Chinese, has been tributary to Japan for more than seven centuries. Since 1872, however, their native sovereign has been reduced to the rank of a Governor of the islands as a province of Japan.

15. The chain forms four distinct groups—(1) Round the larger islands of *Tanega* and *Yokuno* on the north; (2) the *Sanbok* (i.e. "Northern") Islands or *Liu-kiu* proper; (3) the *Siu-san* or middle group; (4) the *San-nan* or southern islands, nearest to Formosa. The Great *Liu-kiu* island in the middle group may be compared in size to the Isle of Man. They are hilly throughout (*Yokuno* Island rises to 6345 feet), have a delightful climate, fertile soil, and varied landscape, with vegetation partly tropical. The natives are a cultured people allied to the Japanese in type, speech, and religion. *Siuli* or *Shiuri*, on the great *Liu-kiu*, is the capital of the province; and *Nawa*, south of it, is the port which is open to foreign commerce.

16. **Bonin Islands.**—A small group in the Pacific, formerly a penal settlement, but colonised since 1876; capital *Port Lloyd* in Peel Island.

17. **Formosa.**—Acquired in 1895 (see p. 285), is 240 miles long north and south, and has an area of over 13,000 square miles with an estimated population of 3,000,000, mostly Chinese settled on the western lowlands. The land rises eastwards to the densely wooded central and eastern highlands

with peaks (Morrison, Sylvia, Ta-shan) rising to 12,000 or even 12,800 feet. This upland region is but little known, being sparsely inhabited by fierce wild tribes of Malay stock.

*Note.*—The Anglo-Japanese treaty of alliance of 1902 was renewed on a broader basis for ten years in 1905. Its main object is the maintenance of peace in Eastern Asia and India, the preservation of the integrity of China, and the maintenance of the "open door" policy, that is, the commercial and industrial relations of all nations with China on a footing of perfect equality. It also provides for mutual aid in case of unprovoked attack by any other power.

## INDIAN ASIA.

### INDIA.

1. On beginning a closer study of the geography of India, the first point about which we must endeavour to obtain a clear conception is that of its great extent. From the line of the Himalaya southward to its extreme cape on the Indian Ocean, India occupies a space more than *fifteen* times as large as our island of Britain; a journey across it from north to south, or from east to west, would require half a year travelling ten miles a day. The Himalaya are as distant from Cape Comorin as Iceland is from Spain.

2. The natural landward boundaries of this vast region are the range of the *Himalaya* on the north, forming the steep southern edge of the plateau of Tibet; on the north-west the *Sulaiman* mountains, the edge of the plateau of Afghanistan and Baluchistan, where it descends to the plains of the Indus; and on the east the heights of southern Assam, dividing the drainage to the Brahmaputra from that of the valley of the Irawadi in Burma. From the mouths of the Indus on the west, and of the Brahmaputra and Ganges on the east, the south-west coast<sup>1</sup> next the Arabian Sea, and the south-east<sup>2</sup> shores of the Gulf of Bengal inclining towards the same point, meet at Cape Comorin. The landward and seaward borders have each nearly the same length of about 3000 miles, so that India is half a maritime, half a continental country. It is remarkable also that just as the approaches to India from all parts of inner Asia must be made by descending difficult mountain passes, so its straight sea-beaten coasts, notwithstanding their length, are deficient in good harbours, and often dangerous to those attempting to land on them.

3. *Relief.*—The most prominent feature in the relief of India is the great range of snowy peaks named the *Himalaya*, or "abode of snow," which rises on

<sup>1</sup> Or *Malabar* coast, from the southern maritime district of that name.

<sup>2</sup> Named the *Coromandel* coast in the south, from an ancient kingdom; the *Golconda* coast between the mouths of the Krishna and Mahanadi, and the *Orissa* coast beyond to the Ganges.



the edge of the Tibetan plateau, above the northern plains, stretching out in a continuous chain for nearly 1800 miles. The mean height of this portion of the borders of the Tibetan plateau, defined very clearly by the channels of the Indus and the Brahmaputra, is estimated at 13,000 feet; the mean breadth of its base is about 150 miles. Its summits rise to 29,000<sup>1</sup> feet, and most of the difficult passes ascending from the valleys and gorges of the Indian side are not lower than about 16,000 feet. In front of the ascent there are the *Sivalik* or sub-Himalayan ranges, and between the last of these and the plains of India there extends a broad strip of marshy land called the *Tarai*, covered with forest and jungle, crowded with wild animals, though so malarious as to prevent its being inhabited by man. On the north-west the *Sulaiman* mountains present a steep and forest-covered face, and reach up to an elevation of 11,300 feet in their summit called the Takht-i-Sulaiman. Near the north-west angle of the Panjab, where these mountains approach nearest to the Himalaya, a group of hills called the *Salt Range* runs eastward from the northern extremity; it has received this (English) name because where the Indus river breaks through it by a deep channel, beds of pure salt are exposed to view.

4. Southward from the bases of the Himalaya and the Sulaiman mountains the *Great Plain of Northern India* spreads out, reaching across the whole breadth of Hindustan from the Arabian Sea to the Gulf of Bengal. Its western region has generally a dry and bare character, with a soil of clay and sand almost without stones. Here are the fine steppe-like *doabs* of the Panjab, between the fertile borders of the rivers, affording boundless grazing ground for camels, cattle, buffaloes, sheep, and goats; farther south the great Indian desert or *Thar*, covered with a succession of wave-like sandy ridges, occupies the greater part of Rajputana; beyond this, about the lower Indus, come the dusty plains of Sind, and, on the coast, the strange tract of country called the *Rann of Kach*, a level plain 150 miles in length, in which vegetation is totally absent; it forms during the greater part of the year a firm level plain of earth, saturated with salt, on which the troops of horses and camels in passing make scarcely any impression. So devoid of all landmarks is it that travellers and caravans are sometimes lost. During the south-west monsoon, however, high tides flow over it, and cover it with water to the depth of one to two feet. The eastern wing of the great plain watered by the Ganges and Brahmaputra and their many tributaries, is unlike the western, in having everywhere a richly fertile alluvial soil, in being everywhere highly cultivated, yielding great crops of sugar-cane, cotton and indigo, rice and wheat, opium, tobacco, and hemp, and supporting a dense population. At the head of the Gulf of Bengal this wing of the plain terminates in the great group of marshy islands called the *Sundarbans*, which forms the vast delta of the Ganges. These are separated by a multitude of narrow channels of brackish and salt water, and all are overgrown by low woods and jungle, sheltering tigers, wild buffaloes, wild swine, deer, and monkeys.

5. Southward of the great plain the land begins to rise again. The first elevations reached in this direction are those of the long range of the *Aravali* hills, which extends for 400 miles from north-east to south-west, marking the edge of the western section of the great plain. It is bold and precipitous on that side which falls towards the Indian desert, but less so on the south-east; its average height is about 3000 feet, Mount Abu, its summit, being 5653 feet. A prolongation of it south-westward forms the *Peninsula of Gujrat*, which projects into the Arabian Sea between the Rann of Kach and the Gulf of Kambay.

---

<sup>1</sup> Gaurisankar or Mount Everest, 29,002 feet; Mount Godwin-Austen or K. 2, in the west, 28,865 feet; Kinchinjinga, 28,156 feet; Dhawalagiri, 26,826 feet; Chumalhari, 23,944 feet.



Behind the Aravali hills lie the *Plateaus of Malwa and Bundelkhand*, extending over the country generally termed Central India; these are fertile table-lands of uneven surface elevated from 1500 to 2000 feet above the sea-level, and traversed by a number of minor hill ridges. Their southern border is marked by the range of the *Vindhya* mountains, which runs north-eastward from near the head of the Gulf of Kambay for more than 500 miles to near the Ganges in its middle course. It does not rise much higher than the plateau behind it, the highest points nowhere exceeding 5000 feet above the sea, but it descends by rugged slopes to the valley of the Nerbada flowing along its southern base. Beyond this valley, running parallel to the Vindhya for about 200 miles, is another east and west range named the *Satpura* hills, the highest summit of which, the Dhupgarh, attains 4454 feet. This range has a gentle ascent from the Nerbada, but its southern scarp towards the Tapti river is abrupt.

6. The greater part of India south of the Satpura is occupied by the wide table-land of the *Dekhan*.<sup>1</sup> The name *ghat* or *ghaut*<sup>2</sup> was originally applied by the natives to the passes in the outer slopes of the ranges, which run parallel with the two coasts of the southern portion of the great promontory of India enclosing the Dekhan, and which had to be ascended to reach the high interior country from the coast; but this name *Ghat* has been transferred to these ranges or outer edges of the table-land themselves.

The *Western Ghats*, about 800 miles in length, clothed with magnificent teak forests, form by far the boldest and most continuous escarpment of the Dekhan plateau, ascending abruptly from a low base generally at a distance of about 30 miles from the sea; beginning with a height of about 2000 feet immediately south of the Tapti river, their elevation increases southward to 4700 feet at the sanatorium of Mahalleshwar south of Bombay, and attains a maximum of nearly 7000 feet, with grand and rugged outline, and precipitous granite peaks, in the south; there they unite with the group of the *Nilgiri hills*, the central portion of which culminates in Mount Dodabetta, 8760 feet above the sea. The *Eastern Ghats* differ from the western in being much lower, in rising at a much greater distance from the coast of the Bay of Bengal, and with a gentle slope, giving access by wide openings to the interior. Their average height is about 1500, the highest point, near Madras, only about 3000 feet, above the sea. The Dekhan plateau between these supporting buttresses has thus a gradual eastward slope, and is characterised by undulating treeless plains, ridges and isolated flat-topped hills capped with basalt; large portions of it are also covered with jungle, often overgrowing the ruins of former towns and temples, but there is no extent of forest; where cultivated it yields cotton, wheat, and oil seeds in abundance, and the date palm and palmyra are found everywhere.

7. Between the Eastern Ghats and the sea lies the extensive maritime plain generally named the *Karnatic*,<sup>3</sup> reaching back from the Coromandel coast for about 50 miles. The soil of this plain proves abundantly fertile when it is watered, but there are few streams, and a supply of water for irrigation has to be stored in reservoirs against the dry season. On the south this plain, turning the base of the Eastern Ghats, leads into the remarkable *Gap of Coimbatore*, a low passage between the west and east coasts, through which a railway has been carried uniting Madras with Beypur. Northward of this river the Nilgiri mountains rise like a vast precipice; southward the *Anamalai* mountains also ascend abruptly from the valley to the highest known summit of all

<sup>1</sup> Sanscrit *Dakshina* = to the right hand, "the south."

<sup>2</sup> *Ghat*, a landing place, ford, or pass.

<sup>3</sup> From the ancient Hindu kingdom "Carnata," in which the Tamil language is spoken. This was the great theatre of the contests between France and Britain for supremacy in India.

south India, 8850 feet above the sea. From this a range of high wooded heights sometimes called the *Cardamom* mountains, from the aromatic pungent spice yielded by their forests, extends southward for 180 miles to terminate in a bold headland a little above Cape Comorin.

8. Rivers.—The grand rivers of the system of northern India—the *Ganges* and *Indus* descending from the Himalaya to water the great plain—have already been noticed in the general description of the continent.<sup>1</sup> It may give an idea of the value of the Ganges and its navigable tributaries if it is noticed that not fewer than 300,000 boatmen are believed to be occupied in its busy traffic. Large sea-going ships ascend it by the *Hugli* mouth to Chandra-nagar, above Calcutta; steamers of light draught go up to Cawnpur, and thence a canal of 350 miles in length overcomes the difficulties of navigation upward to Hardwár, 1300 miles from the sea, where the river issues from the sub-Himalayan ranges. Its great tributary the *Jumna* is navigable up to the ancient city of Delhi, and, by canals which it supplies, for 200 miles beyond that point. The fluctuations and changes, both in its channels and in the size of these at different times of the year, are very great; at Benares, for example, the depth of the Ganges varies between 35 and 78 feet, and its breadth in like proportion; the rising begins in the end of May, and is at its height in September. In July all lower Bengal near the rivers is inundated, so that the villages protected by embankments appear like islets in the wide expanse of waters dotted with craft of every sort.

9. These great northern rivers are supplied by both the melting snows of the Himalayas and by the rains carried to the mountain face by the south-west monsoon during the summer half of the year. Thus from the melting snows they begin to rise early in spring, and their depth is kept up by the succeeding rains. The rivers which rise on the highlands of the southern or peninsular portion of India, are, however, dependent on the monsoon rains alone, and thus show greater but less enduring fluctuations of level during the year. The two rivers which drain westward to the Gulf of Kambay between the Malwa plateau and the northern edge of the Dekhan, are the *Narbada* and the *Tapti*; the former, rising in the highest land of Central India, has a westerly course of 750 miles, flowing with rapidity over basalt rocks which at intervals bar its passage, forming deep pools and waterfalls. It is thus of no considerable value for navigation, and when it is swollen by the monsoon rains its current descends with devastating velocity, carrying with it uprooted tree trunks and other débris. The *Tapti*, separated from the former by the Satpura range, has a similarly rocky bed and rapid fall, and is likewise subject to sudden and tremendous floods, after which it subsides into a mere chain of pools.

10. The eastern drainage of southern India to the Gulf of Bengal has more important streams. Nearest of these to the Ganges is the *Mahanadi*<sup>2</sup> drawing its tributaries from the heights of central India, navigable by boats for nearly 400 miles during the greater part of the year, but notorious for its destructive floods. It passes the line of the Eastern Ghats by a fine gorge 40 miles in length, and thence flows quiet and deep to spread itself out in the wide delta by which it emerges into the gulf.

Next southward is the *Godavari*, the greatest river of the Dekhan, rising at Nasik on the eastern slope of the Western Ghats, not very far from Bombay, and flowing east for 900 miles. Reaching the line of the Eastern Ghats, it is imprisoned for some twenty miles in a gorge, the scenery of which has been justly compared with that of the Rhine: here it flows in a narrow deep channel with a current that sometimes lashes itself into boiling whirlpools. Escaping from this, the water spreads over the plain, and is dotted with islands,

<sup>1</sup> See p. 267.

<sup>2</sup> "Great river."

many of which are ornamented by Hindu temples. Finally, it forms one great stream between flat and highly cultivated banks, from which a network of irrigating and navigable canals is drawn off, before breaking into the numerous channels of the large delta that it has pushed out into the sea.

Like the Godavari, its neighbour river the *Krishna* rises in the inward slope of the Western Ghats, and descends the eastern edge of the plateau by a deep channel to reach the alluvial plains of the Coromandel coast. Its course of 800 miles affords scarcely any navigation, but some of its tributaries, passing through fine teak forests, are utilised for rafting down the valuable timber. The *Panar*, *Palar*, and the *Kavari*, are the other considerable rivers of this slope. The last-named has its head stream in the highest part of the Western Ghats north of the Nilgiri hills, and descends from the table-land to the eastern plain by two great falls, the upper 370, the lower 460 feet, in the midst of magnificent scenery. In the plain it is navigable for small craft during the rainy season, and is peculiarly adapted for irrigation. Its great delta, enclosed by two main branches, called the *Coleroon* (the larger) and the *Kavari* or *Cauveri*, extends along the coast opposite the northern extremity of Ceylon for 80 miles.

11. *Climate*.—The stages of climate and vegetation which succeed one another in ascending up to the snows of the Himalaya have been already noticed.<sup>1</sup> In the plains at their base, as in all the rest of India, a hot, a rainy, and a cool season of the year, are distinguished. Spring and the dry season last for four months in the Ganges valley, till in May and June the heat becomes intolerable, rising to over 100° F., long before which the great fan, called the *punkah*, must be set agoing in every house. The terrible heat is interrupted occasionally by thunderstorms from the north-west, which refresh the drooping vegetation. As soon as the southern regions of the continent have thus become heated under the northern sun, the *monsoon* winds are drawn in from the south-west. These begin to be felt in south India in June, and reach the northern plain somewhat later. Masses of cloud are seen coming up from the Indian Ocean, becoming denser as they near the land, over which they pass with strong gusts of wind, followed by incessant thunder-claps; lastly, the heavy rushing rain begins to be heard. Dull days of incessant rain now set in, till the streams and rivers swell into torrents; then follows a pleasant pause, during which the sky is dappled with clouds and all the fields show fresh green herbage; for a time the rains fall only now and then, but, renewing their strength, the downpour reaches its maximum in July, gradually decreasing thence onward till September, when the south-west monsoon ceases and retires before its opponent wind from the north-east, going out as it came, with a storm of thunder and lightning. The *north-east monsoon*, which would perhaps be more accurately termed the north-east trade-wind, now prevails, bringing with it dry cold air from the height of central Asia, giving the cool season, during which the thermometer marks an average of 65° to 70° F. over all the northern plains and the west coast of Peninsular India. This lasts from November till the middle of February, when the heat and drought again begin to be oppressive. The north-east monsoon is not, however, a dry wind in all parts of India. On the Coromandel coast, about Madras, which it reaches after passing over the wide Gulf of Bengal, gathering vapour from it, it corresponds to the south-west winds of the western side of the promontory, bringing rain to this coast from October till the end of December.

Thus two great periods, a wet and a dry, divide the year in almost all parts of India, and it is for this reason that the storage of water for irrigation and against the dry season becomes of such vital importance to the agriculture and to

<sup>1</sup> See pp. 264, 265.

the subsistence of the people of India. Hence the multitude of irrigation canals and reservoirs (tanks formed by *bunds* or dams) which have been constructed over the whole land.

The quantity of rain received by different parts of the land is very various and fluctuating; thus the wall of the Western Ghats, rearing itself up in opposition to the direction of the south-west monsoon, is deluged with rain, while the east coast receives hardly any from this direction, and at times its expected supplies fail altogether, the immediate result being a famine from the corresponding failure of the crops. The great Indian desert is almost rainless.

12. **Products.**—The variety and numbers of the vegetable products of India are so great that we can only note a few of them. The forests of the southern mountains of India along the Western and Eastern Ghats, and the lower slopes of the Himalaya, are rich in timber woods, especially the durable *teak*. The *sal*, valued for its timber, and the *bamboo*, grow abundantly, especially along the base of the great northern range; higher up are inexhaustible forests of the chestnut, maple, walnut, oak, and the graceful *deodar*. The spreading *banyan* or Indian fig, and the shady *mango*, are found near every village, the branches of the former being covered usually with monkeys, birds, and enormous bats; the *banana* and the *sugar-cane* flourish under cultivation in all parts; the finest scented *sandal-wood* grows in Mysore; the *palmyra*, the *date-palm*, and *areca* or betel palm, are the commonest of their tribe; the *bread-fruit* flourishes on the coast of Malabar.

*Rice*, *millet*, *maize*, and *wheat*, are the great grain crops; *indigo*, *opium*, *tobacco*, *oil seeds*, *flax*, and *hemp*, are cultivated for export; *pepper* and *cardamoms* are natural products of the west coast; the cultivation of *tea* in north-eastern India is rapidly increasing; *coffee* is largely grown in the Nilgiris. Innumerable sweet-scented flowers deck the fields and gardens.

13. The animal world of India is not less interesting. In some of the jungles the *elephant* lives free, and, when domesticated, is the most patient and docile of creatures; the *camel* or *dromedary* and *wild ass* belong to the dry region of the north-west; the *rhinoceros* and *buffalo*, *tigers*, *bears*, *wolves*, *wild boars*, and *monkeys*, inhabit the forests and jungles; the *lion* is now limited to the north-west, appearing only in Rajputana and Gujrat. *Deer* of many species, as well as the *bison* and *nilgai*, are abundant in the hills and forests. The *yak* inhabits the heights of the Himalaya; the *goat* is the characteristic animal of the high valleys beyond Kashmir; the *humped ox* abounds in the plains. The *birds* of India, except the peacock, are less brilliant in plumage than those of many other parts of the tropics; parrots, vultures, cranes, flamingoes, and pheasants, are the commonest. *Crocodiles* infest the river channels, and *sharks* lie in wait at their mouths; *serpents*, large and small, are very numerous, the most dreaded being that called by the Portuguese the cobra di capello, or "hooded snake."

14. Almost all the metals and minerals are represented in India, but of the useful metals, excepting iron, the quantity is not known to be large. Coal exists in many parts, especially in the north-east—at Bardwan, near Calcutta, and in Assam. *Gold* is found in Mysore, and in the sands of many streams; *copper* near Delhi and elsewhere; *salt* is obtained in large quantity from the mines in the north-west of the Panjab, and by evaporation from the coast lagoons all round India, and from salt-lakes in Rajputana; most of the precious *gems*, including diamonds, rubies, sapphires, and emeralds, are found, some abundantly, some rarely, though the supply of the once famous diamonds of Golkonda<sup>1</sup> seems to have ceased.

---

<sup>1</sup> The diamonds obtained in the mines in various parts of the Nizam's dominion were only cut and polished at Golkonda, near Haidarabad.



**15. Peoples.**—The broad division of the peoples of India, into a northern group of aryanised nations, occupying the great plains and the northern seaboard on each side, and the unaryanised inhabitants of the Dekhan plateau in southern India, has already been indicated.<sup>1</sup> This division also corresponds to that of the languages of India, separating those related to the Sanscrit, the language of the Aryan conquerors of the north, from the Dravidian and Kolarian of the south.

Between these there occur rude native tribes, of which the *Bhils* and *Gonds* are the most important, occupying the Vindhya mountains, the Malwa plateau, and the peninsula of Gujrat, which can neither be classed with one nor other of the above great groups, and who are thought to be the original inhabitants of central India; within the larger groups more than sixty distinct nationalities are recognised. To the aryanised group belong the *Bengali* and the *Assamese* in the north-east; the *Hindus* proper of the Ganges plain and the vigorous *Rajput* tribes dominant in the north-west, the dark and forbidding *Jats*, also of the north-west, the sect of the *Sikhs* in the Panjab (the best cavalry soldiers in Asia), the *Marathas*, north-west of the Dekhan, and the *Konkanese*, along the coast south of Bombay. In the southern or Dekhan group of peoples the most prominent are the *Tamilians*, whose language is spoken all over the lowland of the Karnatic; the *Teluga*, northward of the former, and the *Tuluva*, the original inhabitants of Kanara, beneath the Western Ghats.

16. Amidst such a variety of peoples, every stage, from the oldest and highest oriental civilisation down to barbarism, nearly approaching the lowest forms of savage life, is represented. The Bengali, though intellectually perhaps highest and most advanced in the arts, are weak and cringing; in contrast to these the mountaineers of the north-west are manly and energetic, the Marathas bold and industrious, the Gonds cruel and revengeful barbarians, resembling the African negroes, armed still with bows and arrows. In those parts of India which have passed directly under British rule, great efforts have been made to establish a national system of secular education, and to bring this within the reach of the lower classes. A sum of nearly a million pounds sterling is annually devoted to this end. There are well-appointed universities in Calcutta, Madras, Bombay, Allahabad, and Panjab, which are examining bodies, and to them hundreds of colleges in different parts of India are affiliated.

**17. Industries.**—Agriculture employs by far the larger proportion of the people of India; but the Hindu is not a skilled cultivator like the Chinese; he is almost always extremely poor; his rude plough is drawn by oxen or by buffaloes; the harvest is reaped with the sickle. Rice is the most extensive crop, and gives two harvests, one in August, another in December. Cotton is native of all parts of India, and large areas in the upper Ganges valley are occupied by its crop, and *jute*, formerly used only for the "gunny bags," in which almost all other products of India are packed for shipment, is now grown largely for export, to be manufactured into carpets in Europe; *silk* is also an important product of the Ganges valley.

The textile manufactures of India were famous in long past centuries throughout the civilised world; such were the gold brocades of Delhi, brought thence to imperial Rome, the muslins of Dacca, made for the Mongol Court, and the pattern-coloured cloths of Calicut (Gauchoo), the shawls of Kashmir, and the silks and carpets of Multan. All these home-made fabrics, however, have declined before the products of the great factories at home, which are now

<sup>1</sup> See p. 272.

largely introduced into the country. In Indian architecture, also, it is remarkable that the oldest examples are the finest.

18. **Trade.**—The internal trade of India is very large, and is now (1906) facilitated by 28,000 miles of railway. Between Bengal and the western countries grain is exchanged for salt and other products; the pilgrims streaming to the holy city of Benares, and to the great fair of Hardwar from all parts of India, give occasion for extensive commerce, interchanging the northern and southern local products. In the north-west corner of the Panjab, at the bridge of Attock over the Indus, and at Peshawar, the trade routes from all parts of India—road and rail from Calcutta, the navigation of the Indus from Bombay, and the route from Central India—converge to pass to Kabul and Persia, and northward to Bokhara. By these lines the English cotton cloths, crockery, and hardwares, indigo, sugar, spices, tea, and pearls, pass northward towards Turkestan; northward by Leh and the Karakoram Pass trade communications are maintained with Kashgaria: and, by the difficult Himalayan passes, with Tibet. As yet no direct trade route exists between Assam and China on the north-east. By sea in the south a busy coasting trade is maintained; corn, sugar, oil, silk, and many other products of Bengal, are exchanged for the products of the Coromandel coast, for the sandalwood and pepper of Malabar, and for the teak timber of Bombay. In 1905 the imports from Great Britain were valued at £36,000,000; the exports to Great Britain at £43,000,000, the chief items being tea, wheat, raw cotton, seeds, jute, rice, indigo, linseed, flax, and hides, for which cotton manufactured goods and iron wares are returned. A great traffic is also maintained with Ceylon, the Straits Settlements, and Singapore, and with China, to which most of the opium grown in Bengal is forwarded.

19. **Government.**—Politically India consists of—(1) Thirteen Provinces under the immediate government of Great Britain; (2) feudatory native states; (3) of a few independent native states, lying chiefly along the slope of the Himalaya; and (4) of a few small possessions remaining to France and Portugal.<sup>1</sup>

The home government of the British Indian Empire is entrusted to a Secretary of State for India, aided by a council of not less than ten members composed chiefly of men who have resided for a long period in India. The

#### <sup>1</sup> GENERAL VIEW OF THE DIVISIONS OF INDIA.

##### I. BRITISH PROVINCES—

	Area in sq. m.	Population (1901).
Burmah and Shan States . . . . .	236,738	10,490,624
Eastern Bengal and Assam* . . . . .	106,130	30,961,459
Bengal . . . . .	115,819	50,722,067
United Provinces . . . . .	107,164	47,691,782
Ajmere-Merwara . . . . .	2,711	476,912
Panjab . . . . .	97,209	20,830,389
N.W. Frontier Province . . . . .	16,466	2,125,480
Baluchistan (British) . . . . .	45,804	308,246
Bombay . . . . .	123,064	18,559,561
Central Provinces . . . . .	82,635	9,237,654
Berar and Coorg . . . . .	19,292	2,934,623
Madras . . . . .	141,726	38,209,436
Andamans and Nicobars . . . . .	3,143	24,649
Carry forward total British Provinces . . . . .	1,097,901	232,072,832

\* Constituted a separate province in 1905.



local and executive government in India itself is vested in a viceroy or governor general resident at *Calcutta*, acting under the orders of the Secretary of State, and in his council, consisting of six members who preside over the departments of foreign affairs, finance, agriculture, the interior, military administration, and public works. The governors of Madras and Bombay and the lieutenant-governor of Bengal are appointed by the Crown, the lieutenant-governors and chief commissioners of the other provinces by the Governor General. The general administration is conducted by Europeans belonging to the covenanted civil service, which is recruited from the successful candidates at competitive examinations, and by Europeans and natives of the uncovenanted service appointed by the authorities in India, and exempt from the control of the India Office.

The administration of the native states, of which there are between 400 and 500, is generally vested in a hereditary despotic prince or *raja*,<sup>1</sup> controlled to some extent by a British resident. The European army in India numbers about 74,000 men; the native army, under British officers, 155,000 men. The combined armies of the native princes of India amount to about 161,000 men in all.

**20. Revenue.**—The main source of public revenue in India is the *land-tax*,<sup>2</sup> which yields one-third of the whole receipts. The rest is derived chiefly from the *opium* monopoly, and from the tax on *salt*. The cultivation of opium is prohibited except for the purpose of selling the juice to the Government at

	Brought forward	Area in sq. m.	Population (1901).
		1,097,901	232,072,832
<b>II. NATIVE STATES</b>			
Hyderabad . . . . .		82,698	11,141,142
Baroda . . . . .		8,000	1,952,692
Mysore . . . . .		27,924	5,448,928
Kashmir . . . . .		80,000	2,905,578
Rajputana . . . . .		128,980	9,841,765
Central India . . . . .		78,773	8,626,781
Bombay States . . . . .		63,680	6,719,406
Madras States . . . . .		9,891	4,186,987
Central Provinces States . . . . .		29,435	1,996,383
Bengal States . . . . .		38,652	3,748,544
United Provinces States . . . . .		5,079	802,097
Panjab States . . . . .		36,226	4,424,398
Baluchistan . . . . .		132,315	1,049,808
Total States . . . . .		721,751	62,846,544
Total British India . . . . .		1,819,652	294,919,376
<b>III. INDEPENDENT STATES -</b>			
Nepal . . . . .		54,000	5,000,000
Bhutan . . . . .		10,800	100,000
Assam Hill Tribes . . . . .		88,000	130,000
<b>IV. FOREIGN POSSESSIONS</b>			
French (Pondichéry, Chandernagar, Karikal, } Malé, Yanam)		190	275,000
Portuguese (Goa, Damão, Diu) . . . . .		1,600	532,000
Total India . . . . .		1,930,248	300,950,376

<sup>1</sup> *Rāja* = king; *Maharaja* = great king

<sup>2</sup> Collected in some parts from wealthy land-farmers, called *Zemindars*; in others direct from the *ryots*, or small cultivators; or from village communities regarded as separate municipalities.

a fixed price. In Bengal it is prepared at the Government factories of *Patna* and *Ghazipur*, and then sent to Calcutta for export to China ; in Bombay it is manufactured in the native states of Malwa and Gujrat, and passes, after paying duty, to Bombay. The largest branch of expenditure is that for the army, the maintenance of which requires over twenty millions sterling every year.

**21. Bengal Presidency.**—The old *Bengal Presidency* now consists of ten distinct provinces reaching across the whole breadth of the great northern plain from the Panjab to Assam, and thence southward over Lower Burma.<sup>1</sup>

Bengal, with the new province of Eastern Bengal and Assam, extends over the fertile plain of the Ganges from its delta back to the base of the Himalaya, eastward to the Garo and Tipura hills south of Assam, and westward to where the Gogra joins the Ganges. The tributary states attached to this province are those of *Sikkim* on the slope of the Himalaya between Nepal and Bhutan, of *Kuch Behar* and *Hill Tippera* on the north-west, and of *Chutia* (or *Chota*) *Nagpur* and the *Orissa Mehals* extending south-west along the Gulf of Bengal. Within it are the cities of *Calcutta* (pop. 1,027,000), the capital of British India, on the left bank of the Hugli or western delta branch of the Ganges, a modern town built since 1700 on the site of a small native village called Kali Katta, the "village of the goddess Kali," whence the name of the present town ; the town of *Howrah* on the opposite side of the river, where the great railroad terminates ; *Murshidabad*, once a place of great wealth and splendour ; *Dacca* (90,500), capital of Eastern Bengal and Assam, 150 miles north-east of Calcutta ; *Bhagalpur* and *Patna*, on the right bank of the Ganges on the west of the province. *Cuttak*, at the head of the delta of the Mahanadi, is the chief town in the south-west maritime district of Orissa ; *Chittagong*, the chief seaport on the east of the Ganges delta. The mountainous forest slope of Sikkim on the north has the hill station and sanitarium of *Darjiling* (7168 feet above the sea), where the delightful climate resembles that of England in temperature.

**22.** The *Province of Eastern Bengal and Assam* includes the great alluvial valley of the Brahmaputra, where the chief places are *Goalpara* and *Gauhati* ; the valley of the Barak-Surma, with Sylhet ; and the Gara, Khasi, and Naga hills, which lie between these valleys. Assam is already a rival of China through its tea.

**23.** The *United Provinces* now comprise the former kingdom of Oudh<sup>2</sup> and the extensive district of Agra, that is, all the upper basin of the Ganges and Jumna rivers in the great plain. Their chief towns are *Benares*, the "most holy city" of the Hindus, on the left bank of the Ganges ; *Allahabad*, the "abode of Allah," at the confluence of the Ganges and Jumna ; the great military station and commercial town of *Cawnpur* on the right bank of the Ganges, terribly memorable for the massacre of English women and children here during the mutiny of 1857 ; *Lucknow*, the principal town in Oudh, also memorable in the history of the insurrection, where the British garrison held out till they were reinforced by General Havelock, and relieved by Sir Colin Campbell ; *Agra*,<sup>3</sup> the residence of the Mogul emperors from 1504

<sup>1</sup> Burma and the Andaman Islands belong geographically to Farther India, under which division they are described (see p. 323).

<sup>2</sup> The annexation of Oudh in 1856 was one of the causes of the Sepoy insurrection in 1857.

<sup>3</sup> Near Agra are several of the finest specimens of Indian architecture : such are the *Taj Mahal*, a splendid mausoleum of white marble built by the Emperor Shah Jahan, and in which he is buried ; the tomb of the Emperor Akbar at *Sikandra*, north of the city ; and the *Moti Masjid*, or "Pearl Mosque," in the Fort.

till 1607, on the right bank of the Jumna; *Farukhabad* near the Ganges, *Bareilly* north of it, *Shahjahanpur* between; and *Mirat* midway between the Ganges and Jumna.

24. The *Lieutenant Governorship of the Panjab*, with the now detached *N.-W. Frontier Province*, reaches from the Jumna to the Sulaiman mountains on the north western boundary of India. Its great cities are those of *Delhi*, on the right bank of the Jumna, the "Rome of India" in all that relates to ancient grandeur, over the ruins of which the fifth Mogul Emperor, Shah Jahan, founded the great modern town; *Lahore* on the Ravi, the meeting-point of the great railway lines of north-west India; *Amritsar*, near it, the religious metropolis of the Sikhs, containing the "pool of immortality," on an islet in which stands the chief temple; *Attock*, a fortress at the great crossing-place of the Indus; and *Peshawar*, in the extreme north-western corner of India on the main route into Afghanistan; the trading and manufacturing town of *Multan* near the *Chenab*, in the south, and *Dera Ismael* and *Dera Ghazi Khan*, near the right bank of the Indus. *Simla*, the viceroy's summer resort, lies in the foot-hills of the Himalaya, 7084 feet above the sea.

The great tributary state of the Panjab province is that of *Kashmir*, a territory much larger than our island of Great Britain, reaching from the plain of the Panjab northward over the western Himalaya ranges to the borders of Tibet; it has splendid and sublime scenery, huge forest-covered mountains, deep gorges and valleys filled with rich and varied vegetation. Its climate has four seasons like those of Europe, winter covering the ground with snow; its people include races of Hindu and Tibetan type, the latter existing especially to the north-east; its goats, yaks, and wild sheep yield the wool from which the famous shawls of Kashmir are made; and its rosefields give the finest *attar*. The beautiful "Vale of Kashmir" within it is an expansion of the valley of the upper *Jhelam* river, and is an oval plain about 50 miles long and 10 miles wide, within which roses are cultivated for distillation. Here also is *Srinagar*, the capital of the state. The districts of *Baltistan* and *Ladakh*, between the *Karakoram* range and the Himalaya, are included in this territory, their chief towns being *Skardu* and *Leh* on the upper Indus. Next to Kashmir the Sikh principality of *Patiala* and the Mohammedan country of *Bahawalpur* are the leading native states dependent upon the province. In the extreme north west is the important military station of *Peshawar*, which guards the approaches to British India from the *Khaibar Pass*, and is connected by rail with *Attock* on the Indus.

25. The *Chief Commissionership of the Central Provinces*, formed into a separate division of British India as lately as 1861, extends over the northern area of the *Dekhan* plateau mainly between the upper *Narbada* and *Tapti* and the upper *Mahanadi* and *Godavari*. Alternating in hill and valley, woodland and cultivation, the general aspect of this province is grateful to eyes fatigued by the sameness of the dusty Indian plains. Its capital town is *Nagpur*, on the stream called the *Nag*, a tributary of the *Godavari*, a large trading place celebrated for its cloth fabrics. A railway, following the line of the *Purna*, a tributary of the *Tapti*, unites it with the main line between *Bombay* and *Calcutta*. Of the fifteen native states depending upon this province, *Bastar* is the most important.

26. Under the Governor-General of India are the Provinces of (1) *Ajmere*, an isolated tract lying along the *Aravali* hills in the midst of *Rajputana*; (2) *Berar*, a valuable province lying west of *Nagpur* between the *Wardha* tributary of the *Godavari* and the *Tapti*, with the town of *Amraoti* on the railway between *Bombay* and *Nagpur*, and the walled town of *Ellichpur*; (3) *Coorg*, a rugged mountain district between *Mysore* and the *Malabar* coast.

27. **Madras**, now a Province, having the same extent as the old Presidency, reaches from Ganjam south of Cuttak and the delta of the Mahanadi to the Malabar coast, embracing the maritime plains round the south of the promontory of India.

The most important native states attached to it are those of *Travancore*, in the extreme south-west, and *Cochin*, north of it, beneath the Ghats. *Madras* (510,000), the only large city of the Province, extends along the low-lying coast of the Gulf of Bengal for nine miles, and consists of the European quarter, which has grown up round Fort St. George, built in 1639 on the first territory acquired by the British in India, and the "patam" or native town. Its roadstead is good, but communication between ships and the shore through the heavy surf is generally difficult, and in the months of November and December, when the north-east monsoon is at its height, almost impossible. The other important coast towns and trading places are:—*Vizagapatam* and *Masulipatam*, north of Madras; *Cuddalore*, *Tranquebar*, *Negapatam*, and *Tuticorin*, south of it, on the Coromandel coast and Gulf of Manaar; *Trivandrum*, *Cochin*, *Calicut*, *Cannanore*, *Beypur* (a station on the railway from Madras), and *Mangalore*, on the Malabar coast; *Vellar*, a fortified town on the Palar, and on the railway west of Madras; *Tanjore* and *Trichinopoly*, on the Kavari river; *Madura*, remarkable for its pagodas, and *Tinneveli*, in the south, are the important towns of the interior of the Province; *Arcot*, on the Palar, west of Madras, is the scene of Clive's famous victory in 1751.

28. **Bombay**.—The *Province of Bombay* reaches along the western borders of India from Mysore to Sind,<sup>1</sup> in the plain of the Lower Indus.

Its capital, *Bombay*<sup>2</sup> (776,000), on the south corner of the island, is by far the most important outlet of India, and the great emporium of its trade with Europe. From it railways have been made to bring to it the traffic of Gujrat in the north, Calcutta and the great towns of the Ganges valley in the east, Nagpur in the Central Provinces, and Madras in the south-east. After Madras it is the oldest British possession in India, having been ceded to Charles II. in 1661 as part of the dowry of his queen, Catherine of Portugal.

The other great towns of the Province are *Puna*, south-east of Bombay, the former Maratha capital, and now the great military station of the Dekhan, 1800 feet above the sea; *Nasik*, a sacred city of the Hindus, north-east of the capital; *Surat*, on the Tapti, near its mouth, the site of the first English factory in the Mogul dominions; *Ahmadabad*, farther north, is an ancient walled city, connected by rail with Bombay; *Karachi*, the great port of Sind, almost at the western extremity of India; and *Haidarabad*, the walled capital of Sind, near the head of the delta of the Indus. The most important of the many native states attached to the Bombay Province are those situated in Gujrat and Kach (Cutch), especially the Kathiawar group.

29. **Tributary Native States**.—The largest group of Native States which remain separate from the Presidencies, but which are under the superintendence of agents appointed by the British Viceroy, is that of the immense thinly-peopled tract of *Rajputana*, which lies south of the Panjab, between Sind on the west and Central India, including the Great Indian Desert and the Aravali range, excepting the portion of it which is occupied by Ajmere.

<sup>1</sup> From the Indus or Sindhu = "sea."

<sup>2</sup> The native name is *Mambai*, from a temple to the goddess Mamba. The Portuguese made of this *Bom Bahia* = good bay or port, in reference to its excellent harbour and anchorage, whence our name Bombay.



This group comprises no fewer than nineteen separate states. The most important towns of this region are *Jajpur*, a walled city in the east, founded by Jai Sing II., the famous astronomer, in 1728, and the residence of the British political agent; *Jodhpur*, the capital of the largest of the Rajput states; and *Bikaner*, in the midst of the great desolate plain of the Thar.

The separate states of the *Central India Agency*, extending over the plateau of Malwa, between Rajputana and the Central Provinces, are also exceedingly numerous. The British agent for this group resides at *Indore*, in the Vindhya mountains. The largest of them is that of *Gwalior*, the territory belonging to the Sindhia family, in several detached portions in the valleys of the Chambal, Tapti, and Narbada. Its capital town of the same name, which has one of the most celebrated hill forts of India, was scaled by the British in 1779 and again in 1858, and is now occupied by their troops. *Ujain*, north of Indore in the same territory, was one of the sacred cities of the Hindus, and the first meridian of their geographers. *Bhopal*, a Mohanmedan state in the Vindhya range, is also important. The *Bundelkhand* group of states, in the eastern portion of Central India, and the *Bhagalkhand* or *Rewah* group, rising in the plateaus above the valley of the Ganges, form minor agencies of Central India.

*Baroda* is an important native state, between the lower Narbada and the Mahi river, which enters the head of the Gulf of Kambay; its capital of the same name is a large and well built city on the northern railway from Bombay.

The native state of *Haidarabad*, more extensive than Great Britain, occupies the central area of the Dekhan plateau, and is governed by a potentate called the Nizam or "Regulator," a title assumed by the Viceroy of the Dekhan when he made himself independent of the Mogul Empire on its dissolution in the eighteenth century. The city of *Haidarabad* (148,000), the Nizam's capital, and the seat of the British Resident, is a finely placed fortified city, near the centre of the territory. The ruins of *Golkonda*, containing the tombs of the kings who ruled over the Dekhan in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, lie seven miles west, and the British military cantonments of *Sikandarabad* six miles north of Haidarabad. *Aurangabad*, in the north western corner of the territory, contains the palace of Aurangzebe, and the mausoleum built by him after the model of the Taj Mahal of Agra. *Asai* (Aasey), the scene of Wellington's great victory, lies in the same region.

*Mysore*, an extensive country in the interior of the southern apex of India, between the Eastern and Western Ghats and the Nilgiri hills, consisting for the most part of elevated undulating table land watered by the upper Kavari, with here and there remarkable isolated granite rock masses called *daorgs* (from *dur-ga*, difficult of access), generally crowned by fortresses; *Mysore*, the present capital town, lies a short distance south of *Seringapatam*, the former capital, famous for its siege and capture by the British in 1799, after which this territory fell into our hands; *Bangalor*, north-east of Mysore, is the great military station of this territory.

*Manipur* is a rugged mountainous country south of Assam, and on the borders of Burma, inhabited by a number of wild, warlike tribes. The capital town of the same name is on an upper tributary of the Irawadi.

**30. Independent States.**—Most important of the territories within the geographical limits of India which still retain their independence of Britain is the Himalayan state of *Nepal*, which reaches along the face of the mountains from where the Gogra tributary of the Ganges takes its rise, to Sikkim in the east, reaching down from the snowy crests and passes into Tibet to the uninhabited jungle of the Tarai, which separates it from the *British provinces*. It occupies a space nearly as large as England, but its surface of mountain and valley is naturally characterised by the widest extremes in climate and vegetation. Its

inhabitants belong to various races and tribes, and almost every valley and village is practically independent of the others. In the eighteenth century, however, the tribe of the *Ghoorkas*, Hinduised Tibetans, gained the ascendancy, and, invading Tibet, drew down on themselves a large Tibetan army, after which Nepal became a Chinese dependency. The incursions on British territory by the Nepalese gave occasion for the British invasion of 1815, after which a peace was ratified by which the paramount power of Britain was recognised, and an English Resident was placed at *Kathmandu*, the capital. Besides this Resident, however, no Englishmen are allowed to enter Nepal for its exploration, and our Government has little influence in the country. The existing relations between Nepal and China are obscure, but it is said that an embassy is sent every five years with presents to the Court of Peking.

*Bhutan*, on the slope of the Himalaya, east of Sikkim and north of the valley of Assam, is also an almost unknown region. Its small Buddhist population, divided between idle priests and wretched cultivators, is under a "Deb Raja" or temporal sovereign, and a "Dhurm Raja" or spiritual ruler. The chief town appears to be that of *Punakha*, on a northern tributary of the Brahmaputra.

Even less is known of the wild tribes who occupy the Himalayan slope east of Bhutan. The peoples of Assam are descendants of the Shan people who conquered that part of India, and held it against the great Mogul till the whole province was taken possession of by the British. They are partly Hindu, partly Mohammedan, but many wild indigenous tribes still inhabit the inaccessible jungle-covered hills between Assam and Burma, some of them black undersized and naked savages, living in huts constructed on scaffolds, and armed with bows and arrows and other rude weapons.

31. **Foreign Possessions.**—The towns and small territorial possessions still retained by the French in India are with one exception on the coasts of the Gulf of Bengal. *Pondichéry*, on the Coromandel coast, 86 miles south of Madras, first occupied by the French in 1672, and finally restored to them by the English in 1815, is the capital of their possessions in India. *Chandarnagar*, on the Hugli, 17 miles from Calcutta, was also twice taken by the British, and restored in 1816; it trades with Calcutta. *Yanaon* is at the mouth of the Godavari; *Karikal*, on the estuary of the Kavari, in the south; and *Mahé*, the only French settlement on the Malabar coast, lies north of Calicut.

The Portuguese hold a large territory at *Goa*, in the middle of the west coast, which was conquered by Albuquerque in 1503; its old capital has fallen to decay; the newer one of *Panjim* or New Goa is the seat of government of the Portuguese Indian possessions, and lies on one of the best natural harbours of this side of India. *Damão* lies south of Surat, at the entrance to the Gulf of Kambay, and has a small fortified port. *Diu*, also a seaport, is on an islet at the extreme south of the peninsula of Gujrat, and was acquired in 1515.

### CEYLON.<sup>1</sup>

1. The great pear-shaped and mountainous island of Ceylon, depending from India, 265 miles long from north to south, has a superficial area of 25,360 square miles. It is separated from the mainland by Palk Strait and the Gulf of Manaar, but almost united to it between these waters by the singular natural barrier called *Adam's Bridge*,<sup>2</sup> which only allows the passage of ships by two narrow channels.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Native *Singhala* ("lion-land"), ancient *Taprobane*.

<sup>2</sup> The Mohammedans believe that when Adam was driven out of the paradise of Ceylon he left it by this chain of sandbanks.

<sup>3</sup> The *Pambam* and *Rameswaram* channels.



The surface consists of a low maritime belt, fringed with palm-covered islets and coastal lagoons, encircling an interior table-land, the elevation of which has given it the climate and varied vegetation which make the island the most delightful of the east: "the jewel of the eastern seas." The lower ranges present verdant slopes; luxuriant forests, overhang by creepers, cover the higher hills; tree-ferns and gigantic rhododendrons next appear, and the innermost peaks shoot up bare and rocky in fantastic forms. Between the peaks deep gorges, opening to wider valleys, radiate outward. The highest summits are those of *Pedrotallagalla*, 8280 feet, and *Adam's Peak*, 7420 feet.

2. The north east *monsoon* blows from November till February, the south-west, from April till September, with calms and variable winds between. Both monsoons bring rain, which falls on that side of the island which faces the wind for the time, leaving the other, or leeward side, dry. On the one side the rivers are then flooded, while on the other the tanks filled during the last rains have to be resorted to for irrigating the land, and *vice versa*. Beyond this, a difference in seasons is scarcely noticeable, the climate being in general very healthy, and the temperature remaining nearly constant throughout the year.

3. Among the rich and varied products of the vegetable kingdom in this island the most valuable are *coffee*, introduced from Arabia, and grown in the plantations which extend along the hill slopes, between 1000 and 2500 feet above the sea; *cinnamon*, the bark of a species of laurel; and the *coco-nut palm*, which flourishes all round the south and west coasts, yielding fruit, oil, and the useful fibre called "coir." Tobacco, indigo, and cotton are also grown in all parts, and the forests have many trees whose timber is of great value. The animals resemble those of India; the tiger and lion are absent, however, though elephants abound. The gems of the islands, especially sapphires, have been celebrated from times immemorial. A celebrated pearl-fishery is carried on in the Gulf of Manaar, and the best divers remain eighty-seven seconds under water.

4. The people of Ceylon, numbering over 3 millions, consist of the *Singhalese*, the most numerous, the descendants of those colonists from the Valley of the Ganges who first settled on the island about five centuries before the Christian era, delicate in limbs and features, false and cowardly; the *Tamils*, who have come across from the mainland of Southern India in large numbers, and who now form the greater part of the inhabitants of the north of the island; the *Moormen*, Mohammedans of Arab descent it is believed, who are met with everywhere as active traders; and the remarkable *Veddah* aborigines, living in the woods and remote parts of the eastern side of the island in a state of complete barbarism. In 1901 the population exceeded 3,578,000, including 2,331,000 Singhalese, 954,000 Tamils, 229,000 Moors, 10,000 Malays, 10,000 British and other Europeans, 23,000 Eurasians, and 4000 Veddahs.

Buddhism is the prevailing religion of the island. A mark five feet long in the rock of Adam's Peak is revered as the sacred footprint of Buddha, and a piece of ivory, supposed to be his sacred tooth, is guarded with jealous care, and preserved in an elegant shrine at Kandy.

5. Ceylon (which fell under our rule in 1815) is a British colony under a Governor, who is independent of the Viceroy of India. Its trade is mainly carried on with Britain and with India, exporting coffee, coco-nut oil, and cinnamon, and receiving manufactured goods. *Colombo* (158,000)<sup>1</sup> on the west coast, is the well-fortified capital and seat of government, and by far the largest town. It has a large share of the commerce, though its port is small,

<sup>1</sup> Properly Coramaba = "the harbour."

and large vessels must lie off in the roads. *Kandy* (the "hill"), the former capital, is high in the mountainous interior of the island. *Trincomali* is the chief port of the north-east coast, and has a fine landlocked harbour; but the secure port of *Galle*, or Point de Galle, at the south-west extremity of the island, has become of very great importance as the central station and depot of the great lines of steam communication in connection with the Suez Canal, Bombay, Calcutta, Singapore, China, Japan, and Australia.

6. The *Laccadive Islands*,<sup>1</sup> the higher peaks of coral atolls, form a cluster about 150 miles off the Malabar coast, are inhabited by a people of Indo-Arab origin called "Moplays," and are tributary to Madras. The *Maldivé*<sup>2</sup> coral chain, south of the former, extends for a distance of nearly 500 miles. Its palm-covered islets are partly inhabited also by Mohammedans, whose sultan pays tribute to the Governor of Ceylon. Fishing for the "cowrie" shells, which circulate as money in many parts of the coasts of the Mediterranean and in Africa, gives employment to the islanders. The *Chagos Archipelago*, a continuation of this chain, belongs to Britain.

## FARTHER INDIA.

1. The south-eastern peninsula of Asia, extending south from China and Assam, between the Indian Ocean and the China Sea, is formed by long ranges reaching south from the great table-lands of Central Asia, the broad valleys between which are watered by its four great rivers, the Irawadi, the Salwin, the Menam, and Me-khong; almost the whole of it lies within the tropical zone, and in its hot moist climate vegetation flourishes with extraordinary luxuriance. Its peoples, excepting the Malays of the long southern peninsula, and the Kambodians, belong to the Mongolian family, and their languages have much in common with those of China and Tibet. Buddhism is the prevailing religion of the peninsula except among the Malays, who are chiefly Mohammedans. The despotic empires and kingdoms between which the greater part of Farther India is divided are still far beneath the empire of China in civilisation, and include within their limits many tribes scarcely removed from complete barbarism.

We shall take up their description in the order given in the note.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Lakara Divha, or hundred thousand islands.

<sup>2</sup> Mal = a thousand; thousand isles.

	Sq. miles.	Population (1901-05).
<sup>3</sup> British { Lower Burma . . . . .	81,000	5,406,000
Upper Burma with Shan States . . . . .	155,500	5,200,000
Siam, less cessions to France (1893-97) . . . . .	220,000	6,687,000
French { Annam with Tongking . . . . .	100,000	16,125,000
Lower Cochin China . . . . .	20,000	2,970,000
Cambodia and parts of Siam . . . . .	138,000	2,250,000
Malay States (British) . . . . .	26,000	1,860,000
Straits Settlements (British) . . . . .	1,500	573,000
Total Farther India . . . . .	<u>742,000</u>	<u>41,071,000</u>

## LOWER BURMA.

2. The northern division of Lower Burma, called *Arakan*, occupies the narrow slope between the crest of the *Toung mountains*, which shut in the valley of the Irawadi, and the low coast of the Gulf of Bengal, which is broken by many creeks, and fringed by islands, the chief of which are those of Razm and Cheduba. Much of the low country is still covered with jungle, and the climate there is unhealthy; but the ordinary products of India are grown in abundance, and large parts of the marshy land are specially suited for the cultivation of rice, which is the staple export of the province. Its people are partly Hindus and Mohammedans, partly the aboriginal Burmese tribe called the *Meghs*. *Arakan*, the old capital, lies fifty miles from the sea on the north. *Akyah*, on one of the coast islands, is the most important town and seaport of the division.

3. The central division of *Pegu*, formerly the richest and most fertile province of the Burman empire, was annexed after the war of 1852. It lies on each side of the lower Irawadi, and comprises the vast delta of the river, which covers a space of about ten thousand square miles, with its network of small channels. *Rice* is the great product of this alluvial region. The higher grounds round it have the finest *teak* forests in the world, which give the most valuable shipbuilding timber of the Indies. *Pegu*, the old capital of the province, lies inland, but *Rangoon* (285,000), on an eastern branch of the delta of the Irawadi, is by far the largest town and trading port of the province. *Prome* on the left bank of the Irawadi, in the interior, and *Bassein*, on a western branch of the delta, are also important places. The majority of the inhabitants are *Burmese*, but a primitive people called the *Karens*, who have a tradition of their migration from far north, live in the wilder parts of the north-east of Pegu.

4. The southern division of British Burma is that of *Tenasserim*, which includes the province of Martaban. It extends along the forest-covered western slope of the northern part of the Malay Peninsula from the lower Salween river to the Isthmus of Kra. Its coasts, unlike those of Arakan, are bold and rocky and fringed with islands. The interior is a wilderness of thickly wooded hills with long valleys running north and south between the parallel ranges, in which wild animals, the elephant, rhinoceros, and tiger, especially, are very abundant; coal and iron seem to be widely spread through the country. The chief town and seaport is that of *Moulmein*, at the mouth of the Salween, from which great quantities of teak timber are sent out, opposite it is the smaller town of *Martaban*, the first place that fell into the hands of the British in 1852, which gives its name to the wide gulf between Tenasserim and Pegu. *Amherst*, a little farther south, is also a timber port. *Tavoy* and *Merga*, the latter at the mouth of the Tenasserim river, towards the south of the division, are the other considerable trading towns. The innumerable islets of the Merga archipelago off the coast are famed for their edible birds' nests, which form a great article of commerce.

Over all the coasts of British Burma the wet season (May to October) brought by the south west monsoon alternates with the dry season, or that during which the north-east wind blows.

5. The *Andaman* and *Nicobar Islands*, which stretch southward along a line connecting the extreme point of Arakan with Sumatra present themselves as the summits of a submerged mountain range. The Andamans were first occupied in 1789, the Nicobars in 1869. *Port Blair*, on South Andaman, and *Nankowry*, a small island in the Nicobar archipelago, are convict establishments.

## UPPER BURMA.

6. The whole of the old *Empire of Burma* forms, since February 1886, an integral portion of the British province of Burma. Upper Burma is confined to the north-western interior area of the peninsula, and borders northward on the Chinese province of Yunnan and the Patkoi range, which separates it from Assam ; from Arakan, on the western seaboard, it is separated by the Yoma range ; and on the south it is bounded by Lower Burma (Pegu) and by the kingdom of Siam. It thus includes all the central and upper basin of the river Irawadi, and it is along the valley of that river that the greater part of the population and the most settled portion of the country extend. Eastward, Burma embraces the central portion of the corresponding valley of the Salwin ; and a semi-independent region, occupied by a number of tribes called the Burmese Shans, extends eastward to the Me-khong, which since 1896 forms the boundary between the British and French possessions in Indo-China. In area the Burman territory is more than thrice as large as Great Britain.

7. **Climate and Products.**—In general the country rises gradually from the lowlands of its wide valleys in the south up to a wild mountain region in the north. In the beginning of May the heat in southern Burma exceeds 100° Fahr. ; in the latter part of that month the south-west monsoon sets in, bringing the rainy season, which lasts till September, and during which the temperature averages about 82° Fahr. Along the valleys, rice, the chief crop, with maize, wheat, sugar-cane, tobacco, cotton, and indigo are cultivated : elsewhere the forests are rich in all kinds of timber, especially the valuable teak. Burma has also great mineral wealth : alluvial gold in the rivers, silver in the mountains of the east, much coal and iron, copper and lead, petroleum, amber and jade, rubies and other precious stones. The elephant abounds in all the forests, as well as the rhinoceros, tiger, leopard, and wild pig. Domestic animals are the ox, buffalo, and horse ; white elephants are pampered as the insignia of royalty.

8. **People.**—The Burmans proper of the Irawadi valley are well proportioned and active people, though of small stature, light brown in colour, with straight black hair, which they bind in a knot on the top of the head. In knowledge and industry they are lower than the Hindus or the Chinese. There are no castes, and woman occupies a much more independent position than she does in India. The government, up to the conquest of the country by the British, was a pure despotism, and the life and property of every subject were at the mercy of the sovereign. With the Burmans, the *Telaings* or Mons, descendants of the ancient Peguans, have become incorporated ; but wild *Kakhyens*, *Kachins*, and other tribes live in the western mountain border. The *Shans*, a peaceful and industrious race, are probably the most numerous of the peoples of Farther India ; according to their own traditions, they are the remnant of the inhabitants of a once powerful Shan empire, which had its chief seat in southern Yunnan ; this great empire is now represented by the one independent state of Siam, all the other divisions or petty states into which it has fallen are tributary either to China, Burma, Annam, or Siam, according as they lie nearest those countries. The language of the Shans is the same as that of Siam, with variations only in dialect. Some parts



of the mountains reaching south into the country of the Burmese Shans are still occupied by wild tribes, who are looked upon as the aborigines of this region, who have been gradually driven to these less accessible districts. Such are the *Khas*, described as a small, ill-formed, ugly people, with flat noses and low brows, who keep all strangers out of their fastnesses.

The religion of Burma and of the Shan states is Buddhism, which has been preserved here in its greatest strictness of observance. Temples, pagodas, and monasteries are in great numbers throughout the land.

9. *Trade*.—The trade of Burma is inconsiderable; the chief trade route of the country is naturally the river Irawadi, which is now regularly navigated by a British steam flotilla company. At the head of its navigation is the town of *Bamo*, at which three overland caravan routes from Yunnan converge, and which is consequently an important mart of exchange; the journey over these difficult mountain routes, however, requires six weeks.

10. *Towns*.—The banks of the Irawadi in Burma proper are dotted with towns; at the great bend of the river, in the centre of the country, there is a cluster of cities, several in ruins, which have at various times been the capitals of the empire. Here are the ruins of *Ava*, which gave its name to the kingdom after the fourteenth century; and *Amarapura*, which was the capital before 1819; when *Ava*, which had again been made capital, was destroyed by earthquake in 1839, the seat of government was removed to *Mutshobo*, on the opposite side of the river; finally, *Mandalay*, north of *Amarapura*, became the capital city, and thither was transferred the imperial residence, with its manifold roof and sacred *hti*, or umbrella, at the top of all. This town has an enclosing wall and ditch, beyond which extend regularly planned suburbs; it glitters with gilded pagodas. Lower down the Irawadi, on its left bank, lie the ruins of *Pagan*, which was the capital from the ninth till the thirteenth century, remarkable for its architectural remains, which have given rise to the Burman proverb, "numberless as the temples of Pagan."

## SIAM.<sup>1</sup>

1. The central region of Farther India is occupied by the interesting *Kingdom of Siam*, which extends northward to the French and British territories in the Upper Me-khong, and southward, round the shores of its gulf, to include the greater part of the long Malay peninsula. Westwards its limits are conterminous along the hills with those of British Burma, and eastward it is bounded by French territory. Since the cessions made to France in 1893-97, its area has been reduced to 220,000 square miles.

2. The most important district by far is the wide valley of the *Menam* river, which has been called the "Nile of Siam," since it overflows its banks from June till November, and since the success or failure of the great rice crop along its banks depends on the regularity and amount of the fertilising overflow. This is also the great highway of the country, and round it are the most settled and advanced districts of Siam. The extensive north eastern region in the central basin of the Me-khong river is inhabited by tribes of Laos of the same family as the Shans of Burma, darker in complexion than the Siamese proper, and slender in figure, and generally dependent on hunting for

<sup>1</sup> Native *Thai* or *Muang-thai*, the kingdom of the free. Our name *Siam* is said to be from the Malay *Sayam* = "dark coloured."

their subsistence. These Laotian tribes form little principalities which formerly sent tribute to Siam, but are now subject to France, and administered from Luang Prabang on the Me-khong. The portion of the south-western peninsula which is embraced within the kingdom of Siam is also very loosely connected with its government: the Sultans of the Malayan states (Patani, Quedah, Kalántan, and Tringanu) pay only a nominal triennial tribute, sending a golden or silver tree or flower as an emblem of their dependence.

3. **Climate.**—The tropical climate of Siam is divided into the hotter wet season, while the south-west wind is blowing, and the cooler dry, during the northerly monsoon. Large areas of the land are covered with dense forests, which yield teak and the perfumed eagle wood in abundance. Here, as in Burma, the white elephant is an object of veneration. The mineral treasures of the country are very great both in metals and gems; rice, however, is the great product and export of Siam.

4. **People.**—The Siamese proper form about a third of the population of the kingdom within its nominal limits; they are well-proportioned people, shorter generally than the Chinese, but taller than the Malays, with olive-coloured skin and black hair, which they shave so as to leave a tuft on the top of the head, supposed to resemble the lotus flower, which is a sacred object to all Buddhists. The Laos form another third; and the Chinese and Malays divide the remaining numbers nearly between them. All the trade of the country is in the hands of the Chinese, for the Siamese are idle and lacking in enterprise; the slight, dark, well-formed Malays of the peninsula are in part civilised and settled agriculturists, part “men of the sea,” sea gypsies, or pirates, scouring the coasts in their armed prahus.

5. **Government.**—A number of classes are recognised in Siamese society, from the nobles and soldiers downward to the slaves.<sup>1</sup> The political power rests with the first-named class, and the highest authority is vested in two kings, one paramount, who is regarded with most reverential awe, and the second subordinate. The royalty is hereditary, but does not necessarily pass to the eldest son. For administrative purposes, the country is divided into forty-one provinces, each under a governor.

6. The prevailing religion is Buddhism, and the pagodas in their strange forms with their manifold roofs are the prominent buildings in all the towns. There is comparatively little industry in the country, mainly owing to the existing serfdom, unwilling labour being forced from the lower classes during a certain period of every year by the higher nobles or owners of the land; and nearly the whole of trade, as we have noticed, is in the hands of the Chinese. About the court, however, considerable literary activity prevails; an almanack is issued annually, and it may be taken as evidence of the capacity of the Siamese that their late king was master of Sanscrit, of English, Latin, and French, and an excellent astronomer.

7. **Chief Towns.**—The capital and metropolis of Siam, and the centre of its trade, is the city of *Bangkok* (600,000), which lies on both sides of the Menam, about 20 miles above its mouth. Here are the royal palaces, with hundreds of pagodas, surrounded by bamboo houses built on piles; all the river also is covered with floating boathouses. The former capital, named *Ayuthia*, lay about 45 miles farther up the river; it was founded in 1350, which date marks the beginning of authentic Siamese history, and was destroyed in a war with Burma in 1766. *Chantabun*, on the east of the gulf of Siam, south-east of the capital, is a trading town.

---

<sup>1</sup> Called *Kha*, in contrast to the *Thai* or free men. These are either prisoners of war, debtors who are working out their owings, or the very poor, who have sold themselves for a livelihood.



In the tributary regions of the Laos the most important centre of population appears to be the town of Luang Prabang, on the central Me khong, the capital of the most northerly of these principalities. In the Malay peninsula, Singapore, near the centre of its east coast, south of the coast island of Panta lam, is a place of considerable traffic. Kula (Quana) on the west coast, Patani, Kalantan, and Tringganu, on the east, are the capitals of the Malay states which were subjected in 1821.

### FRENCH INDO-CHINA: ANNAM.

1. The old empire of Annam,<sup>1</sup> reaching over nearly twice the extent of Great Britain, includes the two main divisions of *Tong-King*<sup>2</sup> the wide alluvial basin of the Song-Ka river next to China, and *Upper Cochin China*, consisting of the narrow eastern maritime slope of the peninsula of Farther India to the China Sea, as well as a portion of the little known interior country behind the mountains towards Cambodia. The treaty of Hue (June 6, 1884) reduced Annam to the position of a French dependency.

2. Northern *Tong-King* is mountainous and inhabited by various hill tribes, among whom are the *Khas*, who are said to be the aboriginal people, and who are lighter in colour and of bigger build than the yellow brown Annamese, who are generally small and spare in stature, with mongol type of feature and long brown hair. The Song-Ka fertilises a large area of the centre, and its marshy delta and the coast-lands south of it give large quantities of rice. The fisheries of these coasts are very extensive, supplying not only the immediate wants of the people, but those of southern China also. This division of Annam has a climate resembling that of China in its extremes of oppressive summer heat and severe winter cold. Fearful *typhoons* occasionally bring great destruction, especially to the fishing population. A wall marks the boundary of Cochin China.

3. The narrow maritime division of *Upper Cochin China* has a good and pleasant climate separated into the dry and wet seasons, the former occurring with the south-west monsoon, which brings rain to the interior country behind the mountains, the latter with the north-east monsoon, carrying with it the vapours of the China Sea. Besides Ceylon this is the only important cinnamon yielding country, and this spice forms the chief article in the tribute sent to China. Besides these divisions, Annam embraces also a wide district behind the mountains, westward towards Cambodia, the forests of which are occupied by the almost independent barbarous tribes called the *Mu* or *Lao*, who are apparently of the same stock as the *Chamapas*, and are supposed to be aboriginal.

4. Previous to the Mongol occupation of China in the thirteenth century, Annam, or the southern country, formed part of that empire, and its ruler formerly acknowledged the Emperor of China as his superior, though his vassalage was only nominal. Formerly Annam was a hereditary military despotism, but owing to his abuse of power and palace attractions the king has been deprived of his regal functions, and the country is now (1907) administered by the French authorities. Confucianism and Buddhism are widespread, but the belief in various patron saints appears to be the popular superstition. Christianity, introduced by the Portuguese Jesuits in the seventeenth century,

<sup>1</sup> Or An-nam — the southern country

<sup>2</sup> = "The Royal City of the East."

has also taken root. Though the language differs entirely from that of China, the Chinese characters are employed.

5. The country appears to be deficient in arts and manufactures, but as shipbuilders the Annamese excel. A considerable trade is maintained with China; but this is mainly in the hands of resident Chinese traders, though the king of Annam himself is said to be the chief merchant; rice, sugar, raw silk, cinnamon, cardamoms, betel-nuts, ivory, and gums are the largest exports. *Hue*, the capital city, lies near the middle of the coast of Cochin China, and was strongly fortified by the French engineers, to whose aid the former sovereign mainly owed the extension of his kingdom in the beginning of the last century. *Hanoi* (or *Kesho*), the chief town of Tong-King, lies on the Song-Ka river about 100 miles above its mouth, and is a busy trading place. By treaties concluded with France in 1874 and 1876, *Hai-Phong*, the port of Hanoi, and *Thinai* (*Quinhon*), in Cochin China, were opened to the trade of the world, and by the treaty of 1885 China has acquiesced in the French claims to the possession of Tong-King. It is anticipated that an important trade route may be opened along the Song-Ka river to Yunnan and Southern China.

### LOWER COCHIN CHINA.

1. The support given to the ruler of Annam by Louis XVI. in the eighteenth century was to be repaid by a cession of territory to France, but the troubles which followed his acquisition of Tong-King, and of the greater part of Cambodia on the south, prevented the fulfilment of this scheme. His successors from 1819 onward persecuted the French missionaries, and thus gave occasion for a French expedition against Annam in 1857. After Saigon, the chief fort near the mouth of the *Me-khong* river, had been blockaded for two years, a peace was concluded in 1863, by which the provinces of Lower Cochin China<sup>1</sup> were ceded to France. In 1867 three western provinces voluntarily submitted to French authority, and in 1883 the territory under direct French rule was still further increased by the acquisition of the Annamese district of Tsian-po.

2. The French possession is a wide plain extending on both sides of the great delta of the *Me-khong* (short for Menam-Khong), and cut through by its innumerable channels. Its excessive moisture, combined with the great heat, brings about wonderful fertility in vegetation and in animal and insect life, but at the same time makes the country extremely unhealthy. Three belts are recognised; first the mangrove-covered swamps next the sea; then a reed-covered and marshy plain, and lastly a somewhat higher forest-covered zone. The variety of produce is very great; rice is produced in enormous quantity, with cotton, tobacco, ground nuts (*arachis*), sugar cane, maize, indigo, teak, and many other fine timber woods, gums and fruits; yet the spices of the islands are not found here.

3. The inhabitants are chiefly Annamese; but Chinese, Cambodians, and Malays are largely intermixed; the Europeans are only a few hundreds in number. The country is divided into seven provinces which are subdivided into prefectures and cantons. *Saigon*, the capital, near the site of a former extensive Chinese settlement, is situated centrally on one of the smaller navigable branches of the *Me-khong* delta, about 40 miles from the sea. It is a modern town with

---

<sup>1</sup> Nam-ky = the southern district.

numerous European buildings, including a citadel and marine storehouses. *Mytho*, *Bienhoa*, and *Vinhlong*, also on a branch of the delta, are rather great bastioned citadels on the marshes, than towns in the ordinary sense. *Banthuan* is the capital of the province of Tsian-po or Champu, recently ceded to France. This province is inhabited by a people who resemble the Malays rather than the Annamese; its great product is the eagle or aloes-wood, which diffuses a pleasant odour in burning, and which is accordingly in request in all the temples of Eastern Asia. The twelve islets of the *Pulo Condor* group, about 80 miles south-east of the delta in the China Sea, also belong to France.

CAMBODIA.<sup>1</sup>

1. One of the consequences of the French occupation of Lower Cochin China was the release of the remaining portion of the once great kingdom of Cambodia from its dependence on Annam and Siam, and its formation into a separate kingdom under the protection of France. It lies between Siam, Annam, and French Cochin China, and has area 37,400 square miles, with population (1905) 1,500,000.

2. All the eastern portion of it is an alluvial plain through which the great Me-khong river takes its way, overflowing its banks during the five rainy months of the year, brought by the southerly monsoon. From the abundance of its rice supply this used to be considered the great granary of Annam. Westward the country rises somewhat higher and is densely forest-covered; from this direction the Me-khong is joined by the overflow of the *Tale-Sap* or *Bien-hoa* lake, an expanse upwards of one hundred miles in length, which lies partly in Siam, partly in Cambodia, and along the shores of which many families settle in the dry season to take the fish with which it abounds.

3. The original inhabitants of Cambodia were the *Khmer*, a people of European features and polysyllabic speech, whose bygone culture is still exhibited by the magnificent ruins of Buddhist temples and palaces at *Angkor* and elsewhere. The population, however, is now a very mixed one of representatives of all the surrounding countries. *Udong*, the former capital, lies near the centre of the country, and is a walled town; *Panom-peng*, at the confluence of the river from Lake Tale Sap with the Me-khong, is the present capital; chief port *Kamput*.

*Note.* French Indo-China is now under a governor-general, whose residence was removed in 1902 from Saigon to Hanoi, and in 1887 all the separate provinces were united in a common customs union. In the union is included the district of Kwang-chau wan on the adjacent coast of China, which with two neighbouring islands was leased to France in 1898-99. Total imports (1905), £9,000,000; exports, £5,600,000.

## MALAY PENINSULA.

1. The Malay Peninsula, extending from the Isthmus of Kra for 900 miles to Cape Romania, with area 83,000 square miles and population (1906) about 1,000,000, comprises eleven petty Malay states, of which six in the north are tributary to Siam, while all the rest are under the protection of Great Britain, which also holds the districts forming the *British Straits Settlements*.

<sup>1</sup> This is the Hindu name; the native one is *Srok-Khmer*.

This mountainous and densely wooded region is the haunt of many wild animals, such as elephants, tapirs, tigers, and large apes, crocodiles, and snakes; its climate is one of excessive moisture, for the rains are carried over it by both monsoon winds, from the China Sea on the north-east, and from the Indian Ocean on the south-west. Fine timber and canes, sago, peppers, and gutta-percha are among its rich vegetable products, and its mineral wealth is so great that the name Ophir was given to one of its eastern mountains by the early European settlers. The most important of the Malay states in this region are those of *Perak* and *Selangor* on the west slope of the peninsula, of *Pahang* on east slope, and *Johore* in the south. The dominant Mohammedan Malays arrived about the twelfth century from Sumatra, and have partly absorbed, partly driven into the interior the *Negrito* aborigines, whom they call *orang-utan*, "men of the woods," and who call themselves *Samangs*, *Sakais*, and other names.

BRITISH STRAITS SETTLEMENTS.

2. *Penang*, or Prince of Wales Island, and the strip of the east coast of the Malay peninsula opposite it, called *Wellesley province*, form the most northerly of the "Straits Settlements," or the British possessions on the great highway of trade between the Indian Ocean and the seas of China. The island was taken by the East India Company in 1785 from the Sultan of Quedah. The mainland province was acquired in 1800. The province derives its name from the fine betel-nut or Penang palm; and both districts are exceedingly productive in timber and spices, as well as in cultivated sugar and indigo. The population is chiefly Malay and Chinese, the chief European settlement being that of *George Town*, on the west coast of Penang Island.

3. *Dinding*, a strip of territory on the west coast between Penang and *Malacca*, together with the adjacent islands of *Pancore*, has recently been ceded to Great Britain; the area of this new acquisition may be compared with the Isle of Wight. There are a few fishing villages along the coast, but it has hitherto been chiefly used as a pirates' haunt.

4. *Malacca*, on the narrower part of the strait, a territory about as large as Berkshire, was ceded to Britain by the Dutch in 1825. It exports large quantities of tapioca (manioc or cassava starch) and sago, and has valuable tin mines. Its chief town and port of the same name dates back from the time of Albuquerque (1509), but its former commercial importance has greatly declined.

5. *Singapore Island*,<sup>1</sup> named from its "city of the lion" at the southern extremity of the peninsula, was bought from the Malay sultan of Johore in 1819, and has become the great depôt of British trade in the south China seas. The city is well laid out and strongly fortified.

6. The *Keeling*, or *Cocos Islands* and *Christmas Island*, both in the Indian Ocean, are dependencies of the Straits settlements, which have a total area of about 1500 square miles and population (1901) 580,000.

EAST INDIA ISLANDS.<sup>2</sup>

1. The islands which form the East Indian Archipelago stretch round in a wide curve enclosing the China Sea, from the Straits of Malacca to the Channel of Formosa. Besides the larger Sunda

<sup>1</sup> Native, *Ujong Tanna*, or Land's End.

	Area in square miles.	Pop. (1900).
<sup>2</sup> Sunda Islands and Moluccas . . . . .	600,000	36,500,000
Philippines and Sulu Islands . . . . .	128,000	7,635,000



Islands—Sumatra, Java, Borneo (itself nearly as large as Britain and France together), Celebes, Mindanao, and Luzon in the Philippine group—there are countless smaller islands grouped round these, all enclosing sheltered seas. These facilities of safe navigation and the regularity of the monsoon winds have brought about an essentially maritime condition of life. Swift-sailing proas and towns of boats on the estuaries of the rivers are characteristic of this region. Excepting the tropical forest lands of Brazil, there is no other part of the earth in which vegetation attains equal luxuriance, or in which animal life is more exuberant. The great curve formed by the islands circling round Borneo is also a belt of great volcanic activity. On most of the islands volcanic cones have been thrown up. Many of these are constantly active; and earthquakes are of very frequent occurrence. The naturalist Wallace has shown that the archipelago is remarkably divided into an Asiatic and an Australian region.

Shallow seas lie between Farther India, Sumatra, Java, Borneo, and the Philippines, showing that these islands are joined by a submarine plateau with the continent, and must have become separated in comparatively recent times from the mainland. The elephant and tapir of Borneo and Sumatra are the same as the Indian species; the wild ox of Java also occurs on the continent; and some of the long armed apes are common to the Malay peninsula and the islands. But none of these animals could have swum over the wide arms of the sea which now separate the islands from the continent, so that their presence shows clearly that the islands and the mainland must have been one continuous tract in former times. But along a line passing through the strait which separates the islands of Bali and Lombok, east of Java, and thence through the Strait of Macassar, between Borneo and Celebes, through the Sulu Sea, and between the Philippines and the Moluccas to the south of them, a deeper trough of the sea shuts off all the eastern islands; and these as evidently belong to the *Australian region*. Australia has neither apes nor tigers, deer nor oxen nor elephants, nor indeed any of the quadrupeds which are found in the Indian area. Instead of these it has marsupial or pouched animals, such as the opossum and kangaroo. In place of pheasants and woodpeckers it has brush-turkeys and cockatoos. On crossing the narrow strait from Bali to Lombok this complete contrast of animal life is at once observable; and between Borneo and Celebes the difference is equally striking, the monkeys which abound in the forests of the former island giving place to the prehensile-tailed opossums in the latter.

The zoological dividing line indicated above also corresponds very nearly with the limit to which the Indo-Malay races have spread eastward. Throughout historic times the Malaysians have occupied the whole of Sumatra, Java, Borneo, and Celebes, while in the Philippines they have driven the aboriginal Negroid tribes into the interior mountains and forests. In the islands eastward of these, however, the Papuan races remain in possession.

2. In a political point of view, the greater part of the southern or main group of islands are *Dutch colonial possessions* divided into a number of provinces or residencies. The rich island of Java has become the most important and the most completely developed of these possessions.

The Philippine group was ceded with *Sulu* by Spain to the United States in 1898. The *British* hold Labuan Island, *Sarawak*, and all North Borneo ; the *Portuguese* have still a small territory in Timor ; and after a protracted struggle of over twenty years the petty Moslem state of *Achin* in North Sumatra has been reduced by the Dutch (1906). In 1888 Brunei in North-West Borneo became a British protectorate, and since 1906 its sultan has been a British pensioner.

3. *Sumatra*.—The great island of Sumatra, lying opposite our settlements in the Strait of Malacca, is larger than Britain and Ireland together. It extends fully a thousand miles from north-west to south-east, lying diagonally and equally across the equator. Mountains and high plateaus traverse it throughout its length on the western border, reaching a height of 12,140 feet in Mount Indrapura, a little north of the equator. Mount Ophir or Telaman Peak (9940 feet) and Merapi are also prominent summits. The larger rivers flow down eastward through the wide alluvial forest-covered plains. Rice, maize, coco-nuts, sago-palms, sugar-cane, cotton, and tobacco, and all sorts of tropical fruits, are among its vegetable products, but black pepper is its staple export, with rice, camphor, and tobacco.

Malay Mohammedans, and tribes which are probably aboriginal, form the greater part of the population, which in 1900 exceeded 3,120,000. The Dutch claim the whole of the island, though the number of resident Europeans is very small, and large parts of the interior of the island are as yet unexplored, and virtually independent. In the north the warlike Achinese have at last succumbed to the long-continued efforts at their subjugation by the Dutch, by whose troops their principal towns have been occupied. The Dutch territory is divided into the six provinces of—the West Coast (which also includes the islands of Babi, Nias, the Batu and Mantawi groups, lying off it), Bencoolen, the district of Lampong in the south, Palembang, the East Coast Residency, and Achin.

On the west coast the chief ports and towns are *Padang*, the capital of the west coast government, lying right and left of a small river of its name, founded in 1660, when the Portuguese were driven from a neighbouring factory ; *Tapanuli* northward, and the pepper port of *Bencoolen* southward. *Palembang*, on the Musi river, fifty miles up from its mouth, and *Siak*, towards the north-east, are the chief places of Dutch trade in the eastern region of Sumatra.

4. Off the north-east coast of Sumatra, filling the mouth of the Strait of Malacca, south of our island of Singapore, lies the *Riou Archipelago*, a richly fertile group, now formed into a Dutch Residency. They carry on a large trade in pepper and timber with the people of the surrounding seas, through their capital town and seaport of Riou, on an islet off the south coast of the largest island, named Bintang. This is also the residence of the Sultan of Riou, now a dependent of the Dutch Government. The island of *Lingga*, immediately south of the equator, off the east coast of Sumatra ; the *Tumbelan* group of islets, midway between Singapore and the coast of Borneo ; the *Anamba* Islands, farther north, and the *Natuna Islands*, in the China Sea, are also under the control of the Dutch Resident of Riou.

5. Farther south than the Riou archipelago, separated by a strait from the east coast of Sumatra, opposite Palembang, lies the large, thickly-forested island of *Bangka*, or *Banca*, 130 miles long, and beyond, midway across the Sunda Sea to Borneo, the smaller island of *Billiton* (Bilitong). Both of these Residencies are famous for their tin mines, which have been worked since 1709



for the Dutch Government, chiefly by Chinese miners. They yield about 12,000 tons of metal every year.

6. *Java*.—This most valuable of the islands extends through a distance of more than 600 miles, from Sunda Strait, which separates it from Sumatra, on the west, to Bali Strait, in the east; but at some points its north and south coasts are only 50 miles apart, and its area is not quite so large as that of England. Throughout its length it is traversed by a chain of high mountains, 45 of which are volcanic cones, or "Gunongs," some extinct, others emitting smoke, and still others subject to fierce eruptions. *Gunung Semeroe*, the highest of all, reaches 12,150 feet. The most fearful eruption in recent times was that of *Krakatoa*, or *Gunong Rekata*, from an island in the Sunda Straits, which took place in August 1883.

Java is the most fertile and productive, and the most populous island in all the tropical region of the globe. The hot region, or that which lies beneath an elevation of 2000 feet, embraces the greater portion of the island, and is admirably suited to the cultivation of rice, maize, indigo, sugar-cane, cloves, pepper, and vanilla. The temperate region extends up the mountain slopes, and over the plateau of Western Java, between elevations of about 2000 and 4000 feet, and is the best ground for coffee and tea plantations, besides having a delightful climate, well suited to Europeans. The cool regions above 4500 feet are restricted to the slopes of the volcanic cones. The rains are brought by the westerly monsoon from November till March; easterly winds bringing dry weather for the rest of the year.

It is mainly due to the energy of the Netherlands Trading Company that the cultivation and resources of the island have been so highly developed, and that its population has become so great. The native Javanese are of Malay race, in general a quiet, industrious people. Mohammedanism was introduced in the fifteenth century, and has taken root all over the island, to the almost total exclusion of the former Brahminical religion, the monuments of which, temples and statues, are found deeply hidden in the forests. Chinese have settled here in large numbers, as well as Arabs and Hindus; but the whole 27½ millions of people in the island are under the control of only thirty-five thousand Europeans. Though two states are still nominally under native sultans, the whole island belongs to the Dutch, and is under a mild despotic government; it is divided out into 23 Residencies, including the island of Madura, off its north-east coast; a system of compulsory labour on the part of the natives is enforced by native officials or "Regents," acting under the Dutch governors. *Batavia*, towards the western extremity of the north coast of Java, is the capital of all the Dutch East Indies, as well as of this island, and is a great seaport and trading place, connected by telegraph line with Singapore. *Bantam*, nearer the Strait of Sunda, was the first settlement of the Dutch, made in 1602; but is now of little importance. It is supposed that the variety of domestic fowl, great in soul if little in body, was brought from this place.

*Samarang* is a great port, near the middle of the north coast, and has its European, Chinese, Malay, and Arab quarters. A railway across the island unites Samarang with *Djokjokerta*, near the south coast, passing by way of *Surakarta*, the most considerable place in the centre of the island, in the midst of a highly cultivated district. *Sarabaya*, on the strait which separates Madura from the main island, and *Probolingo*, farther east, are the chief outlets of the eastern part of the island.

7. *Borneo*.—The immense island of Borneo,<sup>1</sup> after Australia, Greenland,

<sup>1</sup> The Portuguese form of the name of Bruni or Brunet, a country on the western coast of the island.

and New Guinea, the largest piece of isolated land on the globe, lies centrally in the East Indian Archipelago, between the China Sea on the north-west, the Sunda Sea on the south, and Macassar Strait leading to the Sulu and Mindoro seas on the east. It stretches out more than 800 miles from north to south, and is more than 600 miles wide from east to west. Most of the interior has now been visited by explorers, who describe it as traversed by mountain ranges from south-west to north-east in the direction of the island of Palawan, northward of it, while, from its central region, other ridges extend east and south-east towards the eastern angles, enclosing wide lowlands, which, if the sea-level were raised, would become gulfs like these of the adjacent island of Celebes. Mount *Kini Balu*, or the "Chinese widow" (13,670 feet), in the extreme northern corner of the island, is the highest point known as yet. Its chief rivers are the *Kapuas*, or river of Pontianak, flowing south-west from the central mountains; the *Murong*, or river of Banjermassin, flowing south to the Sunda Sea; and the *Kutei*, flowing eastward to the Strait of Macassar.

Magnificent forests of iron wood, teak, and the gutta-percha tree, and many others, besides palms and canes, cover the land; here the orang-outan builds his nest of branches, and though the elephant is wanting, there are tapirs and wild swine, deer and buffaloes, in abundance.

The human inhabitants, estimated at nearly two millions in number, are for the most part *Dyaks*, a taller and more muscular people than the Malays, though evidently of the same race, in a great number of small tribes. They are partly enslaved by the Malays in the maritime districts; partly free pirates; partly barbarian nomads, in the interior mountain region. There are besides these many Mohammedan *Malays*; large numbers of *Chinese* colonists, living on the coasts as traders, or employed in the mines; and on the east, a number of colonists from Celebes.

The greater part of the island is nominally under Dutch rule, the native kingdom of Brunei, now a British protectorate, and the British territories being confined to the north and north-western districts.

8. The Dutch portion, which comprises a number of tributary native kingdoms and rajaships, is divided into the two residencies of the *west coast*, and of the *south and east coasts*.

*Pontianak*, near the mouth of the *Kapuas*, is the capital of a native kingdom of its name, and a busy port, and the seat of the Dutch Resident of the west coast division. Dependent on Pontianak is the state of Landak, in which was found the great diamond of the Raja of Matan, one of the largest known (weighing 367 carats). Farther north than Landak is the territory of *Montrado*, which has many gold mines.

*Banjermassin* corresponds to Pontianak in its position near the mouth of the chief river of the southern watershed, and in being the capital of the residency of the south and east. The chief trading place of the south coast, however, is the seaport of *Taborniau*, southward of Banjermassin.

*Samarinda*, on the *Kutei* river, is the most important place on the eastern side of Borneo.

9. *Sarawak*, a territory along the shores of the Bight of Datu, on the west coast, is of interest as having been governed for twenty-seven years, from 1841 onward, by the adventurous Sir James Brooke, or Raja Brooke, who did much to civilise the country, and to abolish piracy in the neighbouring seas. It is now a British protected state under the rule of Sir James's son.

The Malay kingdom of *Brunei*, from which our name of the island is derived, occupies the north-western slope to the China Sea, and its sultan, who in the year 1888 placed himself under British protection, became a pensioner of the British Government in 1906. Opposite this bay is the islet of *Labuan*, which was taken possession of by Britain in 1846, on account

of its valuable coal beds, and from its convenient position as a naval station in the South China Sea.

10. The district known as *British North Borneo* was ceded in 1877 by the sultans of Brunei and Sulu to a British chartered company, by which it has been administered as a British protectorate since 1888. The greater part of the interior is covered with virgin forest, and is mountainous. The climate and soil are favourable to the production of coffee, cocoa, tapioca, and tobacco. Sago is largely grown. Coal has been found near the sea-shore. There is a capital harbour at Sandakan in the north-east. Area over 81,000 square miles, population (1901) 160,000.

11. *Celebes*.—The strangely shaped island of *Celebes*, running out in four great arms, corresponding to four mountain ranges which extend from a central nucleus, embracing wide gulfs of the sea, is considerably larger in area than England and Wales, though no part of it is more than 70 miles from the sea. It abounds in all the products of this luxuriantly fertile region, but its surface is less forest-covered, more available for pasturing herds of wild buffalo, of domesticated cattle, and of the best horses of all the archipelago. Its trade with Singapore and China is mainly in cotton, birds' nests, tortoise-shell, tobacco, and sago. Gold, tin, copper, iron, and coal, are known in the south.

It is more populous, in proportion to its area, than Borneo; in the central interior region the little-known tribes of the *Turayas* seem to be akin to the *Dyaks* of Borneo. The coast peoples, called *Bugis*, of lighter yellow-brown colour, have evidently settled here from other parts.

*Celebes* is claimed entirely by the Dutch, and is divided by them into the Residencies of *Macassar* (or *Mangkassar*), which embraces the southern peninsula, and extends also over the island of *Sumbawa*, with part of *Floris* in the lesser Sunda chain; and of *Menado*, which reaches over the northern peninsula, and includes, besides, the *Sangir* and *Talant* islets, which reach out towards *Mindanao* on the east of the *Sulu Sea*. A third division, extending round the eastern gulf of *Tomori*, is administered from the Residency of the *Moluccas*. Total area of *Celebes* 72,000 square miles; population (1900) 884,000.

*Macassar*, or *Vlaardingen*, on the western coast of the southern peninsula, facing the *Sunda Sea*, is the chief place in *Celebes* and the depôt of trade with *Java* and *Singapore*. *Menado*, the capital of the northern Residency, lies near the northern extremity of the island. The *Sangir* islands within its government are remarkable for their volcanoes. *Mount Abue*, in the Great *Sangir*, has frequently caused great devastation by its violent eruptions.

12. *Lesser Sunda Islands*.—Of the Lesser Sunda Islands, which stretch east from *Java*, the first members are *Bali* and *Lombok*, both mountainous and volcanic, the latter containing a peak which is one of the highest points of all the archipelago. They form a separate residency with capital *Ampanam*, area 4000 square miles, and population (1900) 1,041,000.

13. Next to *Lombok* is the island of *Sumbawa*, nearly as large as *Wales*, forming a dependency of the Residency of *Macassar*. It is a very fertile forest-covered island, yielding abundance of teak and tamarinda, and has on its northern coast the great volcano of *Tambora* (9040 feet), which destroyed 12,000 people in the great eruption of 1815. Its inhabitants are Malay Mohammedans, only nominally subject to the representative of the Dutch Government, who lives at *Bima*, on the north coast.

14. Farther on we come to the long island of *Floris*, or *Mangera*, and *Sumba* or the *Sandalwood Island*, south of it, and from that by the chain of smaller islands, of which *Lomblem*, *Pantar*, and *Omboz* are the chief, to the great island of *Timor*, the largest of the Lesser Sunda chain, inhabited by Malayo-Papuan half-breeds. All these, excepting the western part of *Floris* and the eastern third of *Timor*, which forms the only remaining

possession of Portugal in all the archipelago, are grouped under the Residency of Timor, the capital of which is the fine port of *Kupang* at the south-western extremity of that island. *Dili*, a seaport on the north coast of Timor, is the chief point from which the Portuguese exercise some authority over the native rajas of their part of Timor.

15. **Moluccas.**—The most easterly groups of islands belonging to the Dutch are collectively named the *Moluccas*, and are portioned out into three Residencies.

(1) The first of these, named from its central island of *Amboyna*, embraces the larger island of *Buru*, west of it, and the western portion of *Ceram*. (2) The second, called the Residency of *Banda*, includes the eastern half of *Ceram*, and reaches over the central group of the *Banda* islets to the *Kei* islands and *Aru*, south of New Guinea, and to *Timor Laut* and the *South-Western Archipelago* between that island and Timor. (3) The third, named the Residency of *Ternate*, includes the large northern island of *Halmahera* or *Gilolo*, between Celebes and New Guinea, and reaches westward round the Gulf of Tomori in Celebes, and eastward to embrace *Waigu*, *Batanta*, *Salwatty*, and *Misol*, near New Guinea, as well as the western peninsula of that great island, which we shall afterwards have to notice in the Australian region. The Moluccas proper are the small islands clustering round *Ternate*, west of Halmahera, which has the Dutch fort of Orange, and is the most important central point of all this region of the archipelago. But the name Moluccas, or Spice Islands, has spread out from these to embrace all the islands which yield the beautiful *nutmeg* tree, resembling our pear-tree, with deep green glossy leaves, giving the *nut* and its covering *mace*, and the small ever-green which gives the aromatic flower buds called *cloves*.<sup>1</sup>

16. **Philippine Islands.**—The northern apex of the region of the East Indian Archipelago is formed by the great group of the Philippine Islands, which, we may remember, were discovered by Magellan during his great voyage of circumnavigation. They include over three thousand separate pieces of land, but the two islands of *Luzon* in the north of the group, and of *Mindanao* in the south of it, are by far the largest. Each of them is considerably larger than Ireland. Besides these there are seven islands of considerable dimensions, namely, *Mindoro*, *Palawan*, *Panay*, *Negros*, *Zebú*, *Leyte*, and *Sumar*. Still smaller are the central islands of *Masbate* and *Bohol*.

The islands generally present magnificent mountain scenery, and have many volcanic cones. That of *Albay*, in the south of Luzon, is 8500 feet in height, and constantly emits smoke and steam. Great forests of ebony, iron wood, cedar, and sapan wood, clothe most of them, and the variety of their fruits is immense. Rice, sugar, tobacco, hemp, cacao, and coffee, are the chief cultivated products. It is remarkable that all the larger beasts of prey are unknown, though birds of brilliant plumage and reptiles abound.

Three seasons are recognised—the cool and dry season, beginning in November, when the north-east monsoon sets in; then the *sekar*, or period of heat and drought, beginning in March and continuing till May, when the heat is almost unbearable; and the rainy season, beginning with the south-west monsoon in June, and lasting till September or October.

The people of the islands, besides the comparatively few Spaniards, Americans, and Chinese, fall into two divisions, first the aboriginal *Aetas* or *Itas*, called Negritos by the Spaniards, black-brown in colour, with woolly hair and regular features, living in independent tribes in the interior, whither they have been pressed by the second, those of Malay origin, who now occupy the maritime districts, the best known of whom are the *Tagals* and *Bisayas*.

<sup>1</sup> From Spanish *clavo* = a nail.



The great majority are Roman Catholics, the Mohammedans being mainly confined to Mindanao and Sulu. The islands, which were held by Spain since the sixteenth century, were ceded in 1898 to the United States, which has replaced the former priestly rule by a civil administration and representation granted in 1907. *Manila*, on the west coast of Luzon, is the capital, and carries on an extensive trade, sending out sugar, hemp, tobacco, cigars, and coffee, as far as Britain westward and the United States eastward. *Iloilo*, on the island of Panay, is the second seaport of the group, the outlet of the best hemp-growing district; *Zebu*; *Zamboanga*, on the south-west peninsula of Mindanao; and *Sual*, north of Manila, on the west coast of Luzon, are also considerable seaports. Area of the Archipelago 128,000 square miles; population (1903) 7,700,000.

17. The *Sulu Islands*, extending between Mindanao and the north of Borneo, consisting of the three groups of Basilan, Sulu proper or Solo, and the Tawi-Tawi islands, were occupied by the Spaniards in 1876, but in 1898 passed with the Philippines to the United States.

18. Farthest north of all the East Indian islands lie the five *Bashee Islands*, which were discovered by Dampier in 1687, and of which the Spaniards took possession in 1783. But these also are now United States territory.

## MOHAMMEDAN ASIA.

### BALUCHISTAN AND AFGHANISTAN.<sup>1</sup>

1. The eastern half of the great plateau of Iran or Persia, marked out by the mountain chains which run west and south from the great Hindu Kush range, and covered for the most part with bare infertile deserts and narrow valleys and gorges, is occupied by the Afghans and Baluchis. It is a rugged and poor country, devoid of what we should call roads, inhabited by tribes who are brave, but ignorant, suspicious, and irascible, most of whom are fanatical Mohammedans, disliking the presence of Europeans both as foreigners and Christians. In the political geography of Asia, however, this is a region of great interest and importance, as it lies now between the two great modern powers of the continent, Britain in India and Russia in Central Asia, whose influence is ever expanding. Its two great passes, the Khaibar to Kabul in Afghanistan, and the Bolan pass to Quetta in Baluchistan, may be called the north-western gates of India.

### BALUCHISTAN.<sup>2</sup>

2. **Physical Features.** The prominent features of Baluchistan, a territory considerably larger than the British Isles, are the *Hala* and *Kurkleki* mountains, which extend northward from Karachi on the west of the delta of the Indus to the Bolan pass, marking the edge of the plateau above the plains of Sind; and the ranges which run parallel to the shores of the Arabian Sea on the

	Area in sq. miles.	Pop. (1901).
<sup>1</sup> Baluchistan . . . . .	192,000	915,000
Afghanistan . . . . .	278,600	4,500,000

<sup>2</sup> The country of the Baluchis, a people of Iranian stock, quite distinct from the dominant Brahui race.

south, descending by pastoral terraces to the low-lying coast desert of Makran. Within these borders, on the plateau, bare hill ridges and sandy deserts extend over all the interior towards the frontiers of Afghanistan and Persia. The plateau has no rivers, but in the rainy season torrents rush down the mountain gorges. Winter on the highland is cold and rude, the summer very hot; the low coast desert of Makran then becomes one of the hottest districts on earth. One fertile and pleasant district, however, is included within the limits of Baluchistan; it is that of Kachhi-Gandava, which reaches down from the plateau on the north-east, to include the well-watered slopes of the mountains and part of the plain of the Indus at their base.

3. **People.**—The few inhabitants are the *Baluchis*, who are certainly of Iranian origin, though they claim to have migrated from the neighbourhood of Aleppo, and the *Brahui* tribes, now the dominant race, who seem to be of Mongol descent, their short round figures and flat features differing entirely from those of the Baluchis, and their language having much in common with that of the people of the Dekhan. Both are robust and active, inferior to the Afghans in appearance, but equal in fighting power.

4. **Division and Chief Towns.**—The divisions of the country generally recognised are those of Kelat, Sarawan, Shal or Quetta, and Kachhi-Gandava on the north-east; Jhalawan, Luz, and Makran in the south. The Khan of *Kelat*, whose mud-walled capital in the mountains of Kurkleki, 6700 feet above the sea, was stormed by the British in 1839, is the principal chieftain and the nominal ruler of Baluchistan, maintained and subsidised by Great Britain. The British and administered territories have a total area of 46,000 square miles, and population (1901) 350,000.

5. In 1877, as a guarantee for the maintenance of communications with Baluchistan, the British occupied the small town of *Quetta* in the Pishin Valley, close to the frontier of Afghanistan. It is a mud-walled place, 5540 feet above the sea, and about 20 miles north-west of the head of the *Bolan Pass*, which is a narrow and wild gorge about 51 miles in length, walled in by precipitous rocks, and infested by freebooters. In 1839 a column of the British army took six days to traverse it. This district is now connected with India by the *Bolan* and the *Sind-Pishin* railways.

## AFGHANISTAN.

6. The mountainous country reaching from Baluchistan northward to the Oxus river and the low-lying Turkoman desert beyond the Hindu-Kush; and from the frontier of Persia on the west to the skirt of the Panjab, to Kafiristan, and the Pamir plateau on the east, takes its name from the Afghan tribes who form the greater part of its population. It extends about 500 miles each way, and includes a greater area than that of France.

7. **Physical Features.**—Four-fifths of its surface are covered with mountains and valleys, which have a general direction west and south-west from the huge central knot of the Pamir towards the more level deserts of the interior of the plateau of Iran. Along the northern border extends the vast alpine range of the *Hindu-Kush*<sup>1</sup> (over 20,000 feet in elevation), which bears this name for nearly 400 miles, from the Pamir to the *Haji-kak Pass* (12,190 feet) between Kabul and Bamian. Beyond this pass the range is continued westward, and is called the *Koh-i-Baba*, a snow-clad range 18,000 feet in elevation

---

<sup>1</sup> "Hindu-Killer."



which is prolonged still westward by the *Safid Koh*, and by other mountains which form the northern edge of the plateau of Iran, ultimately joining the Elburz range south of the Caspian. On the eastern side, next India, the high *Sulaiman Mountains* mark the edge of the highland, and the approaches from India are by four main passes round or across this range; by the *Khaibar Pass* (3375 feet), round its northern extremity and up the valley of the Kabul river to the Khurd Kabul Pass, ten miles from the city, where General Elphinstone's army was destroyed in 1841; by the *Shutargardan Pass* (10,900 feet) at the head of the Kurram valley; by the *Gomul Pass*, across the centre of it; or by the *Bolan Pass*, through northern Baluchistan, turning its southern extremity. Between the Hindu-Kush and the Sulaiman ranges many high masses run out south-westward, enclosing between them many well-watered and fertile valleys, as well as high, cold, treeless, pastoral table-lands, which merge in the south-west into the bare deserts of Baluchistan and eastern Persia.

8. As a whole this country of mountain and valley is well watered. The *Kabul river* flows eastward between the base of the Hindu-Kush and the *Safid Koh*, as the northern mass of the Sulaiman mountains is named, to join the Indus at Attock. Rafts descend it to Jalalabad, and it is probably navigable for boats as it approaches the Indus. From the opposite side of the *Koh-i-baba* the *Hari-rud* (or *Heri river*) runs westward past Herat, and turns northward through the marginal heights of the plateau to descend into the Turkoman desert in the north, and there to be drawn off in irrigating canals. Its north and south course forms the boundary with Persia. The valleys, between the interior chains which ramify south-westward over the country, supply the head streams of the variable *Helmand*, which fills the lagoons of the great Seistan swamp or Hamun in the centre of the plateau, terminating its course there. It is swollen out by the melting snows of the mountains in May and June, but shrinks at other seasons to a narrow channel. The northern river, the *Oxus*, receives a number of small tributaries from the northward slope of the Hindu-Kush, near its head in the Pamir, but farther west, where it enters the low-lying desert, the streams flowing north towards it fail to reach its channel, being drawn off altogether in canals for irrigation in this dry region. Such are the *Dehas*, which terminates in the district round Balkh, on the border of the desert; the *Nari*, or Sangalak, which becomes similarly spent in the vicinity of Andkhui, and the larger clear and rapid stream of the *Murgh-ab*, which is exhausted in fertilising the oasis of Merv.

9. *Climate*.—The climate of a region so diversified in elevation is naturally very various; the heights are very cold; the deep valleys very hot. As a whole the climate is dry, cool, and bracing, and its brave and strong people testify to its healthiness; the year is divided distinctly into seasons of spring, summer, autumn, and winter, the last beginning in December, when the streets of Kabul are blockaded with snow, and all business is at an end for three months. Kabul enjoys a moderately warm summer, but at Jalalabad, in the same valley lower down, the heat of June becomes intolerable.

10. *Products*.—The aspect of the thinly-peopled country is generally bare and rugged; only some of the valleys and lower mountain slopes are terraced and cultivated. In the mountain forests the pine, oak, cypress, and walnut are characteristic trees, and many of the European fruits grow wild. The rose, jasmine, and hyacinth, adorn the gardens. Among wild animals the lion is occasionally seen, but the leopard is common, as well as wolves, hyenas, jackals, and foxes, bears in the forests, wild sheep in the eastern mountains, and antelopes in the plains. The horses of Afghanistan are excellent, and are brought in numbers to India. Broad-tailed sheep appear in large droves; goats and dogs are also plentiful. Some of the rivers have alluvial gold, and copper and iron are abundant in the north and east.

11. **People.**—Though the whole country within the limits we have been describing is called Afghanistan, it is very far from being a united state, and the allegiance owed to the frequently deposed Ameer of Kabul is of the lightest and most fluctuating kind ; its limits include many tribes which are more or less independent of one another, and often at war, uniting or allying themselves it may be against a foreign enemy. Along the borders next the Panjab the *Pathan*<sup>1</sup> tribes claim absolute independence, and are under no rule whatever except that of their own chiefs ; they have always been a source of disquietude to the British Government, frequently closing the passes to trade, and a great number of expeditions have been undertaken against them. The most important of these border tribes are the *Yusufzais*, who hold the hills north and west of Peshawar ; the *Afridis*, in several clans on the eastern slopes of the Safid Koh south-west of Peshawar ; and the *Waziris*, the robbers of the Gomul Pass and other parts of the central Sulaiman range. North of the Kabul valley the *Kafirs*<sup>2</sup> occupy the slopes of the Hindu-Kush. These are fine mountaineers, with fair complexion and blue eyes ; gross idolaters, professing a sort of Hinduism, but remarkable for their truthfulness and good faith. The *Afghans* proper, who are finely-built, long-bearded men, with Caucasian features, style themselves Beni Israel, or sons of Israel, claiming descent from Saul, and taking their name from his grandson Afghana ; but the theory of their Hebrew origin, based on this tradition, is untenable, for their language has no relationship to any of the Semitic dialects, but is clearly a member of the great Aryan family. The most numerous of the central clans are the Ghilzais ; but since about 1756 the northern Durani of Kabul have been the politically dominant tribe. The *Hazarahs*,<sup>3</sup> inhabiting the wild highlands of the north of Afghanistan, are again a widely different race ; they are of Tatar or Mongol descent, pastoral in occupation. Beyond the Hindu-Kush, towards the Oxus, the provinces of Turkestan included within the boundary (Wakhan, Badakshan, Kunduz, and Balkh) yield obedience to the Ameer only when he can back his demands by force. Besides the Afghan tribes, Persians, or Tajiks, are numerous in the west, Hindus in the east.

12. **Divisions.**—The great divisions of the country are those of *Kabul*, in the centre ; *Herat*, on the west in the valley of the Hari-rud ; *Seistan*, round the head of the Hamun Swamp (now almost entirely within the Persian boundary) in the south-west ; *Damaun*, or “the skirt,” in the east along the base of the Sulaiman range. In 1873 it was agreed by the Cabinets of London and St. Petersburg that the northern frontier of Afghanistan should be considered to be the Oxus river from the Siri-kul (lake) in the Pamir plateau as far as the post of Khoja Sala, where the route from Balkh to Bokhara crosses the river, and that it should be marked farther westward by a line drawn across the desert from Khoja Sala to the Persian frontier near Sarakhs on the lower Hari-rud. The limit thus indicated includes, within Afghanistan, a number of small states or territories grouped as the province of *Afghan Turkestan* ; but in these states, as we have seen, the government of Kabul only maintains itself by force of arms.

13. **Government.**—The history of Afghanistan has long been a record of disorders, feuds, and factions. But in recent years the Amirs of Kabul have greatly strengthened the Durani dynasty. Balkh, in the north,

<sup>1</sup> The term *Pathan*, by which the Afghan tribes are known to the natives of India, is a corrupted form of Pukhtun or Pushtaneh, a name conferred, it is said, on a leader named Kish, by Mohammed himself, when he made a pilgrimage to Medina to examine into the new religion, which was subsequently adopted by the greater number of his countrymen.

<sup>2</sup> Or infidels, also known as *Kohistani* (“mountaineers”).

<sup>3</sup> So named from the Persian word Hazar, signifying a thousand, in reference to the multitude of their tribes.

was added to it by conquest in 1850; Kandahar, on the south west, was joined to it in 1854; Herat, on the west, the scene of frequent disputes with Persia, was finally taken possession of by the Afghans of Kabul in 1863; and when Dost Mohammed, the father of Shir Ali, died in that year, the British Government recognised the latter as ruler of Afghanistan. Soon afterwards, however, two usurpers in succession ruled at Kabul, Shir Ali being exiled meanwhile to Turkestan. With the aid of his son Shir Ali regained his throne; but the recognition given to his predecessors by the Indian Government, the British arbitration which gave Seistan to Persia, and the British occupation of Quetta, had alienated his good-will, and in 1878 a British ambassador was refused admittance to his territory; in November of that year war was declared, and the invasion of Afghanistan undertaken by the British. The result of this expedition was a Treaty, concluded in 1879, called the Treaty of Gandamak, by which the British Indian frontier was advanced to the head of the Khaibar Pass, the summit of the Sbutargardan Pass at the head of the Kurram Valley, and to the Khojak Pass at the head of the Pishin Valley north of Quetta. Towards the end of 1879, in consequence of the murder of the first English resident under the new treaty, a punitive expedition occupied Kabul and Kandahar. Since then peace has prevailed, and the reigning Amīr, Habibullah, who succeeded his father Abdur Rahmān in 1901, has entered into friendly relations with the British Government.

14. Trade.—The industries of Afghanistan, besides the little agriculture of the valleys, are chiefly the weaving of coarse woollen cloths and the manufacture of weapons. Caravans passing through from India bring shawls, cottons and muslins, turbans and silks, besides sugar and spices; to India they take ponies, furs, and fresh and dried fruits; European wares reach Afghanistan both by India and through Turkestan from the north. Some rich Afghan merchants possess thousands of camels.

15. Chief Towns.—The chief towns of Afghanistan are *Kabul* in the north-east, 6400 feet above the sea, in the most fertile part of all the country, surrounded by orchards and gardens. *Ghazni*, 85 miles south west, standing on a rock 280 feet above the adjacent plain, and 7730 feet above the sea, protected by walls and towers, is a notable fortress, which was stormed by the British in 1839, and again taken in 1842. Before the twelfth century it was the capital of the great empire of the Ghaznevīde kings. *Kandahar*, in the upper basin of the Helmand, is a populous town, the great mart of traffic between Persia and India, 3490 feet above the sea. Here Nadir Shah was assassinated on his return from India in 1747. *Herat*, in the north-west, is a well-fortified town. *Bamian* lies beyond the Haji-kak Pass, which is a very important one, as it is the only one in the high ranges north of Kabul that would be practicable for artillery. Here are some extensive architectural remains and artificial cave dwellings of ancient date, which are still occupied.

#### AFGHAN TURKESTAN.

16. *Badakshan*.—The most easterly of the small states north of the Hindu Kush range included within Afghan Turkestan is that of *Badakshan*. It lies for the most part in the deep valley of the *Korcha* river, a tributary of the Oxus. This valley is so fertile that it sends out rice and wheat to the surrounding countries, and pastures large numbers of horses, cattle, and famous camels. Within this territory also the beautiful lapis lazuli, sapphires, and rubies are found. Its chief centres of population are *Jirm*, a cluster of hamlets in the valley of the *Kokcha*, and *Farzabad* on the Oxus.

17. Tributary to it is the province of *Wakhan*, higher up the valley of the Oxus, on the south-western border of the Great Pamir steppe, inhabited by the *Wakhis*, an intelligent and good looking race, fond of arms and sport, whose

“ Mir ” or chief resides at *Kila Panja* in the valley. A considerable transit trade passes along the upper Oxus valley through Badakshan and Wakhan, between Eastern and Western Turkestan over the Pamir routes. The easiest approach to this region from India is that by the Chitral valley and over the *Baroghil Pass* at its head.

18. *Kunduz*.—Next to Badakshan westward lies *Kunduz*, formerly an independent Khanate, now tributary to Afghanistan, like the former. Its valley is also richly productive of grain and fruits. The Mir or Khan of this territory, and with him the ruling part of the population, are Uzbeks, a Mongolian race ; the rest of the people are Tajiks. The capital, *Kunduz*, near the tributary of the Oxus, of the same name, is a small mud-built place in the midst of gardens.

19. *Balkh*.—Beyond Kunduz we reach the more extensive state of *Balkh* (or Bactria), reaching from the Koh-i-baba range down its northern slope to the Oxus. Here we are approaching the borders of the great Turkoman desert, and the low country becomes bare and stony, though the upper valleys are well watered and fertile. The natives of Balkh are Uzbeks of the Shiah sect of Mohammedans. The capital of the same name, situated where the waters of the Dehas river from the Koh-i-baba are spread out and spent in irrigating canals just before reaching the Oxus, is a ruinous place, but has had a great history. It is still called by the orientals Umm-ul-Bilad, or the “ mother of cities ; ” in the beginning of the period of the middle ages it was the great centre of Mohammedan civilisation in Central Asia, and was then an immense city, fully thirty miles in circuit. It was the birthplace of Zoroaster, and the capital of the Greek kingdom of Bactria, founded by the successors of Alexander the Great.

20. *Andkhui*.—About 75 miles west of the ruinous Balkh lies *Andkhui*, also in the terminal oasis of a mountain stream, the centre of another small territory which long formed an independent Khanate, inhabited by Turkomans, Uzbeks, and Tajiks.

21. *Maimana*.—Lastly, south-westward of Andkhui we come to the small state of *Maimana*. The most direct route from Herat to Samarkand and Bokhara passes through it by a difficult passage over the Murghab river. It has a warlike Uzbek population, partly settled in villages, partly nomadic, who long held out against the rule of the Afghans.

### WESTERN TURKESTAN.<sup>1</sup>

1. Between the southern borders of the Russian conquests in Turkestan and the limits which have been recognised as the western frontier of Afghanistan, there still remains a belt of territory comprising the Khanates of Khiva and Bokhara, which enjoyed a precarious independence till 1872-73, when both became vassal states of Russia, which soon after reduced all the rest of Western Turkestan. Since the Tekke Turkomans of Merv tendered their allegiance in the beginning of 1884, the Russian and Afghan territories touch, and a neutral zone exists no longer.

	Area in sq. miles.	Population.
<sup>1</sup> Khanate of Khiva .	22,320 .	800,000
„ of Bokhara .	80,000 .	1,250,000
„ Karategin .	8,315 .	100,000
Turkoman country .	82,000 .	250,000
	<hr/> 192,635 <hr/>	<hr/> 2,400,000 <hr/>

## KHIVA.

2. The north-western portion of this independent belt is occupied by the diminished khanate of *Khiva*. Here the only inhabited and fertile district is that which lies along the left bank of the lower Amu or Oxus where it approaches the Sea of Aral. This has been rendered fruitful by the energy of the people in irrigating the land by canals drawn from the river, so that it yields corn, fruits, and silk in abundance. Its settled inhabitants are Uzbeks, the dominant people of this region, besides Turkomans, Kirghiz, and Persians, all subjects of the hereditary Khan, who in 1872 was reduced to a state of vassalage by Russia. The trade of the country is carried on by camel caravans of from one to two thousand animals, which cross the steppes to Orenburg or Astrakhan, or take the shorter way to Krasnovodsk, on the Caspian, whence goods are shipped. The capital city of Khiva, on one of the main canals drawn from the Amu, is a place of from three to four thousand mud-built houses, surrounded by a wall, and containing a citadel shut off from the rest of the town. Russians only are free to trade in Khiva, and the navigation of the Amu is now free to their vessels alone.

## BOKHARA.

3. Adjoining Khiva on the east, and reaching south to the Oxus, is the once powerful khanate of *Bokhara*, which, though politically inferior to Afghanistan, is recognised as spiritually supreme by the surrounding Mohammedan states. Excepting along the banks of the Oxus, and where the Zarafshan river, drawn off in canals, enters the land on the north, there is little cultivable or inhabited land, almost all the remaining area being covered with sandy steppes, in which wells become of the utmost value. In the districts which are reached by water, however, cotton and silk, corn and fruits, are grown; large numbers of cattle and broad-tailed sheep are also reared; and trade is busily carried on by camel-caravans and the Trans-Caspian railway. The volcanic Hissar district was wasted by a violent earthquake in 1907.

The dominant people here also are the active and intelligent *Uzbeks*; but there are also found Afghans and Arabs, Jews, Nogais or Russian Tatars, Kirghiz, Tajiks, Hindus, and Turkomans. The prevailing religion is Mohammedanism, and the "Mir" is supreme in religious matters also.

*Bokhara*, the capital, the foundation of which is ascribed to Alexander the Great, stands in the fertile region gained by the division of the Zarafshan river into a multitude of irrigating canals, before it reaches the Oxus. Its walls, four miles in circuit, have eleven gates. Within, its bazaars are enlivened by the many varied costumes of the many different peoples who come hither to trade. *Karshi*, south-east of the capital, is also a great trading place; and the main southern routes into Afghanistan cross the Oxus at *Kerki* to Maimana, and at *Kilif* into Balkh. Since 1887 a railway joins Bokhara to Merv and the Caspian, and is now (1907) extended through Tashkent north to the Siberian trunk line.

The mountainous pastoral district of *Karategin*, on the western slope of the Pamir Steppe, formerly an independent territory, passed under the protection of the ruler of Bokhara when Russia took possession of Kokand.

## THE TRANS-CASPIAN PROVINCE.

4. The remainder of the zone, between the Oxus and the northern frontier of Persia, which now forms part of the Trans-Caspian province, is occupied, for the most part, by the great waste called the Kara Kum, or "black



sands." Round the borders of this sandy desert live the Turkomans, generally nomadic, but occasionally occupying themselves with a little agriculture, on the banks of the streams which flow down from the Persian and Afghan highlands to be spent in the desert. The Turkomans, a branch of the Túrki race comprising a large number of separate tribes, are a fierce, war-like people, who before their reduction by the Russians in 1882-4 lived mainly by plundering the caravans and settlements of the surrounding agricultural populations. Their chief tribe are the Tekke, who occupy the ancient town of *Merv*, in the oasis formed by the Murghab, which is the most important centre of population in the Trans-Caspian province.

### PERSIA.<sup>1</sup>

1. The kingdom of *Persia* or *Iran* occupies the plateau lands which rise between the Caspian and the Persian Gulf of the Indian Ocean. It is separated eastward, from Afghanistan and Baluchistan, by an artificial frontier drawn northward from the coast of the Indian Ocean, past the Hamun swamp, to the river Hari-rud, which loses itself in the sands of the Turkoman desert in the north; and westward, from Mesopotamia, by a line drawn from the Shat-el-Arab, or the united water channel of the Euphrates and Tigris, at the head of the Persian Gulf, northward, across the mountains of Kurdistan, to Mount Ararat. In extent Persia measures more than five times the area of the British Isles; but its population scarcely exceeds that of Ireland and Scotland conjointly.

2. **Relief and Landscape.**—The only lowlands of Persia are the narrow and arid belt of coast which skirts the Persian Gulf and the Indian Ocean in the south, and that which lies along the southern margin of the Caspian, which is covered with vegetation, and has a damp and relaxing climate. Between these the plateau rises to a general elevation of 2000 to 3000 feet above the sea, its northern margin, next the Caspian, being marked out by the range of the *Elburz* mountains, which culminate in the highest summit of the country (Mount Damavand, volcano, 18,469 ft.), and its southern by the parallel ranges of the *Kohrud* Mountains, and the chains of Kurdistan, Farsistan, and Laristan, which run from north-west to south-east on this side of the plateau. These ranges have been as yet little explored; some parts of them rise perhaps to a greater general height than the Elburz range, and some of their summits, seen from long distances, never lose their snowy caps. The high plains which stretch out between the northern and southern mountain ranges, occupying the interior of the plateau, are for the most part barren and sandy wastes, scored and streaked with patches of green oases, cultivation being only possible by artificial irrigation. The mountain valleys and ravines are much more fertile, and afford bright and picturesque prospects.

3. **Rivers and Lakes.**—The rivers flowing down the outer slopes of the plateau are few and of no value at all for navigation. The *Kizil Uzen* and *Atrek* are the largest of those which flow to the Caspian from Persia; the *Karun* and *Karkhah*, the largest streams which flow down the south-western slopes to the Euphrates, in the Mesopotamian plain. The north-eastern boundary river, the *Hari-rud*, coming from the mountains of Afghanistan, loses itself in the desert sands almost as soon as it has descended from the plateau. In the north-western corner of the country, between the mountain

<sup>1</sup> Area, 628,000 square miles; pop. (est. 1906) 9,500,000.



called the *Sehend Koh*, which rises south of the town of *Tabriz*, and the mountains of *Kurdistan*, lies the high basin of the lake of *Urumiah* or *Urmia*, the surface of which is nearly 4000 feet above the sea. It is nearly as extensive as *Lancashire*, and its waters are so salt that no fish can live in them. The large lakes of *Niris* and of *Shiraz* lie within the folds of the south-western mountains of *Farsistan*; and, on the eastern border, partly in *Persia* partly in *Baluchistan* and *Afghanistan*, is the great expanse called the *Haman*, which extends from north to south for a length of about 180 miles. This basin, which appears to have been at one time covered, as a great lake or swamp, by the water brought to it by the *Helmand* river from the mountains of *Afghanistan*, is now mainly a shallow grassy or sedgy depression, defined in outline by clay-cliffs and reeds, a few pools of water appearing only at the mouths of the streams which formerly filled it.

For irrigation the plains of central *Persia* are dependent on the uncertain streams which flow down inward from the surrounding mountains, and which are led off by "kanats" or underground canals, or by surface channels, to water the fields. When rain or snow is deficient on the mountains, there is a scarcity of water in the plains; and, when both are wanting, a famine is the result.

4. *Climate*.—The climate of *Persia* is of the excessive type, the temperature of the plateau region ranging from a few degrees above the zero point of the thermometer to as high as 112° F.; the prevailing winds there are, from the north-west, the cooler dry wind; and from the south-east, the rain-bearing wind of *Persia*. What the younger *Cyrus* is reported to have said regarding the climate, "that people perish with cold at one extremity while they are suffocated with heat at the other," is true of the country.

In the *Dushtistan*, as the lowland along the *Persian Gulf* is called, the heat of autumn is excessive, winter and spring delightfully fresh, and the cold never intense. In the arid region of the eastern interior of the plateau the heat of summer is most oppressive; the winter cold and piercing. The *Caspian* slope, and the lowland along its shores, on the contrary, have a warm rather than hot summer and a mild winter, with frequent and heavy rains.

5. *People and Religion*.—The inhabitants of *Persia* are divisible into two chief classes, the settled agriculturists, merchants, and artisans, and the nomadic or pastoral tribes. The former class is chiefly composed of the *Tajiks*, the descendants of the ancient *Persian* race, with an admixture of *Turkish*, *Arab*, *Armenian*, and other foreign blood. These, from being long a subject race, have lost much of their independence of character, and are often servile and cunning. To the nomadic or pastoral tribes belong the *Turkomans* of the northern borders, the *Kurds*, *Lurs*, and *Arabs* of the south-west, each tribe living under its hereditary chief. Besides these a number of separate communities are to be found, such as that of the *Nestorian*<sup>1</sup> Christians of the mountains of *Kurdistan*, at present a poor and illiterate people; of *Jews*, *Gypsies*, and of *Negroes* from the *Zanzibar* coast of *Africa*.

The greater part of the people of *Persia* are *Mohammedans*, and chiefly of the *Shiah* sect, and their priesthood has many orders. Among the *Shiaks* a pilgrimage to the shrine of the *Imam Reza*, at *Mash-had*, in the north-east of *Persia*, is more essential than one to *Mecca* or *Melua*. The chief exceptions are the *Armenians* and *Nestorian Christians* before mentioned, and the few *Ghehrs* or *Parsis* remaining in *Karnan* and *Fars*, and retaining their purity of race and religious faith. As a rule, the rich and middle classes of *Persia*, despite abilities, are sensuous and dissipated, while the poorer classes have

<sup>1</sup> *Nestorius*, patriarch of *Constantinople*, was deposed by the Council of *Ephesus* in 431 A. D. His sect, repressed in the *Roman empire*, found shelter in *Persia*.

barely sufficient sustenance. The famine of 1870 destroyed upwards of half a million of lives. In comparison with other countries of Asia, education is advanced among the upper classes of Persia. In the colleges Persian and Arabian literature are studied, and the sciences, largely mixed with astrology, are nominally taught.

**6. Products, Trade, and Manufactures.** — Where the dry soil of Persia is supplied with water by irrigation, it is exceedingly fertile ; the wheat it yields is as fine as any in the world ; cotton, rice, sugar-cane, and tobacco, are other large crops. The wines of Shiraz are celebrated in Eastern poetry ; mulberries are extensively cultivated, and silk is an important product. With the exception of salt from Lake Urmia, and the salt incrustations of the desert shores of the plateau, the mineral products are insignificant ; yet the beautiful turquoise stone is found in the Elburz mountains of Persia.

The horse and camel are the chief domestic animals, — the former larger and handsomer, though less fleet, than that of Arabia, is celebrated as the finest in the east. Immense herds of sheep and of goats, whose soft hair is woven into fine fabrics, are pastured on the mountain slopes of the south-west. Wild animals, among them the lion and leopard, wolves, tigers, cats, jackals, and boars, are most numerous in the northern forests of the Elburz Caspian slope. The rivers flowing to the Caspian are rich in fish, especially the sturgeon, quantities of which are exported to Russia.

The manufactures of Persia are famous, though limited in extent, and include hand-made carpets, silk stuffs, shawls, fine arms, and sword cutlery. Trade is of little importance, and is carried on by means of caravans which come from the interior of Asia, and through the towns of *Karman* and *Yezd*, *Shiraz*, and *Isfahan*, in the south ; and from the route by *Mash-had* and *Sabzawar* from the east to *Tehran*, and thence to *Tabriz*, in the north-western corner of the country, where the greater part of the exchanges of goods are effected. *Tabriz* is the emporium for the productions not only of Persia, but of northern India, Samarkand and Bokhara, Kabul and Baluchistan. European merchandise, chiefly cotton cloths, come by way of Constantinople and Trebizond to *Tabriz*, to be distributed thence by the returning caravans over the east. The trade of the Caspian at the Persian port of *Anzali* (the port of Rasht and of *Tehran*), and *Barfrush*, and at their own naval and trading station on the islet of *Ashurada*, in the south-east angle of the Caspian, is monopolised by the Russians. The maritime trade of the southern coast at the ports of *Bushire*, and *Gombrun*, or *Bandar Abbas*, on the Strait of Hormuz, is carried on mainly by British vessels and Arab dhows.

Though the roads or tracks through Persia are utterly neglected, a system of telegraph lines has now been established by Europeans, and the first postal service, also conducted by Europeans, was opened in January 1877. By it mails are now carried from Julfa, the Armenian suburb of *Isfahan*, to *Tehran*, *Tabriz*, and the port of Rasht on the Caspian.

**7. Government.**—Until the year 1906 Persia was ruled throughout historic times by an absolute *Shah-in-Shah* ("King of Kings"), whose powers were limited in Mohammedan times only by the precepts of the Koran. But in 1906 a constitution was granted with representative institutions comprising a Senate of 60 members and a National Council (*Majlis-i-Shorâ-i-Milli*) of 156, raised to 162 in 1907. Of the Senate (not yet appointed) 30 are to represent the Shah, and 30 the National Council, whose members are elected by the upper classes (nobles, clergy, chiefs, landowners, and traders) and returned for two years, the Chambers to meet annually in October. The first meeting took place in October 1907 and was followed by great disorders, and by the attempted assassination of the Shah in February 1908. There are nearly 30 Ministers for War, Finance, Home and

Foreign Affairs, Justice, Trade, Religion, and other branches of the public service. By the Anglo-Russian Convention of 1907 Persia is divided into a northern (Russian) and a southern (British) sphere of influence, the long-standing diplomatic friction between the two rival states being thus arrested for the present.

Notwithstanding its ancient civilisation, and the contact of Europeans, the same atrocious penal code and other barbarisms have hitherto prevailed in Persia as in other Mohammedan countries. The oppressive taxation of the labouring classes, the insecurity of property, internal disorders, and the closing in of Russian and British influence round it, have destroyed the power of the kingdom.

**8. Divisions and Chief Towns.** -The divisions of the country are:—The three Caspian provinces of Gilan, Mazandaran, and Astrabad, in the north; Irak Ajemi, Khorassan, and Seistan, in the central plains; Adarbajan, Ardalan, Luristan, Khuzistan or Arabistan, Farsistan, and Karman, extending over the parallel mountain ranges of the west and south-west; and Makran, sloping to the coast of the Indian Ocean on the south. *Tabriz, Kasvin, Isfahan, and Shiraz*, have in turn been the capital cities of Persia. At present *Tehran*, on a broad plain at the south-west base of Mount Damavand, is the seat of government. Black mud walls and ill-paved thoroughfares are the rule in Persian towns, the windowed or terraced fronts of the houses being built for the inner courts, not for the world without. Handsome mosques and solid caravanserais there may be, but everything is irregular, and ruins and new buildings are side by side, and dirt and discomfort everywhere.

About forty miles north-east of Shiraz are the marvellous ruins of *Persepolis*, the ancient capital, once "the glory of the East," to the embellishment of which Darius, Xerxes, and Artaxerxes contributed.

## ASIATIC TURKEY.<sup>1</sup>

**1. General Description.** This large territory, the whole western extremity of Asia, is very irregular in contour and relief, and may be compared in extent to about twelve times the area of England and Wales. It has a very long coast-line, being bounded on the north by the Black Sea and the Sea of Marmara, west by the Ægean and Mediterranean Seas, and the Red Sea, whilst its south-eastern angle occupies a considerable portion of the shores of the Persian Gulf. Its remaining boundaries on the east and south are formed by the long ranges of mountains that serve to separate it from Persia, and by the Syrian Desert, which gives a very indefinite limit to the empire in the direction of Central Arabia. The chief physical divisions are Asia Minor, Armenia, and Kurdistan on the north; Mesopotamia, Babylonia, Syria and Palestine, the Hejaz,<sup>2</sup> and Yemen, on the south. These are the names in common use amongst Europeans, but they are not officially recognised in the country. This land, the early home of the human race, and the scene of so many great events in the very dawn of history, has been now for a long period slowly but surely falling to decay under a weak and corrupt government.

<sup>1</sup> Area, 693,000 square miles; population (est. 1900) 16,870,000.

<sup>2</sup> Hejaz — land of pilgrimage, the Holy Land of Mohammedans.

2. **Islands.**—The islands belonging to Turkey are chiefly situated in the *Ægean*, and are collectively known as the Archipelago of the White Sea, *Jezireh Bahr-i-Sefid*. The principal islands are *Thasos*, with a population of 8500 souls—like all the islands, chiefly Greek ; it has a barren soil, but the hills are covered with fir timber. *Samothrace*, with an area of about 30 square miles, and a population of about 5000. *Imbros*, population 8000, noted for its abundance of game. *Lemnos*, area 150 square miles, population 27,000, exports corn, grapes, and figs. *Tenedos*, a small island close to *Besika Bay*, and near the mouth of the *Dardanelles*, population 4000, exports a famous red wine. *Mytilini*, the birthplace of *Barbarossa*, population 102,000, fertile soil ; olive groves clothe the shores, and pine forests the mountains. *Chios*, area 400 square miles, population 60,000, exports mastic, silk cocoons, olive oil, and wine. *Samos*, a tributary beyship under a Christian Prince.<sup>1</sup> *Icaria*, population 10,000, chiefly charcoal-burners. *Patmos*, a barren island with a population of 6000, famous as the place of *St. John's* banishment, and the scene of the *Apocalyptic vision*. *Cos*, area 150 square miles, population 10,000, is a fertile and picturesque island, producing corn, oil, wine, and silk. *Rhodes*, area 420 square miles, population 29,000 ; contains the chief town of the vilayet of the islands, with a good port ; is healthy and fertile, and exports honey, wax, oil, figs, and grapes ; was the place of residence of the order of the *Knights of St. John*. Here also stood the celebrated *Colossus of Rhodes*. *Cyprus*, a rich and fertile island situated at the eastern end of the *Mediterranean*, has an area of 3710 square miles, and a population of 237,000, two-thirds of whom are Christians and speak Greek. It is traversed by two distinct mountain ranges, one parallel to the north coast, the other to the south. From neglect, want of drainage and tillage, it is covered in many places with fever-breeding marshes. It is historically famous for its copper and other minerals, and contains many ruined towns. *Nicosia*, in the centre of the island, is the capital. The other places worth naming are *Larnaca* and *Limasol* on the south coast ; *Papho* on the west, *Kyrenia* on the north, and *Famagusta* on the east. It suffers from occasional drought, has no harbours, and, with great agricultural capabilities and mineral and forestal riches, has but little commerce. Under the convention of 1878 it is administered by the British Government.

3. **Relief.**—The surface may be readily divided into three sections, the first on the north, including *Asia Minor*, *Armenia*, and *Kurdistan*, being everywhere mountainous ; the second to the south, including *Mesopotamia*, *Babylonia*, and part of *Arabia*, an almost uninterrupted plain. The third, to the west, including *Syria*, *Palestine*, the *Hejaz*, and *Yemen*, a long range of sea-bordering hills and mountains.

The whole of the first section is one great plateau of varying elevation, buttressed north and south by considerable mountain ranges, and culminating in the great peak of *Ararat*, 16,916 feet above sea-level. Rising from the shores of the *Black Sea*, the long north range, clothed with forests of valuable hard wood, commences on the east at an elevation of 9000 feet, and gradually declines westward in average elevation to 3000 feet, but rises in peaks south of the *Sea of Marmora* to 6330 (*Mount Olympus*) and 5750 feet (*Mount Ida*). Towards the *Ægean* coast the plateau has been very much broken into by the rivers which enter this sea, but spurs run out to the coast in steep bluffs of

---

<sup>1</sup> See page 355.



2000 and 3000 feet. On the south the Taurus range may be said to terminate in a bluff headland at the south-western extremity of the peninsula. Rising almost immediately to a height of 5695 feet in the Baba Dag, it serves as the waterparting for the south coast drainage as far east as the meridian of Tarsus; separating the short streams that fall into the Mediterranean from the continental or lake drainage of the plateau, and reaching in the Bulghar Dag a height of 11,390 feet. Here it throws off the range of the Anti-Taurus to the north-east, and here also is found the famous pass called now Gulek Boghaz, the *Cilician Gates* of ancient history. From this point its continuation eastward appears to be very much broken and interrupted until it reaches the Akhyr Dag north of Marash, when it again resumes its character as a great range, and reaches the Euphrates at the great bend south-west of Kharput. South of Marash the twin chain of Amanus runs off to the south-west, and under the names of Durdan Dag and Alma Dag (Cilician and Syrian Amanus), embraces the plain and gulf of Iskenderun (Issus). The Syrian branch, reaching the Nahr-el-Ahse (Orontes) at Antioch, becomes the northern head of the sea-bordering ranges which form our third section. Crossing the Euphrates, and proceeding eastwards under the local names of Ahndsh Dag, Khan-lush Dag, and Erdosh Dag, the prolongation of the Taurus range forms the waterparting between the Murat chai, and the streams feeding Lake Van and the upper Tigris, and reaches the ridge, which forms this part of the Turco-Persian boundary, near the valley of Kotur, ceded in 1878 to Persia. Starting from the mountains which occupy the great bend of the Euphrates in E. long. 39°, and running in a south-easterly direction, the ridge of Karajah Dag (Mons Maarus) separates the tributaries of the upper Tigris from those of the Khabur; at Mardin this range bends a little more easterly, and under the name of Jebel Tur reaches the Tigris about 70 miles above Mosul. Crossing the river, and still proceeding in the same easterly direction, it ultimately reaches the boundary range at the peak of Rowandiz, 10,120 feet.

Between this latter range and the eastern prolongation of the Taurus Mountains south of Lake Van, lie the range of Jebel Judi, and the confused mass of the mountains of Jalamerik in the centre of the Kurdish country, the home country of the Cardukhi of Xenophon.

The Anti-Taurus, leaving the main range, as already mentioned, near the Cilician Gates, forms the waterparting between the Kizil Irmak and the Euphrates as far as Eghin, where it crosses the latter river and becomes the southern limit of the plains of Erzingian and Erzurum, culminating in the Bingöl Dag, 11,550 feet. Thence under the names of Kasbel Dag, Sherian Dag, and Aghri Dag, it reaches and forms part of the new boundary with Russia, and then joins the Persian boundary on Mount Ararat.<sup>1</sup>

The whole of the plateau of Asia Minor bears evidence of volcanic action, but the south-western portion is covered with volcanic cones, and it is here that we find lakes of salt and brackish water with no outlet to the sea, surrounded by marshes more or less salt, and abounding in traces of volcanic action.

The second section comprises the plains of Mesopotamia, Babylonia, and part of Arabia, which appear to rise gradually from the sea-level in the Euphrates valley, to a height of over 2000 feet on their western edge. The only hills worthy of mention in this great pastoral country are those which, running in a continuous line in a south-west and north-east direction, bisect the great plain. Commencing in the Anti-Lebanon Range at Jebel-esh-Sheikh (Mount Hermon), and passing just northward of Palmyra, they are locally

<sup>1</sup> At the western extremity of the Ant. Taurus Range stands the loftiest peak of the peninsula of Asia Minor, the great conical Arjiah Dag or Argæus, an exhausted volcano, 12,600 feet (Chihachef, 13,150 according to Tozer); on the north and north-east slopes are extensive glaciers.

known as Jebel Ruak, Jebel Amur, Jebel Biashari, Jebel Abdularis, and Jebel Sinjar; under the last name the Tigris at Mosul is reached, and the direction and character of the range changes. Turning south-eastwards it now becomes the skirt of the mountain country, and reaches the boundary range under the name of Kara Dagħ. South of the Kara Dagħ, the Hamrin Hills connect the boundary range, Pusht-i-Koh, with the Tigris above Tekrit, but they are of mean elevation and are unimportant.

The third section consists of two longitudinal belts, one with a slight westerly trend bordering the Mediterranean, and the other with an easterly trend bordering the Red Sea. Commencing on the north at Antioch, where our first section terminates, we find the Jebel Nusarieh rising abruptly and presenting a bold front to the sea, sinking at the entering in of Hamath, near Homs on the Nahr el Ahsy, but rising again immediately in Mount Lebanon to more than 10,000 feet; after crossing the Nahr el Kasimiyeh (Leontes), and leaving a deep chasm where the waters break through to the sea, the rounded hills and little ridges of Galilee carry on the mountainous belt to the Merj-ibn-Amir or plain of the Kishon; this plain rises very little above sea-level, and affords easy access to the country behind. South of this plain is Jebel Kurmul (Carmel), and with slight interruption the mountains of Ephraim and the plateau-like hill country of Judæa lead on to Jebel Mugrah, at the end of this mountainous belt, where it descends abruptly into the desert of Et Tih. At the eastern base of this irregular mountain mass, and separating it from the western edge of the great Arabian plain, lies the remarkable depression of the Jordan Valley and Dead Sea—a physical curiosity perfectly unique, the surface level of the waters being 1292 feet below the level of the Mediterranean. This longitudinal valley is continued north by the valley of the Nahr el Ahsy, and south by the broad Wady el Arabah, which rises with a gentle ascent until it attains an elevation of 660 feet above sea-level, and then sinks down to the eastern arm of the Red Sea at Akabah. East of this long depression lies, in the north the Anti-Libanus, culminating in Jebel esh Sheikh (Mount Hermon) 9383 feet, and in the south the Jebel esh Sherah, culminating in Jebel Harûn (Mount Hor) 4000 feet. Between these extremities there are no very distinct ranges, the mountains of Gilead and Moab end in steep precipices on the edge of the Jordan Valley, and the volcanic group of Jebel Hauran, and the peculiar basaltic tract of El Lejah, stand out conspicuously from the great plain.

The mountains which border the eastern shore of the Red Sea are of much greater elevation than the portion of the longitudinal belt just described. Near Medina, on the parallel of 25°, Jebel Shomer leaves the coast range at a right angle, and runs across the peninsula of Arabia forming the northern boundary of *Nejd* or the Highland; near Mecca, on the parallel of 21°, the coast range appears to culminate in a point said to be nearly 14,000 feet high, and here the Aared or Tamarieh Mountains, running across the peninsula parallel to Jebel Shomer, pass south of Er Riad, and form the southern boundary of the Nejd. Throughout Yemen the range averages 6000 feet, but little is definitely known. Probably there are many points of great elevation in this division.

4. Rivers.—The most important rivers of Turkey in Asia are the Euphrates and Tigris, the former being navigable for river steamers for 1100 miles, and the latter for more than 600 miles. The Euphrates, “the great river,” is formed by the junction of two streams, the Kara Su<sup>1</sup> or Frat and the Murad Chai.<sup>1</sup> The first rises amongst the mountains of Armenia, in the plateau of Erzurum; the latter in the high valley of Alashkert, near Bayazid.

---

<sup>1</sup> Su, Chai, and Irmak = river.



After the union of these waters the great river breaks through the Taurus chain, and descends by a deep and perilously navigable defile to Birejik. Hence it flows through an alluvial valley, cultivated in a few places as far as Ana; from this point to Hit there is no cultivation, but here the corn country the only country in the world where corn is indigenous is entered, which continues all the way to the Shat el Arab. The only tributary of any importance is the Khabur, which falls in on the left bank after a course of nearly 200 miles. The whole length of this great river, to its junction with the Tigris at Kurnah, is 1600 miles.

The Tigris rises on the southern side of the Taurus chain near Kharpūt, and crossing the plateau of Diarbekr, and bursting through the mountain barrier that supports that plateau on the south, enters the plain a few miles south of Mosul. It approaches to within twenty miles of the Euphrates at Bagdad, and after making a wide sweep to the east joins that river at Kurnah, and the united rivers—under the name of Shat el Arab—flow for 120 miles in a broad full stream, with flat marshy banks, to the Persian Gulf at Fao.

The principal tributaries of the Tigris fall in on the left bank. They are the Sert, the Greater and Lesser Zab, and the Diyaleh. Rising on the flanks of the Zagros Mountains, they drain the whole of Turkish Kurdistan.

The head waters of the Aras (Araxes), a tributary of the Caspian Sea, come within Turkish territory: rising in the Bingöl Dagħ south of Erzurum, it passes through the portion of Armenia ceded in 1878 to Russia, and for great part of its course serves as the boundary between Russia and Persia. Of the rivers forming the Turkish portion of the Black Sea basin, the most easterly is the Choruk Su, which rises in the hills to the south-east of Baiburt, and falls into the sea near Batum; its lower course is through that part of Lazistan which has been transferred to Russia by the Berlin Treaty. West of Trebizond is the Korshut Su, which, rising on the plateau of Gümüş Khana, falls into the sea near Tirsaboli. The Kizil İrmak (Halys) and the Yeshil İrmak (İris), the largest rivers of the peninsula of Asia Minor, both rise in the Gemin-Beli-Dagħ at the northern extremity of the Anti-Taurus range. The Kizil, after a winding course of about 700 miles through picturesque valleys, breaks through the defile of Kara Tepe, and enters the sea by a deformed mouth. The Yeshil has a much straighter east and west course, but turns abruptly north to descend the maritime slope, and, forming a delta at its mouth, enters the sea by several channels. The next stream is the Boganly Su, which falls into the sea east of Ereğli. Then comes the Sakaria (Sangarius), a fine stream with its source in the uplands of Angora. It is formed by the union of the Engur Su with the Saïd Chai. It has a tortuous course of 300 miles, and enters the sea forty miles west of Ereğli.

The streams flowing into the Sea of Marmora are the Adyrnus, the Sukurlu, and the Khoja Chai (Gramicus). The tributaries to the Aegean are numerous and of great historical interest. Just south of the Dardanelles and north of Besika Bay is the Mendere Su—the famous Scamander—which rises in Mount Ida and flows through the plain of Troy. The Gediz or Sarabat Chai (Hermus) has a length of about 200 miles; traversing first a dreary volcanic region, it runs through the pleasant fertile valley of Kassaba, and falls into the Bay of Smyrna. The Kutchuk<sup>1</sup> Mendere (Cayster) rises in the Boz Dagħ (Tmolus), has a length of seventy miles, and passing through a splendid valley it enters the sea near the ruins of Ephesus. The Buyuk<sup>2</sup> Mendere rises near the group of brackish lakes that occupies the south-western portion of the plateau, and after a course of nearly 250 miles, waters the fine plain of Aidin, and falls into the sea near the ancient port of Miletus. All these rivers bring down

<sup>1</sup> Kutchuk = little.

<sup>2</sup> Buyuk = great.

large quantities of silt, and the ancient ports at their mouths are now choked up, and, in some cases, lie miles behind the present coast-line.

The rivers that fall into the Mediterranean from the southern slopes of the Taurus are numerous, but not important. The Gök Su (Calycadnus) has a course of more than 100 miles, and enters the sea in the Gulf of Tarsus. The Sihun Chai (Carus) and Jihun (Pyramus) both rise on the flanks of the Anti-Taurus and run through the Taurus range in deep and precipitous channels, afterwards meandering through a perfect sea of verdure, in the rich alluvial plain of Adana; they enter the sea between Tarsus and Iskanderun.

The rivers draining into the Eastern Mediterranean are the Nahr-el-Ahsy (Orontes) and Nahr-el-Litany (Leontes), which rise in the splendid upland vale of El Bukáa (Coele Syria), and run in opposite directions at the back of the Lebanon range. The former passes through Antioch, and falls into the sea near its port of Suedia (Seleucia); the latter reaches the sea, through a chasm in the range, near Sur (Tyre). The only other river of importance here is the Jordan, which, rising in several springs on the flanks of Mount Hermon, and passing through the lakes Bahr<sup>1</sup>-el-Huleh (Merom) and Bahr Tubariyeh (Gennesareth), plunges down through the great depression called El Ghor in a tortuous course of nearly 200 miles, and ends in the Bahr Lût (Dead Sea). The Abana and Pharpar, the rivers of Damascus, deserve mention in this connection. Rising on the slopes of Anti-Libanus and Hermon, they flow down and irrigate by innumerable artificial channels the rich and fertile plain, producing a verdant paradise of fruit and flowers around that Old World city.

The Turkish provinces, Hejaz and Yemen, on the eastern shores of the Red Sea, are destitute of rivers. The coast is bordered by a barren sandy plain of varying width, called the "Tehamah" or "low country."

5. **Lakes.**—Lake Van, the largest, has an extreme length of 80 miles by a breadth of 30 miles, and lies in a hollow in the mountains at an altitude of more than 5000 feet above sea-level. It has no outlet and few tributaries, its waters are salt but clear and blue like the sea, it contains shoals of fish and abounds with waterfowl; ice forms on its surface in winter, but it has a delightful climate. It is navigated by barges of rude construction. Tuz Göl,<sup>2</sup> the largest of the group of salt lakes on the plateau of Asia Minor, is 45 miles long by 10 broad, with extensive salt marshes on its western edge. Beishehr Göl about 20 miles long by 5 broad, the twin lake of Egerdir about 30 miles by 6, and the Buldur 17 miles by 4, are the principal lakes of a picturesque group that occupies the south-western edge of the plateau. Lake Isnik (Ascania), on whose shores the arbutus grows luxuriantly, and the lakes of Manias and Abullonia, lie just south of the Sea of Marmora. Bahr Tubariyeh (Galilee or Tiberias), a basin of volcanic origin, lies at the head of the Jordan Valley, is 13 miles long by 7½ broad, and 653 feet below the level of the Mediterranean. Bahr Lût (Dead Sea), the most remarkable sheet of water in the Old World, is hemmed in by cliffs 1500 and 2000 feet in height, rising almost perpendicularly from its shores. It is 1292 feet below the Mediterranean, the deepest lake-basin in the world, is 46 miles long by 9½ broad, receives several considerable tributaries, but has no outlet; is intensely salt and contains springs of bitumen, for which reason it was named Lacus Asphaltites. The water is nauseous to the taste and smell, and so buoyant that the human body will not sink in it. Sulphur and rock salt, lava and pumice, abound along its shores, and its aspect is dead, barren, and desolate. Bahr Nedjef is a fresh-water lagoon, situated about 20 miles from the right bank of the Euphrates, south of Hillah, is 40 miles long by about 10 broad, and is

<sup>1</sup> Bahr = lake, river, or sea.

<sup>2</sup> Göl = lake.

surrounded by red sandstone cliffs. On its banks stands Meshed Ah, one of the holy cities of the Shiah sect of Mohammedans.

6. *Climate*.—The climate of Turkey in Asia is as varied as the physical features. The great plateau on the north has a distinctly continental climate, rigorous severe winters with intense scorching heat in summer; in the eastern part of the plateau region the mountains are covered with snow for two-thirds of the year, and some of the principal ranges are capped with perpetual snow; here the peasants build their dwellings underground to escape the severity of the seasons. Towards the west the winters are not quite so severe, but the variations of temperature are excessive. The valleys and plains in the whole of this high region are generally very fertile, producing fruits in abundance, the olive, mulberry, and other trees, and the vine. The northern slopes facing the Black Sea are humid, enjoying more or less rain all through the year; they are covered with forests of ash, elm, poplar, larch, beech, box, and pine, or are cultivated wherever a patch of level ground is to be found. The valleys which open out into the *Ægean* Sea are exceedingly fertile and have a genial climate; the summers are hot, and severe cold is occasionally felt when the winds blow down from the plateau through the valleys. The rains on the southern slopes facing the Mediterranean fall only in winter and spring, and this coast during great part of the year is excessively hot; the hills are covered with virgin forests, and the coast plains at the eastern end produce oranges, lemons, grapes, cotton, corn, and an endless variety of flowers. The slopes from this mountain region that face the great Mesopotamian plain have a less rigorous climate; the summers are, however, hot and sultry, and violent storms of wind and snow frequently sweep down from the plateau. The great plains are scorched and bare in summer, but the winters are mild, and over the greater part of the desert, which is broken up by oases and possesses a salubrious climate, there are many pools of rain-water, even although there are no streams, and pasturage for camels and sheep is found over large areas. The desert wind called *Samiel*<sup>1</sup> blows outward in all directions in the summer months. The peculiar disease called "*Bagdad date-mark*" and "*Aleppo button*" is common to all the cities on the borders of the desert; it attacks visitors and residents alike, and lasts a period of twelve months, but does not appear to be dangerous. Truffles are found plentifully in the sands of the western desert. Along the Syrian shore of the Mediterranean the winters are mild and the summers oppressive. Along the higher slopes, especially in the Lebanon, where some of the hills rise above the snow-line, the winters are bracing and the summers mild and balmy; there are two rainy seasons, "the former and the latter rains." Towards the desert the country is parched and all vegetation scorched up by the intense dry summer heat. On the Red Sea coast the *Tehamah* or coast plain is hot, dry, and barren, except towards the south, where it is reached by summer rains and affords good pasturage. The *Jebel* or mountain region is cooler and well watered, producing an abundant vegetation.

7. *People and Religion*.—The country is very thinly peopled, there being only about twenty-two souls to a square mile of surface. Of the total population of about 17,000,000, less than one-half are of Turkish or Tatar origin, and probably not one-fourth are of real Ottoman blood. Nearly 9,000,000 of the Tatar peoples are settled in Asia Minor, about 1,000,000 in Armenia and Kurdistan, probably 500,000 in Mesopotamia and Babylonia, and another 500,000 in Syria, Palestine, the Hejaz, and Yemen. The agricultural Turks are moral and temperate, and physically a fine race, but the official Turks are debased and corrupt. The Armenians, about 800,000, are chiefly settled in the plateau country round Lake Van, but as

<sup>1</sup> *Samiel*—poison wind.

the bankers and usurers of the empire they are to be found in considerable numbers in all the cities and towns. The Kurds, the ancient Cardukhi, famous horsemen, are still wild and warlike; they are a pastoral people, occupying the mountain valleys and glens on the Turco-Persian frontier south of Lake Van; they number about 1,600,000, and are a terror to their more peaceful neighbours. The Arabs, the old Semitic people, number more than 7,000,000, and still wander with their countless flocks of sheep and camels over the great plain as they have done since the dawn of history. They are great traders in horses and in wool, and are but nominally under the Turkish Government, recognising only the authority of their sheikhs. The Greeks chiefly occupy the islands of the Archipelago and the towns on the Asiatic shores of the *Ægean*, but as merchants and handicraftsmen they are to be found scattered all over Asia Minor; they number about 2,000,000, and are the best educated and most civilised of all the races in the empire. There are some 30,000 Circassians, rough and fierce mountaineers, distributed in small settlements throughout Asia Minor and Armenia, immigrants from the Caucasus, who preferred Turkish rule to Russian. These, together with a few Lazis on the Black Sea coast, and some 200,000 Jews, Gypsies, and Negroes, scattered over the country, complete the motley group of antagonistic races that constitute this decaying empire.

The dominant religion is Mohammedanism of the Sunnite sect; some 13,000,000 of the population profess this religion, but less than one-half of these are Turks; about 3,000,000 are nominally Christians, including Greeks, Armenians, Europeans, and (about 500,000) Syrians. During the years 1893-5 the Armenians were the victims of a fearful outbreak of Moslem fanaticism instigated by the authorities, in which many thousands were either massacred, driven into exile, forced to embrace Islam, or reduced to starvation.

8. **Products.**—The mineral wealth is great; coal and ironstone are found together in considerable quantities; rich mines of copper exist in the mountains on the south of the Black Sea, and in the Taurus near Diarbekr lead and silver are found at intervals along a line connecting Angora, Sivas, and Trebizond, in the north, and in the eastern Taurus in the south; green, black, and white marble, and the finest quality of granite, are to be had in many parts of the mountain section. With a fertile arable soil and a suitable climate, nearly every agricultural product flourishes. Oats, barley, and wheat are produced in great abundance. Almost all kinds of garden produce and orchard fruits abound, grapes and oranges are to be had all round the Mediterranean coast, as well as the choicest tobacco, opium, valonea and madder. The mulberry is everywhere cultivated for feeding the silkworms, and cotton is grown in most of the western valleys. Vast groves of boxwood and other valuable trees clothe the seaward slopes of the hills. Dates are produced for export in the Babylonian plain, where wheat is indigenous. Petroleum and bitumen springs are found in the Euphrates Valley. Angora is famous for its flocks of goats, which produce the mohair of commerce, and enormous quantities of wool come from the countless flocks of sheep tended by the wandering Bedouin and Kurd shepherds. There are at present no manufactures worth mention. One industry, however, should not be omitted, the sponge fisheries of the Mediterranean, which are a source of great wealth. There are no roads worthy the name, but the railway system is being rapidly developed, and in 1906 nearly 2400 miles were open, connecting Smyrna and Scutari on the Bosphorus with the chief Anatolian towns, Beirut with Damascus and Aleppo, and Jaffa with Jerusalem. The Bagdad line is approaching Alexandretta, and in 1907 over 470 miles of the Damascus-Mecca line had been completed.

9. **Divisions and Chief Towns.**—Turkey in Asia is divided into twenty-



seven provinces, subdivided into counties or *sanjaks*, which are again subdivided into districts or *kazas*. As the number of these provinces is variable, it is preferable to mention the principal towns in connection with the popular geographical divisions of the country.

Trebizond (35,000) is the most important port of *Asia Minor* (Anatolia) on the Black Sea, and has far outstripped its rivals, Samsun and Sinope; Sentari is merely a suburb of Constantinople, but Ismid, at the bottom of a deep gulf of the Sea of Marmara, promises to become an important outlet of trade. These places, however, are far surpassed by the great emporium of Smyrna (200,000) on the *Ægean* Sea, which is connected by railways with Manissa (Magnesia, 50,000), Alashehr, and Aidin, the last on the Menderes (*Mæander*). On the southern coast of *Asia Minor* are the ports of Adalia and Mersina, the latter joined by a railway to the ancient Tarsus and Adana. Among the inland towns of *Asia Minor* not already mentioned the following deserve attention, viz. Brusa, the old capital of the Ottomans, at the foot of the Asiatic Olympus; Kutahia (50,000) and Eskishehr, with famous *meerschauum* quarries to the south-east of it; Angora (30,000), Kastamuni (40,000), Amasia (30,000), Sivas (43,000), Kaisarie (72,000), and Konia (44,000).

The islands of the *Ægean* form a separate province, known as *Jezireh Bahr e-Sefid*,<sup>1</sup> with Chios for their capital, but the island of Samos is by the Convention of 1828-9 autonomous under a Christian prince paying tribute to the Porte. It has an area of 180 square miles, and a population of 55,000 Greeks, and is one of the most fertile of the whole group; it exports corn, grapes, oil, valonea, and muscatel wine.

Cyprus, under the Convention of 1878, is administered by the British Government. (See p. 348.)

The principal towns of *Armenia* are Erzurum (39,000), the modern capital; Erzingian, the ancient capital; and Van, on the lake named after it. In the ill-defined region of *Kurdistan* are Diarbekr (34,000), proudly seated on the upper Tigris; and *Mardin*, occupying also a strong position.

The broad plains of *Mesopotamia* (*El Jezire*) and *Babylonia* (*Irak*), although a wilderness compared with what they were in ancient times, still boast a few towns of note, such as Mosul (61,000), near which are the ruins of Nimve; Bagdad (145,000), like the former, on the Tigris; and Basra, on the *Shat el Arab*, at the head of the Gulf of Persia.

Damascus (230,000), the capital of *Syria*, is, next Smyrna, the largest town of Turkish Asia; its port is Beirut (119,000), the only place of importance along the Syrian coast; Iskanderun (*Alexandretta*), the outlet of the famous city of Aleppo; Latakia, Tarabulus (*Tripoli*), Saida (*Sidon*), Sur (*Tyre*), Akko (*Acre*), Jaffa, the port of Jerusalem (42,000), although historically famous, are at present only of local interest. Even Antakia (*Antioch*), some fifteen miles up the *Orontes*, is a decayed place.

In *Arabia* the Turks hold the old land of the Midianites, with the port el Wej; the provinces of *Hejaz*, with the sacred cities of Medina (48,000) and Mecca (60,000), and the great port of Jeddah; and Yemen, which has Sana (50,000) for its capital, and Hodeida and Mokha for its ports.

Within the limits of Asiatic Turkey are situated the holy cities of Jew, Christian, and Mohammedan—Jerusalem, containing the site of the Jewish temple and of the crucifixion of Jesus Christ; Mecca, the birthplace of Mohammed; and Medina, the place of his death.

<sup>1</sup> Islands of the White Sea = the Archipelago.

## ARABIA.

1. **General Description.**—The peninsula of Arabia is bounded west by the Red Sea, east by the Persian Gulf, south by the Arabian Sea, and north by the great Syro-Babylonian plain. That part of Arabia which is at present independent of Turkey embraces all the interior and the south and east coasts, between the Bahrein Islands and Aden. About two-thirds of this area consists of cultivable land, and one-third of irreclaimable desert. It is divisible into three sections—Nejd in the north, Oman in the south-east, and Hadramaut in the south. The northern “highland” of *Nejd* is bounded on all sides by a strip of desert of varying width and sterility, but always interrupted at intervals by oases or slight depressions in its generally uniform surface, where a well or spring, surrounded by a few herbs and bushes, a little grass, and occasionally date-palms, enables the Bedwin to find the needful supply of fodder for his camels, and to lead the caravans of merchants or pilgrims across the trackless waste. The northern desert, or *Nefud*,<sup>1</sup> extends from the oasis of Teyma, on the borders of the Turkish province of Hejaz, across by the oasis of Jauf, to the border of El Hasa, on the Persian Gulf: it is partly a stony “hamada,” partly covered with reddish sand, which is heaped into ridges from 200 to 300 feet high, like a sea of red-hot waves. It is absolutely bare, save in the spring of the year, when it is thinly sprinkled with grass and herbs. In some parts a small herbaceous plant, called *samh*, grows wild, which produces a reddish farinaceous seed, and yields the Bedwin his staple food supply. Over this desert the *simoom*<sup>2</sup> blows during the summer heats at uncertain intervals. There is no sand or dust in the atmosphere during the short period that the wind lasts; but the whole horizon becomes dark, as the stifling blast, with the heat as of red-hot iron, passes over. To the west, along the borders of Hejaz, the desert is yet more irregular, and presses in towards the central highland between the mountain ridges in long finger-like projections: it cuts off the maritime provinces from all political influence with Nejd. The *Dahna*<sup>3</sup> bounds the settled country to the east and south, and is the main sand waste of Arabia; it has never been crossed by European travellers; and even the Arabs avoid this impenetrable waste of loose reddish sand, without water or vegetation of any kind, extending south of the tropic line for a distance of 300 or 400 miles. These deserts lie on a plateau of some 3000 feet altitude, and are surrounded by a girdle of mountains which rise on the western side

<sup>1</sup> Nefud = sand-passes.<sup>2</sup> Simoom = poison blast.<sup>3</sup> Dahna = red desert.



to a considerable elevation. In the northern desert lies the remarkable oasis of *Jauf*, some 60 miles long by 10 or 12 broad, containing three flourishing villages. Each house stands in its own orchard, where the fig and the vine, the apricot and peach, and the choicest dates are cultivated, and where the fruits are not surpassed by the famous gardens of Damascus. It has a good dry climate, and healthy and vigorous inhabitants. The *Nejd*<sup>1</sup> is the central plateau, and is a compact, settled district, bounded by ridges of hard rocks, and culminating in a crescent-shaped mountain range, called *Jebel Toweik*,<sup>2</sup> the backbone of Central Arabia north of the tropic. This mountain is composed chiefly of chalk, but has a few granite crests on its south-eastern edge, where iron ore is abundant. It is cut up by a perfect maze of valleys, which become roaring torrents during the rains, but are dry at all other times; but everywhere, at all seasons, water is to be obtained at a depth of twelve to fifteen feet beneath the surface. In these valleys the people plant their towns and villages, for the shade and vegetation they afford. North of *Nejd*, and separated from it by a narrow arm of the *Nefud* about twenty miles broad, lies the secondary plateau of *Jebel Shammar*; two ranges of mountains, *Jebel Aja* and *Jebel Selma*, cross this plateau in a S.W. to N.E. direction. *Jebel Aja* (5600 ft.), composed largely of granite, is the northern rim of the whole table-land, and is probably not inferior in height to *Jebel Toweik* to the south.

*Nejd* and *Shammar* have a dry bracing atmosphere and healthy climate. The southern part of *Nejd*, near the tropic, is less salubrious, but is the more fertile, being damper and hotter. Dates of excellent quality and of several varieties are here produced in abundance, and are the main source of landed Arab wealth. Corn, maize, millet, melons, pomegranates, and peaches, grapes, figs, oranges, and citrons are also grown. A little cotton is cultivated, and lentils in the south. Rock salt is found in the west. Camels and sheep, horses, and humped oxen are numerous. Wild boars, gazelles, partridges, quails, and pigeons are also to be found. The celebrated Arabian horses are tended with the greatest care, and none of the best breeds are allowed to leave the country. *Oman*, at the extreme south-eastern end of the peninsula, is a country about as large as England and Wales. It is filled with a plateau-like group of mountains, the dominating feature being a range called *Jebel Akhdar*,<sup>3</sup> which stretches from *Ras Mesandum* on the north to *Ras el Hadd* on the south. This mountain gives rise to numerous small streams on its seaward slope, which run at intervals underground, and almost all of them disappear entirely before reaching the coast. *Oman*

<sup>1</sup> *Nejd* = up country, or hill country

<sup>2</sup> *Jebel Toweik* = the twisted mountain. <sup>3</sup> *Jebel Akhdar* = green mountain.

is the richest district of Arabia, both in agricultural products and in mineral treasures. Along the seaboard there are two seasons, each lasting about six months. The hot season is most oppressive, the land becomes scorched, and the towns like ovens. During the rainy season the N.W. monsoon blows with great force. On the hills it is comparatively cool all the year round. The chief products are coco-nuts, dates, mangoes, corn, maize, coffee, sugar-cane, apricots and peaches, cotton and indigo. Lead and copper are mined; but skill and energy and good government are wanting to develop the mineral resources of the country. *Hadramaut* is a country of which very little is now known; it was once famous for frankincense and myrrh: it occupies the shores of the Arabian Sea from Oman on the east to Yemen on the west, and consists apparently of a confused mass of hills, composed of limestone, sandstone, slate, quartz, and gneiss, culminating in heights of 6000 feet within 100 miles of the coast. Beyond this there appear to be extensive plains sloping down inland to the great desert. It is occupied by independent Bedwin chiefs; produces wheat and barley, dates and lemons, sheep, goats, and camels. Its chief port is Makalla. The chief islands round the coast are, the Bahr el Benât, formerly known as the East India Company's Islands, lying off the north or Pirate coast. The Kuria Muria Islands, lying off the south coast, barren and rocky, belong to the British Government. Perim Island, a fortified rock which commands the entrance to the Red Sea, is also British.

2. **People and Religion.**—The people of central Arabia may be divided into two classes—the Hadesi, or settled inhabitants of the towns and villages, and the Bedwins, or wanderers, occupying the open pastures of the great Arabian plain and the numerous small oases in the desert. The genuine Arab is nature's gentleman, noble and handsome, of well-developed stature and healthy complexion, and is distinguished by a great respect for authority and love of commercial enterprise. He is by birth and education a Mohammedan of the severest type; but scepticism and unbelief are as rife here as in Christian countries, although not openly professed. The Bedwin, although of the same race, has descended to the lowest depth of moral and mental degradation; he is the same wild herdsman that he was 2000 years ago. He appears to be naturally and by inheritance a sun-worshipper, but for convenience he adopts Mohammedanism, and in the neighbourhood of the settlements conforms outwardly to its laws. Negroes are numerous, both slave and free, all over Arabia, but in Nejd especially they form a considerable portion of the town population. There are about 1,000,000 settled inhabitants and 75,000 nomades in Nejd and its dependencies; whilst Jebel Shammar has about 274,000 settled inhabitants and 166,000 nomades. The language of the settled inhabitants of these central districts is the pure and elegant Arabic of the Koran, whilst Ehkili, an old Himyaritic tongue, still survives in parts of Hadramaut.

The inhabitants of Oman are very mixed, consisting of Arabs, Banians, Baluchis, Negroes, Abyssinians, Somalis, and Persians. They number about

1,500,000, and are tolerant in religious matters ; the majority outwardly profess Mohammedanism.

**3. Governments, Divisions, and Chief Towns.**—Nejd is at present divided into three States, which, until recently, formed the sultanate of the Wahabi. This sect, named from its founder, seeks to retain the Islamism of the Koran to the letter ; and the result is, as usual, intolerance, aggression, fanaticism, and espionage, which hinders all social progress and clips the wings of commerce. Riyadh, the capital city of the Wahabi (lat.  $24^{\circ} 38' 34''$  N., long.  $46^{\circ} 41' 48''$  E.), contains a population of about 30,000, and has a Jamia, or house of prayer, capable of holding 4000 people ; it is surrounded by strong walls in good repair, about 30 feet high, and defended by a trench and embankment. It stands in the midst of fruit gardens. *Shammar* (*Shomer*) is now the more powerful State of the Nejd, extending from Jebel Aja across the Nefud to the oasis of Jauf, and from Hejaz to within a short distance of the Euphrates. Hāyel, the residence of its Emir, is surrounded by a wall about 20 feet high, with bastion towers and large folding gates at intervals ; it contains a population of 20,000, and many large gardens and open spaces, together with an immense palace and pleasure-grounds, are included within the walls. It has a large trade in horses and camels, and is a station on the Persian Haj or pilgrim route between Bagdad and Mecca. In *El Kasim* are the towns Bereydah and Oneyzah.

*Oman* is divided into eight provinces, each enjoying almost the independence of a tributary state ; the central government is weak. The chief towns are Maskat, the capital, a large and tolerably clean commercial city, with a population of 15,000, surrounded by old Portuguese fortifications, with a small but good harbour, open, however, to the fury of the N.W. monsoon. Matrah, three miles north-west, and almost a suburb now of Maskat, has also a good harbour, and a population of about 10,000. Barka, Sohar, and Sharja are seaport towns, with harbours and considerable trade ; Nezwah and Bereymah are important inland towns.

*Aden*, on the north coast of the gulf of that name, between Yemen and Hadramaut, is a British possession and free port, on a volcanic peninsula, five miles long by three broad. It has a population of 37,000 ; is absolutely naked and barren ; great reservoirs for rain-water have been constructed by the British, and the fortifications erected by them have rendered the place impregnable. Jebel Hasan, a sister promontory on the western side of Aden harbour, and about four miles distant, is also British. A large territory around Aden is occupied by tribes who are in the pay of the British Government. The Aden district, which is administered from Bombay, has a total area of 80 square miles, and population (1901) 43,974. The frontier towards the Turkish province of Yemen was finally settled in 1907. For the neighbouring island of Socotra, also administered from Bombay, see page 407.

## AFRICA—GENERAL.

---

1. AFRICA forms the vast south-western peninsula of the Old World continent, tacked on to Asia by the narrow isthmus of Suez, and surrounded on all other sides by the sea—the Mediterranean on the north, the Atlantic on the west, the Indian Ocean and its gulf the Red Sea on the east. From Ras el Kerun, its most northerly point on the Mediterranean coast, to Cape Agulhas or “The Needles,” the boundary mark between the Atlantic and Indian Oceans, in the farthest south, its length is about 5000 miles. From Cape Verd pointing into the Atlantic on the west, to Cape Guardafui (Girdifo, or Ras Assir) in the east, it reaches about 4600 miles. Its area, of nearly twelve millions of square miles, is more than three times that of Europe.

2. No other part of the land on the surface of the globe is so rounded and compact, and on that account so difficult of access, as Africa. The contrast between the broken European shores and the massive African coasts of the Mediterranean was observed by the earliest geographers; the same continuous unbroken margin extends all round the sixteen thousand miles of its shore line. Except Zanzibar and a few others on the east coast, the islands which are considered as belonging to it, such as the Canaries, the Cape Verd Islands, Ascension, and St. Helena, lie out in the ocean far from its shores, and Madagascar is separated from it by nearly 300 miles of deep sea.

3. **Relief.**—Guarded by its inhospitable shores, large areas of the interior of the continent are still imperfectly known, and it is only during the nineteenth century that the tracks of travellers across it have become sufficiently numerous to enable us to form any general conception of its inward form and character. As a whole the continent may be regarded as a vast plateau, bordered round by maritime ranges which form the seaward edges of the interior table-lands.

If we begin in the extreme north-eastern corner where Africa joins on to Asia, we find the land rising immediately west of Suez, at the southern end of the ship canal, to a height of 2600 feet, named *Jebel Attaka*; from this we may follow a chain of heights rising abruptly all along the western shores of the Red Sea till we reach the high edge of the *Abyssinian highland*, 7000 to 8000 feet above the sea, over which the British expedition marched to Magdala



44



in 1868. Farther on southward we reach that part of the margin of the plateau on which the snow capped *Kenia* (18,000 feet) and *Kilima njaro* (19,720 feet) rise between the Indian Ocean and the great lakes, then the *Livingstone Mountains* (11,000 feet), which wall in Lake Nyassa, and in the farthest south the *Drakenberg* ranges, which rise steep and wall-like facing the Indian Ocean, and leading round to the terraces which form the Cape Colony. Turning the high Cape of Good Hope to the Atlantic margin, the same terraced ascents from the sea-coast to the borders of the interior plateau present themselves all along the western side of the continent from the Cape Colony to the head of the Bight of Biafra. Round the Guinea coast, beyond the low delta of the Niger, as far as Cape Verd, the plateau edge approaches the coast only at intervals, but the supposed *Kong Mountains* do not exist. In Morocco the bordering maritime heights are taken up again by the *Atlas Range* (Tizi n-Tamjurt, 15,560 feet), and are continued along the Mediterranean by the plateau of *Barbary*, by the ranges called the *Jebel es Soda*, or Black Mountains of Tripoli, and by the heights of *Barca* farther east, bringing us again to the delta of the Nile.

4. Within the border of maritime heights which we have been tracing, all southern Africa may be regarded as a vast plateau at a general elevation of about 3000 feet above the sea. Two of the most prominent interior ranges which rise from this portion of the plateau are those called the *Mushinga Mountains*, which seem to have an east and west direction, separating the wide basins of the Congo and the Zambezi rivers, and the mountains to the westward of Lakes Albert and Victoria Nyanza and Tanganyika, which form the western edge of the great plateau of eastern equatorial Africa. Here also the Ruwenzori Range between Lakes Albert and Albert Edward rivals *Kilima-njaro* in altitude.

Northern Africa, between the higher southern plateau and the mountains of Barbary on the Mediterranean coast, appears to be generally lower, or at an average elevation of from 1000 to 1500 feet above the sea, though the plateau formation remains the same. The prominent lines of heights known within it are those which extend from the *Murrah Mountains* of Darfur, between the Nile basin and that of Lake Chad, north westward through the mountain land of *Tibesti*, in the centre of North Africa, to the series of plateaus occupied by the Tuareg tribes south of the plateau of Barbary. A remarkable volcanic belt is traced through the Bight of Biafra in the line of the islands of *Annobon*, *St. Thomas*, *Princes*, and *Fernando Po* (10,190 feet), to the high *Cameroons Mountains* (13,760 feet) on the coast of the mainland, and thence inland on the same abrupt line to Mounts *Atlantika* and *Mendel*, midway to Lake Chad in the interior.

5. It results from the general plateau form of the continent that its lowlands are confined almost exclusively to the narrow fringes of the coast, and to the alluvial flats which have been pushed out seaward by one or two of its rivers, such as the delta of the Nile on the Mediterranean coast, that of the Zambezi on the margin of the Indian Ocean, or of the Ogowa and Niger towards the Atlantic. Elsewhere lowlands occur only as hollows sunk or bedded within the lower plateaus of the north African region, of these the most remarkable is the hollow which lies south of the plateau of Barbary in Tunis, separated from the head of the Gulf of Gabes only by a narrow belt of rock, and containing within it several lagoons or salt marshes, called "shott" or "shores" by the Berbers, which lie depressed as much as 82 feet below the level of the Mediterranean. Within the limestone plateau of the Libyan Desert, between Barca and the Nile valley, there also occur a number of isolated hollows of small extent, including the famous oasis of Jupiter Ammon or Siwah, which has been found to be 105 feet beneath sea-level.

**6. Rivers.**—The poverty of Africa in flowing waters was also noticed in the earliest times, and has contributed as much to its long seclusion as the harbourless character of its coasts.

Over almost all the wide northern region of Africa, for reasons which we shall understand when we come to look at its climate, there is scarcely any permanently flowing river excepting the Nile, which, however, draws its supplies from more favoured regions far in the south. The streams of the Barbary plateau in Morocco and Algeria are mere torrents, filled to excess during the winter rains, and dwindling down to a thread of water in the dry summer. Beyond the plateau, over all the vast area of the Sahara, there is no constantly running stream, though the surface is furrowed by deeply cut "wadis," or water channels, which rapidly drain off any shower that may fall, and quickly dry again.

The streams of the Cape Colony, at the other extremity of the continent, have the same character as those of the Barbary plateau, finding their way to the sea through deep-cut gorges or "kloofs," flooding after the winter rains, and dwindling down almost to dryness after fair weather. Inland from the Cape Colony lies the Kalahari Desert, corresponding to the Sahara in the north, and furrowed like it by periodically filled channels.

The broad central belt of Africa on each side of the equatorial region is, however, well supplied with moisture, and here, accordingly, we find great lakes and large flowing rivers.

7. The best known of the four great rivers of Africa, the *Nile*, has its highest great reservoir in the *Victoria Nyanza* (3775 feet), an expanse of fresh water occupying an area as large as Scotland, and crossed by the equator. From this it overflows by the Ripon Falls 12 feet high and flows northward, descending by the Murchison Falls to where it joins the *Albert Nyanza* (2300 feet), which has been described as a great backwater of the river, shut in by high blue mountains. This lake receives from the south the Semliki river, which drains the *Albert Edward Nyanza*, lying under the equator, at the foot of the snow-clad *Ruwenzori*. Issuing from the *Albert Nyanza* the river is navigable for nearly 110 miles, to near the bend of Dufile, where it is again interrupted by cataracts. It is only after another course of 80 miles that the river becomes once more freely navigable. At Lado, about 5° N., it flows northward through a level marshy country with many loops and branches. At the Mokren el Bohur ("meeting of the waters") (in 9° 30' N.) it is joined by the group of tributaries from the west, which gather to form the broad river called the *Bahr el Ghazal*, the first great tributary of the Nile. Below this it bends due east to where the *Sobat* river joins it from the highlands in the east, and then turns north for 500 miles to the town of Khartum, being known along this portion of its course as the *Bahr-el-Abiad*, or White River. At Khartum the *Bahr-el-Azrek*, or Blue Nile, joins it from the high Lake Tsana on the Abyssinian plateau. Near Berber, 200 miles north-east of Khartum, the Nile receives its last tributary, the *Atbara*, which rises as the *Takazze*, or "the Terrible," in the gorges of the Abyssinian highland. From this point the Nile forms a great bend through Nubia, interrupted by several cataracts, and then flows quietly northward through the desert to its delta on the Mediterranean, receiving no supplies from rain or affluent streams for 1200 miles, and diminishing greatly in volume from evaporation as it passes on through the dry country. The Nile is easily navigated from the delta upward to the first or Assuan Cataract in 24° N. lat., but the toilsome ascent of that rapid by boat requires more than a day. The second, or Wady Halfa Cataract, in 22° N., is the head of the free upward navigation of the river for larger vessels. The Nile varies in volume greatly during the year,

but it is only in the lowlands of the delta that this is of great importance, for the fertility of that alluvial plain, and the annual success or failure of the crops over it, depend in great measure on the extent of the fertilising inundation from the river. At Cairo the rising begins in mid June, and when it has swelled to a height of 16 cubits in August, the "khaleeg," or dam near Cairo, is cut, allowing the river waters to fill the system of canals which ramifies over the delta. The maximum rise is generally reached in October, after which the flood begins to fall, and the lowest Nile occurs in May.

8. The great river of West Africa, the *Niger*—discovered by Mungo Park—rises on the inner side of Mount Loma, one of the summits of the range which marks the edge of the plateau in this part of Africa, and flows, as the *Joliba*, north-east to Timbuktu on the border of the Sahara Desert, then turning east and south-east and changing its native name to *Quorra*, reaches the Gulf of Guinea through a great delta. In its south-eastern course it is joined from the east by the *Benue*, nearly as large as the *Quorra* at the confluence, a tributary which rises in the mountains to the south of Adamawa, and appears to derive a portion of its waters from the overflow of the *Sbari* through the *Mao Kibbi*. The *Niger* is the great highway of the Western Sudan, and is now regularly navigated by British trading steamers from the Atlantic to the towns which lie along its banks above the confluence of the *Benue* and beyond; the latter river has proved to be navigable for several hundreds of miles upward, and numerous factories have been established along its course, as high up as *Yola*, by the agents of the Royal Niger Company.

9. The *Senegal* and the *Gambia*, reaching the Atlantic north and south of Cape Verd, are important navigable rivers, the former in possession of the French, the latter dotted with British factories along its banks.

10. Just south of the equator, on the West African coast, the *Ogowé* river has pushed out a large mangrove-covered delta into the sea. The exploration of this river upward has been completed within recent years. About 140 miles above the sea, at the trading port of *Adandinanlanga*, the main stream—more than a mile wide—is joined by the *Ayounie*. The river, above the confluence, is soon interrupted by falls and rapids. Boats have nevertheless ascended it as far as *Franceville*, a French post established at the head of its navigation, 500 miles from the sea.

11. Some way farther south we come to the mouth of the greatest of African rivers, the *Congo* or *Zaire*, which pours out such a flood of water into the Atlantic that the sea surface for many miles out is kept perfectly fresh.

It is only since the journey of the explorer Stanley in 1877 that the enormous proportions of this African river have been realised. We now know that this river has its great lake reservoirs like the Nile. The southernmost of these is Lake *Bangweulu*, first explored by Livingstone, a vast expanse of shallow water, 4000 feet above the sea, which shrinks or expands with the seasons, and is fed by the *Chambeze* and other rivers of small importance. Issuing thence northward as the *Luapula*, the river traverses Lake *Moero*, and passing from that through a tremendous gorge, as the *Luvua*, it soon afterwards is joined by the *Lukuya* from the eastward. This is the drain of Lake *Tanganyika*, first discovered by Cameron, and afterwards traced for a considerable distance by Keith Johnston's companion, the late Joseph Thomson, who thus definitely solved one of the great problems in African geography. The *Tanganyika*, a lake nearly 400 miles long and 25 broad, occupies a comparatively narrow mountain-walled trench, like that of the *Nyassa*, farther south. It lies about 2700 feet above the sea, is very deep, rises a few feet during the rainy season, and has fresh water. The *Malayurozi* river, from the east, is the largest river that flows to it. It rises on the plateau of *Unyamwezi*.

12. The *Luvua*, in its onward course, receives a great tributary named the *Lualaba* from a lake chain on the south-west. Overflowing from Lake Lanji or Kamolondo, the river, now called the *Lualaba*, flows in a northerly direction in the heart of the continent. On approaching the equator it develops the Stanley Falls, and then swerves to north-west and west. Between long.  $26^{\circ}$  and  $16^{\circ}$  E. as far as Stanley Pool it has an uninterrupted flow of 1400 miles, receiving the Mobangi or Welle from the north and the magnificent Kasai from the south, but on nearing the mountains which rise on the western margin of the continent it passes through them by a long series of cataracts and rapids, which terminate in the *Yellala* Falls 140 miles from the sea. At 60 miles from the sea the width and strength of the river are so great, that it requires half-an-hour to cross it in a good boat, with ten strong Kroomen paddling.

13. South of the Congo the *Coanza* is the most important river of the west African coast, as it affords a navigable way 120 miles up from the sea to where rapids interrupt its course. This part of it is now regularly traversed by steamers. The Nourse or *Cunene*, remarkable for the number of its crocodiles, is narrow and shallow, and quite unnavigable. The *Orange*, the boundary river of the Cape Colony, formed by the *Vaal* and the *Nu Gariep*, from the inner slope of the Drakenberg range, is also a torrential river, shut in by precipitous walls, with many rapids, besides the great falls of *Aughrabies* midway in its course.

14. Opposite the basin of the Orange, on the eastern side, we come to the *Limpopo*, the second river in size of those which flow to the Indian Ocean from Africa. This is also a shallow and variable river, navigable only for about 60 miles up from the ocean by small vessels.

15. Farther north is the *Zambezi*, the chief river of east Africa. This great stream has one of its sources in the little lake *Dilolo*, which lies on a ridge west of the Mushinga mountains, that separates the drainage of the Congo and Zambezi basins. From *Dilolo* the course of the *Liba* or *Liambai*, as the upper river is named, is south-eastward to where it is joined by the Kabompo from near the sources of the *Lualaba* on the north-east. The united river then flows south and eastward through the fertile Barotse valley till it reaches  $25^{\circ}$  E. longitude, near which meridian it leaps down 100 feet by the magnificent *Victoria Falls*, called by the natives *mosioatunya*, or "smoke sounding," into a narrow zigzag gorge in the basalt rocks. Thence the river flows north-eastward with impetuous current, and afterwards turns east, receiving the Loangwa from the north, besides other large tributaries. At the *Kebrabasa* rapids, and in the *Lupata* gorge, where the river passes the margin of the plateau to descend to the maritime slope, its channel is again considerably lowered. Below this it winds south-east, and on the coast it forms a great delta which reaches out 80 miles between the farthest apart of the channels into which the river divides. It becomes navigable at the Portuguese settlement of Tete, 260 miles from the sea. A few miles above the apex of the delta it receives the *Shire* river, the outflow of the great *Nyassa Lake*. The *Nyassa* fills out a narrow trench more than 300 miles long from north to south, walled in by the high mountains of the Livingstone range, which rise almost precipitously to the height of 11,000 and 12,000 feet on its eastern shores. The *Shire* flowing south from it is interrupted in its course to the *Zambezi* by the Murchison Cataracts, but below these its channel is freely navigable for 100 miles to the great river.

16. The notable rivers of the east African slope northward of the *Zambezi* are the *Rovuma*, almost an unnavigable river; the *Lufiji* which rises in the Livingstone uplands; the *Kingani* and *Wami* reaching the coast opposite Zanzibar; the *Rufu* from Kilima-njaro; the *Tana* from the snow-clad



mountain Kenia; and the *Jub* river which reaches the sea just at the equator from the mountains south of Abyssinia: in attempting to navigate this river the unfortunate explorer Baron Von der Decken was killed in 1865.

17. There remain to be noticed two rivers and lakes of the inland or continental drainage of Africa which correspond remarkably with one another in their characteristics. The northern of these is the *Shari* river, and lake *Chad* which it supplies. The *Chad* is a great variable and shallow expanse of fresh water on the southern border of the Sahara, at an elevation of about 800 feet above the sea. In the dry season it has an area of about 10,000 square miles, and then presents the appearance of an immense swamp, overgrown along the margins with reeds and papyrus in thickets haunted by hundreds of hippopotami, and clouds of wild-fowl. After the rains, however, it spreads out to a much larger area, and then sometimes overflows by a broad channel to a second depression called the Plain of Bodele, which lies 300 miles north-east of it. The southern is the *Okavango*, known in its lower course as *Tloge* river and its lake *Ngami*, on the border of the Kalahari desert in Central South Africa, 2800 feet in elevation. *Ngami* is merely an extensive vley or salt-pan with no permanent outflow, and sometimes disappearing altogether.

East of Lake Victoria the Mau plateau is skirted by the Great Rift valley, which runs from Lakes Naivasha and Baringo to Lakes Rudolf and Stefanie, and is continued thence northward to Abyssinia by the remarkable chain of smaller lacustrine basins—*Abaya*, *Lamuna*, *Zwai*, *Hora Shale*, *Hora Korre*, *Awasa*, *Ganyule*—which were discovered by Donaldson Smith, Neumann, Butter, and Captain Maud between the years 1895 and 1903. *Ganyule*, the southernmost, drains through the Sagan river to Lake Stefanie.

18. *Climate.* Africa is the most completely tropical quarter of the world. If we look at the map it will be observed that only its northern and southern extremities lie beyond the lines between which the sun may pass vertically over the land, so that great heat is the chief characteristic of its climate; this, however, is reduced by the general elevation of the continent. Drought is the other great feature over all the immense area of northern Africa; there north-easterly winds prevail, and these coming from cooler to warmer latitudes and passing over the great continent of Asia, take up the moisture as they pass, and give the land its generally dry and barren aspect. In the far south also the corresponding south-easterly trade-winds are the most frequent, and these expending the moisture they have gathered from the Indian Ocean on the high outer margin of the continent, leave all the interior of South Africa deficient in rainfall, and in parts almost as barren and dry as the Sahara in the north. The central region of the continent on each side of the equator is, however, well supplied with rainfall, for the winds are drawn in thither from the ocean on both sides to that part of it which for the time lies beneath the heat of the vertical sun, and there the combined heat and moisture have raised up a covering of richly luxuriant vegetation, and forests which may be compared with those of the East Indies. On the northern and southern borders of the continent—in the maritime districts along the Mediterranean, and of the Cape Colony in the south—the rain supply comes in winter, but within the tropics the rains are obedient to the apparent movements of the vertical sun, and thus swing gradually north and south over the central regions of Africa, to and fro across the equator towards each tropic during the year. The landscape of the continent thus presents a regular gradation from habitable lands on each extremity north and south to bare dry deserts, and from these through pastoral grass lands to the broad equatorial belt, of which humid climate and luxuriant forest growth are characteristic.

All the low coast-lands of Africa are haunted by fevers which are most

malignant in the coast-lands on each side of the equatorial region, where the spreading mangrove, sending down roots from its branches, forms a dense thicket along the sea margin, and about the mouths of the rivers, causing stagnant lagoons within the coast-line, and gathering there a great accumulation of decaying vegetable matter which forms a foetid black mud ; behind this low coast region, however, the high plateau lands of the interior have almost everywhere a healthy climate.

19. **Products.**—The vegetation of Africa is rather peculiar than varied. Corresponding to the dry climate of the extremities of the continent are the cactus-like spurge-plants, aloes, heaths, and bulbs. The *date-palm*, and, in a less degree, the *dum palm*, are the mainstays of the inhabitants of the dry Sahara region. In the Atlantic maritime region of equatorial Africa the *oil-palm* flourishes, and gives rise to the greater part of the trade of that region ; there also the remarkable tree which yields the *shea butter* is found ; gum-yielding *acacias* are characteristic African trees ; the *copal* gum-tree is abundant in the eastern and western equatorial coasts, where the indiarubber-yielding *Landolphia* creepers have recently become of great commercial importance. *Ebony*, *rosewood*, and African *teak* are among the trees of the central forests. Africa is also the home of the gigantic *baobab*, the hollow trunk of which often serves as a water cistern. *Coffee* is probably native to the region south of Abyssinia ; but it is of the greatest commercial value in Liberia.

20. Hoofed animals are more numerous in Africa than in any other region of the world. Here are the wild elephant, whose ivory is a staple article of barter in all parts of the continent, several species of rhinoceros, hippopotami, the zebra, and other horse-like animals, and the stately giraffe, but especially great herds of antelopes of many kinds. Lurking in wait for these are lions and panthers, jackals and hyenas, and other carnivorous animals. The fauna is also rich in apes, among which, peculiar to the continent, are the chimpanzee and man-like gorilla. Madagascar has its peculiar ape-like lemurs, nocturnal in habits. Ostriches are found almost all over the continent, and in the Cape Colony are now farmed and herded like cattle or sheep. Numbers of birds of passage make Africa their winter quarters. Crocodiles abound in almost all the rivers. The plague of central and southern Africa is the Tsetse fly, an insect resembling, and scarcely larger than, our common house fly, the bite of which is fatal to horses, and sometimes to cattle, though it is perfectly harmless to man or to wild animals. It appears to infest certain areas within definite limits, and also to follow the herds of game about in their migrations, but as yet the laws which control its appearance are not known.

21. The great mineral treasure of the Sahara region in the north is its salt. Gold is found in the rivers of West Africa. The gold coin formerly current in Britain took its name from the metal brought from the Guinea coast, from which it was first coined in the reign of Charles II. The gold of Sofala long ago drew the Portuguese to that part of South-East Africa, and now the goldfields of the Transvaal and Matabililand are becoming of great importance. Iron abounds in Algeria. Copper is the great mineral resource of the western districts of the Cape Colony, and the copper country of Katanga in central South Africa has long been famous in native reports. The diamond-fields, discovered in 1867 on the northern borders of the Cape Colony, have brought about great changes in that part of the continent.

22. **Peoples.**—The whole number of people within the African continent can only be vaguely estimated, but probably exceeds a hundred and sixty millions. Owing to the vast extent of the regions within it which are scarcely habitable from the extreme dryness,



the population of Africa is much less dense than that of Europe or of Asia, but it is in a corresponding degree greater than that of America, or of thinly-peopled Australia.

The density of the population is regulated naturally by the character of the landscape. In the fertile extremities lie the well-peopled states of Barbary and Egypt in the north, and of the Cape Colony in the south. Within these come the sparsely-inhabited regions of the Sahara and of the Kalahari, and after that the well-peopled central area of the continent from the Sudan to the valley of the Zambezi.

We have already (p. 148) noticed the chief groups of the African peoples. The *Hamitic* family, perhaps the true aborigines of the northern section, formerly occupied the whole of the lower and middle Nile valley, and the north-eastern maritime region of Africa, nearly as far as the equator, and were the Egyptians and Numidians of history. The *Semitic* peoples, probably of the same family, who emigrated from Asia within historical times, have spread all over the northern and eastern region of the continent, carrying Mohammedanism with them on their way, and the Arab ivory and slave traders have only now ceased to range into the heart of the continent. Members of the *Aryan* family have settled as yet in considerable numbers only in the northern and southern extremities of the continent (Algeria and South Africa), and are found elsewhere only at the trading ports around the coasts. The *Negroes*, or "black" men, native to Central Africa, are marked generally by their black woolly hair, protruding lips, and flattened nose; they are fond of ornament, and, above all, of dancing; they live for the moment, and are careless and improvident, passing quickly from one mood to another, from the most exuberant joy to melancholy or anger. The yellow *Hottentots* of the south-western corner of Africa have now become in great part a mixed or mulatto people, speaking the Dutch of the Cape. Lowest of all in African humanity are the wandering *Bushmen* of the Kalahari deserts, living in holes and caves like wild animals, without dwelling or property, or any domestic animal, save, it may be, a miserable dog.

23. Some negro tribes have remained almost at the same stage as the Bushmen, living on game or fish, and occasionally also on their fellow-men, but, unlike the nomad Arabs, most of them prefer tillage to hunting and fixed abodes to the camp life. In the Sudan, negro life reaches its highest stage. There we find them as agriculturists and cloth-weavers, and traders in busy market-towns, exchanging the ivory and ostrich feathers and grain of their productive country for the salt mined in the Sahara.

24. Religion.—The *Copts*, a small remnant of the ancient Egyptians, ascribe their conversion to the Apostle Mark, and are Christians. Their highest dignitary is a patriarch of Alexandria, and they are exceedingly strict in their religious observances. The Abyssinians are also nominally Coptic Christians, and their *abuna* (father or patriarch) is consecrated at Alexandria, but their whole religion consists in the performance of empty and unintelligible ceremonies. Throughout the rest of northern Africa, and along the eastern coast, as we have noticed, the Arabs have spread Mohammedanism far and wide, so that perhaps a quarter of all the inhabitants of the continent have received this religion. Even at Lagos, on the West African coast, there may be seen followers of Mohammed, who, having made the long pilgrimage across the continent and the Red Sea to Mecca, have become entitled to the green turbans they wear.

Throughout the nineteenth century the remarkable negroid people called the Fellatah or Fulahs, themselves late converts to Mohammedanism, have

spread their faith over West and Central Sudan ; but their progress is now permanently arrested by the overthrow of the powerful Fulah empire of Sokoto by the English in 1902.

The mass of the peoples of South and Central Africa can scarcely be said to have any religion. They do not adore the sun, or any other object or idol, but their belief is in malign spirits, and in charms or "fetishes," which are mainly of use to counteract their evil designs.

**25. Political Divisions.**—Since 1884, when several of the European Powers began the so-called "scramble for Africa," this continent has virtually become a political dependency of Europe. In 1908 the only independent native states were Morocco ; the Saharan Confederacies ; Liberia ; and Abyssinia, over which Italy has failed to establish her protectorate. All the rest has been partitioned either *de facto* or diplomatically ("Hinterlands," "Spheres of Influence," vague Suzerainties and Protectorates) as under :—

*Great Britain.*—Parts of Gold and Slave Coasts ; Sierra Leone ; Gambia ; Northern and Southern Nigeria, which comprise the late Fulah empire and Bornu between the Niger and Lake Chad, Yorubaland, Lagos, and the Oil River district ; the late Boer States (Transvaal and Orange Free State) ; Cape Colony with Bechuanaland ; Natal with Zululand ; Southern Rhodesia (Matabili and Mashona lands) ; North-Western Rhodesia (Barotseland) ; North-Eastern Rhodesia together with the Nyassaland Protectorate ; British East Africa (Zanzibar coast-lands north of Umba River, Masailand, Uganda, Unyoro, Albertine Nile, White Nile with Darfur and Kordofan) ; Zanzibar ; North Somal Coast ; islands in Atlantic and Indian Oceans. Total area, 2,832,000 sq. miles ; population, 50 millions.

*France.*—Algeria ; Tunis, West Sahara ; Senegal with French Sudan ; parts of Guinea Coast with Dahomey ; Gaboon and French Congo ; French Somaliland (Obock, Jibutil) ; Madagascar and other islands in Indian Ocean. Total area, 3,756,000 sq. miles ; population, 31½ millions.

*Belgium.*—Congo State. Area, 900,000 sq. miles ; population, 30 millions.

*Portugal.*—Guinea ; West Africa (Angola) ; East Africa (Mozambique) ; Atlantic islands. Total area, 795,000 sq. miles ; population, 8 millions.

*Germany.*—Togoland ; Cameroons ; German South-West Africa ; German East Africa. Total area, 910,000 sq. miles ; population, 6 millions.

*Italy.*—Erythrea with Somaliland, but exclusive of Abyssinia, which has asserted its independence (1896). Area, 150,000 sq. miles ; population, 850,000.

*Spain.*—Moroccan presidios ; West Saharan coast-lands ; Atlantic islands. Total area, 84,000 sq. miles ; population, 520,000.

*Turkey.*—Tripolitana ; Egypt ; East Sudan. Total area, 1,600,000 sq. miles ; population, 15,000,000.

## THE BARBARY STATES.

1. Previous to the seventh century, when the great Arab immigration began, the Hamitic people, known as the Berbers,

occupied the southern coast-lands of the Mediterranean from Egypt westward to the Atlantic, and from them the countries into which this region is now divided are still known collectively as the Barbary States.<sup>1</sup>

2. If we look at the map we cannot fail to notice how sharply defined from the southern region is the mountainous district which occupies the western half of the coast-land washed by the Mediterranean, extending from the Gulf of Gabes and Cape Bon, which points towards Sicily, to Cape Ghir on the Atlantic coast in the west. This island-like mass, rising between the sea and the wastes of the desert beyond, is called by the Arabs *Maghreb* or "the west," and comprises the empire of Morocco and the French possessions of Algeria and the regency of Tunis.

3. This highland is formed in the west by the *Atlas* range, which extends in a curve from Cape Deir, projecting into the Mediterranean, round to Cape Ghir on the Atlantic. The Atlas attains its highest points in *Tizi-n-Tungurt* (15,500 feet), and *Jebel Ayashin* (14,000 feet), and descends gradually by terraces to plains along the Atlantic coast land, except in the north, where a branch range skirts the Mediterranean coast, running out to close the narrow Strait of Gibraltar, and to form the steep northern face called the *Riff*.

Farther east in Algeria and in Tunis the highland takes the form of a broad high plateau, enclosed between mountain ranges on the seaward and inner sides. The land rising from the Mediterranean up over the coast hills to the outer bordering range is called the *Tell* country, and is the most fertile and valuable part of those two states. Beyond the maritime ranges, the summits of which reach an elevation of about 6000 feet, monotonous bare table-lands, at a general height of about 3800 feet above the sea, are reached. This enclosed belt extends all the way from the inner side of the Atlas to the mountains of Tunis in the east, and is dotted over with a long series of brackish lakes or salt marshes called "*sebkhas*." The herds in this region are watered at the stagnant pools, which remain in the hollows of the rocks after the winter rains; and these are called *Ghedir*, or *traitor*, by the Arabs, since no dependence can be placed on their supply.

On the southern side of these bare plateaus there rises another bordering chain of heights, extending all along the inner edge of the highland from Tunis to Morocco, where it forms a parallel inner range to the southern portion of the Atlas. One of the groups of this range is that of the *Aures* mountains in Eastern Algeria, which has the highest summit in this region, *Mount Sheliah* (7570 feet). From the summit of this mountain a grand panorama opens out over the wide plateau, with its glistening "*sebkhas*" on the north, to the summits of many mountains east and west, and down southward over the pale-coloured broken declivities of the mountains to the distant lowlands of the Sahara.

4. The three states of this region also claim as within their limits a considerable part of the Sahara region, which lies southward behind the mountains. To this the southern border range descends almost abruptly. In the east, immediately at the base of the mountains, lie the depressed marshes and quicksands, which extend inland from the head of the Gulf of Gabes for a distance of 240 miles. The largest of these is the *Shott*

	Area in sq. miles.	Pop. (1905).
<sup>1</sup> Morocco . . . . .	320,000	2,750,000
Algeria . . . . .	343,500	4,124,000
Tunis . . . . .	64,000	2,000,000
Tripoli, with Fezzan and Barka . . . . .	390,000	1,300,000



6. **People.**—In Morocco the *Berbers* still far outnumber the *Arabs*, though the latter have taken possession of the most fertile maritime region of the country from the Strait to the Tensift river. The *Arabs* or *Moors*, descendants chiefly of those who overran Spain in the eighth century, and were driven thence in the fifteenth, are essentially townsmen and traders; the *Berbers*, occupying four-fifths of the land, live chiefly in tents, or tent villages, called *Dwars*, and support themselves by husbandry. Their language, called the *Tamashek* and *Shellah*, is spoken all across North Africa. Slim sinewy forms and sharply-cut features, black fiery eyes, and black hair, are characteristic both of Arab and Berber. Jews form a large and important section of the population; they are chiefly the descendants of those who were expelled from Spain and Portugal in the end of the fifteenth century, and are browbeaten and despised. There are also a small number of *Negroes* in Morocco.

7. **Government.** The highest ruling class in Morocco is that of the *Ashraf* (sing. *sharif*), who claim descent from Mohammed. But the Emperor, although in theory absolute, uncontrolled even by the precepts of the Koran, has long been powerless to maintain order. Owing to the unsettled state of affairs the powers at the international conference of Algeciras in 1906 authorised France and Spain to raise a police force to put down disturbances on the seaboard. But since then the unrest has spread everywhere, and the murder of Europeans in various places has called for the direct intervention of France, which occupied Ujdah near the Algerian frontier and Casablanca on the west coast in 1907. Early in 1908 a rival sultan was proclaimed at Fez. The divisions of the country are *Fez* and *Morocco* proper on the north-western slope, *Sus* between the Atlas and the Sahara border range, and the *Wadi Draa* district in the Moroccan Sahara.

8. **Chief Towns.**—The Sultan keeps court alternately at the cities of Morocco, Fez, and Mequinez. The city of *Morocco* (50,000) is situated near the Tensift, near the base of the Great Atlas, and is surrounded by immense gardens and orchards. It is walled round and flanked by ruinous turrets; the streets leading from the chief gates are wide, but in other parts of the city are narrow and filthy. The pride of the city is the Kutubia or mosque of the booksellers, which has a minaret of 220 feet in height. *Fez* is a larger city in the north, finely placed between two hills on a small tributary of the Sebu, and enclosed by a turreted wall. *Mequinez*, the third imperial city, lies farther west. The most important outlets of the country are *Tanger*, near the outer entrance of the Strait of Gibraltar; the double city of *Rabat-Saleh*, at the mouth of the Bu-Ragreg, once the resort of the Corsairs; *Casablanca*, occupied by the French in 1907; *Axamor*, at the mouth of the Um-er-Rebia; *Mazagan*, a little further south; and *Mogador*, the port of the city of Morocco.

In the Moroccan Sahara the centres of population occur in the wadies or water channels which drain the southern slope. Most important of these is the town of *Abuam*, in the oasis of Tablet, east of the Ujjer Draa.

9. **Trade.**—There is no native industry in Morocco properly so called beyond that of leather-making all over the country, and of the manufacture of the red caps which are named from the imperial town of Fez. An active traffic is maintained in importing European goods, such as cottons, trinkets, gunpowder and arms, glass, sugar, etc., and in sending these by caravans into the interior of Africa by way of the Sahara.

## ALGERIA.

10. Though far superior to France itself in extent, the territory of Algeria, extending between Morocco and Tunis, and over the



*Kebir* ; the farthest inland is named the *Shott el Melghir*, and its deepest point is 82 feet beneath the level of the Mediterranean. A rocky barrier, only about ten miles wide, separates this chain of depressions from the Mediterranean, and a scheme for cutting through this obstacle and allowing the sea-water to flow in over them has recently been considered by the French Government. Were this done, a great basin about as extensive as Lake Ontario might be formed, and the evaporation from its surface would perhaps tend to restore fertility to the waste lands round it, but it would be too shallow for the purposes of navigation. Farther west, the region of the Sahara embraced within the boundaries of Algeria and Morocco is not uniformly desert, and lies at elevations of from 500 to 2000 feet above the sea. Its general character may be understood from the native names for those parts of it which present corresponding features :— (1) The inhabited portions are named “*fiafi* ;” these are oases round clusters of wells, to which all living things are drawn for shelter from the sun and the hot winds, under the palms or fruit-trees which grow luxuriantly wherever there is water. (2) “*Kifar*” is the name given to the bare plain-country, which, when moistened by the winter rains, changes its bare and sandy aspect for a time, and becomes covered with spring herbs ; hither the nomadic shepherds, who have been camped round the oases during the summer, come in spring to pasture their flocks. (3) “*Falat*” is the name given to the vast stretches of sterile and naked country covered with ridges of blown sand like solid sea-waves. All these three are intermixed, and from the bordering chain of mountains on the north numberless torrents descend through a network of deep ravines to be quickly dried up in the lowland.

### MOROCCO.

5. The most westerly of the Barbary States, called Morocco, or by the Arabs *Maghreb-el-aksa*, “the far west,” reaches from the Riff coast of the Mediterranean and the Atlantic on the outer side of the Strait of Gibraltar, southward over the Atlas range to the desert beyond, covering an area somewhat larger than that of France.

It has thus two slopes, the one north-westward to the plains which border the Atlantic and to the Mediterranean, the other south-eastward to the desert. These present a great contrast in landscape and in climate. The winter rains of the northern slope last for nearly five months (October to February), but on the southern only for one. The Atlantic coast slopes are thus fertile and habitable country, capable of producing large crops of barley and millet, as well as orchard fruits ; the southern little better than desert, in which the date-palm is the main support of life ; while between there is a broad belt of bare mountain steppes and rocky heights.

On its northern slope the *Muluya* flows down along the eastern side of the Atlas to the Mediterranean, and the *Sebu*, *Bu Regreg*, *Um-el-Rhea*, and *Tensift*, to the Atlantic. Fed both by the winter rains and in summer by the melting snows of the Atlas range, most of these streams keep up a constant flow, giving an unfailing supply of water to the lowlands. The streams of the southern slope, on the other hand, are torrents which gather towards the great *Wadi Draa*, a channel longer than that of the Rhine, which skirts the southern border of Morocco, and is only filled with water after the winter rains, presenting a dry bed at other seasons.



6. **People**—In Morocco the *Berbers* still far outnumber the *Arabs*, though the latter have taken possession of the most fertile maritime region of the country from the Strait to the Tensift river. The Arabs or *Moors*, descendants chiefly of those who overran Spain in the eighth century, and were driven thence in the fifteenth, are essentially townsmen and traders; the Berbers, occupying four fifths of the land, live chiefly in tents, or tent villages, called *Dwars*, and support themselves by husbandry. Their language, called the *Tamashek* and *Shellah*, is spoken all across North Africa. Slim sinewy forms and sharply-cut features, black fiery eyes, and black hair, are characteristic both of Arab and Berber. Jews form a large and important section of the population; they are chiefly the descendants of those who were expelled from Spain and Portugal in the end of the fifteenth century, and are browbeaten and despised. There are also a small number of *Negroes* in Morocco.

7. **Government.** The highest ruling class in Morocco is that of the *Ashraf* (sing. *sharif*), who claim descent from Mohammed. But the Emperor, although in theory absolute, uncontrolled even by the precepts of the Koran, has long been powerless to maintain order. Owing to the unsettled state of affairs the powers at the international conference of Algeciras in 1906 authorised France and Spain to raise a police force to put down disturbances on the seaboard. But since then the unrest has spread everywhere, and the murder of Europeans in various places has called for the direct intervention of France, which occupied Ujdah near the Algerian frontier and Casablanca on the west coast in 1907. Early in 1908 a rival sultan was proclaimed at Fez. The divisions of the country are *Fez* and *Morocco* proper on the north-western slope, *Sus* between the Atlas and the Sahara border range, and the *Wadi Draa* district in the Moroccan Sahara.

8. **Chief Towns.**—The Sultan keeps court alternately at the cities of Morocco, Fez, and Mequinez. The city of *Morocco* (50,000) is situated near the Tensift, near the base of the Great Atlas, and is surrounded by immense gardens and orchards. It is walled round and flanked by ruinous turrets; the streets leading from the chief gates are wide, but in other parts of the city are narrow and filthy. The pride of the city is the Kutubia or mosque of the booksellers, which has a minaret of 220 feet in height. *Fez* is a larger city in the north, finely placed between two hills on a small tributary of the Sebu, and enclosed by a turreted wall. *Mequinez*, the third imperial city, lies farther west. The most important outlets of the country are *Tangier*, near the outer entrance of the Strait of Gibraltar; the double city of *Rabat-Saleh*, at the mouth of the Bu-Regreg, once the resort of the Corsairs; *Casablanca*, occupied by the French in 1907; *Axamor*, at the mouth of the Um-er Rebia; *Mazagan*, a little further south; and *Mogador*, the port of the city of Morocco.

In the Moroccan Sahara the centres of population occur in the wadies or water channels which drain the southern slope. Most important of these is the town of *Ahuam*, in the oasis of Tailet, east of the Upper Draa.

9. **Trade.** There is no native industry in Morocco properly so called beyond that of leather-making all over the country, and of the manufacture of the red caps which are named from the imperial town of Fez. An active traffic is maintained in importing European goods, such as cottons, trinkets, gunpowder and arms, glass, sugar, etc., and in sending these by caravans into the interior of Africa by way of the Sahara.

## ALGERIA

10. Though far superior to France itself in extent, the territory of Algeria, extending between Morocco and Tunis, and over the

table-lands into the Sahara, has a comparatively small extent of ground capable of supporting a dense population.

**11. Climate.**—Its arable and cultivable districts are almost restricted to the Tell country or the Mediterranean slope. There also the climate is uniform and resembles that of south Italy or Spain, four seasons, succeeding each other gently, being distinguishable. But in the Sahara region south of the border range the variations of temperature are excessive, and the summer heat very oppressive.

In the middle of September the beneficent autumn and winter rains begin, and the whole land is speedily covered with the richest vegetation. Then also the streams which flow northward to the Mediterranean fill out into torrents. The largest of these by far is the *Sheliff*, which springs in the inner side of the southern mountain range, and finds its way across the plateaus and between the northern hills to the Mediterranean.

**12. Products.**—The vegetation of the Tell country bears a striking resemblance to that of the Mediterranean borders of Europe: here, as there, flourish the olive, laurel, orange, and citron, the oak, cedar, and pine, the almond and fig-tree, myrtle, aloe, and oleander, and the valuable cork-tree.

Among the products of the upland region of Algeria which have been turned to useful account are the "halfa" and esparto grass, which are now largely used in England for paper-making; a dwarf palm has also been found to be useful in the manufacture of a sort of vegetable hair for the Paris market. Wheat and durra, and potatoes introduced by the French, are now cultivated to a considerable extent, and the vine succeeds admirably on the mountain slopes up to an altitude of 3000 feet.

Few countries are richer in *iron* than Algeria, and in 1906 the total yield of iron ores exceeded 117,000 tons. Lead, copper, zinc, antimony, and cinnabar, are also widely distributed.

**13. People.**—The population of Algeria is a much less numerous one than that of Morocco, consisting mainly of the same elements. But the *Berbers* or *Kabyles*, as they are named here, are now far fewer than the *Arabs*, and have been driven back almost exclusively to the higher table-lands. The *Kabyles* are of settled habits and good agriculturists, but passionately fond of their native land, and brave in warfare; they have ever remained the implacable foes of the *Arabs*, though both are Mohammedans in religion. The *Arabs* on the other hand are divided, as in Morocco, into the *Moors*, who dwell in towns, and the *Bedwins*, who lead a nomadic pastoral life, and whose whole nature seems to rebel against civilisation and sedentary habits.

Of the large number of Europeans now introduced into the country, about a half are French, the rest Italians, Spaniards, and Anglo-Maltese, with a few Germans; in 1905 the European settlers numbered 730,000, and their prospects are slowly improving.

**14. Government and Chief Towns.**—Algeria is divided into three departments corresponding to its chief towns, of Algiers in the centre, Oran in the west, and Constantine in the east. Each of these is subdivided into civil and military districts.

*Algiers* (154,000), the seat of government, is magnificently situated on a bay of the Mediterranean, the modern or European town is built with broad streets along the shore, the old or Arab town above with crooked passages and high bare walled houses, with narrow gratings for windows. The summit of the hill is occupied by the Kasbah, the ancient fortress of the Deys of Algiers. *Constantine*, one of the ancient cities of Numidia, named after the Roman Emperor Constantine the Great, lies on a rocky plateau of the northern border range. The harbours of *Oran* and *Mostaganem* lie west of Algiers, those of *Dellys*, *Philippeville*, *La Calle*, and *Bona*, on the east towards the Tunisian coast.

In 1906 nearly 2000 miles of railway were open, connecting all the large towns, and penetrating southwards into the Algerian Sahara to Tugurt north of Wargla. The system is united eastwards with that of Tunisia.

15. Among the achievements of the French since their occupation of Algeria may be noted the draining of a large marshy lake called the Hallula, not far from the city of Algiers, by which 34,000 acres of excellent cotton-growing land have been recovered. Extensive plantations of *eucalyptus*, or blue gum, have also contributed much to the amelioration of large districts. Over in the bare central plateau, and in the Sahara region also, large tracts have been reclaimed by the sinking of artesian wells.

### TUNISIA.

16. The most easterly and smallest of the three states of the western Berber region scarcely differs at all from the others in its physical aspect, or in the elements of which its population is composed. It reaches south like these, over the highland region of the eastern terminations of the Barbary plateau, into the northern Sahara, but it has the advantage of an eastern as well as a northern coast-line, and its shores are extended by the gulfs of Tunis, Hammamet, and Gabes. In area it is about a fourth part larger than Scotland, and it is of great interest as containing the ruins of ancient Carthage, and as corresponding to the *Africa* of the Romans.

17. **Products and Industries.** Little agriculture is carried on in Tunis, though many parts of the land are capable of tillage: olive groves are characteristic of the northern or more hilly districts; date plantations give their name to the "Belad-el Jerid," as the southern lowlands are called. Cattle are reared in large numbers, and the native manufactures of silks, "burnous" mantles, red caps, woollen goods, leather, and pottery, are very considerable.

18. **People.**—The same antipathy as in Algeria, between the Berbers and the Arabs, prevails also in Tunis. The Moors or town Arabs marry solely among themselves; the Berbers keep apart, though some now speak Arabic; the Jews of Tunis also live to themselves. Here we find also a mixed race, the offspring of Turks and Moors, called *Kulugh*.

19. **Government and Chief Towns.** From 1595 onward Tunis has been under the sovereignty of Turkey; but by Firman of October 1871 the Sultan gave up his ancient right of tribute, merely reserving to himself the direction of the foreign relations of the regency. Since 1881, however, Tunis is a dependency of France, who marched an army into the country on the ground that the Bey was unable to restrain the plundering propensities of the Krumirs and of other tribes on the Algerian borders. The administration is now carried on under the direction of the French Foreign Office, which has a special department for Tunisian affairs under a French Resident-General.

The political capital is the walled city of Tunis (250,000), which lies along the shallow islet of its gulf, called the Bahira. Through its port of *Goletta*, connected with it by a short railway, it carries on an extensive commerce with Marseilles and Genoa and the Levant ports. About two miles north-west is the *Bardo*, as the palace of the Bey is called. The site of famous Carthage is thirteen miles north-east of Tunis on Cape Carthage.

In 1906 nearly 600 miles of railway were open, and the system joins on to that of Algeria.

The spiritual capital of Tunis is the city of *Kairwan*, which lies about seventy-five miles south of the political capital in a barren plain. This is one of the sacred cities of Islam, and formerly neither Jew nor Christian was allowed to reside within its walls.

Besides the Goletta of Tunis, the chief ports are *Bizerta* on the north coast, a strongly fortified French arsenal, and *Susa*, *Monastir*, *Mehedia*, and *Sfax*, on the east, the last-named being the chief town and outlet of the south of the country, united by telegraph with the capital.

20. Coral is found abundantly all along the coast of Tunis, and the tunny fish is captured in great numbers during its migrations along the shores in May or June by means of great traps composed of barriers of nets called "tonnaras."

### TRIPOLI.<sup>1</sup>

21. The country of Tripoli, which forms a vilayet or province of the Ottoman Empire, reaches along the Mediterranean coasts between Tunis and Egypt, from the Gulf of Gabes round that of Sidra, to the plateau of Barca in the east. Inland it extends southward into the desert to near the northern tropic, thus occupying a space nearly four times as large as Great Britain.

22. **Relief.**—Its sandy coasts are generally level or undulating, but the land rises, beyond fertile valleys, to a range called the Ghurian and the Jebel es Soda or Black Mountains (2800 feet), behind which a great bare and stony waterless plateau or "hammada" extends away to the south. Beyond the hammada the land descends again to the oasis land of Fezzan. The eastern region of Barca, ancient *Cyrenaica*,<sup>2</sup> projecting into the Mediterranean, is a rocky table-land with steep slopes to the sea.

23. **Products.**—Excepting on the outward slopes and valleys of the mountains, the whole land partakes of the character of the Sahara in climate, and in its landscape of bare gray desert, and cloudless blue sky: the fertile valleys, supplied with water by periodically flowing streams from the hills, yield grain and fruits, tobacco, cotton, silk, and saffron, in abundance, and the southern ones have extensive plantations of the date-palm.

24. **Inhabitants and Government.**—The people are chiefly *Arab* tribes, with remnants of *Berbers* in the interior and dusky *Tibbus* in the south, and are Mohammedan in religion, the few *Turks* holding the offices of Government. The Governor of the vilayet resides at the capital town of *Tripoli* on the west; a subordinate governor rules the great southern province of Fezzan from the oasis city of *Murzuk*. Since 1879 the eastern region forms a detached province, named from its chief town of *Benghazi*, and is directly dependent upon Constantinople. Formerly it was placed under the Governor of Tripoli.

25. **Chief Towns and Trade.**—*Tripoli*, the capital, standing on a low rocky tongue of land on the coast in the western part of the territory, is the great mart of trade in the products of the Sudan brought hither by the main caravan route across the desert from Bornu, and at the same time supplies the interior with European goods. The trade in ostrich feathers is the most important of all. The direct route to the Sudan from Tripoli leads south across the Ghurian hills, and over the hammada beyond, down into the cluster

<sup>1</sup> *Tripolis*, the "three cities," referring to the ancient Carthaginian towns Sabrata, Oea, and Leptis Magna, along the *Syrtes*, or the Gulfs of Gabes and "

<sup>2</sup> Or *Pentapolis*, from the "five cities" of Hesperides or Berenice (*m*) Barca, Arsinoe, Cyrene, and Apollonia, founded by Greek colonists.

of garden-like oases of Fezzan. *Murzuk*, in one of these, is inhabited mainly by traders. Another important route is that which leads to the trading town of *Ghadames* on the border of the Algerian Sahara. *Benghazi*, on the north-west coast of the plateau land of Barca, is the second port of the province, and is the outlet of an important caravan route to Wadai in the Sudan.

### SAHARA.<sup>1</sup>

1. All the immense region of northern Africa between the Nile valley and the Atlantic is characterised generally by deficiency of rainfall, and consequently by deficiency of vegetation; and we know, it by the Arabic word *Sahra* or *Zahrah*, meaning "desert," modified into the form *Sahara*. This desert belt of the continent reaches southward from the inner slopes of the plateau of Barbary and the coast of the Mediterranean in Tripoli for an average distance of 1200 miles, to where its sands give place gradually to pastoral grassy country, and then to the fertile and well-watered lands of the Sudan. The desert region thus embraces a vast area, which may be compared to twelve times that of France.

2. **Physical Features.**—Sand heaps or "dunes" are so universal on the northern borders of the Sahara that till recently the whole region was generally pictured as a huge sea of sand. These dunes form a great belt of more than 2000 miles in length, and from 200 to 300 miles wide, reaching from the coasts of the Syrtes away to the Senegal river and the Atlantic coast. Now that European travellers have passed this great northern barrier, the interior of the desert is found to have a very diversified surface, and to consist in great part of table-lands, which are called "hammada" where they are strewn with sharp stones, and "serir" where they are covered with small pebbles. In contrast to these are low-lying plains or depressions between the plateaus, generally termed "hofra" or "juf," but the only true depressions beneath the sea-level yet known in North Africa are those of the marshes to the south of the plateau in Tunis, and some spots of small extent in the Libyan Desert.

An important feature of the Sahara is that of its "oases,"<sup>2</sup> or green habitable spots formed wherever water is present, even if it be brackish or saline. This fact shows that the aridity of the Sahara is not due to any peculiarity of its soil, but simply to the deficiency of moisture over the greater part of its area. The oases are found either at the termination of the periodically filled water channels which descend from the higher grounds, as along the inner base of the plateau of Barbary, or in the centres of the depressions, where the scanty moisture supply filters down to the lowest central point of the basin, as in the oases of the Libyan Desert.

3. Within the enormous area of the Sahara there is no permanently flowing stream. Among its greater water channels or "wadys" are the *Draa*, which turns along the southern border of Morocco from the inner mountain ranges to the Atlantic. Two of the most extensive channels formed by the agency of water within the Sahara are those called the *Igharghar* and *Wady Mia*, which have their origin in the plateaus between 23° and 24° N., and which extend directly northward for 750 miles, to terminate in the chain of salt-marshes south of Tunis. In many cases, though these deeply furrowed

<sup>1</sup> Area 3,550,000 square miles. Population estimated at nearly 5,000,000. Of this total, 1,100,000 sq. m. with 2,000,000 inhabitants, are included in Barbary.

<sup>2</sup> Probably from the Coptic *saḥ*, meaning "inhabited place."



channels appear dry, water is obtainable by digging down into them, showing that it filters along under ground. Dry lake beds, called "sebkhas," are also characteristic of the Sahara; sometimes the dried mud within them has contracted into regular hexagonal figures; at others they show a clear sheet of salt.

4. **Climate.**—The Sahara falls within the line marking an average annual temperature of over 80°, but the great feature of its climate, as of all bare desert countries, is that of the excessive difference of temperature between day and night. In the intense heat of mid-day the sand and rock surface has been found to rise to a temperature of nearly 200° F., but the absence of moisture in the air favours rapid radiation from the bare surface, so that at night the thermometer not unfrequently marks below the freezing point.

The northern border is sprinkled by winter showers in some parts of the highlands between October and March, but in the lowlands rain is all but unknown, and twenty years may pass without a drop falling. The tropical showers, drawn in from the Indian Ocean and the Gulf of Guinea, which water the Sudan so abundantly, reach into the Sahara region only in the months of August and September, as far as some of the central hilly regions. We have already noticed that the north-east is the prevailing dry wind of the Sahara. Hot winds blowing outward seem to make a tour of the northern part of the continent during the year, occurring as the *Khamsin*, or fifty days (April till June), in Egypt; as the *Sirocco* of Algeria and south Italy (in July); as the *Shume* of Morocco (in August and September); and as the *Harmattan*, charged with dust, on the Atlantic and Guinea coasts (in December, January, and February).

5. **Products.**—The tree of the desert region is the date-palm, which finds a favourite habitat in its arid soil and dry climate, and which is the mainstay of the inhabitants of the Sahara: rice, maize, and barley are grown in some of the oases, where a few acacias and ferns appear. A thorny evergreen shrub serves as fodder for the camels in passing through some of the dreary regions between. A few gazelles and antelopes, hares and foxes, the ostrich, vulture, and raven, are almost the only animals of the desert. Salt is the great mineral product of the Sahara; in some districts, such as that of *Taodeni*, midway between Timbuktu and Morocco, and in *Bilma*, on the route from Bornu to Tripoli, it is regularly mined.

6. **People.**—The thinly-scattered inhabitants of the Sahara fall into three main divisions—(1) The *Moorish* (Arab) and *Berber* tribes of the western region, chiefly nomadic herdsmen and robbers, though settled under sultans in some parts of the south-west; (2) the *Tuareg* of the central Sahara, a Berber people, tall and handsome, the horse-guards of the caravans in their passage across the desert, wearing a shawl, called the "litham," wound round face and head as a protection against the blown sands of the desert; (3) the *Tibbus*, a pastoral people inhabiting the eastern portion of the desert, akin to the Tuaregs, but mixed southwards with the Sudanese Negroes.

7. Among the many more or less definitely known countries and kingdoms within the vast area of the Sahara, are those of *Tiris* on the Atlantic margin, a desert country held by the nomadic tribes of the Uled Delim: *Aderer*, south-east of it, where the Yaya-ben-Othman Moors are dominant; this is a hilly country, possessing considerable herds of camels, sheep, and oxen, and great mines of rock-salt near its chief town of *Shingeti*; the countries of the *Asgar* and *Ahaggar Tuaregs*, in the plateaus which rise beyond the sand-belt south of the Algerian Sahara; the oasis land of *Tidikelt*, in the north-west of the Tuareg region, where from 300 to 400 little oasis-states form an independent confederation of republics; the hilly kingdom of *Air* or *Asben*, near the centre of the Sahara in the Tuareg division, ruled over by a sultan, who resides at *Agades*; and the Tibbu sultanate, which occupies the mountainous country



of *Tu* or *Tibesti*, towards the east of the Sahara, with the capital town of *Bardai*. This last kingdom is occupied by the *Rashade* tribe of the *Tibbus*, a fierce, treacherous people, fanatical in their adherence to Mohammedanism. Here in *Tibesti* occurs the highest known point of all the Sahara region, the broad backed Mount *Tarso*, from which the peak of *Tusidde* rises to an estimated height of 7900 feet. From the slopes of these mountains, valleys and torrent-beds filled with bright green acacias reach down on all sides to the surrounding desert; here also the date palm is the chief resource of the inhabitants.

8. *Trade*.—The great caravan routes and lines of communication across the Sahara take generally a north and south direction, from the fertile countries of the Sudan on the south to the nearest ports of the Mediterranean. In the west an important route unites *Timbuktu* on the *Niger* with *Tafilet* in southern Morocco. Several routes from Morocco, Algeria, and Tunis, centre in the busy markets of the oasis land of *Tidikelt*, and pass thence also to *Timbuktu*; along this line two great caravans are despatched every year to the south. Farther east lies the route from *Ghat* on the east of the *Tuareg* plateau, through *Asben* to *Sokoto* in the Sudan; and still farther east the greatest thoroughfare of the Sahara, the track which leads from *Tripoli*, through *Murzuk* in *Fezzan*, by the salt-mines of *Bilma* to the countries round *Lake Chad*. An attempt to divert part of the Saharan trade to a station established by an English Company at *Cape Juby* does not appear to have been particularly successful.

The commerce of the Sahara consists mainly in the transport of ostrich feathers, slaves (formerly), gold dust, and ivory from the Sudan to the Mediterranean ports, and the conveyance thence back across the desert of manufactured goods, such as cottons, cutlery, and trinkets of all sorts, to the negro countries in the south. Since the French and English occupation of Sudan the slave-trade across the Sahara has all but ceased. But at one time fully 10,000 slaves passed northward by the *Murzuk* route from *Bornu* every year. The salt of the Sahara beds also gives rise to considerable independent traffic. From *Bilma*, for example, the salt-blocks are carried by camel caravans, sometimes of 1000 animals, to the Sudan, to be exchanged there for grain.

### EGYPT.<sup>1</sup>

1. From its ancient limits in the Delta and along the banks of the Lower Nile, crowded with monuments of art in long past ages, the territory of Egypt had been enormously extended in recent years, till its ruler, nominally a vassal of the Ottoman Empire, had become the most powerful sovereign in all Africa. But the empire which *Mehemet Ali* founded, and his successors extended, fell to pieces in 1882, when the fanatical *Mahdi* ("Guided"), *Mohammed Ahmed*, expelled the Egyptians from Sudan, and established himself at *Omdurman* opposite *Khartum*. On his death in 1885 he was succeeded by the *Khalifa*, *Abdullah*, who maintained his independence till 1898, when he was defeated by Sir H. (now Lord) *Kitchener* at the decisive battle of *Omdurman*. That place and *Khartum* were immediately occupied, and the Sudan rescued from the misrule of the rebel *Mahdists*. The whole region is now

	Area in sq. miles.	Pop.
<sup>1</sup> Egypt proper, with the Libyan and Arabian deserts .	400,000	9,794,000.

reorganised as the *Anglo-Egyptian Sudan*, forming a sort of condominium under the British and Egyptian flags, and with special arrangements for the final suppression of the slave-trade.

2. **Egypt proper** consists of the narrow Nile valley, extended in 1900 to Wady Halfa at the Second Cataract, and enclosed on both sides by the Libyan and Arabian deserts.

3. **Climate.**—The excessive heat and drought of the Sahara prevail in Lower Egypt. Though the coast of the Nile delta receives a few winter showers, there is only an average of thirteen rainy days in the year at Cairo in the apex of the delta; and a little farther south rain becomes almost unknown, though heavy dews partly supply its deficiency, and the great heat of summer is tempered by northerly winds which then blow up the Nile valley.

4. **Products.**—The cultivable land of Egypt<sup>1</sup> in the delta and along the banks of the Nile represents only about a twentieth part of the area of this division, and is dependent for its fertility on the inundations of the river alone. Far and wide over the level delta in harvest time, there wave fields of wheat and rice, sugar-cane, cotton, and indigo. Other parts are rich pasture-lands, dotted with herds of cattle, asses, sheep, and goats. Trees have now been planted along the roads, and are in some parts set in thick plantations. Above the delta the most productive district of Lower Egypt is that of Fayum, lying west of the river valley round a lake called the Birket el Kerun (ancient Lake Moeris), which is fed by a canal from the river. The agricultural resources of the country have been greatly increased by the completion (1906) of extensive reservoir works in Upper Egypt, including an immense dam at Assuan and barrages at Assiut and Zifta, with a total storage capacity of over 1,100,000,000 cubic yards.

5. **People.**—The great mass of the people in Lower Egypt are known as *Fellahin* or “ploughers,” and are the descendants of the old Egyptians and of the Arab invaders of the land. Portions of the Egyptians as well as of their conquerors, however, remain unmixed. The former are the *Copts*, the clerks of Egypt, who profess Christianity; the pure *Arabs* are represented mainly by the Bedouins, but some of these have exchanged their nomadic life for a settled one in houses. The Arabs are mainly employed in escorting trading caravans, and as breeders of cattle, sheep, and camels. The Nile valley above the first cataract is inhabited by *Nuba* or *Barabra*, and the desert to the east of it is held by the *Ababde*, a branch of the *Bisharin*. *Jews* are held in great contempt in Egypt by the Mohammedans. The *Gypsies* also have diminished in numbers, and are now only met with at fairs and markets as conjurers or fortune-tellers. The *Europeans* in Lower Egypt, who are natives principally of Greece, Italy, France, England, and Germany, nearly monopolise the commerce and navigation of the country.

6. **Government.**—The title given to the head of the ruling dynasty and his successors was the Turkish one of “Vali” or Viceroy, but Ismail I. contrived to restrict very considerably the sovereign rights of Turkey. In 1866 he obtained the Persian title of *Khediv* or “King” of Egypt; and in 1873 the right of concluding treaties with foreign powers and of maintaining an army; so that he was practically an absolute sovereign. An annual tribute of £720,000 is paid to the Porte. The administration of Egypt is carried on since 1882 under the advice of the English Government.

7. **Divisions and Chief Towns.**—*Egypt proper*, which extends up the

---

<sup>1</sup> The cultivable land of Egypt proper amounts to about 11,800 square miles in all. Of this 6600 square miles are in the delta, 5200 square miles along the river banks as far as the First Cataract, and round the lake of Fayum.

course of the river as far as the First Cataract at Assuan ( $24^{\circ}$  N.), is divided into the three districts called "Masr el Bahri" or Lower Egypt, "El Wustani" or Middle Egypt, and "El Said" or Upper Egypt. Since 1900 a portion of Nubia, up to the Second Cataract at Wady Halfa ( $22^{\circ}$  N.), and to *Akaska*, still farther south, has been incorporated with it.

*Cairo*<sup>1</sup> (570,000), the capital of Egypt, and the greatest city in all Africa, lies on the right bank of the river, a short way above the apex of the delta, and is about two miles in length by one in breadth, surrounded by a wall and commanded by a citadel. It forms a sea of houses, with narrow crooked streets, over which the slim tapering minarets and cupolas of the hundreds of mosques rise like a forest. A crowd of people of all nations moves through its streets and bazaars in chaotic confusion and with continual din. Railways lead to *Alexandria* (320,000), the great seaport and emporium of the commerce of Egypt, close to the site of the ancient city founded by Alexander the Great, to *Rosetta* on the western and to *Damietta* on the eastern branch of the Nile. *Tanta* and *Zagazig*, the latter on the Sweet Water Canal, which connects the Nile with Ismailia, and on the site of ancient Bubastes, are also important towns of the delta. *Tell el Kebir*, the site of Lord Wolseley's victory, lies not far from the town last named.

A railway also leads across the northern corner of the Arabian desert to the ancient port of *Suez*, at the head of the chief northern gulf of the Red Sea, and this was formerly a main link in the great overland route from Europe to India. In 1869, however, the great enterprise of the cutting of the Suez ship-canal from the Mediterranean to the Red Sea was completed, and in 1905 over 4100 vessels of 18,810,000 tons passed through the canal. *Port Said*, a flourishing modern town, stands where the breakwaters guard the Mediterranean entrance to the canal. Midway it passes *Ismailia*, also a new town, the headquarters of the Canal Company; and after the wider expanse of water which fills the basin of the former "bitter lakes" has been crossed, it opens into the Red Sea at *Suez*, nearly a hundred miles south of Port Said.

Going up the Nile from Cairo the first objects that attract attention are the great pyramids of Gizeh and the ruins of Memphis. From *Beni Suef*, the first town of importance above Cairo, a branch railway leads west to *Medinet el Fayum*, in the fertile basin which surrounds the ancient Moeris lake. Through *Assut* and *Assuan* the Nile railway now runs all the way from Cairo to Khartum (1665 miles); and from *Keneh*, still higher up, a four days' route leads eastward across the Arabian desert to the small port of *Kosseir* on the Red Sea. Not far beyond Keneh, near the villages of Karuak and Luxor, lie the magnificent ruins of *Thebes*, the ancient capital of Upper Egypt. At *Assuan*, near the northern tropical line, the first cataracts of the Nile in ascending are formed between granite hills. These are passed with difficulty in the season of low-water. *Korosko* is the principal place in Lower Nubia, and at the Second Cataract of *Wady Halfa* ( $22^{\circ}$  N.) the free navigation of the river upward is ended.

In the Libyan Desert lie the oases of Khargeh, Dakhel, Farafrah, and Siwah.

On the Red Sea the chief places are *Snaken* and *Port Sudan*, both since 1906 connected by rail with Berber on the Nile (260 and 290 miles). *Masr el Bahri*, farther south, opposite the Dahlak group of islands, famous for its sponges, was occupied by the Italians in 1883, and is now the Italian colony of *Eritrea*, which extends to *Asmara* in the interior, a distance of 670 miles with area 88,500 square miles, and population 100,000. The claim of the Italians to a protectorate over

<sup>1</sup> *rah*, the "victorious," founded 969.

Abyssinia was decided against them by their crushing defeat at the battle of Adowa in 1896. Beyond Eritrea follows the territory of *French Somaliland*, which stretches from *Obok* round *Tajurra Bay* to *Jibouti (Jibutil)*; area 12,000 square miles, population (1905) 50,000. In 1902 a French railway was opened from Jibutil to a point near Harar, whence it is to be continued to *Addis Abeba*, present capital of Abyssinia. *Berbera*, *Zeila*, and other places on the north Somali coast were transferred from Egypt to England in 1884, and form the outlets of *British Somaliland*, which since 1905 is administered by the Colonial Office; area 68,000 square miles, population (1901) 300,000; capital, *Berbera*, population 30,000. The rest of Somali-land is divided between Italy (area 100,000 square miles, population (1905) 400,000) and Abyssinia, which since 1886 also holds the Harar district (population 40,000). In Egypt proper is included the Sinai Peninsula, the boundary of which towards Turkey was fixed in 1907.

## NUBIA AND THE UPPER NILE.

1. **Extent.**—This region, the former *Egyptian Sudan* and the present *Anglo-Egyptian Condominium* (p. 378), extends from the cataracts of Wady Halfa to the Albert Nyanza, and from the Red Sea to the western border of Dar Fur. The length is thus 1400 miles, its width 1100; area 950,000 square miles; population (estimated 1906) 2,000,000; capital, formerly *Khartum* (population 14,000), now *Omdurman*, the old Mahdist capital (population 40,000).

2. **Physical Features.**—Within the area thus sketched out we may distinguish three divisions. (1) The northern or desert region of Nubia, which reaches up the Nile as far as the Atbara confluence, and within which lies the arid desert through which the caravans pass on their way from Korosko to Abu Hammed, as well as the northern part of the Bayuda steppe. Here cultivation is only possible within reach of the fertilising floods of the great river. (2) The region of grassy steppes and savannahs, which improves as we proceed to the south. This region, with its wide park-like plains and detached hills of granite or eruptive rocks, occupies the greater portion of the basin of the Nile up to Lado, and embraces likewise Kordofan and Dar Fur. (3) A forest region spreading over the hills, which almost encircle the vast plains just referred to.

3. **Climate.**—These divisions naturally correspond to the climates which have given them their varying landscapes. The dry region lies beyond the northern range of tropical rains, and in proportion as these rains become of longer and longer duration, so does the landscape gradually change again from brown sunburnt steppes to rich evergreen tropical vegetation. At Khartum it only rains between July and September, but at Lado on the upper Nile rain falls every month except January and February.

4. **Products.**—About the latitude of Khartum the date palm ceases and its place is taken by the deleb palm and the gigantic baobab, while farther away from the river acacias are the commonest trees. Higher up still the river banks become clothed with dense walls of reeds, and floating islands of matted "sod" obstruct the navigation. Durra (*sorghum*) and dokhn (*penicillaria*) are the chief cereals; ground-nuts, cotton, indigo, sesamum, and various



gums are among the most valuable products. Here crocodiles and hippopotami abound in the rivers, rhinoceroses in the jungle, the giraffe and the elephant in the park like lands—the last giving the ivory which is now the great object of all traders in this region.

5. **People.**—The population is made up of the most varied elements. The valley of the Nile, up to Dabbeh, is occupied by the *Barabra* or *Nuba*, who, although of swarthy complexion, are not negroes. The deserts and steppes to the east of them are the home of the Hamitic *Bisharin* or *Bega*, who stride across the plain with erect and graceful figures, armed with spear and buckler, or are mounted on trotting dromedaries. Farther south and to the west of the Nile the country is roamed over by numerous tribes of Arabs, who claim pure descent, but are evidently of very impure blood. Mixed up with them are numerous remnants of so-called negroes, among whom the once important *Funj*, about Senaar, and the Fur of Dar Fur, are the most prominent. Immediately south of the tenth parallel along the Nile banks, we come upon the fierce and jet-black tribe of the Shilluks, and beyond them live other negro tribes, among whom the Nuers, the Dinkas, the Bari, the Bongo and cannibal Nyam Nyam or Zandeh, on the south-western border of the Nile basin, are the most prominent.

**Divisions and Towns.** The principal town of Nubia is *New Dongola* (19° N.) Beyond Dabbeh, where the chief caravan route to Dar Fur leaves the Nile, we enter the country of the Shaikieh, where the ruins of Napata still bear witness to the bygone power of the Nobatae, now represented by the wandering Bisharin. The town of *Berber*, on the right bank, not far below the confluence of the Atbara, is a collection of mud-huts surrounded by tall acacias and palms, and is the starting point of a frequented caravan-route which leads across the Etbai desert to the Red Sea port of Suakin.

Passing the ruins of *Meroe*, and the important town of *Shendi*, we reach at length *Khartum*, at the confluence of the Blue and White Niles, by far the largest town of all this region, and the great centre of traffic, as it is the converging point of many river and caravan routes. Ascending the Blue Nile we reach the town of *Senaar*, the ancient capital of the Funj, and formerly a great and populous place. Its vicinity is called the "granary of the Sudan," and sends down great supplies of corn to Khartum. Higher up still, on the same river, is *Fazokl*, and beyond it we enter the country of the *Bertal*, who appear to be true negroes.

To the east of the Nile, on the Upper Atbara, and already within the hills of Abyssinia, lies the district of *Gulabat*, and lower down on the same river we come to the fertile country of *Taká*, with the mud-walled town of *Kassala*, on the Khor-el-Gash, a periodically-flowing tributary of the Atbara, for its capital. Farther east still in the mountain region which extends northward from the Abyssinian plateau, parallel with the shore of the Red Sea, are the countries of Bogos (Keren), Mensa, Takue, and Marea, which formerly belonged to Abyssinia, where the Italians have now secured a footing.

*Kordofan*, on the west of the Bahr el Atad, was conquered by Mehemmed Ali in 1821, but is now held by the rebel Caliph. This country presents generally the aspect of wide undulating plains covered with high brown grass, with here and there groups of mimosas and solitary baobabs. Water is so scarce at most seasons that it has to be stored carefully in reservoirs, and the herds must be kept in the neighbourhood of the wells. The town of *El Obeidh*, its capital, built of circular houses of roughly kneaded mud-bricks, is in the centre of a vast plain. Beyond Kordofan westward we approach *Dar Fur*, an extensive country spreading out round the central nucleus of the Marrah mountains; this region was conquered for Egypt in 1875, its former Arab sultan being slain in the campaign. From

the central mountains, numerous channels of periodically filled streams radiate outward, but the country is generally unfruitful and dry. In the rainy season, which lasts from June till September, however, it becomes clothed with the richest pasture. Its inhabitants, who chiefly congregate in the more favoured central mountain region, are African negroes, and Arabs who form the dominant race, and who are the actual holders of the land. All are Mohammedans. *Fasher*, the capital town on the lake of Tendelti, lies on the north-east slope of the Marrah mountains.

Passing up the Nile valley beyond Khartum we reach *Denab* or *Fashoda*, the old capital of the warlike Shilluk, temporarily occupied by the French in 1898. Beyond we come to the mouth of the Sobat, and to the shallow lake through which the Bahr-el-Ghazal finds an outlet into the main stream of the Nile, thenceforth called Bahr-el-Jebel. We are now fairly within the countries of the negroes, dotted over with "Zeribas" or stockades, at which the tusks, the gums, and other products of the land are collected, and which in a time not very remote were the headquarters of merciless bands of men-stealers. This vast region, until the victorious revolt headed by the Mahdi (1884), was divided into two "Provinces," viz. the "Equatorial Province in the east," and that of the Bahr-el-Ghazal, which stretched far to the west into Dar Fertit, the country of the Krej. *Lado*, and later on *Wadelai*, on the Upper Nile, was the seat of government of the former. They had taken the place of *Gondokoro*, a little above Lado, but abandoned from its unhealthiness. Not far from this, where the Nile leaves the hilly region of Equatorial Africa, navigation is obstructed by rapids, but a steamer has been carried past these, and now navigates the reaches of the upper river and the Albert Nyanza. Far to the south-west, on the Welle Makua, a tributary of the Congo, are the countries of the cannibal Nyam Nyam or Zandeh, and of the Mangbattu.

### ABYSSINIA.<sup>1</sup>

1. Between the Egyptian Sudan and the hot lowland called the Afar, or Danakil country, skirting the southern part of the Red Sea, and between 10° and 16° N. latitude, rises the lofty wedge-shaped highland of Abyssinia, a land differing as much in its physical configuration as in its inhabitants from all the parts of Africa in the same zone. Confined by the encroaching Mohammedans in west, east, and north, almost exclusively to the highland region, the area of Abyssinian territory amounts now to only about three times that of England.

2. **Physical Features.**—As the Abyssinian highland forms only a more marked promontory of the great table-land which skirts the eastern side of the continent, it has no definite physical limit in the south, and on the north its heights pass into those which skirt the Red Sea margin away to the borders of the Nile delta. Towards the north-west it descends by a well-marked, but more gradual, slope to the grassy plains of Senaar. Towards the east its edge rises steeply from the low levels to an average height of 7000 or 8000 feet. All the Abyssinian tributaries of the Nile flow westward, and no river breaks through the eastern wall. The highest summits

<sup>1</sup> Arabic, *Habesh*, signifying mixture or confusion, referring to the diversity of its inhabitants in race, or to their frequent turmoils. To the peoples of the surrounding lowlands the highland is known as *El-Mokádah*. Area 200,000 square miles. Population about 4,500,000.



of the plateau occur irregularly over it. The chief Alpine knot is that of the mountain of *Senyen*, round which the Takazze river, or Upper Atbara, flows in a deep ravine; and here the peak of *Ras Dasha* rises to 15,160 feet above the sea, and is always snow-capped above a height of 13,000 feet. Towards the western side of the plateau lies the beautiful lake *Tzana*, or *Dembea*, 40 miles long, the reservoir of the Blue Nile. Its surface is at an elevation of 6100 feet above the sea, and from its south-eastern corner the river, escaping by a narrow opening, curves round to south and west, ultimately to turn north-west through Senaar to the White Nile.

3. *Climate*.—Three regions of different level, climate, and character of landscape, one above another, are distinguished in the Abyssinian highland:

- (1) The *Kollas*, or lower skirt of the plateau, between elevations of 3000 to 5000 feet, with a warm climate, characterised by luxuriant vegetation of gum-yielding acacias, cotton, indigo, the ebony tree, baobabs, tamarind, sugar-cane, coffee, and bananas, and abounding in the larger wild animals of Africa.
- (2) The *Wama-Degas*, between heights of 5000 and 9000 feet, with a climate like that of Italy or Spain, in which corn and fruits thrive, everywhere capable of cultivation.
- (3) The *Degas*, the highest belt, between 9000 and 14,000 feet, with cool climate, falling to below the freezing point at the higher elevations, affording pasture to herds of oxen, goats, and long-woolled sheep, but with little forest growth, and generally meagre vegetation.

In the lower belts the rainy season lasts from April till September; on the higher plateau the rains begin in July and continue till October; and farther south a second rainy period appears in the beginning of the year.

4. *People*.—The low lying skirts of the plateau are but thinly inhabited, but the rest of the country seems to be well peopled, though we have no accurate knowledge of the number of its inhabitants. Several distinct peoples are found on the plateau. The *Abyssinians* proper show their Semitic origin and their relationship to the Arabs in their brown colour, becoming almost white in the north; in their curved noses, animated oval eyes and symmetrical figure. They are generally brave, active, and adroit. The *Agas* are the aborigines, and include the *Falashas*, who retain many Jewish characteristics, and are frequent in the northern uplands; dark *Gallas* are most numerous in the south. The *Wito* fishers, hunters of hippopotami round the Dembea lake, are a remarkable people, distinct in type of feature, and despised by the Abyssinians.

By far the larger number of people profess a debased form of Christianity, the abuna of the Abyssinian church being consecrated at Alexandria by the superior coptic patriarch: the whole country also swarms with priests and monks. The Mohammedans and Jews stand higher here than the Christians in point of morality and character; the former are the traders of the country, the latter, unlike their brethren in Europe, are for the most part agriculturists. As warfare and brigandage are rife in the plateau almost constantly, cultivation has made but little progress; the herds remain the chief wealth of the land.

5. *Government and Divisions*.—From time immemorial a king or *negus* who associates himself with the religious traditions of the country by claiming descent from Solomon, and bearing the title "king of kings" as absolute ruler over the lives and property of his subjects, has nominally ruled Abyssinia, but the history of the country, as we have seen, presents a continued series of internal and external wars—now a crusade against the Mohammedans of the plains, now an invasion from that quarter, or a rebellion of one or other of the native princes, who claims the sovereignty of the country. The three great divisions of the country are those of *Tigre* in the north, of *Amhara*

central, and of *Shoa* in the south, including within themselves many provinces, principalities, and clans. After the death of the Negus John II. in 1889, Menelek, king of Shoa, became the supreme ruler, and the same year Abyssinia was brought within the Italian "Sphere of Influence." But after their defeat at Adowa in 1896 the Italians abandoned their claim to a protectorate.

6. **Chief Towns.**—The ancient capital of Ethiopia is *Gondar*, on the slope of the mountains which descend to the fertile plain of Dembea, round the north of the lake. It is divided into a Christian and a Mohammedan quarter, and has for its most interesting feature the ruin of a magnificent towered castle or palace, built for the kings of Ethiopia by Indian architects under the direction of the early Portuguese settlers. As the ruler is generally carrying on a war with one or other rebellious prince or chief in some part of his dominions, his residence is most frequently at one or other of the many military camps throughout the country. *Adowa*, which lies on the plateau north of the Takazze at a height of 6270 feet above the sea, is the present capital of the northern division of Tigre, and is a great market-town: *Axum*, a few miles west of it, was the former capital, and possesses many interesting monuments and ruins, besides that of a cathedral built by the Portuguese.

The seat of government has been removed by the reigning king Menelik from *Ankober*, former capital of Shoa, to *Addis Abeba*, which is to be connected by rail with Jibutil.

The mountain fastness of *Magdala*, stormed by the British in 1868, rises near the south-eastern corner of the central division of the country in 11° south latitude.

7. **Trade.**—The small external trade of Abyssinia finds its way to the sea chiefly by the caravans, which go annually to the port of Massawa on the Red Sea, now in the hands of the Italians. A considerable traffic is carried on between the lowlands of the Afar country; salt from the lake beds there, formed into little uniform blocks, is carried up the steep eastern edge of the plateau to the great salt-markets of *Adigerat* and *Sokota*, and these blocks pass as a money currency all over the country. The chief outlet route on the north-west, towards Senaar, is that which passes down from Gondar to the district of Galabat, between the Blue Nile and the Atbara, which formerly belonged to the Abyssinians. Its capital, *Metemmeh*, is in all respects an Abyssinian town, and is the great market for the wax, coffee, cotton, gums, and hides of western Abyssinia.

## SUDAN.

1. The name *Beled-es-Sudan* = "land of the blacks," was early applied by the Arab geographers<sup>1</sup> to designate generally the countries of negro-land beyond the southern borders of the great Sahara. It is now understood to embrace all the vast regions of northern central Africa south of the 15th or 16th parallel of latitude, reaching from the Atlantic coasts eastward to the Nile valley, and south to about the 5th parallel. Before the middle of the eighteenth century little was known of the interior; but since then the country has been traversed in almost every direction, and several explorers have crossed the region of the water-partings between the Nile, Chad, Congo, and Niger-Benue basins.

<sup>1</sup> Ibn-Haukál uses this term in 943.

2. **Physical Features.** -The great natural features of the Sudan with which we are acquainted are the mountains of *Futa Jallon* in the west, from which the *Senegal* and the *Gambia* rivers descend to the Atlantic, and on the inner side of which the *Joliba* or *Niger* takes its rise; the ranges forming the edge of the plateau within the line of the coast of Upper Guinea; the valley of the *Niger*, enclosing the groups of the *Hombori* mountains within its northern bend; its tributary the *Binnue*, from the east; the volcanic *Cameroons* peaks at the head of the Gulf of Guinea, and Mounts *Atlantika* and *Mendaf* farther inland. Then the remarkable basin of *Lake Chad*, receiving the *Shari* river from the south, and the group of the *Marrah Mountains* in Dar Fur, descending eastward to the broad valley of the Nile.

3. **Climate and Landscape.** -The whole of this great belt is characterised by tropical heat, but this is accompanied by an abundant supply of moisture, and the vegetation thus called up over it tends to reduce the daily variations of temperature. The tropical rains have nearly the same period over the whole of its extent, beginning in June or July, when the sun in its apparent movement northward has heated the land and drawn in the sea-winds laden with moisture to water it, and to fill out the rivers and lakes; and the rains cease soon after the sun has passed on its way south again in September or October. But their amount and duration decrease in regular gradation from the coasts of the Gulf of Guinea inland, becoming less and less, till, at about the 15th parallel, they occur only in scanty showers, and the aspect of the land gradually merges into that of the bare desert.

In place of waterless desert with dried-up river beds and scanty vegetation, and wide uninhabitable wastes, the Sudan presents a picture of diversified, well-peopled, fertile, and cultivated lands, and varied plant and animal life, with many populous and settled nations and countries, and European colonies, some of which have reached a certain degree of civilisation and progress in the arts.

## WEST SUDAN.

1. Since about 1880 nearly the whole of this region, formerly vaguely known as *Senegambia*, has been brought under French rule. As reorganised in 1904, *French West Africa*, the official designation, comprises the five divisions of *Senegal*, *Senegambia and Niger* (including *Timbuktu*, occupied in 1894), *French Guinea*, *Ivory Coast*, and *Dahomey*, each under a Lieutenant-Governor responsible to the Governor-General resident at the capital, *Dakar*; former capital *St. Louis*; total area 660,000 square miles; population (1905) 13,310,000. All the native sultans and chiefs have been either deposed or reduced to submission, and the vast colony consolidated by the *Senegal-Niger* railway (350 miles long), which was completed in 1904 from *Kayes* to *Koulikoro* on the upper *Niger*, whence river steamers continue the service to *Timbuktu*. This famous city, till lately inaccessible to Europeans, can now be reached by rail and steamer all the way from Europe. The Senegambian coast streams, *Rio Nunez*, *Rio Pongo*, *Cazamansa*, and *Melacoree*, with the *Fulah* district of *Futa Jallon*, are all now comprised in French territory, which borders south on *Sierra Leone* and *Liberia*, and north on the *Algerian Sahara*.

2. The Portuguese have ceded to France most of the coast-lands lying between 10° 40' and 12° 20' N., including the rivers *Cacheo*, *Geba*, and *Grande*, and the territories now (1896) in their possession are very small. *Bissao*, on an island at the mouth of the *Geba* river, is their capital. Included

within their dominions is the Bissagos Archipelago, with *Bulama* island, close to the mainland.

3. The greater part of the Gambia river, which is navigable for 300 miles up from the sea, is in the hands of the British, who have the important little colony of *Bathurst* at the mouth of the river, and several stations higher up. *Sierra Leone*, the "lion hill," three days' voyage south of the Gambia, forms part of the same colony. The peninsula rises up to hills of 2500 feet in elevation, covered with rich tropical vegetation, and the capital of the colony, named *Freetown*, is on its slope. First founded in 1787 as a civilising settlement by English philanthropists, *Sierra Leone* became a refuge for slaves captured by our vessels along the coast, and the descendants of these freed negroes form the bulk of its population. *Sherboro* island, 50 miles south of *Sierra Leone*, and the coast as far as *Liberia*, also form part of the British colony. Area 30,000 square miles; population (1901, estimated) 1,000,000.

4. The inhabitants of all this region of Senegambia, excepting the Europeans of *Sierra Leone* peninsula and the few traders who live in the towns and "factories," as the trading stations are called, are native negro tribes, chiefly those named the *Mandingos* and *Jollofs*, all black and well-formed people. Here also are found representatives of the remarkable people called variously the *Fulah* or *Fellatah*, a much more advanced family, differing from the true negro in their red-brown colour, their finer features, slim figures, and less woolly hair, whom we shall afterwards meet with farther inland. They are the zealous propagators of Mohammedanism in the Sudan.

5. The trade of the Senegal is chiefly in the gums yielded by the acacia forests which cover the country north of the river; farther south the foreign factories are the depôts of palm-oil, from which the greater part of our soap is made at home, and of ground nuts, hides, and wax, which the interior lands give abundantly, and which are sent down the rivers to the coast. Ginger, pepper, arrowroot, coffee, rice, and many other valuable tropical products, are also capable of cultivation here; and cotton can be sent home in large quantities from Senegambia whenever its price is high elsewhere.

## LIBERIA.

6. Going south along the coast we come to the negro Republic of *Liberia*, which was founded in 1822 by an American philanthropic society, as a settlement for liberated slaves. It reaches for nearly 400 miles along the Grain Coast (named from the grains of the *Meleguetta* pepper, which it yields abundantly), and inland to the mountain edge of the plateau.

7. Here the climate is dangerous to Europeans, though not unfavourable to the indigenous negro population. Of all the many plants which cover it with luxuriant vegetation, the oil-palm is the most valuable, and its bunches of red and yellow fruit often have a thousand oil-yielding plums in each, the bunch weighing in some cases half a hundredweight; dye woods, ebony, the copal, and other gum trees, besides coffee, sugar, and cacao, also flourish here, and iron and copper are not wanting. The woods abound in apes and lizards, though the larger wild animals are now rarely met with. The civilised negroes of the Republic number (1901) 12,000; the uncivilised about 2,120,000. The aboriginal people of that part of *Liberia* which lies on each



side of Cape Palmas are the robust *Krooa*, who have been introduced as labourers in all parts of the West African coast, and who are employed as sailors on every vessel trading along these coasts, where labour in the tropical sun is too severe for a white crew.

*Monrovia*, the capital and seat of government of the legislative assembly (population, 1905, 8000), is situated on the rising ground of the coast, within the shelter of Cape Mesurado, which forms a breakwater against the incessant roll of the high surf from the Atlantic. It resembles a small town of the southern States of North America. Its trade is carried on chiefly with England, Holland, Hamburg, and the United States.

### UPPER GUINEA.

8. Beyond Liberia follow the *Ivory Coast*, now occupied by France; the *Gold Coast*, entirely in the hands of the English since the deposition of Prempeh, King of Ashantee (1896); and the *Slave Coast* which is divided between the Germans (Togoland), the French (Dahomey, reduced in 1895), and the English (Lagos and Yorubaland).

The Gold Coast consists of the flat seaboard on which a roaring surf continually breaks, reaching east and west for about 300 miles, bounded landward by hills covered with primeval forest. It is rich in the oil-palm and oil-yielding ground nut, but the climate is exceedingly dangerous to Europeans. All attempts to introduce cattle and horses have failed, owing to the presence of the poisonous *tsetse fly*. The natives here are of various negro tribes, among whom the *Fantis* are prominent.

The chief British stations are *Accra* and *Cape Coast Castle*, named from its great church-like fort on the water's edge beside the filthy native town, above which the European residences peep out from among the woods. *Elmina*, "the mine," about midway in the length of the coast, was the earliest European settlement here, and is still one of the largest towns. It was founded by the Portuguese before the discovery of America in 1481, was taken from them by the Dutch, and ultimately passed with the other possessions of Holland on this coast, by purchase, to Britain in 1873.

9. Behind the Gold Coast lies the country of the warlike negro people called the Ashantees, whose country has been annexed by the English. Their king resided at *Comassie*, a large city, destroyed by the British in the expedition of 1872, and permanently occupied in 1896.

The river *Volta*, the most important after the Niger on this part of the African coast-land, forms the western limit of the Ashantee country, but both of its banks near its mouth are embraced in the colony of the Gold Coast. It appears to be navigable for 200 miles upward, and will doubtless become an important highway of trade.

10. East of the Volta we come to the small German territory of *Togo*, and farther up to *Papa*, a French settlement, and *Whydah*, the port of the negro kingdom of *Dahomey*, formerly notorious for its sanguinary rites, but a French protectorate since 1895. Its capital is *Abomey*, a walled town, 70 miles inland.

A little farther on is the town of *Lagos*, belonging to Britain; it is the most considerable seaport of the Yoruba country and of all this part of West Africa, in regular communication with Liverpool by steamers, which carry home cargoes of palm-oil and cotton, of which there is an unfailing supply.

11. Next we reach the dead levels of the Niger delta, the twenty-two chief channels of which are separated by mangrove-covered swamps. The navigation

of the Niger, the establishment of which cost many lives from fevers, and attacks by the natives on its banks, is now regularly carried on by six or seven steamers of light draught, which ascend from the Atlantic to the factories at the confluence of the Binue, and even higher up the main river and the Binue, exchanging European goods for ivory, palm-oil, and “shea” butter, derived from the olive-like seeds of a tree of the genus *Bassia*. These vessels, however, require to be well armed. The town of *Abo*, at the head of the Delta, is in the very centre of the oil region; *Onitsha* and *Iddah* are important native towns higher up the river, and opposite that of *Igbegbe*, at the mouth of the Binue, stands *Lukoja*, which was for seven years the place of residence of a British consul (1857 onward), and which since 1865 has been an important mission station, under the management of the negro Bishop Crowther. *Lukoja* is also the great depot and trading store of the British Niger Company, who are charged with the government of the river. The large Mohammedan town of *Egga*, a day’s steaming higher up than *Lukoja*, in the Fulah kingdom of *Gando*, is the present limit of the European trade on the Niger. Beyond the Niger delta are the estuaries of the *Old Calabar* and *Cameroons* rivers. These have been called the “oil rivers” of West Africa, from the enormous supply brought down them to the coast. Here European goods are bartered for the oil, which is stored ready for shipment in sheds on the shore. The oil rivers are now comprised with *Lagos* in the British territory of *Southern Nigeria* (see p. 91) as far as the German *Cameroons* (*Kamerun*).

INLAND COUNTRIES OF THE SUDAN.<sup>1</sup>

12. The most westerly of the interior countries of the Sudan is the well-peopled hilly land in which the Senegal and Gambia, and many other of the rivers which flow down through Senegambia, take their rise. This is named *Futa-Jallon*; it has *Timbo* for its chief town and is the centre of Mohammedanism in this region. Inland from Liberia and Sierra Leone French Sudan extends all the way to the Niger and Timbuktu. It comprises the former kingdom of *Bambarra*, first made known by the traveller Mungo Park; its capital, named *Sego*, is a great square town surrounded by walls, with two-storied flat-roofed houses, situated on the bank of the river. A little lower down is the great trading town of *Sansandig*, whither European goods are brought by caravans all the way across the great desert from Morocco.

Across all the central basin of the Niger, and far eastward beyond its tributary the Binue, into the unknown region of Central Africa, extend the Haussa states conquered by the Fulahs in the nineteenth century, and now comprised in British Northern Nigeria (see p. 91). The most westerly of these great states was that of *Massina*, extending across the Niger below the kingdom of *Bambarra*, including the great towns of *Banjagara*, its capital, *Jenne*, and *Yowaru*, all near the great river. Both *Massina* and *Bambarra*, together with Timbuktu, now form part of French Sudan.

	English sq. miles.	Pop. (est.)
<sup>1</sup> <i>Massina</i> } now in French territory . . . . .	{ 64,400	4,500,000
<i>Gando</i> }	{ 78,500	5,500,000
<i>Sokoto</i> with <i>Adamawa</i> —British and German . . . . .	178,200	12,570,000
<i>Bornu</i> with <i>Kanem</i> —British and French . . . . .	79,200	5,100,000
<i>Baghirmi</i> } French . . . . .	{ 70,800	1,500,000
<i>Wadai</i> }	{ 171,000	2,600,000
	<u>642,100</u>	<u>31,770,000</u>



Beyond Massina the state of *Gando* reached along the river to the confluence of the Binue, with many large trading towns on the Niger, such as *Rabba* and *Egga*; and the capital city of *Gando* on an eastern tributary. *Gando* is now mainly comprised in French territory. East of *Gando* stretched the paramount state of *Sokoto*, with its capital of the same name, reaching over an extent about equal to that of the British Isles. Since 1902 *Sokoto* forms part of British Northern Nigeria (see p. 91). To it belonged the emirship of *Adamawa* (*Fumbina*), which lies south of the Binue and is now German territory. It is a little-known region which extends from the Kamerun north-eastwards nearly to Lake Chad, and is mostly inhabited by heathen wild tribes.

In the basin of Lake Chad lie the kingdoms of *Bornu* and *Baghirmi*. The former is described as a lovely and fruitful land, presenting a remarkable example of negro civilisation, possessing a well organised administration, a court and government, with all its dignities and offices. Its dominant inhabitants are the Kanuri, and Mohammedanism has long been adopted. The whole policy of the state was, however, based on slavery, and the traffic in human beings flourished vigorously. *Kuka*, the capital of *Bornu*, near the western shore of the Chad, is one of the greatest markets of all central Africa, second only to that of *Kano* in *Sokoto*, and morning and evening its streets are so crowded with cattle, camels, sheep, and poultry, as scarcely to leave room for the bustling population. Immediately outside the gates a great horse auction is held, for the horses of *Bornu* are famed throughout all the Sudan.

In the general distribution of these Chad states most of *Bornu* fell to England, and is now included in Northern Nigeria. Parts of *Bornu* and *Baghirmi* were assigned to Germany, and the rest of *Baghirmi* with the whole of *Kanem* to France, while the hitherto independent Sultan of *Wadai* accepted the French protectorate in 1903. The rude people of *Wadai* are far behind those of *Bornu* in arts and industries, and their present Sultan rules at his capital of *Abeshr* with relentless severity.

*Dar Fur* and *Kordofan*, in the Eastern Sudan, formerly formed part of the Egyptian dominion; since the overthrow of the Mahdists in 1898 they are included in the territory of Anglo-Egyptian Sudan.

## LOWER GUINEA.

1. By Lower Guinea is generally understood the maritime coast-land of West Africa, extending for about 1500 miles in a north to south direction, from the head of the Bight of Biafra to Cape Frio.

At the northern part of this coast, out from the high peaks of the Cameroons, which stand on a peninsula of the mainland, are four volcanic islands in line. The largest of these, *Fernando Po*, belonging to Spain, rising to a height of 10,190 feet in its perfectly conical summit, is wooded all over, so that its harbour of *Clarence Cove* is one of the most picturesque points in West Africa. It used to be a place of banishment for political offenders from Spain, but it is mainly inhabited by the tribe of the *Aniyo*, or "Boobies," as they are called by sailors. *Prince's Island*, also compared to a volcanic garden, and *St. Thomas* beyond it, with its lofty peak rising to 7005 feet above the sea, belong to Portugal; but the rugged little island of *Annobon*, the last of the chain, is a Spanish possession.

2. The district around the Cameroons peak was occupied in the year 1885

by Germany, and near the equator, on the coast of Lower Guinea, the Spaniards have small possessions in the beautiful *Corisco Bay* and on the adjoining promontory of *San Juan*; the French hold the inlet of the Gaboon, and the whole of the coast as far as Kabinda, and a vast inland region, comprehending the whole of the basin of the Ogowe and the right bank of the Congo from above Manyanga to the equator, has been conceded to them by the Berlin Conference. *Franceville*, where the Ogowe ceases to be navigable, and *Brazzaville* on Stanley Pool, are the two chief French stations in the interior. Here the dominant tribe are the Negroid Fans, pronounced cannibals, though skilled craftsmen. The whole of this region, now officially called *French Congo*, extends across the Congo-Chad water-parting to Baghirmi and Kanem, with total area 680,000 square miles and estimated population 10,000,000.

3. Beyond the low mangrove-covered coasts above the Ogowe delta, we reach a hilly thickly-wooded shore of *Loango*, in which oil-palms, gum-trees, copper, ivory, coffee, and cotton, besides mandioca and bananas, are in great abundance.

4. The great barrier of the wide and rapid river Congo or Zaire forms a marked line of division across West Africa, and the coast-lands south of it contrast strongly with those on the north side. In place of the lagoons and mangrove-covered swamps, backed by dense evergreen humid forest, which we have left to the northward, level sandy bays appear along the shores south of the great river, and the forest vegetation retreats away from the coast, so that only long stretches of coarse grass, with here and there a tall cactus-like euphorbia, or a gigantic solitary baobab, are seen from the ocean.

Behind the coast plain, however, the land rises in terraces, each of which is accompanied by a marked change of vegetation, from larger shady trees and broad-leaved grasses on the first, to the second in which creepers monopolise the vegetation, clasping round the biggest trees with a mass of foliage and flower, up to the third, where great plains are covered with gigantic grasses. Each of these succeeding changes of level also corresponds to a change of climate, from the hot dry coast-land up to the cooler and moister air of the interior. To the Congo State, presided over by the King of the Belgians, has been assigned the right bank of the Congo as high up as Manyanga, the left bank above Noki, and a vast territory in the interior. *Banana*, *Boma*, and *Vivi*, are the chief stations below the Yelala Falls. Higher up the whole of the river, as far as the Stanley Falls, is now dotted with stations, the principal being *Leopoldville* on Stanley Pool, at the head of the rapids, past which Mr. Stanley built his famous "road." This is now partly superseded by a railway 250 miles long connecting *Matadi* with Stanley Pool. Other lines with a total length of 900 miles are now (1908) in progress in the interior, while over thirty steamers ply on the inland waters. For other details of the Congo Free State see p. 90.

5. Formerly all the country for a great distance south of the river was subject to the king of Congo, from whose dominion the river is named; his capital of *Ambassi* became the centre from which the early Jesuit missionaries spread cultivation and industry far and wide. Here they built the cathedral and monasteries of San Salvador, the ruins of which still exist, and by their influence gained great power and extent of territory for the king of Congo. On their expulsion, however, the kingdom gradually dwindled down, till its territory now includes little more than the neighbourhood of the capital.

#### PORTUGUESE WEST AFRICA.

6. The Portuguese have been recognised by the Berlin Conference in the possession of the district of Kabinda to the north of the

Congo, and of all the maritime country to the south of that river as far as the Cunene in  $17^{\circ} 40' S$ .

Portuguese West Africa is termed the *Province of Angola*, and is divided from north to south into the five districts of *Kabinda*, *Ambriz*, *Loanda*, *Benguela*, and *Mossamedes*, each corresponding to its chief town of the same name.

These are again subdivided into districts under military governors, the whole being under command of a governor-general, who resides at *Loanda*. The development of the resources of this splendid country has hitherto been checked owing to an inefficient and in some instances corrupt system of administration. Of late, however, some activity has been shown, and a railway runs for some miles inland (see p. 90).

7. **People.**—The natives of the whole of the country are Bantu, and the Bunda, in Angola proper, retain some part of the education which they received from the zealous missionaries of former times. Many of them can read and write fairly in Portuguese, but south of the Coanza river a number of distinct languages and tribes, some warlike and savage, others undersized and miserable creatures, live in a barbarous condition as nomadic hunters and cattle-owners, armed with "assegaïs" or spears, and knob-sticks.

8. **Products.**—Since the cessation of the slave trade, which was the great traffic of this coast in former times, the exports of ivory brought down by the slave gangs from the interior has also decreased, but the ground nut is now largely cultivated for its oil product; coffee grows wild; cotton is cultivated in patches all over the land; gum copal is abundant; and palm oil is brought down the Coanza river in considerable quantity. Iron has been smelted from time immemorial in the district of *Cazengo*, a little north of the Coanza, and copper and gold appear in small quantity in many parts. The elephant has disappeared from the maritime region, but other game abounds.

9. **Chief Towns.**—*St. Paul de Loanda*, the capital of the colony, on a fine bay, is mainly a European town, with large houses roofed with tiles, and with open verandahs to admit the cool sea breeze. *Benguela*, formerly one of the great slave ports whence thousands were sent to Brazil and Cuba, is also a large place on the coast; *Mossamedes*, farthest south, is a pretty town of stone houses, commanded by a fort; but *Ambriz*, the northern port, is a ruinous and neglected place.

The inland frontier of the Portuguese territory, formerly reaching only to *Malanje*, about 250 miles inland, is now conterminous with the Free State, and includes the old state of *Lunda*, the king of which bore the title of *Muata Yamvo*. See also p. 90.

## EASTERN AFRICA.

### SOMAL AND GALLA.

1. Two great branches of the African peoples occupy a large portion of eastern Africa, south and eastward of Abyssinia. These are the Somal and the Galla, peoples as closely related to one another in their Hamitic origin as they are inimically disposed towards each other. Both are very distinct from the negroes.

2. The *Somal* country may be described as the great eastern Horn of Africa, which terminates at Cape Guardafui, its inner boundary being marked

by a line drawn from the head of the Gulf of Tadjurra southward by the eastern side of Harar to meet the Jub river, which forms the natural, though no longer the actual, boundary of the Somal and Galla countries in the south. The northern coast of Somal land, including the ports of *Zeila*, *Bulhar*, and *Berbera*, has passed under British rule, whilst Italy has declared a "protectorate" over the eastern coast and the whole of the interior north of the Jub, with *Obbia* for its centre.

3. Since the partition most of the Somal country has been crossed by Europeans. The greater part along its northern coast forms a table-land, which falls by steep edges to the Gulf of Aden, now approaching the coast in rugged cliffs, now retreating and leaving a wider maritime plain. Inland, the plateau reaches away south in vast grassy prairies, where gazelles, zebras, and antelopes roam about in vast herds, and where the ostrich, giraffe, and elephant are also abundant. The central country of Somal land, named *Ogaden*, is famed all over the coast as a grazing land, in which there are great herds of camels, ponies, cows, and fat-tailed sheep. Gums and myrrh especially, with frankincense and aloes, appear to be very abundant over all this region. The *Webi Shabéela*, which loses itself in a swamp not far from the mouth of the Jub, borders *Ogaden* on the west. For political divisions see p. 380.

4. The Somal of the present day are not so purely a Hamitic people as the Galla, for the Arab migrations into their land, which began about the thirteenth century, and continued during several centuries later, have left a strong impress. Their language is thus a mixture of the Arabic and Galla tongues, the latter predominating, and the Somal have become fanatical Mohammedans. Tall, slight, and agile, and slightly darker than Arabs, their lips and noses are almost Grecian, but their hair is woolly like a negro's. Their tribes are very numerous.

5. The immense country of the *Galla* reaches from the south of Abyssinia (latitude  $10^{\circ}$  N.) to  $3^{\circ}$  or  $4^{\circ}$  south of the equator in the maritime region of East Africa, or for a distance of 900 miles from north to south. On the east it is conterminous with Somal land, and southwards it reaches as far as Lake Rudolf, discovered in 1888 by Count Teleki, and perhaps even beyond, in a north-westerly direction. Their country remains for the most part unexplored, but appears to form a plateau of moderate elevation, with isolated mountain-groups dotted over it, and affording ample pasturage to cattle, camels, and horses.

6. The Galla are a fine tall and well-formed race, with lively eyes and deep brown complexion, but appear to differ very considerably in their characteristics in different parts of the great region they occupy. Those who live in the southern borders of Abyssinia are brave warriors and intelligent traders. Some are Mohammedans, some profess the Christianity of Abyssinia, but all the southern Galla are heathen.

7. South-west of the Galla the wide plateau country which stretches between the snowy mountains of Kenia and Kilima-njaro and the eastern borders of the Victoria Nyanza is occupied by the kindred Negroid tribes of the *Masai*, *Turkana*, and other warlike Hamitic nomads, who were formerly much dreaded as fierce marauders. Politically the north Somal coast-lands now form a British Protectorate, while the whole of Gallaland is now comprised in the empire of Abyssinia.

#### BRITISH AND GERMAN EAST AFRICA.

8. The long intercourse and residence of Arab colonists all along the eastern coast, from the Jub river southward for nearly

a thousand miles to Cape Delgado, has given rise to a mixed race of people inhabiting this maritime belt, called the *Swahili*, who speak a Bantu language with a strong intermixture of Arabic. They have also become zealous Mohammedans, and as they are the great traders of eastern Africa, their language has spread far and wide in the interior. Their domain corresponds roughly to the Sultanate of Zanzibar, which since 1885 has been distributed between Germany, England, and Italy. In 1890 the Sultan accepted the British protectorate for the remnant of his possessions, the two islands of Zanzibar and Pemba.

9. Zanzibar, which has an area of 625 square miles, lies from 30 to 40 miles from the mainland.

The land rises in the interior to about 400 feet, and is very fertile throughout, its country houses, the seats of the dominant Arabs, appearing between groves of coco-palms and mangos, the fields being covered with crops of rice and sugar cane, or manioc and millet. The people here, numbering from 200,000 to 250,000, are the Arab owners of the soil, many half caste, Comoro islanders, and natives of India (chiefly Banyans or Indian merchants), and Lascar seamen and Negroes. The climate is exceedingly hot, averaging from 70° to 90°. In December, January, and February, the north east monsoon brings dry weather: during the rest of the year the winds are from south east chiefly, and March, April, and May are the months of the heaviest rains. The white houses of Zanzibar town, on the western side of the island, facing the continent, have a fine appearance from the sea, but the town has narrow and dirty streets. It is the staple place of trade on the east African coast, and carries on a busy commerce in ivory, cloves, pepper, hides, and cotton goods; formerly it was also a great slave mart.

10. On the mainland of Africa the dominion of the Sultan of Zanzibar never extended to any considerable distance into the interior, and even on the coast belt, towards the Somal and Galla lands in the north, his power was practically confined to the neighbourhood of the places garrisoned by Arab troops.

The most northerly settlement which acknowledged his rule is *Warsheikh* on the Somal coast. Farther south follow *Mogadishu*, *Merka*, and *Brava*, all now included in the Italian sphere of influence, which reaches south to the Jub river at the equator. Here it is continuous with the *British East African territory*, which stretches south to Wanga and inland to the Ruwenzori Mountains. All the rest of the coast land south to the Rovuma river and inland to Lakes Victoria, Tanganyika, and Nyassa is comprised in German East Africa. South of the Tana river lies the historical Arab settlement of *Melinde*, where Vasco da Gama landed in 1498.

*Mombasa*, on an islet farther south, is the most important town on the Swahili coast, and the chief seaward outlet of the British East African possessions, which comprise the two divisions of the *East Africa* and the *Uganda Protectorates*, with total area 400,000 square miles and population (estimated, 1906) 8,000,000. Since 1906 Mombasa is connected by the Uganda railway (584 miles long) with Lake Victoria at Kisumu (Port Florence).



The first place along the "German" coast is *Tanga*; then follows *Pangani*, at the mouth of the Rufu, a starting-point of caravans for the interior. *Saadani*, and especially *Bagamoyo*, opposite the island of Zanzibar, have become historically noted as the points from which the earliest explorers of the lake region of East Africa set out on their inland travels. At *Dar-es-Salaam*, farther south, the Sultan of Zanzibar had extensive coco-nut and maize plantations, and here the oil-palm has been successfully introduced. Gum-copal is also abundant in this neighbourhood, and india-rubber yielded by a species of vine has become an important article of trade.

Beyond Dar-es-Salaam we reach the delta of the *Lufji* river. The two *Kilwas* (Kivinja and Kisiwani), the termini of main routes to the Nyassa, are the most important coast-towns in the south of German territory. Both were formerly notorious in the slave traffic of East Africa, which has all but depopulated an extensive region of the country behind these former seats of export. *Lindi* and *Mikindani Bays*, north of the mouth of the Rovuma, are also important starting-points for the Nyassa country. At the village of *Tungwe*, immediately south of Cape Delgado, German East Africa touches the possessions of Portugal.

11. In all Eastern and Central Africa south of the Sudan, the Somal and Galla countries, the place of the camel of the Sahara or of the ox-waggon of the Cape Colony is taken by porters or *pagazi*, who march along in Indian file, carrying on their heads the bales of cloth or of beads which serve as the medium of exchange for ivory and other inland products that are brought back to the coast. Total area of German East Africa, 384,000 square miles; population (estimated, 1906), 7,000,000. A railway runs from Tango to Mombo (82 miles), and another from Dar-es-Salaam to Kingani (50 miles).

The most frequented of the many caravan routes to the interior are those which lead in several parallel lines from the coast-towns of Bagamoyo and Saadani, opposite the island of Zanzibar, up through the countries of Usagara and the dry plains of Ugogo, to converge at the Arab settlement of *Tabora* (*Unyanyembe*) in Unyamwezi, at a distance of nearly 500 miles from the coast. From Tabora several routes lead northward to the countries of Karagwe and Uganda, surrounding the great Victoria Nyanza; but the main line passes on westward to the Arab station of *Kawele*, in the country of Ujiji, on the shores of Lake Tanganyika. Ferrying across the wide lake, the Arabs have extended their trade routes still farther west into the central country of Manyuema, and have an important trading station at *Nyangwe*, on the great Lualaba or Congo river, in the heart of Africa, fully a thousand miles west of Zanzibar.

#### PORTUGUESE EAST AFRICA.

12. All the coast-land of South-east Africa, from near Cape Delgado for 1400 miles southward to Delagoa Bay, is claimed by the Portuguese, but the points actually occupied by them are few and isolated, and their Government and trading relations are even in a more backward condition than on the west coast. The possession, formerly named the *Province of Mozambique*, and placed under a governor appointed by the Crown of Portugal, is divided



into the three districts of *Mozambique*, *Zambezia*, and *Lourenço Marquez*.

13. These new administrative divisions correspond to the former nine districts, which we may follow in order from north to south :

(1) The first is that named from *Cape Delgado*, which includes the long coast chain of the twenty-eight Querimba islands south of it, only four of which are inhabited. One of them contains *Ibo*, the small capital town of the district, opposite which a trade route leads into the interior.

(2) Next comes the district of *Mozambique* proper. The capital of the province stands on a small coral islet close to the mainland, in front of a fine bay, and its white houses form narrow streets. An old convent serves as the Government house, but the Portuguese here are very few, and chiefly convicts. Indian Banyans or merchants carry on most of the trade in vessels manned by Arab seamen. At *Messuri*, at the head of the bay, a great fair is held in autumn, to which the Yao negroes of the interior come in caravans of about 3000 men, bringing ivory, gum-copal, and hides, to exchange for manufactured goods.

(3) The third district is that of *Angosha* or *Angosa*, and includes the chain of islands of that name along the coast, as well as the *Primeira chain*.

(4) The more important district of *Quilimane* reaches south to the Luabo or chief mouth of the Zambezi, and extends inland to its tributary the Shiré river. *Quilimane*, the capital of this district, lies twelve miles from the sea, on what may be called the most northerly delta branch of the Zambezi, though the channel connecting this branch with the river is now dry and choked with vegetation at most times of the year. A few traders in ground nuts and wax, and in ivory when it can be had, have factories here.

(5) The fifth district is that of *Sena*, extending across the Lower Zambezi, round the ruinous village of this name, which lies on the southern bank of the river, about 120 miles from its mouth. It is now a ruinous place, having frequently been attacked by the Landeens or Zulus of the country southward of the river, and is quite neglected by the Portuguese authorities.

(6) The district round *Fete*, 260 miles up stream, formerly exported grain, coffee, sugar, oil, indigo, besides gold-dust and ivory ; but the lucrative slave-trade took the place of agriculture and mining, and the natives of the surrounding country were captured and sent down the river in such numbers that the Portuguese found they had no hands left to labour or to fight for them, and were obliged to abandon the settlement. The station, however, has again been occupied.

(7) The district of *Sofala*, extending along the coast south of the delta of the Zambezi round the bay of that name, was renowned in ancient times for its wealth of gold and ivory, and the gold fields of *Manica*, which lie about 130 miles north-west of the port of *Sofala*, were at one time worked on a large scale by the Portuguese, but have now been handed over to the *Mozambique Chartered Company*, who control the mining operations.

(8) Next we come to *Inhamitanga*, the chief town and port of the eighth district, which is a more considerable place, carrying on an important trade in the usual products. A large church and a mosque are prominent in the buildings of the town, which lies at the head of a deep bay, environed by coco-palms. Here the Portuguese authority, long restricted to the immediate neighbourhood by the Zulus of *Gasaland*, has been extended to the interior since the defeat and capture of their king, Gungunyana, in the year 1895.

(9) Lastly, in the south we reach the district surrounding *Delagoa Bay*,

with its capital of *Lourenzo Marquez*. For some years the possession of the bay was in dispute between England and Portugal, for though it is unhealthy its spacious harbour seems to form the natural outlet of the Transvaal region. In 1875 the question was submitted to the President of the French Republic for arbitration, and it was decided in favour of Portugal that the southern limit of their territory is the line of  $26^{\circ} 30'$  S. lat., and the Usutu or Maputa River, and that it extends about twenty-five miles inland to the Lobombo range. This bay is now connected by a railway 347 miles long with the goldfields and the capital of Transvaal.

14. East of the Portuguese East African coast-land lies the great Lake Nyassa, which was discovered by Dr. Livingstone in 1859. On a promontory of its southern shores the mission station of *Livingstonia* was established in 1876, and the first steam vessel launched on its waters.

A second mission station named *Blantyre* has since been founded in the hilly country south of the lake, between the Shiré River and the enclosed basin of Lake Shirwa. More recently still (1878) a company of merchants of Glasgow has placed a trading steamer on the Lower Zambezi to keep up communications between the coast and the cataracts of the Shiré, past which a road has been constructed to the navigable portion of the upper river. Another road, constructed at the expense of Mr. Stevenson, connects the head of Nyassa with Tanganyika, and a railway now runs from *Beira* on the coast through Salisbury to Bulawayo in Southern Rhodesia. Another line, 110 miles long, was opened in 1908 from *Port Herald* above the Shiré Falls to *Chiromo*, where it crosses the river and then runs up the Ruo to its present terminus at Blantyre. The whole of the Nyassa region forms since 1893 the territory of *British East Central Africa*, which in 1907 was officially renamed the *British Nyassaland Protectorate*.

## SOUTH AFRICA.<sup>1</sup>

1. In South Africa the British are dominant. From the limits of the former Dutch colony round the Cape of Good Hope in the south-western corner of the continent, their influence has been gradually spreading northward, till at the present time it may be said that, excluding the German and Portuguese territories, all the land from the Cape to Lake Tanganyika acknowledges the British authority.

Notwithstanding this, however, Germany has been permitted

	English sq. miles.	Pop. (1901).
<sup>1</sup> Cape Colony (with Transkei, Kafraria, West Griqualand, South Bechuanaland, and Pondoland) .	283,400	1,730,000
Basuto Land . . . . .	10,290	220,000
North Bechuana Land (Protectorate) . . . . .	200,000	300,000
Matabili and Mashonaland (Southern Rhodesia) .	144,000	540,000
Natal	42,000	1,093,000
Zulu, Swazi, and Tonga Lands } . . . . .		
Transvaal . . . . .	112,600	1,030,000
Orange Free State . . . . .	41,500	243,000
Nama and Damara Lands (German South-West Africa) . . . . .	322,000	200,000
South Africa . . . . .	<u>1,155,790</u>	<u>5,356,000</u>

to take possession of Damara and Namaqua Lands, only Walvisch Bay and a few guano islands remaining with England. On the other hand, the two formerly independent Boer republics—Transvaal and Orange River Free State—have become British territory since the South African war of 1899-1902.

#### CAPE COLONY.

2. The Cape Colony occupies the extremity of the continent, from the Orange River west and south to the Atlantic and Indian Oceans, its landward frontier on the eastern side being marked by the Kei river and the crest of the Drakenberg mountains. It extends over an area nearly four times as large as that of England.

3. **Physical Features.**—The surface of the country generally is high. From the seaboard to the interior it rises step by step in a series of well-defined terraces and mountain edges, which run in an east to west direction, or parallel to the coast and to each other. The outer or maritime ranges have many names in their different parts, the most prominent of which perhaps are those called the *Langebergen* and *Oudeniqua* mountains, next the sea in the south, and the *Zwartebbergen* farther inland. These outer slopes are the most habitable parts of the colony, and are occupied by villages, corn farms, and vineyards, orchards, and tobacco plantations. Beyond the *Zwartebbergen* lie wide undulating plains called the *Great Karroo*. Throughout this tract, for a distance of nearly 200 miles, farms are few, for water is scarce, and the water channels which furrow its surface are dry excepting after thunder-storms, or furnish only a few brackish pools. The land here is treeless; in some parts stunted bushes are thinly scattered, and at most times of the year the prospect is arid and dreary. Yet after rain, as if by enchantment, the whole plain is covered with a lovely green vegetation, with flowers of every hue. This part of the colony is divided into great sheep "runs," and is the main wool-yielding area.

On the inner border of the Karroo the *Roggeveld* and *Nieuweveld* mountains present a bold escarpment of flat-topped hills, and reach east to join the *Sneeubergen*, in which Compassberg, the highest summit of the Cape Colony, reaches a height of about 7800 feet; beyond this the heights unite with the great escarpment of the *Drakenbergen*, which faces the Indian Ocean. The line of heights just traced forms the central water-parting of the Cape Colony; southward the water channels drain from it to the Atlantic and Indian Oceans, passing the outer ranges of mountains by rugged deep-cut gorges called "kloofs." Towards the north the periodical streams find their way in deeply sunk channels across the dry plains of Bushmanland to join the Orange river. The south-western peninsula of the colony, which terminates in the famous Cape of Good Hope, is one of the most remarkable features of this region, for within it the massive walls of *Table Mountain* rise to a height of 3582 feet, and nowhere else in the colony is there a landscape combining such grand mountain and woodland scenery.

In general the streams of the Cape Colony resemble those of Algeria at the opposite extremity of the continent, becoming furious torrents after rain, but dwindling down almost to dryness at other seasons. Not one of them is of any considerable value for navigation. The largest, the *Orange River*, is a finer river above, immediately after the confluence of its upper tributaries the

Vaal and the Nu-Gariep, which receive more constant supplies from the Drakenberg range, than it is lower down in its westward course to the Atlantic. But it is obstructed by rapids and falls, and its mouth is blocked up by a sand-bank, so that it is of no value as a commercial highway. All along the north of the colony its channel is hemmed in by precipitous walls of rock, between which it descends in formidable cataracts. The drains which it receives from the Cape Colony are only filled with an evanescent supply, after a heavy thunder-shower may have fallen on the thirsty plains through which they pass. Of these the channel named the *Hartebeeste* is the longest.

Among the rivers which flow outward directly to the Atlantic, the *Olifants*<sup>1</sup> *River* of the west is the most important; in times of flood it overflows its banks like the Nile, depositing on these a rich sediment of mud which it has carried down from the Karroo, and over these inundated tracts heavy grain crops are grown. The *Breede*, the most westerly of the streams which flow due south, affords a very short navigable reach; the *Gauritz* and *Gamtoos* farther east, are at times rapid and dangerous torrents; and the *Great Fish River*, in the south-east, is also nearly a periodical stream, seldom flowing at all in winter, but rising as much as 30 feet in a few hours after summer thunder-showers. Round towards the eastern slope to the Indian Ocean the streams have a more constant flow, and become serviceable for irrigation and motive power.

4. **Climate.**—The Cape Colony is not a hot country; the greatest heat of summer does not exceed that of similar days in the warmer parts of Europe, and in winter the thermometer falls below the freezing-point. A clear buoyant dry atmosphere is characteristic, and the seasons are distinguished as in Europe, though of course at opposite times—January falling in mid-summer, July in mid-winter. Round the coast-lands of the south and east the amount of rainfall is about the same as the average in England, and the amount increases northward towards Natal; but in the interior and towards the west the quantity gradually decreases, till on the plains which slope to the Orange River, the yearly fall does not exceed nine inches altogether; and on the coast-land about the mouth of the Orange River, rain is almost unknown. The distribution of the rainfall on the two sides of the colony, however, is remarkably contrasted in season. Over the south-western maritime region the rain is brought by the westerly winds which prevail in *winter* (April to October); the easterly seaboard, on the contrary, has its rains in the *summer* months (September to April). In the inland district summer thunder-storms are at times fearfully grand, and are accompanied by short heavy downpours. Snow lies for three or four months on the highest inland ranges.

5. **Products.**—In the natural flora of the Cape Colony the heaths have a world-wide fame, as well as the bulbous plants and orchids which cover the ground in September and October with a sheet of gaudy blossom. Not a few plants of cactus-like form are remarkable for their singular appearance. Thorns and prickles are also characteristic of many South African plants, and form a natural provision for dispersing the seed-vessels; some trees, such as the “dornboorn,” have spikes which have been compared to ox horns.

Wheat is one of the main cultivated products, and it is grown in many districts, along with maize, oats, kafir-corn, and barley. The grapes of Constantia, on the peninsula of the Cape of Good Hope, are said to be the finest in the world.

Though the elephant, rhinoceros, and giraffe, lions and leopards, were common in the Cape Colony at the time of its earliest settlement, these larger

---

<sup>1</sup> Or “Elephant’s” river; spelt *Oliphants* on maps to distinguish it from a tributary of the *Gauritz* which bears the same name.



animals have now been driven far north into the interior beyond the frontier; but herds of antelopes, zebras, and blaauwboks still migrate south of the Orange River, and the hyenas and jackals keep their place. Since the migration of the larger wild animals, sheep and goats have multiplied in an extraordinary degree, so that in 1888 there were found to be about thirteen millions of sheep in the colony, and the wool they yield in immense quantity has become the staple export. Draught oxen, dragging the great canvas-covered waggons, are still the chief means of conveyance in the colony, wherever railways have not been constructed. A newer and remarkable industry of the colony is that of ostrich-farming, the birds being fenced in and stabled like sheep or horses, to be plucked of their valuable feathers when these come to maturity; their eggs are also hatched in artificial nests warmed by hot water.

The only important mineral district of the colony as yet is that of Little Namaqua-land in the north-west, near the lower Orange River, where the copper mine of *Ookiep* is one of the richest in the world, and is now sunk so deep that the miners take twenty minutes to ascend from the bottom to the open air. The diamond-fields, to which we shall afterwards refer, lie beyond the border of the Orange River.

6. **People.** The colony is as yet but sparsely peopled, there being a square mile of territory to each four or five individuals. The Europeans are now the most numerous section of the population, and are mainly *British and Dutch*—part are also German and French (the descendants of Huguenot emigrants), and there are a few Portuguese. The Dutch, or the descendants of the earlier colonists, are still more numerous in the western districts; the English prevail in numbers in the east. The former retain their language, but English has been the official language since 1822.

There are now very few pure *Hottentots* within the limits of the colony, though these were the only inhabitants of all its central and western districts at the time of its discovery. Those who still live south of the Orange River are of pale yellow-brown colour, generally below the average size, light hearted and indolent.

The *Kafirs* (*Xosas* and other *Bantas*) are the chief inhabitants of the eastern districts. They are altogether different from the *Hottentots*; tall, dark brown in colour, active and well made, inclined to a pastoral life and to warfare, and less to agriculture. Many thousands of them within the colony can no longer be called savages, and having been brought under the influence of European civilisation, wear clothes, and understand English or Dutch.

There are also a considerable number of *negroes*, descendants of slaves, introduced in earlier days chiefly from Mozambique, and not a few *Malays* in the seaports, originally brought from the Dutch possessions in the East Indies, and still adhering to Mohammedanism.

7. **Government.** The Government of the Cape Colony is entirely European, the head of the administration being a governor appointed by the Crown. He is also commander in chief of the troops, and is invested with powers beyond the limits of the colony proper. Since 1854 the legislative power has been entrusted to a Parliament formed on the British model, consisting of an Upper and Lower House.

8. **Divisions and Chief Towns.** For the purposes of electing representatives for the Parliament, the colony is now divided into seven provinces and thirty-two divisions. The metropolis of the colony, the seat of Government, and the great commercial entrepot, is *Cape Town* (78,000), which spreads out between the skirts of Table Mountain and the shores of Table Bay. Scarcely anything remains now to indicate that it was founded by the Dutch: gas-lighting, gardens, trainways, and railway termini, are not wanting to give it all the air of a European town. Of the three railways which

start from Cape Town, the longest is the South African trunk line, extending across the Orange and Zambesi (at the Victoria Falls) nearly to Lake Tanganyika ; one of the others leads to the *Wynberg* or vineyard hill, where the rich vines of Constantia are grown. The second town of the colony is *Port Elizabeth* on Algoa Bay in the east, a bustling seaport full of warehouses and stores. Huge waggons bring down the wool and hides from the interior farms for shipment here, and return inland with merchandise for the villages. Lines of railway have also been made to unite Port Elizabeth with *Grahamstown*, the chief place in the interior north-east of it, with *Graaf Reinet*, in the farming country on the east of the Great Karroo, and across the Orange with Kimberley, the Orange and Transvaal Colonies. *King William's Town* is the chief place in the fertile territory formerly known as British Kafraria, and is the chief town on the eastern border. It carries on a considerable trade through its port of *East London*.

#### KAFRARIA.

9. The country eastward of the Cape Colony proper, along the slope from the Drakenberg range to the Indian Ocean, as far as the southern border of the colony of Natal, is named Kafraria or *Kafirland*.

The name is perhaps a misleading one, inasmuch as this district has no more special claim to be called the land of the Kafirs than any other portion of the wide region of Eastern Africa which they inhabit ; but it is along this maritime slope that the European colonists, spreading gradually eastward, have come most directly into contact with these people, called still by the Arab name of Kafirs or infidels. The *Kei* River bounds this territory in the south, and the *Bashee* and *St. John's* are its other chief streams. It is a fertile and well-watered country, wooded towards the mountains, and possessing luxuriant pasture-lands, adapted either for agriculture or for cattle-rearing.

10. Since 1884 the whole of the country extending from the Kei river to the borders of Natal has been placed under British authority. The principal districts of this fertile region are *Fingo Land*, *Idutywa*, and *Galeka Land*, between the Kei and Bashee rivers ; *Bomvana Land*, on the coast, between the Bashee and Umtata rivers, and *Tembu Land* between the same rivers, but farther inland ; *Pondo Land*, on both sides of the lower St. John's River as far as Natal, and East Griqualand in the north-east, next Natal, occupied chiefly by a division of the *Griquas*<sup>1</sup> (half-caste Hottentots).

11. *Basutoland*, a district which embraces the mountains and valleys which lie round the sources of the Orange River, was proclaimed British territory in 1868, and was acquired in 1871. Its inhabitants, the *Basutos*, are a branch of the great Bechuana group of Kafirs, superior to most of the other nations in intelligence and industry, but less warlike, and of smaller physical powers. Nevertheless, this district rose (1880) in rebellion against the British authorities. It is now governed independently of Cape Colony as a Crown Colony.

#### NATAL.

12. By the addition of Kafraria, Cape Colony has been made conterminous on the south-east side with the colony of *Natal*, which, somewhat larger in area than the half of Scotland, reaches

<sup>1</sup> See p. 402.



down from the Drakenberg range to the Indian Ocean between the *Tugela* river on the north and the *Umtamfuna* on the south.

13. The country is covered for the most part by ramifications of wooded mountains and hills, which slope down like the fingers of a hand from the higher cliff like edge of the Drakenberg, 11,000 feet in altitude. Between these, many full and constant streams flow down to the sea across a broad belt of grass land, which separates the mountain spurs from the yellow sands and bold headlands of the coast.

14. Though by position Natal is a semi tropical country, its climate is healthy and agreeable, the heat of summer is not intense, and the winters are delightful. Rain falls in all months, but in greatest quantity in the summer. Its pastoral lowlands are well stocked with cattle, sheep, and horses; a large number of sugar estates are in active operation; coffee, wheat, oats, and maize, are also cultivated to a considerable extent.

15. Its inhabitants are mainly Kafirs, natives of the soil, and refugees, especially from Zululand on the north. The indolence of these natives has led to the introduction of Hindu "coolies" to work on the sugar plantations.

16. Most of the Europeans are settled in the seaport of *Durban* or Port Natal, and *Pietermaritzburg*, the seat of Government, sixty miles inland by road, and connected by rail with the Transvaal. Since 1893 Natal enjoys representative institutions under the Crown, and to it were annexed *Zululand* in 1897, and the former Transvaal districts of *Vryheid*, *Utrecht*, and part of *Wakkerstroom* in 1903. Of the whole population (1,110,000 in 1904) 877,000 are Zulu-Xosa Bantus, 101,000 Indian Coolies, and 97,000 Whites, chiefly British. Railways (1906) 820 miles.

## ORANGE RIVER COLONY.

17. The former Orange Free State, independent since 1854, having sided with the Transvaal in the late Boer war, forfeited its autonomy in 1902. It is now a British colony, to which, however, was granted a representative government under the Crown in 1907. *Orangia*, as it is now often called, has a well developed railway system connected with those of Cape Colony, Natal, and the Transvaal. The total population (1904 census) is 387,315, of whom 142,679 are whites, and 244,636 Bantus, mostly members of the Bechuana family; area about 50,000 square miles.

18. *Orangia*, which lies between Cape Colony, Transvaal, Natal, and Bechuanaland, south, north, east, and west, consists of great undulating grassy plains, at a general elevation of about 4000 feet above the sea, and is dotted here and there with little "kopjes" or rocky hills in the south-east, though in the northern portion there is scarcely a break in the level horizon. Its plains are thus admirably adapted for raising sheep and cattle; pastoral farming is the main industry of the country, and wool is its chief export.

19. Owing to its elevation, the climate is well suited to Europeans, being cold in winter and very dry in summer. In the hot season violent thunderstorms occasionally break over it.

20. The former Government was republican, executive power resting in an elected President, the legislature being vested in a "Volksraad" or Council of the people, chosen for four years. The capital is Bloemfontein (population,

1904, 34,000), on the Modder River, a tributary of the Vaal. Education is well advanced, and the constitutional Church of the state is the Protestant Dutch Reformed, but a branch of the Anglican Church of South Africa is also represented by a bishop and a large clerical staff.

### THE TRANSVAAL, LATE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC.

21. This northernmost of the Boer settlements extends, as its name implies, beyond the *Vaal* River, which forms its southern boundary, away northward for more than 300 miles, to where the upper *Limpopo* River curves round from south-west. On the east it reaches past the Drakenberg range to the Lobombo hills, which separate it from the Portuguese territory round Delagoa Bay. Farther south it extends across the crest of the Drakenberg into Zululand and borders upon Natal. Its area is not far short of that of Great Britain and Ireland together.

22. **Physical Features.**—The land generally is a plateau about 3000 feet in average elevation above the sea, supported on the east by the high buttress of the Drakenberg range, and reaching westward towards the desert region of the Kalahari. Within it, however, two ridges of small relative height extend across from west to east. These are (1) the *Magalies* or *Kashan* mountains, which form the edge of a higher portion of the plateau called the “Hooge Veld” or high field, in the south; and (2) the *Waterberg*, *Hangklip*, *Makapans*, and other small ranges, in the north.

Three classes of country, distinguished in their general character, are recognised. These are (1) the “*Hooge Veld*” with bracing climate, most of which is in the south, occupied for the most part by grazing-farms; (2) the “*Banken Veld*,” or those portions which lie along the slopes of the Hooge Veld or along the Drakenberg, consisting of broken hilly country, intersected by deep ravines or “kloofs,” picturesque in scenery, and well watered and wooded with small trees, well adapted also for grazing or for cultivation where the surface is not too hilly; (3) the “*Bush Veld*,” including all the land on the north and east, covered as yet for the most part with *Mimosa* groves and thorn thickets, sub-tropical in climate.

23. The two main rivers are the Ky Gariep or *Vaal* in the south, and the *Limpopo* or Crocodile River, which includes all the northern and central region in its drainage basin. The *Nyl Strom* and the *Olifant* are the chief tributaries of the Limpopo in the Transvaal territory. None of these are of any value for navigation, for though they gain considerable depth in the rainy season they sink to show sandbanks and rapids in the dry weather.

24. **Climate.**—The territory reaches northward to beyond the tropical line, and would have a sub-tropical climate over its whole extent were it not for its great general elevation, which gives all the south a mild temperature well suited to Europeans. Fevers are prevalent in the Lower Limpopo valley in the north.

25. **Products and Industries.**—Pastoral pursuits are characteristic of the country; sheep, cattle, and goats thrive well almost everywhere, but horses require to be removed to the higher hills in summer, as they are very liable to disease here as in many other parts of Africa. The *tsetse* fly is also the scourge of some districts of the back country, so that a “*saulted*” horse, or one which has been bitten and has recovered, takes a high value, as it can afterwards pass scatheless. Wild animals, such as lions, elephants, giraffes,

ostriches, zebras, and antelopes, once numerous, are disappearing. But the chief wealth of the Transvaal are its goldfields, which are most productive in the Kaap and Witwater Rand districts; total yield between 1884 and 1906, £145,000,000. Diamonds also occur in the Pretoria district, and coal, copper, and iron abound.

26. **People.** The natives are chiefly of Bechuana and Zulu stock, and are largely employed as miners, field labourers, and domestics. In 1904 they numbered 937,000; Asiatics (Chinese and Indians), 12,000, mostly miners; whites, 290,000; total, with Swaziland, 1,356,000. Of the whites 80,000 were Boers, 170,000 British, and 42,000 Russians, Germans, and other Europeans.

27. **Government and Chief Towns.**—We have already sketched the main points in the history of the Transvaal—the migration thither of the Boers from the Cape Colony, the early prosperity and later ruinous condition of the republic they founded, and its temporary annexation by the British. After recovering their independence in 1881 the Boers refused civil rights to the British, although since the development of the gold-mining industry these already greatly outnumbered them. The result was much friction, local disturbances, the "Jameson Raid" (1895), the threatened intervention of England, and the war of 1899-1902, ending with the annexation of the two Boer states. In 1906 a Constitution with a Legislative Council and a Legislative Assembly was granted to the Transvaal, all its white inhabitants being placed on a footing of equality. Capital, *Pretoria* (population 21,000); centre of the mining industry, *Johannesburg* (population 159,000). Other chief towns: *Barberton*, *Eureka*, *Potchefstroom*, *Rustenburg*, *Zeerust*, and *Pietersburg*. Nearly all these places are connected by railways which in 1906 had a total length of 1800 miles, and are linked up with all the surrounding systems.

#### GRIQUALAND WEST, OR THE DIAMOND-FIELDS.

28. The territory of Griqualand West was so named from its having been occupied by a section of the Griquas or "Bastards," half caste Hottentots who migrated with the Boers from the Cape Colony in the early part of the last century. It has an area of about 17,500 square miles of the inner plateau, and is a bare and uninviting region, except along the banks of the Orange and Vaal rivers, which join within it, and which are wooded and picturesque. Its climate is healthy, with cold bracing winters and dry dusty summers, interrupted by occasional heavy thunder showers. Were it not for the valuable diamond-mines which were discovered here in 1867, Griqualand would not have attracted attention or have been annexed to the British Crown. The total yield of diamonds since their discovery up to the year 1905 is estimated at £60,000,000, and the annual output is about 2,000,000 carats. *Kimberley*, the capital, has a population (1905) of 35,000. Griqualand West is now incorporated in Cape Colony.

#### ZULU-KAFIR AND BECHUANA LANDS.

29. A broad distinction is to be drawn within the Kafir area of South-east Africa, between the *coast Kafirs*, who extend in many tribes round the maritime region from the Great Fish River to the Zambezi, and the *Kafirs of the plateau* (Bechuanas and Basutos chiefly). The former are generally spirited and warlike, the latter of milder and more passive temperament.

At the beginning of the last century, the Zulus, a clan of the coast Kafirs, changing their former patriarchal life, began to imitate the military system of the Europeans, and to organise themselves into severely-disciplined bands. Soon all Kafirland, from the Limpopo southward to the borders of the Cape Colony, fell under their sway, and it was with these warriors that the Boers had to fight when they first migrated into Natal. A number of their bands marched out northward conquering all before them, and, as we shall presently notice, the leaders of these armies founded a number of extensive kingdoms over the wide country which lies south of the great curve of the Zambezi; but all these military despotisms have been suppressed since 1892-96.

30. *Zululand*, or the home country of the Zulu Kafirs, comprises that portion of the maritime slope of South-east Africa which extends from the Tugela river (the northern boundary stream of Natal) towards Delagoa Bay. Until 1879 it was under the rule of the warlike chief Cetuywayo,<sup>1</sup> and was well peopled. All the men of adult age were under military organisation, and the fighting strength of the tribe was estimated at from 35,000 to 40,000 men. The presence of this strong military organisation on the immediate frontier, and the threatening attitude of its chief, was one of the main causes which made it imperative that the Transvaal should be placed under a stronger rule than that of the Boers. The British have, however, quite broken up this military power, and the country is now annexed to the Colony of Natal.

31. The *Gasa Country*, which stretches north from Delagoa Bay to the lower Zambezi, inland from Sofala and Inhambane, was under the Zulu chief *Gungunyana* (the successor of *Umzila*) till the year 1895, when the Portuguese, having defeated and captured him, established their authority over the whole of this region.

32. Inland from this extended the kingdom of the *Matabili Kafirs*, which was also a complete military despotism. This portion of the land rises higher than the Gasa country, attaining elevations of 4500 feet in the picturesque granite hills called the *Matoppo* and *Mashona* ranges. In 1893 Lo Bengula, king of Matabililand, was overthrown by the South Africa Chartered Company, which, under a resident commissioner appointed by the Secretary of State, now administers his territory and *Mashonaland*, collectively called *Southern Rhodesia*.

33. A Basuto or plateau-Kafir tribe, called the *Makololo*, also adopted the military system of government, and made a march of conquest northward early in the last century through the Transvaal to the middle valley of the Zambezi. Enslaving the Barotse natives of the river valley, they formed a powerful kingdom, which stretched south and north across the Zambezi. Intrigues and dissension for the succession to the chief authority, however, gave opportunity for the Barotse to rise against their conquerors, and, revenging themselves for their years of servitude, they destroyed the Makololo completely. They accepted the British protectorate in 1890.

#### THE KALAHARI DESERT.

34. The Kalahari represents the area of the interior of South Africa which is most deficient in moisture supply, and reaches away north from the Orange River as far as Lake Ngami (20° S.). The gradation from the fertile grassy plains of the Transvaal and Orange Free State to the desert is a very gradual one, like that from the Sudan to the Sahara in the north. The Kalahari has no perennial streams, being mostly a dry sandy region,

---

<sup>1</sup> Pronounced "Ketchwayo."



but it is not devoid altogether of vegetation, consisting of tufted grass, and creeping plants, with deeply-buried bulbous roots, excepting in the centre. The Kalahari desert is comprised in the two political divisions of *South Bechuanaland*, now incorporated in Cape Colony, and *North Bechuanaland*, a British protectorate; total area, 270,000 square miles; population (1905), 128,000, nearly all *Bechuanas*, with a few nomad *Bushmen*.

#### GERMAN SOUTH-WEST AFRICA.

35. West of the Kalahari the extensive countries of the Nama Hottentots and of the Damara reach over the hilly border lands of the continent down to the arid shores of this part of the Atlantic.

Namaqualand is in general a dreary region, with scanty vegetation of grasses and prickly shrubs, furrowed by water channels which flow only for a short time after the scanty showers. The coast-land is sandy and waterless, overhang by an almost constant haze.

Damaraland, farther north, is a little more favoured in aspect in its hill slopes, but is also deprived of any permanently flowing waters. Cattle and ostriches seem, however, to be numerous, considerable deposits of copper have been found, and the presence of gold is suspected.

36 The people of Damaraland are distinguished as the *Ora Herero*, or Cattle Damaras, a tribe which migrated hither probably from the Zambezi valley; and the *Houquaen*, a black or negro-like people, supposed to be aboriginal, who had previously been enslaved by the Namaquas, and who have adopted the Hottentot language. A few Bushmen, Griquas, and Europeans, chiefly members of the Rhenish mission, are found here also.

37. The only highway or regular track into Namaqua Land from the Atlantic leads from *Angra Pequena Bay*, formerly visited by guano ships, and recently occupied by a German trading company, to the mission station of *Bethany* on the plateau. From *Walvisch Bay* (that is, Whale Bay) tracks also lead inland to the mission station of *Okahandja* in Damaraland.

Except Walvisch Bay, which remains a dependency of the Cape, the whole of this region from the Orange to the Cunene now forms a German protectorate. Area, 323,000 square miles; population (1905, estimated) 200,000. Capital, Windhoek; seaport, Swakopmund.

North of Damaraland a number of tribes resembling the Damaras in features, and classed together as the *Ovampos*, occupy the fertile tract of country which lies south of the Cunene river, or of the Portuguese province of Mossamedes.

#### THE ISLANDS ROUND AFRICA.

##### MADAGASCAR.

1. The islands in the seas round Africa, excepting those small fragments which lie close to its shores, do not belong distinctly to the continent as the British Isles do to Europe, or Java and Sumatra to Asia. The great island of *Madagascar*, for example, should rather be considered as a small separate continent than a part of Africa, for its human inhabitants differ altogether in speech and partly in race, while many of its animals are peculiar to it.

2. **Physical Features.** The island of Madagascar extends nearly a thousand miles from north to south; it occupies a space larger than France, and is separated from the mainland by the broad and deep channel of Mozambique, which is 240 miles wide at its narrowest point.

The great physical feature of the island is the enormous plateau-like mass, averaging 3000 to 4000 feet in elevation, which begins at its northern extremity and reaches almost throughout its length, leaving wide plains only on the south and west. Along the shore, especially towards the east, there extends a marshy fever-haunted belt, beyond which the land rises in wooded terraces to the healthy grassy plateaus of the interior.

The central districts of the island have been the scene of volcanic phenomena on a large scale, and there the *Ankaratra Hills* occupy a space some 600 square miles in extent, with lava-covered peaks, attaining elevations of 8500 feet above the sea, and presenting many hundreds of extinct volcanic craters.

The south-western and the eastern slopes of the island are remarkably contrasted in aspect. The lands facing the Indian Ocean, and the direction of the prevailing trade wind, are very fertile, owing to the frequent rains which water them; but the leeward or western side is poorly covered with vegetation, and is but thinly inhabited, except along the courses of the few streams.

3. **Products.**—Characteristic of the landscape of Madagascar is the "Traveller's Tree," the leaf stalks of which contain, it may be, a quart of pure water, even in the driest weather. Of minerals, gold, silver, copper, iron, coal, and salt are found. The fauna of Madagascar is a peculiar one, lemurs or timid nocturnal half-apes, and insect-feeding animals predominating. There are none of the larger wild animals which are so common on the continent of Africa.

4. **People.**—A mixed Negro-Malayan people, showing every transition between the two types, but everywhere speaking slightly different dialects of a common Malayo-Polynesian language. They are divided into a great number of tribes and nations, of whom the three most important are the *Betsimisarakas* east, the *Sakalavas* west, and *Hovas* central, the last being the dominant branch. From very early times the Arabs have visited and had colonies on the north coast, and with them came the slave trade, so that in this part of the island there is a considerable admixture of Arab, Swaheli, and negro peoples. Indian traders also frequent the ports. Cattle-herding and agriculture are the main industries of the island; silk and woollen weaving is also carried on; and beautifully dyed cloths are made from the fibre of the palm. The total population (1905) is 2,665,000, the area 228,500 square miles.

5. **Government and Chief Towns.**—Since the war of 1895 Madagascar is a French possession attached to the Ministry of the Colonies, and the queen, last of the Hova dynasty, was deposed and removed to France in 1897. Most of the Hovas have been Christians, chiefly Protestants, since 1869, when Christianity became the State religion.

The capital, *Antananarivo*, lies on a high plateau near the centre of the island. *Tamatave*, the chief seaport on the east coast, is the only other native place of much importance.

6. The French have several strong posts round the coast, and a naval station at *Diego Suarez*, one of the finest harbours in the Indian Ocean. On the north-west side is the islet of *Nossi Bé* with the harbour of *Helleville*; and on the north-east coast the more important island of *Ste. Marie*, or *Nossi Burra*. In the interior most strategical points are occupied, and a French governor-general resides in the capital.

#### COMORO ISLANDS.

7. The Comoro islands, four in number, high and volcanic, lie in the northern part of the Mozambique channel between Madagascar and the mainland. Formerly under an Arab sultan, they were occupied by France in



1886. They comprise the three islets of *Great Comoro*, *Johanna* (*Anjouan*), and *Mohilla* (*Moheh*), with total area 620 square miles, and population 47,000, chiefly Bantus. South-east of the group is *Mayotta*, which has been French since 1843; area 140 square miles, population (1905) 11,640.

8. Almost due north of Madagascar lie the twin coral groups of the *Amirante* and *Seychelles* islets, both British possessions. These are richly covered with palms and date trees, and have excellent harbours.

#### MASCARENHAS ISLES.

9. The Mascarenhas Isles, far out at sea east of Madagascar, comprise the French island of *Bourbon*, or *Réunion* (pop. 173,200), and the two British, of *Mauritius* (pop. 378,000), and *Rodriguez*. The first has been a French colony since 1649, and consists of two very high groups of volcanic mountains separated by a plain. It is extremely fertile, producing large quantities of coffee, sugar, and spices, for export by its capital and chief port of *St. Denis*. *Mauritius*, called *Ile de France* before it was ceded by the French in 1814, is also famous for the beauty of its landscape, and for its products like those of *Bourbon*, and its valuable woods. *Port Louis* and *Mahébourg*, or *Grand Port*, are its chief towns.

#### SOCOTRA.

10. Opposite Cape Guardafui, the eastmost apex of Africa, lies the island of *Socotra*, about as large as our county of Cornwall, rising by terraces to a considerable height in the interior. The greater part of the surface is pastoral table-land within unfertile borders. The aloe plant and the dragon's-blood gum tree are its chief commercial products. Area, with the Kuria Muria group off the coast of Arabia, 1382 square miles; population (1901) 12,000, mostly Arabs. In 1886 the local sultan accepted the British protectorate, and Socotra is now administered from Aden. The Kuria Muria group was ceded by the sultan of Muscat as a station for the Red Sea cable.

#### MADEIRA.

11. On the same parallel as central Morocco, 860 miles out in the Atlantic, lies the Portuguese islet of *Madeira*, "the wood," a little larger than the Isle of Man, with its satellites of *Porto Santo* and the rocky *Desertas*. It is famous for its delightful climate, its vintage, and its picturesque beauty. Besides its rich fruits, the sugar-cane is now largely cultivated and exported from *Funchal*, its town and port, which is in regular communication with Liverpool and Lisbon. Population (1900) 151,000.

#### CANARY ISLANDS.

12. In about 28° N. lat., at no great distance from the shores of Africa, is situated the Spanish *Canary group*, the "Fortunate Islands" of the Ancients, also renowned for their fine climate (pop. 288,000). The seven large islands form an eastern and western division, the former having *Lanzarote*, *Fuerteventura*, and *Gran Canaria*; the latter, *Teneriffe*, *Gomera*, *Palma*, and *Ferro*, whence longitude used to be reckoned. They are all of volcanic origin and high, the largest and tallest peak being that of *Teneriffe* (12,180 feet). The Spaniards look upon the Canaries as belonging strictly to the mother country, but the population is a mixed one, descended from the intermixture of the Spaniards and the native *Guanches*. Total area 2807 square miles;

population (1900) 358,564. Cattle, cochineal, wine, oranges, and bananas are the chief products. The most important towns are *Las Palmas* on Gran Canaria, *St. Christobal* and *Orotava* on Teneriffe.

#### CAPE VERD ISLANDS.

13. Farther south, due west of Cape Verd, lie the fourteen Portuguese islands named from it, also of volcanic origin. Nine are inhabited, principally by negroes and mulattos; total area 1480 square miles; population (1900) 147,500. *Santiago*, the largest and most fertile, rises to a height of 7380 feet, and has the chief town. *St. Vincent* islet is the chief point of the group, both from its excellent harbour, at which a great coaling depôt has been formed for the Atlantic steamers, and as a station of the Anglo-Brazilian telegraph line. The Cape Verd islands are administered by a governor who resides at *Praia*, the capital.

#### ST. HELENA AND ASCENSION.

14. We have already noticed the line of volcanic islands which reaches into the Gulf of Guinea. If we prolong their direction out towards the centre of the Atlantic, we reach the solitary islet of *St. Helena*, a huge dark mass of rock, reaching a height of 2700 feet in Diana's Peak. Numerous brooks water it, and plantations of firs and chinchona trees cover some parts of it. Its climate is healthy and mild. A governor administers the island, the garrison of which was withdrawn in 1906. Area 47 square miles; population (1905) 3512. *Ascension*, 700 miles north-west of St. Helena, and equally solitary, is a bare volcanic islet, retained by Britain mainly as a station at which ships may touch for stores. Area 35 square miles; population (1901) 120; chief station, *Georgetown*, on the N.W. coast. Ascension is visited by great numbers of turtles, which weigh from 500 to 800 lbs.; are stored in ponds, and shipped to England for "turtle soup"; 126 were taken in 1906.



# NORTH AMERICA



London: Published by Edward Stanford 12, 13 & 14 Long Acre W.C.

## AMERICA.

---

1. **THE Great Western Continent**, or the "New World," the second in point of magnitude of the great divisions of the land on the globe, reaches north and south between the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans, almost from the one polar region of the earth to the other. It stretches from  $80^{\circ}$  N. to  $55^{\circ}$  S. lat., or has a length of more than 9000 miles. Its western or Pacific shores are remarkably continuous, but on the other side the Caribbean Sea and the Gulf of Mexico running in from the Atlantic deeply indent its eastern margin, separating it into two vast peninsulas, called *North* and *South America*, joined by the long narrow belt of *Central America*, the narrowest part of which, the *Isthmus of Panama*, is only 48 miles broad. In area it is second only to Asia, including about 16,000,000 square miles, or more than four times the extent of Europe, the northern portion having about 9 millions, the southern 7 millions of square miles.

2. **Relief.**—The leading features of this continent, distinguishing it from the other great masses of land on the surface of the globe, are given to it by an immense mountain chain, by far the longest and of the greatest *general* elevation of any on the globe, though many summits of the Himalaya attain greater altitudes. This great range rises from the waters of the Antarctic Ocean, and keeping close to the Pacific coast, traverses the entire continent from the Strait of Magellan in the south to Bering Strait in the north. The slopes of the plains eastward towards the Atlantic and the direction of flow of the great rivers are thus determined; and the presence of this vast barrier, by interrupting the flow of the great aerial currents, also controls, in a large degree, the conditions of climate and landscape, of animal and vegetable life over the continent.

The southern portion of this great range, called the *Andes*, is the most remarkable on the globe for its continuity of height. The Patagonian and Chilian Andes reach from Tierra del Fuego and the Strait of Magellan, northward to about the Tropic of Capricorn as a single chain, rising in *Aconcagua* (22,422 feet, to the summit of all the continent. Farther north the chain divides into stupendous ridges or Cordilleras, enclosing between them the wide and lofty *plateaus of Bolivia and Perú*, which lie at an elevation of more than 12,000 feet above the sea. Still farther on, the outer and inner Cordil-

leras draw closer together in Ecuador, or the equatorial country, and northward of this they break into three distinct ranges, one running north-eastward and bending along the coast of Venezuela to form the high island of Trinidad at its extremity, the second pointing northward to terminate at Cape Gallinas, and the third passing north-westward to form the Isthmus of Panama.

The lowest summit level between the oceans on each side of the Isthmus of Panama is 285 feet, to the west of the lake of Nicaragua it is only 150 feet, and on the Isthmus of Tehuantepec, 630 feet. Throughout the rest of Central America there extends a series of table-lands with volcanic cones rising over them, gradually increasing in elevation as the distance between the seas increases, till the great wedge-like *Plateau of Mexico* is reached, the average elevation of which is not less than 7000 or 8000 feet. Here the volcanic peaks of *Citlaltépetl* (17,360 feet), near Orizaba, and *Popocatepetl* (17,540 feet), S.E. of the city of Mexico, are two of the highest summits in North America.

The mass of elevated land, which reaches along the western border of North America from the plateau of Mexico to the Frozen Ocean, presents three distinct mountain ranges. The first is the *Coast Range* of the Pacific, extending from the peninsula of California continuously as far as Vancouver's Island, which is traversed by its prolongation. From this point northward it is interrupted by the broken coast-line and archipelagoes of British Columbia, but the coast is skirted by another range farther north, where the active volcano of *Mount St. Elias* (19,500 feet) and *Mount Fairweather* are its principal summits. It is this chain also which bends round westward to form the Alaska peninsula and the line of the Aleutian Islands reaching towards Asia.

The next range inward is that of the *Sierra Nevada* of California, which is a direct continuation of the western Cordillera of the plateau of Mexico. Between latitudes  $36^{\circ}$  and  $37^{\circ}$  this chain has its summit in *Mount Whitney* (14,440 feet). The Sierra Nevada merges northwards in a different geological system, which traverses Oregon, Washington, and British Columbia, and one section of which is known as the *Cascade Range*. Thence it passes, with decreasing elevation, across Alaska Territory, to terminate in Prince of Wales Peninsula, on Bering Strait.

The third system is that of the *Rocky Mountains*. It forms the inner buttress of the wide table-land of the "*Great Basin*" which separates it from the Sierra Nevada, and corresponds to the eastern Cordilleras of the plateau of Mexico. From one mountain summit in Colorado twenty-five peaks, each of which is more than 14,000 feet in elevation, can be counted, and that called *Blanca Peak* reaches 14,464 feet. The highest part of the Rocky Mountain range, however, is found in British Columbia, north of the 50th parallel, where *Mount Robson* attains the great height of 13,700 feet. Northward this range also diminishes in elevation, but becomes broken and diffused about  $63^{\circ}$  N. latitude.

3. Great lowlands occupy the central region of the American continent. In North America these central plains reach, in almost unbroken continuity, from the shores of the Arctic Sea to the Gulf of Mexico. Here the highest altitude is reached at Calgary (3028 feet), while the so-called "Height of land," where the Mississippi has its sources, nowhere exceeds about 1500 feet. In South America also vast levels extend from the plains of the Orinoco in the north across the Amazon basin southward, over the plains of La Plata, into Patagonia.

4. Towards the east the continent again rises; but the heights of the Atlantic border are far inferior in elevation to those of the Pacific side of America. In North America, the high broken coast of Labrador rises from the Atlantic, and farther south the folded *Alleghany* ridges attain a height of 6707 feet in their summit, *Black Dome Mountain*. Beyond the peninsula of Florida, the high chain of the West India Islands leads across to South



America, where the plateaus of *Gurana* and of *Brazil* correspond to the eastern heights of the northern division of the continent. Here the *Montes Pyrenæos*, in the heart of Brazil, attain a height of 9500 feet, and with the Peak of *Itatiaia* (8900 feet), on the coast range to the south of Rio de Janeiro, are probably the highest points in eastern South America.

5. **Rivers and Lakes.** The great lines of mountains on the western side of the continent divert by far the greater part of the drainage eastward to the Atlantic. The four great rivers of North America—the *Mackenzie* flowing to the Arctic Sea, the *Nelson* to Hudson Bay, the *St. Lawrence* to its Gulf in the Atlantic, and the great *Mississippi* to the Gulf of Mexico—are all east of the Pacific heights. In South America, the *Orinoco*, the vast *Amazon*, and the *Paraná*, flow also to the Atlantic.

In North America only six considerable rivers—the *Yukon*, in Alaska, the *Fraser*, *Stikine*, *Skeena*, *Colombia*, and *Colorado*—find their way over the western plateau and through the gorges of the mountains to the Pacific; but from South America not one large stream flows to that ocean.

All the region of North America on the poleward side of the 40th parallel of latitude is characterised by great lakes, which are more numerous and extensive than those of any other lake region of the globe. Here the basin of the *St. Lawrence* contains *Lake Superior*, the greatest of all fresh lakes on the earth, occupying a space nearly as large as Ireland (32,000 square miles), besides *Huron* and *Michigan* scarcely less extensive, *Erie* and *Ontario*. Farther north, in the basins of the *Nelson* and *Mackenzie*, are the noble expanse of *Winnipeg*, *Manitoba*, *Winnipegosis*, *Lake of the Woods*, and *Reindeer*, *Athabasca*, the *Great Slave* and *Great Bear Lakes*. But all the rest of the lowland of America is singularly devoid of large lakes. The plateau region of the western border bears only two lakes of importance: the one, the *Great Salt Lake*, 4200 feet above the sea, in the midst of the broadest part of the plateau of North America, between the Rocky Mountains and the Sierra Nevada; the other, *Lake Titicaca*, lying at an elevation of 12,550 feet, in the Bolivian table-land in South America. In the plateau of Central America, the largest lake is that of *Nicaragua*, nearly equal to *Ontario* in extent, and only 131 feet above the level of the sea.

6. **Climate and Landscape.**—If we look at the general chart showing the direction of the prevailing winds, it is noticed that the two great trade-wind currents sweeping over the Atlantic from north-east and from south-east, converge towards the equatorial region on approaching the coasts of America between the tropics. Having gathered much vapour in their passage over the sea, these winds bring copious rain-showers to all the region of the land which lies opposite their path. Thus the huge river *Amazon* is fed, and the moist, hot climate of the Atlantic slopes of tropical America has produced over these a dense humid forest growth. All the region of the *Amazon* basin, of the *West India* Islands, of *Florida*, and the coast-lands of the Gulf of Mexico, present this richly wooded landscape. The coast-lands of this luxuriantly beautiful region, especially those of the mediterranean within the *West Indies*, are haunted, however, by the deadly yellow fever. Looking again at the chart of the winds, we see that the great trade-wind currents of the Pacific Ocean seem to draw away from the coast of America; the north-east wind from the region about the Californian peninsula in North America; the south-east from the central portion of the Pacific coast-land of South America, along the base of the *Andes*. Drawing their supplying currents of air from over the land, and blowing from cooler to warmer latitudes, these winds absorb all moisture, and give no rain supply. Thus, all the region of southern California, and of the great basin within it, appears bare and dry, like the *Sahara*, in its desert landscapes; and thus, also, the coast-lands of

South America in northern Chile and Perú are rainless and barren, showing only a skirt of yellow, sandy waste, excepting where streams descend to cross it from the heights of the Andes. Between these two extremes, where the climate graduates from that of the hot and damp equatorial region to the droughts of the western seaboard, all the central lowlands of America in the temperate zone have landscapes in which grasses are the predominant covering of the soil. There are the vast rolling prairies of the basin of the Mississippi, in North America, reaching from near the Gulf of Mexico away to the great lake region of the north; and the corresponding "pampas," or level grass-covered plains of the La Plata basin, in South America, reaching south from the tropical line, between the South Brazilian plateaus and the base of the Andes, far away south, into Patagonia. Over these, in contrast to the equable climate of the equatorial forest region, the variations of temperature between hot summer and cold winter begin to be very considerable.

Referring again to the wind chart, it is observed that the great currents of westerly winds, blowing across the Pacific, strike the coasts of the continent between British Columbia and Alaska in North America, and in Chile in South America. These winds, like the trade-winds of the Atlantic, have been moving across the wide expanse of the sea, and gathering moisture from it as they went. On meeting the opposing coasts, this store is released in copious rain showers over the land. Thus, in British Columbia and in southern Chile we come again to regions in which rain is abundant, and with this copious watering, woodland scenery again prevails. Over all that portion of North America which is reached by the moist westerly winds, from British Columbia across to Canada and Labrador, pine forests are the characteristic covering of the land. In southern Chile also the mountain sides facing the damp westerly current are clothed with forest trees.

The apex of South America lies well within the temperate zone, but North America, in the same latitudes, is still a broad continental region, which passes northward across the Arctic Circle to the shores of the icy sea. Here in the rigorous climate of the margins of the polar ocean the trees become stunted and small, and at last give place, as in Siberia, to barren mossy wastes and frozen swamps, corresponding to the "tundras" of the Asiatic border of the Siberian seas. Here, in the short summer, the surface soil thaws into mud and marsh, and clouds of mosquitoes fill the air; in winter snows cover the land, the lakes are hard frozen for half the year, and the thermometer falls far below the zero point. Farthest north of all we reach the barren islands of the Arctic Archipelago, the rocky points showing dark above the covering of snow and the ice-covered sea round them, and the huge island of Greenland covered over all its extent, excepting a narrow fringe of its western coast, by one vast sheet of glacier ice.

**7. Plants and Animals.**—The polar bear haunts the arctic region of Old and New Worlds alike, and in the northern forest region, where pine and birch are the characteristic trees, the bear and other fur-yielding animals are pursued for their skins. Yet the pines, oaks, birches, and willows of the American forests are not the same as those which cover the plains and mountains of Siberia. The prairie region is the home of deer, and of the bison, called the buffalo in the United States; an interesting species of sheep, called the Bighorn, equal in size to the argali of Tibet, is indigenous to the crags of the Rocky Mountain region of the west, and the great grisly bear, the most formidable animal of the New World, is found chiefly among these mountains, and on the table-lands westward of them.

The flora of the moist tropical region of America resembles that of tropical Africa and Asia in its palms; no palm forests of such extent as those of South America exist in any other part of the world. In these woodlands

the jaguar, the only very formidable beast of prey in South America, except the puma, has its home ; here also the great tapir, peccaries, and the sloth, anteaters, and armadillos, are found. The opossums of America were the first known of marsupial or pouched quadrupeds. Monkeys are quite as numerous in the warm parts of the New World as in those of the Old, and are of many species : there are no great apes resembling those of Africa or of the East Indies ; but it is characteristic of all the American monkeys that they have long tails, and many of them use these appendages to swing from branch to branch, a peculiarity found in none of the monkeys of the Old World.

The waters of the South American tropical region bear the splendid *Victoria regia*, the most magnificent of the water-lilies, and the forests there are bound together by "lianas" or twining creepers, so that many parts of them are impenetrable, and animals find their way between by narrow paths kept open by constant use. Up in the Cordilleras of the Andes the "chinchona" trees yield the celebrated Peruvian bark or "quinine," and farther south, on the mountain slopes, the "araucaria" is a representative of the pines. The llama and its congeners, the alpaca and vicuña, most nearly allied to the camels of the Old World, inhabit the high Andes of Perú and Chile. The treeless plains or pampas of South America have in general a grassy vegetation, and there the *nandu*, or American ostrich, is seen in troops ; here also the puma, or American lion, is now most numerous, though it ranges over all the continent between Patagonia and the United States in the north. Towards the Strait of Magellan, in Chile, the forest vegetation again assumes a character more like that which we are accustomed to in Europe, and the woods are composed in great part of a peculiar species of beech. The birds of America that may be specially noted are the eagles and vultures, among which is the great *condor* of the Andes, the turkeys, the parrots of the tropical forests, the humming-birds, and the strange great-beaked toucans peculiar to the continent.

Among the numerous serpents of the continent are the great boas and the venomous rattlesnakes ; alligators abound in the rivers to beyond the tropical lines. The lakes and rivers abound in fish, of which many belong to the salmon family, and the cod-fisheries of the Banks of Newfoundland are unequalled anywhere in the world in productiveness.

Maize is the only cultivated grain of American origin ; the other useful grains, with the sugar-cane, the banana and plantain, coffee, cotton, flax, and many other plants, now widely cultivated, have been *introduced* into America by Europeans. Tobacco, however, is a native product of America, as are the potato, the arrow-root and tapioca, cocoa, vanilla, and pimento or Jamaica pepper, and the yerba-maté or tea of Paraguay. The most important mineral product of North America is its gold, which is found on both sides of the Rocky Mountain highlands on the west, in the Klondike district of the Yukon, and on the south-east slopes of the Alleghanies. Rich silver veins are also found in the western region of North America ; copper, iron, and lead are also widely spread. No part of the earth appears to have greater stores of coal than eastern North America, and beside these also petroleum has been found in great abundance.

In South America the chain of the Andes is so rich in metals, silver and copper especially, that its name is supposed by some to have had its origin in the Inca word *anta*, which signifies minerals. Perhaps no country is richer in precious stones than Brazil.

8. **People.**—The population of the American continent is believed to amount now to over 140 millions. We have noticed in the former chapters how the older inhabitants of the continent have been supplanted, especially in the northern division, by the tide of emigrants from Europe, and

the African slaves they brought. At the present day the aboriginal American Indians are believed to number about sixteen millions; they are far more numerous in South America than in the north. It is generally believed that all the aborigines of America, from Alaska in the far north to Patagonia and Tierra del Fuego, are a blend of two races. The type most resembles the Mongol, but there is also a distinct Caucasian strain. Some are very tall, others short and robust, with soft satin-like skin varying from yellow to olive-brown or copper colour; the nose is large and often aquiline, the cheek-bones strong and projecting; the eyes small, black, and deep set, with corner turned upward towards the temple; the forehead low and broad, the hair black, coarse, and straight. But the most astonishing diversity of speech prevails, from 200 to 300 stock languages being still current in America. In mental attributes, earnestness and bravery, the native Americans rank far higher than the Papuans and Malays of the East Indies, higher also than the African negroes; we have already seen what a high point of civilisation the Aztecs of Mexico and the Incas of Perú had reached long before any European knew of the existence of America.

If the American continent was originally peopled, and its ancient civilisation derived, from Asia, as has been supposed by some, this must have taken place at a period far more remote than that of the oldest existing culture in the Old World. The only family in America which presents any distinct resemblance to the people of Asia of the present day is that of the short, broad-shouldered seal-hunters, the Eskimo, who are spread all round the Arctic coasts of America, from the Asiatic side of Bering Strait to Greenland. These little people are decidedly Mongolian in form, with flat nose, projecting cheek-bones, oblique eyes, and brown skin, thus presenting marked contrast to the American Indians.

By far the larger proportion of the inhabitants of America at the present day, however, have either themselves crossed over the Atlantic from Europe, or are the descendants of those who have migrated thence since the date of Columbus's great discovery. We recall the fact, how the Spaniards, landing first in the West India Islands, spread their conquests across to the mainland in Mexico, down the coast of the Pacific to Perú and Chile, and by the great inlet of the La Plata over the vast Argentine plain in the south. All round these coasts Spanish blood now prevails; there also half-caste Spanish and Indian people are very numerous, and by these the true Indian natives are being pressed more and more into the heart of the continent. All round the coast-lands of Brazil the Portuguese element is dominant. In Lower Canada, and in Louisiana about the mouth of the Mississippi, people of French extraction are still the most numerous; but the stronger north European people, the British and the Germans, now hold by far the largest share of the North American continent.

9. Religion and Education.—The native American Indians were, and are, of very various habits and stages of advancement. Most are nomadic hunters; many tribes are fishers; some cultivate the soil, and live in settled habitations, and were agriculturists before the arrival of the Europeans. Their condition also ranged from that of savages up to the stage of those who built the grand Temple of the Sun at Cuzco. At present most of the Indian tribes, especially the "*Indios bravos*," or wild Indians of the South and Central American forests, remain heathens. Many, however, have been brought to a certain extent under the influence of civilisation. The majority of the inhabitants of America, however, being of European descent, are Christians. Protestantism prevails in the United States, as in all the possessions of Protestant powers; and the Protestant lands of America enjoy the most perfect religious freedom. The State does not interfere in any way with the Church,

and thus hundreds of independent sects, the most remarkable of which is that of the Mormons, are found in this part of the continent. In all South and Central America, and in Mexico, the Roman Catholic religion prevails, and there the tendency is, as far as possible, to be exclusive. In Brazil, for example, though religious bodies other than Roman Catholics are tolerated, they were not until recently permitted to build any place of worship which resembled a church. In point of education and general advancement, as in religious freedom, the Protestant lands of America stand very far higher than the Roman Catholic, and the lands of the continent in temperate climates, both South and North, far above those in which the hot, languid, tropical climate enervates mind and body. At the same time it must not be forgotten that the native Indian element of the population is strongest in those parts of America which have made least progress. In the United States and Canada, for example, about 240,000 miles of railway have been built, but the railway lines yet made in the rest of America, all together, do not extend to a fifth part of that length.

10. **Government.** The whole of America is now more or less completely under the government of European races, excepting only the two negro states of the island of Haiti. America is essentially the continent of Republics. European colonies, when they threw off the ties of the mother country, almost without exception formed themselves into free states. An example was first set by the United States of North America (1776), when the North European population rebelled against restriction in trade and unwelcome taxes. The name of Washington, famous in this period of American history, is preserved in the capital city of the Union. Following this the Spanish colonists, led by Simon Bolivar, also began to break the bonds which bound them to the home country (1810-25), and to form the fifteen Creole<sup>1</sup> Republics—Mexico, Guatemala, Honduras, San Salvador, Nicaragua, and Costa Rica, in Central America; Venezuela, Colombia, Ecuador, Perú, Bolivia, Chile, the Argentine Republic, Uruguay, and Paraguay, in South America. Portuguese Brazil alone formed itself into a constitutional monarchy under a branch of the Bragança line till 1889, when Brazil was declared a republic. The Canadian Dominion, Newfoundland, and British Honduras alone remain British possessions in the mainland of North America.

## GREENLAND.

1. The great island of Greenland, lying north-east of the mainland of America, just touches the Arctic Circle at its southern islet of Cape Farewell, and reaches away northward into the icy region round the Pole. Its limits in that direction have now been roughly determined, and Greenland was proved to be an island by the Peary expedition of 1906 (see page 101). It is known to reach 84° N., and within these outlines has an area of about 740,000 square miles. Its eastern coast, facing the open Arctic sea and the Iceland channel for a distance of about 1500 miles, is swept by the great ice-bearing Greenland current from the Polar basin, and is thus almost impossible of approach. The longer western shores, on the contrary, those next Davis Strait and Baffin Bay,

<sup>1</sup> The whites of Spanish descent born in America are termed *Creoles*.



facing America, have their rigorous climate softened in some degree by the influence of a warm stream from the Atlantic, which passes north towards the narrow channel of Smith Sound, rendering them habitable as far north as Baffin Bay.

2. But few regions of the earth are less adapted for habitation by man. Snow falls in every month except that of July, and the average temperature of the west coast is  $10^{\circ}$  below the freezing point. The name Greenland, indeed, is as inappropriate to this land of desolation as that of "Hvidsærk," or "White Shirt," given it by its discoverer, is apt in describing the vast ice-field which covers it over from sea to sea. This greatest of snow-fields in the world is named the "inland-ice" by the Danes; from it great glaciers flow down between the bleak mountain-walls of the innumerable fiords that indent the coast-line, to break off where they reach the sea in huge icebergs, many of which are carried by the ocean currents, or drifted by the winds, far south into the Atlantic.

3. The western coast-line from Cape Farewell northward for about a thousand miles has a few small isolated Danish colonies and settlements of Eskimo fishers scattered along its length. Here the Danes claim an extent of about 34,000 square miles of the coast-lands, and their colonies are divided into Southern and Northern Inspectorates. Most of the settlements were founded by Moravian missionaries. Those in the Southern Inspectorate are Frederiksthal, the nearest to Cape Farewell; then Lichtenau and Julianeshaab, where there are the most numerous remains of the old Icelandic colonies; Frederikshaab; Lichtenfels; Godthaab, the earliest of the modern Greenland colonies (lat.  $64^{\circ} 10' N.$ ), the residence of the Governor of South Greenland; New Herrnhut; Zukkertoppen (named from a remarkable "sugar-loaf" mountain near it); and Holsteinborg.

In the Northern Inspectorate come the settlements of Egedesminde (the "memory of Egede" the missionary); Christianshaab and Jakobshavn, on the shores of the bay formed by the island of Disco; Godhavn, on Disco Island, the residence of the Governor of North Greenland; and Upernavik (lat.  $72^{\circ} 50' N.$ ), the most northerly permanent settlement in the world. In all, the Danish colonies of Greenland have about 10,000 inhabitants, of whom about 300 are Danish settlers, the rest Eskimo. Outside the Danish territory there are probably not more than 500 Eskimo, living along the coast north of Upernavik.

4. The vegetation of even the most favoured spots of the South Greenland coast is scanty in the extreme, consisting of mosses and lichens, and a few dwarf birches and willows creeping along the ground, and never reaching a greater length of stem than three or four feet. The products exported to Denmark are chiefly sealskins, whale and seal oil, eider down, and "cryolite," a mineral found near Frederikshaab, in South Greenland, from which the metal aluminium is obtained.

5. During the long winter the Greenland colonists are shut off from communication with Europe by the ice which closes the fiords; but in summer, besides the regular vessels from Denmark, the colonies are frequently touched at by the British whaling vessels. These ships, most of which belong to the Scottish ports of Dundee and Peterhead, have auxiliary steam power, and pass up along the western coast of Greenland in early summer, taking advantage of every "lane" and "lead" in the ice which then covers the sea, and keeping a constant look-out from the "crow's nest" at the mast-head for the spout of the whale, till the "north water" of Baffin Bay is reached; then they cross over to the American side, and return along it southward to the Atlantic again when summer has ended.



BRITISH NORTH AMERICA.<sup>1</sup>

1. The British dominions in North America occupy all the immense area of the northern half of the continent, excepting Greenland, and the Alaska territory which belongs to the United States. They thus reach across from the Pacific Ocean and the boundary of the Alaska territory on the west to the Atlantic; and from the 49th parallel of latitude and the line of the St. Lawrence northward to the farthest known lands of Arctic America in the Icy Sea. British North America is thus nearly as large as all Europe.

Its main divisions, which we shall take up in order, are (1) the Dominion of Canada, and (2) Newfoundland.

By an Act of Parliament which came into force in 1867, the formerly separate British provinces of *Quebec (Lower Canada)*, *Ontario (Upper Canada)*, *Nova Scotia*, and *New Brunswick*, were joined under one constitution, and assumed the title of the "Dominion of Canada." In 1869 the exclusive right to trade in the vast fur-hunting grounds of Rupert's Land and of the Hudson Bay Territory was purchased from the Hudson Bay Company, and were placed under the government of the Dominion of Canada, and re-named the *North-West Territory*. The Company, however, continues to trade without restriction, and retains a small space round its stations. The province of *Manitoba* was formed in 1870. In the following year *British Columbia*, on the Pacific slope, also joined, and *Prince Edward Island* was added in 1873, so that the Dominion of Canada now includes the whole of the British North American possessions, excepting *Newfoundland*.

The constitution of the Dominion of Canada is similar to that

<sup>1</sup> Dominion of Canada : Provinces :

	Area in sq. miles	Pop. (1901).
Prince Edward Island	2,184	108,259
Nova Scotia	21,068	459,574
New Brunswick	27,911	331,120
Quebec	341,756	1,648,898
Ontario	220,508	2,182,947
Manitoba	64,327	255,211
British Columbia	310,191	178,657
Alberta		72,841
Saskatchewan		91,460
Keewatin	500,191	9,800
Yukon	194,327	27,219
MacKenzie	532,634	5,216
Ungava	349,109	5,113
Franklin	500,000	..
	3,000,206	5,371,315
Newfoundland	40,200	217,037
Total British North America *	3,100,406	5,588,352

\* Excepting the Bermuda Islands, the West Indian and Central American possessions.

of Great Britain. The executive power is exercised by a Governor-General appointed by the Crown, the legislative authority is a Senate, nominated by the Executive, and a House of Commons elected by the people. Each province, however, under its Lieutenant-Governor, has a separate Parliament, and administers its own internal affairs.

### UPPER AND LOWER CANADA.

2. Upper and Lower Canada, the territory ceded to Britain by France in 1763, occupies the northern watershed of the great river St. Lawrence from the shores of Lake Superior down to the Strait of Belleisle, and also the country south of the St. Lawrence between the United States boundary marked out by the 45th parallel of latitude and by the coast of Chaleur Bay, which opens into the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and includes Cape Breton Island, Prince Edward Island, New Brunswick, the East Main and Hamilton districts, James Bay, Manitoba, and part of the N.W. Territory.

3. **Rivers and Lakes.**—Its great physical feature is its noble river, the St. Lawrence. During the greater part of the year this river is navigable for the largest vessels for nearly 600 miles up from the sea to Montreal. Above that place the channel is obstructed by falls and rapids, but the upward navigation is continued by canals, which unite Montreal with Kingston, on the wide expanse of Lake Ontario, where many steamers are busily employed in constant traffic. Another canal carries the navigation from Lake Ontario past the stupendous falls of Niagara (166 feet high) to Lake Erie; from that the channels named the Detroit and St. Clair lead up to the still grander expanses of Huron and Michigan; finally, ascending the St. Mary River, we reach Lake Superior, the greatest of all fresh-water lakes, occupying a space as large as Ireland. Along this magnificent waterway (1291 miles from Chicago to Montreal) vessels of 2000 tons now bring the grain and other produce of the Western United States for consumption in Europe. The Saguenay, the St. Maurice, and the Ottawa are the great affluents of the St. Lawrence from the north; the Richelieu, from Lake Champlain, which lies within the boundary of the United States, is the chief tributary from the southward.

4. **Climate.**—The climate of Canada passes between the extremes of great heat in summer and severe winters; yet these being drier, with cloudless skies and bracing air, are pleasanter than the “muggy” winters of Great Britain. The climate of the eastern region becomes more rigorous towards Labrador, along which the icy current from Baffin Bay flows southward; the estuary of the St. Lawrence remains blocked by ice for about four months, although Sydney, Picton, and a few other ports are never closed; towards the west the climate becomes much milder, and on Lake Ontario the sledging time lasts for only as many weeks as it does months on the Lower St. Lawrence; while the summer is so hot that maize ripens in the open, together with grapes, melons, nectarines, peaches, apricots, and tomatoes.

5. **Products.**—At the time of its first settlement by Europeans, Canada was covered with unbroken forests, and though much land has been cleared by the axe, the woods of pine, maple, beech, and oak still form the great natural wealth of the land. The cleared districts have an exceedingly fertile soil, and yield crops like those of England.

Round Lake Superior the country is exceedingly rich in copper; iron, coal, lead, granite, and marble are also found in Canada; nickel and copper occur at Sudbury; asbestos east of Quebec; mica in Ottawa, gold, silver, and mica in Ontario; natural gas and the petroleum wells of some districts are remarkably productive. The fisheries also of the Gulf and neighbouring waters are among the richest in the world.

6. **Divisions and People.**—Upper and Lower Canada were united in government previous to 1867, when, on the formation of the "Dominion," they were disassociated, and became provinces of the new federation under the names of *Ontario* and *Quebec*.

The province of Ontario extends from the Ottawa river to the border of Manitoba, fronting on the Upper St. Lawrence and the Lakes Ontario, Erie, Huron, and Superior. It is the most important part of British North America, and is thickly settled on the south, along the river and the lake shores, by a population which is mainly of British descent, with a considerable infusion of Germans. The northern and north-western parts are still forest clad.

The province of Quebec occupies both sides of the St. Lawrence from the Ottawa river to the Gulf of St. Lawrence. The river valley itself is very fertile, but the country north-east of the Saguenay is almost incapable of cultivation from the severity of the climate there. The inhabitants of this province are in great part descendants of the original French settlers; they are called *habitans*; many of them speak an archaic French dialect and keep up peculiar manners and customs, and they are Roman Catholics in religion. Besides these there remain a few Indians—Chippewas, Mohawks, or Iroquois—some of them settled in the villages, others still nomadic hunters.

7. **Industries.** The chief industries of Canada are those of agriculture, stock-raising, and dairy farming, "lumbering" or timber trade and forestry, shipbuilding, fisheries, and mining. An extensive trade is maintained with the United States and England, the exports being timber, fish, and furs, with dairy produce and live stock; meat also is now shipped to England. When the St. Lawrence is closed, the outlet of trade is by railway from Montreal to St. John, Halifax, and Portland in the State of Maine.

8. **Chief Towns.** The capital and seat of government of the Canadian Dominion is at *Ottawa* (population, 1901, 80,000), on the right bank of the river of that name, 87 miles above its confluence with the St. Lawrence, and close to where the river rushes over the splendid cataract called the Chaudière Falls. *Montreal*, however, is the largest city of Canada (268,000). It has extensive trade and manufactures, and from it the magnificent Victoria tubular bridge carries the Grand Trunk Railway of Canada across the St. Lawrence, which is here two miles wide. *Quebec* (69,000), the capital of the lower province, is the great shipping place for the Lower St. Lawrence, and is a picturesque old town, with walls and fortifications. Near it are the memorable Plains of Abraham. *Toronto* (208,000), on the north-west shore of Lake Ontario, is the local capital of the western provinces and the educational centre of the Dominion, possessing a university and numerous schools. Between Canada and the State of Maine some boundary difficulties still remain to be settled.

## NEW BRUNSWICK.

9. The province of New Brunswick, a territory about half the extent of England, lies between the province of Quebec and the State of Maine, and has an eastern coast-line to the Gulf of St.

Lawrence and a southern to the Bay of Fundy, which runs in from the Atlantic to form the peninsula of Nova Scotia.

10. Its highlands and valleys are more completely covered with forest than any other part of British America. Its most considerable rivers are the St. John, which enters from the northern part of the State of Maine and flows south to the Bay of Fundy ; and the Restigouche, which forms the boundary between Quebec and New Brunswick, flowing east to Chaleur Bay. The climate is not so rigorous as that of Quebec.

11. The people of New Brunswick are partly Acadians, or descendants of old French settlers, Anglo-Americans, and British, besides a few remaining Indians. Lumbering, farming, fishing, and shipbuilding are the characteristic industries here, as in Eastern Canada. *Fredericton*, on the St. John River, is the seat of local government of the province and the university town ; but St. John, at the mouth of the river, is the commercial capital.

### NOVA SCOTIA.

12. The peninsula of *Nova Scotia*, nearly severed from New Brunswick by the Bay of Fundy, and *Cape Breton Island*, separated from the latter on its east side by the narrow Gut of Canso, form another province of the Dominion. They may be compared in joint area to Scotland south of the line of the Forth and Clyde, and have, like it, a much broken coast-line ; the island of Cape Breton especially being nearly divided by the long Gulf of Bras d'Or.

13. The province is a most important one, especially on account of its mineral wealth ; both divisions of it have extensive coal-mines ; gold, iron, and gypsum are also abundant. Coming within the influence of the warm Gulf Stream, the climate of Nova Scotia is milder and more equable than that of the inland provinces. Its cod, mackerel, and salmon fisheries rank next in value to those of Newfoundland.

14. The people are of various origin, French, English, Irish, Scotch, and Anglo-American, there being also a few Indians and negroes, the descendants of escaped slaves.

The capital, *Halifax* (population 41,000), on the south-east or Atlantic coast of Nova Scotia, possesses a splendid harbour, and is the chief British naval station in North America. It carries on a large business also in coal and shipbuilding. Sydney, the chief place in Cape Breton Island, has also a good harbour.

15. The *Magdalen Islands*, near the centre of the Gulf of St. Lawrence, are inhabited by about 2000 fishers. This group is now included in Canada. *Sable Island*, 90 miles out in the Atlantic from the coast of Nova Scotia, is formed of sand-hills, and rises on a dangerous bank, which has been the scene of many shipwrecks.

### PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND.

16. This island, which is about the same size as our English county of Norfolk, lies in the wide southern bay of the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and is separated from New Brunswick and Nova Scotia by Northumberland Strait.

It was formerly called St. John, but its name was changed in honour of Edward, Duke of Kent, who was commander-in-chief of the British forces in America at the end of the eighteenth century.

17. Its coasts present cliffs of red sandstone, and are deeply indented. Large portions of its surface have been cleared of their original forests, and its fertile soil yields far more grain and vegetables than its inhabitants require. Its fisheries are also very profitable. People of Scotch descent are most numerous. *Charlottetown*, its little capital, is a busy trading place.

### NORTH-WEST TERRITORY.

18. By this name is now understood all the vast region of North America through which the trading stations of the Hudson Bay Company are scattered. It extends from the boundary of the United States away north to the Arctic Ocean, and from Labrador westward to British Columbia and Alaska, and its area is nearly thirty times that of Great Britain.

19. The greater part of this huge territory is occupied by prairies and interminable forests, which reach away north to the limit of tree-growth, when the landscape changes to that of a monotonous stony or mossy waste of frozen soil, resembling that of the Siberian Tundras. This arctic belt is named the "Barren Grounds," in contrast to the more southerly region, where fur-bearing animals—foxes, wolves, beavers, bears, and otters—moose and rein-deer, besides an immense variety of wild fowl, are found in the forests and prairies.

20. This region abounds in great rivers and lakes, its largest artery being the *Mackenzie*, whose chief tributaries, the Athabasca, Peace, and Liard, rise in the Rocky Mountains. Its channel also expands in the great lakes of Athabasca, the Great Slave and Great Bear Lakes. The Mackenzie and its southern affluents are ice-bound from October till June, and in summer navigated by the Hudson Bay Company's steamers above and below the rapids. The *Back* or Great Fish River drains the north-eastern country to the Arctic Ocean, but almost the whole of the southern region, formerly known as Rupert's Land (a name given in honour of Prince Rupert, one of the founders of the Company in 1670), lies in the basins of the rivers which fall into Hudson Bay. Largest of these is the *Nelson*, the head streams of which are the Saskatchewan rivers, which flow down from the Rocky Mountains to form Lake Winnipeg, from which the Nelson issues.

The *Churchill* is also an important river of the Hudson Bay drainage, carrying to it the surplus waters of the Woolaston and Deer Lakes. These great rivers and lakes, with their many tributaries, form a network of highways throughout this vast territory, and long journeys are accomplished by their means by the traders, who carry their bark canoes from one stream to another by the "portages" at the points where they approach one another most closely.

21. The thinly-scattered population of the North-west Territory consists of European settlers, of half-breeds, and of Indians belonging to a multitude of small tribes, the Ojibways, Chippewayans, and Crees being the most considerable. The Hudson Bay Company has upwards of a hundred stations or "forts" dotted over the wide region, and used as depots for collecting the furs trapped in its neighbourhood. The most important of these is *Fort York*, on a marshy site near the west coast of Hudson Bay, surrounded with forests of stunted pine. The Cr  
in August, when the sea is  
this place from England  
visions for the

forts, and they load with furs, and leave again for home in October, when the ice begins to close the bay again. The construction of the Canadian Pacific Railway, and the agricultural advantages held out by the fertile belt, have recently attracted numerous European settlers. Among the incipient towns of the territory are *Regina*, *Prince Albert*, *Calgary*, and *Victoria*. A revolt, headed by a French half-breed, has not been able to check the rapid settlement of the country.

### MANITOBA.

22. This province (about the size of England and Wales) has for its nucleus the old Red River Settlement, a colony which was begun in 1811. It lies for the most part within the southern fertile belt of the North-west Territory immediately adjoining the boundary of the United States, and includes part of the lower basin of the Assiniboine and of the Red River, which flows from the United States northward to Lake Winnipeg. It is a farming country with a rich soil, and its pastures are admirably adapted for sheep and cattle rearing, which are its chief industries. The winter season, however, lasts for five months.

23. Its seat of government is at *Winnipeg*, near the confluence of the Red River and the Assiniboine, and close to the old Fort Garry. The early settlers of the Red River Settlement were from the Scottish Highlands, who were afterwards joined by Canadians and half-breed hunters from the North-west Territory and Canada. The opening of the Canadian Pacific Railway has given a great impetus to its development, so that between 1881 and 1886 its population increased 74 per cent.

### BRITISH COLUMBIA.

24. Until the year 1858 all the western region of the present Dominion, from the crest of the Rocky Mountains down to the Pacific coast, and from the United States to latitude 60° N., including also the large island of Vancouver, was held by the Hudson Bay Company under lease from the British Crown, with the right of exclusive trade on the mainland, and the island for colonisation purposes. In 1762 the two colonies of British Columbia, or the mainland region, and of Vancouver Island were formed. These two were amalgamated into one colony in 1867, and the colony of British Columbia joined the Canadian Dominion in 1871.

25. British Columbia is a region of great extent, nearly as large as France. Most of it lies on the high broken plateau that stretches between the Rocky Mountains and the Coast range. The coast-line is indented with deep "fiords," and the interior is traversed by the *Fraser* and its tributary the *Thompson*, as well as the *Skeena* and *Stikine*, which flow to the Pacific Ocean. Other important rivers are the Columbia, the Kootenay, the Peace, and its tributaries. Its mountain ranges and slopes are covered with pine forest, affording magnificent timber; between the ranges on the plateau there are



wide grassy prairies. The climate, though milder than that of Canada in the lower valleys, is severe in the higher levels; frost and snow reign there for half the year, and the summer climate is very variable.

Vancouver Island is about 300 miles long, and is traversed by a high pine-covered mountain ridge descending by the walls of fiords and inlets to the rocky coast. The Queen Charlotte Islands also belong to the province.

26. The colony owes its importance mainly to the discovery of gold, silver, and copper in the Fraser valley and other districts, and coal in Vancouver Island. Its population, however, is still very small, amounting (1901) only to 178,660 souls, including about 20,000 Thlinkits, Selishans, Loucheux, Haidas, Nutkas, and other aborigines.

*Victoria*, on the south-east coast of Vancouver Island, is the capital of the colony; population 21,000. *New Westminster* lies on the Fraser, about fifteen miles from its mouth. The Fraser is navigable to this point for large vessels, and for small steamers to *Hope*, 158 miles higher up. *Vancouver*, on Burrard Inlet, is the terminus of the Canadian Pacific Railway, and the spacious harbour of *Esquimalt*, close to Victoria, is the station of the British navy on the Pacific.

## NEWFOUNDLAND.

27. The island of Newfoundland forms a British province, distinct as yet from the Dominion of Canada, and its government extends over the mainland coast strip of Labrador.

Newfoundland, so named from its having been re-discovered by Cabot in 1497, is separated from the mainland of Labrador by the passage called the Strait of Belle-Isle, which is only ten miles wide at its narrowest point. It encloses the Gulf of St. Lawrence on the east, and its remaining coasts are washed by the Atlantic. Its area is about a fourth larger than that of Scotland, and, like that country, its coasts have many deep bays and inlets.

28. Its surface is covered with lakes and ponds, rounded hills called "tolls," swamps, bare mossy tracts, and woods of pine and birch; and its climate is rigorous and severe, especially along the north and east coasts, owing to the quantity of ice which is brought down by the Labrador current from the Greenland seas, and the dense fogs which rise when the cold current meets the warm Gulf Stream from the south. In the interior, however, the climate is more favourable to agriculture, and the fertile valley of the Grand River affords accommodation for a hundred thousand settlers.

29. The cod-fisheries on the vast submarine bank, 400 miles long, which extends south-east from the island, are the greatest and most important in the world. They constitute the wealth and give employment to almost all the inhabitants, who live for the most part along the south-east coast. *St. Johns*, on the coast of the south-eastern peninsula, is the capital, the port and commercial town of the island. The British Atlantic telegraph cable touches American land first at "Heart's Content" in Trinity Bay, one of the inlets which divides off the south-eastern peninsula, and is carried across the south of the island to Placentia Bay, and thence across the Gulf of St. Lawrence to the mainland.

30. The Labrador coast is one of the most desolate regions of the world, but affords good harbours, so that the valuable seal, whale, and salmon and herring fisheries of its seas can be busily prosecuted in the summer months.

The few permanent stations on its rocky coast are occupied by people who, when they are not occupied in the fishery, employ themselves in the capture of fur animals during the long winter. The greater part of the permanent inhabitants are Eskimo, among whom the Moravians keep up the mission settlements of Hopedale, Zoar, Nain, Okak, Hebron, and Ramah.

31. The island of *Anticosti* (a political dependency of Quebec) has no inhabitants save the keepers of its lighthouse, for its 3150 square miles of surface present only rocky hills and swamps. Off the south coast of Newfoundland the islets of *St. Pierre* and *Miquelon* belong to France, and are well peopled by fishers.

32. The arctic coasts of America, and the archipelago of islands which extends beyond closely packed round by thick ice-floes that fill the straits and channels between them, are of no value or interest excepting that each point along their shores has been the scene of the hardest exploits of the voyagers who discovered them during the long-continued attempts to find a navigable north-west passage to the Pacific. The sole human inhabitants of the southern parts of this dreary region are a few wandering families of Eskimo, who live in huts of snow-blocks, travel about in sledges drawn by dogs, live on the flesh of the seal, and clothe themselves with its skin.

## ALASKA.

1. The great promontory of western Arctic America nearest Asia, marked off by the 141st meridian of west longitude, as well as a part of the coast-land extending southward along the Pacific to about the parallel of 54° N., with its dependent islands, was formerly the hunting-ground of a Russian fur company. But in 1867 this great region, about ten times larger than England, was sold to the United States for £1,440,000, and is now the Alaska Territory. Area 590,884 square miles ; population (1900) 63,600.

2. It is for the most part a forest country, excepting along the bare frozen lands next the Arctic Sea, and is valuable chiefly for its fur animals and for the sea-otters of its coasts. Gold, as well as coal and other useful minerals, have been discovered. The great river *Yukon*, rising in the mountains of the north part of British Columbia, traverses it.

3. In 1900 the population exceeded 63,500, including 29,500 Eskimo, Aleuts, and Indians, and 30,500 whites. These have increased greatly since the discovery of gold at various points, the chief mining centres being *Fairbanks* in the interior and *Nome* on the west coast. Other permanent stations are *Juneau*, the capital, *Skagway*, and the former capital, *Sitka* or *New Archangel* on Baranov Island. Output of gold (1905), £3,000,000. A railway 120 miles long runs from Skagway to *White House Rapids* in the Canadian Yukon region.

4. Of the sixty *Aleutian* islands, which curve round the Bering Sea towards Kamtchatka, the largest are Umalashka, Umnak, Atcha, and Atta. All are volcanic, craggy, and desolate, with a stunted growth of scrub and grass ; but the surrounding waters teem with fishes, seals, and sea-otters.

UNITED STATES.<sup>1</sup>

1. **Extent.**—The republic of the United States is by far the most populous, wealthy, and progressive country of all the New World. It occupies the most valuable portion of the North American continent, the whole of it (with the exception of the territory of Alaska) lying within the temperate zone, between Canada on the north and Mexico on the south, and reaching across from the Atlantic to the Pacific Ocean. Its boundary towards the Canadian Dominion passes through the Haro or northern channel of the Strait of San Juan de Fuca, south of Vancouver Island, and thence along the 49th parallel of latitude to Lake Superior; then midway through the centre of the great lakes to the St. Lawrence, and down that river to the 45th parallel, and an irregular boundary which separates New Brunswick from the States of New York and Maine, terminating at Passamaquoddy Bay. In the south the Mexican frontier runs from the Pacific coast, northward of the peninsula of California, to the Rio Grande del Norte, which it follows to the Gulf of Mexico. From Atlantic to Pacific, the breadth of the United States is not less than 2500 miles; and from north to south the country extends through 24 degrees of latitude, or nearly 1700 miles. Its area may be best compared with that of Europe itself, or to fifty times that of England and Wales.

2 **Physical Features.**—The surface of the United States naturally divides itself into four great regions—viz. the Atlantic highland and plain in the east, the central Mississippi valley, the western highland, and the Pacific slope.

3. (1) The Atlantic section includes the curving ridges of the *Alleghany Mountains*, which extend from the St. Lawrence south-westward towards the Gulf of Mexico. Their highest point is in the seaward ridge called the Blue Mountains, near the centre of the length of the chain. Black Dome Mountain, the summit, is 6707 feet high. The gradual slope from the Alleghanyes to the sea is named the Atlantic plain, it varies in width from being a mere strip of coast in the north to a breadth of 300 miles in the south. The drainage of this division is mainly into the Atlantic Ocean, its most important rivers being the *Hudson*, which reaches the sea at New York; the *Delaware*, flowing into the bay of its name past Philadelphia; the *Susquehanna* and *Potomac*, entering the spacious inlet of Chesapeake Bay; the *Roanoke*, *Cape Fear River*, *Santee*, *Savannah*, and *Altamaha*.

Though wholly in the temperate zone, this section has a variety of climate, colder on the north and warmer towards the south; its winters colder than those of the Pacific slopes of the continent in the same latitudes. Its natural

	Area in sq. miles.	Pop. (1900).
1 United States, without Alaska	2,970,233	75,024,475
Hawaii territory	6,500	154,000
Total, with Alaska	3,567,562	75,803,387

resources and wealth lie mainly in its mines of iron and coal, in its timber-yielding woods, its fertile soil, its navigable rivers, water power, and generally advantageous situation for commerce. It has thus become the seat of the greatest manufacturing industry of the States, and is likewise busy in agriculture and commerce.

4. (2) The central region is an immense valley or basin, reaching from the long western slope of the Alleghanies across to the eastern base of the Rocky Mountains, and occupying fully half the area of the United States. In general it has a gradual slope from the "Height of Land," along the northern boundary of the States next the British Possessions, to where it merges in the low shores of the Gulf of Mexico in the south. Much of it is undulating and some parts are hilly, especially where the Washita and Ozark hills run out eastward from the western highland towards the Mississippi.

The *Mississippi-Missouri*, one of the greatest rivers in the world, drains this broad central basin southward to the Gulf of Mexico. The main tributary, the *Missouri*, rises in, and receives its tributaries from, the Rocky Mountains, and has a course of nearly 3000 miles before it joins the Mississippi. The latter more voluminous river has a shorter course from a cluster of small lakes not far west of Lake Superior. The great affluent of the united river from the east is the *Ohio*; and from the west the *Arkansas* and *Red River* are the largest of those which flow to it from the Rocky Mountain slope. The Mississippi itself is navigable for 1200 miles upward from the sea to the Falls of St. Anthony in  $45^{\circ}$  N., but each of its main tributaries also affords a waterway for commerce. Several large rivers also find their way south independently to the Gulf of Mexico. The most important of these are the *Appalachicola* and *Mobile*, east of the Mississippi; and the *Brazos* and *Colorado*, with the boundary river, the *Rio Grande del Norte*, westward of it. The climate of the northern portions of the Mississippi basin is excessive—the summers being hot and sultry, the winters cold with heavy snows; but towards the Gulf of Mexico the climate becomes semi-tropical, and the winters mild and pleasant.

Rich natural prairie land is characteristic of all the central basin of the Mississippi, so that its great industry, now that it has been occupied by civilised men, is that of agriculture. In the north wheat and maize are the chief crops; in the southern region, cotton, tobacco, and sugar are the characteristic products of the lowlands, indeed this is the greatest cotton-growing region in the world. The northern region is also to some extent forest-covered, and it is rich in valuable minerals, so that here, as in the Atlantic slope, manufactures are rapidly extending.

Towards the base of the Rocky Mountains, in the west, a belt of dry country, deficient in rainfall, is reached. Much of it in the spaces between the rivers is sterile, and the southern portion of it has been named the "American Desert."

5. (3) The western highland includes the grand range of the *Rocky Mountains* and the *Sierra Nevada* and *Cascade* chain, with the broad plateau region which extends between them.

The Rocky Mountains form the great water-parting of the United States. Towards the east, as we have seen, they send off great tributaries to the Mississippi. Towards the west the two largest rivers which descend to the Pacific from these heights are the *Columbia*, on the north, flowing across the plateau and down through the Cascade range with rapid current; and the *Colorado*, which has cut for itself a most remarkable "cañon," or narrow gorge in the plateau, through which it rushes, several thousand feet beneath the general level of the country, to the head of the Gulf of California.

These two rivers thus mark out a northern and a southern basin in the

plateau region of the western highland : a third division between these two is known as the "*Great Basin of Utah*," and has the Great Salt Lake for its central point. All this highland region within the enclosing mountains is characterised by drought and sterility, so that the most of it is valueless for agriculture ; but, as if in compensation for this, it is exceedingly rich in mines of silver and gold, so that mining is the great occupation of its inhabitants.

6. (4) The Pacific slope descends to the ocean from the crests of the Sierra Nevada and Cascade ranges over the lower elevations and coast hills, which enclose between them the great valley of California, with its port of San Francisco, and the valleys of Oregon. The slope averages 150 miles in width. Vast forests cover the outer slopes of the mountains ; the great Wellingtonia pines of the Sierra Nevada are the hugest trees in the world. Gold, silver, and quicksilver are abundant in California, and the rich soil of the coast valley yields heavy crops of grain and vegetables. Hence mining, agriculture, and forestry are the leading industries of this division, with the outward commerce that rises from these, and is facilitated by the neighbourhood of the sea.

The climate here differs from that of the corresponding Atlantic slope in being generally milder and in being divided into two seasons, the rainy winter and the dry summer.

7. *People.*—We have sketched the early history of the United States in a former chapter, and have shown how its Atlantic borders were peopled by settlers from almost every country of Western Europe. It was not, however, till after peace had been established between England and the independent States in 1815 that immigration to this part of America began to flow on a great scale. The famines of the following years gave the first impulse to immigration from Germany, and from that time onward an uninterrupted stream of population has kept on flowing into the United States. The numbers of emigrants from all parts of Europe in the ten years previous to 1830 was 150,000 ; in the ten years between 1895 and 1905 the numbers had risen to nearly 5½ millions. Though the population thus increased mainly by additions from many nations, the greater number of the earlier colonists and a great part of those who arrived later were British, so that the English language and English customs became those of the new country. Perhaps mainly through the influence of climate, however, an American type of men has been developed in the United States from the European stock, possessing characteristics of feature and mode of thought which enable it to be clearly distinguished from the British. We have also already touched upon the history of African slavery in the United States, as well as of those events which led to its abolition throughout the country, and to the amendment of the original constitution, by which all former slaves were admitted to the privileges of citizenship. Out of the whole population in 1900, 66 millions were white men and 8,840,000 "men of colour," or people of African origin. The Indian aborigines within the limits of the States had in 1908 been reduced to 263,000, and all the remnants of their tribes are now completely under the control of the government of the United States. Though the numbers of these Indian aborigines have been very greatly diminished by the long-continued conflicts with the ever-advancing tide of white men, it is to be remembered that even at the time of the discovery they were by no means a numerous race. In 1900 there were 90,000 Chinese and 24,600 Japanese immigrants, although in 1882 Chinese immigration was practically prohibited. In 1906 the total population of the Union was estimated at 83,880,000.

8. *Religion and Education.*—As the constitution of the United States grants perfect equality to all creeds and religions, nearly all the sects and denominations existing in Europe are represented ; the most numerous bodies, however, are those of the dissenters from the Church of England, the Methodists,



Baptists, and Congregationalists. Education is general, and every effort is made by Government to promote it; yet, owing to the recent existence of slavery, and the constant influx of numbers of uneducated emigrants, a large proportion of people ignorant of the first rudiments of knowledge still exists. There are 130 colleges for training in general knowledge or particular professions, the oldest of all being the Harvard University of Cambridge in Massachusetts, which dates from the year 1636.

9. **Government.**—By the constitution of the Republic of the United States the government of the nation is entrusted to three separate authorities; the executive power, vested in a President elected for a period of four years, aided in his administration by a Cabinet of ministers; the legislative, resting in a Congress, consisting of a Senate and House of Representatives; and the judicial, the supreme court, for the administration of civil and criminal law, holding annual session at Washington.

In 1873 the territory of the United States was divided for military purposes into eight departments, but the standing army is limited to 25,000, and is scattered in small detachments over the country, but chiefly round the districts inhabited by the aboriginal Indians. The naval force is at present inconsiderable, but is being considerably strengthened.

10. **Division.**—The political division of the country is into 45 *States*, 6 organised *Territories*, and an Indian Territory; the *District of Columbia*, which surrounds the capital city of *Washington*, and the separate Territory of *Alaska*. Each of the States has a separate constitution, which is of the same form in all of them, a governor and legislature administering their internal affairs. Each returns two senators and a number of representatives to the Congress of the Union proportioned to the population at the latest census. The organised Territories are those portions of the far western region which have not yet advanced to the grade of States; they are represented in Congress, however, by one delegate from each. The immense extent of land within the boundary of the United States which is not yet inhabited or cultivated is held to be national property, at the disposal of the Congress; this public domain is surveyed and divided for the purposes of sale into “townships” of six miles square, which are again subdivided into “sections.”

These States and Territories may be more conveniently classified according to their geographical position into four groups, corresponding to the four natural divisions of the country previously described—viz. the Atlantic States, the Central States, the States and Territories of the western highland, and the States and Territories of the Pacific coast.

11. (1) *The Atlantic States.*—This group may be conveniently divided into three sections, as follows:—

A. THE NEW ENGLAND STATES	{	Maine.
		New Hampshire.
		Vermont.
		Massachusetts.
		Rhode Island.
		Connecticut.
B. THE MIDDLE ATLANTIC STATES	{	New York.
		New Jersey.
		Pennsylvania.
		Maryland.
		Delaware.
		(District of Columbia.)



## C. THE SOUTH ATLANTIC STATES

{	Virginia.
	West Virginia.
	North Carolina.
	South Carolina.
	Georgia.
	Florida.

12. Some physical features are common to the whole group of the Atlantic States. Nearly throughout its extent we find first a level sandy plain, extending from the seaboard into the interior; then farther inland a rolling hilly belt called the middle region, which in turn rises into the long ridges of the Alleghany system of mountains. There are, however, marked differences between the divisions of the group. In the first place, the great difference of latitude between the extremities of the group north and south introduces a wide variation of climate. The northern division, or that of the New England States, belongs to the colder part of the temperate zone, the southern to its warmer belt. The ice formed during the hard winter in Maine and its surrounding States is very acceptable in the warm winterless southern States of Carolina and Florida; cotton, rice, and oranges, which will not grow in the New England States, flourish in the southern division. In the New England division the forests and the rapid streams, giving abundant water power, have made "lumbering" and shipbuilding the characteristic industries of that section; the coal and iron of the Middle States again, and their easy communication through fine harbours on the Atlantic, and by river and canal and railway with the western interior, have rendered mining, manufacturing, and commerce the great occupation of that division; while the warm climate and wide coast plains of the southern division give it pre-eminent advantages for agriculture, so that the cultivation of cotton, tobacco, and rice has become its distinctive industry.

13. The Atlantic States, being the oldest settled and most densely peopled region of the country, include the greater number of the large cities of the United States. *Boston* (1906, est 602,000), on Massachusetts Bay, named in honour of some of the Pilgrim Fathers, who came from Boston in Lincolnshire, is the great city of the New England division. It ranks second in foreign commerce, and is specially distinguished as the literary metropolis, and for its great public libraries and schools. *Cambridge*, the seat of Harvard University, is one of its suburbs. The manufacturing town of *Providence* (203,000), in the State of Rhode Island, is the second place in importance in New England.

The Middle Atlantic States, however, are those in which are found most of the largest commercial and manufacturing centres. Foremost of these is *New York* (4,113,000 with *Brooklyn* now incorporated), the great business emporium of the New World, second only in commercial importance to London. It lies at the mouth of the Hudson, on the narrow island of Manhattan. Round its magnificent harbour of New York Bay, enclosed between Long and Staten Islands, the suburbs of *Jersey City*, and *Hoboken* have risen into great cities. Two-thirds of the imports brought into the United States enter here. Broadway, in New York, is a grand street of miles in length, lined with great hotels and splendid buildings of marble and iron; and the Central Park is one of the finest of pleasure-gardens. *Philadelphia* (1,442,000), on the Delaware River in Pennsylvania, comes next to New York and Chicago in population, and its manufactures exceed those of nearly all other towns in value. *Baltimore* (554,000), in Maryland, on Chesapeake Bay, is a great commercial city and seaport. The small district of Columbia, on the Potomac River, enclosed within the State of Maryland, is a political territory surrounding the city of Washington.

(308,000), the capital of the United States, where the public buildings are situated in which all the public business of the government—legislative, executive, and judicial—is conducted. Besides these four great centres of population in the Middle Atlantic States, we may note the manufacturing town of *Newark* (290,000), in New Jersey; *Pittsburg* (375,000) and *Alleghany*, the centres of the coal-mining region of Pennsylvania, with the most extensive ironworks, foundries, and glassworks in the United States; *Buffalo* (382,000), on Lake Erie, in New York State, where the great canal from the lake to the Hudson River begins; *Albany*, also in the State of New York, at the head of the navigation of the Hudson River, where the canal to Lake Erie terminates; and *Rochester*, in the same state, possessing the most extensive fruit and ornamental tree nurseries in the world.

The Southern Atlantic States, being more purely agricultural, have few very large towns. Of these *Richmond* (87,000), in Virginia, at the head of the tide-water of the James River, is the most important, containing extensive tobacco factories and warehouses. *Charleston* (56,000), on the coast of South Carolina, is the chief port of this division.

14. (2) The *Central Group* of States naturally falls into two divisions; that of the North Central States, and that of the South Central or Gulf States, as follows:—

NORTH CENTRAL STATES	{	Kentucky.
		Ohio.
		Indiana.
		Michigan.
		Illinois.
		Wisconsin.
		Missouri.
		Iowa.
		Minnesota.
		Alabama.
SOUTH CENTRAL STATES	{	Mississippi.
		Louisiana.
		Arkansas.
		Tennessee.

15. The whole region embraced by this group of States has the general character of level or undulating land, at no very considerable elevation above the sea, except where it approaches the Alleghany mountain system, and forms a wide plateau of moderate elevation. The northern division is rich in natural advantages of fertile soil, great deposits of valuable minerals, extensive forests, and ready means of communication, either by the great lakes which form their boundary on the north, or by the vast rivers Mississippi and Ohio and their great affluents. Agriculture and grazing, manufacturing, mining, and lumbering are thus widely-spread industries of the North Central States, and they export enormous quantities of wheat, flour, pork, and bacon, beef, cheese, salt, wool, copper, and timber. In the southern division the warmer and moister climate and the extreme fertility of the soil render it admirably adapted for the growth of cotton, rice, and sugar-cane, so that the cultivation of these staples has become characteristic of the Gulf States. Mining and manufacturing, though of secondary importance, are also being developed.

16 The three great towns of the North Central States are those of *St. Louis* (649,000) on the Mississippi, a little south of the confluence of the Missouri; *Chicago* (2,050,000) in Illinois, on the shore of Lake Michigan, a city whose rapid growth in population and commercial importance is unparalleled, and *Cincinnati* (315,000), a great and prosperous commercial city on the Ohio.

*Louisville* (226,005) in Kentucky, *Cleveland* (160,000) on Lake Erie in the State of Ohio, *Milwaukee* (318,000) a great wheat market in Wisconsin, and *Detroit* (354,000) in Michigan, with the best harbour of any on the great lakes, are other places of importance in this division.

The metropolis of the Gulf States is *New Orleans* (314,000) in Louisiana, on the left bank of the Mississippi, near its mouth. It is the greatest cotton market in the world.

17. (3) The third group embraces the States and Territories which extend from the plains west of the Mississippi across the Rocky Mountains to the plateau lands beyond. They may be divided, according to natural features, as follows:—

THE STATES AND TERRITORIES OF THE  
PLAINS.

{ Texas.  
Indian Territory. }  
Oklahoma „ }  
Kansas.  
Nebraska.  
North Dakota.  
South Dakota.

THE STATES AND TERRITORY OF THE  
ROCKY MOUNTAIN REGION.

{ Colorado.  
New Mexico Territory.  
Wyoming.  
Montana.

18. The region embraced by the States lying along the plains at the eastern base of the Rocky Mountains may be described generally as undulating, treeless, and grass-covered, sloping very gradually from the mountains towards the basin of the Mississippi. These enormous grass plains afford rich pasturage, so that cattle grazing is the leading industry. Texas especially possesses immense wealth of cattle and horses. The Rocky Mountain region, rising high above sea-level, has a cool and remarkably dry climate; its valleys also afford fine pastures; but the rich mines of gold, silver, copper, lead, and coal in the mountains themselves make mining the great occupation of this division. The scenery of this mountain region, its giant peaks and deep gorges, is perhaps the finest in the world. In the basin of the Yellowstone, an upper tributary of the Missouri, so many natural wonders are presented, that a section of the mountain region has been set apart by the Congress of the United States in perpetuity as a "national park." Within its inclosure are innumerable boiling springs and geysers, many grand waterfalls, deep cañons or gorges, beautiful lakes, and high mountain peaks.

19. (4) The fourth group of States and Territories extends from west of the Rocky Mountains to the shores of the Pacific.

<sup>1</sup> In 1906 Indian Territory and Oklahoma entered the Union as the State of Oklahoma

PACIFIC STATES AND TERRITORIES.	{	California.
		Nevada.
		Oregon.
		Washington.
		Idaho Territory.
		Utah.
	{	Arizona Territory.

20. The greater part of this group occupies the broad high plateau at an elevation of from 4000 to 8000 feet above the sea, which is supported between the Rocky Mountain ranges and the Sierra Nevada and Cascade Mountains along the Pacific side. It has two strongly-contrasted natural divisions: that of the dry, almost rainless, plateau lands, most of which present an aspect of complete barrenness or desert covered with sage-brush; and of the well-watered Pacific slope with its forest-covered hills. The region is, perhaps, the richest in metals of any in the globe, abounding in gold, silver, quicksilver, coal, and many other valuable minerals. The forests of the outer mountain slopes afford inexhaustible supplies of timber. The most wealthy and populous of the States of this region is that of California, for it has not only immense mineral wealth, but the fertile soil of its valleys is most favourable to agriculture, and to the production of grains and fruits both of the temperate and semi-tropical zones, while its sea front and fine harbours give easy outlet for its products and command of the traffic across the Pacific. Its chief city and seaport of *San Francisco* (343,000) is the commercial emporium and the chief manufacturing city of the Pacific coast. It carries on a very large trade with China and Japan, the Sandwich Isles, and other parts of the Pacific; suffered greatly from a violent earthquake in 1907.

### MEXICO.<sup>1</sup>

1. Mexico includes the south-western portion of North America, where the continent is narrowed between the gulf that reaches in from the Atlantic and the opposite shores of the Pacific. On the north its frontier along the Rio Grande and across to the head of the peninsula of California is conterminous with that of the United States; in the south its boundary touches the State of Guatemala in the Central American isthmus. Mexico possesses an extent of territory which is more than eight times larger than Great Britain.

2. Relief.—The form of the country is given by the great mountain ranges of the western side of North America, the prolongations southward of the chains of the Sierra Nevada and Rocky Mountains. These ranges approach one another in Mexico, supporting between them a huge wedge-shaped mass of heights and plateaus, which may well be compared with the highland of Abyssinia in Africa. Mexico has thus a rapid slope both to the Pacific and to the Atlantic, and the interior of the country lies at elevations of from 4000 to 8000 feet above the level of the sea. Towards the south a band of colossal volcanic peaks extends diagonally across it. The mountains named Citlaltepētli,

---

	Area.	Pop. (1900).
<sup>1</sup> Mexico (1900)	765,000	13,606,000

or Peak of Orizaba, Iztaccihuatl, and Popocatepetl, with the remarkable dome of Jorullo, formed by an eruption in 1759, and the cones of Colima and Ceboruco, being the chief summits.

3. **Rivers.**—From their rapid fall the rivers of such a mountainous region could never be of value for transport or communication. The *Rio Grande del Norte*, the boundary river, is only navigable for 60 miles up from the Gulf of Mexico, and the largest interior river—the *Rio Grande de Santiago*, flowing west to the Pacific—is barred across by many waterfalls, though its upper course expands to form *Lake Chapala*, the largest sheet of water in Mexico, fully 50 miles in length.

4. **Climate and Landscape.** The Tropic of Cancer passes centrally through Mexico, so that it lies just on the border of the torrid zone. The climate, however, is governed to a far greater extent by elevation than by position in latitude, and distinct climates are recognised at different stages, just as in the plateau of Abyssinia. The low coast land and the maritime region below an elevation of 2000 feet, called the *Tierra Caliente*, presents all the characteristics of tropical lands, and there the indigo, cotton, sugarcane, bananas, and other fruits of the equatorial zone are found. The decay of the rank vegetation along the low coasts here produces the malaria that gives rise to the dangerous yellow fever, which is the scourge of these shores in summer. Above an elevation of 2000 feet, and up the slopes of the mountains to a height of about 5000 feet, a climate is found in which the landscape takes the aspect of that of the temperate zone, and oaks and cypresses become the characteristic trees, and maize and the cereals known in Europe are cultivated. This stage is known as the *Tierra Templada*. Here the deadly fevers of the coast belt are unknown. Still higher, above 5000 feet, a cool region is reached, which is known as the *Tierra Fria*. This includes the summit of the table land and the pine-covered slopes of the mountains up to the height at which some of the peaks are capped with perennial snows. Much of this high table-land is valuable only for pasture; towards the north and north-east, where the plateau is wider, the landscape becomes bare and dry, and salt lakes like those of the plateau region of the western United States appear. Deeply-cut "cañons" or "barrancas," gorges with steep walls furrowed out by the mountain torrents, are characteristic of the plateau.

5. Mexico is very rich in gold, silver, quicksilver, and other metals, and the soil is generally fertile, so that mining and agriculture are the leading occupations; but from the former political unrest and the generally low social relations most industries have declined. Marked progress, however, with the communications (roads and railways) and in other respects has been made under the enlightened administration of the present ruler, Porfirio Diaz. Metals, vanilla, sarsaparilla, coffee, sugar, cotton, cochineal, and jalap, are the most important articles of export.

6. **Inhabitants and Religion.** The population of Mexico consists mainly of the indigenous Indian race, and of the dominant Spaniards or their descendants. Spaniards born in Europe are now very few in number, but the government of the country is in the hands of the "Creoles," or people of Spanish descent born in Mexico. They number about 20 per cent, mixed Hispano-Americans 43 per cent, and full-blood Indians 35 per cent of the whole population. The Roman Catholic is the religion of the country, but all beliefs are tolerated, and education, now free and compulsory, is making steady progress.

7. By the present constitution Mexico is a federative republic of twenty-six States, a Federal District, and two Territories, bound together under a supreme government, but each permitted to manage its own local affairs. A Congress consisting of a House of Representatives from the States and a



Senate, holds the legislative power, and the executive is in the hands of a President elected by the Congress for a term of four years. The laws, however, are not well enforced.

8. The capital city of *Mexico* is very picturesquely situated in a high open valley near the centre of the plateau, at an elevation of nearly 7500 feet above the sea, and near the border of a large lake. The majestic peak of Popocatepetl rises at the southern side of the plain. The city has splendid buildings, including a great cathedral and eighty churches. Some of its streets and squares are wide and spacious, but other quarters have narrow and filthy lanes, the city itself representing the wealth and decay of the State. *Puébla*, east of the capital, among the mountains, is the second town and the most industrious place in Mexico. *Guadalajara*, north-west, is also a city of magnificent palaces and churches. *Vera Cruz*, founded by Cortes, is the only port on the Atlantic. On the Pacific side the chief seaports are *Mazatlan* and *Acapulco*, with a fine harbour. In 1906 there were 13,515 miles of railway, and the system joins that of the United States at *El Paso* on the Rio Grande. One of the lines, opened 1907, runs from *Coatzacoalcas* on the Atlantic across the Tehuantepec isthmus to *Salina Cruz* on the Pacific (192 miles).

### CENTRAL AMERICAN STATES.<sup>1</sup>

1. The portion of the narrower belt of land joining North and South America that is occupied by the Central American States reaches from Yucatan to the Isthmus of Panama, which, formerly a department of the Republic of Colombia, asserted its independence in 1903, and now forms one of the Central American States. The width of this section of the continent varies from 70 to about 300 miles, and its extent is somewhat greater than twice that of Great Britain.

2. Relief.—Its coast-lines differ remarkably in configuration. That towards the Caribbean Sea on the east is deeply invaded by the Bay of Honduras, and reaches out seaward in submarine banks from its low shores; that towards the Pacific, on the other hand, is comparatively straight, and falls steeply to the deep ocean. Instead of a continuous mountain range we have here a series of table-lands attaining their greatest width in the northern State of Guatemala, and interrupted by deep intervening valleys, and flanked by rows of commanding volcanoes, such as those of *Agua* and *Fuego* (13,980 feet). In no other part of the world excepting the East Indies are volcanoes more numerous and violent in their eruptions.

3. Rivers and Lakes.—These States have the advantage of excellent harbours on both seas, and a few of their rivers, such as *Dulce* and *Motagua* flowing into the Bay of Honduras, and the *San Juan* falling into the Carib-

	Area.	Pop. (1903-05).
<sup>1</sup> Republic of Guatemala . . . .	48,300	1,842,000
„ Honduras . . . .	46,000	500,000
„ Salvador . . . .	7,230	1,007,000
„ Nicaragua . . . .	49,500	500,000
„ Costa Rica . . . .	18,400	334,000
„ Panama . . . .	38,200	400,000
Colony of British Honduras . .	7,560	37,000
Central American States . .	<u>210,190</u>	<u>4,620,000</u>



bean Sea, are to some extent navigable. The last is the overflow of the large *Lake of Nicaragua*, which has an extent of more than 6000 square miles, and which is deep enough to be navigable by large vessels.

4. **Climate and Landscape.**—The whole country is within the torrid zone, but the elevations of its plateau give it a temperate climate in many portions. As it lies across the path of the prevailing easterly trade winds which sweep from the Atlantic over the Caribbean Sea, bringing an abundant supply of moisture, Central America is copiously watered, especially on that side of it which faces the direction of these winds. Thus it comes about that all the eastern slope to the Caribbean Sea is densely forest-covered; so densely that many parts of it have remained to the present day closed to civilisation, and are inhabited only by wandering Indian tribes, while the more open and cultivable lands on the Pacific side have been settled by Europeans or their descendants.

5. **Products.** The Central American States derive importance first from their geographical position on the isthmus between the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans, and next from the abundance of their natural products, their wealth of fine timbers, such as mahogany, cedar, and dyewoods, the valuable balsams, sarsaparilla, and indiarubber obtained in their forests, and the cultivated coffee, cacao, indigo, and cochineal.

6. **People.**—Almost everywhere in Central America the aborigines, the so-called Indians, are by far the most numerous element of population; though divided into various tribes, they have the common features of a copper-brown colour, robust and muscular figure, straight black hair, and high cheek-bones. The Whites or Creoles, descendants chiefly of the Spanish invaders, constitute only a small though dominant section of the inhabitants; besides these the Mestizos or half-castes form a considerable element. Negroes, descendants of those introduced, are in very limited numbers.

7. The six Central American Republics. —(1) *Guatemala*, the most northerly, has the largest number of inhabitants. Its capital, situated on a green plain 4500 feet above the sea, and 40 miles inland from the Pacific coast, takes the name *Nueva Guatemala* since the former capital westward of it was destroyed by earthquakes in 1773. *Isabal*, on the Atlantic, and *San José*, on the Pacific, are the two outlet ports of the country.

(2) *Honduras* reaches across the isthmus from its bay on the Caribbean Sea to the Gulf of Fonseca on the Pacific side, and is for the most part forest-covered. Its small capital of *Tegucigalpa* lies near the centre of the State. *Omoa* and *Trujillo* are its chief ports on the Atlantic side.

(3) *Salvador*, the smallest of the republics, extends along the Pacific side south-west of Honduras, and may be compared to Wales in area. Its capital, of *Nuevo San Salvador*, so named because the older city near it has been repeatedly destroyed by earthquake, is near the centre of the State, and is joined by a good road to the port of *Libertad*.

(4) *Nicaragua* is also still in great part a wild forest country. Its most valuable belt is that which extends along the valley of the San Juan river, and round the shores of lakes Nicaragua and Managua. The seat of government is now at *Managua*, a small town on the southern border of the lake of its name, and on the slope of an active volcano. *Greytown* or *San Juan del Norte*, at the mouth of the San Juan, is the chief outlet to the Atlantic.

(5) *Costa Rica* ("Rich Coast") is the most flourishing of the Central American States. Its capital, *San José*, on the central heights, 4500 feet above the sea, is united by road to *Punta Arenas*, in the Gulf of Nicoya, on the Pacific, and by railway to the port of *Limon*, on the Caribbean Sea.

(6) *Panama*, nominally independent, is practically an annexe of the

United States, which owns both the inter-oceanic railway opened in 1855 between *Colon* (*Aspinwall*), on the Atlantic, and *Panama*, the capital, on the Pacific side (47 miles), and also the inter-oceanic canal now in progress between the same points. Begun by de Lesseps in 1881, but suspended in 1889, the cutting of the canal was resumed in 1903 by the United States Government, which had acquired all rights in the scheme with a view to its completion about 1914.

8. *British Honduras* or Belize, a territory extending between Guatemala and the coast of the Bay of Honduras, is valuable mainly from the mahogany and logwood of its forests, which are shipped in large quantities.

## WEST INDIES.

1. The West India Islands form a long archipelago that reaches in a curve from between Florida and Yucatan round to near the Venezuelan shores of South America. Their line thus constitutes a broken barrier separating the open Atlantic from the mediterranean Gulf of Mexico and the Caribbean Sea. The islands differ very considerably in size—from that of Cuba, which is larger than Ireland, down to the smallest rock, and they also exhibit great diversity in elevation and aspect.

2. **Divisions.**—Three chief divisions are recognised in the archipelago. First stand the *Greater Antilles*, including Cuba, Haiti, Puerto Rico, and Jamaica, which are large islands with diversified surface, reaching up to heights of over 8000 or 9000 feet; second, the low, flat, coralline group of the *Bahamas* or Lucayas, lying outside of the former, towards the Atlantic; and third, the chain of the *Lesser Antilles*, a series of volcanic mountain tops, stretching from the most easterly of the Greater Antilles to near the coasts of South America.

3. **Climate.**—Though they lie almost exclusively within the torrid zone, the climate of the West India Islands is modified by the influence of the surrounding seas, by elevation in many of them, and by the prevailing trade-wind which blows over them. The northern islands, including Cuba and Haiti, have a rainy season during the summer months. Jamaica and the southern islands, on the other hand, have a double rainy season—in summer, and again towards the end of the year. Yellow fever is the scourge of the coasts of the islands during the rain, and the group is exposed to occasional hurricanes of furious strength that are most frequent in the months of August and September.

4. **Products.**—The warm climate and copious rains render the West Indies admirably suited to the growth of sugar-cane, tobacco, and tropical fruits. Hence the staple articles of commercial produce are sugar, rum, and molasses; cotton, coffee, and cacao; indigo and dyes; spices, oranges, bananas, pine-apples, and many other fine fruits, besides valuable hardwoods.

5. **Population.**—The inhabitants of the archipelago, numbering nearly five and a half millions, are of three great classes. The most numerous class, comprising about three-fourths of all, is that of the *Negroes* imported from Africa to replace the aborigines who had perished under the early Spanish régime; next come *Europeans*, or their descendants, from various nations; and third, *Mulattos*, or people of mixed European and negro blood.

6. At the present time the islands are held as follows :—

		Square miles.	Pop. (1900-05).	
I. THE GREATER ANTILLES	Cuba (a Creole republic)	44,000	1,573,000	
	Haiti {	Haiti (a Negro republic)	10,200	960,000
		Santo Domingo (Mulatto republic)	18,000	420,000
	Puerto Rico (United States)	3,600	950,000	
	Jamaica (a British colony)	4,200	800,000	
	Caymans (British)	225	3,600	
II. THE BAHAMAS (including the Turks)		5,500	54,000	
III. THE LESSER ANTILLES	Virgin Islands {	British	58	5,000
		Danish (Santa Cruz, etc.)	138	34,000
		United States	66	4,000
	Anguilla (British)	35	3,800	
	St. Martin {	French	200	3,600
		Dutch	18	4,000
	St. Bartholomew (French)	8	3,000	
	Saba and St. Eustatius (Dutch)	13	5,000	
	St. Christopher or St. Kitts (British)	68	30,000	
	Nevis (British)	50	13,000	
	Antigua with Barbuda (British)	170	35,000	
	Montserrat (British)	32	12,000	
	Guadeloupe (French)	688	182,000	
	Marie-Galante (French)	75	13,300	
	Dominica (British)	291	29,000	
	Martinique (French)	380	204,000	
	St. Lucia (British)	233	58,000	
	St. Vincent (British)	132	48,000	
	Grenada (British)	133	70,000	
	Barbados (British)	166	200,000	
	Tobago (British)	114	20,000	
	Trinidad (British)	1,754	255,000	
	Los Roques, etc. (Venezuelan)	90	(uninhabited)	
	Curaçao, Buen Ayre, Oruba (Dutch)	405	48,000	
Total		100,842	6,041,300	

One result of the Spanish-American war of 1898 was the disappearance of the Spanish flag from the West Indies. Cuba, after the expulsion of the Spaniards, became a quasi-independent republic under the ægis of the United States, while that power annexed Puerto Rico, which is now under a governor with a Legislative Assembly constituted by the Council and the popularly elected House of Delegates.

7. *Cuba*, the largest and most important of the West India Islands, lies midway between Florida and Yucatan. It is about 750 miles in length, though only 70 miles in average width. A high cross range, called the Sierra Maestra, or the Copper Mountains, gives its form to the south-eastern portion of the island, where it is broadest, and from that a central ridge extends through the length of Cuba, forming the water-parting of its streams. Much of the island is covered with dense timber forests, and the low coastlands are fringed with lagoons. The cultivated tracts produce sugar, tobacco, coffee, cotton, and indigo in great abundance. Cuba yields more sugar than any other country, and its tobacco is renowned all over the world.

*Havana* (population, 1902, 262,000), its capital, on the north coast, is by far the most important city and the finest port of the West Indies, and it is one of the great sugar markets of the world. *Matanzas* (45,000), a seaport

55 miles east of Havana, *Santiago* (46,000) in the south-east, *Cienfuegos* (59,000), and *Puerto Principe* (25,000) in the eastern interior, are the other important towns of Cuba.

8. *Haiti* or *San Domingo*, between Cuba and Puerto Rico, is a mountainous forest island, and may be compared to Scotland in extent; its highest point reaches the great elevation of 9695 feet. This rich island has had a very turbulent history, owing to which its productions and the industries to which they might give rise remain undeveloped.

The negro *Republic of Haiti*, occupying the western half of the island, has its capital at *Port au Prince*, at the head of a bay of the west coast; the eastern *Dominican Republic* has *Santo Domingo* for its capital.

9. *Puerto Rico* (Porto Rico), the former Spanish now United States island, has a length east to west of about 100 miles, and is highly cultivated and covered with cattle farms, and plantations of sugar, tobacco, and coffee. Its capital and port of outlet is *San Juan* on the north-east coast.

10. *Jamaica*, the most important by far of the British West India islands, lies south-east of Cuba, and has a length of about 140 miles. The wooded Blue Mountains traverse it from east to west, rising to 7423 feet, and giving the island a variety of climate from that of tropical coast-lands to the temperate and cool of the uplands. Jamaica suffered much from earthquakes in 1907 and 1908, when *Kingston*, the capital (population 26,000) was nearly destroyed. Other important places are *Spanish Town* and *Port Royal*, all on the south coast. Jamaica yields much rum and molasses, great quantities of pimento or allspice, besides coffee, dyewoods, and mahogany. It is placed under a Governor appointed by the Crown, who is assisted by a House of Assembly chosen by the freeholders of the island.

11. The Lesser Antilles are subdivided naturally into two main groups—those of the *Leeward* Islands, or the chain extending from the Virgin Islands to Martinique, which is exposed throughout the year to the prevailing trade-wind; and the *Windward* Islands thence to the south.<sup>1</sup> The island of *St. Thomas*, in the Virgin group, is a central station for the liners plying between Europe and the West Indies. In 1902 Martinique was wasted by a terrific eruption of Mont Pelée, when the whole population of St. Pierre (30,000) perished in a few moments. *Barbados*, with the capital of *Bridgetown*, is the most populous of the southern Windward Islands, and its episcopal see embraces the whole group. *Trinidad*, remarkable for its pitch lakes, is the largest of the Windward chain.

12. The low-lying *Bahamas* number several hundreds of separate islands, but only a few are inhabited. They yield dyewood, and salt and turtles. *Nassau*, on Providence Island, is their capital. The *Bermudas* islands, an isolated group out in the Atlantic, 650 miles north-east of the nearest of the Bahamas, do not naturally form part of the West Indian Archipelago, but are generally classed with that group. The group belongs to Britain, and consists of about 400 coral reefs and rocks, with five small islets, which are fortified to form a useful naval station.

## SOUTH AMERICA.

### THE REPUBLIC OF COLOMBIA.<sup>2</sup>

1. The Republic of Colombia, formerly known as New Granada,

<sup>1</sup> The Spaniards apply the term Leeward islands (*islas soto viento*) to the Greater Antilles, Trinidad, Tobago, and the islands on the coast of Venezuela; and that of Windward islands (*islas barlo viento*) to the rest of the Lesser Antilles.

	Area, sq. m.	Pop (1905).
<sup>2</sup> Colombia . . . .	480,000	4,280,000

# SOUTH AMERICA







occupies the north-western corner of the mainland of South America, excluding since 1903 the narrow isthmus of Panama. The Caribbean Sea washes its shores in the north; the Pacific, its western coasts. The States of Ecuador and Venezuela lie south and east of its territory. In extent we may compare Colombia to over five Great Britains.

2. **Relief.**—The general features of the relief of Colombia are given by the three great ranges of the Northern Andes, which traverse it from south to north. The central of these Cordilleras reaches a height of over 18,320 feet in the peak of *Tolima*. Between the eastern and central ranges lies the valley of the *Magdalena*, the chief river of the State, and between the central and western heights, that of the *Cauca*, the largest tributary of the former river.

3. **Climate and Products.** These varied natural features give great diversities of climate to the tropical region, the mass of table-lands which lie along the eastern heights having a cool and healthy climate well suited to the white race. Towards the east vast grass plains, affording pasture to large herds of cattle, reach away into the basin of the Orinoco. Most of the metals—gold, silver, copper, lead, iron—occur in Colombia, but from the deficiency of highways the resources of the country are as yet to a large extent undeveloped, and less than a tenth of the area is cultivated. Tobacco, quinine, coffee, hides, indiarubber, and cotton, are the staple exports.

4. **People and Government.**—The inhabitants are composed of the descendants of the Spanish colonists, who are dominant, and the Chibchas (*Muyscas*) and other aborigines, most of whom are Christianised, and speak the Spanish language. A small number of tribes still, however, maintain a savage mode of life.

The government is republican, the executive authority being vested in a President, the legislative in an elected Congress; but each of the nine departments into which the country is divided has its own local legislature.

5. **Chief Towns.**—The capital and seat of government is at *Bogotá*, which stands on a plateau of the Eastern Andes at an elevation of 8700 feet above the sea, beside the stream of its name that tumbles down to the Magdalena by the magnificent fall of Tequendama. A railroad has been opened from Bogotá to *Honda*, the farthest point to which the Magdalena river is navigable by steamers. Another line, 20 miles long, connects *Barranquilla* on the chief navigable branch of the Magdalena delta with the exposed seaport of *Savannah*, which, since the loss of Panama, is the chief centre of the foreign trade of the country. In 1905 altogether 411 miles of railway were open, and about 400 miles in progress or projected.

## ECUADOR<sup>1</sup>

6. The Republic of Ecuador (or Equator) embraces that portion of western South America which reaches across the Andes from the Pacific into the basin of the Amazon, directly under the equinoctial line. It lies between the Republic of Colombia on the north of it, and Perú southward, and reaches from the ocean eastward to the frontier of Brazil.

7. **Physical Features.**—The great features of Ecuador are given by the

	Area sq. m.	Pop. (1903)
<sup>1</sup> Ecuador	120 000	1,400,000

enormous mass of the Andes, rising near the Pacific coast. Here the range forms the high, cool table-land of Quito, along the edges of which the dome-shaped *Chimborazo* (20,610 feet), *Ilinissa*, *Pichincha*, *Antisana*, *Cayambe*, the cone of *Cotopaxi* (19,500 feet), and other giants of the Andes rise in two parallel chains. Level tracts, called “páramos” or “punas,” covered with scanty sun-dried grasses, are characteristic of the high plateau, but all the long inner slope of the country to the Amazon basin is covered with forests and enclosed savannahs.

8. The rivers of the steep slope of Ecuador to the Pacific are comparatively small and short, the *Guayaquil*, *Esmeralda*, and *Mira*, being the most considerable, the first affording more than 100 miles of navigation. The inward slope, on the contrary, is watered by some of the great feeders of the Upper Amazon, the *Japura*, *Putumayo*, and *Napo* being the largest.

9. **Products.**—Little is known as yet of the resources of Ecuador in regard to the precious metals which are so abundant in other parts of the Andean region. The product of the country which is, as yet, of greatest importance to the outer world is its *cacao* or cocoa, which is abundant in the low-lying or hot regions of Ecuador. Quinine bark is also an important product of the equatorial forests along the Andes.

10. **People.**—The inhabitants of Ecuador consist of descendants of the Spanish conquerors, “Mestizos” or half-breeds, and aboriginal Indians. The more civilised and the greater number of the population are found living in the high mountain valleys; almost the whole of the eastern forest slope to the Amazon basin is occupied only by scattered Indian tribes.

11. **Government.**—The President of the Republic of Ecuador is elected for four years; the Congress, also elected by universal suffrage, has the legislative power. The priesthood, however, possess a far stronger influence, and exercise a much greater control over the affairs of the State in Ecuador than in any other part of South America. For administrative purposes the country is divided into seventeen provinces.

12. **Chief Towns.**—The capital is the city of *Quito* (population 80,000), grandly situated on the table-land at an elevation of 9500 feet above the sea, and commanding splendid views of the snow-clad cones of the Andes from its great square. Almost all the foreign commerce of Ecuador passes by its port of *Guayaquil* (70,000) at the mouth of its navigable river. *Cuenca* (45,000) and *Loja* (10,000) are important places in the southern table-lands.

13. The archipelago of the *Galápagos* or Turtle Islands, nearly under the equator, and 600 miles out in the Pacific, belongs to Ecuador. The islands are of volcanic origin, and present only dreary wastes of extinct cones and craters, and have only 400 inhabitants. They are chiefly interesting on account of their remarkable indigenous reptiles and birds, most of which are unknown in any other part of the world. A remarkable kind of turtle and the gigantic tortoise found here have given their name to the group.

VENEZUELA.<sup>1</sup>

14. The States of Venezuela (or Little Venice) reach along the northern border of the continent from Colombia on the west to the British colony of Guayana or Guiana on the east, having a coast-line of between 300 and 400 miles on the Caribbean Sea, from the mouth of the Orinoco to the gulf and lake of Maracaybo. Inland

	Area, sq. m.	Pop. (1905).
<sup>1</sup> Venezuela . . . .	364,000	2,602,000

the frontier touches northern Brazil. In extent the territory of Venezuela may be compared to nearly three times the area of the British Isles.

15. **Relief.** There are two distinct highland regions—first, a divergent Cordillera of the Andes in the north-west, which culminates in the *Sierra Nevada de Mérida* (15,400 feet), and which is continued as a steep coast range along the length of the shores of the Caribbean Sea; and, second, a great mass of forest covered hills and mountains forming Venezuelan Guayana in the south-east.

16. **Rivers.** The great river of Venezuela, the *Orinoco*, curves round the southern mountainous region, receiving large tributaries from its slopes, ultimately forming a great delta on the Atlantic coast, south of the British island of Trinidad. The navigation of this noble river is uninterrupted from the sea upward beyond Venezuelan territory, the *Meta*, the largest western tributary, has been ascended by steamboat to within 80 miles of Bogotá in Colombia. A most remarkable natural canal, named the *Casiquiare*, a broad navigable channel, unites the Upper Orinoco with the Rio Negro, a tributary of the Amazons. Another remarkable feature of the hydrography of Venezuela is the fine lake of *Maracaybo*, the largest lake of South America, united by a narrow channel to its sea gulf. The earliest Spanish explorers found houses built on wooden piles at the entrance to Lake Maracaybo. These reminded them of Venice, and originated the name Venezuela, which has extended to the whole region.

17. **Landscape and Products.** The northern slopes of the coast range are entirely forest-covered, and shelter sugar and cacao plantations in their hollows, but southward begin the broad open grass plains or "*llanos*," that reach away south to the Orinoco, covering the greater part of the country. Beyond the Orinoco rise the wooded ridges of Venezuelan Guayana. The cattle, horses, and sheep reared upon the vast expanse of the "*llanos*" form the wealth of Venezuela; but coffee, cacao, cotton, sugar, indigo, and tobacco, grown on the northern plantations, are exported in large quantity, as well as dyewoods from the forests. Copper is mined at Aroa in north western Venezuela, and gold abounds in the Yuruary district, on the Cuyuni river, which takes its course into British Guayana.

18. **People and Government.** The present population of Venezuela is, to some extent, a Mulatto one, derived from the intermixture of the Spaniards and their African slaves with the native Indian element. Pure Indians live in the hilly forest region of the south-east. The government of the Republic is designed on the model of that of the United States of North America; but the States and Territories of Venezuela, of which there are eighteen, are permitted greater independence in their local government.

19. **Chief Towns.**—The capital city of *Caracas* (80,000) is delightfully situated in a valley of the northern coast range, 2900 feet above the Caribbean Sea, and twelve miles from its port of *La Guaira*, next to which *Valencia* (39,000) and *Barquisimeto* (31,000) are the largest places in the northern interior, and *Maracaybo*, near the outlet of the great lake, comes fourth in importance. *Puerto Cabello*, west of La Guaira, and opposite the large inland town of Valencia, to which it is united by road, is the chief port of the richest portion of Venezuela. There are railways from La Guaira to Caracas, and from the port of *Tucacas*, west of Puerto Cabello, to the mines of Aroa. *Ciudad Bolívar* (12,000) is the chief town on the Orinoco.

Several lines of steamers maintain regular communication between Venezuela and the ports of Europe and North America.

GUAYANA.<sup>1</sup>

20. The region of South America called Guayana extends from the east of Venezuela and the north of Brazil to the coasts of the Atlantic. We have seen that a large portion of it is included in the Orinoco basin of Venezuela ; Brazil also claims its southern portion in the Amazon basin ; but the name is now more generally limited to the region which is drained northward to the ocean by the rivers Essequibo, Corentyn, and Maroni or Marowyne, and which is divided into the three colonial possessions of British, Dutch, and French Guayana or Guiana.

21. From the low, marshy coasts of the Atlantic, the inland regions of Guayana rise between the river valleys in hills densely covered with exuberant forest vegetation. Its woods and rivers are peopled by abundance of wild animals similar to those of Brazil, along with birds, reptiles, and fishes of the most varied and remarkable description.

The few European settlers live at their plantations, which lie near the mouths of the rivers or on the fertile lowlands of the coast ; and in recent years numbers of Indian and Chinese coolies have been introduced as labourers, the negroes of the colonies being now all free men. The interior woodlands are left, as yet, to a few Indian tribes, most of them Caribs and Arawaks, who, however, appear to be rapidly decreasing in numbers.

22. The staple cultivated product of the plantations of Guayana is sugar, large quantities of which, with rum and molasses, are exported. The cultivation of coffee and cotton has greatly declined, but there is a large trade in the fine forest timber. Gold, in considerable quantities, has recently been discovered.

23. British Guayana, the western possession, occupies almost the whole basin of the *Essequibo* river, besides those of the *Demerara* and *Berbice*, the *Corentyn* forming the boundary towards Dutch Guayana. It is by far the most flourishing, agriculturally and commercially, of the three colonies. *Georgetown*, its capital, on the *Demerara*, is well built of wooden houses and is intersected by canals. *New Amsterdam* is a small place on the *Berbice*.

24. Dutch Guayana, in the middle, reaches across from the *Corentyn* to the *Marowyne*, which divides it from French Guayana. The *Surinam* is the most important interior river of the colony, and on it, at a distance of ten miles from the sea, lies the capital town of *Paramaribo*, with wide straight streets planted with orange trees.

25. French Guayana, reaching from the *Marowyne* to the *Oyapok*, the boundary river towards Brazil, has been used rather as a penal settlement than as a commercial colony, so that the greater part of the European population consists of deported convicts and of the military guard in charge of them. The capital town of *Cayenne*, on the river of its name, is a wretched little place, dreaded on account of its deadly climate. A species of capsicum, which grows here, gives the well-known Cayenne pepper.

---

	Area.	Pop. (1901-05).
<sup>1</sup> British Guayana (Guiana) . .	90,000	303,000
Dutch Guayana (Surinam) . .	46,500	74,000
French Guayana (Cayenne) . .	30,500	33,600

BRAZIL.<sup>1</sup>

26. The enormous territory of the republic of Brazil very nearly equals that included within the boundary of the United States of North America, or is not far short of Europe in extent. The republic itself is by far the most important of the divisions of South America in area and population, as well as in prosperity and, until the overthrow of the empire, also in stability. It holds the Atlantic coast from Guayana in the north, for about 4000 miles, to the borders of Uruguay in the south, and reaches inland for nearly 2500 miles, its inner boundaries touching those of every one of the other States of the continent excepting Chile.

27. **Relief.**—This vast territory presents two contrasted regions. First, the wide, low-lying, and humid forest plain of the Amazon river in the north; second, the uplands in the south, which are traversed by radiating hills and mountain ridges, and which present wide grass plains between woods and bush-covered country. The highest mountain ranges of Brazil rise in the centre of the south-eastern uplands, where the *Montes Pyrenéos* rise to 9500 feet, but the coast range or *Serra do Mar*, to the south of the beautiful gulf of Rio de Janeiro, hardly yield to these, for within it the *Itatiaiossu* is scarcely 600 feet lower, whilst the *Organ Mountains*, at the back of Rio, have summits which reach up to 7500 feet.

28. **Rivers.**—To the rivers of Brazil belongs the huge *Amazon*, called the “Mediterranean of South America,” whose great tributaries traverse all the northern lowland from the slopes of the Andes to the Atlantic. Its great feeders from southward are the *Jurua*, *Purus*, *Madeira*, *Tapajos*, and *Xingu*, all of them rivers of the first magnitude. From the north there come to it the *Japura* and the *Rio Negro*, which is joined by the remarkable channel of the Casiquiare to the basin of the Orinoco. The *Tocantins*, with its great tributary the *Araguaya*, flows northward through Brazil to the Gulf of Para, close to the mouth of the Amazon. The *Paranahyba* and *São Francisco* are the great rivers which flow from the uplands directly to the Atlantic. The *Paraná* and the *Paraguay*, the rivers which join to reach the sea by the La Plata Gulf, both take their rise in Brazilian territory.

29. **Products.**—In richness and variety of vegetable products, favoured in their growth by its tropical climate and copious rains and rivers, Brazil surpasses almost all other parts of the world. The forests supply useful timber in great profusion, as well as dyewoods and gums, such as the valuable indiarubber; the coco, sago, and wax palms, nuts, and fruit trees of many kinds, and the medicinal chinchona abound; and under cultivation flourish the coffee-plant, sugar-cane, cotton, rice, manioc, and banana. The cultivated districts are, however, as yet very small in comparison with the vast regions which remain in a state of nature.

The mineral products of Brazil are scarcely less celebrated. Gold is found in many parts, especially in the mountains round the head of the basin of the São Francisco river; quicksilver, copper, iron, and salt are also abundant; and probably no region of the world is richer in precious stones, including diamonds, emeralds, rubies, topazes, beryls, and garnets.

---

	Area.	Pop. (1900).
<sup>1</sup> Brazil . . .	3,218,990	17,371,000



The jaguar, puma, and tapir are the larger wild animals of the forests ; the capivari, or river hog, is abundant along the streams ; the rivers teem with alligators and fish ; the rhea, or American ostrich, toucans and parrots, and the lively humming-birds, are among the multitude of the feathered inhabitants of the woods and grassy plains.

**30. People.**—The inhabitants of Brazil, as of other parts of South America, present three great elements—that of the aboriginal Indians, that of the European conquerors and colonists and their descendants, and that of the Africans introduced as slaves. Besides these we find large numbers of half-castes, who have sprung from the intermixture of these three elements. The aboriginal Indians are now, for the most part, found in countless small tribes and families in the forests and plains of the wild interior region, the most numerous being the tribes forming part of the Great Tupí or Guaraní group. The most important section of the European element is that of the Brazilians, the descendants of the Portuguese settlers. The number of pure white people is, however, very small in proportion to those who have some mixture of Indian or African blood, and the Brazilians themselves have developed into a number of more or less distinct physical types in the widely separated provinces of the republic. Formerly about one-half of the entire population of Brazil was formed of negro slaves, the numbers having been maintained by continuous shipments from West Africa ; but the importation was made illegal in 1855, since 1871 gradual emancipation of the slaves has been in operation, and in 1888 all were liberated.

The Roman Catholic is the established religion of Brazil, but all other religions are tolerated, and the right of building churches has been conceded to Protestant colonists. The Legislature has made great efforts to spread education, but schools are still in a very backward state.

**31. Industries.**—The staple production of Brazil for export is coffee. The country supplies three-fourths of all the coffee used in the world. In sugar-growing Brazil is only second to Cuba. Large numbers of people are employed in forestry, in mining, agriculture, and stock-raising.

**32. Government.**—According to the new Constitution of 1890, the empire is abolished and the Brazilian nation is constituted a Federal Republic under the title of the United States of Brazil, each of the twenty provinces forming a separate State with local self-government. At the head of the federation is a President with executive authority, elected by the people for six years. The National Congress with legislative functions comprises a Senate and Chamber of Deputies, the senators being chosen, three for each state, for nine years, the deputies for three years in the proportion of one to every 70,000 of the population. The franchise extends to all citizens not under twenty-one years of age.

**33. Chief Towns.**—The capital city of *Rio de Janeiro* (population, 1906, 811,000), the second largest in South America, extends along the shores of a land-locked gulf of the Atlantic, which is surrounded by the most romantic mountain scenery and the richest green vegetation. Its harbour, guarded by Island Fort, is one of the finest in the world, and through it a vast commerce is maintained with all seas. Next in importance is the city and seaport of *Bahia* (230,000), finely placed on an inlet of the Atlantic, the oldest city of Brazil. *Pernambuco*, also called Recife from a reef of rock which forms the natural breakwater of its harbour, is the fourth in population, being now surpassed by *São Paulo*, which ranks next to the capital (332,000 in 1902). *Maranhão*, on an island of the north coast ; *Pará*, in the Tocantins estuary ; *Rio Grande*, and *Santos* are the other notable places along the Atlantic. In the interior the principal towns are *Ouro Preto*, in the gold-mining region, and *Diamantina*, the centre of the diamond-fields. *Cuyabá*, in the interior, is



important, as being at the head of the regular navigation into Brazil by way of the Paraná and Paraguay rivers.

Railways open (1905) 10,410 miles ; in progress 4000 miles.

## PERÚ.<sup>1</sup>

**34. Perú ranks first in extent of the States of South America which lie along the Andes and the Pacific seaboard of the continent. The territory of the Republic lies southward of that of Ecuador, its inland boundaries east and south being conterminous with those of Brazil, Bolivia, and Chile. The coast-line belonging to it measures about 1400 miles, and the area embraced by its boundaries may be compared to eight times that of England.**

**35. Physical Features.**—No part of the world presents more varied physical features, from arid desert to the grandest mountains, and again to the dense forests with brimming rivers, or more diverse climates corresponding to these features. The “costa,” or low hot maritime belt of Perú, being almost deprived of rainfall by the barrier of the Andes, is a bare sand desert, fertilised only where it is crossed by the streams descending to it from the heights. All the mountain slope ascending to the high plateaus of the Andes, up which narrow mule-paths lead through deep ravines and along the edges of vast precipices, is named the “Sierra.” The high plains of the Andes reached by these difficult approaches are cold, bleak, monotonous wastes called “punas.” Above these the summit mountains of the Andes lift their rugged sides up to the region of perennial snows. Beyond the punas the descent of the continental or inward slope of the mountain region leads into the boundless woodlands of the Amazon basin, where copious rains fill out the tributaries of the vast river, and whence flow its great head streams the *Ucayali* and the *Marañon*.

**36. Products.**—Perú is most famous for its extraordinary mineral wealth. Silver is its chief metal, the most productive mines being found in the rigorous climate of the higher punas. Quicksilver is also very abundant. Copper seems to be present in all parts of the mountain region along with iron. The Republic also possesses great wealth in its deposits of guano and nitre in the maritime belt. The richest guano beds formerly worked for export were those of the Chincha Islands, near the coast, about 100 miles south of Lima ; but the supply is nearly exhausted, and the great stores of nitre in the province of Tarapacá have been ceded to Chile. The camel-like guanaco roams in great herds on the punas and along the slopes of the Andes ; and the llama or alpaca, the domesticated variety of the same animal, yields costly wool, besides milk and flesh food, and serves also as a beast of burden.

**37. People.**—A large proportion of the inhabitants of Peru at the present time consists of the descendants of the aboriginal Incas of the plateau, Indians of the Quichua and Aymará tribes, which, next to the Guarani, are the most widely diffused in South America. The other great element is that of the half-bred peoples, the “Cholos” and “Zambos,” who have arisen from the intermixture of Spaniards with Indians and negroes. Wild Indians, of a different race from those of the highlands, occupy the still undisturbed forests of the eastern interior ; the other minor elements are small proportions of

---

	Area in sq. m.	Population.
1 Perú	686,000	4,610,000

Europeans, negroes, and Chinese, imported as labourers. The State religion is the Roman Catholic, and the public exercise of any other religion is interdicted by law. Elementary education, although compulsory, is mainly in the hands of the priests.

38. **Government.**—The executive power is entrusted to a President, elected for four years, assisted, by two Vice-Presidents and a Cabinet of six ministers. The Republic is divided into eighteen departments and two provinces. The State formerly derived a large revenue from the sale of guano; and of late years attention has been directed to the development of the mineral resources of the country, and the improvement of the rude means of communication. To this end a system of railways, uniting the seaports with the high plateau region, has been begun, and in 1905 over 1146 miles had been completed. But they are heavily mortgaged, and the late disastrous war with Chile about disputed boundaries has greatly retarded progress.

39. **Chief Towns.**—The capital city of *Lima* (130,000), founded by Pizarro in 1534, who also began its magnificent cathedral, lies at the foot of the coast range of the Cordilleras, on both banks of the stream called the Rimac. Its flat-roofed houses of sun-dried clay would be changed into masses of mud if any considerable shower of rain should fall, but the coast belt in which it lies is rainless; earthquakes, however, have desolated it repeatedly. Six miles distant is its fortified seaport of *Callao* (31,000), commanding the best harbour of Perú, through which the chief share of the guano, nitre, metals, sugar, and alpaca wool is exported. *Cuzco* (15,000), the historical city of Perú, the ancient residence of the Inca sovereigns, stands at an elevation of nearly 11,400 feet above the sea, on the plateau, about 400 miles south-east of Lima. *Pasco*, famed for its silver mines, 14,280 feet above the sea, lies north-east of Lima, on the plateau. On the south the largest place is *Arequipa* (40,000), a flourishing city, lying about 30 miles from the Pacific, and carrying on a considerable trade through its port of *Islay*. *Trujillo*, 300 miles north of Lima, is the chief port of northern Perú.

## BOLIVIA.<sup>1</sup>

40. Bolivia, the most centrally-placed State of South America, somewhat larger than Perú, embraces in its western region the highest plateau and ranges of the system of the Andes. On this side its boundary is for the most part conterminous with that of Perú. Its share in the coast-land of the Pacific has been lost to Chile. Its eastern slope spreads out into the basins of the Amazon and La Plata, and there it touches upon Brazil and the Argentine Republic.

41. **Physical Features.**—As in Perú, the various regions of Bolivia differ very widely in elevation, climate, and landscape. Here also the cold bare grass-lands of the plateau, at elevations of 11,000 feet above the sea, are known as the "punas;" over these the giant peaks of the Andes, such as *Illimani* and *Sorata*, or the volcano of *Sahama*, rise to heights of more than 22,000 feet. The slopes and cultivable districts of the lower mountains, between 5000 and 11,000 feet, are termed the "Valle," and possess a genial

---

	Area in sq. m.	Pop. (est. 1906).
<sup>1</sup> Bolivia . . . . .	708,000	2,268,000

temperate climate. Lower down on the eastern or interior slope, the rich warm forest region below 5000 feet is known as the "Yungas." As in Perú, the great rivers are those of the eastern slope; these include the upper waters of the great river *Madeira*, formed by the union of the Beni, Mamoré, and Guaporé, which joins the Amazon; and the head streams of the *Pilcomayo*, one of the main feeders of the Paraguay river, which itself flows for some distance along the eastern boundary, separating Bolivia from inner Brazil.

The southern half of the great continental lake of *Titicaca* (12,540 feet) is also in Bolivia, and is overflowed in its territory by the Desaguadero to form the salt lake of the *Pampa Aullagas*, 200 miles south.

**42. Products.** Bolivia, like Perú, is richly metallic, the mountain of Potosí, on the high plateau, is said to have yielded silver to the value of 130 millions sterling. The punas support great herds of the llama, and its varieties, the alpaca and vicuña; and the chinchilla, noted for its fur, lives in the mountains. The chinchona tree grows on the higher slopes, and the lowlands of the interior slope yield all the tropical products of Brazil.

**43. People.**—The Indians of Bolivia are in three great divisions:—1st, the civilised Quichua and Aymará Indians of the plateau; 2nd, the semi-civilised Chiquitos and Moxos Indians of the inner descent of the Andes; and 3rd, the wild Indians of the low-lying forests beyond in the east, who belong for the most part to the Guaraní family. The strength of the population, however, lies in the mixed races—the half-caste descendants of Spaniards and Indians, called "Cholos"; the "Mulattos," with Spanish and Negro blood; and the "Zambos," descendants of Negroes and Indians. Except in the towns, the Quichua language prevails over the Spanish. The Indians of the camp, as distinguished from those of the towns, are almost exclusively agriculturists or "arrieros,"—that is, herdsmen or drivers of the llama, sheep, or goats. The feasts of the Roman Catholic calendar are scrupulously observed.

**44. Government.**—The Republic is governed by a President, elected for four years, and by a Congress of two chambers, chosen by universal suffrage. As in the other Spanish Republics, the history of Bolivia has been marked by an almost incessant round of purposeless revolutions. The country is divided for administrative purposes into nine departments and territories.

**45. Chief Towns.**—The present political capital of Bolivia is *Sucre* or *Chuquisaca* (population, 1906, 27,000), situated at an elevation of about 9250 feet on the high plateau which divides the waters flowing to the Rio Madeira from those which turn south-east to the Paraguay. It is named from General Sucre, who won the great battle of independence at Ayacucho in southern Perú in 1824. *Oruro* (20,000) and *Potosí* (27,000)—the latter a decayed city—both at great elevations on the Andes plateau, are in the vicinity of the once famous silver-mines. *La Paz* (80,000), south-east of Lake Titicaca, is the largest city of Bolivia, and its great trading centre, *Cochabamba* (30,000), at the head of the Rio Mamoré, is the second town in population.

Railways open (1906) 384 miles; in progress and projected 1600 miles.

## CHILE.<sup>1</sup>

**46.** The State of Chile, the most prosperous and advanced of the South American Republics, occupies a long narrow strip of

	Area in sq. m.	Pop. (1903).
<sup>1</sup> Chile	308,000	3,206,000

territory between the coast of the Andes and the Pacific in the south-west of the continent. It reaches from the southern boundary of the coast-land of Perú in lat.  $18^{\circ}$  S. to the southern extremity of Tierra del Fuego, through a distance of about 2800 miles, rising inland to the summits of the Andes, which here form a single chain at a distance of about 100 miles from the ocean, and having southern Bolivia, the Argentine Republic, and Patagonia, on its eastern frontier. Its area is 307,620 square miles, more than two and a half times that of the British Isles taken together.

**47. Physical Features.**—The range of the Andes, visible from the sea all along the coast of Chile, towers up in a series of volcanic cones and snow-clad peaks; the loftiest summit, that of *Aconcagua*, being probably the highest point of all the South American continent. Numbers of streams descend from the range, and have furrowed deep valleys across the width of the country. The most considerable of these are the *Maypú* near the centre of Chile, and the *Maule* and *Biobío* in the south, both of which are to some extent navigable. Earthquakes are very frequent in Chile.

**48. Climate and Products.**—This long strip of maritime country presents remarkable gradations of climate from north to south. Nearest the Peruvian frontier the coast-land of Tacna, Tarapacá, and Atacama is a hot, rainless, sandy desert without sign of vegetation. Coming southward, we gradually pass into a temperate climate which enjoys a moderate rainfall. This central belt is thus the most valuable and the most productive agricultural region of Chile. Farther south we pass into the latitudes in which the westerly winds blowing towards the mountains from over the wide Pacific bring with them such quantities of moisture that the rainfall is excessive; here, in southern Chile, in consequence of the abundant moisture, the mountain slopes are densely covered with evergreen forest.

As if in compensation for its aridity, the northern desert region in Atacama and the adjoining district of Tarapacá are exceedingly rich in minerals and metals, supplying copper especially in great quantities, as well as silver, besides abounding in beds of nitre and guano. Wheat, maize, and fruits known in Europe are cultivated in abundance in central Chile, and enormous herds of cattle and horses are grazed upon the extensive pasture lands along the valleys.

**49. People.**—The inhabitants of northern and central Chile are, for the most part, descendants of the intermixed Spaniards and native Indians, pure European blood remaining only in the best families; but in the extreme south the population becomes almost exclusively Indian. Here live the Araucanians, whom the Spaniards were never able to conquer, though their country is now nominally part of the Republic. More generally enlightened, peaceful, and industrious than the inhabitants of the other South American Republics, the Chilenos enjoy a much greater share of prosperity. The Roman Catholic Church here, as in other parts of the continent, exercises a powerful influence, but in this case it is generally beneficial.

**50. Government.**—The President of the Republic of Chile is elected for five years. A Senate and Chamber of Deputies control the legislature. Chile is divided into twenty-three provinces and one territory, including that of Magellanes in the south, and the three provinces ceded by Perú and Bolivia in 1884. Chile also owns the islands of Juan Fernandez and Easter island in the Pacific. Despite the fierce civil war of 1890-91 it has the reputation of being the most orderly of all the South American Republics.

51. **Chief Towns.**—*Santiago* (335,000), the capital, in the centre of Chile, is a fine, well built, and clean city, on an inland plateau enjoying a delightful climate amid the magnificent scenery of the Andes. It is joined by railway with *Valparaíso* (144,000), the chief seaport of Chile, and the centre of its foreign trade. The other seaports of note are *Caldera*, the port of the inland mining town of *Copiapó*, remarkable for the frequency of the slight earthquakes which shake it; and *Cochumbo* in northern Chile; besides *Concepción*, *Talcahuano*, and *Valdivia* in the south. In the districts wrested in 1884 from Perú and Bolivia are *Antofagasta* and *Cobija*, the ports of the silver-mines of *Caracoles*, *Iquique*, an important outlet of the nitre fields of *Tarapacá*, and *Arica*, the Port of *Tacna*. The most frequented pass over the Andes eastward is that of *La Cumbre*, or *Uspallata*, between *Valparaíso* and *Mendoza* in Argentina, the summit of which is 12,800 feet above the sea. It will be crossed in 1909 by the transcontinental railway between *Buenos Ayres* on the Atlantic and *Valparaíso* on the Pacific side. In 1906 the Chilean railways had a total length of 2950 miles.

### ARGENTINE REPUBLIC.<sup>1</sup>

52. After Brazil the Argentine Republic is the largest State of South America. Its territory reaches from the *Pilcomayo* river, on the borders of Bolivia, southward for 2400 miles to *Staten Island*, off the south-eastern extremity of *Tierra del Fuego*; and from the slope of the Andes on the west to the *Uruguay* river and the Atlantic in the east. Its area may be compared to twelve times that of Great Britain.

53. **Physical Features.** Excepting on the north-west, where the spurs of the Andes reach down into the State, the surface of the Argentine Republic presents vast monotonous and level plains, broken only by the detached ridges of *Córdoba* and *San Luis* in the western interior. In the north, the portion of the region called the *Gran Chaco*, within the frontier, is partly forest-covered, but all the central and southern region presents only vast treeless plains or "pampas," covered at most seasons with coarse grass, which is green in the winter months, but which dries up in summer so as to give an aspect of aridity to the plains. Some portions of the interior, called "Salinas," are barren and white throughout the year.

The great watercourse of the country is the *Paraná*, formed by the union of the Upper *Paraná* and *Paraguay* rivers near the north-eastern corner of the State. This is a noble river, in all parts of its course through Argentine territory scarcely ever less than a mile in width, and in some places spreading out in lateral channels, or "ranches," to a breadth of ten miles.

The *Pilcomayo*, which forms part of the northern boundary, has now been explored throughout its length, and is navigable at high water; the *Vermejo*, the next river southward, has of late years become a regularly navigated highway from the *Paraguay* up to the north-eastern provinces; the *Salado*, further south, flowing directly to the *Paraná*, is also an important river; but the remaining streams which tend eastward to the *Paraná* have not strength of water sufficient to resist evaporation in crossing the dry plains, and terminate for the most part in marshes and salt lakes.

54. **Climate.**—The seasons in this region of South America begin to be marked out, like those of Europe, but of course in opposite months—the shortest day of winter occurring in June, the longest day of summer in

	Area in sq. m.	Pop. (est. 1905).
<sup>1</sup> Argentine Republic (including Patagonia)	1,130,000	5,678,000



December. The climate is pleasant and healthy, and the rainfall is small. Stormy south-west winds, called "pamperos," sweep over the plains at times, and raise great clouds of dust, which fly across the plains.

**55. Products.**—The north-western provinces of the Argentine Republic, crossed by the lower ramifications of the Andes, are rich in metals, including gold, silver, nickel, copper, tin, lead, and iron, as well as in several kinds of marble, jasper, and precious stones. On the Rio Vermejo petroleum wells have recently been discovered; and these treasures are now being developed by railways and other improved means of transport.

European grains and fruits, including the vine, have been successfully introduced, and are cultivated to some extent in most parts of the Republic. The great wealth of the State, however, lies in its countless herds of cattle and horses and flocks of sheep, which are pastured on the "pampas," and which multiply there very rapidly. The rearing and tending of these herds is the great and characteristic industry of the country; these also yield the enormous quantities of hides, horns, and salted beef, which with wheat form the staple exports of the Argentine Republic.

**56. People.**—The European element is much stronger in the Argentine Republic than in any other part of South America. The aboriginal Indians of the plains were comparatively few in numbers; and being of nomadic habits, they shifted their ground before the advance of the foreigner, and the former troublesome and predatory tribes (Puelches, or "Pampas," and others) have disappeared since about 1890. Besides people of Spanish descent, the European population of the Republic has been made up largely of immigrant Italians, English, French, Americans, Swiss, and Germans. The typical inhabitants of the "camp," or country, as distinguished from the citizens of the Argentine State, are the semi-barbarian cattle-breeders and horse-breakers, called the "Gauchos," who may be said to live on horseback, and have ever been ready to take a side in any fresh revolution.

**57. Government.**—The constitution of the group of States formerly called the United Provinces of the Rio de la Plata dates from 1853, and vests the executive power in a President elected by the representatives of the fourteen provinces for a term of six years. A National Congress wields the legislative authority. Notwithstanding many political troubles, the Republic is making rapid advances in social and political life. Already it possesses a fairly developed railway system; trade with Europe and other parts of the world has become very extensive; and public instruction is well cared for.

**58. Chief Towns.**—The Federal capital, *Buenos Ayres* (population, 1906, 1,057,000), on the level plain of the southern shore of the inlet of the Rio de la Plata, is the largest city in South America. It is laid out most regularly in square blocks, and has a number of fine public buildings. The sea opposite the town is shallow, but the mouth of the Riachuela, to the south of it, has been converted into a good harbour, accessible to vessels drawing 22 feet. *La Plata*, the new capital of the province of Buenos Ayres, lies 25 miles to the south-east of the Federal capital, and, although only founded in 1882, already numbers 80,000 inhabitants. A canal joins it to the vast docks of *Ensenada*. *Córdoba* (53,000), nearly in the centre of the State, is the seat of the chief observatory of the Republic. *Rosario* (135,000), on the right bank of the Paraná, more than 200 miles up from the La Plata inlet, is a substantially built town, and a great outlet of the animal produce of the interior plains. *Tucuman* (55,000) and *Salta* in the north-western mountain region, and *Mendoza* (32,000) at the eastern base of the Andes, where they are crossed to enter Chile, with *Corrientes* (18,000) on the Paraná, are other important places.

In 1906, 12,500 miles of railway were open, and 1500 in progress.



PARAGUAY.<sup>1</sup>

59. Paraguay has been called the "Mesopotamia" of South America, since its main portion lies between the great river *Paraná* and its large tributary the *Paraguay*. These rivers embrace the country east, south, and west. On the north its limit with Brazil is marked by the river *Apa*, a tributary of the *Paraguay*, and by the heights of *Maracaju* from the head of the *Apa* to where the *Paraná* forms its great waterfall of *Guayrá*, near lat. 24° S. A portion of the *Gran Chaco* to the east of the *Paraguay* also belongs to it. In area Paraguay may be compared with Great Britain.

60. **Physical Features.**—A range of heights, about 2000 feet in elevation at the most, forming part of the great table land of Brazil, stretches southward through the midst of the country, separating the tributaries of the *Paraná* from those of the *Paraguay*. The western slope of this central chain of heights presents a landscape of wide grassy plains fringed and patched with wood, and this is the portion of the country which has been occupied by the more civilised inhabitants. Most of the eastern slope, on the other hand, is covered with dense forests, which have scarcely been penetrated as yet by Europeans, and this side of the country remains in the hands of small tribes of aboriginal Indians. All the south-western angle of the country, where the *Paraná* and *Paraguay* rivers approach one another till they unite, is occupied by very extensive marshes, the largest of which is named "*Aecmburn*," which means "the endless."

61. **Products.**—The forests of Paraguay are noted for their splendid timber trees; but the most important natural product of all is the tea called the "*yerba mate*," made from the dried leaves of a species of holly that grows along the central heights. Tobacco and manioc are cultivated in small quantities all over the western half of the country. No minerals of workable value have yet been discovered.

62. **People.**—The inhabitants of the western half of Paraguay show every gradation and intermixture of people of Spanish descent with the aboriginal Guaraní Indians. Spanish is the language of the capital, but in the camp Guaraní only is understood. Previous to the disastrous six years' war between Paraguay and the united strength of Brazil and the Argentine Republic, the population amounted to perhaps a million and a half, but this was reduced in 1872 to about 240,000, the men of Paraguay having been almost exterminated in the long contest. The present population is estimated at 630,000.

63. **Government.**—The present constitution of Paraguay dates only from the termination of the great war. It vests the control of the Republic in a Senate and Chamber of Deputies, with a President. The country is now steadily recovering from the constant series of revolutions which since 1870 had further reduced its resources.

64. *Asunción* (60,000), the capital, the only large town of Paraguay, lies on the summit of the steep bank of a lagoon formed on the eastern side of the *Paraguay* river, and long presented a ruinous aspect, a number of fine public buildings being left in the unfinished state in which they stood at the commencement of the great war. Its trade is mainly in the yerba tea, which

	Area in sq. m.	Pop. (1906)
1 Paraguay	98,000	682,000

is sent down the river packed in hides in considerable quantities for use in the lower provinces of the La Plata. *Villa Rica* (25,000), in the centre of the southern half of the country, and *Concepcion* (15,000), on the Paraguay above Asuncion, are the only considerable places besides the capital. The ruined fortress of *Humaita*, on the Paraguay, near its confluence with the Paraná, is remarkable as having withstood a siege of several years against the united forces of Brazilians and Argentines. Railways open (1906) 156 miles.

### URUGUAY, OR BANDA ORIENTAL.<sup>1</sup>

65. Uruguay, or the Banda Oriental (the "eastern side"), as it is more commonly called, occupies the side of the inlet of the Rio de La Plata opposite to the Argentine Republic, and is shut off from that Republic on the west by the large river Uruguay. In area it may be compared to twice the extent of Ireland.

66. **Physical Features.**—In the north, where it touches Brazil, spurs and offshoots of the great plateau reach southward across the boundary, but all the west and south of the country is characterised by undulating grassy plains. Besides its harbours on the inlet of La Plata, and along its Atlantic coast, the communications of the country are aided greatly by the *Uruguay* river, which is navigable for large vessels from its mouth upwards to the rapids called the Salto Grande, in lat. 31° S. The most important interior river is the *Rio Negro*, which joins the Uruguay after draining the greater part of the central region.

67. **Products.**—The wealth of Uruguay is in its splendid pastures, which support immense herds of cattle, horses, and sheep. "*Estancias*," or cattle-farms, are dotted at intervals all over the land, the site of each house being marked in the open plain by its clump of ombu trees planted for their shade.

68. **People and Government.**—The number of inhabitants in the open country is necessarily very small; a fifth of the whole population is found in the capital. The constitution of the Republic dates from 1831, and the country has enjoyed comparative prosperity, though it has not escaped the curse of frequent revolutions.

69. *Monte Video* (population, 1904, 298,000), the capital, on a promontory which reaches into the wide inlet of La Plata near its opening into the Atlantic, is a finely built and busy city, carrying on an extensive commerce with all parts of the world in exporting hides, tallow, and salted beef, and in importing manufactured cotton and iron goods. *Fray Bentos* and *Paysandú*, on the Uruguay river, have become important centres of the manufacture of extract of meat and of tinned provisions. Railways open (1906) 1210 miles.

### PATAGONIA AND TIERRA DEL FUEGO.<sup>2</sup>

70. All the vast extent of territory from the Rio Negro, which forms the southern boundary of the settled portion of the Argentine Republic, southward to the Strait of Magellan, is known to Europeans as Patagonia. In area we may compare it to four times Great Britain.

	Area in sq. m.	Pop. (1906).
<sup>1</sup> Uruguay	72,000	1,040,000
<sup>2</sup> Patagonia and Tierra del Fuego	254,000	60,000

71. **Physical Features.**—Towards the Pacific the territory of Patagonia is bordered by the southern Andes, which rise from the steep fiord-cut coast in a chain of high peaks. Many of these, besides the highest summits, named *Minchinmadviva* and *Corcovado*, are volcanoes. Towards the Atlantic the long eastward slope of Patagonia, as far as it has yet been explored, presents a succession of bare plains, in parts grass-covered like the Argentine pampas, in part strewn with shingle. Several rivers, besides the *Rio Negro*, the largest of which are the *Chupat* and the *Santa Cruz*, flow across the eastern slope to the Atlantic in deep *cañons* or gorges, which they have cut for themselves. The climate of southern Patagonia becomes very severe; the streams there are frozen over till September, and the winter winds blow over the bare plains, driving clouds of snow and sand with great violence.

72. **People.**—The numbers of the Patagonian Indians can only be approximately estimated, but they are very few in comparison with the vast extent of country over which they wander. The *Tehuelches*, or southern Patagonian Indians, are tall, fine people, nomadic hunters of the guanaco and ostrich. The north-west of Patagonia is occupied by the *Manzanas*, a less nomadic people, possessing flocks of cattle and sheep, and allied in language and appearance to the Araucanians of southern Chile, on the opposite slope of the Andes.

73. By a treaty concluded in 1881, nearly the whole of Patagonia, together with the eastern shore of Tierra del Fuego, has been assigned to the Argentine Republic, the Strait of Magellan remaining with Chile. On the northern shore of this strait lies *Punta Arenas*, a penal settlement and place of call for passing steamships.

74. Tierra del Fuego and its surrounding archipelago of islands, reaching south to that of Cape Horn, are as yet little known. They are all high and mountainous, covered with thick woods, and their climate appears to be a succession of storms, thick mists, and drenching rains.

In Fuegia there are three distinct groups of natives: the *Onas* in the east, immigrants from Patagonia; the *Yahgans* in the centre, who appear to be the true aborigines, and are at the lowest stage of culture; and the *Alacalufs* in the west, probably akin to the neighbouring Araucanians.

## FALKLAND ISLANDS.

75. The *Falkland Islands*, which lie at a distance of from 200 to 300 miles east of the Strait of Magellan, are under a British Governor. The islands, of which East and West Falkland are the chief, are larger than Devon and Cornwall. They have a bare and desolate aspect, and are entirely treeless. They are well adapted, however, for cattle, horses, and sheep, which feed on the tall "tussac" grass that grows round their margins. They possess excellent harbours, and their coasts teem with fish, penguin, and seals. Seat of government *Stanley Harbour*, in East Falkland. Total area 6500 square miles, besides the uninhabited *South Georgia*, 1000 square miles; population (1901) 2043.

# AUSTRALASIA.



## THE COMMONWEALTH OF AUSTRALIA.<sup>1</sup>

1. THE name Australia, in its widest sense, groups together the continent or island of this name with New Zealand, Tasmania, and the smaller islands about these, all of which lie in the region between the Indian Ocean and the Pacific, south-east of the great continent of Asia. The mainland of Australia lies across the Tropic of Capricorn, so that the northern half of it falls within the torrid zone, the southern in the south temperate region. The open Indian Ocean washes its shores on the west and south ; the branch of the Indian Ocean called the *Arafura Sea*, leading to *Torres Strait*, separates Australia from the lesser Sunda Islands and from New Guinea ; on the east is the wide Pacific Ocean. Its coast-line, like that of Africa, is little indented, the deepest inlets being the *Gulf of Carpentaria* in the north and *Spencer Gulf* in the south. The islands round the Australian mainland are also few ; besides the *Tasmanian group*, separated by *Bass Strait* on the south-east, the only large island close to Australia is that named *Melville*, off the north coast. The most remarkable feature of the outline of Australia is the *Great Barrier Reef*, the longest coral belt in the world, which skirts the north-eastern coast for a length of more than 1200 miles at a distance of from 20 to 150 miles from the mainland ; on this reef the swell of the Pacific breaks continually, forming a long line of white foam, while the sea within the barrier is calm and still. The extreme points of Australia are *Cape York*, which runs out to form *Torres Strait* in the north ; *Cape Howe* at the south-eastern, and *Cape Leeuwin* at the south-western angle. The circumference of the mainland may be taken at about 8000 miles ; the length from east

COMMONWEALTH.	Area in sq. m.	Pop. (1905).
<sup>1</sup> New South Wales . . . . .	310,367	1,496,050
Victoria . . . . .	87,884	1,218,571
Queensland . . . . .	668,497	528,048
South Australia . . . . .	903,690	374,398
West Australia . . . . .	975,920	254,709
Tasmania . . . . .	26,215	181,106
	<u>2,972,573</u>	<u>4,052,882</u>



London. Published by Edward Stanford, 12, 13 & 14, Long, Acree & Co.





to west being about 2400, the width 2000 miles at most. Australia is about two-thirds of the extent of Europe.

2. **Relief.**—The surface of Australia in general lies at a small elevation only above the sea. This is especially the case in the wide central region of the continent; towards the margin, on several sides, greater elevations are found. The only mountainous portion, however, is a belt of about 150 miles in width, which skirts the eastern and south-eastern border next the Pacific Ocean. This belt includes, in the south-east, the range called the *Australian Alps*, the summit of which range, rising in the Kosciusko Group, is named Mount Townsend, 7350 feet above the sea, and is the highest point in Australia; the *Dividing Range* along the eastern margin reaches northward to form the long peninsula that terminates in Cape York. The western coast-land next the Indian Ocean also rises above the level of the interior in the ranges of the *Darling*, *Herschel*, and *Victoria* hills. The highest known point of this belt is *Mount William*, near the south-west corner of Australia, which reaches 3600 feet above the sea. Between these outer heights the only considerable elevations that are yet known are those of the *Flinders Range* (3180 feet) in South Australia, and of the plateau of North Australia west of the Gulf of Carpentaria.

3. **Rivers and Salt Lakes.**—The only large river system of Australia is that of the *Murray*, the affluents of which—the *Darling*, *Lachlan*, and *Murrumbidgee*—drain the long inward slope of the eastern highland belt, to the south coast. The tributaries of the Murray are perennial, but the lower river, in its course through the dry plains, has an uncertain flow, failing altogether in some seasons, and becoming a chain of stagnant pools. The only considerable rivers of the continent that carry water to the sea throughout the year are those which fall into the Gulf of Carpentaria; two of these, at least, afford a short extent of navigable stream upward from the sea, but elsewhere Australia is without any internal water communication.

Inland salt lakes form a characteristic feature of the continent. The most remarkable group of these is that which lies north of Spencer Gulf in South Australia, where the fluctuating saline marshes called lakes *Eyre*, *Torrens*, and *Gairdner*, each exceed 100 miles in length. *Lake Amadeus*, more recently discovered in the heart of Australia, is a great saline depression similar to these. Numbers of smaller salt lakes occur in Western Australia, and many large lagoons fringe the sea margin of Victoria in the south-east.

4. **Climate and Landscape.**—The climate of Australia, tropical and sub-tropical, corresponds to that of Northern or Southern Africa in its dryness. The situation of the continent across the southern tropic corresponds very closely with that of the Sahara region of North Africa on the opposite one. Both lie within a belt over which the great trade-wind currents are advancing from colder to warmer latitudes, taking up moisture, rather than parting with it, as they advance. The system of this wind is modified in Australia, however, to a greater extent by the land and sea breezes which blow round its margins; but here, as in the Sahara, long periods of drought are characteristic of the climate. The slopes of the eastern mountain ranges, facing the winds from the Pacific and condensing upon themselves the moisture from the ocean, are by far the most fertile portions of Australia; the whole of the interior region may be said to be almost rainless. Thus entering from the Pacific side of the continent, we should pass from the cultivated fields and rich grass plains of the eastern hill slopes and plateaus into the uniform steppes of the interior, where the soil is bare and saline, and covered with thickets and scrub of a bushy *Eucalyptus* or prickly *Acacia*, often quite impenetrable. In the

Australian spring time the interior plains assume their freshest aspect, but in summer they become dreary wastes ; their little water-channels, or "*creeks*," dry up, and animals, as well as men, are content to search for pools of brackish water. The trees and shrubs which are found in Australia are almost all evergreens, so that there is little variation in the landscape from winter to summer except in the drying of the grasses to yellow hay after the summer droughts. The characteristic trees of the more favoured outer margins of Australia are the *eucalypti*, or "gum trees," which acquire large dimensions on the eastern maritime slope.

Notwithstanding its dryness, the climate of Australia is extremely salubrious, and, excepting the northern tropical coast-lands, the country is everywhere well suited for European settlement.

**5. Animals.**—The fauna of Australia is distinct from that of any other region of the globe, and is characterised by the low organisation of its indigenous animals. Almost all the mammals—kangaroos, bandicoots, opossums—belong to the marsupial type, that is, are furnished with a natural pouch in which to carry their young. The "dingo," or wild dog, is almost the only carnivorous animal of the continent, and there are no indigenous hoofed animals. The birds of Australia stand unrivalled in their variety of form and beauty of plumage. The rivers within the tropics harbour formidable crocodiles, lizards and snakes are numerous, and fishes are found in endless variety on all parts of the Australian coasts.

**6. Products.**—Though, as we have seen, Australia possessed no native sheep, those introduced by the European settlers have thriven and multiplied in an extraordinary degree on its pastures, so that Australia has become one of the foremost wool-producing regions of the world. It vies also with California and the western United States in the abundance of its precious metals and minerals, especially of gold, besides silver, tin, copper, lead, iron, and coal. The most favoured and fertile region of the continent, the hill belt next the Pacific margin, is also the richest in metals.

**7. People.**—The aborigines of Australia belonging to the group of tribes called the Oceanic Negroes rank amongst the lowest of the human family. Once more numerous, they offered active resistance to the advance of the white men. Perpetual wanderers, they have resisted all efforts to draw them to civilisation, and are now reduced to about 20,000, mostly in Queensland and the reservations of Victoria. The bulk of the white population are descendants of emigrants from the British Isles. Chinese have become colonists in considerable numbers ; and Polynesian Kanakas have been introduced as labourers in some parts of tropical Queensland.

**8. The Commonwealth of Australia**, consisting of the six colonies tabulated at page 454, was proclaimed on January 1, 1901. There is a Federal Parliament of two Houses—a Senate and House of Representatives—under the King represented by a Governor-General, the several State Parliaments retaining their legislative functions for local affairs.

## NEW SOUTH WALES.

This colony includes the south-eastern region of Australia from the Pacific coast inland to the 141st meridian, which separates it from South Australia. On the north a boundary drawn inland from

Point Danger, and then along the 29th parallel of latitude to meet the South Australian frontier, separates New South Wales from Queensland; on the south the Murray River, and a line drawn from its source to Cape Howe at the S.E. corner of the continent, divides it from Victoria. In extent the colony is about five times larger than England and Wales.

9. **Physical Features.**—The portion of the eastern maritime heights included in New South Wales takes the name of the Muniong Range or *Australian Alps* in the south. Here the summit, called Mount Townsend, reaches a height of 7350 feet. Farther north the chief sections of the mountains are named the *Blue Mountains*, the *Liverpool Range*, and the *New England Range*, which runs into Queensland. These heights form a short seaward watershed, and a long gradual slope towards the far interior. The *Shoalhaven*, *Hawkesbury*, and *Hunter* are the chief of the streams which drain the outer descent to the Pacific; the *Darling*, *Lachlan*, and *Murrumbidgee* take their rise on the inner slope, and flow over the plains south-westward to join the boundary river *Murray*. *Lake George*, in the midst of mountains, 2130 feet above the sea-level, is the most important lake of the colony. Its water is brackish, and occasionally the lake dries up, and sheep wander over its bed. The well-watered maritime valleys and the hill region above form the agricultural section of the colony, where European grains and fruits are cultivated in abundance. The wide grass plains of the long interior slope, called the “*Riverina*,” form the pastoral lands of New South Wales, and are divided off into large sheep “*runs*,” which vary in size, but some of which extend over areas of from 30,000 to 70,000 acres.

10. **Minerals.**—The most productive gold mines of New South Wales are grouped between the New England and Liverpool Ranges in the north, and between the sources of the Murrumbidgee and Murray Rivers in the south. Those which yield copper, silver, lead, tin, mercury, and iron, are widely distributed in the mountain region, but the chief source of supply of coal is in the neighbourhood of Newcastle, in the lower basin of the Hunter River.

11. **People.**—The population of New South Wales has now become a settled one, and occupations are regular and constant. Public instruction has made great progress; a university was established at Sydney in 1851. Religious freedom was granted by charter as early as 1836.

12. **Government.**—Responsible government was granted to the colony in 1855, and a Legislative Council, the members of which hold their appointments for life, was nominated by the Governor. A Legislative Assembly is chosen every three years by universal suffrage.

13. **Chief Towns.**—The capital, *Sydney* (482,000), on the southern shore of the splendid harbour, Port Jackson, is now a fine English town, united by several railway lines to the interior; its commerce extends to all parts of the world, and it sends out great quantities of wool, gold, coal, tallow, copper, and grain. The other important towns are *Paramatta*, 15 miles from Sydney; *Bathurst*, the chief interior town, west of Sydney; *Newcastle*, the great coal port, on the coast, at the mouth of the Hunter; *Maitland*, on the same river, 20 miles above its mouth, and in a district known, on account of its fertility, as the “granary of New South Wales;” *Goulburn*, the chief place in the southern gold-mining district; and *Deniliquin*, the centre of the pastoral district of the “*Riverina*,” between the Darling and the Murray.

13A. *Norfolk Island*, 16 square miles in area, which lies out in the Pacific at a distance of 900 miles east of Sydney, belongs to New South Wales.

It is famous for its pine-trees. Formerly it was a penal settlement, and afterwards some of the inhabitants of Pitcairn Island (*q.v.*) were transferred to it, and remained here for a time ; population (1905) 827.

### VICTORIA.

14. The colony of Victoria may be compared to Great Britain in area. It occupies the south-eastern corner of Australia, marked out by the Murray River and the boundary of South Australia along the 141st meridian.

15. **Physical Features and Products.**—The high chain of the Dividing Range and Bowen Mountains or *Australian Alps*, as it is variously called, passing centrally through the colony, gives it a northern inward watershed to the *Murray*, and a southern slope to the ocean, down which there flow many streams, the most notable of them being the *Yarra-Yarra*, on which the capital stands. The extensive basin of *Port Phillip* is the most important of the many inlets and lagoons which fringe the Victorian coast. The colony is eminently a pastoral one, possessing great stretches of rich succulent grass country ; but since the discovery of gold, agriculture has made rapid advances. Trees are most abundant in the south-eastern valleys of the Australian Alps, in the district named Gippsland. The colony takes the first place as a gold-yielding region, but other metals are not found in any considerable quantities. The manufactures are varied, and they are encouraged by bounties and a protective tariff.

16. **People and Government.**—The population of Victoria now equals that of its parent colony of New South Wales, and the inhabitants are distinguished by great energy, health, and prosperity. Chinese are more numerous here than in any of the other Australian colonies, but the aborigines have nearly all been gathered into reservations. Schools are well supported by the State, and general education is nowhere more advanced. With the other colonies of Australia, Victoria received responsible government in 1855. The executive rests in the hands of the Governor appointed by the Crown, the legislative with a Parliament of two Chambers.

17. **Chief Towns.**—The capital, *Melbourne* (515,000), on the inlet of the sea called Port Phillip, has become the largest city of Australia, and is in every way a fine European town, with straight wide streets and noble public buildings. Railways extend from it in all directions, and its manufactures are now very extensive. *Geelong*, also on Port Phillip, 45 miles south-west of Melbourne, rivals it in foreign trade. *Ballarat*, nearly 100 miles west of Melbourne, in the midst of one of the first discovered gold-fields, is the largest interior town. *Sandhurst*, formerly known as Bendigo, 100 miles N.N.W. of Melbourne, is the greatest mining centre of the colony.

### QUEENSLAND.

18. This third section of the old colony of New South Wales occupies all the north-east of Australia from the 29th parallel, where it touches New South Wales, northward to Cape York, reaching westward to the boundary of South Australia and the shores of the Gulf of Carpentaria. The vast area is nearly eight times larger than that of Great Britain.

**19. Physical Features and Products.**—Here, as in New South Wales, the maritime range of hills divides the colony into a narrow coast descent and a long interior slope. The principal streams draining to the Pacific are the *Brisbane*, *Burnett*, *Fitzroy*, and *Burdekin*. The interior has two watersheds—a north-western towards the Gulf of Carpentaria, and a south-western towards the salt lakes of South Australia and the Murray River. The *Mitchell*, *Flinders*, and *Leichhardt* are the chief rivers of the gulf drainage; the *Barcoo* or *Cooper Creek* and the *Warrego*, the largest of those which flow south-westward. Much of the Pacific border in Queensland has a hot, moist climate, well suited to the cultivation of sugar, cotton, indigo, and maize, and the outer mountain slopes are rich in woods. Up in the hill region wide areas of pastoral “downs” appear, and on these heights the climate is more temperate. The long interior slope passes gradually into the dry climate of the arid steppes of Central Australia, where the rivers fail to resist the rapid evaporation, and where rain is almost unknown.

The metallic wealth of Queensland is very great. In recent years very productive gold-fields have been found in the north; copper, tin, iron, and mercury are also widely distributed.

**20. People and Government.**—As yet the young colony has gathered only a small population in proportion to its vast area, and the greater number of settlers are found at present in the south-east next to New South Wales. The aborigines are still rather numerous in Northern Queensland. A few Chinese have settled in the colony, and Polynesians have been introduced as labourers on the sugar plantations.

The Government is on the same plan as in the other colonies.

**21. Chief Towns.**—The capital town, *Brisbane* (population, 1905, 130,000), lies close to Moreton Bay, which was first settled as a convict station in 1823. It has now grown into a flourishing town, and is the centre of the trade of the colony, extending its communications by railways inland, and exporting wool, cotton, sugar, timber, and preserved meats.

*Ipswich* (15,000), 25 miles west of Brisbane, once the second largest town, is now surpassed by several others. *Maryborough* (13,000), on the Mary river, 25 miles above its mouth, is an important shipping port. *Gympie* (16,000), higher up on the same river, has productive gold-mines.

*Rockhampton* (20,000), on the Fitzroy river, near the Tropic of Capricorn, ranks next to Brisbane in population. *Townsville* (15,600), the outlet of the Charters Towers' gold-fields, and *Cooktown*, the shipping port for the Palmer river gold-fields, are the principal places farther north. The most northerly settlement of Australia is the station of *Somerset* on Cape York, the point of communication with New Guinea across Torres Strait. *Thursday Island* in Torres Strait is a very busy postal station.

## SOUTH AUSTRALIA.

**22.** The name South Australia was given to the settlement formed on the south coast of the continent in 1836, long before Victoria had been divided off as a separate colony from New South Wales. It has extended now to embrace all the vast central section of the continent from the great Australian Bight in the south to the coasts of the Arafura Sea and the Gulf of Carpentaria in the north; but as the greater part of this enormous territory is northward of Victoria, and even of New South Wales within its later boundaries,

the name has become a misleading one. Hence it was proposed in 1907 to separate the Northern Territory from South Australia, and place it under the direct administration of the Federal Government.

**23. Physical Features and Products.**—Much of this vast area remains unexplored ; but there is little doubt that by far the larger part of it is occupied by the dry bare steppes of interior Australia, which can never become of much value as habitable land.

The most valuable and important part of the colony lies along the *Flinders Range* of mountains, which extend from the eastern side of Spencer Gulf northward towards the salt basins of Lakes Torrens and Eyre. A large proportion of the land along these hill slopes has been already settled for cultivation, and here wheat and fruits of all European sorts, including the vine, grow in abundance. Large areas of pastoral land surround this hill country, and the hills themselves are rich in veins of copper, besides gold, silver, and bismuth. The long line of telegraph, which has been carried all across South Australia, leads through interchanging grass-land, bush, salt lagoons, and sandy desert, over the Macdonnell range of hills, in the centre of the continent, to the northern territory of the colony, a region which is as yet quite undeveloped, but which, besides being rich in gold, seems to be adequate to the cultivation of all tropical products.

**24. People and Government.**—South Australia, having never been a penal settlement, has come less under direct British control than the other Australian colonies. Its administration has been a wise and economical one. The executive is in the hands of the Governor and a council of five ministers : the Legislative Council serves for twelve years ; the members of the House of Assembly are nominated for three years. The elements of population other than British are very small, excepting the German. The few remaining aborigines are well cared for. Perfect equality is given to all denominations, and there is no State aid to any religious body.

**25. Chief Towns.**—The capital city, *Adelaide* (173,000), the only important town of the colony, is built on the eastern coast-land of the Gulf of St. Vincent, eight miles from its seaport, and six from *Glenelg*, a favourite watering-place and mail station. A railway has been carried inland from *Port Augusta* to *Odnatta* (478 miles) with junction at *Quorn* for Adelaide (120 miles). *Wallaroo*, on Spencer Gulf, is the port of the copper-mines of *Moonta* and *Kadina*, on York peninsula. Other mining towns are *Kapunda* and *Koorunga* (with the Burra Burra mine), to the north of Adelaide. The chief settlement in the Northern Territory is that of *Palmerston*, at the entrance of Port Darwin, on the north coast, where the overland telegraph terminates. A railway runs from Port Darwin to *Pine Creek* (146 miles).

## WEST AUSTRALIA.

**26.** The colony of Western Australia includes all that part of the continent which lies west of the 129th meridian, so that it includes an area eleven times as large as Britain. Little is known of this region beyond its maritime and mining districts.

**27.** The most important district, and that which was first occupied by colonists, lies along the maritime slope of the hills on the south-west, where a few small rivers descend to the Indian Ocean. Since the discovery of gold in 1886 great progress has been made in the Kimberley and other auriferous



districts of the north-west. Here the output of gold rose from about £180,000 in 1889 to £8,305,000 in 1905, and the total yield between 1886 and 1906 has been estimated at over £63,000,000. The Fitzroy river flowing to King Sound gives access to the gold-fields.

28. The chief town of the colony, *Perth* (population, 1903, 44,370), lies on the left bank of the *Swan River*, which formerly gave its name to the whole territory. Its port on the coast is *Fremantle* (23,000). *Albany* (3600), on King George's Sound, *Kalgoorlie*, and *Coolgardie*, are other thriving places. Railways open (1906) 2312 miles.

## TASMANIA.<sup>1</sup>

29. The island which was first called Van Diemen's Land, and afterwards, from its discoverer, Tasmania, is somewhat smaller than Scotland, being about 150 miles wide each way. It is separated from Victoria and the mainland of Australia by Bass Strait, which can be crossed in a day's steamer passage.

30. **Physical Features.**—Its bold coasts are indented with bays and inlets, which form fine harbours. Inward the island rises to elevated downs, surrounded by high mountain ranges, some of which present a wild and stern aspect. The highest point of the island, named Cradle Mount, is 5069 feet high, and there are a number of summits which exceed 4000 feet in elevation. Streams and lakes are numerous in the mountain valleys, the largest rivers being the *Tamar*, which flows northward, and the *Derwent*, which descends south-eastward to the inlet upon which the capital town is placed.

31. **Climate and Vegetation.**—The climate may be said to resemble that of England, though the summer heat is occasionally greater than is experienced here, especially when the island is reached at times by a blast of hot air from the deserts of Australia. The winter cold forms thin ice on the lowlands, and then the higher ranges are snow-clad. The western side of the island, exposed to the prevailing westerly winds from the southern ocean, is very wet, but the eastern has a rainfall that does not exceed that of the east coast of England. Tracts of forest, containing trees of great size, such as the durable thorn pine, myrtle wood, and blue gum, cover large parts of the island, and elegant tree ferns, besides a great variety of smaller ferns, fill the glens. Where the island is cultivated, its hedged fields and orchards beside the villages remind one of England. The native animals of the island are to a great extent similar to those of the mainland of Australia. Iron, tin, silver, gold, and coal, are widely distributed.

32. **People and Government.**—The inhabitants of Tasmania are almost exclusively of British origin. The aborigines, who resembled the Australians in their customs and mode of life, though they were of shorter stature, stronger physique, and darker complexion, have now become extinct. Agricultural rather than pastoral industries employ the colonists of Tasmania; a large number are employed in the South Sea whale fisheries. Education is compulsory on all; religion is unfettered. The colony became independent of New South Wales in 1825, and thirty years later received responsible government, like the other Australian colonies.

---

	Area in sq. m.	Pop. (1905).
<sup>1</sup> Tasmania . . . . .	26,215	181,106

33. **Chief Towns.**—The two important towns of Tasmania are *Hobart* (24,660), the capital, on the right bank of the estuary of the Derwent, in the south-east, and *Launceston* (18,000), on the Tamar, near the north coast. These two outlets of the island rival one another in trade, which is promoted by railway, and excellent roads through the island. Wool, timber, hops, oil, and fruits, are the leading exports. Railways open (1904) 620 miles.

## DOMINION OF NEW ZEALAND.<sup>1</sup>

1. At a distance of about 1200 miles south-east of the mainland of Australia lie the islands of New Zealand. They are nearly at the antipodes of our islands of Britain, or a line drawn through the centre of the globe from England would come out near them on the other side of the world. The group consists of two large islands, a northern and a southern, and of several smaller ones, of which Stewart Island, to the south, is the most important. The extent of the islands together is somewhat less than that of the United Kingdom.

2. **Physical Features.**—The *North Island* (once called New Ulster, and by the natives *Te ika a Maui*, or “the bird of the Maui”) is of less compact form than the southern, and runs out in long peninsulas. Nor is it so generally elevated as the southern, though it contains high summits. Parallel ranges, of which that named *Ruahine* is the chief, extend along its maritime borders on the south-east, and attain heights of over 2600 feet. In the centre of the island rises a volcanic group, in which are *Mount Ruapehu*, 9700 feet, and the active volcano of *Ngaurahoe*, between it and *Tongariro*, 7000 feet. On a western promontory *Mount Egmont* stands alone, its conical snow-clad summit having an elevation of 8270 feet.

The *South Island* (formerly known as New Munster, or Middle Island, or by its native name of *Te wahi Punamu*, “the place of greenstone”), separated from the northern by *Cook Strait*, is almost covered by the high range called the *Southern Alps*, which rises to greatest height on the western side of the island, following its whole length, forming high-walled fiords on the western coast, and reaching down in spurs eastward to the maritime plains. The highest point among the many peaks of this magnificent glacier and snow-clad range is *Mount Cook*, 12,349 feet high, near the centre of the chain; *Mount Franklin*, on the north of it, is 10,000 feet, and *Mount Aspiring*, towards the south, 9940 feet high. The Tasman glacier, depending from Mount Cook, is larger than any of those found in the Swiss Alps. Almost the only level district in the South Island is the *Plain of Canterbury*, which reaches along the eastern maritime border for about 100 miles, having an average width inland to the base of the mountains of 20 miles. *Stewart Island*, in the extreme south, which has an area of 665 square miles, is also mountainous.

Both islands have many rivers and lakes. The Northern Island has a large central lake named *Taupo*, 36 miles long, from which the *Waikato* river flows to the west coast; the *Wanganui*, flowing southward to Cook Strait, is the other important river of the North Island. Hot-water lakes and geysers, far surpassing those of Iceland in size, abound in the central volcanic group. The

---

	Area in sq. m.	Pop. (1906).
<sup>1</sup> New Zealand . . . . .	104,470	937,000

South Island has a series of fine rivers on its eastern slope, such as the *Wairau* in the north, the *Waitaki* and the *Clutha* in the south. Its steep western watershed has only small streams, though these are very numerous. In the southern mountain region of the South Island there are many alpine lakes of great depth.

**3. Climate and Products.**—In general the climate of New Zealand resembles that of the British Isles. The North Island has a warmer and more equable, the South a cooler and more variable, climate, rough and bracing. The western sides of both islands receive by far the larger share of rainfall. Forests of lofty pines and other evergreen trees, tree ferns, and vegetation matted together by the rope-like "smilax," occupy a large share of the North and some parts of the South Island. Other parts are overgrown with ferns breast high, and others are well adapted for pasture.

Though New Zealand has no indigenous quadrupeds, the plains of the South Island are now so well stocked with sheep that wool and mutton have become leading exports of the colony. The northern and eastern districts of the South Island are those best adapted for agriculture and the cultivation of wheat, oats, and barley.

New Zealand is very rich in minerals; both in the North and South Islands gold-mining has become a settled and productive industry. Silver, iron, copper, and tin are also found, though not yet extensively worked. Coal of good quality abounds, and the petroleum is equal to that of America.

**4. People and Government.**—At the time of their first exploration by Captain Cook the islands were all peopled by the *Maoris*, a race presenting far higher physical and mental development than any other in all this Oceanic region. During the progress of the British colonisation and occupation of the islands, the contests with the Maoris have been long-continued and severe, and throughout their wars the natives have shown themselves brave and skilful. Their numbers were reduced in 1906 to 47,835, the greater part of them living peaceably in the North Island; and the European colonial population is now twenty times as numerous.

A Governor appointed by the Crown holds the executive power, and is aided by five ministers. The legislative body consists of a Council nominated by the Governor, and of an elected House of Representatives which includes several Maori members. New Zealand has not yet joined the Australian Commonwealth.

A system of railways connecting the chief places in the islands was begun in 1872, and in 1906 exceeded 2520 miles.

**5. Chief Towns.**—The parliament of New Zealand meets now at *Wellington* (59,000) on the south coast of the North Island. This meeting-point was found more convenient than *Auckland* (38,000), which lies on the narrow isthmus that leads to the long north-western peninsula of the North Island, between Hauraki Gulf and the harbour of Manukau. *Napier*, on Hawke Bay, and *New Plymouth*, at the foot of Mount Egmont, are the only other remarkable towns of the North Island.

*Dunedin* (56,000), at the head of the inlet called the Harbour of Otago, on the east coast, is the most considerable town of the South Island. *Christchurch* (50,000) is the main centre of population on Canterbury Plain, rich in wheat, meat, and wool, with *Lyttelton* for its principal port. *Nelson*, at the bottom of Blind Bay, near the northern extremity of the island, is the outlet of the richest mining district. *Hokitika* is the most important town on the west coast.

**5A.** The *Chatham Islands* (628 sq. m.), 450 miles to the east of New Zealand, are hilly, and supply whalers with provisions; population (1906) 197. The *Auckland Islands* and *Campbell*, far to the south, are uninhabited.

OCEANIA.<sup>1</sup>

1. The term “Polynesia,” which, like “The South Sea Islands,” was formerly applied to the whole of the Oceanic domain not included in the Australian or the Eastern Archipelagoes, is now generally restricted to one of its three main insular divisions, the other two being *Melanesia* and *Micronesia*. For the present political distribution of these divisions, see page 100. Geographical and other details follow here:—

2. **Melanesia** (Gr. *melas*, black; *nesos*, island), forms the *black zone*, being inhabited almost exclusively by Oceanic negroes, who are called Papuans in New Guinea, and elsewhere Melanesians, and are akin to the western (African) negroes. The zone develops a curve from near Ceram round N. and N.E. Australia, and comprises New Guinea with the adjacent Admiralty, New Britain, New Ireland, Duke of York, Louisiade, and D’Entrecasteaux groups; the Solomons, New Hebrides, Santa Cruz, and Banks Archipelagoes; New Caledonia and the Loyalty islets; lastly, Fiji (Viti), east of the normal curve line.

3. **Physical Features.**—Most of the groups are mountainous, being largely of volcanic origin. The climate combines heat and moisture in a high degree, so that luxuriant green vegetation appears on almost every one of them. Valuable vegetable products are sandal-wood, the coco-palm, bread-fruit tree, yam, sweet potato, and sugar-cane.

Mammals are scarce, being limited to the wild pig, marsupials, bats, mice, and an ant-eater; but this paucity is in some measure compensated by a great variety of birds of most gorgeous and beautiful plumage, including birds-of-paradise, confined to New Guinea and the neighbouring islands. The fauna grows poorer as we proceed eastward, and in the Fiji Islands the only indigenous mammals are mice and bats. Our European domesticated animals have been successfully introduced.

4. **People.**—The bulk of the population consists of dark-coloured Papuans, with frizzly hair, intermixed, in the west with Malays, in the east with light-coloured Polynesians. The Papuans keep dogs, pigs, and fowls, and cultivate the soil; but although their islands contain gold and copper, they were, until recently, unacquainted with the use of metals, and made use of stone implements.

5. *New Guinea*, the largest island in all Oceania, has an area equal to more than thrice that of Great Britain. A lofty range of mountains, named at the west end *Charles Louis Mountains*, and at the east end *Owen Stanley Range*, traverses the island from north-west to south-east, attaining an elevation of over 17,000 feet. The northern coast is for the most part hills, but

		Area.		Population.
1 Melanesia ..	{ New Guinea .	312,000	square miles	900,000
	{ Other Islands .	56,300	” ”	650,000
Polynesia ..	{ Sandwich Islands	6,600	” ”	200,000
	{ Other Islands .	3,800	” ”	120,000
Micronesia	. . . . .	1,400	” ”	90,000
		380,100		1,960,000

to the south of the spinal range, in the direction of Torres Strait, there spreads out a vast alluvial plain, traversed by the Fly and other rivers, covered with dense primeval forests, and fringed with mangrove swamps. The soil is exceedingly fertile, but the cultivated area small. The natives live in small villages under headmen, who, however, exercise very little authority. Trade is limited to a few raw products, bartered by the natives with Malay traders.

6. *New Britain* (Neu Pommern), *New Ireland* (Neu Mecklenburg), and the *Duke of York* (Neu Lauenburg), now renamed the Bismarck Archipelago, form a distinct group of volcanic formation inhabited by Papuan cannibals. The capital of the German protectorate is *Herbertshöhe*, which is the chief centre of trade, the industries, and missionary work, and from it is also administered the German section of New Guinea (*Kaiser Wilhelm's Land*). The *Solomon Islands* consist of a double row of mountainous volcanic islands, with an active volcano in Guadalcanar. The *New Hebrides* have five active volcanoes, and both of these groups are peopled by typical Melanesians, who are still largely ferocious head-hunters and cannibals. *New Caledonia*, a long high island, stretching 200 miles from north-west to south-east, and almost encircled by a coral reef, belongs to France, and is used as a penal settlement. Nickel, gold, and copper are found. Area 7650 square miles; population (1906) 53,000; capital, *Nouméa*.

7. The most easterly group are *Viti* or *Fiji Islands*, annexed to the British Empire in 1874. They lie about 2000 miles east of Australia, and consist of the two large and high islands of *Viti Levu* and *Vanua Levu*, and over 300 islets, with total area 7435 square miles, including *Rotuma*; population (1905) 122,000; capital, *Suva*, in *Viti Levu*.

8. **Micronesia** (Gr. *mikros*, small) includes the small groups north of the equator, between 130° E. long. and 180°: Marshall Islands, Gilbert or Kingsmill Islands, Caroline Islands, Pelew Islands, and the Mariannes or Ladrone Islands. The Gilbert are British, but nearly all the rest passed from Spain to Germany by purchase in 1899.

9. These widespread islands, like those of Polynesia, are naturally divided into two classes—the mountainous islands, which are volcanic, and the low coral islands. The latter are generally circular in form, consisting often of a low reef, which encloses a lagoon connected with the ocean by one or more openings. Such are termed *atolls*. Most of the volcanic islands are also surrounded by coral formations at greater or less distances from the island, which in that case are termed *barrier reefs*.

10. The Marshall group had already been annexed by Germany in 1886. They, as also the Gilbert Islands, to the south, are, without exception, flat coral islands or atolls. The fruit of the pandang and coco-nuts, together with fish and turtles, form the staple of food. *Ponape*, a thickly-wooded basaltic island in the Caroline archipelago, is remarkable for its huge stone structures of unknown origin. *Guam* or *Guahan*, one of the Mariannes, is the largest of that group, though only 198 square miles in extent. It was ceded by Spain to the United States in 1898, and is now a United States naval station; population (1906) 10,000; capital, *Agaña*.

11. **Polynesia** includes all the remaining islands of the Pacific from the Tonga or Friendly Islands eastward to Easter Island, and north-eastward to the Sandwich Islands.

Here, as in Micronesia, we distinguish between low coral islands and lofty volcanic islands, generally encircled by coral reefs. The products are similar to those of Micronesia, and become less varied in proportion as we travel eastward. The only indigenous terrestrial mammals are mice, and a bat.

12. **People.**—The brown Polynesians have struck all observers by their physical beauty, cheerfulness, and genial disposition. Their island life has made them, for the most part, a seafaring race, and they display great skill and boldness in canoeing. Though warlike, they offer no human sacrifices like their neighbours the Melanese, and cannibalism occurs but rarely amongst them. When first discovered they had no written language, were unacquainted with metals, and had not learnt to make pottery. But in carving their canoes and weapons, and in the manufacture of bark cloth and mats, they exhibited considerable taste. On all the islands they have decreased greatly in numbers as they have gradually come more closely in contact with the white race.

13. The *Tonga* or *Friendly Islands* are all of coral formation, with the exception of several active volcanoes. The *Samoa* or *Navigator's Islands*, on the other hand, are all lofty. They are fertile, producing cotton, coffee, maize, coco-nuts, and other produce for exportation.

14. The *Society Islands*, lofty, fertile, and volcanic, out in the centre of the South Pacific, belong to France. The largest island, *Tahiti* (7339 feet) has acquired celebrity from the extreme beauty of its mountain valleys and cascades. *Papeete*, the capital, carries on a brisk trade in coco-nuts and mother-of-pearl, chiefly procured from the archipelago of low coral islands to the east, known as *Tuamotu* ("cloud of islands") or *Paumotu*. Among the scattered islands to the south of these low islands, that named *Pitcairn* is of interest as having been the refuge of the mutineers of the ship "Bounty," who formed a European colony there in the latter part of the eighteenth century, which still survives. Still farther east, a mere speck in the ocean, lies *Easter Island*, noteworthy on account of its remarkable remains of some prehistoric people.

The *Marquesas Islands*, lofty and of volcanic origin, to the north of *Tuamotu*, also belong to France.

15. Among those north of the equator the *Hawaii* or *Sandwich Islands* are by far the most important. There are eight larger islands in the group including Hawaii proper, the largest island in the open Pacific, which rises to a height of 13,760 feet in its towering volcanic summit, named *Mauna Loa*; and which also contains the great crater of *Kilauea*, the floor of which resembles a lake of fire. The natives of the Sandwich Islands have been brought to considerable advancement in civilisation by their long intercourse with Europeans, of whom there are considerable numbers settled in the group. Early in the nineteenth century the Hawaiians adopted a monarchical form of government; but after much political unrest Queen Liliuokalani, last of the dynasty, was deposed in 1893, and a republic proclaimed. In 1898 the group was annexed by the United States, and now forms a Territory of the Union under a governor. Area 6000 square miles; population (estimated 1896) 200,000, of whom 36,000 were Hawaiians, 68,000 Japanese, 36,000 Chinese, and 28,000 Whites. Capital, *Honolulu*, on Oahu Island; population 40,000.

Several small islands between Hawaii and the Society Islands, including Fanning, Christmas, Malden, and Starbuck, the Phoenix and the Manahiki Islands, have been incorporated with the British Empire.



# INDEX.

- AACHEN**, 197  
**Aalborg**, 190  
**Aalst or Alost**, 217  
**Aar river**, 209  
**Aared mountains**, 350  
**Aargau**, 211  
**Ababde**, 378  
**Abana**, 352  
**Abaya, lake**, 365  
**Abd-el-Kader**, 92  
**Abd-ur-Rahman**, 84  
**Aberdeen**, 177  
**Abeshr**, 389  
**Abo**, 258  
**Abomey**, 387  
**Aboukir Bay**, 74  
**Abruzzi**, 237  
**Abu, Mount**, 308  
**Abuam**, 371  
**Abu Bekr, his wars**, 29  
**Abu Hammed**, 380  
**Abyssinia**, 87, 382  
**Abyssinian Christians**, 367  
**Abyssinian highlands**, 360  
**Acadia**, 98  
**Acapulco**, 434  
**Acarmania**, 242  
**Achaia**, 242  
**Achin**, 56  
**Aconcagua**, 409, 448  
**Acre or Akka**, 355  
**Actium, battle of**, 25  
**Adalia**, 355  
**Adamawa**, 90, 389  
**Adam's Peak**, 321  
**Adana**, 352, 355  
**Adandinanlanga**, 363  
**Adarbaijan**, 347  
**Adda**, 233  
**Addis Abeba**, 88, 380  
**Adelaide**, 460  
**Adelberg**, 206  
**Aden**, 87, 359  
**Aderer**, 376  
**Adige or Etsch**, 206, 233  
**Adigerat**, 384  
**Adowa**, 88, 384  
**Adria**, 233  
**Adrianople**, 253, 255  
     **peace of**, 78  
**Adriatic Sea**, 156  
**Adyrnus**, 351  
**Ægean Sea**, 156, 239, 247  
**Ægina**, 240  
**Ægri**, 21  
**Aetas or Itas**, 336  
**Afar**, 382  
**Afghanistan**, 83, 264, 338  
**Afghans**, 273  
**Africa**, 360  
     **animals**, 366  
     **Central States of**, 93  
     **climate**, 365  
     **diamond fields**, 366  
     **early explorers**, 42, 44,  
         49, 73  
     **extent**, 360  
     **government**, 368  
     **lakes**, 362  
     **lowlands**, 360  
     **minerals**, 366  
     **mountains**, 360  
     **peoples**, 367  
     **Portuguese possessions**,  
         88, 90  
     **relief**, 360  
     **religions**, 367  
     **rivers**, 362  
     **Spanish possessions**, 90  
     **vegetation**, 366  
**African Lakes Company**, 88  
**Afridis**, 340  
**Agades**, 376  
**Agaña**, 465  
**Agau**, 383  
**Agger Minde**, 188  
**Agincourt, battle of**, 41  
**Agra**, 316  
**Agram**, 204, 208  
**Agua (vol.)**, 434  
**Agulhas, Cape**, 360  
**Ahaggar Tuaregs**, 376  
**Ahmadabad**, 318  
**Aidin**, 351, 355  
**Ainu**, 272  
**Ainus**, 305  
**Air or Asben**, 376  
**Aix, peace of**, 67  
**Aix-la-Chapelle**, 197  
**Aja, Jebel**, 357  
**Ajmere**, 318  
**Akabah**, 350  
**Akhal-Tekke**, 283  
**Akhdar, Jebel**, 264, 357  
**Akhyr Dagb**, 349  
**Akka or Acre**, 355  
**Akmolinsk**, 282  
**Aksu**, 297  
**Akyab**, 323  
**Alabama**, 430  
**Aland islands**, 157  
**Alantika**, 361, 385  
**Alaric sacks Rome**, 27  
**Alashehr**, 355  
**Alaska**, 70, 97, 424  
**Alatau**, 263, 268  
**Albanians**, 241, 248, 254  
**Albany**, 430, 461  
**Albay (vol.)**, 336  
**Albert Edward Nyanza**, 362  
**Albert Nyanza**, 93, 362  
**Albion**, 20  
**Albuquerque, his voyages**,  
     49, 50  
**Alemanni**, 30  
**Alemtejo**, 225, 231  
**Aleppo**, 355  
**Aletsch glacier**, 158  
**Aleutian islands**, 424  
**Alexander, Pope**, 23, 50  
**Alexander the Great**, 22  
**Alexandrapol**, 279  
**Alexandrette**, 355  
**Alexandria**, 22, 25, 28, 379  
**Alfionn or Albion**, 20  
**Alfonso I. of Portugal**, 34  
**Alfred the Great**, 32  
**Algarve**, 231  
**Algeciras**, 92  
**Algeria**, 25, 92, 369, 371  
**Algiers**, 31, 372  
**Alicante**, 229, 230  
**Alindshi Dagb**, 349  
**Al-Jezizeh**, 31  
**Allahabad**, 316  
**Alleghany**, 430  
     **mountains**, 410, 425  
**Allen, bog of**, 175  
     **Lough**, 173  
**Alma Dagb**, 349  
**Almaden**, 229  
**Almagro**, 53  
**Almohades**, 34  
**Alost**, 217  
**Alps**, 129, 158  
     **in Austria**, 202

Here, as in Micronesia, we distinguish between low coral islands and lofty volcanic islands, generally encircled by coral reefs. The products are similar to those of Micronesia, and become less varied in proportion as we travel eastward. The only indigenous terrestrial mammals are mice, and a bat.

12. **People.**—The brown Polynesians have struck all observers by their physical beauty, cheerfulness, and genial disposition. Their island life has made them, for the most part, a seafaring race, and they display great skill and boldness in canoeing. Though warlike, they offer no human sacrifices like their neighbours the Melanesians, and cannibalism occurs but rarely amongst them. When first discovered they had no written language, were unacquainted with metals, and had not learnt to make pottery. But in carving their canoes and weapons, and in the manufacture of bark cloth and mats, they exhibited considerable taste. On all the islands they have decreased greatly in numbers as they have gradually come more closely in contact with the white race.

13. The *Tonga* or *Friendly Islands* are all of coral formation, with the exception of several active volcanoes. The *Samoa* or *Navigator's Islands*, on the other hand, are all lofty. They are fertile, producing cotton, coffee, maize, coco-nuts, and other produce for exportation.

14. The *Society Islands*, lofty, fertile, and volcanic, out in the centre of the South Pacific, belong to France. The largest island, *Tahiti* (7339 feet) has acquired celebrity from the extreme beauty of its mountain valleys and cascades. *Papeete*, the capital, carries on a brisk trade in coco-nuts and mother-of-pearl, chiefly procured from the archipelago of low coral islands to the east, known as *Tuamotu* ("cloud of islands") or *Paumotu*. Among the scattered islands to the south of these low islands, that named *Pitcairn* is of interest as having been the refuge of the mutineers of the ship "Bounty," who formed a European colony there in the latter part of the eighteenth century, which still survives. Still farther east, a mere speck in the ocean, lies *Easter Island*, noteworthy on account of its remarkable remains of some prehistoric people.

The *Marquesas Islands*, lofty and of volcanic origin, to the north of *Tuamotu*, also belong to France.

15. Among those north of the equator the *Hawaii* or *Sandwich Islands* are by far the most important. There are eight larger islands in the group including Hawaii proper, the largest island in the open Pacific, which rises to a height of 13,760 feet in its towering volcanic summit, named *Mauna Loa*; and which also contains the great crater of *Kilauea*, the floor of which resembles a lake of fire. The natives of the Sandwich Islands have been brought to considerable advancement in civilisation by their long intercourse with Europeans, of whom there are considerable numbers settled in the group. Early in the nineteenth century the Hawaiians adopted a monarchical form of government; but after much political unrest Queen Liliuokalani, last of the dynasty, was deposed in 1893, and a republic proclaimed. In 1898 the group was annexed by the United States, and now forms a Territory of the Union under a governor. Area 6000 square miles; population (estimated 1896) 200,000, of whom 36,000 were Hawaiians, 68,000 Japanese, 36,000 Chinese, and 28,000 Whites. Capital, *Honolulu*, on Oahu Island; population 40,000.

Several small islands between Hawaii and the Society Islands, including Fanning, Christmas, Malden, and Starbuck, the Phoenix and the Manahiki Islands, have been incorporated with the British Empire.

# INDEX.

**AACHEN**, 197  
**Aalborg**, 190  
**Aalst or Alost**, 217  
**Aar river**, 209  
**Aared mountains**, 350  
**Aargau**, 211  
**Ababde**, 378  
**Abana**, 352  
**Abaya, lake**, 365  
**Abd-el-Kader**, 92  
**Abd-ur-Rahman**, 84  
**Aberdeen**, 177  
**Abeshr**, 389  
**Abo**, 258  
**Abomey**, 387  
**Aboukir Bay**, 74  
**Abruzzi**, 237  
**Abu, Mount**, 308  
**Abuam**, 371  
**Abu Bekr, his wars**, 29  
**Abu Hammed**, 380  
**Abyssinia**, 87, 382  
**Abyssinian Christians**, 367  
**Abyssinian highlands**, 360  
**Acadia**, 98  
**Acapulco**, 434  
**Acarmania**, 242  
**Achaia**, 242  
**Achin**, 56  
**Aconcagua**, 409, 448  
**Acre or Akka**, 355  
**Actium, battle of**, 25  
**Adalia**, 355  
**Adamawa**, 90, 389  
**Adam's Peak**, 321  
**Adana**, 352, 355  
**Adandinanlanga**, 363  
**Adarbaijan**, 347  
**Adda**, 233  
**Addis Abeba**, 88, 380  
**Adelaide**, 460  
**Adelberg**, 206  
**Aden**, 87, 359  
**Aderer**, 376  
**Adige or Etsch**, 206, 233  
**Adigerat**, 384  
**Adowa**, 88, 384  
**Adria**, 233  
**Adrianople**, 253, 255  
     peace of, 78  
**Adriatic Sea**, 156  
**Adyrnus**, 351

**Ægean Sea**, 156, 239, 247  
**Ægina**, 240  
**Ægri**, 21  
**Actas or Itas**, 336  
**Afar**, 382  
**Afghanistan**, 83, 264, 338  
**Afghans**, 273  
**Africa**, 360  
     animals, 366  
     Central States of, 93  
     climate, 365  
     diamond fields, 366  
     early explorers, 42, 44,  
         49, 73  
     extent, 360  
     government, 368  
     lakes, 362  
     lowlands, 360  
     minerals, 366  
     mountains, 360  
     peoples, 367  
     Portuguese possessions,  
         88, 90  
     relief, 360  
     religions, 367  
     rivers, 362  
     Spanish possessions, 90  
     vegetation, 366  
**African Lakes Company**, 88  
**Afridis**, 340  
**Agades**, 376  
**Agaña**, 465  
**Agau**, 383  
**Agger Minde**, 188  
**Agincourt, battle of**, 41  
**Agra**, 316  
**Agram**, 204, 208  
**Agua (vol.)**, 434  
**Agulhas, Cape**, 360  
**Ahaggar Tuaregs**, 376  
**Ahmadabad**, 318  
**Aidin**, 351, 355  
**Ainu**, 272  
**Ainus**, 305  
**Air or Asben**, 376  
**Aix, peace of**, 67  
**Aix-la-Chapelle**, 197  
**Aja, Jebel**, 357  
**Ajmere**, 318  
**Akabah**, 350  
**Akhal-Tekke**, 288  
**Akhdar, Jebel**, 264, 357

**Akhyr Dagb**, 349  
**Akka or Acre**, 355  
**Akmolinsk**, 282  
**Aksu**, 297  
**Akyab**, 323  
**Alabama**, 430  
**Aland islands**, 157  
**Alantika**, 361, 385  
**Alaric sacks Rome**, 27  
**Alashehr**, 355  
**Alaska**, 70, 97, 424  
**Alatau**, 263, 268  
**Albanians**, 241, 248, 254  
**Albany**, 430, 461  
**Albay (vol.)**, 336  
**Albert Edward Nyanza**, 362  
**Albert Nyanza**, 93, 362  
**Albion**, 20  
**Albuquerque, his voyages**,  
     49, 50  
**Alemanni**, 30  
**Alemtejo**, 225, 231  
**Aleppo**, 355  
**Aletsch glacier**, 158  
**Alentian islands**, 424  
**Alexander, Pope**, 23, 50  
**Alexander the Great**, 22  
**Alexandropol**, 279  
**Alexandrette**, 355  
**Alexandria**, 22, 25, 28, 379  
**Alfionn or Albion**, 20  
**Alfonso I. of Portugal**, 34  
**Alfred the Great**, 32  
**Algarve**, 281  
**Algeciras**, 92  
**Algeria**, 25, 92, 369, 371  
**Algiers**, 31, 372  
**Alicante**, 229, 230  
**Alindshi Dagb**, 349  
**Al-Jezizeh**, 31  
**Allahabad**, 316  
**Alleghany**, 430  
     mountains, 410, 425  
**Allen, bog of**, 175  
     Lough, 173  
**Alma Dagb**, 349  
**Almaden**, 229  
**Almagro**, 53  
**Almohades**, 84  
**Alost**, 217  
**Alps**, 129, 158  
     in Austria, 202

- Alps, snow line, 163  
 Alsace, 77  
 Alsace-Lorraine, 196, 201  
 Altai, 263, 279, 280  
 Altamaha, 425  
 Altenfiord, 185  
 Altona, 197  
 Aluta or Oltu, 244  
 Amadeus lake, 455  
 Amager, 188, 190  
 Amanus mountains, 349  
 Amarapura, 325  
 Amasia, 355  
 Amazon, 411  
 Amazon river, 443  
 Ambassi, 390  
 Amboyna, 336  
 Ambriz, 90, 391  
 Ameland, 212  
 America, 409  
     climate, 411  
     early notices of, 33, 43, 44,  
         49, 50, 52, 63, 68, 72, 96  
     extent, 409  
     government, 415  
     mountains, 409  
     peoples, 413  
     plants and animals, 412  
     relief, 409  
     religion, 414  
     rivers and lakes, 411  
     South, Spanish, 73  
 Amhara, 383  
 Amherst, 323  
 Amiens, peace of, 74  
 Amirante islands, 407  
 Am-nok-gang river, 300  
 Amorgos, 240  
 Amoy, 289  
 Ampanam, 335  
 Amraoti, 317  
 Amritsar, 317  
 Amstel, 212  
 Amsterdam, 212, 214  
 Amu Daria, 262, 268, 282  
     river, 79  
 Amur, 281  
     river, 264, 266  
 Ana, 351  
 Anahuac, plateau of, 129  
 Anamalai mountains, 309  
 Anamba islands, 332  
 Ancona, 237, 238  
 Andalucia or Andalusia, 21,  
     229  
 Andaman islands, 323  
 Andes, 128, 409  
 Andijan, 283  
 Andkhui, 339, 342  
 Andorra, 281  
 Andros, 240  
 Angara, 281  
 Angerman Elf, 184  
 Angers, 222  
 Anglesey, 169  
 Angles, their descent on  
     Britain, 30  
 Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, 377  
 Anglo-Saxon heptarchy, 30  
 Angola, 90, 391  
 Angolala, 384  
 Angora, 355  
 Angosha, 395  
 Angoumois, 223  
 Angra Pequena, 405  
 Anguilla, 437  
 Anhalt, 195  
 Anholt, 188  
 Anjou, 223  
 Anjouan island, 407  
 Ankaratra hills, 406  
 Ankober, 384  
 Annam, 65, 82, 327  
 Annobon, island, 90, 361, 389  
 Anson, Lord George, 70  
 Antakia or Antioch, 355  
 Antananarivo, 406  
 Antarctic circle, 120  
     region, search in, 71  
 Anticosti island, 424  
 Antigua, 437  
 Antilles, 436, 437  
 Antioch, 36, 349  
 Antisana, 440  
 Anti-Taurus, 349  
 Antivari, 251  
 Antofagosta, 449  
 Antrim plateau, 171  
 Antung, 289  
 Antwerp, 217, 218  
 Anzali, 346  
 Apa river, 451  
 Apache, 96  
 Apennines, 159, 233, 235  
 Appalachicola river, 426  
 Appenzell, 211  
 Apsheron, Cape, 155, 277  
 Apulia, 237  
 Arabia, 261, 355  
 Arabs, 354  
     empire of the, 28, 33  
 Arafura Sea, 454  
 Aragon, 34, 229  
 Araguaya, 443  
 Arakan, 82, 323  
 Aral, lake or sea, 262, 268, 277,  
     283, 343  
 Ararat, Mount, 264, 268, 278,  
     348, 349  
 Aras or Araxes, 278, 351  
 Aravali hills, 308  
 Araxes or Aras, 278, 351  
 Arbela, battle of, 22  
 Arcadia, 242  
     bay of, 246  
 Archangel, 259, 260  
 Arcot, 69, 318  
 Arctic America, 424  
     circle, 119  
     discoveries, 50, 54, 56, 101  
 Ardalan, 347  
 Arden, Forest of, 174  
 Ardennes, 159, 201, 215  
 Arenas Gordas, 225  
 Arequipa, 446  
 Argentine Republic, 449  
 Argolis, 242  
 Argos, 240  
 Argun river, 266, 294  
 Ari, 299  
 Arica, 449  
 Arizona, 432  
 Arjish Dag, 349  
 Arkansas, 430  
 Arkansas river, 426  
 Armada, the Spanish, 48, 55  
 Armagh, 177, 179  
 Armenia, 264, 277, 355  
 Armenians, 248, 353  
 Arnauts, 248  
 Arno, 233  
 Aroa, 441  
 Arrabida hills, 225  
 Arran, 169  
 Arrö, 188  
 Arta, gulf of, 240  
 Artaxerxes, 22  
 Artois, 223  
 Aru islands, 336  
 Aryans, 147  
     of Asia, 272  
     of Europe, 165  
 Asama Yama, 303  
 Ascension, 408  
 Asgar Tuaregs, 376  
 Ashantee, 387  
     expedition to, 91  
 Ashurada, 346  
 Asia, 261  
     animals, 271  
     climate, 269  
     extent, 261  
     highlands, 263  
     lakes, 268  
     lowlands, 261  
     people, 272  
     plants, 271  
     products, 271  
     religions, 274  
     rivers, 265  
     Roman province, 25  
 Asia Minor, 348, 355  
 Askabad, 283  
 Asmara, 380  
 Aspinwall, 439  
 Aspiring, mountain, 462  
 Aspropotamo, 241  
 Assaye, battle of, 82  
 Assam, 82, 316  
 Assiniboine river, 422  
 Assinie, 387  
 Assiut, 378  
 Assuan, 362, 378, 379  
 Assye, 319  
 Astrabad, 347  
 Astrakhan, 257, 259, 260  
 Asturian mountains, 225  
 Asturias, 31, 228, 230  
 Asuncion, 451  
 Atacama, 448  
 Atahualpa, 53  
 Atbara, 362, 383  
 Athabasca, lake, 411  
     river, 421  
 Athens, 241, 243  
 Athos, Mount, 247  
 Atlas, 361, 369  
 Atrek, 344  
     river, 79  
 Attaka, Jebel, 360

- Attica, 242**  
**Attila, king of the Huns, 27**  
**Attock, 267, 314, 317**  
**Auckland, 463**  
     **islands, 463**  
**Aughrabica, 864**  
**Augsburg, 190**  
**Augustus, Emperor, 25**  
**Aniagas, lake, 447**  
**Annis, 223**  
**Aurangabad, 319**  
**Aures mountains, 369**  
**Aurangzeb, 57**  
**Austerlitz, battle of, 75**  
**Austral Company, 62**  
**Australia, 63, 64, 71, 98, 454, 455**  
     **animals, 456**  
     **climate, 455**  
     **extent, 454**  
     **people, 456**  
     **relief, 455**  
     **rivers and lakes, 455**  
     **South, 451, 459**  
     **vegetation, 455**  
     **West, 454, 460**  
**Australian Alps, 455, 457**  
**Austria, 301**  
     **archduchies, 305**  
**Auvergne, 159, 218, 220, 224**  
**Ava, 325**  
**Avignon, 224**  
**Avon, 172**  
**Awe, Loch, 172**  
**Axum, 364**  
**Ayashin, Jelel, 369**  
**Aythia, 326**  
**Azamor, 371**  
**Azof, Sea of, 156**  
**Azores, 332**  
**Aztecs, 52**  
  
**BABA DACH, 340**  
**Baber, the conqueror, 46**  
**Babylon, 21, 262**  
**Babylonia, 355**  
**Back river, 421**  
**Badajoz, 228**  
**Badakshan, 340, 341**  
**Baden, 195, 200**  
**Baden-Baden, 201**  
**Bactica, 21**  
**Baffin, 63**  
**Baffin Bay, 416**  
**Baganoyo, 394**  
**Bagdad, 30, 355**  
**Baghdad, 388, 389**  
**Bahamas, 436, 437, 438**  
**Bahawalpur, 317**  
**Bahia, 444**  
**Bahr-el-Azrek, 362**  
**Bahr-el-Banat, 358**  
**Bahr-el-Ghazal, 362, 363**  
**Bahr-el-Jebel, 362**  
**Balburt, 351**  
**Baikal lake, 265**  
**Baker, Sir Samuel, 50, 93**  
**Bakony Wal, 302**  
**Baku, 272, 279**  
**Bala lake, 173**  
  
**Balaton lake, 202**  
**Balbao, Vasco Nunez, 49**  
**Baldwin of Flanders, 36**  
**Bale, see Basel**  
**Balearic islands, 220**  
**Bali, 331, 335**  
**Balkan mountains, 150, 240**  
     **peninsula, 245**  
**Balkash lake, 262, 268, 282**  
**Baikal, 84, 332, 340, 341, 342**  
**Balarat, 458**  
**Baltic provinces, 258**  
**Baltic Sea, 156, 183**  
**Baltic re, 420**  
**Baltistan, 317**  
**Baluchis, 373**  
**Baluchistan, 23, 83, 337**  
**Bamako, 385**  
**Bambara, 388**  
**Bamhar, 341**  
**Bano, 267, 325**  
**Banua, 300**  
**Banca, 332**  
**Banla, 336**  
**Banlar Abbas, 346**  
**Bangalore, 413**  
**Bangka, 342**  
**Bangkok, 306, 326**  
**Bangweilo, 303**  
**Bar jagara, 388**  
**Barj massang, 334**  
**Banks islands, 464**  
**Bar river, 174**  
**Barokkurn, battle of, 35**  
**Barbary, 342**  
**Bartr, 148, 341**  
**Baryaluka, 342**  
**Barabra or Naba, 378, 380**  
**Barabusk steppe, 262**  
**Barbados, 5, 437, 438**  
**Barbarossa, the pirate, 47, 48**  
**Barbary, 368**  
     **plateau, 361**  
**Barbary, 403**  
**Barboda, 437**  
**Barca (Africa), 361, 374**  
**Barcelona, 24, 228, 229, 230**  
**Barlai, 377**  
**Barlo, 373**  
**Barrell, 317**  
**Barntz, William, 50**  
**Barfrash, 346**  
**Bari, 381**  
**Barings, lake, 365**  
**Barka (Oman), 369**  
**Barkul, 391, 395**  
**Barinen, 197**  
**Barnaul, 281**  
**Barnsley, 173**  
**Baroda, 319**  
**Baroghal Pass, 343**  
**Bar-tse, 39, 404**  
     **valley, 364**  
**Barquand, 441**  
**Barraquilla, 430**  
**Barrier Reef, Great, 44**  
**Barrow river, 179**  
**Barth, Heinrich (a)**  
**Basal, 219, 211**  
**Basile islands, 37**  
  
**Bashee river, 400**  
**Basiliata, 237**  
**Basques, 31, 122, 220, 227**  
**Basra, 355**  
**Bass, Dr., 99**  
**Bass Strait, 454**  
**Bassain, Grand, 387**  
**Bassoir, 123**  
**Bastar, 17**  
**Basuto Land, 396, 400**  
**Basutos, 39**  
**Batanta, 336**  
**Batavia, 33**  
**Bath, 179**  
**Bathing, 290**  
**Bathurst, 380, 417**  
**Batum, 279**  
**Bautzen, 198**  
**Bavaria, 195, 199**  
**Bayuda steppe, 360**  
**Beachy Head, 170**  
**Bear Lake, Great, 411, 421**  
**Beern, 224**  
**Bechuana Land, 396, 405**  
     **annexed, 87**  
**Bechnams, 39, 403**  
**Bedford, 177**  
**Bedford, 87**  
**"Beggars of the Sea, 50**  
**Beira, 306**  
**Beira alta and Beira baixa,**  
     **provinces, 231**  
**Beirut, 453**  
**Beishahr Gol, 352**  
**Beja or Boshara, 381**  
**Belfast, 119**  
     **Lough, 173**  
**Belgium, 215**  
**Belgrad, 250**  
**Belisarius, the general, 28**  
**Belize, 436**  
**Belle Isle, strait of, 423**  
**Belts, 156, 161, 188**  
**Ben, see Nevis, etc.**  
**Benares, 110, 314, 316**  
**Benevolen, 332**  
**Bendigo, 458**  
**Bengal, 310**  
**Benghazi, 374**  
**Benguela, 391**  
**Benl river, 447**  
**Beni Snaf, 379**  
**Benn river, 263, 386**  
**Benar, 317**  
**Berber, 381**  
**Berbers, 63, 380, 392**  
**Berbers, 92, 368, 371**  
**Barbica, 442**  
**Berdiansk, 280**  
**Berel lah, 369**  
**Bereynich, 369**  
**Bergamo, 228**  
**Berg, 180, 122**  
**Berg, see Zoum, 228**  
**Berling Strait, 137, 200**  
**Berling, Val de, 70, 71**  
**Berkhatopstean, 177**  
**Berlin, the 167**  
     **congress of (1878), 230**  
     **congress of (1894), 231**

Bermudas, 438  
 Bern, 210, 211  
 Bernese Alps, 209  
 Berri, 223  
 Bertat, 381  
 Besançon, 222  
 Besika Bay, 348  
 Bessarabia, 79  
 Betsimarasakas, 406  
 Beveland, 212  
 Beyerland, 212  
 Beypur, 318  
 Bhagalpur, 316  
 Bhopal, 319  
 Bhuddists, 275  
 Bhutan, 320  
 Bias, 267  
 Biel, lake of, 209  
 Bielukha, 280  
 Bien-hoa, 329  
 Bienne, lake of, 209  
 Bihar mountains, 202  
 Bilbao, 230  
 Billiton, 332  
 Bilma, 376, 377  
 Bilston, 178  
 Bima, 335  
 Bingöl Dagħ, 349  
 Bintahuan, 329  
 Biobio, 448  
 Bir, 268  
 Birejek, 351  
 Birkenhead, 178  
 Birket el Kerun, 378  
 Birmingham, 177, 178  
 Bisayas, 336  
 Biscay or Vizcaya, 229  
 Biscay, Bay of, 156, 218  
 Bisharin or Beja, 378, 381  
 Bismarck archipelago, 100, 465  
 Bismarck, Prince, 78  
 Bissao, 386  
 Bitolia, 253  
 Biwa, lake, 308  
 Bizerta, 374  
 Blaavands Huk, 189  
 "Black Country," 178  
 Black Dome, 410, 425  
 Black Forest, 158  
 Black Forest or Schwarzwald, 200  
 Black Mountains of Wales, 170  
 Black Sea, 156, 246  
 Blackburn, 178  
 Blackwater river, 173  
 Blair, Port, 323  
 Blanca Peak, 410  
 Blantyre, 396  
 Bloemfontein, 402  
 Blue Mountains (Jamaica), 438  
 Blue Mountains, 425, 457  
 Blue Stack Mountains, 171  
 Bodele, plain, 365  
 Bodensee, see Constanx, lake of  
 Boeotia, 240, 242  
 Boers, 88  
 Bogos, 381

Bogotá, 439  
 Bohemia, 207  
     coal, 204  
 Bohemian Forest, see Böhmerwald  
 Böhmerwald, 159, 199, 202  
 Bohol, 336  
 Bois-le-Duc, 214  
 Bokhara, 79, 283, 342, 343  
 Bolan Pass, 84, 337, 338, 339  
 Bolivar, Ciudad, 441  
 Bolivar, General, 94  
 Bolivia, 94, 446  
 Bolivian plateau, 409  
 Bologna, 235, 237, 239  
 Bolsena, lake of, 233  
 Bolton, 178  
 Boma, 390  
 Bombay, 315, 318  
 Bomvana Land, 400  
 Bon, Cape, 369  
 Bona, 372  
 Bonaparte, Jerome, 75  
 Bonaparte, Joseph, 75  
 Bonaparte, Napoleon, 76  
 Bongo, 381  
 Bonin islands, 306  
 Bonn, 195  
 Boobies, 389  
 "Bora" wind, 203, 234  
 Bordeaux, 220, 221, 222  
 Borneo, 264, 333  
 Bornholm, 188, 189  
 Bornu, 91, 93, 388, 389  
 Bosnia, 246, 251  
 Bosphorus, 156, 254  
 Boston, 429  
 Botany Bay, 21  
 Bothnia, Gulf of, 182  
 Botzen, 207  
 Boulogne, 222  
 Bourbon or Réunion, 54, 64, 407  
 Bourbonnais, 223  
 Bourtanger moor, 203  
 Boyana river, 247  
 Boz Dagħ, 351  
 Brabant, 215, 218  
 Bracciano, lake of, 233  
 Bradford (Wilts), 178  
 Bradford (Yorkshire), 178  
 Braemar, 174  
 Bragança, 232  
 Brahmanism, 274  
 Brahmaputra, 82, 267, 307  
 Brahui, 338  
 Braich-y-Pwll, 170  
 Braila, 245  
 Brandenburg, 197  
 Bras d'Or, Gulf of, 420  
 Brava, 393  
 Brazil, 73, 95, 443  
 Brazos river, 426  
 Brazzaville, 390  
 Brecknock Beacon, 170  
 Breede river, 398  
 Bregenz, 207  
 Breithi Fiord, 192  
 Bremen, 196, 197, 198, 199  
 Bremerhaven, 199

Brenner Pass, 158, 207, 238  
 Breslau, 195, 197  
 Brest, 222  
 Bretons, 165  
 Briançon, 222  
 Bridgetown, 438  
 Brienx, lake of, 209  
 Brighton, 179  
 Brindisi, 238  
 Brisbane, 459  
 Bristol, 179  
 British Columbia, 98, 417, 422  
     East African Company, 88  
     East Central Africa, 89  
     Empire, area and population, 182  
     Honduras, 434, 435  
     Isles, 167  
     Kafrraria, 89  
     New Guinea, 100  
     North America, 97, 417  
     Nyassaland Protectorate, 89, 396  
     Somaliland, 380  
 Brittany, 219, 220, 223  
 Brooklyn, 429  
 Browne, the traveller, 73  
 Bruce, James, 73  
 Bruce, Robert, 35  
 Bruges or Brügge, 216, 217  
 Brügge or Bruges, 217  
 Brunei, 334  
 Brünn, 207  
 Brunswick, 195, 198  
 Brusa, 355  
 Brussels, 216  
 Bucharest, 244, 245  
 Buddhism, 150  
 Buddhists, 287  
 Budapest, 208  
 Buenos Ayres, 450  
 Buffalo, 430  
 Bug river, 260  
 Bugis, 335  
 Bugo channel, 302  
 Bukáa, El, 352  
 Bukovina, 207  
 Bulawayo, 396  
 Buldur, lake, 352  
 Bulgaria, 246, 249, 252  
 Bulgarians, 165, 248  
 Bulghar Dagħ, 349  
 Bulhar, 392  
 Bunda, 391  
 Bundelkhand, 309, 319  
 Bu Regreg, 370  
 Burdekin river, 459  
 Burgas, 253  
 Burgos, 230  
 Burgundy, 220, 221, 224  
 Burma, 82  
 Burma, Lower, 323  
 Burma, Upper, 324  
 Burmese, 272  
 Burnett river, 459  
 Burra Burra, 460  
 Burrard Inlet, 423  
 Burslem, 178  
 Buru, 336  
 Bury, 178



- Baryata, 272  
 Bayukdere, 255  
 Buzaco, 232  
 Buzdore, 246  
 Bushmen, 307, 405  
 Bylot, Captain, 63  
 Byron, Captain, 71  
 Byzantine Empire, 27, 31  
 Byzantium, 21
- CACHO, 396  
 Cadiz, 20, 239, 250  
   bay of, 225  
 Caesar, Julius, 25  
 Cagliari, 218  
   bay of, 234  
 Caillie, the traveller, 63  
 Cairo, 81, 279  
 Calabar, Old, 388  
 Calabria, 237  
 Calais, 220  
 Calcutta, 40, 315, 316  
 Caldera, 449  
 Caledonian Canal, 172  
 Calgary, 10, 422  
 Calicut, 318, 319  
 California, 55, 67, 432  
   valley of, 427  
 Callao, 446  
 Cambodia, 82, 329  
 Cambra, 221  
 Cambrian mountains, 170  
 Cambridge, 177, 439  
 Cameron, Commander, 95  
 Cameroons Peak, 361, 365, 389  
 Cameroons river, 388  
 Campaigna Police of Naples, 233, 237  
 Campagna di Roma, 232, 234  
 Campbell island, 463  
 Canajudon, plain, 234  
 Canajuda of Cordova, 225  
 Canajune, the, 157  
 Canipine or Kempen, 216  
 Canisic Hills, 170  
 Canada, 72, 98, 417, 418  
 Canal du Midi, 219  
 Canary islands, 20, 407  
 Cauda, 247, 255  
 Cauda island, 86  
 Cavanaugh, 318  
 Caves, 222  
 Cawo, Gut of, 420  
 Cantabrian mountains, 159, 225  
 Canterbury, 170  
   plain, 402  
 Canton, 80, 267, 280  
 Cantyre, peninsula, 169  
 Cajanne, Mount, 234  
 Capota, 234  
 Cape Breton, 420  
 Cape Coast Castle, 387  
 Cape Colony, 73, 285, 286, 397  
 Cape of Good Hope, 343  
 Cape North (Norway), 156  
 Cape Town, 319  
 Cape Verde islands, 435  
 Cape Verd, see Verd
- Capet, Hugh, 54  
 Carabane, 385  
 Caracas, 94, 441  
 Caracoles, 449  
 Cardamon mountains, 710  
 Cardiff, 178  
 Cardinal points, 2  
 Cardona, 230  
 Cariba, 52, 442  
 Carinthia, 264, 266  
 Carlingford Lough, 173  
 Carolingian dynasty, 30  
 Carlsruhe, 200  
 Carmel, Mount, 250  
 Carniola, 206  
 Carriacou Point, 169  
 Carragher, 171  
 Carratun, 171  
 Carrihua, 429  
 Carolinas or Caroline islands, 54, 465  
 Carpathians, 179, 262, 263  
 Carpentaria, Gulf of, 454  
 Carpent's account of the Tur-  
   tles, 38  
 Carrara, 238  
 Carrs, the, 171  
 Carso or Karst, 290  
 Cartagena, 24  
 Cartier, Captain, 71  
 Carthage, 20, 21, 24, 27  
   "75  
 Carthaginians, 148  
 Cartier Jacques, 52  
 Casablanca, 371  
 Casuarina, 38  
 Cascade range, 410, 426  
 Cashel, 177  
 Caspian Sea, 150, 250, 277  
 Cassel, 197  
 Cassiquiare, 441  
 Castellammare, 238  
 Castello Bruno, 232  
 Castle, 54, 225, 228  
   tableland, 159  
 Castille del Oro, 50  
 Catalonia, 220  
 Catania, 238  
 Cathay (China), 57  
 Cattaro, 208, 250  
 Caupa, 439  
 Caucasian tribes, 278  
 Caucasus, 150, 277  
 Cauveri or Kaveri, 311  
 Cawnpur, 318  
 Cayenne, 440  
 Cayenne, 442  
 Caymans, 437  
 Cazengo, 391  
 Cebrenco, 433  
 Celebes, 335  
 Celta, 147, 165  
 Celta (British Isles), 176  
 Celta in France, 230  
 Cenis, Mont, 158  
 Central America, 434  
 Ceram, 386  
 Cerigo, 240  
 Cetinje, 351  
 Cesta, 280
- Ceyenne mountains, 159,  
   218, 220  
 Ceylon, 261, 320  
   ceded, 38  
   "isco, Gran, 445  
 Chad, lake, 38, 365, 365  
 Chagos archipelago, 322  
 Chakhar Mongols, 294  
 Chalcidic peninsula, 247  
 Chaleur Bay, 414  
 Chalons sur-Marne, 221  
 Chamboze, 368  
 Chamboze, 158  
 Chanja or Tsinajo, 329  
 Champagne, 157, 220, 221, 225  
 Champsas, 327  
 Changsan, lake, 418  
 Chan-hun, 306  
 Chandanagar, 320  
 Channel Islands, 169  
 Chantabun, 326  
 Chayala, lake, 423  
 Chargal lake, 298  
 Charjui, 283  
 Charjroi, 217  
 Charles V., Emperor, 46, 47  
   X. of Sweden, 58  
   Louis, mountain, 464  
 Chantenay, 30, 31, 34  
 Charleston, 430  
 Charlotte Town, 421  
 Charters Towers, 459  
 Chatham Islands, 463  
 Che-ian, 266  
   Beltonian,  
 Chelyuskin, Cape, 261, 279  
 Chemnitz, 198  
 Chemulpo, 301, 302  
 Chenab, 267  
 Chernavoda, 245  
 Cherbourg, 222  
 Cherenus, 24  
 Chesapeake Bay, 425  
 Cheshire, 180  
   plain of, 171  
 Cheviot Hill, 170  
   Hills, 170  
 Chicago, 431  
 Chi-fu, 289  
 Chile, 94, 447  
 Chiltern Hills, 170  
 Chiriborazo, 440  
 China, 28, 37, 60  
 China Proper, 284  
   plate of, 368  
 China Sea, 285  
 Chinese, 272  
   Empire, 283  
 Chik-ai-g, 289  
 Chingia, 238  
 Chion, 343, 345  
 Chirono, 390  
 Chita, 206  
 Chittagong, 316  
 Christchurch, 463  
 Christiansburg, 410  
 Christmas island, 380, 404  
 Choriton, 178  
 Choruk, 278  
 Choruk Ho, 351

- Chota Nagpur, 316  
 Chugutchak, 296  
 Chui river, 268, 282  
 Chukchi, 272  
 Chu-kiang, 286  
 Chumalhari, 309  
 Chung-king, 289  
 Chupat, 453  
 Chuquisaca, 447  
 Churchill river, 421  
 Cienfuego, 438  
 Cilician Gates, 349  
     mountains, 22  
 Cimbri and Teutones, 25  
 Cimmerians' territories, 102  
 Cincinnati, 431  
 Circassians, 273, 354  
     in Turkey, 248  
 Circumnavigations of the  
     globe, 51, 55, 56, 70  
 Citlaltepétl, 410, 432  
 Ciudad Bolívar, 441  
     Rodrigo, 76, 228  
 Civita Vecchia, 238  
 Clapperton's travels, 93  
 Clarence Cove, 389  
 Cleopatra, Queen, 25  
 Cleveland, 431  
 Clifton, 177  
 Climate, 130  
     continental and mari-  
         time, 132  
     its effects upon plants  
         and animals, 143  
     its influence upon man,  
         144  
 Clive, Lord, 68, 69  
 Clutha, 463  
 Clyde, 172  
     estuary, 179  
     valley of the, 171  
 Coanza, 364, 391  
 Coast range, 410  
 Coatzacoalcas, 434  
 Cobija, 449  
 Cochabamba, 447  
 Cochin, 318  
 Cochin China, 65, 82, 266  
     Lower, 328  
     Upper, 327  
 Coele Syria, 352  
 Cognac, 221  
 Coimbatore, 309  
 Coimbra, 228  
 Coleraine, 179  
 Colima, mountain, 433  
 Colombia, republic, 438  
 Colombo, 271, 321  
 Colon, 436  
 Colonial possessions, 153  
 Colorado, 411, 431  
     river, 426  
     of the west, 426  
 Columbia, district of, 428, 429  
     river, 411, 426  
     United States of, 94  
 Columbus, Christopher, 43,  
     49, 102  
 Comanches, 96  
 Comeragh mountains, 171  
 Comino, 239  
 Como, lake of, 233, 237, 238  
 Comorin, Cape, 307  
 Comoro islands, 406  
 Compass, mariner's, 2  
 Compassberg, 397  
 Concepcion, 449, 452  
 Confederation of the Rhine,  
     75  
 Confucius, 275  
 Congleton, 178  
 Congo or Zaire river, 90, 363,  
     390  
     French, 90  
     State, 90, 368, 390  
 Connaught, 180  
 Connecticut, 428  
 Conrad of Germany, 31  
 Constantine, 25, 92, 372  
 Constantinople, 21, 36, 249,  
     253, 254  
 Constanza, lake of, 203, 209  
 Constellations, 5  
 Cook, Captain, 71  
     Mount, 462  
     Strait 462  
 Cooktown, 459  
 Coolgardie, 461  
 Coomassie, 91, 387  
 Cooper Creek, 459  
 Coorg, 317  
 Copenhagen, 74, 190  
 Copernicus, 112  
 Copiapo, 449  
 Copts, 367, 378  
 Coquimbo, 449  
 Corcovado (vol.), 453  
 Cordova, 230, 450  
 Corentyn, 442  
 Corfu, 240, 242  
 Corinth, 242  
     Gulf of, 240  
     Isthmus of, 239  
 Corisco Bay, 390  
 Cork, 179  
     harbour, 173  
 Cornish Heights, 170  
 Cornwall, 20  
 Coromandel, 307  
 Corrib, Lough, 173  
 Corrientes, 450  
 Corsica, 218, 224  
 Cortez, Hernan, 52  
 Coruna, 230  
 Corvinus, king of Hungary,  
     40  
 Cos, 348  
 Cossacks, 47, 64  
 Costa Rica, 95, 434, 435  
 Côte d'Or, 159, 218  
 Cotopaxi, 440  
 Cotswold Hills, 170  
 Courtrai or Kortryk, 217  
 Coventry, 178  
 Cracow, 32, 207  
 Cradle Mount, 461  
 Crecy, battle of, 41  
 Crete, 247, 253, 254, 255  
 Crefeld, 197  
 Creoles, 95  
 Creuzot, 222  
 Crimea, 21, 156, 280  
 Crimean war, 79, 249  
 Croagh Patrick, 171  
 Croatia, 208  
 Croats, 203  
 Cromarty plain, 171  
 Crossfell, 170  
 Crusades, the, 33, 36  
 Cuba, 52, 95, 436, 437  
 Cuddalore, 318  
 Cuenca, 440  
 Cuilgach, 171  
 Cumbre Pan, 449  
 Cunaxa, battle of, 22  
 Cunene river, 90, 364, 391  
 Curaçao, 437  
 Cuttack, 316  
 Cuyaba, 445  
 Cuyuni, 441  
 Cuzco, 53, 446  
 Cyclades, 240, 242  
 Cyprus, 348  
 Cyrenaica, 374  
 Cyrene, 21  
 Cyrus, 21, 22  
 Czechs, 203  
 Czernowitz, 204, 207  
 DABBEH, 381  
 Dacca, 313, 316  
 Daghistan, 278  
 Dahlak islands, 379  
 Dahna, 356  
 Dahomey, 91, 387  
 Dakar, 385  
 Dakhel, 379  
 Dakota, 431  
 Dal Elf, 184, 185  
 Dalai Lama, 275, 298  
 Dalai Nor, 294  
 Dalmatia, 202, 208  
 Dalny, 306  
 Daman, 320  
 Damara or Herero, 396, 405  
 Damaraland, 90  
 Damascus, 352, 355  
 Damão, 340  
 Damietta, 379  
 Danakil, 382  
 Danes invade Britain, 34  
     conquered by Otho, 31  
 Danger Point, 457  
 Dangra-yum lake, 298  
 Dannemora, 185  
 Danube river, 161, 193, 202,  
     246, 252  
 Dardanelles, 156, 247  
 Danzig, 197  
 Dar-es-Salaam, 394  
 Dar Fur, 86, 381  
 Dariel Pass, 277  
 Darius III., 22  
 Darjiling, 316  
 Darling range, 455  
     river, 455, 457  
 Darlington, 180  
 Darmstadt, 198  
 Dartmoor, 170  
 Darwin, Port, 460

- Dauphine, 224  
 Davis, Captain John, 35  
   strait, 415  
 Day and night, 114  
 Dead Sea, 344, 350, 352  
 Debang, 298  
 Deccan or Dekhan, 309  
 Deccan plateau, 263, 264  
 Dec, 172  
 Deer lake, 411, 421  
 Degree, measurement of, 106  
 Dehas, 349  
 Dehkan, 309  
 Delagoa Bay, 394  
 Delaware, 428  
   river, 42  
 Delgado, Cape, 393, 395  
 Delhi, 82, 317  
 Dellys, 372  
 Delos, 240  
 Demavand (vol.), 344  
 Demavend, 264  
 Dembea, 383, 384  
 Dennera, 442  
 Denali, 382  
 Denbigh, 457  
 Denmark, 31, 32, 41, 138  
 Depth of the sea, 127  
 Dera Ghazi Khan, 317  
   Isma'il Khan, 317  
 Derbent, 279  
 Derby, 178  
   peak of, 170  
 De Ruyter, 80  
 Derg, Lough, 173  
 Derryveagh mountains, 171  
 Derwent, 172, 461  
 Derwentwater, 172  
 Deschenev, his voyage, 64  
 Despotu Dagh, 246  
 Detroit, 431  
 Deventer, 214  
 Devonport, 179  
 Dewsbury, 178  
 Dhawalagiri, 308  
 Dhuangai, 306  
 Dila (ancient), 444  
 Dumbell Field, 80  
 Dumbell's Cape, 80  
 Dumbell, 34, 375  
 Diaz, Bartolomeu, 44  
 Diaz Juan, 40  
 Dudenlofen (Thornville), 201  
 Diego Suarez Bay, 406  
 Dilaug, 267  
 Dijon, 221  
 Dili, 336  
 Dilolo, lake, 364  
 Dindig, 330  
 Dinkas, 381  
 Disco island, 416  
 Dio, 320  
 "Djetyshahr," rise of, 81  
 Djokakarta, 333  
 Dnieper river, 161  
 Dniester, 202  
   river, 161  
 Doaba, 308  
 Dobruja, 164, 243, 244, 246  
 Dodabetta, 309  
 Dogger Bank, 167, 214  
 Dominica, 437  
 Dominican Republic, 95, 438  
 Don river, 161  
 Donetz river, 259  
 Dongola, 381  
 Dorado, El, 48  
 Dordogne, 219  
 Dordrecht, 214  
 Doria, Theodosio, 39  
 Doraet mountains, 246, 250  
 Dorpat, 257  
 Dortmund, 197  
 Dost Mohammed, 83  
 Douai, 221  
 Dover Strait, 168  
 Dvare field, 180  
 Downs (England), 170  
 Drac, Wally, 370, 375  
 Draka, Francis, 55  
 Drakenberg, 361, 397, 401, 402  
 Drunmen, 186  
 Drac or Drave, 202, 206  
 Dravidians, 272  
 Drenthe, 215  
 Dresden, 198  
 Drin river, 247  
 Dublin, 177, 179  
   Bay, 173  
   University, 177  
 Dudley, 178  
 Duero, 161, 225  
 Duille, 362  
 Duke of York island, 465  
 Duca river, 454  
 Dulcigno, 251  
 Dumbarton, 179  
 Duna, 161  
 Duncansby Head, 168  
 Dumlak Bay, 173  
 Dunder, 179  
 Dunedin, 464  
 Dunkerque, 222  
 Dunkery Beacon, 170  
 Dunnet Head, 168  
 Durand, 340  
 Durlan, 401  
 Durlun Dagh, 340  
 Durham, 177  
   county, 180  
 Dushistan, 345  
 Dusseldorf, 197  
 Dyana, 161  
 Dyaks, 273, 334  
 EARTH, orbit of the, 117  
   rotation and revolution  
   of the, 112  
   rotundity, 102, 104  
   size, 105, 107  
 East Cape of Asia, 261  
 East India Company founded, 56  
 East India Islands, 330  
 East London, 400  
 Easter island, 448, 466  
 Ebro, 161, 225, 226  
 Ecbatana, 21  
 Ecliptic, 119  
 Ecuador, 94, 439  
 Edinburgh, 177, 179  
 Edrisi, the geographer, 38  
 Edward the Confessor, 34  
 Egbert, first king of England, 32  
 Egede, Hans, 70  
 Egedeminde, 416  
 Egerar, lake, 362  
 Egga, 388, 389  
 Egnat, Mount, 402  
 Egipta, Khalkis, or Euboea, 210, 242, 243  
 Egypt, 25, 85, 86, 377  
 Eiershavnsbol, 189  
 Eifel, 139  
 Eil, Loch, 170  
 Einsiedeln, 210  
 Eisleben, 197  
 Elba, 234  
 Elbe, 161, 193, 194, 195  
 Elbe, Upper, 202  
 Elberfeld, 187  
 Elbruz, 277  
 Elburz mountain, 160, 264, 344  
 El Dorado, see Dorado  
 Elevation of the land, 125  
 El = 242  
 Elizabeth, Queen, 48  
 Elzavetpol, 279  
 El Lejah, 350  
 Ellichpur, 317  
 Elmine, 367  
 Elsass, see Alsace, 201  
 Elmore, 190  
 Elton, lake, 250  
 Elysian fields, 192  
 Emla, 236  
 Emir Pasha, 80  
 Enme, Cape, 246  
 Enna, 193  
 Enarya, 384  
 Engadin, 209  
 English Channel, 155, 168  
 Englishmen, their character 170  
 Enns river, 205  
 Ensenada, 450  
 Entre Douro e Minho, 231  
 Eperus, 230, 246, 249, 253  
 Equator, defined, 107  
 Equinox, 119  
 Eratosthenes, the astronomer, 25, 105  
 Erdozh Dagh, 349  
 Eregli, 351  
 Erfurt, 197  
 Ericht, Loch, 172  
 Eric, Lake, 411, 418  
 Erik the Red, 33  
 Eritrea, 88  
 Erivan, 279  
 Erlangen, 195  
 Erne, lakes, 173  
   river, 173  
 Er Riad, 350  
 Errigal, 171  
 Erris Head, 169  
 Etzinger, 355

- Erz Gebirge, 158, 202  
 Erzrum, 355  
 Escaut or Scheldt, 216  
 Eskimos, 41, 149, 414, 416  
 Esmeralda, 440  
 Espichel, Cape, 225  
 Esquimalt, 423  
 Esseg, 208  
 Essen, 197  
 Essequibo, 442  
 Essex, 180  
 Estrella, Sierra da, 159, 225, 226, 232  
 Estremadura, 225, 228, 231  
 Ests, 256  
 Etbai desert, 381  
 Etna, 160  
 Etna, Mount, 233  
 Etolia, 242  
 Eton, 177  
 Etruscans, 21, 235  
 Etsch or Adige, 206, 233  
 Et Tih desert, 350  
 Eubœa or Egribo, 240, 242, 243  
 Euclid, the mathematician, 25  
 Euphrates, 268, 350  
 Europe, 155  
     climate, 162  
     education, 166  
     extent, 155  
     gulfs and inlets, 155  
     highlands, 158  
     hydrography, 160  
     peninsulas, 156  
     products, 164  
     races, 164  
     relief, 157  
     religion, 166  
     Romanic States, 118  
     Slavonic States, 145  
     Teutonic States, 167  
 Euxine, see Black Sea, 156  
 Evaporation, 139  
 Everest, Mount, 263, 308  
 Exmoor forest, 170  
 Eyre, lake, 455, 460  
  
 FAIRBANKS, 424  
 Fair Head, 171  
 Fairweather, Mount, 410  
 Faizabad, 341  
 Falasha, 383  
 Falkland Islands, 71, 453  
 Falster island, 188  
 Famagusta, 348  
 Fanning island, 466  
 Fans, 390  
 Fantis, 90  
 Farafrah, 379  
 Farewell, Cape, 415  
 Farøe Islands, 32, 191  
 Fars, 264, 347  
 Farukhabad, 317  
 Fasher, 382  
 Fashoda, 382  
 Fatimides, dynasty, 31, 34  
 Faxe fiord, 192  
 Fayum, 278, 379  
 Fazokl, 381  
 Fear, river, 425  
  
 Fellatah or Fulbe, 93, 367, 386  
 Fen district, 170  
 Ferghana, 282  
 Fernandez, Juan, 56  
 Fernando-Po, 90, 361, 389  
 Ferro, 407  
 Ferrol, 230  
 Fertit, 382  
 Fez, 30, 371  
 Fezzan, 377  
 Fichtel Gebirge, 158, 199  
 Fiji Islands or Viti, 100, 465  
 Fingo Land, 400  
 Finisterre, Cape, 225  
 Finland, 157, 256, 257, 258  
 Finns, 35, 185, 256, 272  
 Finsteraarhorn, 158, 209  
 Fitzroy river, 459, 461  
 Fiume, 208  
 Flanders, 218, 223  
 Flemings, 213, 216, 217  
 Flevo island, 212  
 Flinders range, 455, 460  
     river, 459  
 Florence, 234, 235, 238, 239  
 Florida, 96, 429  
 Floris, 335  
 Fly river, 464  
 Föhn Wind, 164  
 Foix, 224  
 Fonseca, Gulf of, 435  
 Fontainebleau, 220  
 Forez, 159  
 Formosa island, 264, 285, 302, 306  
 Forth, 172  
 Foucault's pendulum experiments, 113  
 Foyle river, 173  
 France, 218  
 Franceville, 363, 390  
 Franche Comte, 224  
 Franconia, 199, 200  
 Frankfort-on-Main, 197  
 Frankfort-on-Oder, 197  
 Frankfort, treaty of, 78  
 Franklin, Mount, 462  
 Franklin, Sir John, 99  
 Franks, empire of the, 31, 26  
 Franz Joseph Land, 156  
 Fraser river, 422  
 Fray Bentos, 452  
 Frederick the Great, 67  
 Frederick William, 59  
 Fredericton, 420  
 Frederikshaab, 416  
 Frederiksthal, 416  
 Freetown, 386  
 Freiberg in Saxony, 198  
 Freiburg in Brisgau, 195, 200  
 Freiburg (Switz.) see Fribourg  
 Fremantle, 461  
 French Congo, 90  
     Somaliland, 380  
     West Africa, 91-2, 385  
 Frere Town, 394  
 Fribourg (Switz.), 211  
 Friedland, battle of, 75  
 Friendly Islands, 466  
 Friesland, 215  
  
 Frieslanders, 213  
 Frische Haff, 193  
 Frobisher, Martin, 55  
 Fuca, Juan de, 56  
 Fu-chou, 289  
 Fuego (vol.), 434  
 Fuerteventura, 407  
 Fu-kien channel, 285, 286, 287  
 Fulahs, Fulbe, or Fellatah, 93, 367, 386  
 Fulbe States, 388  
 Fulda river, 197  
 Funchal, 407  
 Fundy, bay of, 420  
 Fünen island, 188  
 Funj, 381  
 Fusan, 301, 302  
 Fusino Yama, 264, 303  
 Futa Jallon, 385, 388  
 Fyen island, 188  
  
 GABES, Gulf of, 361, 369, 374  
 Gaboon, 90, 390  
 Gades, 20  
 Gairdner lake, 455  
 Galabat, 381, 384  
 Galacia, 31  
 Galápagos islands, 440  
 Galata, 254  
 Galatz, 245  
 Galdhöppig, 160  
 Galeka Land, 400  
 Galicia, 207, 228  
 Galilee, lake of, 352  
 Galla, 88, 383, 391  
 Gallaland, 392  
 Galle, Point de, 322  
 Gallegos, 227  
 Gallic Sea, 156  
 Gallinas, Cape, 410  
 Gallipoli, 247  
 Galloway, 180  
     Mull of, 170  
 Galty mountains, 171  
 Galway Bay, 173  
 Gama, Vasco da, 44  
 Gambia, 363, 386  
 Gamtoos river, 398  
 Gandamak, 341  
 Gandava, 338  
 Gando, 388, 389  
 Ganges, 263, 267, 307, 308  
 Gara Hills, 316  
 Gangotri, 267  
 Garda, Lago di, 203  
 Garonne, 161  
 Garing lake, 298  
 Garry, Fort, 422  
 Gartok, 299  
 Gasa country, 404  
 Gascogne, 224  
 Gastein, treaty of, 77  
 Gata, Cape of, 225  
     Sierra de, 225  
 Gateshead, 178  
 Gauhati, 316  
 Gaul, 25  
 Gauritz river, 398  
 "Gaves," 219

- Geba river, 356  
 Gediz or Sarabat Chal, 351  
 Geelong, 458  
 Gelle, 187  
 Gelderland, 215  
 Geneva, 210, 211  
   lake of, 209  
 Gennargentu, Mount, 160, 234  
 Gennesareth, 352  
 Genoa, 236, 238, 239  
 Gen-san or Yuensan, 302  
 Geography, its subdivisions, 21  
 Geoktepe, 283  
 George, lake, 437  
 George III, 71  
 Georgetown, 442  
   (Ascension), 408  
   (Penang), 330  
 Georgia, 277, 429  
 Georgians, 273  
 German Empire, 193  
   East Africa, 88  
   Ocean, see North Sea, 155  
   South-West Africa, 90, 405  
 Gerona, 228, 230  
 Geysers (Iceland), 192  
 Ghadames, 375  
 Ghat, 377  
 Ghats of India, 264, 309  
 Ghazipur, 316  
 Ghasni, 31, 341  
 Ghebrs or Parsis, 274, 345  
 Gheut, 216, 217  
 Ghibbelinea, 35  
 Ghilan, 347  
 Ghilzan, 340  
 Ghor, Cape, 369  
 Ghiznevdes dynasty, 31, 33  
 Ghoorkas, 320  
 Ghor, El, 352  
 Ghurian, 374  
 Giant's Causeway, 171  
 Gibraltar, 181, 231  
   Cape of, 225  
   Strait of, 156  
 Giessen, 195  
 Gijon, 289  
 Gilbert or Kruksmill islands, 465  
   Sir Humphrey, 55  
 Gilead, mountains of, 350  
 Gilolo, 334  
 Gipsland, 456  
 Glin or Kirin, 293  
 Gironde, 161, 219, 220  
 Giurgievo, 245  
 Gizah, 379  
 Glarus, 200, 211  
 Glasgow, 177, 179  
 Glenelg, 400  
 Glen More, 169  
 Glommen Elv, 184  
   river, 185  
 Goa, 49, 320  
 Goaltara, 316  
 Gobi or Shamo, 293  
   desert, 263, 265  
 Godalming, 177  
 Godavuri, 310  
 Godfrey of Bouillon, 36  
 Godhavn, 416  
 Godthaab, 416  
 Godwin Austin Peak, 308  
 Gokcha lake, 278  
 Gok Su, 353  
 Golam Pass, 339  
 Gold Coast, 90  
 Golden Horn, 254  
 Goletta (Tunis), 373  
 Golkonda, 319, 313  
 Gombur, 346  
 Gomera, 407  
 Gondar, 384  
 Gondokoro, 382  
 Gonds, 313  
 Gordon, General, 86  
 Goree, 385  
 Gorizia, 206  
 Gorz, 206  
 Gota river and canal, 184  
 Gotha, 198  
 Gothland, 188  
 Goteborg, 187  
 Gotland island, 182  
 Göttingen, 195  
 Goulburn, 457  
 Gozo, 181, 239  
 Graaf Reinet, 400  
 Gradisca, 206  
 Grafton island, 337  
 Grahamstown, 400  
 Grain Coast, 91, 386  
 Granjasse, 109  
 Granola, 34, 228, 230  
 Grand Canal, 286  
 Grande, Rio, 386  
 Grau Sasso d'Italia, 233  
 Graut, Captain, 93  
 Granbunden, 211  
 Graz, 206  
 Great Basin of Utah, 410, 427  
 Great Comoro, 407  
 Great Fish River, 398  
 Gredos, Sierra de, 225  
 Greece, 21, 24, 27, 31, 35, 69, 84, 239  
 Greeks, 248  
   in Asia, 354  
 Greenock, 179  
 Greenland, 32, 41, 66, 70, 415  
 Greifswald, 195  
 Grenada, 437  
 Greytown, 435  
 Grimsel Pass, 209  
 Griqualand, 396, 400  
   West, 403  
 Griquas, 88  
 Grisons, 211  
 Groningen, 213, 214, 215  
 Guadalupe, 434  
 Guadalquivir, 226  
 Guadalupe, 405  
 Guadalquivir, 161, 226  
 Guadalupe Sierra de, 225  
 Guadarrama, Sierra de, 227, 229  
 Guadeloupe, 437, 438  
 Guadiana, 161, 226  
 Guam, 100, 465  
 Guapore river, 447  
 Guarda, 232  
   lake of, 233  
 Guardafui, Cape, 360, 391  
 Guatemala, 96, 434, 435  
 Guayana, 442  
 Guayaquil, 440  
 Guayra Falls, 451  
 Gubuluwayo, 404  
 Guchen, 295  
 Guelfs, 35  
 Guernsey, 160  
 Gulana, 442  
 Guinea gold, 366  
   Gulf of, 90  
   Lower, 389  
   Upper, 387  
 Gujerat, 84, 308  
 Gulf Stream, 136, 137  
 Gumush Khana, 351  
 Gunong Semeroc, 333  
 Gura, 354  
 Gustavus Adolphus, 56  
 Guyenne, 224  
 Gwalior, 319  
 Gyantse, 299  
 Gympie, 459  
 Gypsies, 246  
   in Europe, 166  
   in Hungary, 203  
 HAARLEM, lake, 213  
 Had, Har el, 357  
 Hadramaut, 356, 357  
 Haffa, 193  
 Hague, The, 214  
 Haidarabad, 318, 319  
 Haileybury, 177  
 Hai-nan island, 285  
 Hainaut, 218  
 Hai-phong, 328  
 Haiti, 430, 437, 438  
 Hajikak Pass, 338  
 Hakba, 287  
 Hakodate, 304, 305  
 Hala Mountains, 337  
 Halfa Wadi, 379  
 Halifax, 178, 420  
 Halle, 195  
 Hallein, 206  
 Hallstadt, 206  
 Hallula, 373  
 Halmahera, 336  
 Hals, 188  
 Hamar, 188  
 Hamburg, 176, 196, 199  
 Hamath, 350  
 Hani, 291, 295  
 Hamikar, 21  
 Hamilton, Port, 302  
 Hamitic tribes, 147, 367  
 Hammerfest, 187  
 Hamun swamp, 260, 339, 340, 345  
 Han, river, 300  
 Hanhai or Gobi, 293  
 Hankow, 289  
 Hanley, 178

- Hannibal, 24  
 Hanno, 20  
 Hanoi or Kesho, 328  
 Hanover, 197  
 Hanse Towns, 198  
 Hapsburg, House of, 41, 67  
 Harar, 380, 392  
 Harbin, 281  
 Hardanger Field, 160  
 Hardt, 159, 199  
 Hardwar, 267, 310, 314  
 Hari-rud, 339, 344  
 Haro Channel, 425  
 Harold, death of, 35  
 Harrow, 177  
 Harun-al-Rashid, 30  
 Harvard University, 428, 429  
 Harz, 158, 194, 197  
 Hasa, El, 356  
 Hasan, Jebel, 359  
 Hastings, battle of, 35  
     Warren, 69  
 Hauraki gulf, 463  
 Hauran, Jebel, 350  
 Haussa, 389  
 Havana, 437  
 Havelock, 84  
 Havre, 222  
 Hawaii, 425, 466  
 Hawaiian Islands, 72  
 Hawke Bay, 463  
 Hawkesbury river, 457  
 Hawkins, Sir John, 55  
 Hayel, 359  
 Hayti island, 95  
 Hazarahs, 340  
 Hearne, 72  
 Heart's Content, 423  
 Hebrides, 169  
 Hebron, 424  
 Hecla, 160  
 Heidelberg, 195, 200  
 Height of the land, 125  
 Heilbronn, 200  
 Hejaz, 86, 352, 355  
 Hekla, 192  
 Helder, 212, 214  
 Heligoland, 181  
 Hellas, 239  
 Hellespont, 22  
 Helleville, 406  
 Helmand, 269, 339  
 Helsingfors, 258  
 Helsingör, 190  
 Hemisphere, defined, 107  
 Henry, the navigator, 42  
 Heraclius, his victory, 28  
 Herat, 84, 339, 340, 341  
 Herbertshöhe, 465  
 Hercules' Pillars, 21  
 Herero or Damara Land, 396, 405  
 Hermannstadt, 208  
 Hermon, Mount, 349, 350  
 Hermopolis, 243  
 Herodotus, 21  
 Herschel range, 455  
 Hertogenbosch, 214  
 Herzegovina, 251  
 Hesse, 195  
 Hesse-Nassau, 197  
 Highlands of Scotland, 169  
 Highlands of the World, 128  
 Hills, how shown on a map, 15  
 Himalaya, 263, 264, 307  
 Himilco, 20  
 Himmelsberg, 189  
 Himmayrides of Yemen, 28  
 Hindoe, 183  
 Hindu-kush, 263, 338  
 Hindus, 272, 313  
 Hindustan, peninsula, 261  
     plain of, 263  
 Hinka, lake, 292  
 Hiogo, 305  
 Hispania, 24  
 Hispaniola, 95  
 Hit, 351  
 Hoang-ho, 266, 286  
 Hobart, 462  
 Hoboken, 429  
 Hodeida, 355  
 Hohe Tauern, 206  
 Hohenzollern, 197, 200  
 Hokitika, 463  
 Hoklos, 287  
 Holland, 55, 56, 61, 64, 83, 212  
     province, 215  
 Holstein, 77  
 Holsteinborg, 416  
 Hombori mountains, 385  
 Homs, 350  
 Honda, 439  
 Hondo, 302  
 Honduras, 95, 434, 435  
 Hong-Kong, 289, 291  
 Honolulu, 466  
 Hooze Veldt, 402  
 Hooker, Mount, 410  
 Hope, 423  
 Hopedale, 424  
 Hopia, 88  
 Hor, Mount, 299, 350  
 Horizon, 1, 103  
 Hormuz, Strait of, 346  
 Horn, Cape, 128, 453  
 Horpa lake, 298  
 Hottentots, 148, 367, 399  
 Houquain, 405  
 Houtman, 56  
 Hovas, 406  
 Howe, Cape, 454  
 Howrah, 316  
 Huddersfield, 178  
 Hudson's Bay, 421  
 Hudson's Bay Company, 64, 98, 421  
 Hudson, Hendrik, 62  
     river, 425  
 Hué, treaty, 327, 328  
 Hugli, 267, 310  
 Huguenots, 47, 59  
 Hull, 178  
 Humaita, 452  
 Humber, 172  
 Huna Floi, 192  
 Hungary, 31, 40, 201  
     kingdom, 208  
 Hungary, plain, 157, 202, 203  
 Huns, 26  
 Hunter river, 457  
 Huron, Lake, 411  
 Huss, John, 41  
 Hussars, Hungarian, 40  
 Hussite Wars, 41  
 Hwang-dun-gang, river, 300  
 Hyder Ali, 69  
 Hymettus, Mount, 242  
 Hyperboreans, 21  
 Hyphasis river, 22  
 IBERIAN PENINSULA, 224  
 Iberians in France, 220  
     of Spain, 227  
 Ibn Batuta, his travels, 39  
 Ibo, 395  
 Icaria, 348  
 Iceland, 32, 156, 191  
 I-chang, 289  
 Ida, Mount, 160, 255, 348  
 Idaho, 432  
 Idria, 206  
 Idutywa Land, 400  
 Iddah, 388  
 Igbegbe, 388  
 Igharghar, 375  
 Ilchi or Khotan, 297  
 Ile de France, 223  
 Ili river, 79, 268, 282, 295  
 Illimani Peak, 446  
 Illinois, 430  
 Illyria, 251  
 Illyrian mountains, 246  
 Imbros, 348  
 Incas, 53  
 Indals Elf, 184  
 India, 22, 40, 84, 307  
     climate, 311  
     extent, 307  
     government, 314  
     industries, 313  
     peoples, 313  
     products, 312  
     relief, 307  
     rivers, 310  
 Indiana, 430  
 Indian desert, 263  
 Indian territory, 431  
 Indians, American, 148, 413, 421  
 Indo-Europeans, 147  
 Indore, 319  
 Indrapura, 332  
 Indus river, 22, 263, 267, 310  
 Ingoda river, 266  
 Inhambane, 395  
 Inn river, 206  
     Upper, 209  
 Innsbruck, 207  
 Interlaken, 210, 211  
 Intra, 238  
 Ionian Islands, 239, 240, 242  
     sea, 156  
 Iowa, 430  
 Ipsus, battle of, 23  
 Iquique, 449  
 Irak Ajemi, 347



- Iran, see Persia  
 Irawadi river, 267, 307, 324  
 Irbit, 260  
 Ireland, 169  
     great plain of, 171  
 Irene, her plains, 30  
 Irish Sea, 168  
 Irkutsk, 266, 280, 281  
 "Iron Gates" of the Danube,  
     157, 161, 202, 246  
 Irtish river, 262, 265, 295  
 Isar, river, 199  
 Ischl, 206  
 Iseo lake, 233  
 Isfahan, 346, 347  
 Ishikari, 305  
 Ishim, steppe of, 262  
 Iskanderun, Gulf of, 22, 355,  
     349  
 Iskender, 22  
 Islamism, its spread, 30  
 Islay, 169, 446  
 Ismail dynasty, 46  
 Ismailia, 379  
 Ismid, 355  
 Isnik, lake of, 352  
 Issik-kul, 268, 282  
 Issus, 22, 28  
 Istria, 202, 206  
 Italian lakes, 162  
     Somaliland, 380  
 Italy, 232  
 Itas, 336  
 Itatiaiossu, 411, 443  
 Ivan the Terrible, 47  
 Iviza, 225  
 Ivory, African, 90  
     Coast, 387  
 Izabel, 435  
 Iztaccihuatl, 433  
  
**JADE BAY**, 193  
 Jaffa, 355  
 Jagellon dynasty, 41  
 Jaipur, 319  
 Jakobshavn, 416  
 Jalalabad, 339  
 Jamaica, 436, 437, 438  
 Japan, 39, 81, 302  
     current, 136  
 Japanese, 272  
 Japura, 440, 443  
 Jassy, 66, 245  
 Jats, 313  
 Jauf, 357  
 Java, 264, 333  
 Jaxartes or Syr Daria, 182  
 Jebel, "mount," see Akhdar,  
     etc.  
 Jedda, 355  
 Jena, 195  
 Jenchuan or Chemulpo, 302  
 Jenne, 388  
 Jerez, 229, 230  
 Jersey, 169  
     City, 429  
 Jerusalem, 25, 28, 29, 33, 36,  
     355  
 Jetyshahr, 297  
 Jews in Turkey, 248  
  
 Jhalawan, 338  
 Jhiam river, 317  
 Jibutil, 88, 380  
 Jihun river, 352  
 Jirm, 341  
 Joan of Arc, 41  
 Jodhpur, 319  
 Johanna island, 407  
 Johannesburg, 403  
 John o' Groat's House, 168  
 Johore, 330  
 Jökulls (Iceland), 192  
 Joliba, 363  
 Joloffs, 386  
 Jones, Paul, 72  
 Jordan, 264, 350, 352  
 Jostedals Brae, 160  
 Juan Fernandez island, 448  
 Jub, 365, 392  
 Juby, Cape, 377  
 Jucar, 226  
 Judæa, 264  
 Judi, Jebel, 349  
 Julamerik, 349  
 Julfa, 346  
 Julianshaab, 416  
 Jumna, 267, 310  
 Juneau, 424  
 Jungfrau, 209  
 Jura, 158  
     Swiss, 209  
 Jurua, 443  
 Justinian, Emperor, 28  
 Jutes, 189  
     the, invited to Britain,  
     27  
 Jutland, 188, 189  
  
**KAAFIORD**, 185  
 Kaap goldfields, 403  
 Kabinda, 390, 391  
 Kabompo, river, 364  
 Kabul, 340, 341  
     river, 267, 339  
 Kabyles, 92, 372  
 Kach, Rann of, 308  
 Kachhi-Gandava, 338  
 Kachins, 324  
 Kadina, 460  
 Kaffa, 384  
 Kafirs, 340, 399, 400, 401, 403  
 Kafraria, 396, 400  
 Kafraria, British, 89  
 Kagan, 283  
 Kairwan, 374  
 Kaisarie, 355  
 Kaiser Wilhelm's Land, 100,  
     465  
 Kakhyens, 324  
 Kalahari desert, 404  
 Kalamata or Koron, 240, 243  
 Kalántan, 326, 327  
 Kalgan, 289, 295  
 Kalgoorlie, 461  
 Kalmucks, 256, 272  
 Kambay, 308  
 Kameruns, 390, 388  
 Kamput, 329  
 Kamtehadales, 272  
 Kamtchatka, 261, 264, 280  
  
 Kandahar, 83, 341  
 Kandy, 321  
 Kano, 389  
 Kansas, 431  
 Kansu, 81, 291  
 Kapuas river, 334  
 Kapunda, 460  
 Kara lake, 294  
     Sea, 265  
 Kara-burun, 296  
 Karachi, 318  
 Kara Dag, 350  
 Karague, 394  
 Karajah Dag, 349  
 Karakoram, 263  
     Pass, 297, 314  
 Kara Kum, 343  
 Karategin, 342, 343  
 Kara Tepe, 351  
 Karens, 323  
 Karikal, 320  
 Karkhah, 344  
 Karlsbad, 207  
 Karlskrona, 187  
 Karman, 346, 347  
 Karnak, 379  
 Karnatic, 309  
 Karroo, 397  
 Kars, 278, 279  
 Karshi, 343  
 Karun, 344  
 Kasai, 364  
 Kashan or Magalies moun-  
     tains, 402  
 Kashgar, 263, 297  
 Kashgar-daria, 296  
 Kashmir, 317  
 Kasim, El, 359  
 Kassaba, 351  
 Kassala, 381  
 Kastamuni, 355  
 Kasvin, 347  
 Katanga, copper, 366  
 Kathmandu, 320  
 Kattegat, 155, 182  
 Kau, 393  
 Kavari, 311  
 Kawele, 394  
 Kayes, 385  
 Kazan, 258, 260  
 Kazanlik, 246, 253  
 Kazbek, Mount, 160, 277  
 Kebrabasa rapids, 364, 395  
 Keda or Quedah, 327, 330  
 Keeling or Cocos islands, 330  
 Keeper mountain, 171  
 Kei islands, 336  
 Kei river, 397, 400  
 Kelat, 338  
 Kelung, 289  
 Kempen or Campine, 216  
 Kenel, 379  
 Kenia, Mount, 361  
 Kenneth, King, 35  
 Kent, 180  
 Kentucky, 430  
 Kephallonia, 240, 242  
 Kepler, 112  
 Keren, 381  
 Kerki, 343

- Kermadec island, 127  
 Kerry, mountains of, 171  
 Kertch, Strait of, 278  
 Kerulen river, 294  
 Kerun, Ras el, 360  
 Keshin, 407  
 Kesho or Hanoi, 328  
 Khabarovka, 281  
 Khabur, 351  
 Khaibar Pass, 84, 337, 339  
 Khalka Mongols, 294  
 Khalkas, 272  
 Khalkis or Egriipo, 243  
 Kham, 299  
 Khandush Dagħ, 349  
 Khangai, 294  
 Kharbin, 281  
 Khargeh oasis, 379  
 Kharkof, 258, 260  
 Kharput, 351  
 Khartum, 377, 381  
 Khas tribe, 327  
 Khasi tribe, 316  
 Khediv of Egypt, 86  
 Khelat, 84  
 Khinghan range, 128, 129  
 Khiva, 78, 262, 342, 343  
 Khmer, 272, 329  
 Khoja Chai, 351  
 Khoja Sala, 340  
 Khojend, 283  
 Khokan, 79  
 Khorassan, 347  
 Khosru, 28  
 Khotan or Ilchi, 297  
 Khotan-daria, 296  
 Khurd Kabul Pass, 84, 339  
 Khuzistan, 347  
 Khyber Pass, see Khaibar  
 Kiakhta, 281, 290, 295  
 Kialing river, 289  
 Kiang-si, 287, 289  
 Kiao-chau, 291  
 Kia-yu gate, 291, 295  
 Kidderminster, 178  
 Kief, 32, 257, 260  
 Kiel, 195, 197  
 Kila Panja, 342  
 Kilauea, 466  
 Kilif, 343  
 Kilimanjaro, 361  
 Killarney, lakes of, 173  
 Kilwa, 394  
 Kimberley, 400, 403  
 Kimberley (W. Australia), 460  
 Kinchinjinga, 308  
 King Edward VII. Land, 101  
 King Sound, 461  
 King William's Town, 400  
 Kinghan mountains, 263, 292, 293  
 Kingani, 364, 394  
 Kingston, 438  
 Kingstown (Ireland), 173  
 King-te-chin, 287  
 Kini-Balu mountains, 264, 334  
 Kinsale Harbour, 173  
 Kiölen, 160  
 Kiona, Mount, 240  
 Kioto, 305  
 Kipchaks, empire of, 33, 283  
 Kirensk, 266  
 Kirghiz steppe, 262, 272, 282  
 Kirin or Girin, 293  
 Kirkcudbright, 180  
 Kishenef, 258, 260  
 Kishon, plain of the, 350  
 Kismayu, 393  
 Kisulutini, 394  
 Kisumu, 393  
 Kiukiang, 289  
 Kiung-chau, 289  
 Kiushiu, 302  
 Kiyef, see Kief  
 Kizil-Irmak, 351  
 Kizil Kum, "red sands," 262, 282  
 Kizil Uzen, 344  
 Klagenfurt, 206  
 Klar Elv, 184  
 Klausenburg, 204  
 Klofa Jökull, 192  
 Klondike, 413  
 Klyutchev (vol.), 264  
 Knockmealdown mountains, 171  
 Kobdo, 294  
 Kobe, 304  
 Koh-i-Baba, 338  
 "Koh-i-nur," 69  
 Kohrud mountains, 264, 344  
 Koja Balkan, 246  
 Koja Chai river, 22  
 Kokand, 283, 297  
 Kokcha river, 341  
 Koko-nor, 269  
 Kolarians, 272  
 Komorn, 208  
 Kong mountains, 361  
 Konge Dybet, 188  
 Konia, 355  
 Königsberg, 195, 197  
 Königgrätz, 207  
 battle of, 78  
 Konkanese, 313  
 Kooringa, 460  
 Kootenay, river, 422  
 Kopais or Topolias lake, 241  
 Korchin desert, 292  
 Kordofan, 85, 381  
 Korea, 125, 264, 299  
 Koreans, 272  
 Koron or Kalamata, 240  
 Korosko, 379, 380  
 Korshut Su, 351  
 Koryaks, 272  
 Kosciusko Group, 455  
 Kosgol lake, 265, 294  
 Koshtan Tau, 277  
 Kosseir, 379  
 Kotri, 267  
 Kotur valley, 349  
 Koulikoro, 385  
 Kowloon, 291  
 Kra, isthmus of, 323  
 Krakatoa, 333  
 Krasnovodsk, 283, 343  
 Krasnoyarsk, 281  
 Krej, 382  
 Krishna, 311  
 Kristiania, 186  
 flord of, 183  
 Kristianssand, 186, 188  
 Kronborg, 190  
 Kronstadt, 208  
 Kronstadt (Russia), 258, 260  
 Kroos, 387  
 Krumirs, 373  
 Kuban, 278  
 Kublai, 37, 38  
 Kuch Behar, 316  
 Kuchki Kom mountain, 246, 250  
 Kuenlun, 263, 265, 296  
 Kuka, 389  
 Kuku-nor, 298  
 Kulja, 79, 282, 295  
 Kunduz, 340, 342  
 Kune-Turfan, 297  
 Kur river, 278  
 Kurdistan, 264, 355  
 Kurds, 273, 354  
 Kuria Muria islands, 358, 407  
 Kurile islands, 264, 306  
 Kurische Haff, 193  
 Kur-kara-usu, 295  
 Kurkleki mountains, 337  
 Kurnah, 351  
 Kurram valley, 339  
 Kushk, 283  
 Kustenje, 245  
 Kutahia, 355  
 Kutais, 279  
 Kutei, 334  
 Kwänen, 185  
 Kwang-chau-wan, 329  
 Kwantung, 289  
 Kyaring lake, 298  
 Kyrenia, 348  
 LAALAND, 188  
 Labrador, 33, 98, 418, 423  
 Labuan, 334  
 island, 83  
 La Calle, 372  
 Laccadive Islands, 322  
 Lacerda, Dr., 73  
 Lachlan river, 455, 457  
 Laconia or Marathonisi, 240, 242  
 Ladakh, 317  
 Lado, 362, 382  
 Ladoga, lake, 161  
 Ladrone islands, 465  
 Læsö, 188  
 Lago Maggiore, 209, 233  
 Lagos, 90, 387  
 La Guaira, 441  
 Laibach, 206  
 Laing, Major, 93  
 Lake, General, 82  
 Lake of the Woods, 411  
 Lama, Great, of Tibet, 65  
 Lamina, lake, 365  
 Lammermoor Hills, 170  
 Lampeter, 177  
 Lampong, 332

- Lamu, 393  
 Lancashire coalfield, 175  
 Lan-chou, 291, 295  
 Land, mean elevation, 126  
 Land and sea breezes, 133  
   distribution of, 122  
 Landak, 334  
 Landau, 200  
 Landeens, 395  
 Landes, the, 157, 220  
 Lan's End, 188  
 Langebergen, 397  
 Langeland, 188  
 Langres, plateau of, 159, 218  
 Languedoc, 224  
 Lanil, lake, 304  
 Lanzarote, 407  
 Laos, 325, 326  
 La Paz, 447  
 La Pérouse, 74  
 Lapland, 163  
 La Plata, 94, 450  
 Lapps, 183, 185, 186, 250  
 Larissa, 243  
 Larnaca, 348  
 La Roca, 155  
 La Rochelle, siege of, 59  
 La Salle, 65  
 Las Casas, 52  
 Lassa, 275, 298, 299  
 Latakia, 355  
 Latitude defined, 108  
 Latium, 21, 237  
 Launceston, 432  
 Lauseune, 210, 211  
 Lebanon, 264, 350  
 Lebombo Hills, 402  
 Lech river, 199  
 Lechlade, 171  
 Lee river, 173  
 Leeds, 173  
 Leouwin, Cape, 464  
 Leeward Islands, 438  
 Leghorn, 237, 238  
 Legnago, 238  
 Leh, 314, 317  
 Leicester, 178  
 Leichhardt river, 459  
 Lelf, 33  
 Leine river, 197  
 Leinster, 180  
 Leipzig, 195, 198  
   battle of, 76  
 Leiria, 232  
 Leith, 179  
 Leitha river, 201, 202  
 Lek, 212  
 Lemaire's expedition, 62  
 Leman, see Geneva, lake of, 209  
 Le Mans, 222  
 Lemberg, 204, 207  
 Lemnos, 348  
 Lena river, 265, 281  
 Leoben, 206  
 Leon, 225, 228  
 Leontes, 352  
 Leopoldville, 390  
 Leaseps, Count, 36  
 Leuca, Cape, 282, 237  
 Leucas or Sta Maura, 240  
 Levuka, 465  
 Lewis, 169  
 Lewis and Clarke's expedition, 96  
 Leyden, 213, 214  
 Leyte, 336  
 Lhasa, 275, 298, 299  
 Li, 287  
 Liakura, 240  
 Liambai, 364  
 Liao-ho river, 264, 292  
 Liao-tung, 292, 295  
 Liard river, 421  
 Liba, 364  
 Liberia, 91, 386  
 Libertad, 435  
 Lichtenau, 416  
 Lichtenfels, 416  
 Liechtenstein, 207  
 Liège, 216, 217, 218  
 Liffey river, 173  
 Liguria, 236  
 Ligurians, 235  
 Liliu fiord, 188  
 Lille, 221  
 Lima, 446  
 Limasol, 348  
 Limburg, 215, 218  
 Limoges, 222  
 Limon, 435  
 Limousin, 223  
 Limpopo, 364  
   river, 402  
 Lindi, 394  
 Lingga, 392  
 Linz, 206  
 Lion, Gulf du, 156, 218  
 Lipari islands, 233  
 Lippe, 196  
 Lisbon, 228, 231  
 Lithang, 299  
 Lithuanians, 256  
 Liu-kiu islands, 264, 306  
 Livadia, 243  
 Liverpool, 178  
 Livingstone mountains, 361,  
   457  
   Dr., 93  
 Livingstonia, 396  
 Liva, 256  
 Lizard, Cape, 168  
 Ljusne Klf, 184  
 Lloyd, Fort, 307  
 Lo or Moi, 327  
 Loanda, 90, 391  
 Loango, 390  
 Lobnor, lake, 269, 296  
 Lochy, Loch, 172  
 Lofoten, 183, 186  
 Lohombo mountains, 396  
 Loire, 161, 219  
 Loja, 440  
 Lolo, 287  
 Loma Mount, 363  
 Lombardy, 232, 234, 236  
   plain of, 158  
 Lomblen, 335  
 Lomlek, 331, 335  
 Lomond, Loch, 172  
 London, 177  
 London University, 177  
 Londonderry, 173, 179  
 Long Island, 429  
 Longitude defined, 108  
 Longobards, 235  
 Longton, 178  
 L'Orient, 223  
 Lorraine, 77  
   French, 222, 223  
   German, 201  
 Lothringen, German, 201  
 Louisiana, 96, 430  
 Louisville, 431  
 Lourenço Marquez, 396  
 Louvain, 216  
 Lowther Hills, 170  
 Loyalty islands, 464  
 Luabo, 393  
 Luabala, 364  
 Luang Prabang, 326, 327  
 Luapula, 303  
 Lübeck, 196, 198  
 Lucerne, see Luzern  
 Lu-chu or Liu-kin, 286, 306  
 Lucknow, 316  
 Lufji, 364, 394  
 Lugano, 210  
 Lugnaquilla, 171  
 Lukoja, 388  
 Lukuga, 368  
 Lulea Klf, 184  
 Lund, 186  
 Lunda, 391  
 Lüneburg heath, 157  
 Luneville, peace of, 74  
 Lupata gorge, 364  
 Luristan, 347  
 Luther, Martin, 47  
 Luvwa, 363, 364  
 Luxemburg, 196, 215, 218  
 Luxor, 379  
 Lyonnais, 224  
 Lyons, 221  
   Gulf of, see Lion  
 Lys river, 216  
 Lyttelton, 463  
 Luz, 338  
 Luzern, 210, 211, 336  
   lake of, 209  
 MAAS or Meuse river, 212  
 Maasilu, 214  
 Maastricht, 214  
 McCarthy island, 127  
 Macassar, 335  
 Macclesfield, 178  
 Macdonell range, 460  
 Macedonia, 22  
 Macgillivuddy Reeks, 171  
 Mackenzie river, 411, 421  
   the traveller, 73  
 Madagascar, 64, 405  
 Madeira, 42, 91, 232, 407, 443  
   river, 447  
 Madras, 315, 318  
 Madrid, 225, 228, 230  
 Madura, 318  
 Maelar, lake, 161  
 Mael Strom, 183  
 Mafla, 393

- Magadoxa**, 393  
**Magalhaens**, see **Magellan**  
**Magahes** or **Kashan** mountains, 402  
**Magdala**, 87, 384  
**Magdalen island**, 419, 420  
**Magdalena river**, 439  
**Magdeburg**, 107  
**Magellan**, 50, 51, 102  
   strait of, 402, 452, 453  
**Magellanus territory**, 448  
**Magenta**, 236  
**Magerö**, 183  
**Magyars**, 31, 165, 203, 208  
**Mahabeshwar**, 309  
**Mahanadi**, 310  
**Mahdi**, the, 88  
**Mahé**, 320  
**Mahebourg**, 407  
**Maimana**, 342  
**Maimatchin**, 295  
**Main river**, 198, 199  
**Maine**, 223, 429  
**Mainz**, 198  
**Maitland**, 457  
**Majores**, 225, 230  
**Makalla**, 357  
**Makapens**, 402  
**Makatee Kafir**, 403  
**Makdeshu**, 393  
**Makololo**, 396, 404  
**Makran**, 338, 347  
**Malabar**, 307, 314  
**Malacca**, 37, 50, 83, 329  
   British, 330  
**Maladetta**, 159  
**Malaga**, 229, 230  
**Malagarazi**, 363  
**Malanje**, 391  
**Malär lake**, 184  
**Malay States**, 329  
**Malays**, 148, 273  
**Malder islands**, 466  
**Maldive islands**, 332  
**Malin**, Cape, 340  
**Malin Head**, 169  
**Malines**, 310, 217  
**Malmö**, 187  
**Malta**, 181, 239  
**Malvern Hills**, 170  
**Malwa**, 309  
**Mamede**, Sierra, 225  
**Manabuke dynasty**, 38, 58  
**Man**, Isle of, 169  
   races, 140  
**Manaar**, Gulf of, 320  
**Managua**, 435  
**Manabika islands**, 406  
**Manas**, 205  
**Manchester**, 177, 178  
**Manchuria**, 79, 291  
**Manchus**, 37, 57, 272, 292  
**Mandalay**, 325  
**Mandingos**, 386  
**Mangalore**, 318  
**Mangbattu**, 382  
**Mangerton**, 171  
**Manias lake** of, 352  
**Manica**, 395  
**Manich**, 278  
**Manila**, 337  
**Manipur**, 319  
**Manissa**, 355  
**Manitoba**, 98, 417, 422  
   river, 411  
**Mannheim**, 200  
**Mansarawar lakes**, 367  
**Mantua**, 238  
**Manyanga**, 390  
**Manyueua**, 394  
**Manzanara**, 453  
**Maoris**, 463  
**Mapping**, 8  
**Maputa river**, 390  
**Maracaybo**, Gulf of, 441  
**Maracaju**, 451  
**Maranhão**, 444  
**Marathas**, 313  
**Marathon**, 445  
**Marathonisi or Laconia**, 240, 242  
**Marburg**, 195  
**March river**, 202  
**Marchu**, 223  
**Marches**, 237  
**Marchfeld**, 205  
**Marco Polo**, 37  
**Marcus Antonius**, 25  
**Mardin**, 349, 355  
**Marea**, 381  
**Marée**, Loch, 172  
**"Maremma"**, 233  
**Maremmas**, 164  
**Marengo**, battle of, 74  
**Mariannes**, 405  
**Marie Gaante**, 437  
**"Marismas"**, 225  
**Martini**, 240, 247, 253  
**Marlborough**, 177  
   Duke of, 67  
**Mar Manor**, 325  
**Marmora**, Sea of, 156, 246  
**Marna Rhine canal**, 219  
**Maroni**, 442  
**Marowynne**, 442  
**Marras mountains**, 361, 381, 385  
**Marquesas**, 466  
**Marseilles**, 27, 222  
**Marshall islands**, 405  
**Marston Moor**, battle of, 60  
**Martaban**, 329  
**Martel**, Charles, 30  
**Martinique**, 437  
**Mary**, Queen, 48  
**Maryborough**, 459  
**Maryland**, 428  
   (Africa), 91  
**Masai**, 392  
**Masbate**, 336  
**Mascarenhas islands**, 54, 407  
**Masena**, 380  
**Mash had**, 345, 346  
**Mashona**, 404  
**Masiu Mons**, 349  
**Mask**, Lough, 173  
**Maskat**, 359  
**Mas Kibbi**, 363  
**Masr el Bahra**, 379  
**Massa**, 238  
**Massachusetts**, 428  
**Massana or Massawa**, 89, 379  
**Massilia**, 21  
**Massina**, 388  
**Masulipatam**, 318  
**Matabili Kafir**, 404  
   Land, 396  
**Matan**, 334, 337  
**Matapan**, Cape, 155, 240  
**Matanzas**, 437  
**Matoppe mountains**, 404  
**Matrah**, 359  
**Matsunaye**, 305  
**Matterhorn**, 209  
**Maule**, 448  
**Maulmein**, 267, 323  
**Mauna Loa**, 460  
**Mauritania**, 25  
**Mauritius**, 407  
   Island, 54  
**Mavro Nero**, 241  
   Potamo, 241  
**Maximilian of Austria**, 96  
**Mayer**, see **Mainz**, 198  
**Maynooth College**, 177  
**Mayotte**, 407  
**Maypu**, 448  
**Mazagan**, 371  
**Mazandaran**, 347  
**Mazatlan**, 434  
**Mecca**, 28, 355  
**Mecklen or Malines**, 216, 217  
**Mecklenburg**, 195, 198  
**Medina**, 355  
**Mediterranean Sea**, 156  
**Mehedia**, 374  
**Mehemet Ali**, 85  
**Melissen**, 198  
**Mekhong river**, 266, 322, 328, 329  
**Melacoree**, 385  
**Melanesia**, 464  
**Melbourne**, 99, 458  
**Meleguetta pepper**, 42  
**Melilla**, 230  
**Melinde**, 393  
**Melville island**, 454  
**Memel**, 197  
**Memphis**, 379  
**Meuauo**, 335  
**Menam**, 266, 322  
**Menam river**, 266, 322, 325  
**Menders Buyuk**, 351  
   Kuchuk, 351  
   Su, 351  
**Menduf**, 361, 385  
**Mendoza**, 450  
**Mensa**, 381  
**Mequinez**, 371  
**Merapi**, 332  
**Mergui**, 323  
**Meridian**, 2  
   of longitude, 108  
**Merka**, 393  
**Merom lake**, 352  
**Merovingian dynasty**, 29  
**Merrick mountain**, 170  
**Merse**, the, 171  
**Mersey**, 172, 181  
**Mersina**, 365

Merthyr Tydfil, 178  
 Merv, 283, 344  
 Meroë, 381  
 Mesandum, Ras, 357  
 Meshed Ali, 353  
 Mesolongion, 243  
 Mesopotamia, 262, 355  
 Messenia, 240, 242  
 Messina, 238  
 Messuril, 395  
 Meta, 441  
 Metan gorge, 266  
 Metemneh, 384  
 Metz, 78, 201  
 Meuse or Maas river, 161, 212, 215, 217, 219  
 Mexico, 52, 94, 96, 432  
     city, 434  
     plateau of, 410  
 Mia, Wady, 375  
 Miako or Kioto, 305  
 Miautse, 287  
 Michigan, lake, 411, 430  
 Micronesia, 464, 465  
 Midianites, 355  
 Mikado of Japan, the, 30  
 Mikindani, 394  
 Milan, 236, 238, 239  
 Milford Haven, 172, 178  
 Milos, 240  
 Milwaukee, 431  
 Min, 286  
 Minch, the, 169  
 Mincio, 233  
 Mindanao, 336  
 Mindoro, 336  
 Mineral wealth, its influence, 145  
 Minho, 226  
 Minnesota, 430  
 Minorca, 225  
 Mira, 440  
 Mirat, 317  
 Misol, 336  
 Missolonghi, 243  
 Mississippi river, 411, 426, 430  
 Missouri river, 426, 430  
 "Mistral" wind, 219  
 Mitchell river, 459  
 Mithridates, 25  
 Mizen Head, 169  
 Moab, 264  
     mountains, 350  
 Mobangi or Welle, 364  
 Mobile river, 426  
 Modder river, 402  
 Möen, 188  
 Moeris, lake, 379  
 Moero, lake, 363  
 Moesia, 252  
 Mogador, 371  
 Mogul dynasty, 46  
 Mohammed, 28  
 Mohammedan Empire in Asia, 28, 29, 93  
 Mohammedanism, 274  
 Moheli island, 407  
 Mohilla island, 407  
 Moi or Loi, 327  
 Mokha, 355

Mokren el Bohur, 362  
 Moldau river, 207  
 Moldavia, 85, 243  
 Molise, 237  
 Moluccas, 336  
 Mombaza, 394  
 Mombo, 394  
 Monastir, 253, 374  
 Monchique, Sierra de, 225  
 Mongol dynasty, 46  
 Mongols, 272  
 Mongolia, 37, 38, 293  
 Mongolians, 147  
     in Europe, 165  
 Monrovia, 91, 387  
 Mons, 217  
 Mons tribe, 324  
 Monsoons, 133, 270  
     in India, 311, 321  
 Montana, 431  
 Mont Blanc, 158, 218  
 Mont Cenis, see Cenis  
 Mont Dore, 218  
 Mont Pelée, 438  
 Monte Corvo, 233  
 Monte Gargano, 237  
 Montenegro, 246, 249, 250  
 Monte Rosa, 209  
 Monte Video, 452  
 Montezuma, 52  
 Montpellier, 221  
 Montrado, 334  
 Montreal, 418, 419  
 Montserrat, 437  
 Moody, Port, 423  
 Moorfoot Hills, 170  
 Moors, 29, 34, 48, 371  
 Moonta, 460  
 Morava, 250  
 Moravia, 207  
 Moravian Heights, 159, 202  
 Moravians, 203  
 Moray Firth, 168  
 Mordvins, 256  
 Morea or Peloponnesus, 239  
 Morena, Sierra de, 159, 225  
 Moreton Bay, 99, 459  
 Moriscoes, 61 (see also Moors)  
 Morocco, 25, 49, 91, 369  
 Morrison, Mount, 264, 285, 307  
 Moscow, 257, 258, 259  
 Moselle, 201  
 Mossamedes, 90, 391  
 Mostaganem, 372  
 Mostar, 252  
 Mosul, 351, 355  
 Mountains, geographical distribution, 128  
 Mourne mountains, 171  
 Mozambique, 88, 394  
     current, 136  
 Muata Yamvo, 391  
 Mughis, 323  
 Muich Dhui, Ben, 170  
 Mukden, 293  
 Mulahacen, 225  
 Mülhausen, 201  
 Mull, 169  
 Multan, 313, 317  
 Muluya, 370

Munich, 195, 199  
 Muniong range, 457  
 Munster, 180  
 Münster, 195  
     treaty of, 59  
 Mur river, 206  
 Muradchai, 350  
 Murat, 75  
 Murchison Cataracts, 364  
 Murcia, 229, 230  
 Murghab, 339  
 Murong, 334  
 Murray river, 455, 457  
 Murrumbidgee river, 455, 457  
 Murshidabad, 316  
 Murzuk, 374, 377  
 Mus-alla, 246  
 Muscat, 86  
 Mushinga mountains, 361  
 Mutshobo, 325  
 Muzart Pass, 297  
 Mweelrea mountains, 171  
 Mysore, 319  
 Mytho, 329  
 Mytilini, 348  
 My Vatn, 192

NADIR SHAH, 69  
 Naga Hills, 316  
 Nagasaki, 304  
 Nagpur, 317  
 Nahr el Ahsy, 352  
 Nahr el Litany, 352  
 Nain, 424  
 Nama Land, 405  
 Nama (Namaqua), 396  
 Nam-cho, 298  
 Namur, 216, 217  
 Nancy, 222  
 Nan-hei or Southern Sea, 185  
 Nanking, 26, 291  
 Nankowry, 323  
 Nan-ling, 263, 285  
 Nan-ning, 289  
 Nan-shan mountains, 291, 296  
 Nantes, 222  
     edict of, 48, 60  
 Náo, Cabo de la, 225  
 Napata, 381  
 Napier, 463  
 Napier, Sir Charles, 82  
 Napoleon, 76  
 Naples, 235, 237, 238  
 Napo, 440  
 Narbada, 310  
 Nari, 339  
 Narin, 282  
 Narses, 28  
 Nasik, 318  
 Natal, 88, 396, 400  
 Natuna islands, 332  
 Nawa, 306  
 Nauplia, 240, 243  
 Navarre, 34, 224, 229  
 Naxos, 240  
 Neagh, Lough, 173  
 Nebraska, 431  
 Neckar river, 200  
 Nedjef, Bahr, 352

- Nefud, 356, 357  
 Negapatam, 318  
 Negritos, 149, 273  
 Negros, 336  
 Negroes, 148, 367  
 Negroponte or Egripo, 240  
 Nejd, 350, 355, 359  
 Nelson, 463  
     river, 411, 421  
 Nelson, Lord, 68, 74  
 Nepal, 319  
 Nephin mountains, 171  
 Ness, Loch, 172  
 Ness river, 172  
 Netherlands, 212  
 Netherlands, The (see also Holland), 48, 59  
 Netherlands, United Provinces, 48  
 Néthou, Pic de, 159, 218  
 Neuchâtel, 210, 211  
 Neuchâtel, lake of, 209  
 Neu Lauenburg, 465  
 Neu Mecklenburg, 465  
 Neu Pommern, 465  
 Neusiedler See, 202  
 Neva, 161  
 Nevada, Sierra, 159, 432  
 Nevis, 437  
 Nevis, Ben, 169  
 New Amsterdam, 442  
 New Britain, 465  
 New Brunswick, 97, 417, 449  
 New Caledonia, 465  
 Newcastle coalfield, 175  
 Newcastle-upon-Tyne, 178  
 Newcastle (N.S.W.), 457  
 New England, 428, 429  
 New England range, 457  
 New Forest, Hampshire, 170, 174  
 Newfoundland, 97, 417, 423  
 New Granada, 94  
 New Guinea, 71, 464  
 New Hampshire, 428  
 New Hebrides, 465  
 New Herrnhut, 416  
 New Holland, 71  
 New Ireland, 465  
 New Jersey, 428  
 New Mexico, 97, 431  
 New Orleans, 431  
 New Plymouth, 463  
 New South Wales, 61, 99, 454, 456  
 Newton, Sir Isaac, 112  
 Newtown (Montgom.), 178  
 New Westminster, 423  
 New York, 428, 429  
 New Zealand, 74, 99, 462  
 Nezwah, 359  
 Ngami, lake, 365  
 Ngaurahoe, 462  
 Ngunie, 363  
 Niagara Falls, 418  
 Nicaragua, 95, 434, 435  
     Canal, 436  
     Lake, 411, 435  
 Nice, 222  
 Nicobar islands, 323  
 Nicoya, Gulf of, 435  
 Nicosia, 348  
 Niebuhr, the explorer, 66  
 Niemen, 161, 259  
 Nieuweveld, 397  
 Nigeria, Northern, 91  
     Southern, 91  
 Niger river, 73, 90, 363, 385  
     delta, 388  
 Niigata, 304  
 Nikolayef, 258, 260  
 Nikolayevsk, 282  
 Nikshich, 251  
 Nile river, 73, 93, 361  
     battle of the, 68  
 Nilgiri Hills, 309  
 Nîmes, 221  
 Nineveh, 262  
 Ning-po, 289  
 Ninive, 355  
 Nippon, 302  
 Niris, lake, 345  
 Nish, 254  
 Nishni-Novgorod, 260  
 Niu-chwang, 289, 293  
 Nivernais, 223  
 Nizam, the, 69  
 Nogai Tartars, 256  
 Noki, 390  
 Nome, 424  
 Nordenskjöld, explorer, 101  
 Nord Kin, 183  
 Nordlendinga, 193  
 Nore, 173  
 Norfolk, 179, 180  
     Island, 73, 457  
 Normans (see Northmen)  
 Normandy, 219, 220, 223  
 Norrköping, 187  
 North Cape, 183  
 North-East Passage, 54, 56, 70  
 Northmen, 31, 38, 35  
 North Sea, 155, 167  
 North-West Company of Montreal, 72  
 North-West Passage, 54, 70, 74  
 North-West Territory, 98, 421  
 Norway, 182  
 Norwich, 178  
 Nossi Bé, 406  
 Nottingham, 178  
 Nova, Juan de, 49  
 Novaya Zemlya, 156  
 Nova Scotia, 97, 417, 420  
 Novgorod, 32  
 Nuba or Barabra, 378, 380  
 Nubia, 380  
 Nuers, 381  
 Nu-Gariep or Vaal river, 364, 398  
 Nukha, 279  
 Numidia, 25  
 Nunez, Rio, 385  
 Nuremberg, 199  
 Nürnberg, 199  
 Nusarich, Jebel, 350  
 Nyam Nyam or Zuandeh, 381, 382  
 Nyangwe, 394  
 Nyassa, lake, 93, 364, 394, 396  
 Nyassaland, 89  
     Protectorate, 396  
 Nyl Strom, 402  
 Nymegen, 214  
 OAHU, 466  
 Obbia, 392  
 Obeidh, El, 381  
 Oberland, 209  
 Obi river, 262, 265  
 Obok, 88, "  
 Ocean currents, 134, 136  
     their causes, 135  
     how they modify climate, 138  
 Oceania, 464  
 Ochil Hills, 170  
 Odense, 190  
 Odenwald, 158  
 Oder, 161, 193, 194, 202  
 Odessa, 258, 260  
 Ogaden, 392  
 Oglio, 233  
 Ogowe, 90, 363, 390  
 Oguzian Turks, 37  
 Ohio river, 426, 430  
 Ohter's and Wolfstan's voyages, 32  
 Oich, Loch, 172  
 Oil rivers, 388  
 Oka river, 259, 260  
 Okahandya, 405  
 Okak, 424  
 Okavango, 365  
 Okhotsk, 282  
     Sea of, 262  
 Okhrida, 247  
 Oklahoma, 431  
 Oland, 182  
 Oldenburg, 195  
 Oldham, 178  
 Olifant river (Cape Col.), 397  
 Olifant river (Transvaal), 402  
 Olmütz, 207  
 Oltu or Aluta, 244  
 Olympus, 240  
     Mount (Asia Minor), 348  
 Oman, 86, 356, 357, 358, 359  
 Ombai, 335  
 Omdurman, 377  
 Omoa, 435  
 Onega, lake, 161  
 Onekstan, 306  
 Oneyzah, 359  
 Onitsha, 368  
 Ontario, Lake, 411, 418  
 Ontario, 417, 419  
 Oodnadatta, 460  
 Ookiep, 399  
 Ophir, Mount (Sumatra), 332  
 Oporto, 232  
 Oraefa, 160  
 Oraefa, Mount, 192  
 Oran, 92, 372  
 Orange, 224  
 Orange Free State, 88, 89, 396, 401



Orange river, 364, 397, 401  
 Orangia, 401  
 Orbit of the earth, 117  
 Ordos, Mongols, 294  
 Ore mountains, see Erzgebirge  
 Oregon, 98, 432  
 Orenburg, 260  
 Organ mountains, 443  
 Orinoco, 411, 441  
 Orissa, 316  
 Oristano, bay of, 234  
 Orkney Islands, 169  
 Orleans, 220, 221  
 Orontes river, 349, 352  
 Orotava, 408  
 Ortler Spitze, 202  
 Oruro, 447  
 Osman Pasha, 79  
 Osmanli Turks, 39, 165, 245, 247  
 Ossa, Mount, 240  
 Ostend, 217  
 Osterö, 191  
 Ostrogoths, 28  
 Ostyaks, 272  
 Otho, King of Germany, 31  
 Othrys mountain, 240  
 Otranto, strait of, 232  
 Ottawa, 419  
     river, 418  
 Ottoman Empire, 37, 46, 57  
 Oudh, 83, 316  
 Ouro Preto, 444  
 Ourthe river, 216  
 Ouse, Great, 171  
     (York), 172  
 Outeniqua mountains, 397  
 Ovamos, 405  
 Over Flakkee, 212  
 Overysse, 215  
 Oviedo, 228  
 Owen Stanley range, 464  
 Oxford, 177  
 Oxus or Amu Daria, 79, 263, 268, 282, 339, 343  
 Oyapok, 442  
 Ozaka, 304, 305  
 Ozark Hills, 426  
 Ozi river, 393

PADANG, 332  
 Padua, 235  
 Pagan, 325  
 Pahang, 330  
 Paik-tu-san mountains, 300  
 Paisley, 179  
 Pakhoi, 289  
 Palar, 311  
 Palatinate, 199, 200  
 Palawan, 336  
 Palembang, 332  
 Palencia, 230  
 Palermo, 238, 239  
 Palk Strait, 320  
 Palma, 230, 407  
 Palmas, Cape, 387  
 Palmas, Las, 408  
 Palmer river, 459  
 Palmerston, 460  
 Palos, Cape of, 225

Palti, lake, 298  
 Pamplona, 228  
 Pamir plateau, 263  
 Panama, 436  
     isthmus of, 410  
     State, 434  
 Panar, 311  
 Panay, 336  
 Pangani, 394  
 Panjab, 83, 267, 308, 317  
 Panjnad, 267  
 Panom-peng, 329  
 Pantar, 335  
 Papeete, 466  
 Papho, 348  
 Papuas, 149, 273, 464  
 Pará, 444  
 Paraguay, republic, 73, 94, 451  
     river, 443  
 Parallels of latitude, 108  
 Paramaribo, 442  
 Paramatta, 457  
 Paramusir, 306  
 Parana, 411, 443  
 Paraná river, 449, 451  
 Paranahyba, 443  
 Paris, 34, 76, 78, 219, 222  
     treaty of, 68, 244  
 Park, Mungo, 73  
 Parma, 235  
 Parnassus, 240  
 Paros, 240, 242  
 Parsis, 274  
 Parnon, 240  
 Pasco, 446  
 Passamaquoddy Bay, 425  
 Patagonia, 452  
 Patagones, 51  
 Patiala, 317  
 Pathan tribes, 340  
 Patkoi range, 324  
 Patmos, 348  
 Patna, 316  
 Patras, 243  
 Patras, Gulf of, 240  
 Paumotu, 466  
 Pavia, battle of, 47  
 Paysandu, 452  
 Peace river, 421  
 Pechora, 161  
 Pedrotallagalla, 321  
 "Peel," the, 157  
 Peel, bog, 213  
     island, 307  
 Pegu, 65, 323  
 Pei-han, 290  
 Pei-ho river, 80  
 Peipus, lake, 161  
 Peking, 37, 80, 286, 290  
 Pelew islands, 465  
 Pe-ling, 263, 285  
 Pelion, Mount, 240  
 Pemba, 88, 393  
 Penang, 330  
 Peña Vieja de Europa, 225  
 Peninsular War, 75  
 Penjdeh, 283  
 Pennine chain, 170  
 Pennsylvania, 428  
 Pentingerian table, 26

Pentland Firth, 168, 169  
     Hills, 170  
 Pepin the Short, 30  
 Pepper Coast, 91  
 Pera, 254  
 Perak, 330  
 Pergamus, 25  
 Perim, 358  
 Perim island, 73  
 Perm, 259  
 Permyaks, 256  
 Pernambuco, 444  
 Persepolis, ruins, 347  
 Persepolis, 27  
 Persia, 21, 28, 34, 57, 84, 264, 344  
 Perth, 461  
 Peru, 53, 94, 445  
 Perú, plateau of, 409  
 Perugia, 235, 237  
 Peruvian current, 136  
 Peschiera, 238  
 Peshawar, 314, 317  
 Peter the Great, 58, 65  
 Peter the Hermit, 36  
 Peterwardein, 208  
 Petropaulovsk, 282  
 Petrozavodsk, 259  
 Pfäfers, 210  
 Pharpar, 352  
 Phasis river or Rion, 271  
 Philadelphia, 429  
 Philip of Spain, 48  
 Philip II. of Macedonia, 22  
 Philippeville, 372  
 Philippine Islands, 264, 336  
 Philippopolis, 247, 253  
 Phillip, Port, 458  
 Phocis, 242  
 Phœnicians, 20, 148  
 Phoenix Islands, 466  
 Phthiotis, 242  
 Picardy, 223  
 Pichincha, 440  
 Picton, 418  
 Picts and Scots, 27  
 Piedmont, 236  
 Pietermaritzburg, 401  
 Pilcomayo, 447, 449  
 "Pilgrim Fathers," 33, 63  
 Pillars of Hercules, 21  
 Pilsen, 207  
 Pindus, 159, 240  
     mountains, 246  
 Pine Creek, 460  
 Pinzon, Yanez, 50  
 Piræus, 243  
 Pisa, 235  
 Pitcairn, 466  
     island, 71  
 Pitea Elf, 184  
 Pittsburg, 430  
 Pizarro, Francisco, 53  
 Placentia Bay, 423  
 Plataea, battle of, 22  
 Platten See or Balaton, 202  
 Plevna, 79, 252  
 Plymouth, 178, 179  
 Plynymmon, 170  
 Po, 161, 233

- Hannibal, 24  
 Hanno, 20  
 Hanoi or Kesho, 328  
 Hanover, 197  
 Hanse Towns, 198  
 Hapsburg, House of, 41, 67  
 Harar, 380, 392  
 Harbin, 281  
 Hardanger Field, 160  
 Hardt, 159, 199  
 Hardwar, 267, 310, 314  
 Hari-rud, 339, 344  
 Haro Channel, 425  
 Harold, death of, 35  
 Harrow, 177  
 Harun-al-Rashid, 30  
 Harvard University, 428, 429  
 Harz, 158, 194, 197  
 Hasa, El, 356  
 Hasan, Jebel, 359  
 Hastings, battle of, 35  
     Warren, 69  
 Hauraki gulf, 463  
 Hauran, Jebel, 350  
 Haussa, 389  
 Havana, 437  
 Havelock, 84  
 Havre, 222  
 Hawaii, 425, 466  
 Hawaiian Islands, 72  
 Hawke Bay, 463  
 Hawkesbury river, 457  
 Hawkins, Sir John, 55  
 Hayel, 359  
 Hayti island, 95  
 Hazarahs, 340  
 Hearne, 72  
 Heart's Content, 423  
 Hebrides, 169  
 Hebron, 424  
 Hecla, 160  
 Heidelberg, 195, 200  
 Height of the land, 125  
 Heilbronn, 200  
 Hejaz, 86, 352, 355  
 Hekla, 192  
 Helder, 212, 214  
 Heligoland, 181  
 Hellas, 239  
 Hellespont, 22  
 Helleville, 406  
 Helmand, 269, 339  
 Helsingfors, 258  
 Helsingör, 190  
 Hemisphere, defined, 107  
 Henry, the navigator, 42  
 Heraclius, his victory, 28  
 Herat, 84, 339, 340, 341  
 Herbertshöhe, 465  
 Hercules' Pillars, 21  
 Herero or Damara Land, 396, 405  
 Hermannstadt, 208  
 Hermon, Mount, 349, 350  
 Herinopolis, 243  
 Herodotus, 21  
 Herschel range, 455  
 Hertogenbosch, 214  
 Herzegovina, 251  
 Hesse, 195  
 Hesse-Nassau, 197  
 Highlands of Scotland, 169  
 Highlands of the World, 128  
 Hills, how shown on a map, 15  
 Himalaya, 263, 264, 307  
 Himilco, 20  
 Himmelsberg, 189  
 Himyarides of Yemen, 28  
 Hindoe, 183  
 Hindu-kush, 263, 338  
 Hindus, 272, 313  
 Hindustan, peninsula, 261  
     plain of, 263  
 Hinka, lake, 292  
 Hiogo, 305  
 Hispania, 24  
 Hispaniola, 95  
 Hit, 351  
 Hoang-ho, 266, 286  
 Hobart, 462  
 Hoboken, 429  
 Hodeida, 355  
 Hohe Tauern, 206  
 Hohenzollern, 197, 200  
 Hokitika, 463  
 Hoklos, 287  
 Holland, 55, 56, 61, 64, 83, 212  
     province, 215  
 Holstein, 77  
 Holsteinborg, 416  
 Hombori mountains, 385  
 Homs, 350  
 Honda, 439  
 Hondo, 302  
 Honduras, 95, 424, 435  
 Hong-Kong, 289, 291  
 Honolulu, 466  
 Hooge Veldt, 402  
 Hooker, Mount, 410  
 Hope, 423  
 Hopedale, 424  
 Hopia, 88  
 Hor, Mount, 299, 350  
 Horizon, 1, 103  
 Hormuz, Strait of, 346  
 Horn, Cape, 128, 453  
 Horpa lake, 298  
 Hottentots, 148, 367, 399  
 Houquain, 405  
 Houtman, 56  
 Hovas, 406  
 Howe, Cape, 454  
 Howrah, 316  
 Huddersfield, 178  
 Hudson's Bay, 421  
 Hudson's Bay Company, 64, 98, 421  
 Hudson, Hendrik, 62  
     river, 425  
 Hué, treaty, 327, 328  
 Hugli, 267, 310  
 Huguenots, 47, 59  
 Hull, 178  
 Humaita, 452  
 Humber, 172  
 Huna Floi, 192  
 Hungary, 31, 40, 201  
     kingdom, 208  
 Hungary, plain, 157, 202, 203  
 Huns, 26  
 Hunter river, 457  
 Huron, Lake, 411  
 Huss, John, 41  
 Hussars, Hungarian, 40  
 Hussite Wars, 41  
 Hwang-dun-gang, river, 300  
 Hyder Ali, 69  
 Hymettus, Mount, 242  
 Hyperboreans, 21  
 Hypphasis river, 22  
 IBERIAN PENINSULA, 224  
 Iberians in France, 220  
     of Spain, 227  
 Ibn Batuta, his travels, 39  
 Ibo, 395  
 Icaria, 348  
 Iceland, 32, 156, 191  
 I-chang, 289  
 Ida, Mount, 160, 255, 348  
 Idaho, 432  
 Idria, 206  
 Idutywa Land, 400  
 Iddah, 388  
 Igbegbe, 388  
 Igharghar, 375  
 Ilchi or Khotan, 297  
 Ile de France, 223  
 Ili river, 79, 268, 282, 295  
 Illimani Peak, 446  
 Illinois, 430  
 Illyria, 251  
 Illyrian mountains, 246  
 Imbros, 348  
 Incas, 53  
 Indals Elf, 184  
 India, 22, 40, 84, 307  
     climate, 311  
     extent, 307  
     government, 314  
     industries, 313  
     peoples, 313  
     products, 312  
     relief, 307  
     rivers, 310  
 Indiana, 430  
 Indian desert, 263  
 Indian territory, 431  
 Indians, American, 148, 413, 421  
 Indo-Europeans, 147  
 Indore, 319  
 Indrapura, 332  
 Indus river, 22, 263, 267, 310  
 Ingoda river, 266  
 Inhambane, 395  
 Inn river, 206  
     Upper, 209  
 Innsbruck, 207  
 Interlaken, 210, 211  
 Intra, 238  
 Ionian Islands, 239, 240, 242  
     sea, 156  
 Iowa, 430  
 Ipsus, battle of, 23  
 Iquique, 449  
 Irak Ajemi, 347

- Ronda, 229  
 Rosario, 450  
 Roses, war of the, 41  
 Rosetta, 379  
 Rossal, 177  
 Rostock, 195, 197  
 Rostof, 260  
 Rothiemurchus Forest, 174  
 Rotondo, Monte, 160  
 Rotterdam, 214  
 Rotuma island, 465  
 Rotundity of the earth, 102, 104  
 Roubaix, 221  
 Rouen, 221  
 Roumelia, 246, 249, 252, 253  
 Roussillon, 224  
 Roveredo, 207  
 Rovuma, 364, 396  
 Rowandiz peak, 349  
 Ruahine, 462  
 Ruapehu, 462  
 Rudolf lake, 94, 365  
 Rufla river, 241  
 Rufu, 364  
 Rugby, 177  
 Ruhr, 194  
 Rumelia, 239  
 Rupel, 216  
 Rupert's Land, 98, 417, 421  
 Rurik, the Viking, 32  
 Russia, government, 167  
 Russia, 32, 35, 40, 57, 65, 99 (all historical)  
 Russia in Central Asia, 58, 65, 66, 69, 78, 79, 84  
 Russia, conquests in Central Asia, 79  
 Russian Empire, 255  
 Russian lowland, 157  
 Russians, 256  
 Rustchuk, 252  
 Rustenburg, 403  
 Ruthenians, 203  
 Ruwenzori, 362  
  
 SAADANI, 394  
 Saar, river, 194, 201  
 Saarbrück, battle of, 78  
 Saba, 437  
 Sabaki, 393  
 Sable Islands, 420  
 Sadowa, 78, 207  
 Safid-koh, 339  
 Saguenay river, 418  
 Sahara, 370, 375  
 Sahama peak, 446  
 Said, El, 379  
 Said, Port, 379  
 Saida or Sidon, 355  
 Saigon, 82, 328  
 St. Abb's Head, 170  
 St. Andrews, 177  
 St. Anthony Falls, 426  
 St. Bartholomew, 437  
 St. Bartholomew's Day, massacre of, 48  
 St. Bees College, 177  
 St. Bernard, Great, Pass, 209  
     Pass, 158  
 St. Christobal, 408  
 St. Christopher, 437  
 St. Clair river, 418  
 St. Elias, Mount, 128, 410  
     in Greece, 240  
 St. Etienne, 221, 222  
 St. Eustatius, 437  
 St. Gall, 211  
 St. George's Channel, 168  
 St. Gothard, 238  
     Pass, 158, 211  
 St. Helena, 408  
     island, 76  
 St. John's (Newfoundland), 423  
     river, 400, 420  
 St. Lawrence river, 411, 418  
 St. Louis, 385, 431  
 St. Lucia, 437  
 Ste. Marie, 406  
 St. Martin, 437  
 St. Mary river, 418  
 St. Maura or Leucas, 240  
 St. Maurice river, 418  
 St. Michael, 232  
 St. Moritz, 210  
 St. Nazaire, 222  
 St. Petersburg, 66, 257, 258, 259, 260  
 St. Pierre, Martinique, 438  
 St. Pierre and Miquelon, 424  
 St. Quentin, 221  
 St. Thomas, 389, 438  
     (Guinea), 361  
     island, 90  
 St. Vincent, 408, 437  
     Cape, 225,  
     battle of, 74  
     Gulf of, 460  
 Saintonge, 223  
 San Sebastian, 230  
 Sakalavas, 406  
 Sakaria, 351  
 Sakhalin, 272, 281  
 Sala, 185  
 Saladin, 34, 36  
 Salado, 449  
 Salamanca, 228  
     bay of, 76  
 Salambria, 241  
 Salamis, 240  
 Salford, 178  
 Salina Cruz, 434  
 Salisbury (Africa), 396  
 Salisbury Plain, 170  
 Salle rovers, 48  
 Salonica, 253, 254, 255  
 Salta, 450  
 Saltholm, 188  
 Salt Lake, Great, 411  
 Salt range, 308  
 Salvador, 434, 435  
 Salwatty, 336  
 Salwin, 322  
     river, 267  
 Salzburg, 204  
     duchy and town, 206  
 Salza river, 206  
 Salzkaumergut, 206  
 Samar, 336  
 Samara, 258, 260  
 Samarang, 333  
 Samarinda, 334  
 Samarkand, 79, 262, 283  
 Sambre river, 215, 217  
 Samoa, 101, 466  
 Samos, 348, 355  
 Samothrace or Samothraki, 247, 348  
 Samoyeds, 257, 272  
 Samsö, 188  
 Samsun, 355  
 Sana, 355  
 Sanbok islands, 306  
 Sandalwood island, 355  
 San Domingo, 438  
 Sandhurst, 458  
 Sandwich Harbour, 405  
     Islands, 72, 466  
 San Francisco, 432  
 Sang, 299  
 Sangalak, 339  
 Sangir islands, 335  
 San José (Costa Rica), 435  
     (Nic.), 435  
 San Juan promontory, 390  
     river, 434  
     de Fuca strait, 425  
     del Norte, 435  
 San Marino, 239  
 Sanpo, 267, 298  
     river, 30  
 San Salvador (Congo), 390  
     (Central America), 435  
 Sansandig, 388  
 Santa Cruz, 453  
     islands, 464  
 Santander, 230  
 Santee river, 425  
 Santiago (Spain), 228  
     (Cape Verd), 408  
 Santiago (Chile), 449  
 Santiago de Cuba, 437  
 Santorin, 240  
 São Francisco river, 443  
 São Paulo, 444  
 Saone, 219  
 Saracens, the, 29, 30  
 Saragossa, 228  
 Saraiyevo, 252  
 Sarakhs, 340  
 Saratof, 258, 260  
 Sarawak, 83, 334  
 Sarawan, 338  
 Sardinia, 234, 236  
 Sarmatians, 32  
 Saros, 247  
 Sarpen Fos, 184  
 Sassanian dynasty, 28  
 Satej, see Sutlej  
 Satpura Hills, 309  
 Satsuporo, 306  
 Sau or Save, 206  
 Savanilla, 439  
 Savannah river, 425  
 Save, 202  
 Savoy, 224  
 Savoyards, 235  
 Sayan mountains, 263, 280  
 Saxe-Altenburg, 195

- Saxe-Coburg-Gotha, 195  
 Saxe-Meiningen, 195  
 Saxe-Weimar, 195  
 Saxon Switzerland, 158, 197  
 Saxons, settlement in Eng-  
 land, 27  
 Saxony, kingdom, 195, 197  
 Saxony, Prussia, 197  
 Scale of maps, 8  
 Scandinavia, 32, 182  
 Scandinavian mountains, 160  
 Scania, 182, 185  
 Scardus, 246  
 Scawfell, 170  
 Schaffhausen, 210, 211  
 Schamyl, capture of, 79  
 Schaumburg-Lippe, 196  
 Scheldt or Escaut, river, 212,  
 216  
 Scheveningen, 214  
 Schiedam, 214  
 Schiermonnikoog, 212  
 Schleswig, 77  
 Schleswig-Holstein, 197  
 Schneekoppe, 202  
 Schouwen, 212  
 Schwarzburg, 195  
 Schwarzwald, see Black  
 Forest  
 Schwarzwald, 200  
 Schwyz, 62, 211  
 Scilly Islands, 20  
 Scotland, coalfields, 175  
 Scots and Picts, 35  
 Scutari (Albania), 247, 253  
 (Asia Minor), 355  
 Sea, depth of, 127  
 its temperature, 132  
 Seasons, 4  
 Sebu, 370  
 Sechuen, 287, 289  
 Sections of a country, 15  
 Sedan, 78, 222  
 Sego, 385, 388  
 Segura, 226  
 Sehend, Koh, 345  
 Seine, 161, 219  
 Seistan, 269, 340, 347  
 Seistan swamp, 339  
 Selangor, 330  
 Selenga river, 265, 294  
 Selim, Sultan, 46  
 Seljuk Turks, 33  
 Semipalatinsk, 282  
 Semites, 147, 367  
 of Asia, 273  
 Semliki river, 362  
 Semlin, 208  
 Semmering Pass, 158  
 Semyen, 383  
 Sena, 395  
 Senaar, 381  
 Senegal, 91, 363  
 Senegambia, 385  
 Serai-Bosna, 252  
 Seraing, 217  
 Seret, 242  
 Seringapatam, 69, 319  
 Seriphos, 242  
 Serra do Mar, 443  
 Serrao, 50  
 Serrano, 50  
 Sert river, 351  
 Servia, 85, 246, 249, 250  
 Servians, 203  
 Setúbal, 225  
 Seul, 300  
 Sevastopol, 260  
 Severn, 172  
 vale of, 171  
 Seville, 228, 230  
 plain of, 225  
 Sèvres, 222  
 Seychelles, 407  
 Sfax, 374  
 Shahjahanpur, 317  
 Shah Jehan, 57  
 Shaikieh, 381  
 Shal or Quetta, 338  
 Shamanism, 276  
 Shammar, Jebel, 350, 357,  
 359  
 Shamo, see Gobo  
 Shan Alin mountains, 264,  
 292, 300  
 Shanghai, 289  
 Shannon, 173  
 Shans, 324  
 Shan-tung, 285  
 Shar Dagh, 246  
 Shari river, 363, 365  
 Sharja, 359  
 Shat el Arab, 268, 351  
 Sheffield, 178  
 Sheliah mountain, 369  
 Sheliff, 372  
 Shelum, 267  
 Shemakha, 279  
 Shendi, 381  
 Sherboro, 386  
 Shere Ali, 84  
 Sherwood Forest, 174  
 Shetland Islands, 169  
 Shields, 178  
 Shigatse, 275, 298  
 Shikoku, 302  
 Shilka river, 266  
 Shilluks, 381  
 Shinoda, 304  
 Shimonoseki, 305  
 Shin, Loch, 172  
 Shingeti, 376  
 Shing-king or Liao-tung, 292  
 Shintoism, 275  
 Shipka Pass, 246  
 Shiraz, 346, 347  
 Shiré river, 364, 396  
 Shoa, 88, 384  
 Shoalhaven river, 457  
 Shott el Kebir, 369  
 Shott el Melghir, 370  
 "Shotts," 361  
 Shrewsbury, 177  
 Shumla, 66, 252  
 Shutargardan Pass, 339  
 Siak, 332  
 Siam, 82, 325  
 Siberia, 279  
 Siberian lowland, 262  
 Sicilies, the two, 36  
 Sicily, 237  
 Sidlaw Hills, 170  
 Sidon or Saida, 20, 355  
 Sidon, 20  
 Sidra, Gulf of, 374  
 Siena, 235  
 Sierra, see Guadarrama, etc.  
 Sierra Leone, 20, 366  
 Sierra Nevada (Spain), 225  
 (California), 410, 426  
 de Merida, 441  
 Sigismund of Poland, 58  
 Sihun Chai, 352  
 Sikandarabad, 319  
 Sikhota Alin, 264  
 Sikhs, 83, 84, 313  
 Si-kiang river, 285, 286  
 Sikkim, 316  
 Silesia, 179  
 Austrian, 207  
 Simla, 317  
 Simplon Pass, 209, 211  
 Simusir, 306  
 Sinai, 380  
 Sind, 308  
 conquest of, 82  
 Singapore, 330  
 island, 83  
 Singhalese, 321  
 Sinope, 355  
 Siri-kul, 340  
 Sirocco wind, 164, 234  
 Sistova, 252  
 Sitka, 424  
 Siuli, 306  
 Siu-san islands, 306  
 Sivalik range, 308  
 Sivas, 355  
 Siwah, 361, 379  
 Sjælland, 188  
 Skadar, see Scutari, 247  
 Skagen, horn of, 189  
 Skager Rak, 155, 182  
 Skagway, 424  
 Skardo, 317  
 Skaw, the, 189  
 Skeena river, 411  
 Sknae, 182, 185  
 Skopelos, 240  
 Skrellings, 41  
 Skye, 169  
 Skyros, 240  
 Slattaretindur, 191  
 Slave Lake, Great, 411,  
 421  
 Slavonia, 208  
 Slavonians, 32  
 in Turkey, 248  
 Slavs, 31, 32  
 in Austria, 203  
 of Europe, 165  
 Slieve Bloom, 171  
 Sligo Bay, 173  
 Slivno, 253  
 Slovaks, 203  
 Slovenes, 103, 206  
 Smith Sound, 416  
 Smyrna, 355  
 Sneeuwbergen, 397  
 Snowdon, 170

- Snow-line in Europe, 163  
 Sobat, 362, 382  
 Society Islands, 466  
 Socotra, 407  
 Soda, Jebel, 361, 374  
 Sofala, 366, 395  
 Sofia, 252  
 Soghanly Su, 351  
 Sogne fiord, 183  
 Sohar, 359, 389  
 Sokota (Abyss.), 384  
 Sokoto (Sudan), 388  
 "Solano" wind, 164, 227  
 Solenhofen, 199  
 Solent, 169, 172  
 Solferino, 236  
 Solingen, 197  
 Solomon islands, 101, 465  
 Solothurn, 211  
 Solstices, 119  
 Somal country, 88  
 Somali, 391  
 Somerset, 459  
 Song-ka river, 266, 327  
 Sonmiani, 338  
 Sorata peak, 446  
 Sorö, 190  
 Sound, the, 182, 188  
 South African Republic, 90, 402  
 South Foreland, 168  
 South Georgia island, 453  
 Southampton, 178  
 Southern Alps (New Zealand), 462  
 Southern Bulgaria, 253  
     Rhodesia, 404  
 Soyot, 272  
 Spa, 217  
 Spain, 41, 42, 49, 55, 61, 67;  
     foreign possessions of,  
     57, 73, 90, 94  
 Spalato, 208  
 Spanish Main, 55  
     Town, 438  
 Sparta, 243  
 Spartivento, Cape, 233  
 Speke, Captain, 93  
 Spencer Gulf, 454, 460  
 Sperrin mountains, 171  
 Spey, 172  
 Speyer, 200  
 Spezia, 238  
 Spice Islands, 50  
 Spielberg, 207  
 Spires, 200  
 Spitz, 249  
 Spitzbergen, 156, 160, 163  
 Splügen Pass, 209  
 Sporades, 240  
 Srinagar, 317  
 Stack, Ben, 169  
 Stafford, 178  
 Staffordshire coalfield, 175, 178  
 Stanley, H. M., 90, 93  
     Harbour, 453  
     Pool, 390  
 Stanovoi mountains, 263, 280  
 Starbuck island, 466  
 Stars, revolution of, 5  
 Staten Island, 429  
 Stavanger, 186  
 Stavropol, 278, 279  
 Stefanie, lake, 365  
 Stewart Island, 381, 462  
 Steppes of Russia, 157, 259, 162  
 Stettin, 197  
     Haff, 193  
 Stevenson road, 396  
 Stevns Klint, 189  
 Steyr, 206  
 Stikine river, 411, 422  
 Stilsfer Joch (Stelvio), 158  
 Stockholm, 187  
 Stockport, 178  
 Stockton, 180  
 Stoke-upon-Trent, 178  
 Stor Elv, 184  
 Strabo, the geographer, 26  
 Stralsund, 197  
 Strassburg, 195, 201  
 Strathmore, 171  
 Stromboli, 233  
 Stromö, 191  
 Stroud, 178  
 Stuart, M'Donald, 99  
 Stuttgart, 200  
 Styria, 204, 206  
 Styx, 241  
 Suakin, 379  
 Sual, 337  
 Sucre or Chuquisaca, 447  
 Sudan, 86, 93, 384  
 Sudetic mountains, 159, 202  
 Sudlengdinga, 193  
 Suedia, 352  
 Suez, 379  
     Isthmus of, 360  
     Canal, 86  
 Suffolk, 180  
 Suilvein, 169  
 Suir river, 173  
 Sukhum, 279  
 Sukurlu, 351  
 Sulaiman range, 264, 307, 308, 339  
 Sulu Islands, 337  
 Sumatra, 56, 264, 332  
 Sumba, 335  
 Sunbawa, 335  
 Sun, apparent motion, 1  
 Sunda Islands, 330  
 Sundarbans, 263, 308  
 Sunderland, 178  
 Sungari river, 266, 292  
 Suniteh Mongols, 294  
 Superior, Lake, 411, 418, 419  
 Sur or Tyre, 352, 355  
 Surabaya, 333  
 Surakerta, 333  
 Surat, 318  
 Surinam, 442  
 Surveying, 5  
 Sus, 371  
 Susa, 374  
 Susquehanna river, 425  
 Sutlej river, 22, 267  
 Suva, 465  
 Suwo Nada channel, 302  
 Svealand, 187  
 Swabia, 200  
 Swabian Jura, 200  
 Swahili, 393  
 Swakopmund, 405  
 Swan river, 461  
 Swansea, 178  
 Swatow, 289  
 Swazi Land, 396  
 Sweden, 182  
 Swiss lakes, 162  
 Switzerland, 208  
 Sydney, Australia, 73, 457  
     Canada, 418  
 Sylhet, 316  
 Sylvia mountain, 307  
 Syracuse, 21  
 Syra, 240, 243  
 Syr Daria, 262, 268, 282  
 Syria, 85, 355  
 Szegedin, 208  
 Szeklers, 203  
  
 TAASINGE ISLAND, 188  
 Table Bay, 399  
     mountains, 397, 399  
 Tabora, 394  
 Taborniau, 334  
 Tabriz, 346, 347  
 Tacna, 448, 449  
 Tafilet, 371  
 Tagals, 336  
 Taganrog, 260  
 Tagus, 161, 226  
 Tahiti, 466  
     island, 61, 71  
 Tai-dong river, 300  
 "Tai-ping-wang" rebellion, 80  
 Tai-wan, 289  
 Tajiks, 273  
 Tajurra, 380, 392  
 Taka, 381  
 Takau, 289  
 Takazze, 362, 383  
 Takht-i-Salaiman, 308  
 Takla Makan, 265  
     Desert, 296  
 Takue, 381  
 Talanta, 240  
 Talavera, battle of, 76  
 Talcahuano, 449  
 Tale Sap, 329  
 Tamar river, 461  
 Tamarieh mountains, 350  
 Tamatave, 406  
 Tambora, 335  
 Tamerlane, 40  
 Tamilians, 313  
 Tamils, 321  
 Tamsui, 289  
 Tana, 364, 393  
     Elf, 184  
 Tanega, 306  
 Tanga, 394  
 Tanganyika, Lake, 94, 363  
 Tangier, 371  
 Tang-ku, 290

- Tangutans, 298  
 Tanjore, 318  
 Tannu-ola, 294  
 Tanta, 379  
 Taodeni, 375  
 Taoism, 275  
 Taoists, 288  
 Tapajos, 443  
 Tapanuli, 332  
 Tapti river, 309, 310  
 Tara, 281  
 Tarai, 308  
 Taranto, Gulf of, 232, 237  
 Tarapaca, 445, 448, 449  
 Tarbagatai, 263, 295, 296  
 Tarifa, Cape of, 225  
 Tarik, his invasion of Spain, 29  
 Tarim river, 263, 265, 269, 296  
 Tarragona, 230  
 Tarso, 377  
 Tarsus, 355  
     Gulf of, 352  
 Tartessus, 21, 145  
 Ta-shan mountain, 307  
 Tashkend, 79, 283  
 Tasman, Abel Jansen, 64  
     glacier, 462  
 Tasmania, 99, 461  
 Tatars, 38  
     or Mongols, 272  
     Crimean, 248  
     of Russia, 256  
 Tatra, 202  
 Ta-tung-kau, 289  
 Taunus, 158, 264  
 Taupo, 462  
 Tauric Chersonese, 20  
 Taurus, 349  
 Tavoy, 323  
 Tay, 172  
     Loch, 172  
 Taygetos, 240  
 Teddington Lock, 171  
 Tees, 172  
 Tegucigalpa, 435  
 Tehran, 346, 347  
 Tehuantepec, Isthmus of, 410, 434  
 Tehuelches, 453  
 Tejend, 283  
 Tekke Turkomans, 342, 344  
 Telaings, 324  
 Tell, 369  
 Tell el Kebir, 379  
 Telugu, 313  
 Tembu Land, 400  
 Temperature, decrease with height, 131  
     distribution of, 120  
 Templars, Knights, 36  
 Temujin, 37  
 Tenasserim, 82, 323  
 Tenedos, 348  
 Teneriffe, 407  
 Teng-chou, 289  
 Tengri-nor, 269, 298  
 Tennessee, 430  
 Tenochtitlan, 52  
 Ten-riu-gawa, 303  
 Tensift, 370  
 Teplitz, 207  
 Terai, 264  
 Terek, 278  
     Pass, 297  
 Termination Land, 101  
 Ternate, 336  
 Terschelling, 212  
 Tessin or Ticino, 211  
 Tete, 364, 395  
 Teutonic Knights, 35, 59  
 Teutones and Cimbri, 25  
 Teutonic peoples, 147  
 Teyma, 356  
 Texas, 96, 431  
 Texel river, 212  
 Thames, 161, 171  
 Thar, desert, 263, 308  
 Thasos, 247, 348  
 Thebes, 379  
 Theiss, 202  
 Theodoric, King, 27  
 Thessaly, 239, 240, 242, 246, 249  
 Thian-shan mountains, 79, 263, 265, 291  
 Thian-shan-nan-lu, 296  
 Thian-shan-pe-lu, 295  
 Thimai, 328  
 Thingvalla Vatn, 192  
 Thionville (Diedenhofen), 201  
 Thirty Years' War, 59  
 Thok Jalung, 299  
 Tholen, 212  
 Thompson river, 422  
 Thrace, 247  
 Thule discovered, 23  
 Thun, lake of, 209  
 Thurgau, 211  
 Thurgovie, see Thurgau  
 Thuringian Forest, 158  
 Thursday Island, 459  
 Tibbus, 376  
 Tiber river, 233  
 Tiberias, lake of, 352  
 Tibesti, 361, 377  
 Tibet, 265, 297  
     plateau, 129, 263  
 Tibetans, 272  
 Ticini, 211, 233  
     river, 209  
 Tides, 135  
 Tidikelt, 376, 377  
 Tien-tsin, 286, 289  
 Tierra del Fuego, 409, 448, 452  
 Tiflis, 279  
 Tigre, 383  
 Tigris, 268, 351  
 Tilburg, 214  
 Timbo, 388  
 Timbaktu, 49, 93, 386, 389  
 Timor, 335  
     Laut, 336  
 Timur-leng, 40  
 Tinneveli, 318  
 Tinos, 240  
 Tioge river, 365  
 Tippera, 316  
 Tippoo, 69  
 Tireboli, 351  
 Tiris, 376  
 Tirnova, 252  
 Titicaca, lake, 53, 411, 447  
 Tiumen river, 279, 300  
 Tizi-n-Tamjurt, 361, 369  
 Tmolus mountains, 351  
 Tobolsk, 281  
 Tocantins, 443  
 Togo, 368, 387  
 Togoland, 91  
 Tokio or Yedo, 305  
 Toledo, 228, 230  
     mountains, 225  
 Tolima, Peak of, 439  
 Töll-poss-is, 160  
 Tolosa, battle of, 34  
 Toltecs, 52  
 Tomsk, 280, 281  
 Tone-gawa, 303  
 Tonga Islands, 100, 465  
 Tongariro, 462  
 Tongking, 65, 327  
 Tongo Land, 396  
 Topolius or Kopais, lake, 241  
 Tornea Elf, 184  
     river, 182  
 Toronto, 419  
 Torres Strait, 454, 459  
     Vedras, battle of, 70  
 Torrens lake, 455, 460  
 Toulon, 222  
 Toulouse, 76, 221  
 Tournay, 216, 217  
 Touraine, 223  
 Tourcoing, 221  
 Tours, 221  
 Toweyk, Jebel, 357  
 Townsend, Mount, 455, 457  
 Townsville, 459  
 Trade winds, 134  
 Trafalgar, Cape of, 225  
     battle, 75  
 Trajan's wall, 244  
 Tralee Bay, 173  
 "Tramontana" wind, 234  
 Tranquebar, 318  
 Trans-Baikal, 281  
 Trans-Siberian Railway, 281  
 Transvaal, the, 88, 89, 396, 402  
 Transylvania, 208  
 Transylvanian Alps, 159, 202, 244  
 Travancore, 318  
 Travník, 252  
 Tras os Montes, 231  
 Trebinye, 252  
 Trebizond, 355  
 Trent, 172, 207  
 Trichinopoli, 318  
 Trieste, 206  
 Trikala, 243  
 Trincomali, 322  
 Tringanu, 326, 327  
 Trinidad, 437, 438  
 Trinity Bay, 423  
 Tripoli, 369  
     (Africa), 374  
     in Syria, 355  
 Tripolitza, 243



- Tristan da Cunha, 49  
 Trivandrum, 318  
 Trolhätta canal and falls, 184  
 Tromsö, 187, 188  
 Trondhjem, 186  
 Tropics, 119, 120  
 Troppau, 207  
 Trostan, 171  
 Trujillo (Honduras), 435  
     (Peru), 446  
 Troy, plain of, 351  
 Tsana, lake, 362, 383  
 Tsetse fly, 402  
 Tsianpo or Champa, 329  
 Tsin-kiang, 300  
 Tsi-tan rapid, 266  
 Tsitsihar, 292  
 Tsugaru Strait, 306  
 Tsushima islands, 305  
 Tu or Tibesti, 377  
 Tuam, 177  
 Tuamotu, 466  
 Tuareg, 376  
 Tuaregs, 376  
 Tübingen, 195, 200  
 Tucacas, 441  
 Tucuman, 450  
 Tugela river, 401  
 Tugurt, 373  
 Tula, 258  
 Tuluva, 313  
 Tumbelan islets, 332  
 Tumets, Mongols, 294  
 Tunbridge, 177  
 Tundras, 157, 162, 262, 279  
 Tungani, 81  
     rebellion, 282  
 Tung-hai or Eastern Sea, 285  
 Tung-ting-hu, 286  
 Tunguses, 272, 292  
 Tungwe, 394  
 Tunis, 86, 369, 373  
 Tunisia, 373  
 Tunja, 253  
 Tunstall, 178  
 Tur, Jebel, 349  
 Turgai, 282  
 Turgen lake, 294  
 Turguths, Mongols, 294  
 Turin, 235, 236, 238, 239  
 Turkey, 31, 40, 47, 69, 79, 85  
     in Asia, 347  
     in Europe, 252  
     government, 167  
 Turkestan, 29, 79, 81  
     Chinese, 296  
     plain of, 263  
     Russian, 79, 282, 342  
 Turkoman desert, 262  
 Turks, 245, 247, 248  
     or Tatars, 272  
 Tuscany, 236, 237, 238  
 Tuticorin, 318  
 Tuz Gol, 352  
 Tweed, 172  
 Twelve Pins, 171  
 Tyne, 172  
     ports, 175  
 Typhoons, 286  
 Tyre or Sur, 352, 355  
 Tyrol, 206  
 Tyrrhenian Sea, 156, 233  
 URSA NOR, 294  
 Ucayali, 445  
 Udong, 329  
 Uganda, 394  
 Ugogo, 394  
 Ugrians, 165  
 Ujain, 319  
 Ujdah, 92, 371  
 Ujiji, 394  
 Ukerewe, 93  
 Ukraine, 256, 258  
 Uliassutai, 294  
 Uliungur lake, 294  
 Ullswater, lake, 172  
 Ulm, 200  
 Ulster, 180  
 Ulukem, river, 294  
 Umbria, 237  
 Umbrians, 235  
 Umea Elf, 184  
 Um el Rhea, 370  
 Umnak, 424  
 Umtamfuna, 401  
 Unalashka, 424  
 Unitarians, 34  
 United States, 68, 72, 96, 97, 425  
     Atlantic States, 428  
     Central States, 430  
     extent, 425  
     government, 428  
     Pacific States, 432  
     people, 425  
     physical features, 425  
     religion, 427  
     Western States, 431  
 Unterwalden, 211  
 Unyanyembé, 394  
 Upernavik, 416  
 Uppingham, 177  
 Upsala, 186  
 Ural mountains, 160, 256, 259  
 Uralsk, 282  
 Urban, Cape, 36  
 Uri, 209, 211  
 Urga, 294, 295  
 Urmia or Urumiah, 269, 346  
 Uruguay, 94  
     river, 452  
     republic, 452  
 Urumiah, lake, 269, 345  
 Urup, 306  
 Usagara, 394  
 Usbægs, 51, 272, 283, 343  
 Ush Turfan, 297  
 Uskub, 254, 255  
 Uspallata Pass, 449  
 Ussuri river, 292  
 Ust Yurt, 283  
 Usunada, 283  
 Usutu, 396  
 Utah, 432  
 Utrecht, 113, 214  
     Province, 215  
     Natal, 401  
 VAAL RIVER, 364, 398, 401  
 Vadda, 321  
 Vaduz, 207  
 Valais or Wallis, 211  
 Valdai Hills, 160, 256  
 Valdivia, 449  
 Valencia, 228, 229, 230, 441  
     Bay of, 226  
 Valenciennes, 221, 222  
 Valetta, 181, 239  
 Valladolid, 225, 228, 230  
 Valparaiso, 449  
 Van, 355  
     lake, 269, 349, 352  
 Vancouver Island, 417, 422, 423  
     town, 423  
     Captain, 70  
 Vandals, the, 26  
 Van Diemen's Land, 64, 99  
 Vanga, 393  
 Vanua, 465  
 Var, hills of, 220  
 Varanger fiord, 182, 183  
 Varangians, 32  
 Vardar, 247  
 Variation of compass, 4  
 Varna, 252  
 Vasa, Gustavus, 47  
 Vatna Jökull, 192  
 Vättisfos, waterfall, 183  
 Vaud or Waadt, 211  
 Vaucluse, 220  
 Vecht, 212  
 Velasquez, Diego, 52  
 Vellar, 318  
 Venetia, 232, 236  
 Venezia, settlement of, 36  
 Venezuela, 94, 440  
 Venice, 36, 238, 239  
 Vennaissin, 224  
 Venus, transit of, 71  
 Vera Cruz, 52, 434  
 Verazzano, the voyager, 52  
 Verd, Cape, 360  
     islands, 42, 91  
 Verkhoyansk, 270, 271  
 Vermejo river, 449, 450  
 Vermont, 428  
 Vernoye, 282  
 Verona, 238  
 Vesteraleen islands, 183  
 Vesuvius, 159, 233  
 Viborg, 258  
 Vicenza, 238  
 Victoria, 422, 454  
     Colony, 458  
     Falls, 364  
     Hills, 455  
     (Hong-kong), 291  
     Nyanza, 93, 362  
     (Vancouver), 423  
     "Victoria," voyage of, 51  
 Vidin, 252  
 Vienna, 58, 204, 205  
     climate, 203  
     congress of, 211  
     peace of, 76  
 Vigo, 225  
 Villa Rica, 452  
     Viciosa, 229

- Vilna, 257, 258  
 Vindhya mountains, 264, 309  
 Vinhlong, 329  
 Virgin Islands, 437  
 Virginia, 55, 62, 429  
 Viscaya or Biscay, 228  
 Visigoths, the, 26  
 Vistula, 161, 194, 202, 259  
 Viti or Fiji Islands, 465  
 Vittoria, battle of, 76  
 Vivaldi, 39  
 Vivi, 390  
 Vizagapatam, 318  
 Vlaardingen, 214  
 Vladivostok, 281  
 Vlieland, 212  
 Vogelsberg, 158  
 Volcano Bay, 305  
 Volga, 160, 256  
 Volhynia, 258  
 Volscians, 21  
 Volta, 387  
 Volo, 240, 243  
 Voorne, 212  
 Vorarlberg, 207  
 Vosges, 159, 201, 218, 220  
 Vostyaks, 256  
 Vryheid, 401
- WAAL RIVER**, 212  
 Wadai, 388, 389  
 Wadelai, 382  
 Wady Halfa, 362, 378  
 Wady el Arabah, 350  
 Wagram, battle of, 76  
 Wahabi, 85, 86, 274, 359  
 Waichau, 289  
 Waigu, 336  
 Waikato, 462  
 Wairau, 463  
 Waitaki, 463  
 Wakefield, 178  
 Wakhan, 340, 341  
 Wakkerstroom, 401  
 Walachia, 85, 243  
 Walcheren, 212  
 Waldeck, 196  
 Waldenses, 235  
 Wales, 38  
     coalfields, 175  
 Walfish Bay, 90  
 Wall of China, 284  
 Wallace, 35  
 Wallachians, 203  
 Wallaroo, 460  
 Wallis, 211  
 Walloons, 216, 220  
 Walsall, 178  
 Walvisch Bay, 397, 405  
 Wami, 364  
 Wanganui, 462  
 Wanhsien, 289  
 Wapokomo, 393  
 Wargla, 373  
 Warrego, 459  
 Warsaw, 67, 75, 257, 258, 260  
 Warsheikh, 393  
 Warthe river, 197
- Warwickshire, 178  
 Wash, the, 170  
 Washington, 429  
     City, 96  
     George, 72  
     State, 432  
 Washita Hills, 426  
 Waterberg, 402  
 Waterloo, 217  
     battle of, 76  
 Waziris, 340  
 "Weald" of Kent, 174  
 Wear, 172  
 Webi Shabéela, 392  
 Wednesbury, 178  
 Wej, El, 355  
 Welle or Mobangi, 364, 382  
 Wellesley, province, 330  
 Wellington, 177  
     (New Zealand), 463  
     Duke of, 69, 75, 76, 82  
 Wen-chow, 289  
 Wener, lake, 184  
 Weser, 193  
 West Indies, 43, 436  
 Westminster, 177  
     Abbey, 35  
 Westphalia, 197  
     kingdom of, 75  
     treaty of, 59  
 Westyrdinga, 193  
 Wetter lake, 161  
 Wexford Bay, 173  
 Whernside, 170  
 Whitehorse Rapids, 424  
 White Sea, 155  
 Whitney, Mount, 410  
 Whydah, 387  
 Wicklow, 171, 176  
 Wieliczka, 204  
 Wiesbaden, 197  
 Wigan, 178  
 Wight, Isle of, 169  
 Wigtonshire, 180  
 William, Mount, 455  
     the "Conqueror," 35  
     of Orange, 55, 60  
 Willoughby, Sir Hugh, 54  
 Winchester, 177  
 Windermere, 172  
 Windhoek, 405  
 Winds, 133  
     their effect upon the rain-  
     fall, 140  
 Windward Islands, 438  
 Winnipeg, 422  
     Lake, 411, 422  
 Winnipegosis, lake, 411  
 Wisconsin, 430  
 Wismar, 197  
 Wito, 383, 393  
 Witwater Rand, 403  
 Wolds of York, 170  
     of York and Lincoln, 174  
 Wolfe, General, 68, 70  
 Wolfstan and Ohter's voy-  
     ages, 32  
 Wolverhampton, 178  
 Worcester, 178  
     battle of, 60
- Worcestershire, 180, 400  
 Worms, Diet of, 47  
 Wu-hu, 289  
 Württemberg, 195, 200  
 Würzburg, 195, 199  
 Wustani, El, 379  
 Wynberg, 400  
 Wyoming, 431  
 Wyvis, Ben, 169
- XAVIER**, Francis, 54  
 Xenophon, 22  
 Xeres de la Frontiera, battle  
     of, 29  
 Xingu, 443
- Y, CREEK**, 213  
 Yablonoi mountains, 263, 280  
 Yakoba, 389  
 Yakub Bey, 81  
 Yakutsk, 266, 280, 281  
 Yaltas of the Crimea, 160  
 Ya-lu river, 300  
 Yanaon, 320  
 Yangi-hissar, 297  
 Yang-tse-kiang, 266, 286  
 Yanina, 253, 255  
 Yao, 287, 289, 395  
 Yarkand, 263, 297  
 Yarkand-Daria, 296  
 Yarra-Yarra, 458  
 Yatung, 299  
 Yedo or Tokio, 304  
 Yekaterinburg, 260, 281  
 Yelala Falls, 364, 390  
 Yellow Sea, 285  
 Yellowstone Park, 431  
 Yemen, 28, 86, 350, 352, 355  
 Yenisei river, 265  
 Yeniseisk, 281  
 Yeshil Irmak, 351  
 Yesukai, Bahadur, 37  
 Yeterop, 306  
 Yezd, 346  
 Yezo, 305  
 Yinhoa, 293  
 Yloilo, 337  
 Ymes Field, 160  
 Yodo-gawa, 303  
 Yokohama, 304  
 Yokuno, 306  
 Yola, 363  
 Yoma mountains, 323, 324  
 Yomdok lake, 298  
 York, 176  
     Cape, 454, 459  
     Fort, 421  
     Peninsula, 460  
 Yorkshire, 180  
     coalfield, 175  
 Yoruba, 90, 387  
 Yowaru, 388  
 Yssel, 212  
 Ythaka, 240  
 Yu, 299  
 Yuensan or Gen-san, 302  
 Yugo or Southern Slavs, 165

- Yukon 411, 424  
 Yun-nan, 81, 285, 286, 290  
 Yuryary, 441  
 Yusufzais, 340
- ZAB RIVER**, 351  
 Zagazig, 379  
 Zaidam, 298  
 Zaire, see Congo, 363  
 Zaisan, lake, 265, 295  
 Zama, battle of, 24  
 Zamaism, 275  
 Zambezi, 364, 395  
     river, 93  
 Zambezia, 395  
 Zante, 240, 242, 243
- Zanzibar, 87, 392  
 Zara, 208  
 Zarafshan, 343  
     river, 79  
 Zaragoza, 228, 230  
 Zealand, 188  
 Zebu, 386  
 Zeeland, province, 215  
 Zeerust, 403  
 Zeila, 88, 380, 392  
 Zerafshan, see Zarafshan  
 Zermatt, 210  
 Zifta, 378  
 Zinzares, 241  
 Zipangu (Japan), 39  
 Zirknitz, 206  
 Zoar, 424
- Zollverein, 196  
 Zones, 121  
 Zoroastrians, 274  
 Zug, 211  
     lake of, 209  
 Zuider Zee, 212  
 Zukkertoppen, 416  
 Zulu Kafirs, 89, 395, 404  
     Land, 396  
 Zumbo, 395  
 Zungaria, 79, 265, 295  
 Zurich, 210  
     lake of, 209  
 Zvornik, 252  
 Zwai, lake, 365  
 Zwarteberge, 397  
 Zwickau, 198

THE END.

JUL 23 1921

# STANFORD'S COMPENDIUM OF GEOGRAPHY AND TRAVEL

(Continued).

**NORTH AMERICA.—Vol. I. CANADA AND NEWFOUNDLAND.** By SAMUEL EDWARD DAWSON, Litt. D. (Laval), F.R.S.C. With 18 Maps and 90 Illustrations.

“The general scope and execution of the work, like those of its predecessors, are admirable.”—*Athenæum*.

**NORTH AMERICA.—Vol. II. THE UNITED STATES.** By HENRY GANNETT, Chief Geographer of the United States Geological Survey. With 16 Maps and 72 Illustrations.

“The topography, geology, climate, history, and population of the States are thoroughly and yet concisely treated, and the value of the book is very much enhanced by the series of elaborate maps.”—*Literature*.

**CENTRAL AND SOUTH AMERICA.—Vol. I. SOUTH AMERICA.** By A. H. KEANE, F.R.G.S. Edited by Sir CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, F.R.S. With numerous Maps and Illustrations.

“A valuable and richly illustrated compendium of the geography of South America.”—*Geographical Journal*.

**CENTRAL AND SOUTH AMERICA.—Vol. II. CENTRAL AMERICA AND WEST INDIES.** By A. H. KEANE, F.R.G.S. Edited by Sir CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, F.R.S. With numerous Maps and Illustrations.

“The volume is an extremely useful and instructive compendium of the subjects of which it treats, and does great credit both to the publisher and the author.”—*Nature*.

**AUSTRALASIA.—Vol. I. AUSTRALIA AND NEW ZEALAND.** *Second Edition.* By Dr. J. W. GREGORY, F.R.S. With 33 Maps and 80 Illustrations.

**AUSTRALASIA.—Vol. II. MALAYSIA AND THE PACIFIC ARCHIPELAGOES.** By F. H. H. GUILLEMARD, M.D. *Second Edition.* Revised by A. H. KEANE, LL.D. With numerous Maps and Illustrations.

“Dr. Guillemard's volume is certainly the most interesting and accurate account extant on the tropical portion of the Eastern Archipelago.”—*Nature*.

## *Supplementary Volume.*

**A GLOSSARY OF GEOGRAPHICAL AND TOPOGRAPHICAL TERMS,** and of Words of frequent occurrence in the composition of such Terms and of Place-names. By ALEXANDER KNOX, B.A., F.R.G.S. 432 pages.

“A decided boon to readers of works of geography and travel, who, in the absence of deep linguistic attainments, must constantly be puzzled by the terms employed in the place-names of foreign countries.”—*Nature*.

---

LONDON: EDWARD STANFORD,  
12, 13, & 14, LONG ACRE, W.C.  
*Geographer to His Majesty the King.*

# STANFORD'S STANDARD ATLASES.

## STANFORD'S LONDON ATLAS OF UNIVERSAL GEOGRAPHY.

### FOLIO EDITION.

Exhibiting the physical and political divisions of the various countries of the world. 110 Maps and an Alphabetical List of Names, with Latitudes and Longitudes. **THIRD EDITION.** Imperial folio, half-morocco extra, price £12. Size, when shut, 17 inches by 23 inches.

"In respect of its wealth of maps of the British Empire all over the world, it is probably unsurpassed."—*Times*.

## STANFORD'S LONDON ATLAS OF UNIVERSAL GEOGRAPHY.

### QUARTO EDITION.

Containing 50 Coloured Maps, carefully Drawn and Beautifully Engraved, with an Alphabetical List of Names, giving Latitudes and Longitudes.

**SIXTH EDITION,** Revised and Enlarged. Imperial 4to, price 25s.

"The maps are clearly and legibly engraved."—*Globe*.

## STANFORD'S OCTAVO ATLAS OF MODERN GEOGRAPHY.

Containing 50 Coloured Maps, carefully Drawn and Beautifully Engraved, with an Alphabetical List of Names, giving Latitudes and Longitudes.

**THIRD EDITION,** Revised and Enlarged. Imperial 8vo, price 25s.

"This fine library atlas."—*Journal of Education*.

## STANFORD'S HANDY ATLAS OF MODERN GEOGRAPHY.

Containing 30 Coloured Maps, carefully Drawn and Beautifully Engraved, with an Alphabetical List of Names, giving Latitudes and Longitudes.

**SECOND EDITION,** Revised to date. Size, 7½ by 12 inches. Price 10s. 6d.

"Well up to date, an important point in a 'handy' atlas."—*School World*.

*New Edition. Revised and Enlarged.*

## STANFORD'S GEOLOGICAL ATLAS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND.

*With Plates of Characteristic Fossils.*

Preceded by a Description of the Geological Structure of Great Britain and Ireland and their Counties, and of the Features observable along the Principal Lines of Railway.

By **HORACE B. WOODWARD, F.R.S., F.G.S.**

Comprising 36 Coloured Maps and 16 Double-page Plates of Fossils, 200 pages of Text, Illustrated by 20 Sections and Views, crown 8vo, cloth, 12s. 6d. net.

*Detailed Prospectuses of these Atlases gratis on application.*

LONDON: EDWARD STANFORD,  
12, 13, & 14, LONG ACRE, W.C.  
*Geographer to His Majesty the King.*

# STANFORD'S NEW OROGRAPHICAL MAPS

Compiled under the direction of H. J. MACKINDER, M.A.,  
Late Reader in Geography in the University of Oxford, and now Director of the London  
School of Economics and Political Science.

---

"This excellent series."—*Geographical Journal*.

---

These Maps have been compiled with care from original materials, chiefly Government Surveys. They are primarily intended to depict the physical features of the Continents, but by the employment of the device of grey, almost transparent, lettering, many names have been inserted without spoiling the graphic effect of the colouring. The contour lines have been drawn at the same intervals above and below the sea-level, with the result of rendering visible the true contrast between land elevations and ocean depths.

An explanatory leaflet is issued in connection with each Map of the series, and may be had gratis on application.

## 1. MAP OF EUROPE.

**Four Sheets : 60 by 54 inches ; 63·1 miles to an inch (1 : 4,000,000).**

"As an illustration of the building of a continent, the map is excellent."—*Geographical Teacher*.

## 2. MAP OF AFRICA.

**Four Sheets : 50 by 58 inches ; 115 miles to an inch (1 : 7,286,400).**

"This is an excellent wall map, admirably clear and attractive. It is a striking instance of what simplicity of colouring can do."—*School*.

## 3. MAP OF PALESTINE.

**Four Sheets : 52 by 62 inches ; 4 miles to an inch (1 : 253,440).**

"Much care has been expended on the work. . . . The map is right up-to-date."—*School World*.

## 4. MAP OF ASIA.

**Four Sheets : 58 by 50 inches ; 140 miles to an inch (1 : 8,870,400).**

"Will doubtless be welcomed by educational establishments where geography is taught on the more enlightened and intelligent system."—*Geographical Journal*.

## 5. MAP OF NORTH AMERICA.

**Four Sheets : 52 by 60 inches ; 94 miles to an inch (1 : 6,000,000).**

"A most worthy addition to this excellent series."—*Geographical Journal*.

## 6. MAP OF SOUTH AMERICA.

**Four Sheets : 52 by 60 inches ; 94 miles to an inch (1 : 6,000,000).**

## 7. MAP OF AUSTRALASIA.

**Four Sheets : 58 by 50 inches ; 86 miles to an inch (1 : 5,448,960).**

### PRICE OF EACH MAP.

Coloured Sheets, 16s. ; Mounted on Rollers and Varnished, 20s.

*Prospectus gratis on application.*

---

LONDON : EDWARD STANFORD,  
12, 13, & 14, LONG ACRE, W.C.  
*Geographer to His Majesty the King.*



